Oliver Wendell Holmes.

THE

MICROSCOPE

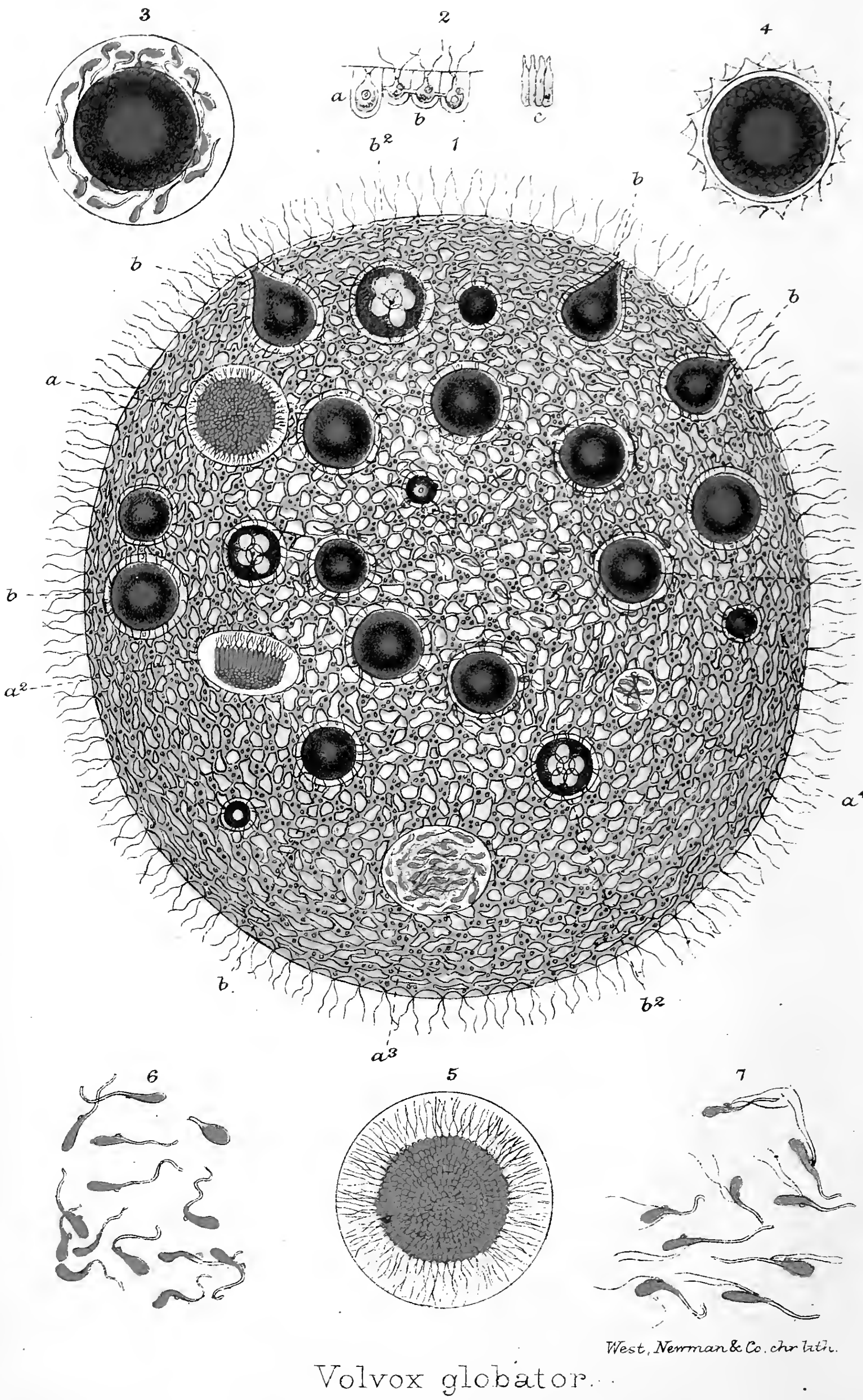
AND ITS

REVELATIONS

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

PRINCIPLES OF HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY. With numerous Illustrations on Steel and Wood. Ninth Edition, Edited by Mr. HENRY POWER. 8vo.

FRONTISPIECE.



West, Newman & Co. chr lith.

Volvox globator.

THE MICROSCOPE AND ITS REVELATIONS

BY

WILLIAM B. CARPENTER, C.B. M.D. LL.D.

F.R.S. F.G.S. F.L.S.

CORRESPONDING MEMBER OF THE INSTITUTE OF FRANCE,
AND OF THE AMERICAN PHILOSOPHICAL SOCIETY,
ETC. ETC.

SIXTH EDITION

ILLUSTRATED BY TWENTY-SIX PLATES

AND FIVE HUNDRED WOOD-ENGRAVINGS

PHILADELPHIA
PRESLEY BLAKISTON
1881

PREFACE.

The rapid increase which has recently taken place in the use of the Microscope,—both as an instrument of scientific research, and as a means of gratifying a laudable curiosity and of obtaining a healthful recreation,—has naturally led to a demand for information, both as to the mode of employing the Instrument and its appurtenances, and as to the Objects for whose minute examination it is most appropriate. This information the Author has endeavoured to supply in the following Treatise; in which he has aimed to combine, within a moderate compass, that information in regard to the use of his Instrument and its Appliances which is most essential to the working Microscopist, with such an account of the Objects best fitted for his study as may qualify him to comprehend what he observes, and thus prepare him to benefit Science whilst expanding and refreshing his own mind. The sale of five large Editions of this Manual, with the many spontaneous testimonies to its usefulness which the Author has received from persons previously unknown to him, justify the belief that it has not inadequately supplied an existing want; and in the preparation of the new Edition now called-for, therefore, he has found no reason to deviate from his original plan, whilst he has endeavoured to improve its execution as to every point which seemed capable of amended treatment.

In his account of the various forms of Microscopes and Accessory Apparatus, the Author has not attempted to describe every thing which is used in this country; still less, to go into minute details respecting the construction of foreign instruments. He is satisfied that in nearly all which relates both to the mechanical and the optical arrangements of their instruments, the chief English Microscope-makers are quite on a level with, if not in advance of, their Continental rivals; but, on the other hand, the latter have supplied instruments which are adequate to all the ordinary pur-

poses of scientific research, at a lower price than such could until recently be obtained in this country. Several British makers, however, are now devoting themselves to the production of Microscopes which shall be really *good* though *cheap;* and the Author cannot but view with great satisfaction the extension of the manufacture in this direction. In the selection of Instruments for description which it was necessary for him to make, he trusts that he will be found to have done adequate justice to those who have most claim to honourable distinction. His principle has been to make mention of such Makers as have distinguished themselves by the introduction of any *new pattern* which he regards as deserving of special recommendation; those who have simply copied the patterns of others without essential modification, receiving no such recognition,—not because their instruments are *inferior*, but because they are *not original.*

In treating of the Applications of the Microscope, the Author has constantly endeavoured to meet the wants of such as come to the study of the minute forms of Animal and Vegetable life with little or no previous scientific preparation, but desire to gain something more than a mere *sight* of the objects to which their observation may be directed. Some of these may perhaps object to the general tone of his work as too highly-pitched, and may think that he might have rendered his descriptions simpler by employing fewer Scientific terms. But he would reply that he has had much opportunity of observing among the votaries of the Microscope a desire for such information as he has attempted to convey; and that the use of scientific terms cannot be easily dispensed with, since there are no others in which the facts can be readily expressed. As he has made a point of explaining these in the places where they are first introduced, he cannot think that any of his readers need find much difficulty in apprehending their meaning.

The proportion of space allotted to the several departments has been determined not so much by their Scientific importance, as by their special interest to the *amateur* Microscopist; and the remembrance of this consideration will serve to account for much that might otherwise appear either defective or redundant. Thus, the Author has specially dwelt on those humble forms of Vegetable and Animal life, which the diligent collector is most likely to meet with, and which will fully reward his most attentive scrutiny. And he has endeavoured, in his account of them, to interest his readers

in the knowledge to be drawn from their study, as to those *fundamental phenomena of living action* which are now universally admitted to constitute the basis of Physiological science; thus giving to the portion of his Treatise which treats of Protophytic and Protozoic organisms, the character of a General Introduction to the study of Biology, which will, he hopes, prove specially useful to such as desire to follow this study into its higher walks. On the other hand, the Author has felt the necessity of limiting within a narrow compass his treatment of various important subjects which are fully discussed in Treatises expressly devoted to them (such, for example, as the structure of Insects, and Vertebrate Histology), in order that he might give more space to those on which no such sources of information are readily accessible. For the same reason, he has omitted all reference to the Embryonic Development of Vertebrated Animals,—a study that is second to none in scientific interest, but can only be advantageously taken up by the Microscopist who has been trained to the pursuit. And he has found himself obliged to content himself with a mere indication of the new and important facts now being brought to our knowledge by Microscopic enquiry, in regard to the Deposits at present in progress on the bottom of the Deep Sea, the Mineral constitution of Sedimentary and Igneous Rocks, and other branches of Micro-Petrological enquiry, which are throwing a flood of new light on the past history of the Crust of the Earth.

It has been the Author's object throughout, to guide the possessor of a Microscope to the *intelligent* study of any department of Biology, which his individual tastes may lead him to follow-out, and his individual circumstances may give him facilities for pursuing. And he has particularly aimed to show, under each head, how small is the amount of trustworthy knowledge already acquired, compared with that which remains to be attained by the zealous and persevering student. Being satisfied that there is a large quantity of valuable *Microscope-power* at present running to waste in this country,—applied in such desultory observations as are of no service whatever to Science, and of very little to the mind of the observer,—he will consider himself well rewarded for the pains he has bestowed on the production and revision of this Manual, if it should tend to direct this power to more systematic labours, in those fertile fields which only await the diligent cultivator to bear abundant fruit.

In all that concerns the *working* of the Microscope and its

appurtenances, the Author has mainly drawn upon his own experience, which dates-back almost to the time when Achromatic Object-glasses were first constructed in this country. In his last Edition, he felt himself obliged by the demands which were made by Official duties upon his time and attention, to seek the aid of his friend Mr. H. J. Slack, in the preparation of the portion of the work specially relating to the Microscope and its Appliances. But having now, at last, the command of his own time, he has preferred that this, like the rest of the Treatise, should be the expression of his own matured views; and has accordingly taken much trouble to acquaint himself thoroughly with such recent advances, alike in the theory and in the practice of Microscopy, as could be most fittingly introduced into it.

Accordingly, he has introduced at pp. 186–191 a concise account of the 'diffraction-theory' of Prof. Abbe, which has now given the complete *rationale* of the relation between the 'angular aperture' of Objectives and their 'resolving power.' And he has followed this up by a discussion of the question (pp. 191–206) whether the opening-out of the angular aperture to its extremest limits is the end to be specially aimed-at in the construction of Objectives for the highest kinds of Biological research; in other words, whether an Objective which resolves the most difficult Diatom-tests, is on that account the one best suited for following the life-history of a *Monad*, or for studying the development of a problematical *Bacillus*-organism. Having the misfortune to differ in opinion on this point from certain American Microscopists, who are distinguished by their expertness in the resolution of lined tests by Objectives of the largest angular aperture, and who enthusiastically advocate the use of such Objectives as the only powers to be trusted for Biological research, he has requested his friend, Mr. Dallinger (than whom there can be no higher authority on such a question), to give him the benefit of his experience thereon. And he is authorized by Mr. Dallinger to express his *entire concurrence* in the opinion uniformly upheld by the Author, that great 'resolving power' is only exceptionally needed in the most difficult Biological investigations; what is especially required for the study of *living and moving organisms* being such crisp and clear definition, good working distance, and considerable focal depth, as high-power Objectives of the widest aperture cannot afford. These qualities are so admirably combined in the 'dry' 1-35th of 'moderate angle' constructed to Mr. Dallinger's order by Messrs. Powell and Lealand, that he has been able to do

work (of the kind just specified) with this Objective, which it would have been *simply impossible* for him to do with the oil-immersion 1-25th of the same makers, although this *far surpasses* their 1-35th in 'resolving' power.—When Prof. J. Edwards Smith, and those who side with him, shall have produced Biological work of anything like the same nature and quality as that of Mr. Dallinger, it will be interesting to know the results of their more extended experience.

On another point of great practical importance, the Author has thought it worth while to avail himself of Mr. Dallinger's unrivalled experience,—the utility of 'deep eye-piecing.' For he has seen with astonishment that the enthusiastic American advocates of the widest angles for Objectives of moderate power, are claiming for such objectives the advantage that they may be worked-up to any amount of amplification by sufficiently 'deep eye-piecing;' solid eye-pieces of *half* or even *a quarter* of an inch being now spoken-of as in ordinary use. He does not for a moment doubt that difficult lined tests *may* be thus shown: but that it is far less trying to the vision, when exercised *in continuous work*, to gain the needed amplification by a *high* Objective and *shallow* Eye-piece, than by a *low* Objective (however wide its angle) and *deep* Eye-piece, experience long ago satisfied him. Not having thus exercised his eyes, however, upon objects requiring the high amplifications used by Mr. Dallinger, he was fully prepared to submit his own judgment on this question to that of a gentleman who has so well earned his title to pronounce an authoritative verdict upon it; but, so far from having in the least to give way, the Author finds himself supported by Mr. D. in the most emphatic way. For he learns, not only that Mr. D.'s experience in the study of the most difficult Biological objects satisfies him of the immense superiority of the *highest* Objective that admits of good working distance, combined with a *low* Eye-piece, over the 'strained amplification' given by a 4-10ths, a 1-4th, or even a 1-8th, with deep eye-pieces; but that Mr. D. is satisfied that if he had *tried* to do the work of the last ten years on the latter plan, "he would be now blind, instead of possessing as good and sensitive a sight as he had ten years ago."—As it has been politely suggested by an American controversialist, that the Author's inability to appreciate the supreme value of wide aperture may be due to the senile deterioration of his vision, the Author is happy to be able to state that,—thanks to his habit of using shallow Eye-pieces, and of never persisting in Microscope-work when he has felt

visual fatigue,—his eyes are now as fit for Microscopy as they were when he began so to use them nearly half a century ago.

He has only to add that he has endeavoured by a careful and thorough revision of the entire Treatise, to render it as serviceable as possible to those for whom it is specially intended. Besides introducing a large amount of new matter into the first four chapters, he has entirely re-written Chap. V., so as to embody in it an account of those methods of Hardening, Staining, Imbedding, and Section-cutting, which have completely revolutionized many departments of Microscopic investigation. In the sections relating to the Protophytic forms of Vegetable life, much new matter has been introduced in regard to the *Schizomycetes* or *Bacterium*-group, the *Myxomycetes*, and others of those curious organisms which occupy the border-ground between Vegetable and Animal life. So, again, in the section on the Protozoic forms of Animal life, large additions have been made under the heads *Monerozoa, Rhizopoda, Infusoria* (especially the *flagellate* and *suctorial*), and *Radiolaria;* and the section on *Sponges* has been entirely re-written. Some important additions have also been made (Chap. XXI.) in regard to the applications of the Microscope to Geological enquiry.—In many other instances, references have been made to the best sources of information upon recent discoveries of interest, which a due regard to the necessary limits of his book made it requisite for the Author to dismiss with a mere mention.

No fewer than fifty new Wood-engravings have been added (for the use of eleven of which the Author is indebted to the Council of the Linnæan Society), besides the reproduction of Prof. Cohn's beautiful Plate of *Volvox*, which now forms the Frontispiece.

To such as feel inclined to take up the use of the Microscope as a means of healthful and improving occupation for their unemployed hours, the Author would offer this word of encouragement, —that, notwithstanding the number of recruits continually being added to the vast army of Microscopists, and the rapid extension of its conquests, the inexhaustibility of Nature is constantly becoming more and more apparent; so that no apprehension need arise that the Microscopist's researches can ever be brought to a stand *for want of an object!*

London, *May*, 1881.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

OPTICAL PRINCIPLES OF THE MICROSCOPE.

	PAGE
Laws of Refraction:—Spherical and Chromatic Aberration	1
Construction of Achromatic Objectives	14
Immersion Systems	18
Simple Microscope	21
Compound Microscope	25
Principles of Binocular Vision	29
Stereoscopic Binocular Microscopes	32
Nachet's	33
Wenham's	34
Stephenson's	36
Tolles' Binocular Eyepiece	39
Nachet's Stereo-pseudoscopic Binocular	39
Special value of Stereoscopic Binoculars	42

CHAPTER II.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE MICROSCOPE.

	PAGE
General Principles	47
Simple Microscopes	50
Ross's	51
Quekett's Dissecting	53
Siebert & Kraft's Dissecting	54
Laboratory Dissecting	55
Beck's Dissecting and Nachet's Binocular	57
Field's Dissecting and Mounting	59
Compound Microscopes	61
Educational Microscopes	63
Field's	63
Crouch's	63
Parkes's	63
Students' Microscopes	66
Baker's	70
Collins's	71
Pillischer's (International)	72
Ross's (Zentmayer)	73
Wale's (New Working)	74
Nachet's	76
Browning's (Rotating)	78
Crouch's (Binocular)	78
Baker's (Erecting ditto)	79
Second Class Microscopes	80
Powell and Lealand's	80
Beck's (Popular Binocular)	82
Collins's (Harley Binocular)	82
Swift's (Challenge)	84
Browning's Smaller Stephenson Binocular	85

	PAGE
First Class Microscopes	87
Ross's (Ross Model)	88
Ross's (Jackson-Zentmayer)	89
Powell and Lealand's	90
Beck's	91
Beck's (Improved)	91
Microscopes for Special Purposes	92
Beale's Pocket and Demonstrating	92
Baker's Travelling	93
Swift's Portable	94
Nachet's Chemical	95
Non-Stereoscopic Binoculars	98
Powell and Lealand's	98
Wenham's	99

CHAPTER III.

ACCESSORY APPARATUS.

Amplifier	100
Draw-Tube	101
Lister's Erector	101
Micro-Megascope	102
Nachet's Erecting Prism	103
Micro-Spectroscope	104
Micrometric Apparatus	108
Goniometer	111
Diaphragm Eye-piece and Indicator	112
Camera Lucida and other Drawing Apparatus	112
Nose-piece	116
Finders	117
Diaphragms	119
Achromatic Condensers	120
Webster Condenser	121
Oblique Illuminators	123
Amici's Prism	124
Black-Ground Illuminators	125
Wenham's Reflex Illuminator	128
Light-Modifiers	130
Polarizing Apparatus	131
Swift's Combination Sub-Stage.	133
Side Illuminators for Opaque Objects	135
Parabolic Speculum	137
Lieberkühn	138
Vertical Illuminators	140
Stephenson's Safety Stage	141
Stage-Forceps and Vice	142
Disk-holder and Object-holder	143
Glass Stage-Plate	144
Growing Slides	144
Aquatic Box and Cells	146
Zoophyte-Trough	148
Compressors	149
Dipping Tubes	151
Glass Syringe	152
Forceps	152

CHAPTER IV.

MANAGEMENT OF THE MICROSCOPE.

Table and Cabinet	154
Daylight and Lamps	155
Position of Light	157
Care of the Eyes	158
Care of the Microscope	159
General Arrangements	160
Focal Adjustment	162
Adjustment of Object-Glass	165
Arrangement for Transparent Objects	168
Arrangement for Opaque Objects	175
Errors of Interpretation	179
Effects of Diffraction	184
Relative Qualities of Objectives	191
Test-Objects	197
Determination of Magnifying Power	206

CHAPTER V.

PREPARATION, MOUNTING, AND COLLECTING OF OBJECTS.

	PAGE
Materials, Instruments, and Appliances	208
Glass Slides	208
Thin Glass	209
Varnishes and Cements	211
Cells for Mounting Objects	214
Wooden Slides for Opaque Objects	218
Turn-Table	219
Mounting Plate and Water Bath	221
Slider-Forceps, Spring-Clip, and Spring-Press	221
Mounting Instrument	222
Dissecting Apparatus	223
Microtomes and Section-cutting	225
Preparation and Mounting of Objects	232
Imbedding Processes	232
Grinding and Polishing Sections of Hard Substances	235
Decalcifying Process	240
Hardening of Animal Substances	241
Staining Processes	244
Chemical Testing	249
Preservative Media	250
Mounting Thin Sections	255
Mounting in Canada Balsam	257
Mounting Objects in Cells	258
Labelling and Preserving of Objects	261
Collection of Objects	262

CHAPTER VI.

MICROSCOPIC FORMS OF VEGETABLE LIFE:—SIMPLER ALGÆ.

Protoplasm—Vegetable and Animal	266
Relation between Vegetable and Animal Kingdoms	267
Vegetable Cells in general	269
Protophytic Algæ	275
Conjugateæ	282
Volvocineæ	283
Palmellaceæ	291
Ulvaceæ	293
Oscillatoriaceæ	295
Nostochaceæ	297
Siphonaceæ	297
Confervaceæ	302
Œdogonieæ	305
Chætophoraceæ	307
Batrachospermeæ	307
Characeæ	308
DESMIDIACEÆ	312
Pediastreæ	322
DIATOMACEÆ	325

CHAPTER VII.

PROTOPHYTIC AND OTHER FUNGI.—LICHENS.

Fungi differentiated from Algæ	367
Schizomycetes	367
Fermentative Action	373
Parasitic Fungi	377
Myxomycetes	387
LICHENS	392

CHAPTER VIII.

MICROSCOPIC STRUCTURE OF HIGHER CRYPTOGAMIA.

Algæ	395
Hepaticæ	401
Mosses	405
Sphagnaceæ	410
Ferns	412
Equisetaceæ	418
Rhizocarpeæ	420
Lycopodiaceæ	420

CHAPTER IX.

MICROSCOPIC STRUCTURE OF PHANEROGAMIC PLANTS.

	PAGE
Distinctive peculiarities of Phanerogamia	422
Elementary Tissues	423
Structure of Stem and Root	440
Structure of Epidermis and Leaves	453
Structure of Flowers	460
Fertilization.—Seeds	464

CHAPTER X.

MICROSCOPIC FORMS OF ANIMAL LIFE:—PROTOZOA.

Protozoa	468
Monerozoa	469
Rhizopoda	475
Reticularia	477
Heliozoa	480
Lobosa	486
Coccoliths and Coccospheres	491
Gregarinida	494

CHAPTER XI.

ANIMALCULES:—INFUSORIA AND ROTIFERA.

INFUSORIA	496
Flagellata	498
Cilio-flagellata	511
Suctoria	513
Infusoria continued:—	
Ciliata	516
ROTIFERA	529
Tardigrada	541

CHAPTER XII.

FORAMINIFERA AND POLYCYSTINA.

FORAMINIFERA	543
Porcellanea	549
Arenacea	558
Vitrea	568
Eozoön Canadense	587
RADIOLARIA	595
Discida	598
Polycystina	599
Acanthometrina	600
Collozoa	600

CHAPTER XIII.

SPONGES AND ZOOPHYTES.

SPONGES	603
ZOOPHYTES	609
Hydrozoa	610
Production of Medusoids	614
Zoophytes continued:—	
Acalephæ	620
Actinozoa	623
Ctenophora	627

CHAPTER XIV.

ECHINODERMATA.

	PAGE		PAGE
Structure of Skeleton	630	Echinoderm-Larvæ	642

CHAPTER XV.

POLYZOA AND TUNICATA.

Polyzoa	650	Tunicata	657

CHAPTER XVI.

MOLLUSCOUS ANIMALS GENERALLY.

Structure of Shells	666	Ciliary motion on Gills	689
Palate of Gasteropods	678	Organs of Sense of Mollusks	690
Development of Mollusks	682	Chromatophores of Cephalopods	691

CHAPTER XVII.

ANNULOSA OR WORMS.

Entozoa	693	Annelida	698
Turbellaria	696	Development of Annelids	700

CHAPTER XVIII.

CRUSTACEA.

Pycnogonida	707	Cirrhipeda	717
Entomostraca	709	Malacostraca	719
Suctoria	716	Metamorphosis of Decapods	720

CHAPTER XIX.

INSECTS AND ARACHNIDA.

Number and variety of Objects afforded by Insects	722	Wings	750
Structure of Integument	724	Feet	752
Scales and Hairs	725	Stings and Ovipositors	755
Eyes	735	Eggs	756
Antennæ	738	Agamic Reproduction	757
Mouth	740	Embryonic Development	758
Circulation of the Blood	745	Acarida	759
Respiratory Apparatus	746	Parts of Spiders	761

CHAPTER XX.

VERTEBRATED ANIMALS.

	PAGE
Elementary Tissues	763
Cells and Fibres	765
Bone	767
Teeth	771
Scales of Fish	774
Hairs	777
Feathers	780
Hoofs, Horns, &c.	781
Blood	782
White and Yellow Fibres	787
Skin, Mucous and Serous Membranes	789
Epidermis	791
Pigment-Cells	791
Epithelium	792
Fat	794
Cartilage	795
Glands	796
Muscle	797
Nerve	801
Circulation of the Blood	804
Injected Preparations	810
Vessels of Respiratory Organs	817

CHAPTER XXI.

APPLICATION OF THE MICROSCOPE TO GEOLOGY.

Fossilized Wood, Coal	820
Fossil Foraminifera; Chalk	823
Organic materials of Limestones	828
Fossil Bones, Teeth, &c.	831
Inorganic materials of Rocks	833
Nachet's Mineralogical Microscope	836

CHAPTER XXII.

INORGANIC OR MINERAL KINGDOM.—POLARIZATION.

Mineral Objects	839
Crystallization of Salts	840
Molecular Coalescence	845
Organic Structures suitable for Polariscope	845
Micro-Chemistry	848

APPENDIX.

"Numerical Aperture" and "Angular Aperture"	850
Watson's New Model Microscopes	854
Swift's "Wale" Model Students' Microscope	856
Nachet's Objective-carrier	856

EXPLANATION OF THE PLATES.

FRONTISPIECE.

SEXUAL GENERATION OF VOLVOX GLOBATOR (after Cohn).

Fig. 1. Sphere of *Volvox globator*, at the epoch of sexual generation: *a*, sperm-cell, containing cluster of antherozoids; a^2, sperm-cell showing side-view of discoidal cluster of antherozoids; a^3, sperm-cell whose cluster has broken up into its component antherozoids; a^4, sperm-cell partly emptied by the escape of its antherozoids; *b b*, flask-shaped germ-cells, showing great increase in size without subdivision; b^2, b^2, germ-cells with large vacuoles in their interior; b^3, germ-cell whose shape has changed to the globular.

2. Sexual cell, *a*, distinguishable from sterile cells, *b*, by its larger size.
3. Germ-cell, with antheroids swarming over its endochrome.
4. Fertilized germ-cell, or oösphere, with dense envelope.
5. Sperm-cell, with its contained cluster of antherozoids, more enlarged.
6. Liberated antherozoids, with their flagella.

PLATE I. (face p. xv.).

VARIOUS FORMS OF DIATOMACEÆ.

Fig. 1. *Actinocyclus Ralfsii.*
2. *Asterolampra concinna.*
3. *Heliopelta* (as seen with black-ground illumination).
4. *Asteromphalus Brookeii.*
5. *Aulacodiscus Oreganus.*

PLATE II. (face p. 1).

ECHINUS-SPINE (Original), AND PODURA-SCALE (after R. Beck).

Fig. 1. Transverse section of Spine of *Echinometra heteropora.*

2. Markings on Scale of *Podura*, as seen by transmitted light under a well-corrected 1-8th inch Objective.

3. Partial obliteration of the markings by the insinuation of moisture between the Scale and the Covering-glass.

4. Appearance of the markings, when the Scale is illuminated from above by oblique light falling at right angles to them.

5. The same, when the light falls on the Scale in the direction of the markings.

PLATE III. (p. 78).

CROUCH'S STUDENTS' BINOCULAR.

PLATE IV. (p. 82).

BECK'S POPULAR MICROSCOPE.

PLATE V. (p. 89).

ROSS'S IMPROVED JACKSON-ZENTMAYER MICROSCOPE.

PLATE VI. (p. 91).

MESSRS. BECK'S LARGE MICROSCOPE.

PLATE VII. (p. 90).

POWELL AND LEALAND'S LARGE MICROSCOPE.

PLATE VIII. (p. 276).

DEVELOPMENT OF PALMOGLÆA AND PROTOCOCCUS (after Braun and Cohn).

Fig. 1, A—I. Successive stages of binary subdivision of *Palmoglœa;* K—M, successive stages of conjugation.

2, A—C. Binary subdivision of 'still' form of *Protococcus;* D—G, multiplication of 'motile' form; H—L, different phases of 'motile' condition.

PLATE IX. (p. 284).

DEVELOPMENT OF VOLVOX GLOBATOR (after Williamson).

Fig. 1. Young *Volvox; a,* primordial cell of secondary sphere; *b,* polygonal masses of endochrome, separated by hyaline substance.

2. The same more advanced; *a, a,* polygonal masses of endochrome; *b, b,* their connecting processes; *c,* primordial cell of secondary sphere.

3. The same more advanced, showing an increase in the size of the connecting processes, *a, a,* and duplicative subdivision of the primordial cell.

4. The same more advanced, showing the masses of endochrome more widely separated by the interposition of hyaline substance, and each furnished with a pair of flagella; whilst the primordial cell, *f,* has undergone a second segmentation.

5. Portion of the spherical wall of a mature *Volvox,* showing the wide separation of the endochrome-masses still connected by the processes *b, b*; the lines of areolation, *c,* dividing the hyaline substance; and the long flagella, *e.*

6, 7, 8. Secondary sphere, or macro-gonidium, developed by the progressive segmentation of the primordial cell.

9. Single cell from the wall of a mature *Volvox,* showing the endochrome mass, *b,* to contain two vacuoles *a, a,* and to be surrounded by a hyaline envelope, *d,* having polygonal borders.

10. Portion of the wall of a young *Volvox,* seen edgeways, showing that its sphere is still invested by the hyaline envelope of the original cell, which the flagella penetrate but do not pierce.

11. Two cells from a mature *Volvox,* seen edgeways, showing the enclosure of the endochrome-masses in their own hyaline investment, and the persistence of the general investment (pierced by the flagella) around the entire sphere.

PLATE X. (p. 304).

DEVELOPMENT AND REPRODUCTION OF SPHÆROPLEA ANNULINA (after Cohn).

Fig. 1. Oöspore, of a red colour, having its outer membrane furnished with stellate prolongations.

2, 3, 4. Successive stages of segmentation of the oöspore.

5. Fusiform flagellated zoöspores set free by the rupture of the coats of the oöspore.

6, 7, 8. Successive stages of development of zoöspore into a filament.

9. Immature filament, showing at *a* the annulation of the endochrome produced by the regular arrangement of vacuoles, and at *b*, the frothy appearance produced by the multiplication of vacuoles.

10. More advanced stage, showing at *a* the aggregation of the endochrome into definite masses, which become star-shaped as seen at *b*.

11. The star-shaped masses of endochrome, *a*, draw themselves together again and become ovoidal, as at *b*; definite openings, *c*, show themselves in the cell-wall.

12. Entrance of the antherozoids, *d*, through the openings *c*, *c*.

13. Formation of mature oöspores within the filament.

14. Contents of another filament, *a*, becoming converted into antherozoids, which move about at *b* within their containing cell, and escape (as seen at *d*) through the opening *c*.

15. Antherozoïds swimming freely by means of two flagella.

PLATE XI. (p. 351).

ARACHNOIDISCUS JAPONICUS (after R. Beck).

The specimens attached to the surface of a Sea-weed, are represented as seen under a 1-4th Objective, with Lieberkühn illumination:—A, internal surface; B, external surface; C, front view, showing incipient subdivision.

PLATE XII. (p. 370).

LIFE-HISTORY OF BACILLUS ANTHRACIS (after Ewart).

Fig. 1. Spores which have escaped from the filaments.

2. Division of spore into four sporules.

3. Sporules forming a zooglæa.

4, 5. Sporules developing into a rod, which at *a* divides into two segments.

6. A rod undergoing segmentation, and the segments showing flagella.

7. Rods with corpuscles (vacuoles or nuclei ?).

8. A newly-developed filament.

9. Filament in which the endoplasm has divided into somewhat long segments.

10. Further segmentation of a filament.

11. First appearance of spores as minute specks in the endoplasm near the ends of the segments.

12. Fully developed spores formed by contraction of the endoplasm.

13. Granular matters in spaces between spores, indicative of disintegration of filament.
14. Almost complete disappearance of filament.
15. Filament from which spores have escaped.
16. Filament broken into short segments, of which some still contain spores.
17. Filament still more disintegrated, with one of the spores, *a*, in process of division.
19. Rods forming a zooglæa.
20. Rod undergoing segmentation.
21. Rod lengthening into filament.
22. Filament containing spores becoming granular at one end, with transverse lines between spores.
23. Spore-bearing filaments forming rope-work.
24. Part of filament containing a spore in process of division.
25. Different stages of development of spore into rod.
26. Short filaments containing spores.

PLATE XIII. (p. 499).

LIFE-HISTORY OF FLAGELLATE INFUSORIUM (after Dallinger).

Fig. 1. Normal form, showing three flagella, *a*, *b*, *c*, and nucleus *d*.
2. Anterior flagellum, *a*, *b*, double; *c*, nucleus.
3. Fission commencing in nucleus *c*, and in anterior portion of body, *a*.
4. Fission more advanced, and showing itself also in posterior portion of body, *a*.
5. Fission still more advanced, both in nucleus, *a*, *b*, and in body.
6, 7, Fission proceeding to completion.
8. Change to amœboid condition, with single flagellum, and granular band *a*.
9. Conjugation of this with free-swimming form.
10, 11. Stages of progressive fusion, terminating in production of still sac, 12, which afterwards opens and pours out spores, as at 13, 14, the progressive growth of which is shown in figs. 15–21.

PLATE XIV. (p. 527).

SEXUAL (?) REPRODUCTION OF INFUSORIA (after Balbiani).

Fig. 1. Conjugation of *Paramceium aurelia:* *a*, ovarium (nucleus); *b*, seminal capsule (nucleolus); *c*, oviducal canal; *d*, seminal canal; *e*, buccal fissure.
2. The same, more advanced; *a*, ovary, showing lobulated surface; *b*, *b*, secondary seminal capsules.
3. One of the individuals in a still more advanced state of conjugation, showing the ovary *a*, *a*, broken up into fragments connected by the tube *m*; *b*, *b*, seminal capsules; *v*, contractile vesicle.
4. *Paramecium*, ten hours after the conclusion of the conjugation; *a*, *a*, unchanged granular masses of the ovary, of which other portions have been developed into the ova, *o*, *o*, still contained within the connecting tube *m*; *b*, *b*, seminal capsules.

5. The same, three days after the completion of the conjugation.
6–12. Successive stages in the development of the seminal capsules.
13–18. Successive stages in the development of the ovules.
19. *Acinetæ* in different stages, A, B, C.
20. *Paramecium* containing three *Acineta*-parasites, q, q, q', lying in introverted pouches, of which the external openings are seen at x, x.
21. *Stentor* in conjugation.

PLATE XV. (p. 544).

VARIOUS FORMS OF FORAMINIFERA (Original).

Fig. 1. *Cornuspira.*
2. *Spiroloculina.*
3. *Triloculina.*
4. *Biloculina.*
5. *Peneroplis.*
6. *Orbiculina* (cyclical form).
7. *Orbiculina* (young).
8. *Orbiculina* (spiral form).
9. *Lagena.*
10. *Nodosaria.*
Fig. 11. *Cristellaria.*
12. *Globigerina.*
13. *Polymorphina.*
14. *Textularia.*
15. *Discorbina*
16. *Polystomella.*
17. *Planorbulina.*
18. *Rotalia.*
19. *Nonionina.*

PLATE XVI. (p. 580).

VARIOUS FORMS OF FORAMINIFERA (Original).

Fig. 1. *Cycloclypeus*, showing external surface, and vertical and horizontal sections.

2. *Operculina*, laid open to show its internal structure :—a, marginal cord, seen in cross section at a'; b, b, external walls of the chambers; c, c, cavities of the chambers; c' c', their alar prolongations; d, d, septa, divided at d' d' and at d'', so as to lay open the interseptal canals, the general distribution of which is seen in the septa e, e: the lines radiating from e, e, point to the secondary pores; g. g, non-tubular columns.

3. *Calcarina*, laid open to show its internal structure :—a, chambered portion; b, intermediate skeleton; c, one of the radiating prolongations proceeding from it, with extensions of the canal-system.

PLATE XVII. (p. 589).

STRUCTURE OF EOZOÖN CANADENSE (Original).

Fig. 1. Portion of its calcareous Shell, as it would appear if the Serpentine that fills its chambers were dissolved away:—A^1, A^1, chambers of lower story, opening into each other at a, a, but occasionally separated by a septum b, b; A^2, A^2, chambers of upper story; B, B, proper walls of the chambers, formed of a finely-tubular or nummuline substance; C, C, intermediate skeleton, occasionally traversed by large stolon-passages, D, connecting the chambers of different stories, and penetrated by the arborescent systems of canals E, E, E.

2. Decalcified portion, showing the Serpentinous *internal cast* of the chambers, canals, and tubuli of the original; presenting an exact model of the animal substance which originally filled them.

PLATE XVIII. (p. 597).

VARIOUS FORMS OF POLYCYSTINA (after Ehrenberg).

Fig. 1. *Podocyrtis Schomburgkii.*
2. *Rhopalocanium ornatum.*
3. *Haliomma hystrix.*
4. *Pterocanium, with animal.*

PLATE XIX. (p. 600).

VARIOUS FORMS OF RADIOLARIA (after Haeckel).

Fig. 1. *Ethmosphæra siphonophora.*
2. *Actinomma inerme.*
3. *Acanthometra xiphicantha.*
4. *Arachnosphæra obligacantha.*
5. *Cladococcus viminalis.*

PLATE XX. (p. 617).

CAMPANULARIA GELATINOSA (after Van Beneden).

A, Upper part of the stem and branches, of the natural size.

B, Small portion enlarged, showing the structure of the animal; *a*, terminal branch bearing polypes; *b*, polype-bud partially developed; *c*, horny cell containing the expanded polype *d*; *e*, ovarian capsule, containing medusiform gemmæ in various stages of development; *f*, fleshy substance extending through the stem and branches, and connecting the different polype-cells and ovarian capsules; *g*, annular constrictions at the base of the branches.

PLATE XXI. (p. 648).

PENTACRINOID LARVA OF ANTEDON (Original).

Fig. 1. Skeleton of early Pentacrinoid, under Black-ground illumination, showing its component plates:—*b*, *b*, basals, articulated below to the highest point of the stem; r^1, r^1, first radials, between two of which is seen the single anal plate, *a*; r^2, second radials; r^3, third radials, giving off the bifurcating arms at their summit; *o*, *o*, orals.

2., 3. Back and front views of a more advanced Pentacrinoid, as seen by incident light, one of the pair of arms being cut away in Fig. 3, in order to bring the mouth and its surrounding parts into view:—*b*, *b*, basals; r^1, r^2, r^3, first, second, and third radials; *a*, anal, now carried upwards by the projection of the vent *v*; *o*, *o*, orals; *cir*, dorsal cirrhi, developed from the highest joint of the stem.

PLATE XXII. (p. 652).

STRUCTURE OF LAGUNCULA REPENS (after Van Beneden).

A, Polypide expanded; B, polypide retracted; C, another view of the same, with the visceral apparatus in outline, that the manner in which it is doubled on itself, with the tentacular crown and muscular system, may be more distinctly seen:—*a*, *a*, tentacula; *b*, pharynx; *c*, pharyngeal valve; *d*, œsophagus; *e*, stomach; *f*, its pyloric orifice; *g*, cilia on its inner surface; *h*, biliary follicles lodged in its wall; *i*, intestine; *k*, particles of excrementitious matter; *l*, anal orifice; *m*, testis; *n*, ovary; *o*, ova lying loose in the perivisceral cavity; *p*, outlet for their discharge; *q*, spermatozoa in the perivisceral cavity; *r*, *s*, *t*, *u*, *v*, *w*, *x*, muscles.

D, Portion of the Lophophore more enlarged:—*a*, *a*, tentacula; *b*, *b*, their internal canals; *c*, their muscles; *d*, lophophore; *e*, its retractor muscles.

PLATE XXIII. (p. 703).

STRUCTURE AND DEVELOPMENT OF TOMOPTERIS ONISCIFORMIS (Original).

A. Portion of caudal prolongations, containing the spermatic sacs, *a*, *a*.

B. Adult Male specimen.

C. Hinder part of adult Female specimen, more enlarged, showing ova lying freely in the perivisceral cavity and its caudal prolongation.

D. Ciliated canal, commencing externally in the larger and smaller rosette-like disks, *a*, *b*.

E. One of the pinnulated segments, showing the position of the ciliated canal, *c*, and its rosette-like disks, *a*, *b*; showing also the incipient development of the ova, *d*, at the extremity of the segment.

F. Cephalic Ganglion, with its pair of auditory (?) vesicles, *a*, *a*, and its two ocelli, *b*, *b*.

G. Very young *Tomopteris*, showing at *a*, *a* the larval antennæ; *b*, *b*, the incipient long antennæ of the adult; *c*, *d*, *e*, *f*, four pairs of succeeding pinnulated segments, followed by bifid tail.

PLATE XXIV. (p. 808).

CIRCULATION IN THE TADPOLE (after Whitney).

Fig. 1. Anterior portion of young Tadpole, showing the external gills, with the incipient tufts of the internal gills, and the pair of minute tubes between the heart and the spirally-coiled intestine, which are the rudiments of the future lungs.

2. More advanced Tadpole, in which the external gifts have almost disappeared:—*a*, remnant of external gills on the left side; *b*, operculum; *c*, remnant of external gill on the right side, turned in.

3. Advanced Tadpole, showing the course of the general Circulation:—*a*, heart; *b*, branchial arteries; *c*, pericardium; *d*, internal gill; *e*, first or cephalic trunk; *f*, branch to lip; *g*, branches to head; *h*, second or branchial trunk; *i*, third trunk, uniting with its fellow to form the abdominal aorta, which is continued as the caudal artery *k*, to the extremity of the tail;

l, caudal vein; *m*, kidney; *n*, vena cava; *o*, liver; *p*, vena portæ; *q*, sinus venosus, receiving the jugular vein, *r*, and the abdominal veins, *t*, *u*, as also the branchial vein, *v*.

4. The branchial Circulation on a larger scale:—A, B, C, three primary branches of the branchial artery; *a*, cartilaginous arches; *b*, additional framework; *c*, *e*, twigs of branchial artery; *d*, *f*, rootlets of branchial vein.

5. Origin of the vessels of the internal gills, *g*, from the roots of those of the external.

6. The heart, systemic arteries, pulmonary ateries and veins, and lungs, in the adult Frog; the heart being turned up in the right-hand figure, to show the junction of the pulmonary veins and their entrance into the left auricle.

PLATE XXV. (p. 314).

DISTRIBUTION OF CAPILLARY BLOOD-VESSELS AS SHOWN IN TRANSPARENT INJECTIONS (Original).

Fig. 1. Transverse section of Small Intestine of Rat, showing the villi *in situ*.

2. Section of the Toe of a Mouse:—*a*, *a*, *a*, tarsal bones; *b*, digital artery; *c*, vascular loops in the papillæ forming the thick epidermic cushion on the under surface; *d*, distribution of vessels in the matrix of the claw.

3. Distribution of Bloodvessels in the cortical layer of the Brain, showing the manner in which the arteries, carried-in by the pia mater, dip-down into the furrows of the convolutions.

LIST OF WOOD-CUT ILLUSTRATIONS.

		PAGE
1.	Diagram illustrating Refraction	2
2.	Refraction of Parallel rays by plano-convex lens	4
3.	Do. by double-convex lens	5
4.	Refraction of rays Diverging from extremity of diameter	6
5.	Refraction of rays Diverging from other points	6
6.	Refraction of Converging rays	7
7.	Formation of Images by convex lenses	8
8.	Spherical Aberration	9
9.	Chromatic Aberration	12
10.	Section of Achromatic Object-glass	14
11.	Optical action of Covering-glass	15
12.	——— of Simple Microscope	22
13.	——— of Simplest form of Compound Microscope	26
14.	——— of complete Compound Microscope	26
15.	——— of Huyghenian Eye-piece, after A. Ross	27
16.	Stereoscopic Pyramids	31
17.	Arrangement of Prisms in Nachet's Stereoscopic Binocular	33
18.	Nachet's Stereoscopic Binocular	34
19.	Wenham's Prism for Stereoscopic Binocular	35
20.	Sectional view of Wenham's Stereoscopic Binocular	35
21.	Exterior view of ditto	35
22.	Stephenson's Prisms for Stereoscopic Binocular	37
23.	Condenser for Stephenson's Binocular	37
24.	Diaphragm with double aperture for ditto	38
25.	Erecting Prism for Stephenson's Binocular	38
26.	Exterior of Stephenson's Erecting Binocular	39
27.	Arrangement of Prisms in Nachet's Stereo-Pseudoscopic Binocular	40
28.	Exterior of Nachet's Stereo-Peudoscopic Binocular	41
29.	Angle of Aperture suitable for Binocular Objectives	43
30.	Do. Do.	44
31.	Ross's Simple Microscope	52
32.	Quekett's Dissecting Microscope	53
33.	Siebert and Kraft's Dissecting Microscope	54
34.	Do. Do. as folded in case	55
35.	Laboratory Dissecting Microscope	56
36.	Beck's Dissecting Microscope, with Nachet's Binocular Magnifier	57
37.	Field's Dissecting and Mounting Microscope	60
38.	Crouch's Educational Microscope	64
39.	Parkes's Educational Microscope	65
40.	Bakers' Students' Microscope	70

PAGE
41. Collins's Students' Microscope 71
42. Pillischer's International Microscope 72
43. Ross's (Zentmayer) Students' Microscope 73
44. Wale's New Working Microscope 75
45. Nachet's Students' Microscope 76
46. Browning's Rotating Microscope. 78
47. Baker's Students' Erecting Binocular 79
48. Powell & Lealand's Smaller Microscope 81
49. Collins's Harley Binocular 83
50. Swift's Challenge Binocular 84
51. Browning's Smaller Stephenson Binocular 85
52. Ross's (Original) First-class Microscope 88
53. Beale's Demonstrating Microscope 93
54. Baker's Travelling Microscope 94
55. Swift's Portable Binocular 95
56. Nachet's Chemical Microscope 97
57. Powell and Lealand's (non-stereoscopic) Binocular Arrangement . 98
58. Wenham's ditto ditto 99
59. Draw-tube fitted with Erectors 102
60. Nachet's Erecting Eye-piece 103
61. Sorby-Browning's Micro-Spectroscope 105
62. Arrangement of Prisms in ditto 105
63. Bright-line Spectro-Micrometer 106
64. Solar Spectrum and Absorption-Spectrum 107
65. Spectroscopic Appearances of Blood 108
66. Jackson's Eye-piece Micrometer 110
67. Hartnack's ditto 111
68. Microscope arranged for Drawing 113
69. Chevalier's Camera Lucida 114
70. Nachet's Camera for Vertical Microscope 114
71. Swift's Improved Nose-piece 116
72. Collins's Graduating Diaphragm 120
73. Beck's Achromatic Condenser, with Diaphragm-plate . . . 120
74. Beck's new ditto, with eccentrically revolving front 121
75. Webster Condenser, fitted with Collins's Graduating Diaphragm . 122
76. Wenham's Disk Illuminator 123
77. Amici's Prism for Oblique Illumination 124
78. Parabolic Illuminator 126
79. Diagram of action of ditto 126
80. Wenham's Reflex Illuminator 128
81. Fittings of Polarizing and Analyzing Prisms 131
82. Darker's Selenites, as fitted by Messrs. Beck 132
83. Selenite Object-carrier 133
84. Blankley's Revolving Mica-Selenite Stage 133
85. Swift's Combination Sub-stage 134
86. Ordinary Condensing Lens 135
87. Bull's-Eye Condenser 136
88. Beck's Parabolic Speculum 137
89. Crouch's Adapter for ditto 138
90. Diagram of Lieberkühn 139
91. Vertical Illuminator 140
92. Stephenson's Safety-Stage 142
93. Stage-Forceps 142

		PAGE
94.	Beck's Disk-Holder	143
95.	Morris's Object-Holder	144
96.	Botterill's Growing-Slide	145
97.	Maddox's ditto	145
98.	Aquatic Box or Animalcule-Cage	146
99.	Botterill's Zoophyte-Trough	148
100.	Schiek's Compressor	149
101.	Ross's Improved Compressor	150
102.	Beck's Parallel-Plate Compressor	150
103.	Mode of fixing glasses of ditto	151
104.	Beck's Reversible-cell Compressor	151
105.	Dipping-Tubes	152
106.	Glass Syringe	152
107.	Forceps	153
108.	Bockett Lamp	156
109.	Chimney and Shade of Swift's Lamp	157
110.	Swift's Microscope Lamp	157
111.	Section of Adjusting Object-Glass	165
112.	Arrangement of Microscope for Transparent Objects	170
113.	Valve of *Pleurosigma formosum*, as illuminated from different azimuths; after Beck	174
114.	Arrangement of Microscope for Opaque Objects	176
115.	False hexagonal areolation of *Pleurosigma angulatum*	180
116.	Scale of *Gnat*, showing beaded markings; from Photograph by Dr. Woodward	185
117.	Experimental Illustrations of Prof. Abbe's Doctrine of Diffraction-images	189
118.	Valve of *Surirella gemma*, after Hartnack and Woodward	204
119.	Ross's Lever of Contact	210
120.	Ring-cells	215
121.	Plate-Glass Cells	217
122.	Sunk Cells	217
123.	Built-up Cells	218
124.	Wooden Slide for Opaque Objects	219
125.	Shadbolt's Turn-table	220
126.	Dunning's Turn-table	220
127.	Slider-Forceps	221
128.	Spring-Clip	222
129.	Spring-Press	222
130.	Smith's Mounting Instrument	222
131.	Spring-Scissors	224
132.	Curved Scissors for Section-cutting	225
133.	Simple Microtome	226
134.	Hailes's Microtome	228
135.	Rivet-Leiser Microtome	230
136.	Improved Object-carrier for do.	231
137.	Marsh's Section-Lifter	245
138.	Dropping Bottle	254
139.	Duplicative Subdivision of Cells, after Thomé	272
140.	Free Cell-formation, after Thomé	273
141.	Life-history of *Zygnema quininum*, after Kützing	283
142.	Formation of Amœboids in *Volvox*, after Hicks	291
143.	*Hæmatococcus sanguineus*, after Hassall	292

PAGE
144. Successive stages of development of *Ulva*, after Kützing . . 294
145. Formation of Zoöspores in *Ulva*, after Thuret 295
146. Structure of *Oscillatoria contexta*, after D'Alquen 296
147. Fragment of gelatinous frond of *Nostoc*, after Hassall . . . 297
148. Generation of *Vaucheria sessilis*, after Pringsheim . . . 299
149. Development of *Achlya prolifera*, after Unger 301
150. Cell-multiplication in *Conferva*, after Mohl 303
151. *Œdogonium ciliatum*, after Pringsheim; and *Chætophora elegans*, after Thuret 306
152. *Batrachospermum moniliforme* 308
153. Cyclosis in *Nitella flexilis*, after Slack 309
154. Generative Organs of *Chara fragilis*, after Thuret 311
155. Various species of *Staurastrum*, after Ralfs 313
156. Cyclosis in *Closterium lunula*, after Osborne 314
157. Binary subdivision of *Micrasterias*, after Lobb 317
158. Conjugation of *Cosmarium*, after Ralfs 319
159. Conjugation of *Closterium*, after Ralfs 320
160. Binary subdivision and Conjugation of *Didymoprium*, after Ralfs 321
161. Development of *Pediastrium*, after Braun 323
162. Various species of *Pediastrium*, after Ralfs 325
163. Portion of *Isthmia nervosa*, after Smith 330
164. *Triceratium favus*, after Smith 330
165. *Pleurosigma quadratum*, after Beck 332
166. Surface-markings of *Pleurosigma angulatum*, after Photograph by Günther 333
167. *Biddulphia pulchella*, after Smith 334
168. Conjugation of *Epithemia turgida*, after Thwaites 336
169. Self-Conjugation (?) of *Melosira Italica*, after Thwaites . . 338
170. *Bacillaria paradoxa*, after Smith 341
171. *Meridion circulare*, after Smith 341
172. *Licmophora flabellata*, after Smith 342
173. *Diatoma vulgare*, after Smith 343
174. *Grammatophora serpentina*, after Smith 343
175. *Surirella constricta*, after Smith 344
176. *Campylodiscus costatus*, after Smith 345
177. *Melosira subflexilis*, after Smith 347
178. *Melosira varians*, after Smith 347
179. Structure of Valve of *Coscinodiscus oculus Iridis*, after Stephenson 348
180. *Actinoptychus undulatus*, after Smith 350
181. *Isthmia nervosa*, after Smith 352
182. *Chætoceros Wighamii*, after P. West 354
183. *Bacteriastrum furcatum*, after P. West 354
184. *Rhizosolenia imbricata*, after Brightwell 355
185. *Achnanthes longipes*, after Smith 355
186. *Gomphonema geminatum*, after Smith 355
187. Separate frustules of ditto, after Smith 356
188. *Schizonema Grevillii*, after Smith 358
189. *Mastogloia Smithii*, after Smith 359
190. *Mastogloia lanceolata*, after Smith 359
191. Fossil *Diatomaceæ* from Oran, after Ehrenberg 362
192. Fossil *Diatomaceæ*, from Mourne Mountains, after Ehrenberg . 363
193. *Bacterium termo*, and *Bacterium lineola*, after Dallinger . . 369
194. *Bacillus subtilis* and *Bacillus ulna*, after Dallinger . . . 370

		PAGE
195.	Matted rods of *Bacillus anthracis*, after Ewart	370
196.	*Vibrio rugula*, after Dallinger	371
197.	*Spirillum undula* and *Spirillum volutans*, after Dallinger	372
198.	*Torula cerevisiæ*, after Mandl	376
199.	*Sarcina ventriculi*, after Robin	377
200.	*Botrytis bassiana*, after Robin	378
201.	*Enterobryus spiralis*, after Leidy	380
202.	*Enterobryus attenuatus*, after Leidy	381
203.	Shell of *Anomia* penetrated by parasitic Fungus	382
204.	*Stysanus caput-Medusæ*, after Payer	382
205.	*Puccinia graminis*, after Payer	385
206.	*Œcidium tussilaginis*, after Thuret	387
207.	*Clavaria crispula*, after Thuret	387
208.	Development of *Myxomycetes* after Greville and Cienkowski	388
209.	*Chlamydomyxis labyrinthuloides*, after Archer	391
210.	*Sphacelaria cirrhosa* (original), with antheridium of *S. tribuloides* after Pringsheim	396
211.	Receptacle of *Fucus*, after Thuret	397
212.	Antheridia and Antherozoids of *Fucus*, after Thuret	398
213.	Tetraspores of *Carpocaulon*, after Kützing	400
214.	Fructification of *Marchantia*, after Payer	401
215.	Stomata of *Marchantia*, after Mirbel	402
216.	Conceptacles of *Marchantia*, after Mirbel	403
217.	Archegonia of *Marchantia*, after Payer	404
218.	Elater and Spores of *Marchantia*, after Payer	405
219.	Structure of *Mosses*, after Jussieu	406
220.	Antheridia and Antherozoids of *Polytrichum*, after Thuret	407
221.	Mouth of Capsule of *Funaria*	409
222.	Peristome of *Fontinalis*, after Payer	409
223.	Ditto of *Bryum*, ditto	409
224.	Ditto of *Cinclidium*, ditto	409
225.	Portion of Leaf of *Sphagnum*	411
226.	Section of Petiole of *Fern*	412
227.	Sori of *Polypodium*, after Payer	413
228.	Ditto of *Hæmionitis*, ditto	413
229.	Sorus and Indusium of *Aspidium*	413
230.	Ditto of *Deparia*, after Payer	413
231.	Development of Prothallium of *Pteris*, after Suminski	415
232.	Antheridia and antherozoids of *Pteris*, after Suminski	416
233.	Archegonium of *Pteris*, after Suminski	416
234.	Spores of *Equisetum*, after Payer	419
235.	Section of leaf of *Agave*, after Hartig	424
236.	Section of *Aralia* (rice paper)	425
237.	Stellate Parenchyma of *Rush*	426
238.	Cubical Parenchyma of *Nuphar*	426
239.	Development of leaf-cells of *Anacharis*, after Wenham	427
240.	Circulation in hairs of *Tradescantia*, after Slack	430
241.	Testa of *Star-Anise*	431
242.	Section of *Cherry-stone*	432
243.	Section of *Coquilla-nut*	432
244.	Spiral cells of *Oncidium*	433
245.	Spiral fibres of *Collomia*	433
246.	Cells of *Pæony* filled with Starch	434

		PAGE
247.	Starch-grains under polarized light	434
248.	Glandular fibres of *Coniferous* Wood	437
249.	Vascular tissue of *Italian Reed*, after Schleiden	439
250.	Transverse section of Stem of *Palm*	441
251.	Ditto ditto *Wanghie Cane*	442
252.	Diagram of formation of Exogenous Stem	443
253.	Transverse Section of Stem of *Clematis*	443
254.	Ditto ditto *Rhamnus*	444
255.	Portion of the same, more highly magnified	444
256.	Transverse section of *Hazel*	445
257.	Portion of Transverse section of Stem of *Cedar*	446
258.	Transverse section of *Fossil Conifer*	446
259.	Vertical section of *Fossil Conifer*, radial	447
260.	Ditto ditto tangential	447
261.	Ditto of *Mahogany*	447
262.	Transverse section of *Fossil Wood*	448
263.	Vertical section of the same	448
264.	Transverse section of *Fossil Wood*	448
265.	Vertical section of the same	448
266.	Transverse section of *Aristolochia* (?)	450
267.	Ditto of *Burdock*	451
268.	Epidermis of *Yucca*	453
269.	Ditto of *Indian Corn*	453
270.	Ditto of *Apple*, after Brongniart	454
271.	Ditto of *Rochea* Ditto	455
272.	Vertical Section of Leaf of *Rochea*, after Brongniart	455
273.	Epidermis of *Iris* ditto	457
274.	Vertical Section of Leaf of *Iris* ditto	458
275.	Longitudinal Section of ditto ditto	459
276.	Epidermis of Petal of *Geranium*	460
277.	Pollen-grains of *Althæa*, &c.	463
278.	Seeds of *Poppy*, &c.	465
279.	*Protomyxa aurantiaca*, after Haeckel	470
280.	*Vampyrella spirogyra*, after Cienkowski	471
281.	*Vampyrella gomphonematis*, after Haeckel	473
282.	*Lieberkühnia Wageneri*, after Claparède	474
283.	*Gromia oviformis*, after Schulze	478
284.	*Microgromia socialis*, after Hertwig	479
285.	*Actinophrys sol*, after Claparède	481
286.	*Actinosphærium Eichornii*, after Hertwig and Lesser	483
287.	Marginal portion of ditto, enlarged, after ditto	484
288.	*Clathrulina elegans*, after Greef	485
289.	*Amœba proteus*, after Carter	486
290.	*Pelomyxa palustris*, after Greef	489
291.	Various forms of *Amœbina*, after Ehrenberg	490
292.	*Quadrula symmetrica*, after F. E. Schulze	491
293.	Coccoliths and Coccospheres, after Huxley	493
294.	*Gregarina*, from Earthworm, after Lieberkühn	495
295.	Single zooid of *Codosiga umbellata*, after Kent	505
296.	Colony-stock of ditto, after Kent	506
297.	*Noctiluca miliaris*, after Allman	507
298.	Protoplasmic reticulation of ditto, after Vignal	508
299.	Digestive vesicles of ditto, after Vignal	509

		PAGE
300.	*Peridinium uberrimum*, after Allman	511
301.	*Ceratium tripos*, after Claparède.	512
302.	*Podophrya quadripartita*, and *P. elongata*, after Claparède	514
303.	Young of *Podophrya quadripartita*, after Badcock	515
304.	*Kerona silurus*, and *Paramecium caudatum*, after Milne-Edwards	517
305.	Group of *Vorticellæ*, after Ehrenberg	518
306.	Fissiparous Multiplication of *Chilodon*, after Ehrenberg	522
307.	Encysting process in *Vorticella*, after Stein	523
308.	Metamorphosis of *Trichoda*, after Haime	525
309.	*Brachionus pala*, after Milne-Edwards	530
310.	*Rotifer vulgaris*, after Ehrenberg	531
311.	Manducatory apparatus of *Euchlanis deflexa*, after Gosse	533
312.	*Stephanoceros Eichornii*, after Cubitt	538
313.	*Noteus quadricornis*, after Ehrenberg	541
314.	*Rotalia ornata*, after Schultze	546
315.	*Alveolina Quoii*	552
316.	Disk of Simple type of *Orbitolites*	553
317.	Animal of ditto	555
318.	Reparation of Disk of *Orbitolite*	556
319.	Portion of Animal of Complex type of *Orbitolites*	557
319.*	*Saccamina spherica* and *Pilulina Jeffreysii*	560
320.	Globigerine, Orbuline, and Nodosarine *Lituolida; Marsipella*	561
321.	*Reophax*, *Rhabdammina*, and *Hormosina*	563
322.	*Cyclammina cancellata*, with internal structure	564
323.	General view of *Parkeria*	566
324.	Portion of *Parkeria*, more highly magnified	567
325.	*Globigerina bulloides*, after D'Orbigny	569
326.	Secondary thickening of *Globigerina*-shell, after Wallich	570
327.	*Globigerina* captured in tow-net, after Wyville Thompson	571
328.	Internal casts of *Textularia* and *Rotalia*, after Ehrenberg	573
329.	*Tinoporus baculatus*	574
330.	Section of *Rotalia Schroetteriana*, after Williamson	575
331.	*Fusulina*-limestone	576
332.	Internal cast of *Polystomella*	578
333.	Section of piece of Nummulitic limestone	581
334.	Vertical Section of *Nummulina*	582
335.	Portion of ditto, more highly magnified	582
336.	Horizontal Section of *Nummulina*	583
337.	Internal cast of *Nummulina*	584
338.	*Heterostegina*	584
339.	Section of *Orbitoides Fortisii* parallel to its surface	585
340.	Portions of ditto, more highly magnified	586
341.	Vertical Section of *Orbitoides Fortisii*	586
342.	Internal cast of *Orbitoides Fortisii*	586
343.	Vertical Section of Eozoic Limestone	587
344.	Vertical Section of calcareous Shell of *Eozoön Canadense*	590
345.	*Polycystina*, from Barbadoes, after Ehrenberg	596
346.	Varietal modifications of *Astromma*	598
347.	*Perichlamydium prætextum*, after Ehrenberg	599
348.	*Stylodyctya gracilis* ditto	599
349.	*Haliomma Humboldtii* ditto	600
350.	*Sphærozoum ovodimare*	601
351.	Diagrammatic Section of *Spongilla*	604

		PAGE
352.	Portion of *Halichondria*, and Structure of *Grantia*	606
353.	Siliceous spicules of *Pachymatisma*	607
354.	*Hydra fusca*, after Milne-Edwards	611
355.	Ditto, in gemmation, after Trembley	613
356.	Medusa-buds of *Syncoryne*, after Sars	616
357.	*Sertularia cupressina*, after Johnston	618
358.	*Thaumantias pilosella*, after E. Forbes	619
359.	Development of *Medusa-buds*, after Dalyell	621
360.	Development of *Medusæ*, after Dalyell	622
361.	Filiferous capsules of *Actinia*, &c., after Gosse	625
362.	Spicules of *Alcyonium* and *Gorgonia*	626
363.	Spicules of *Gorgonia guttata* and *Muricea elongata*	626
364.	*Cydippe pileus*, after Milne-Edwards	628
365.	*Beroë Forskalii*	628
366.	Section of Shell of *Echinus*	631
367.	Calcareous reticulation of Spine of *Echinus*	631
368.	Ambulacral Disk of *Echinus*	632
369.	Transverse Section of Spine of *Acrocladia*	633
370.	Spines of *Spatangus*	634
371.	Structure of Tooth of *Echinus*, after Salter	636
372.	Calcareous skeleton of *Astrophyton*	637
373.	Calcareous skeleton of *Holothuria*	640
374.	Ditto of *Synapta*	641
375.	Ditto of *Chirodota*	641
376.	Bipinnarian larva of *Star-fish*, after Müller	643
377.	Pluteus-larva of *Echinus*, after Müller	645
378.	*Antedon rosaceus* (*Comatula rosacea*)	647
379.	Pentacrinoid larva of *Antedon*, after Thomson	648
380.	Cells of *Lepraliæ*, after Johnston	651
381.	Bird's-head processes of *Cellularia* and *Bugula*, after Johnston and Busk	656
382.	*Amoroucinm proliferum*, after Milne-Edwards	659
383.	*Botryllus violaceus*, ditto	661
384.	*Perophora*, after Lister	662
385.	Transverse Section of Shell of *Pinna*	667
386.	Membranous basis of ditto	667
387.	Vertical Section of ditto	668
388.	Oblique Section of Shell of *Pinna*	668
389.	Nacre of *Avicula*	670
390.	Section of hinge-tooth of *Mya*	672
391.	Vertical Section of Shell of *Unio*	673
392.	Internal and external surfaces of Shell of *Terebratula*	674
393.	Vertical Sections of ditto ditto	674
394.	Horizontal Section of Shell of *Terebratula bullata*	675
395.	Ditto ditto of *Megerlia lima*	675
396.	Ditto ditto of *Spiriferina rostrata*	675
397.	Palate of *Helix hortensis*	678
398.	Ditto of *Zonites cellarius*	679
399.	Ditto of *Trochus zizyphinus*	679
400.	Ditto of *Doris tuberculata*	680
401.	Ditto of *Buccinum*, under Polarized light	681
402.	Parasitic Larvæ (*Glochidium*) of *Anodon*, after Houghton	682
403.	Embryonic development of *Doris*, after Reid	684

PAGE

404. Embryonic development of *Purpura* 686
405. Later stages of the same 687
406. Structure of *Polycelis*, after Quatrefages 697
407. Circulation of *Terebella*, after Milne-Edwards 699
408. *Actinotrocha branchiata*, after Wagener 701
409. Development of *Nemertes* from *Pilidium*, after Krohn . . . 702
410. *Ammothea pycnogonoides*, after Quatrefages 708
411. *Cyclops quadricornis*, after Baird 711
412. Development of *Balanus*, after Bate 718
413. Metamorphosis of *Carcinus*, after Couch 720
414. Scale of *Morpho Menelaus* 726
415. Scales of *Polyommatus argus*, after Royston-Pigott . . . 727
416. Battledoor Scale of *Polyommatus argus*, after Quekett . . 727
417. Scale of *Lepisma saccharina*, after Beck 729
418. Scale of *Machilis polypoda*, after Beck 730
419. Scale of *Lepidocyrtus curvicollis* (test) 731
420. Scale of *Lepidocyrtus curvicollis* (ordinary), after Beck . . 731
421. Portion of *Podura*-scale, from Photograph by Woodward . . 733
422. Hairs of *Myriapod* and *Dermestes* 734
423. Head and Eyes of *Bee* 735
424. Section of Eye of *Melolontha*, after Strauss-Durckheim . . 736
425. Minute Structure of Eye of *Bee* 736
426. Antenna of *Cockchafer* 739
427. Portions of ditto more highly magnified 740
428. Tongue of *Fly* 741
429. Tongue, &c., of *Honey Bee* 742
430. Proboscis of *Vanessa* 744
431. Tracheal system of *Nepa*, after Milne-Edwards 747
432. Trachea of *Dytiscus* 748
433. Spiracle of *Fly* 748
434. Spiracle of Larva of *Cockchafer* 749
435. Foot of *Fly*, after Hepworth 753
436. Foot of *Dytiscus* 754
437. Eggs of Insects, after Burmeister 757
438. Foot, with combs, of *Spider* 761
439. Ordinary and glutinous threads of *Spider* 762
440. Minute structure of Bone, after Wilson 768
441. Lacunæ of ditto, highly magnified, after Mandl 769
442. Section of bony Scale of *Lepidosteus* 769
443. Vertical section of Tooth of *Lamna*, after Owen 771
444. Transverse Ditto of *Pristis* ditto 771
445. Ditto Ditto of *Myliobates* 772
446. Vertical section of Human Tooth, after Mandl 773
447. Portion of Skin of *Sole* 774
448. Scale of *Sole* 775
449. Hair of *Sable* 778
450. Hair of *Musk-deer* 778
451. Hair of *Squirrel* and *Indian Bat* 778
452. Transverse section of Hair of *Pecari* 779
453. Structure of *Human Hair*, after Wilson 779
454. Transverse section of Horn of *Rhinoceros* 781
455. Blood-corpuscles of *Frog*, after Donné 783
456. Ditto of *Man* ditto 783

		PAGE
457.	Comparative sizes of Red Blood-corpuscles, after Gulliver	785
458.	Altered White corpuscle of Human Blood, after Beale	786
459.	Fibrous Membrane of Egg-shell	787
460.	White Fibrous Tissue	787
461.	Portion of young Tendon, showing Connective-tissue-corpuscles, after Beale	788
462.	Yellow Fibrous Tissue	788
463.	Vertical Section of Skin of Finger, after Ecker	790
464.	Pigment-cells of Choroid, after Henle	791
465.	Pigment-cells of *Tadpole*, after Schwann	792
466.	Epithelium-cells, from Mucous Membrane of Mouth, after Lebert	793
467.	Ciliated Epithelium, after Mandl	793
468.	Areolar and Adipose Tissue, after Mandl	794
469.	Cartilage of Ear of *Mouse*	795
470.	Cartilage of *Tadpole*, after Schwann	795
471.	Follicles of Mammary Gland, with Secreting Cells, after Lebert	797
472.	Fasciculus of Striated Muscular Fibre, after Mandl	798
473.	Fibrillæ of Striated Muscular Fibre of *Terebratula*	799
474.	Fusiform Cells of Non-striated Muscular Fibre, after Kölliker	800
475.	Nerve-cells and Nerve-fibres, after Ecker	801
476.	Gelatinous Nerve-fibres, from Olfactory nerve	802
477.	Distribution of Tactile Nerves in Skin, after Ecker	803
478.	Capillary Circulation in web of *Frog's* foot, after Wagner	806
479.	Villi of Small Intestine of *Monkey*	814
480.	Capillary network around Fat-cells	816
481.	Capillary network of Muscle	816
482.	Distribution of Capillaries in Mucous Membrane	816
483.	Distribution of Capillaries in Skin of Finger	816
484.	Portion of Gill of *Eel*	817
485.	Interior of Lung of *Frog*	818
486.	Section of Lung of *Fowl*	818
487.	Section of *Human* Lung	819
488.	Microscopic organisms in Levant Mud, after Williamson	824
489.	Ditto ditto in Chalk, after Ehrenberg	826
490.	Ditto ditto ditto ditto	827
491.	Eye of *Trilobite*, after Buckland	830
492.	Section of Tooth of *Labyrinthodon*, after Owen	831
493.	Nachet's Small Mineralogical Microscope	836
494.	Ditto Large Ditto	838
495.	Crystallized Silver	840
496.	Radiating Crystallization of Santonine, after Davies	841
497.	Radiating Crystallization of Sulphate of Copper and Magnesia, after Davies	842
498.	Spiral Crystallization of Sulphate of Copper, after R. Thomas	843
499.	Artificial Concretions of Carbonate of Lime, after Rainey	846
500.	Diagram illustrating Angular Aperture	851
501.	Watson's New Model Microscope	855
502.	Nachet's Objective-carrier	857

THE MICROSCOPE.

CHAPTER I.

OPTICAL PRINCIPLES OF THE MICROSCOPE.

1. *Laws of Refraction:—Spherical and Chromatic Aberration.*

1. ALL Microscopes in ordinary use, whether *Simple* or *Compound*, depend for their magnifying power on that influence exerted by Lenses, in altering the course of the rays of light passing through them, which is termed *Refraction*. This influence takes place in accordance with the two following laws, which are fully explained and illustrated in every elementary treatise on Optics :—

I. A ray of light passing from a rarer into a denser medium, is refracted *towards* a line drawn perpendicularly to the plane which divides them; and *vice versâ*.

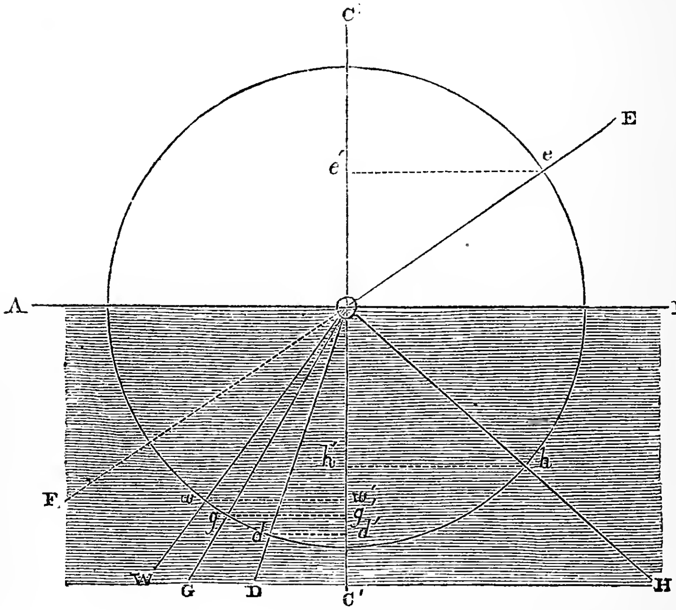
II. The *sines* of the angles of *incidence* and *refraction* (that is, of the angles which the ray makes with the perpendicular *before* and *after* its refraction) bear to one another a constant ratio for each substance, which is known as its *index of refraction*.

Thus the ray E O (Fig. 1) passing from Air into Water, will not go-on to F, but will be refracted towards the line C C′ drawn perpendicularly to the surface A B of the water, so as to take the direction O W. If it pass into Glass, it will undergo a greater refraction, so as to take the direction O G. And if it pass into Diamond, the change in its course will be so much greater, that it will take the direction O D. The angle E O C is termed the 'angle of incidence;' whilst the angles W O C′, G O C′, and D O C′ are the 'angles of refraction.' And whether the angle of incidence be large or small, its sine $e\ e'$ bears a constant ratio in each case to the sine $w\ w'$ or $g\ g'$ or $d\ d'$, of the angle of refraction; and this ratio is what is termed the 'index of refraction.'

The 'index of refraction' is determined for different media, by the amount of the refractive influence which they exert upon rays passing into them, not from air, but from a vacuum; and in expressing it, the sine of the angle of refraction is considered as the *unit*, to which that of the angle of incidence bears a fixed relation. Thus when we say that the 'index of refraction' of Water is 1·336,

we mean that the sine *e e'* of the angle of incidence E O C of a ray passing into water from a vacuum, is to the sine *w w'* of the angle of refraction W O C', as 1·336 to 1, or almost exactly as $1\frac{1}{3}$ to 1, or as 4 to 3. So, again, the index of refraction for (flint) Glass, being about 1·6, we mean that the sine *e e'* of the angle of incidence of a ray E O C passing into Glass from a vacuum, is to the sine of *g g'*

FIG. 1.



the angle of refraction G O C', as 1·6 to 1, or as 8 to 5. So in the case of Diamond, the sine *e e'* is to the sine *d d'* as 2·439 to 1, or almost exactly as $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 1, or as 5 to 2. Thus, the angle of incidence being given, the angle of refraction may be always found by *dividing* the sine of the former by the 'index of refraction,' which will give the sine of the latter. In accordance with these laws, a ray of light passing from one medium to another *perpendicularly* to the surface which divides them, undergoes no refraction; and of several rays entering at different angles, those nearer the perpendicular are refracted less than those more inclined to the refracting surface.—When a pencil of rays, however, impinges on the surface of a denser medium (as when rays passing through Air fall upon Water or Glass), some of the incident rays are reflected from that surface, instead of entering it and undergoing refraction; and the proportion of these rays increases with the *increase* of their obliquity. Hence there is a *loss of light* in every case in which pencils of rays are made to pass through lenses or prisms: and this diminution in the brightness of the image formed by refraction will bear a proportion, on the one hand, to the number of surfaces through

which the rays have had to pass; and on the other, to the degree of obliquity of the incident rays, and to the difference of the refractive powers of the two media. Hence, in the passage of a pencil of rays out of Glass into Air, and then from Air into Glass again, the loss of light is much greater than it is when some medium of higher refractive power than air is interposed between the two glass surfaces; and advantage is taken of this principle in the construction of Achromatic objectives for the Microscope, the component lenses of each pair or triplet (§ 14) being cemented together by Canada Balsam; as also in the interposition of Water or some other liquid between the covering-glass of the object and the front lens of the objective, in the 'immersion lenses' now coming into general use (§ 19). On the other hand, advantage is taken of the partial reflection of rays passing from air into glass at an oblique angle to the surface of the latter, in the construction of the ingenious (non-stereoscopic) Binoculars of Messrs. Powell and Lealand and of Mr. Wenham (§ 81).

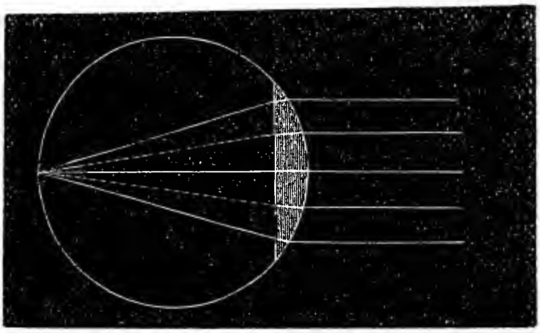
2. When, on the other hand, a ray, W O, emerges from a dense medium into a rare one, instead of following the straight course, it is bent *from* the perpendicular according to the same ratio; and to find the course of the emergent ray, the sine of the angle of incidence must be *multiplied* by the 'index of refraction,' which will give the sine of the angle of refraction. And thus, when an emergent ray falls very obliquely upon the surface of the denser medium, the refraction which it would sustain in passing forth into the rarer medium, tending as it does to deflect it still farther from the perpendicular, becomes so great that the ray cannot pass out at all, and is reflected back from the plane which separates the two media, into the one from which it was emerging. This *internal reflection* will take place whenever the product of the sine of the angle of incidence, multiplied by the index of refraction, exceeds the sine of 90°, which is the radius of the circle; and therefore the 'limiting angle,' beyond which an oblique ray suffers internal reflection, varies for different substances in proportion to their respective indices of refraction. Thus, the index of refraction of Water being 1·336, no ray can pass out of it into a vacuum,* if its angle of incidence exceed 48° 28′, since the sine $h\ h'$ of that angle, H O C′, multiplied by 1·336 equals the radius; and, in like manner, the 'limiting angle' for Flint-glass, its index of refraction being 1·60, is 38° 41′.—This fact imposes certain limits upon the performance of microscopic Lenses, since of the rays which would otherwise pass out from glass into air, all the more oblique are

* The reader may easily make evident to himself the internal reflection of Water, by nearly filling a wine-glass with water, and holding it at a higher level than his eye, so that he sees the surface of the fluid obliquely from beneath:—no object held above the water will then be visible through it, if the eye be placed beyond the limiting angle; whilst the surface itself will appear as if silvered, through its reflecting back to the eye the light which falls upon it from beneath.

kept back; whilst, on the other hand, it enables the Optician to make most advantageous use of glass Prisms for the purpose of *reflection*, the proportion of the light which they throw back being much larger than that returned from the best polished metallic surfaces, and the brilliancy of the reflected image being consequently greater. Such prisms are of great value to the Microscopist for particular purposes, as will hereafter appear. (§§ 33–38.)

3. The Lenses employed in the construction of Microscopes are chiefly *convex;* those of the opposite kind, or *concave*, being only used to make certain modifications in the course of the rays passing through convex lenses, whereby their performance is rendered more exact (§§ 11, 13).—It is easily shown to be in accordance with the laws of refraction already cited, that when a bundle of parallel rays, passing through air, impinges upon a spherical surface of glass, these rays will be made to converge. For the perpendicular to every point of that surface is the radius drawn from the centre of the sphere to that point, and prolonged through it; so that, whilst any ray which coincides with the radial perpendicular will go on without change in its course towards the centre of the sphere; every ray which falls upon the spherical surface at an inclination to its prolonged radius, undergoes refraction in a degree proportionate (as already explained) to that inclination. And the effect upon the whole bundle will be such, that its rays will be caused to meet at a point, called the *focus*, some distance beyond the centre of curvature.—This effect will be somewhat modified by the passage of the rays into air again through a *plane* surface of glass, perpendicular to the axial ray (Fig. 2); and a lens of this descrip-

Fig. 2.

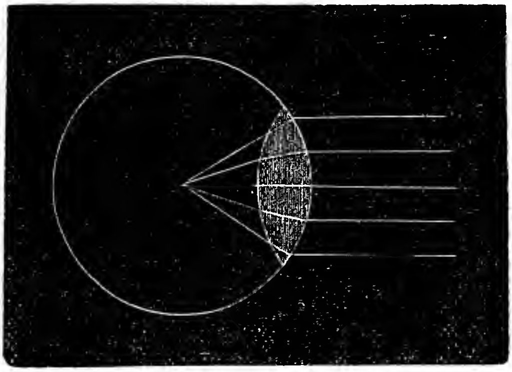


Parallel rays, falling on a *plano-convex* lens of glass, brought to a focus at the distance of the diameter of its sphere of curvature; and conversely, rays diverging from that point, rendered parallel.

tion, called a *plano-convex* lens, will hereafter be shown to possess properties which render it very useful in the construction of Microscopes.—But if, instead of passing through a plane surface, the rays re-enter the air through a second *convex* surface, turned in the

opposite direction, as in a *double-convex* lens, they will be made to converge still more. This will be readily comprehended, when it is borne in mind that the contrary direction of the second surface, and the contrary direction of its refraction (this being *from* the denser medium, instead of *into* it), antagonize each other; so that the second convex surface exerts an influence on the course of the rays passing through it, which is almost exactly equivalent to that of the first. Hence the focus of a *double*-convex lens will be at just half the distance, or (as commonly expressed) will be half the length, of the focus of a *plano*-convex lens having the same curvature on one side (Fig. 3).

Fig. 3.



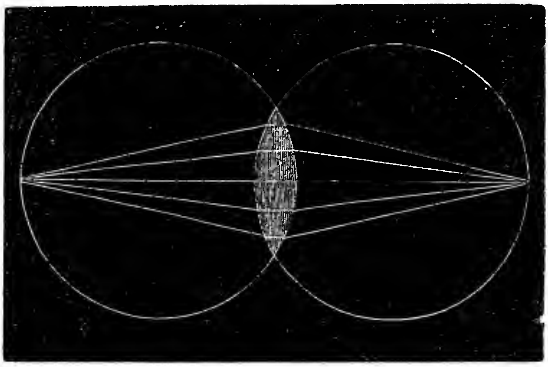
Parallel rays, falling on a *double-convex* lens, brought to a focus in the centre of its sphere of curvature; conversely, rays diverging from that point rendered parallel.

4. The distance of the Focus from the spherical surface will depend not merely upon its degree of curvature, but also upon the refracting power of the substance of which it may be formed; since the *lower* the index of refraction, the *less* will the oblique rays be deflected towards the axial ray, and the *more remote* will be their point of meeting; and conversely, the *greater* the refractive index, the *more* will the oblique rays be deflected towards the axial ray, and the *nearer* will be their point of convergence. A lens made of any substance whose index of refraction is 1·5, will bring parallel rays to a focus at the distance of its *diameter* of curvature, after they have passed through *one* convex surface (Fig. 2), and at the distance of its *radius* of curvature, after they have passed through *two* convex surfaces (Fig. 3); and as this ratio almost exactly expresses the refractive power of ordinary crown or plate Glass, we may for all practical purposes consider the 'principal focus' (as the focus for parallel rays is termed) of a *double*-convex lens to be at the distance of its radius, that is, in the centre of curvature, and that of a *plano*-convex lens to be at the distance of twice its radius, that is, at the other end of the diameter of its sphere of curvature.

5. It is evident from what has preceded, that as a Double-convex

lens brings parallel rays to a focus in its centre of curvature, it will on the other hand cause those rays which are diverging from that centre before they impinge upon it, to assume a parallel direction (Fig. 3); so that, if a luminous body be placed in the principal focus of a double-convex lens, its divergent rays, falling on one surface of the lens as a *cone*, will pass forth from its other side as a *cylinder*. If, however, the rays which fall upon a double-convex lens be diverging from the farther extremity of the diameter of its sphere of curvature, they will be brought to a focus at an equal distance on the other side of the lens (Fig. 4); but the more the point of divergence is approximated to the centre or principal focus,

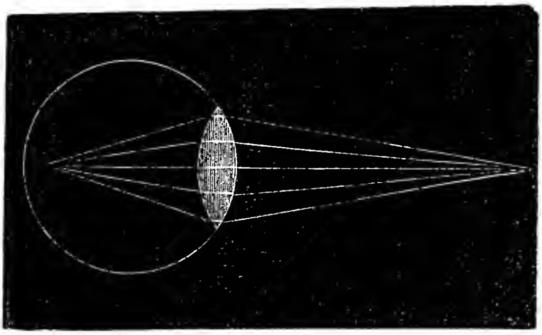
Fig. 4.



Rays diverging from the farther extremity of one diameter of curvature of a *double-convex* lens, brought to a focus at the same distance on the other side.

the farther removed from the other side will be the point of convergence (Fig. 5), until, the point of divergence being *at* the centre,

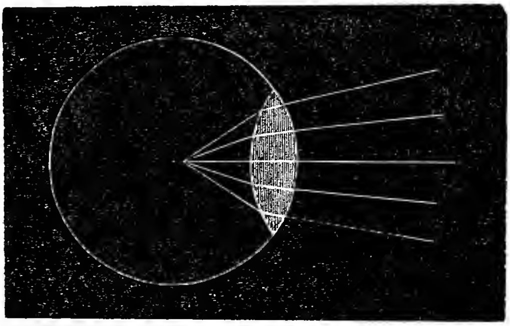
Fig. 5.



Rays diverging from points more distant than the principal focus of a *double-convex* lens on either side, brought to a focus beyond it; the focus of convergence being within the diameter of curvature, if the focus of divergence be beyond it; and *vice versâ*.

there is no convergence at all, the rays being merely rendered parallel (Fig. 3); whilst if the point of divergence be *beyond* the diameter of the sphere of curvature, the point of convergence will be within it (Fig. 5). The farther removed the point of divergence, the more nearly will the rays approach the parallel direction: until, at length, when the object is very distant, its rays in effect become parallel, and are brought together in the principal focus (Fig. 3). If, on the other hand, the point of divergence be *within* the principal focus, they will neither be brought to converge, nor be rendered parallel, but will diverge in a diminished degree (Fig. 6). And conversely, if rays *already converging* fall upon a double-

FIG. 6.



Rays already converging, brought together by a *double-convex* lens at a point nearer than its principal focus; and rays diverging from a point within its principal focus, still diverging, though in a diminished degree.

convex lens, they will be brought together at a point nearer to it than its centre of curvature (Fig. 6).—The same principles apply equally to a plano-convex lens; allowance being made for the double distance of its principal focus. They also apply to a lens whose surfaces have different curvatures; the principal focus of such a lens being found by multiplying the radius of one surface by the radius of the other, and dividing this product by half the sum of the same radii.—The rules by which the foci of convex lenses may be found, for rays of different degrees of convergence and divergence, will be found in works on Optics.

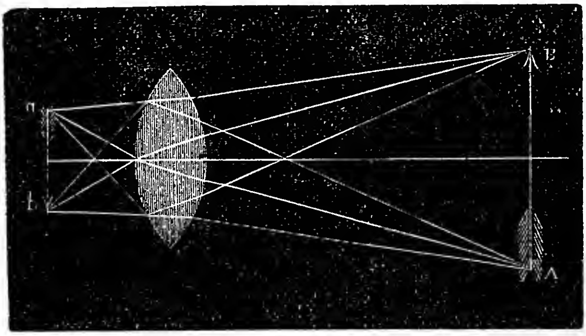
6. The refracting influence of *concave* lenses will evidently be precisely the opposite of that of convex. Rays which fall upon them in a parallel direction, will be made to *diverge* as if from the principal focus, which is here called the *negative* focus. This will be for a plano-concave lens, at the distance of the diameter of the sphere of curvature; and for a double-concave, in the centre of that sphere. In the same manner, rays which are converging to such a degree, that, if uninterrupted, they would have met in the principal focus, will be rendered parallel; if converging more they will still meet, but at a greater distance; and if converging less, they will diverge as from a negative focus at a greater distance than that

for parallel rays. If already diverging, they will diverge still more, as from a negative focus nearer than the principal focus; but this negative focus will approach the principal focus, in proportion as the distance of the point of divergence is such that the direction of the rays approaches the parallel.

7. If a lens be convex on one side and concave on the other, forming what is called a *meniscus*, its effect will depend upon the proportion between the two curvatures. If they are equal, as in a watch-glass, scarcely any perceptible effect will be produced; if the *convex* curvature be the greater, the effect will be that of a less powerful convex lens; and if the *concave* curvature be the more considerable, it will be that of a less powerful concave lens. The focus of convergence for parallel rays in the first case, and of divergence in the second, may be found by dividing the product of the two radii by half their difference.

8. Hitherto we have considered only the effects of lenses either on a 'bundle' of parallel rays, or on a 'pencil' of rays issuing from a single luminous point, and that point situated in the line of its axis. If the point be situated above the line of its axis, the focus will be below it, and *vice versâ*. The surface of every luminous body may be regarded as comprehending an infinite number of such points, from every one of which a pencil of rays proceeds, to be refracted in its passage through a lens according to the laws already specified; so that a complete but *inverted* image or picture of the object is formed upon any surface placed in the focus and adapted to receive the rays. It will be evident from what has gone before, that if the object be placed at twice the distance of the principal focus, the image, being formed at an equal distance on the other side of the lens (§ 5), will be of the same dimensions with the object: whilst, on the other hand, if the object (Fig. 7, *a b*) be nearer

Fig. 7.



Formation of Images by Convex Lenses.

the lens, the image A B will be farther from it, and of larger dimensions; but if the object A B be farther from the lens, the image *a b* will be nearer to it, and smaller than itself. Further, it is to be remarked that the larger the image in proportion to the object,

the less bright will it be, because the same amount of light has to be spread over a greater surface; whilst an image that is smaller than the object will be more brilliant in the same proportion.

9. A knowledge of these general facts will enable the learner to understand the ordinary action of the Microscope; but the instrument is subject to certain optical imperfections, the mode of remedying which cannot be comprehended without an acquaintance with their nature. One of these imperfections results from the unequal refraction of the rays which pass through lenses whose curvatures are equal over their whole surfaces. If the course of the rays passing through an ordinary convex lens be carefully laid down (Fig. 8), it will be found that they *do not all meet*

FIG. 8.

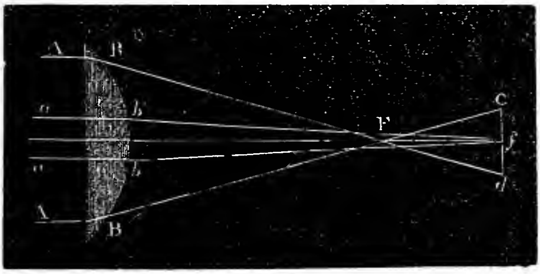


Diagram illustrating *Spherical Aberration.*

exactly in the foci already stated; but that the focus F of the rays AB, AB, which have passed through the marginal portion of the lens, is much closer to it than that of the rays *a b*, *a b*, which are nearer the line of its axis. This may be shown experimentally, by 'stopping out' either the central or the marginal portion of the lens; for it will then be found that the rays which are allowed to pass through the latter alone form a distinct image at F; whilst those which pass through the former alone form a distinct image at *f*. Hence, if the whole aperture be in use, and a screen be held in the focus F of the marginal portion of the lens, the rays which have passed through its central portion will be stopped by it before they have come to a focus; whilst, if the screen be carried back into the focus *f* of the latter, the rays which were most distant from the axis will have previously met and crossed, so that they will come to it in a state of divergence, and will pass to *c* and *d*. In either case, therefore, the image will have a certain degree of indistinctness; and there is no one point to which *all* the rays can be brought by a single lens of spherical curvature. The distance F*f*, between the focal points of the central and of the peripheral rays of any lens, is termed its *Spherical Aberration.*—It is obvious that the desired effect could be produced by such an increase of the curvature round the centre of the lens, and such a diminution of the curvature towards its circumference, as would make the two foci coincident. And the requisite conditions may be theoretically fulfilled by a

single lens, one of whose surfaces, instead of being spherical, is a portion of an ellipsoid or hyperboloid of certain proportions. But the difficulties in the way of the mechanical execution of lenses of this description are such, that for practical purposes this plan of construction is altogether unavailable; besides which, their performance would only be perfectly accurate for parallel rays.

10. Various means have been devised for reducing the aberration of lenses of spherical curvature. In the first place, it may be kept down by using ordinary lenses in the most advantageous manner. Thus the aberration of a Plano-convex lens whose convex side is turned towards parallel rays, is only $1\frac{17}{100}$ths of its thickness; whilst, if its plane side be turned towards them, the aberration is $4\frac{1}{2}$ times the thickness of the lens. Hence, when a plano-convex lens is used to form an image by bringing to a focus parallel or slightly-diverging rays from a distant object, its *convex* surface should be turned towards the object; but, when it is used to render parallel the rays which are diverging from a very near object, its *plane* surface should be turned towards the object. The single lens having the least spherical aberration, is a Double-convex whose radii are as *one* to *six:* when the flattest face of this is turned towards parallel rays, the aberration is nearly $3\frac{1}{2}$ times its thickness; but when its most convex side receives or transmits them, the aberration is only $1\frac{7}{120}$ths of its thickness.—Spherical Aberration is further diminished by reducing the aperture or working-surface of the lens, so as to employ only the rays that pass through its central part, which, if sufficiently small in proportion to the whole sphere, will bring them all to nearly the same focus. Such a reduction is made in the Object-glasses of common (non-achromatic) Microscopes; in which, whatever be the size of the lens itself, the greater portion of its surface is rendered inoperative by a *stop*, which is a plate with a circular aperture interposed between the lens and the rest of the instrument. If this aperture be gradually enlarged, it will be seen that, although the image becomes more and more illuminated, it is at the same time becoming more and more indistinct; and that, in order to gain *defining power*, the aperture must be reduced again. Now, this reduction is attended with two great inconveniences: in the first place, the loss of intensity of light, the degree of which will depend upon the quantity transmitted by the lens, and will vary therefore with its aperture; and, secondly, the diminution of the *Angle of Aperture*, that is, of the angle *a b c* (Fig. 10) made by the most diverging of the rays of the pencil issuing from any point of an object, that can enter the lens and take part in the formation of an image of it; on the extent of which angle (as will be shown hereafter) depend some of the most important qualities of a Microscope.

11. The Spherical Aberration may be approximately corrected, however, by making use of *combinations* of lenses, so disposed that their opposite aberrations shall correct each other, whilst magnifying power is still gained. For it is easily seen that, as

the aberration of a concave lens is just the opposite of that of a convex lens, the aberration of a convex lens placed in its most favourable position may be corrected by that of a concave lens of much less power in its most unfavourable position; so that, although the power of the convex lens is weakened, all the rays which pass through this combination will be brought to one focus. It is thus that the Optician aims to correct the Spherical Aberration, in the construction of those combinations of lenses which are now employed as Object-glasses in all Compound Microscopes that are of any real value as instruments of observation. But this correction is not always perfectly made: and the want of it becomes evident in the *fog* by which the distinctness of the image, and especially the sharpness of its outlines, is impaired; and in the *eidola*, or false images, on each side of the best focal point, which impair the perfection of the principal image, and can be themselves brought into view when proper means are used for their detection.* The skill of the best constructors of Microscopic objectives has been of late years successfully exerted in the removal of the 'residual errors' to which these *eidola* were due; so that objectives of the largest angular aperture are now made truly *aplanatic*, the corrections for Spherical Aberration being applied with a perfection which was formerly supposed to be attainable only in the case of Objectives of small or moderate aperture. Still, the difficulty (and the consequent cost) of producing such objectives, constitutes one out of many reasons for the preference of objectives of moderate aperture, in which the correction for Spherical Aberration can be easily made complete, for all the ordinary purposes of scientific investigation (§ 17).

12. But spherical aberration is not the only difficulty with which the Optician has to contend in the construction of Microscopes; for one equally serious arises from the *unequal refrangibility* of the several Coloured rays which together make up White or colourless light,† so that they are not all brought to the same focus, even by a lens free from spherical aberration. It is this difference in their refrangibility, which causes their complete separation or 'dispersion' by the Prism into a *spectrum;* and it manifests itself, though in a less degree, in the image formed by a convex lens. For if parallel rays of white light fall upon a convex surface, the *most* refrangible of its component rays, namely, the *violet*, will be brought to a focus at a point somewhat nearer to the lens than the principal focus, which is the mean of the whole; and the converse will be true of the *red* rays, which are the *least* refrangible, and whose focus will therefore be more distant. Thus in Fig. 9, the rays of white

* See Dr. Royston Pigott's description of his "Searcher for Aplanatic Images," and its uses, in the "Philos. Transact." for 1870, p. 59.

† It has been deemed better to adhere to the ordinary phraseology, when speaking of this fact, as more generally intelligible than the language in which it might be more scientifically described, and at the same time leading to no practical error.

light, A B, A″ B″, which fall on the peripheral portion of the lens, are so far decomposed, that the violet rays are brought to a focus at C, and crossing there, diverge again and pass on towards F F,

FIG. 9.

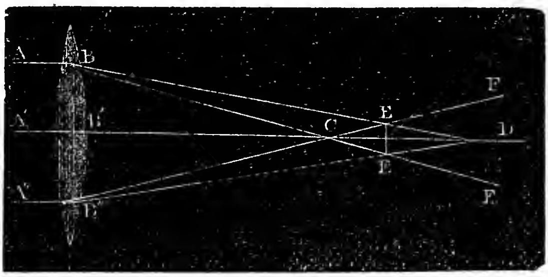


Diagram illustrating *Chromatic Aberration.*

whilst the red rays are not brought to a focus until D, crossing the divergent violet rays at E E. The foci of the intermediate rays of the spectrum (indigo, blue, green, yellow, and orange) are intermediate between these two extremes. The distance C D between the foci of the *violet* and of the *red* rays respectively, is termed *Chromatic Aberration.* If the image be received upon a screen placed at C—the focus of the violet rays—violet will predominate in its own colour, and it will be surrounded by a prismatic fringe in which blue, green, yellow, orange, and red may be successively distinguished. If, on the other hand, the screen be placed at D—the focus of the red rays—the image will have a predominantly red tint, and will be surrounded by a series of coloured fringes in inverted order, formed by the other rays of the spectrum which have met and crossed.* The line E E, which joins the points of intersection between the red and the violet rays, marks the 'mean focus,' that is, the situation in which the coloured fringes will be narrowest, the 'dispersion' of the coloured rays being the least. As the axial ray A′ B′ undergoes no refraction, neither does it sustain any dispersion; and the nearer the rays are to the axial ray, the less dispersion do they suffer. Again, the more oblique the direction of the rays, whether they pass through the central or the peripheral portion of the lens, the greater will be the refraction they undergo, and the greater also will be their dispersion; and thus it happens that when, by using only the central part of a lens (§ 13), the chromatic aberration is reduced to its minimum, the central part of a picture may be tolerably free from false colours, whilst its marginal portion shall exhibit broad fringes, as is well seen in the pictures exhibited by non-achromatic Oxyhydrogen-Microscopes.

* This experiment is best tried with a lens of long focus, of which the central part is covered with an opaque stop, so that the light passes only through a peripheral ring; since, if its whole aperture be in use, the regular formation of the fringes is interfered with by the *spherical* aberration, which gives a different focus to the rays passing through each annular zone.

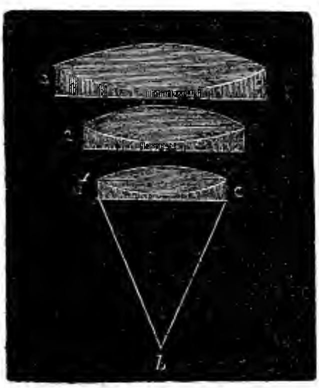
13. Although the Chromatic aberration of a lens, like the Spherical, may be diminished by the contraction of its aperture, so that only its central portion is employed, the error cannot be got rid of entirely by any such reduction, which, for the reasons already mentioned, is in itself extremely undesirable. Hence it is of the first importance in the construction of a really efficient Microscope, that the chromatic aberration of its Object-glasses (in which the principal dispersion is liable to occur) should be entirely *corrected*, so that a large aperture may be given to these lenses without the production of any false colours. No such correction can be accomplished, even theoretically, in a single lens; but it may be effected by the combination of two or more, advantage being taken of the different relations which the *refractive* and the *dispersive* powers bear to each other in different substances. For if we can unite with a *convex* lens, whose dispersive power is *low* as compared to its refractive power, a *concave* of lower curvature, whose dispersive power is relatively *high*, it is obvious that the dispersion of the rays occasioned by the convex lens may be effectually *neutralized* by the opposite dispersion of the concave (§ 6); whilst the refracting power of the convex is only *lowered* by the opposite refraction of the concave, in virtue of the longer focus of the latter.—No difficulty stands in the way of carrying this theoretical correction into practice. For the 'dispersive' power of *flint*-glass bears so much larger a ratio to its refractive power than does that of *crown*-glass, that a convex lens of the former whose focal length is $7\frac{2}{3}$ inches, will produce the same degree of colour as a convex lens of crown-glass whose focal length is $4\frac{1}{3}$ inches. Hence a concave lens of the former material and curvature will fully correct the dispersion of a convex lens of the latter; whilst it diminishes its refractive power to such an extent only as to make its focus 10 inches.—A perfect correction for Chromatic Aberration might thus be obtained, if it were not that although the extreme rays—violet and red—are thus brought to the same focus, the dispersion of the rest is not equally compensated; so that what is termed a *secondary spectrum* is produced; the images of objects, especially towards the margin of the field, being bordered on one side with a purple fringe, and on the other with a green. In the best constructed combinations, however, whether for the Telescope or the Microscope, the chromatic error is scarcely perceptible; the aberrations of the objective being so arranged as to be almost entirely compensated by the opposite aberrations of the eye-piece (§ 27).

14. It was in the Telescope that the principle of correction for Chromatic dispersion, which had been theoretically devised by Euler and other mathematicians, was first carried into practical application; an Achromatic object-glass having been constructed in 1733 by Hall, and a more perfect combination having been worked out in 1757 by Dollond, whose system, known as the 'telescopic triplet,' remains in use to the present time. This triplet consists of a double-concave lens of flint-glass, interposed between two

double-convex lenses of crown; such curves being given to their respective surfaces, as serve almost entirely to extinguish not only the Chromatic, but the Spherical aberration, in the case of rays proceeding from *distant* objects, which fall on the surface of the object-glass in a direction that is virtually *parallel*. These rays form an image in the 'principal focus' of the object-glass, the size of which varies with its distance from the lens; magnifying power being thus gained by *lengthening* the focus of the objective.—In the Microscope, on the other hand, the conditions are altogether different. For the object-glass receives rays which *diverge* very widely from a *near* object, and the size of the image formed by their convergence depends upon the proportionate distances of the object and the image from the lens (§ 8); magnifying power being thus gained by *shortening* the focus of the object-glass. And the chromatic and spherical aberrations resulting from the incidence of diverging rays can only be fairly corrected by a *single-triplet* combination, when its focus is long (giving a low magnifying power), and the divergence of those rays moderate, so that the angle of the aperture is small.

15. It has only been in comparatively recent times that the construction of Achromatic object-glasses for Microscopes has been found practicable; their extremely minute size having been thought to forbid the attainment of that accuracy which is necessary in the adjustment of the several curvatures, in order that the errors of each of the separate lenses which enters into the combination, may be effectually balanced by the opposite errors of the rest. The first successful attempt was made in this direction, in the year 1823, by MM. Selligues and Chevalier, of Paris; the plan which they adopted being the combination of two or more *pairs* of lenses, each pair consisting of a double-convex of crown-glass, and a plano-concave of flint.—In the following year, Mr. Tulley, of London, without any knowledge of what had been accomplished in Paris, applied himself (at the suggestion of Dr. Goring) to the construction of Achromatic object-glasses for the Microscope; and succeeded in producing a single combination of three lenses, on the telescopic plan, the corrections of which were extremely complete. This combination, however, was not of high power, nor of large angular aperture; and it was found that these advantages could not be gained without the addition of a second combination.—

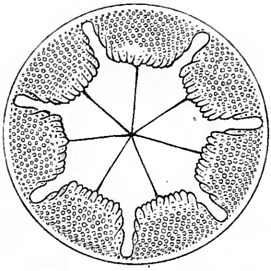
Fig. 10.



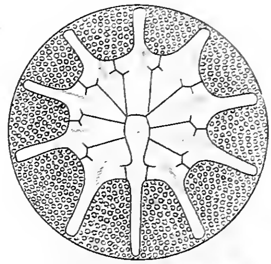
Section of an Achromatic Object-glass, composed of three pairs of lenses, 1, 2, 3, each formed of a double-convex of crown-glass and a plano-concave of flint; *a b c*, its Angle of Aperture.

Plate. I.

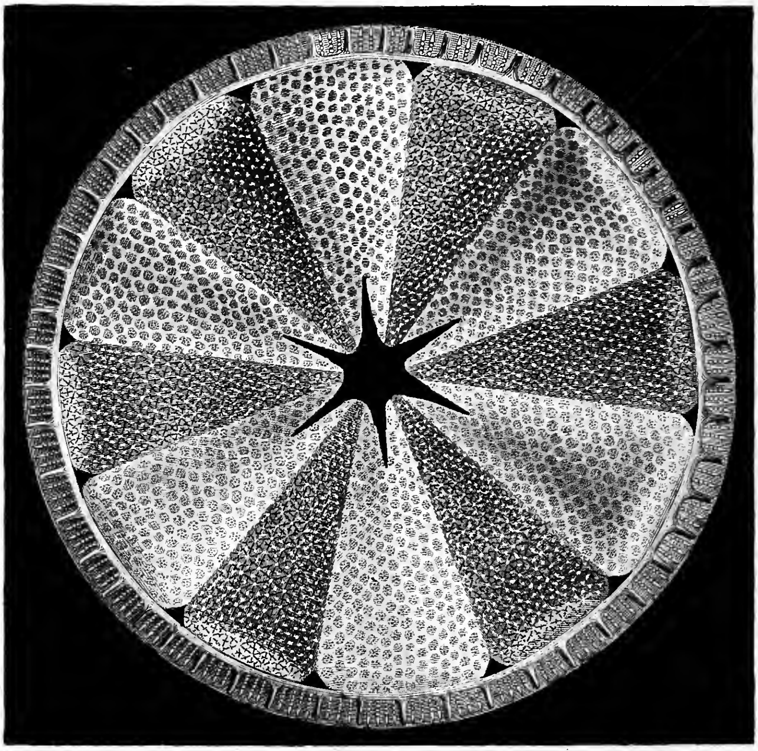
2

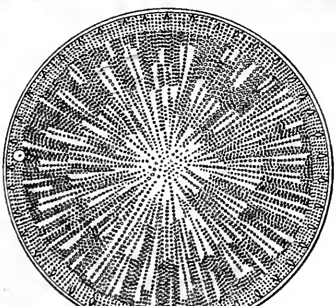


4

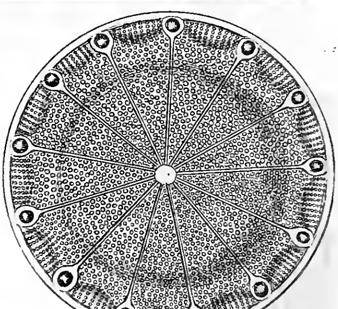


3





1

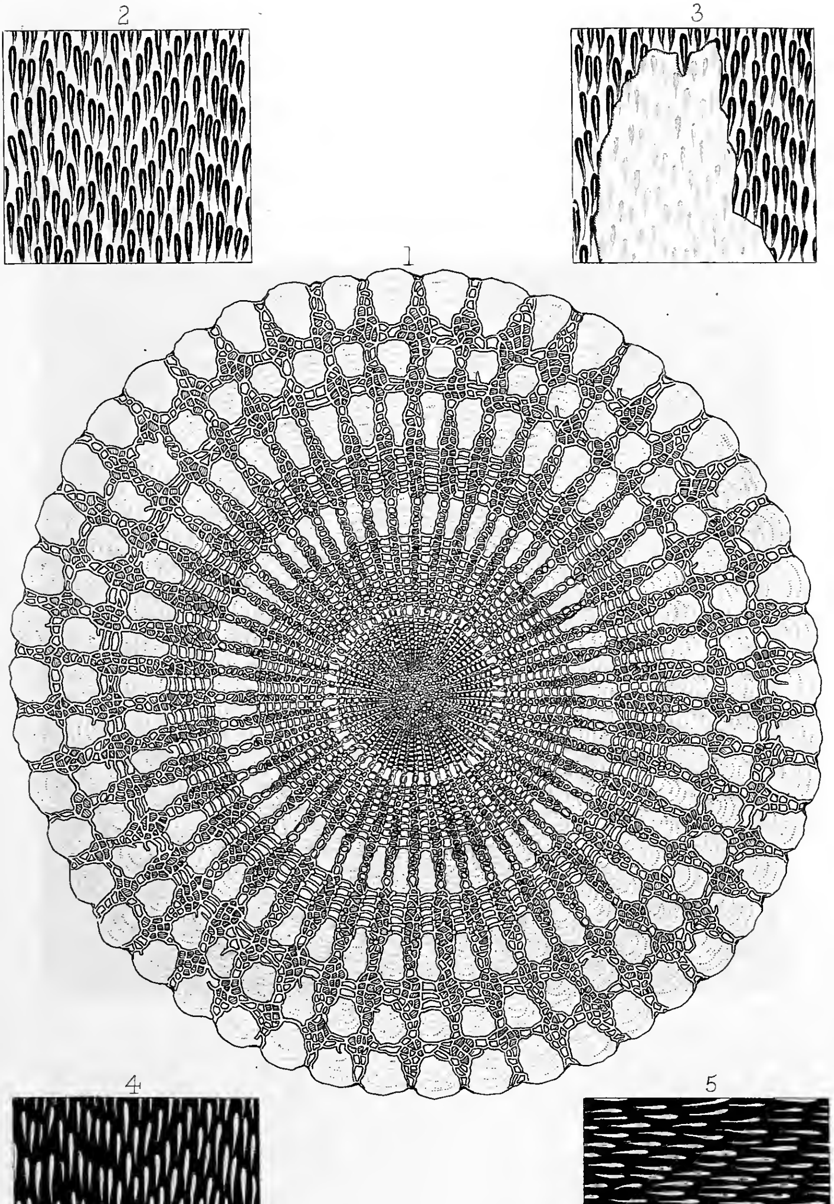


5

Geo: West delt.

H. Adlard sc.

Plate. II



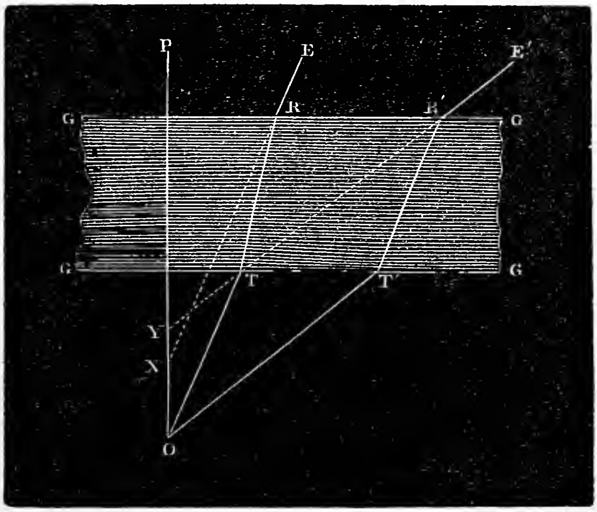
E. Adlard. sc

Prof. Amici at Modena, also, who had attempted the construction of microscopic object-glasses as early as 1812, but, despairing of success, had turned his attention to the application of the *reflecting* principle to the Microscope, resumed his original labours on hearing of the success of MM. Selligues and Chevalier; and, by working on their plan, he produced, in 1827, an achromatic combination which surpassed anything of the same kind that had been previously executed. And these were soon rivalled by the objectives produced in London by Andrew Ross and Powell.

16. It was in this country that the next important improvements originated; these being the result of the theoretical investigations of Mr. J. J. Lister,* which led him to the discovery of certain properties in Achromatic combinations that had not been previously detected. Under his guidance, Mr. James Smith, soon followed by other Opticians, succeeded in producing combinations far superior to any which had been previously executed, both in extent of aperture, flatness of field, and completeness of correction; and continued progress has been since made in the same direction, by the like combination of theoretical acumen with manipulative skill.

17. The enlargement of the Angle of Aperture, and the greater completeness of the corrections, first obtained by the adoption of Mr. Lister's principles, soon rendered sensible an imperfection in the performance of these lenses under certain circumstances, which had previously passed unnoticed; and the important discovery was

Fig. 11.



* See his Memoir in the "Philosophical Transactions' for 1829.

made by Mr. A. Ross, that a very obvious difference exists in the precision of the image, according as the object is viewed, *with* or *without* a covering of talc or thin glass; an Object-glass which is perfectly adapted to either of these conditions, being sensibly defective under the other. The mode in which this difference arises is explained by Mr. Ross* as follows:—Let O (Fig. 11), be any point of an object; O P the axial ray of the pencil that diverges from it; and O T, O T′, two diverging rays, the one near to, the other remote from, the axial ray. Now if G G G G represent the section of a piece of thin glass intervening between the object and the object-glass, the rays O T and O T′ will be refracted in their passage through it, in the directions T R, T′ R′; and on emerging from it again, they will pass on towards E and E′. Now if the course of these emergent rays be traced backwards, as by the dotted lines, the ray E R will seem to have issued from X, and the ray E′ R′ from Y; and the difference X Y, which is called 'negative aberration,' is quite sufficient to disturb the previous balance of the aberrations of the composite lens of the object-glass. The requisite correction may be effected, as Mr. Ross pointed out, by giving to the *front* pair (Fig. 10, 1) of the three of which the Objective is composed, an excess of 'positive aberration' (*i.e.*, by under-correcting it), and by giving to the other two pairs (2, 3) an excess of 'negative aberration' (*i.e.*, by over-correcting them), and by making the distance between the former and the latter susceptible of alteration by means of a screw collar (§ 140). For when the front pair is approximated most nearly to the other two, and its distance from the object is increased, its positive aberration is more strongly exerted upon the other pairs than it is when the distance between the lenses is increased, and the distance between the front pair and the object is diminished. Consequently, if the lenses have been so adjusted that their correction is perfect for an uncovered object, the approximation of the front lens to the others will give to the whole combination an excess of positive aberration, which will neutralize the negative aberration occasioned by covering the object with a thin plate of glass.—This correction will obviously be more important to the perfect performance of the combination, the larger is its angle of aperture; since the wider the divergence of the oblique rays from the axial ray, the greater will be the refraction which they will sustain in passing through a plate of glass, and the greater therefore will be the negative aberration produced, which, if uncorrected, will seriously impair the distinctness of the image. It is consequently not required for *low* powers, whose angle of aperture is comparatively small, nor for *medium* powers, so long as their angle of aperture does not exceed 50°; and even objectives of 1-4th of an inch focus, whose angle of aperture does not exceed 75°, may be made to perform very well without adjustment, if their corrections be originally made perfect for the average thickness of glass

* "Transactions of the Society of Arts," Vol. li.

used to cover objects of the finer kind. And objectives of much higher power and larger angle of aperture (especially suited for Students' Microscopes), are now constructed so as to work admirably without adjustment, being corrected for a standard thickness —such as 0·008 or 0·006 inch—of the glass covers supplied by their makers. Such non-adjusting objectives, when less than 1-8th inch focus, are best constructed on the 'immersion' system (§ 19).

18. For many years the best Microscopic objectives of moderate and high magnifying power were made by combining three superposed pairs of increasing focus and diameter (as in Fig. 10), each consisting of a double-convex lens of crown-glass partly achromatized by its own concave of flint; the two apposed surfaces of each pair being of the same curvature, and cemented together by Canada balsam. Various modifications of this arrangement, however, have been introduced at various times and by various constructors; some proceeding in the direction of simplification, whilst others have aimed at the greatest attainable perfection, irrespective of complexity and constructive difficulty. It is obvious that there are great practical advantages on the side of any *reduction* in the number of component lenses, that is compatible with the good performance of the combination: liability to error, as well in the curved surfaces, as in the centering and setting of each, being thereby diminished, while there is a like diminution in the loss of light which occurs whenever the rays pass out of one medium into another (§ 1). But, on the other hand, it seems certain that the highest theoretical perfection can be attained by an *increase* in the number of component lenses; so that, if the errors in workmanship are kept down to the lowest possible point, the performance of such complex combinations may be made superior to that of simpler ones.—The first important change in the direction of simplification, consisted in the replacement of the *front* combination by a *single* plano-convex of crown. This substitution, which seems to have been first devised by Amici, has been very generally adopted; a greater working distance from the object (which is very important in the case of the highest powers) being attainable in this construction, than when the front is either a doublet or a triplet combination. But most makers who have used this method, have added a lens to the *back* combination, making it a 'telescopic triplet,' still using a doublet in the *middle;* and admirable objectives on this construction (each consisting of two flint concave and four convex lenses of crown, with *twelve* surfaces in all) have been made by the best Opticians—English and American, French and German.—A further simplification has been recently carried into effect by Mr. Wenham; who has shown* that the whole colour-correction may be effected in the middle lens by a double concave of dense flint between two convex lenses of crown, the back lens as well as the front being a single plano-convex of crown. Thus one double concave lens of flint is made to correct the chromatic

* "Proceedings of Royal Society," Vol. xxi. p. 111.

aberrations of four convex surfaces of crown, the total number of surfaces being reduced to *ten*. There is a further advantage in this plan of construction, that no change of the front lens is needed to enable the combination to be used as an 'immersion' objective (§ 19), the requisite adjustment being effected by the screw-collar used for cover-correction.—There can be no doubt that objectives of moderate angular aperture may be made on Mr. Wenham's system, so as to combine great excellence with comparative cheapness; but it does not seem equally suitable for first-class objectives, requiring for their greatest efficiency the widest attainable angular aperture. These have usually been made to consist of a front triplet, a middle doublet, and a back triplet, thus having *eight* lenses in all, with *sixteen* surfaces. But the first-class constructors in the United States (notably Messrs. Tolles, Spencer, and Wales) have added to these a single front plano-convex of crown, by means of which a longer working distance has been obtained; whilst the extraordinary excellence of their workmanship (only attainable, however, at a very high cost) has given to these very complex combinations a perfection of performance, which, to say the least, is unsurpassed by that of any objectives constructed for use in the ordinary manner, which is now distinguished as *dry*.

19. It was long since pointed out by Amici, that the introduction of a drop of water between the front surface of the objective, and either the object itself or its covering-glass, would diminish the loss of light resulting from the passage of the rays from the object or its covering-glass into air, and then from air into the object-glass. But it is obvious that when the rays enter the object-glass from water, instead of from air, both its refractive and its dispersive action will be greatly changed, so as to need an important constructive modification to suit the new condition. This modification seems never to have been successfully effected by Amici himself; and his idea remained unfruitful until it was taken up by Hartnack and Nachet, who showed that the application of what is now known as the *Immersion-system* to objectives of high power and large angular aperture is attended with many advantages not otherwise attainable. For, as already pointed out (§ 1), the loss of light increases with the obliquity of the incident rays; so that when objectives of very wide angle of aperture are used 'dry,' the advantages of its increase are in great degree nullified by the reflection of a large proportion of the rays falling very obliquely upon the peripheral portion of the front lens. When, on the other hand, rays of the same obliquity enter the peripheral portion of the lens from water, the loss by reflection is greatly reduced, and the benefit derivable from the large aperture is proportionally augmented. Again, the 'immersion system' allows of a greater working distance between the objective and the object, than is otherwise attainable with the same extent of angular aperture; and this is a great advantage, not merely in regard to convenience in manipulation, but also in giving a greater range of 'penetration' or 'focal depth.'

Further, the observer is rendered less dependent upon the exactness in the correction for the thickness of the covering-glass, which is needed where objectives of large angle are used 'dry;' for as the amount of 'negative aberration' (§ 17) is far smaller when the rays which emerge from the covering-glass pass into water, than when they pass into air, variations in its thickness produce a much less disturbing effect. And thus it is found practically that 'immersion' objectives can be constructed with magnifying powers sufficiently high, and angular apertures sufficiently large, for all the ordinary purposes of scientific investigation, without any necessity for cover-adjustment; being originally adapted to give the best results with a covering-glass of suitable thinness, and small departures from this in either direction occasioning very little deterioration in their performance. For 'water-immersion' objectives of the very largest aperture, however, to be used upon the most difficult objects, exact cover-correction is still necessary.—Whilst 'immersion'-objectives constructed on the original plan can only be employed 'wet' (that is, with the interposition of water), Messrs. Powell and Lealand—followed by other makers—have so arranged their combinations, that by a change in the front lens they may be used 'dry,' as in the ordinary manner. And in Mr. Wenham's system not even this change is required, the change from 'wet' to 'dry,' and *vice versâ*, being accomplished by an alteration in the distance of the front lens from the middle triplet, made by the screw-collar, as in ordinary cover-correction.

20. The 'immersion system' has recently undergone a still further development, by the practical application of a method originally suggested by Mr. Wenham* (but never carried by him into operation), and independently suggested by Mr. Stephenson† to Prof. Abbe of Jena, under whose scientific direction it has been worked-out by the very able German optician, Zeiss, with complete success. This method consists in the replacement of the water previously interposed between the covering-glass and the front surface of the objective, by a liquid having the same refractive and dispersive power as crown-glass; so that the rays issuing at any angle from the upper plane surface of the covering-glass, shall enter the plane front of the objective without any change either by refraction or dispersion, and without any sensible loss by reflection—even the most oblique rays proceeding in their undeflected course, until they meet the convex back surface of the front lens. It is obvious that all the advantages derivable from the system of *water* immersion are obtainable with still greater completeness by this system of *homogeneous* immersion, provided that a fluid can be found which meets its requirements. After a long course of experiments, Prof. Abbe found that oil of cedar-wood so nearly corresponds with glass, alike in refractive and in dispersive power, that it serves the purpose extremely well, except when it is desired to take special

* "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. iii. (1870), p, 303.

† "Journ. of Royal Microsc. Society," Vol. i. (1878,) p. 51.

advantage of the most divergent or marginal rays, oil of fennel being then preferable. Objectives of $\frac{1}{8}$th, $\frac{1}{12}$th, and $\frac{1}{18}$th inch focal length have been constructed on this plan by Zeiss; and it appears certain that by its means a larger angle of aperture can be effectively obtained, than on any other construction. Whether any tests can be resolved by its use, on which other objectives fail, is a point not yet satisfactorily determined. But there can be no doubt that the system of 'homogeneous immersion' will greatly facilitate the use of objectives possessing the largest angular aperture, and capable of affording the highest magnifying power, for the ordinary purpose of scientific research. It is precisely in the case of such objectives, that the 'cover-correction' needs to be most exact. And although the practised Microscopist has no difficulty in making this, when the object at which he is looking (such as a Diatom, a Podura-scale, or a band of Nobert's ruled lines) is *known* to him, yet the case is entirely different when the object is altogether *unknown*. For in examining such an object, he may be only able to satisfy himself after repeated trials, involving much expenditure of time and patience, as to the cover-correction which gives the truest representation of the object; whilst, in using a 'homogeneous' or 'oil-immersion' objective, he is able to feel an absolute certainty that, without any adjustment at all, the view which he gains of an unknown object is in every respect at least equal to that which he can obtain from the best 'dry' or 'water-immersion' objective, most exactly adjusted for thickness of cover.—This system has been taken up also by Messrs. Powell and Lealand, who have constructed admirable 'oil-immersion' objectives ranging to 1-25th inch focus, which, by a change of the front lens, may also be used 'dry.'

21. We are now prepared to enter upon the application of the Optical principles which have been explained and illustrated in the foregoing pages, to the construction of Microscopes. These are distinguished as *Simple* and *Compound;* each kind having its peculiar advantages to the Student of Nature. Their essential difference consists in this:—that in the former, the rays of light which enter the eye of the observer proceed directly from the *object* itself, after having been subjected only to a change in their course; whilst in the latter, an enlarged *image* of the object is formed by one lens, which image is magnified to the observer by another, as if he were viewing the object itself.—The *Simple* Microscope *may* consist of a single lens; but (as will be presently shown) it may be formed of *two*, or even *three:* these, however, being so disposed as to produce an action upon the rays of light corresponding to that of a single lens. In the *Compound* Microscope, on the other hand, not less than two lenses *must* be employed: one, to form the enlarged image of the object, immediately over which it is placed, and hence called the *object-glass;* whilst the other again magnifies that image, and, being interposed between it

and the eye of the observer, is called the *eye-glass*. A perfect Object-glass, as we have seen, must consist of a combination of lenses: and the Eye-glass is best combined with another lens interposed between itself and the object-glass, the two together forming what is termed an *eye-piece* (§ 27).—These two kinds of instrument need to be separately considered in detail.

2. *Simple Microscope.*

22. In order to gain a clear notion of the mode in which a Single Lens serves to 'magnify' minute objects, it is necessary to revert to the phenomena of ordinary Vision. An Eye free from any defect has a considerable power of adjusting itself in such a manner as to gain a distinct view of objects placed at extremely varying distances; but the image formed upon the retina will of course vary in size with the distance of the object; and the amount of detail perceptible in it will follow the same proportion. To ordinary eyes, however, there is a limit within which no distinct image can be formed, on account of the too great divergence of the rays of the different pencils which then enter the eye; since the eye is usually adapted to receive, and to bring to a focus, rays which are parallel or but slightly divergent. This limit is variously stated at from 5 to 10 inches; but though there are doubtless many persons whose vision is good at the shorter range, yet the longer is probably the real limit for persons of ordinary vision; who, though they may *see* an object much nearer the eye, discern little if any more of its details, what is gained in size being lost in distinctness. Now the utility of a convex lens interposed between a near object and the eye, consists in its reducing the divergence of the rays forming the several pencils which issue from it; so that they enter the eye in a state of moderate divergence, as if they had issued from an object beyond the nearest limit of distinct vision, a well-defined picture being thus formed upon the retina. Not only, however, is the course of the several rays in each pencil altered as regards the rest, but the course of the pencils themselves is changed, so that they enter the eye under an angle corresponding with that under which they would have arrived from a larger object situated at a greater distance; and thus the picture formed upon the retina by any object (*a b*, Fig. 12), corresponds in all respects with one which would have been made by the same object increased in its dimension to A B, and viewed at the smallest ordinary distance of distinct vision. A 'short-sighted' person, however, who can only see objects distinctly at a distance of two or three inches, has the same power in his eye alone by reason of its great convexity, as that which the person of ordinary vision gains by the assistance of a convex lens which shall enable him to see at the same distance with equal distinctness. It is, evident therefore, that the magnifying power of a single lens, depending as it does upon the proportion between the distance at which it renders the object visible, and

the nearest distance of unaided distinct vision, must be different to different eyes. It is usually estimated, however, by finding how

FIG. 12.

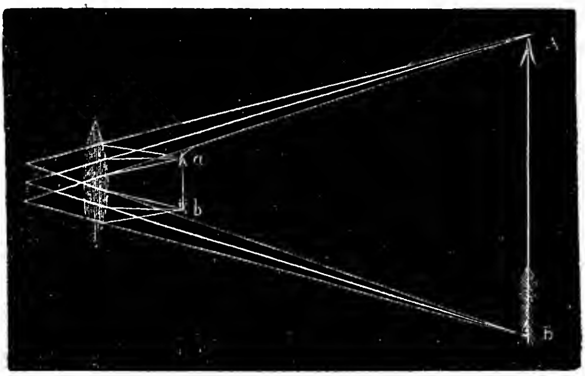


Diagram illustrating the action of the *Simple Microscope*; *a b* object; A B its magnified image.

many times the focal length of the lens is contained in ten inches; since, in order to render the rays from the object nearly parallel, it must be placed nearly in the focus of the lens (Fig. 3); and the picture is referred by the mind to an object at the ordinary distance. Thus, if the focal length of a lens be one inch, its magnifying power for each dimension will be 10 times, and consequently 100 superficial; while if its focal distance be only one-tenth of an inch, its magnifying power will be 100 linear, or 10,000 superficial.

23. But the shorter the focus of the magnifying lens, the smaller must be the diameter of the sphere of which it forms part; and, unless its aperture be proportionately reduced, the distinctness of the image will be destroyed by the spherical and chromatic aberrations (§§ 9, 12) necessarily resulting from its high curvature. Yet notwithstanding the loss of light and other drawbacks attendant on the use of Single Lenses of high power, they proved of great value to the older Microscopists (among whom Leeuwenhoek should be specially named), on account of their freedom from the errors to which the Compound Microscope of the old construction was necessarily subject; and the amount of excellent work done by means of them surprises every one who studies the history of Microscopic inquiry.—An important improvement on the single lens was introduced by Dr. Wollaston, who devised the *doublet*, still known by his name; which consists of two plano-convex lenses, whose focal lengths are in the proportion of one to three, or nearly so, having their convex sides directed towards the eye, and the lens of shortest focal length nearest the object. In Dr. W.'s original combination, no perforated diaphragm (or 'stop') was interposed; and the distance between the lenses was left to be determined by experiment in each case. A great improvement was subsequently made, however, by the introduction of a 'stop' between the lenses.

and by the division of the power of the smaller lens between two (especially when a very short focus is required), so as to form a *triplet*, as first suggested by Mr. Holland.* When combinations of this kind are well constructed, both the spherical and the chromatic aberrations are so much reduced, that the angle of aperture may be considerably enlarged without much sacrifice of distinctness; and hence for all save very low powers, such 'doublets' and 'triplets' are far superior to single lenses. These combinations took the place of single lenses, among Microscopists (in this country at least) who were prosecuting minute investigations in Anatomy and Physiology prior to the vast improvements effected in the Compound Microscope by the achromatization of its object-glasses (§ 15); and, in particular, the admirable researches of Dr. Sharpey,† on *ciliary action* in Animals (1830–35), and Mr. Henry Slack's beautiful dissections of the elementary tissues of Plants, as also his excellent observations on Vegetable *cyclosis* (1831),‡ were made by their means.—The performance of even the best of these forms of Simple microscope, however, is so far inferior to that of a good Compound microscope, as now constructed, that no one who has the command of the latter form of instrument would ever use the *higher* powers of the former. And as it is for the prosecution of observations, and for the carrying on of dissections, which only require *low* powers, that the Simple microscope is chiefly needed, the Wollaston doublet has now almost gone out of use.

24. Another form of Simple magnifier, possessing certain advantages over the ordinary double-convex lens, is that commonly known by the name of the 'Coddington' lens.§ The first idea of it was given by Dr. Wollaston, who proposed to apply two plano-convex or hemispherical lenses by their plane sides, with a 'stop' interposed, the central aperture of which should be equal to 1-5th of the focal length. The great advantage of such a lens is, that the oblique pencils pass, like the central ones, at right angles to the surface, so that they are but little subject to aberration. The idea was further improved-upon by Sir D. Brewster, who pointed out that the same end would be much better answered by taking a sphere of glass, and grinding a deep groove in its equatorial part, which should be then filled with opaque matter, so as to limit the central aperture. Such a lens gives a large field of view, admits a considerable amount of light, and is equally good in all directions; but its power of definition is by no means equal to that of an achromatic lens, or even of a doublet. This form is chiefly useful, therefore, as a Hand-magnifier, in which neither high power nor

* "Transactions of the Society of Arts," Vol. xlix.

† See his Article *Cilia* in the "Cyclopædia of Anatomy and Physiology," and the references under that head in the Index to the present work.

‡ See his Memoir, with two beautiful Plates, in the "Transactions of the Society of Arts," Vol. xlix., pp. 6, 7.

§ This name, however, is most inappropriate; since Mr. Coddington neither was, nor ever claimed to be, the inventor of the mode of construction by which this lens is distinguished.

perfect definition is required; its peculiar qualities rendering it superior to an ordinary lens, for the class of objects for which a hand-magnifier of medium power is required. Many of the magnifiers sold as 'Coddington' lenses, however, are not really portions of spheres, but are manufactured out of ordinary double-convex lenses, and are therefore destitute of the special advantages of the real 'Coddington.'—The 'Stanhope' lens somewhat resembles the preceding in appearance, but differs from it essentially in properties. It is nothing more than a double-convex lens, having two surfaces of unequal curvatures, separated from each other by a considerable thickness of glass; the distance of the two surfaces from each other being so adjusted, that when the most convex is turned towards the eye, minute objects placed *on* the other surface shall be in the focus of the lens. This is an easy mode of applying a rather high magnifying power to scales of butterflies' wings, and other similar flat and minute objects, which will readily adhere to the surface of the glass; and it also serves to detect the presence of the larger animalcules or of crystals in minute drops of fluid, to exhibit the 'eels' in paste or vinegar, &c., &c.—A modified form of the 'Stanhope' lens, in which the surface remote from the eye is plane instead of convex, has been brought out in France under the name of 'Stanhoscope,' and has been especially applied to the enlargement of minute pictures photographed on its plane surface in the focus of its convex surface. A good 'Stanhoscope,' magnifying from 100 to 150 diameters, is a very convenient form of hand-magnifier for the recognition of Diatoms, Infusoria, &c.; all that is required being to place a minute drop of the liquid to be examined on the plane surface of the lens, and then to hold it up to the light.*

25. For the ordinary purposes of Microscopic dissection, *single lenses* of from 3 inches to 1 inch focus answer very well. But when higher powers are required, and when the use of even the lower powers is continued for any length of time, great advantage is derived from the employment of Achromatic combinations now made expressly for this purpose by several Opticians. The writer has worked most satisfactorily for several years with the 'platyscopic lens,' magnifying about 15 diameters, made by Mr. Browning, who makes similar combinations of 20 and 30 diameters. And he can speak equally favourably of the 'Steinheil doublets' (constructed by the eminent Munich optician of that name, and introduced into this country by Messrs. Murray and Heath), of which there are six, ranging from $2\frac{3}{8}$ inches to $\frac{3}{8}$ inch focus. The Browning and the Steinheil combinations give much more light than single lenses, with much better definition, a very flat field, longer working distance (which is very important in minute dissection), and, as a consequence, greater 'focal depth' or 'penetration'—*i.e.* a clearer view of those parts of the object which lie above or below the exact local

* See "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. vi., N.S. (1866), p. 263.—Of the Stanhoscopes sold by Toy-dealers at a very low price, only a part are really serviceable; care is requisite, therefore, in the selection.

plane. And only those who, like the writer, have carried on a piece of minute and difficult dissection through several consecutive hours, can appreciate the advantage in comfort and in *diminished fatigue of eye,* which is gained by the substitution of one of these Achromatic combinations for a single lens of equivalent focus, even where the use of the former reveals no detail that is not discernible by the latter.

3. *Compound Microscope.*

26. The Compound Microscope, in its most simple form, consists of only two lenses, the *object-glass* and the *eye-glass.* The former, C D (Fig. 13), receives the light-rays direct from the object, A B, brought into near proximity to it, and forms an enlarged but *inverted* and *reversed* image, A′ B′, at a greater distance on the other side (§ 8); whilst the latter, L M, receives the rays which are diverging from this image, as if they proceeded from an object actually occupying its position and enlarged to its dimensions, and brings these to the eye at E, so altering their course as to make that image appear far larger to the eye, precisely as in the case of the Simple microscope (§ 22).—It is obvious that, in the use of the very same lenses, a considerable variety of magnifying power may be obtained, by merely altering their position in regard to each other and to the object: for if the eye-glass be carried farther from the object-glass, whilst the object is approximated nearer to the latter, the image A′ B′ will be formed at a greater distance from it, and its dimensions will consequently be augmented; whilst, on the other hand, if the eye-glass be brought nearer to the object-glass, and the object removed farther from it, the distance of the image will be a much smaller multiple of the distance of the object, and its dimensions proportionately diminished. We shall hereafter see that this mode of varying the magnifying power of Compound Microscopes may be turned to good account in more than one mode (§§ 83, 84); but there are limits to the use which can be advantageously made of it. —The amplification may also be varied by altering the magnifying power of the Eye-glass; but here, too, there are limits to the increase; since defects of the object-glass which are not perceptible when its image is but moderately enlarged, are brought into injurious prominence when the imperfect image is amplified to a much greater extent. In practice, it is generally found much better to vary the power by employing object-glasses of different foci: an object-glass of *long* focus forming an image which is not at many times the distance of the object from the other side of the lens, and which, therefore, is not of many times its dimension; whilst an object-glass of *short* focus requires that the object should be so nearly approximated to it, that the distance of the image is a much higher multiple of the object, and its dimensions are proportionably larger.—In whatever mode increased amplification may be obtained, two things must always result from the change: the proportion of the surface of the object of which an image can be formed must be

diminished; and the quantity of light spread over that image must be proportionably lessened.

Fig. 13.

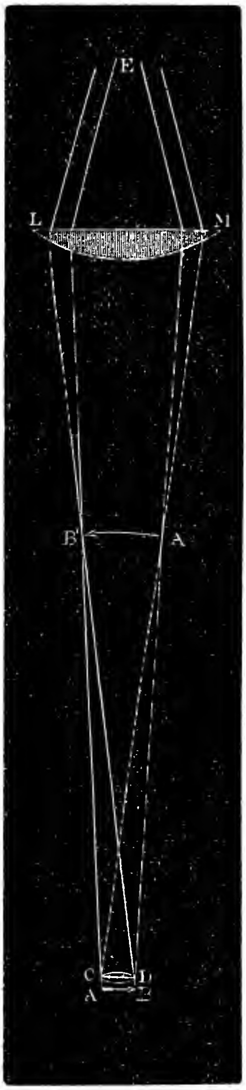


Diagram of simplest form of *Compound Microscope.*

Fig. 14.

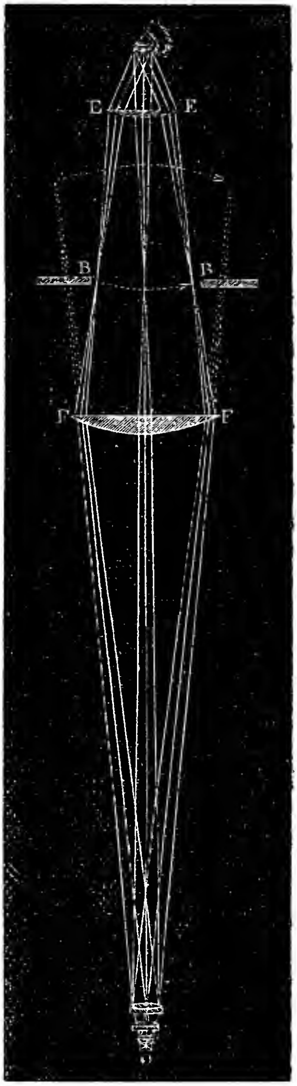
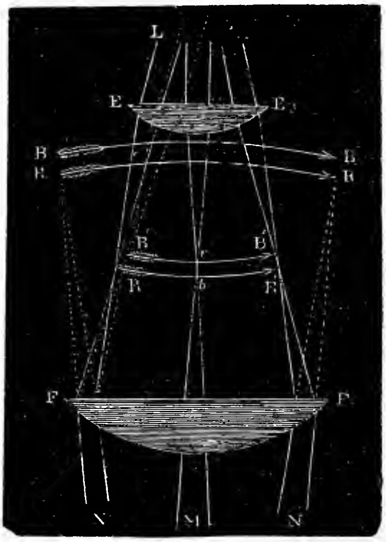


Diagram of complete *Compound Microscope.*

27. In addition to the two lenses of which the Compound Microscope essentially consists, it is found advantageous to introduce another (F F, Fig. 14), between the object-glass and the image formed by it; the purpose of this lens being to change the course

of the rays in such a manner, that the image may be formed of dimensions not too great for the whole of it to come within the range of the Eye-glass. As it thus allows more of the object to be seen at once, it has been called the *field-glass;* but it is now usually considered as belonging to the ocular end of the instrument—the *eye-glass* and the *field-glass* being together termed the *Eye-piece.* Various forms of this Eye-piece have been proposed by different Opticians; and one or another will be preferred, according to the purpose for which it may be required. That which it is most advantageous to employ with Achromatic object-glasses, to the performance of which it is desired to give the greatest possible effect, is termed the *Huyghenian;* having been employed by Huyghens for his telescopes, although without the knowledge of all the advantages which its best construction renders it capable of affording. It consists of two plano-convex lenses (E E and F F, Fig. 14), with their plane sides towards the eye; these are placed at a distance equal to half the sum of their focal lengths; or, to speak with more precision, at half the sum of the focal length of the eye-glass, and of the distance from the field-glass at which an image of the object-glass would be formed by it. A 'stop' or diaphragm, B B, must be placed between the two lenses, in the visual focus of the Eye-glass, which is, of course, the position wherein the image of the object will be formed by the rays brought into convergence by their passage through the field-glass.—Huyghens devised this arrangement merely to diminish the Spherical aberration; but it was subsequently shown by Boscovich that the Chromatic dispersion was also in great part corrected by it. Since the introduction of Achromatic object-glasses for Compound Microscopes, it has been further shown that nearly all error may be avoided by a slight over-correction of these; so that the blue and red rays may be caused to enter the eye in a parallel direction (though not actually coincident), and thus to produce a colourless image. Thus let N M N (Fig. 15) represent the two extreme rays of three pencils, which, without the field-glass, would form a blue image convex to the eye-glass at B B, and a red one at R R; then, by the intervention of the field-glass, a blue image, concave to the eye-glass, is formed at B′ B′, and a red one at R′ R′. As the focus of the Eye-glass is shorter for blue rays than for red rays by just

FIG. 15.



Section of *Huyghenian Eye-piece* adapted to over-corrected Achromatic Objectives.

the difference in the place of these images, their rays, after refraction by it, enter the eye in a parallel direction, and produce a picture free from false colour. If the object-glass had been rendered perfectly achromatic, the blue rays, after passing through the field-glass, would have been brought to a focus at b, and the red at r; so that an error would be produced, which would have been increased instead of being corrected by the eye-glass. Another advantage of a well-constructed Huyghenian eye-piece is, that the image produced by the meeting of the rays after passing through the field-glass, is by it rendered concave towards the eye-glass, instead of convex, so that every part of it may be in focus at the same time, and the field of view thereby rendered flat.*—Two or more Huyghenian Eye-pieces, of different magnifying powers, known as A, B, C, &c., are usually supplied with a Compound Microscope. The utility of the higher powers will mainly depend upon the excellence of the Objectives; for when an Achromatic combination of small aperture, which is sufficiently well corrected to perform very tolerably with a 'low' or 'shallow' eye-piece, is used with an eye-piece of higher magnifying power (commonly spoken of as a 'deeper' one), the image may lose more in brightness and in definition than is gained by its amplification; whilst the image given by an Objective of large angular aperture and very perfect correction, shall sustain so little loss of light or of definition by 'deep eye-piercing,' that the increase of magnifying power shall be almost clear gain. Hence the modes in which different Objectives of the same power, whose performance with shallow eye-pieces is nearly the same, are respectively affected by deep eye-pieces, afford a good test of their respective merits; since any defect in the corrections is sure to be brought out by the higher amplification of the image, whilst a deficiency of aperture is manifested by the want of light.—The working Microscopist will generally find the A eye-piece most suitable, B being occasionally employed when a greater power is required to separate details, whilst C and others still deeper are useful for the purpose of testing the goodness of Objectives, or for special investigations requiring the highest amplification with Objectives of the finest quality. When great penetration or 'focal depth' is required, low Objectives and deep Eye-pieces will often be found convenient.

28. For viewing large flat objects, such as transverse sections of Wood (Chap. IX.) or of Echinus-spines (Plate II. Fig. 1), under low magnifying powers, the Eye-piece known as *Kellner's* may be employed with advantage. In this construction, the field-glass, which is a double-convex lens, is placed in the focus of the eye-glass, without the interposition of a diaphragm; and the eye-glass is an

* Those who desire to gain more information upon this subject than they can from the above notice of it, may be referred to Mr. Varley's investigation of the properties of the Huyghenian Eye-piece, in the 51st volume of the "Transactions of the Society of Arts;" and to the article "Microscope," by Mr. Ross, in the "Penny Cyclopædia," reprinted, with additions, in the "English Cyclopædia."

achromatic combination of a plano-concave of flint with a double-convex of crown, which is slightly under-corrected, so as to neutralize the over-correction given to the Objectives for use with Huyghenian eye-pieces (§ 27). A flat well-illuminated field of as much as fourteen inches in diameter may thus be obtained with very little loss of light; but, on the other hand, there is a certain impairment of defining power, which renders the Kellner eye-piece unsuitable for objects presenting minute structural details; and it is an additional objection, that the smallest speck or smear upon the surface of the field-glass is made so unpleasantly obvious, that the most careful cleansing of that surface is required every time that this Eye-piece is used. Hence it is better fitted for the occasional display of objects of the character already specified, than for the ordinary wants of the working Microscopist.

29. A *solid* Eye-piece made on the principle of the 'Stanhope' lens (§ 24) is sometimes used in place of the ordinary Huyghenian, when high magnifying power is required for testing the performance of Objectives. The lower surface, which has the lesser convexity, serves as a 'field-glass;' whilst the image formed by this is magnified by the highly convex upper surface to which the eye is applied; the advantage supposed to be derived from this construction lying in the abolition of the plane surfaces of the two lenses of the ordinary eye-piece. A 'positive' or Ramsden's Eye-piece—in which the field-glass, whose convex side is turned upwards, is placed so much nearer the eye-glass that the image formed by the Objective lies below instead of above it,—was formerly used for the purpose of Micrometry; a divided glass being fitted in the exact plane occupied by the image, so that its scale and that image are both magnified together by the lenses interposed between them and the eye. The same end, however, may be so readily attained with the Huyghenian eye-piece (§ 91), that no essential advantage is gained by the use of that of Ramsden, the field of which is distinct only in its centre.

4. *Stereoscopic Binocular Microscope.*

30. The admirable invention of the *Stereoscope* by Professor Wheatstone, has led to a general appreciation of the value of the *conjoint use of both eyes* in conveying to the mind a notion of the *solid forms* of objects, such as the use of either eye singly does not generate with the like certainty or effectiveness. And after several attempts, which were attended with various degrees of success, the principle of the Stereoscope has now been applied to the Microscope, with an advantage which those only can truly estimate, who (like the Author) have been for some time accustomed to work with the Stereoscopic Binocular* upon objects that are peculiarly

* It has become necessary to distinguish the Binocular Microscope which gives true *Stereoscopic* effects by the combination of two dissimilar pictures, from a Binocular which simply enables us to look with both eyes at images which are essentially identical (§ 81).

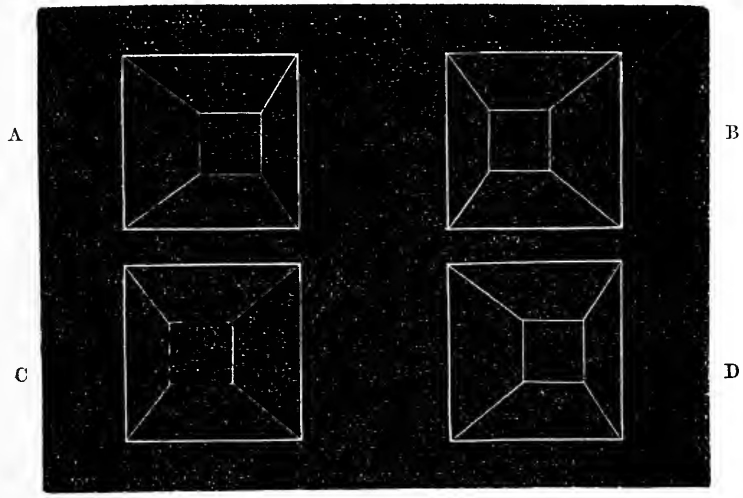
adapted to its powers. As the result of this application cannot be rightly understood without some knowledge of one of the fundamental principles of Binocular vision, a brief account of this will be here introduced.—All vision depends in the first instance on the formation of a picture of the object upon the retina of the Eye, just as the Camera Obscura forms a picture upon the ground glass placed in the focus of its lens. But the two images that are formed by the two eyes respectively, of any solid object that is placed at no great distance in front of them, are far from being identical; the perspective projection of the object varying with the point of view from which it is seen. Of this the reader may easily convince himself, by holding up a thin book in such a position that its back shall be at a moderate distance in front of the nose, and by looking at the book, first with one eye and then with the other; for he will find that the two views he thus obtains are essentially different, so that if he were to represent the book as he actually sees it with each eye, the two pictures would by no means correspond. Yet on looking at the object with the two eyes conjointly, there is no confusion between the images, nor does the mind dwell on either of them singly; but from the blending of the two a conception is gained of a solid projecting body, such as could only be otherwise acquired by the sense of Touch. Now if, instead of looking at the solid object itself, we look with the *right* and *left* eyes respectively at *pictures* of the object, corresponding to those which would be formed by it on the retinæ of the two eyes if it were placed at a moderate distance in front of them, and these visual pictures are brought into coincidence, the same conception of a solid projecting form is generated in the mind, as if the object itself were there. The Stereoscope—whether in the forms originally devised by Prof. Wheatstone, or in the popular modification long subsequently introduced by Sir D. Brewster—simply serves to bring to the two eyes, either by reflexion from mirrors, or by refraction through prisms or lenses, the two dissimilar pictures which would accurately represent the solid object as seen by the two eyes respectively; these being thrown on the two retinæ in the precise positions they would have occupied if formed there direct from the solid Object, of which the mental Image (if the pictures have been correctly taken) is the precise counterpart.* Thus in Fig. 16 the upper pair of pictures (A, B), when combined in the Stereoscope,†

* Although it is a comparatively easy matter to draw in outline two different perspective projections of a Geometrical Solid, such as those which are represented in Fig. 16, it would have been quite impossible to delineate landscapes, buildings, figures, &c., with the same precision; and the Stereoscope would never have obtained the appreciation it now enjoys, but for the ready means supplied by *Photography* of obtaining simultaneous pictures, perfect in their perspective, and truthful in their lights and shades, from two different points of view so selected as to give an effective Stereoscopic combination.

† This combination may be made without the Stereoscope, by looking at these figures with the axes of the eyes brought into convergence upon a somewhat nearer point, so that A is made to fall on B, and C on D.

suggest the idea of a *projecting* truncated Pyramid, with the small square in the centre, and the four sides sloping equally

FIG. 16.



away from it; whilst the combination of the lower pair, C, D (which are identical with the upper, but are transferred to opposite sides), no less vividly brings to the mind the visual conception of a *receding* Pyramid, still with the small square in the centre, but the four sides sloping equally towards it.

31. Thus we see that by simply *crossing* the pictures in the Stereoscope, so as to bring before each eye the picture taken for the other, a 'conversion of relief' is produced in the resulting solid image; the projecting parts being made to recede, and the receding parts brought into relief. In like manner, when several objects are combined in the same crossed pictures, their apparent relative distances are reversed; the remoter being brought nearer, and the nearer carried backwards; so that (for example) a Stereoscopic photograph representing a man standing in front of a mass of ice, shall, by the crossing of the pictures, make the figure appear as if imbedded in the ice. A like conversion of relief may also be made in the case of actual solid objects by the use of the *Pseudoscope;* an instrument devised by Prof. Wheatstone, which has the effect of reversing the perspective projections of objects seen through it by the two eyes respectively; so that the interior of a basin or jelly-mould is made to appear as a projecting solid, whilst the exterior is made to appear hollow. Hence it is now customary to speak of *stereoscopic* vision as that in which the conception of the true natural relief of an object is called-up in the mind, by the normal combination of the two perspective projections formed of it by the right and left eyes respectively; whilst by *pseudoscopic* vision, we mean that 'conversion of relief' which is produced by the combination of two *reversed* perspective projections, whether these

be obtained directly from the object (as by the Pseudoscope), or from 'crossed' pictures (as in the Stereoscope). It is by no means every solid object, however, or every pair of stereoscopic pictures, which can become the subject of this conversion. The degree of facility with which the 'converted' form can be apprehended by the Mind, appears to have great influence on the readiness with which the change is produced. And while there are some objects—the interior of a plaster mask of a face, for example—which can always be 'converted' (or turned inside-out) at once, there are others which resist such conversion with more or less of persistence.*

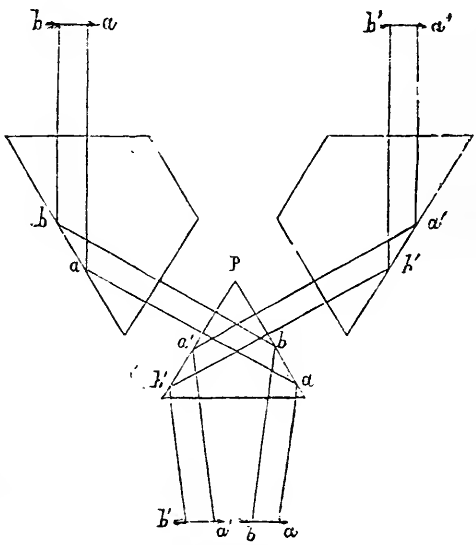
32. Now it is easily shown theoretically, that the picture of any projecting object seen through the Microscope with only the *right*-hand half of an objective having an even moderate angle of aperture, must differ sensibly from the picture of the same object received through the *left*-hand of the same objective; and further, that the difference between such pictures must increase with the angular aperture of the objective. This difference may be practically made apparent by adapting a 'stop' to the objective, in such a manner as to cover either the right or the left half of its aperture; and by then carefully tracing the outline of the object as seen through each half. But it is more satisfactorily brought into view by taking two Photographic pictures of the object, one through each lateral half of the objective; for these pictures when properly paired in the Stereoscope, give a magnified image *in relief*, bringing out on a large scale the solid form of the object from which they were taken. What is needed, therefore, to give the true Stereoscopic power to the Microscope, is a means of so bisecting the cone of rays transmitted by the objective, that of its two lateral halves one shall be transmitted to the right and the other to the left eye. If, however, the image thus formed by the *right* half of the objective of a Compound Microscope were seen by the *right* eye, and that formed by the *left* half were seen by the *left* eye, the resultant conception would be not *stereoscopic* but *pseudoscopic;* the projecting parts being made to appear receding, and *vice versâ.* The reason of this is, that as the Microscope itself reverses the picture (§ 26), the rays proceeding through the *right* and the *left* hand halves of the objective must be made to cross to the *left* and the *right* eyes respectively, in order to correspond with the *direct* view of the object from the two sides; for if this second reversal does not take place, the effect of the first reversal of the images produced by the Microscope exactly corresponds with that produced by the 'crossing' of the pictures in the Stereoscope, or by that reversal of the two perspective projections formed direct from the object, which is effected by the Pseudoscope (§ 31). It was from a want of due appreciation of this principle (the truth of which can now be practically demonstrated, § 38), that the earlier attempts at producing a Stereoscopic Binocular Microscope tended rather to produce a

* For a fuller discussion of this subject, see the Author's "Mental Physiology," §§ 168-170.

'pseudoscopic conversion' of the objects viewed by it, than to represent them in their true relief.

33. *Nachet's Stereoscopic Binocular.*—The first really satisfactory solution of the problem was that worked-out by MM. Nachet; whose original Binocular was constructed on the method shown in Fig. 17. The cone of rays issuing from the back lens of the

FIG. 17.

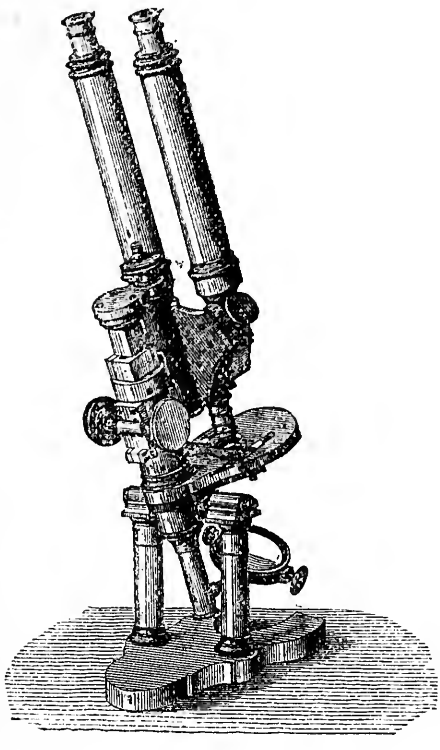


Arrangement of Prisms in Nachet's Stereoscopic Binocular Microscope.

objective meets the flat surface of a prism (p) placed above it, whose section is an equilateral triangle; and is divided by reflexion within this prism into two lateral halves, which cross each other in its interior. The rays a b that form the right half of the cone, impinging very obliquely on the internal face of the prism, suffer total reflexion (§ 2), emerging through its left side perpendicularly to its surface, and therefore undergoing no refraction; whilst the rays a' b' forming the left half of the cone, are reflected in like manner towards the right. Each of these pencils is received by a lateral prism, which again changes its direction, so as to render it parallel to its original course; and thus the two halves a b and a' b' of the original pencil are completely separated from each other, the former being received into the left-hand body of the Microscope (Fig. 18), and the latter into its right-hand body. These two bodies are parallel; and, by means of an adjusting screw at their base, which alters the distance between the central and the lateral prisms, they can be separated-from or approximated towards each other, so that the distance between their axes can be

brought into exact coincidence with the distance between the axes of the eyes of the individual observer.—This instrument gives true Stereoscopic projection to the conjoint image formed by the mental fusion of the two distinct pictures; and with low powers of moderate angular aperture its performance is highly satisfactory. There are however, certain drawbacks to its general utility. First, every ray of each pencil suffers *two* reflexions, and has to pass through *four* surfaces; this necessarily involves a considerable loss of light, with a further liability to the impairment of the image by the smallest want of exactness in the form of either of the prisms. Second, the mechanical arrangements requisite for varying the distance of the bodies, involve an additional liability to derangement in the adjustment of the prisms. Third, the instrument can only be used for its own special purpose; so that the observer must also be provided with an ordinary single-bodied Microscope, for the examination of objects unsuited to the powers of his Binocular. Fourth, the parallelism of the bodies involves parallelism of the axes of the observer's eyes, the maintenance of which for any length of time is fatiguing.

FIG. 18.

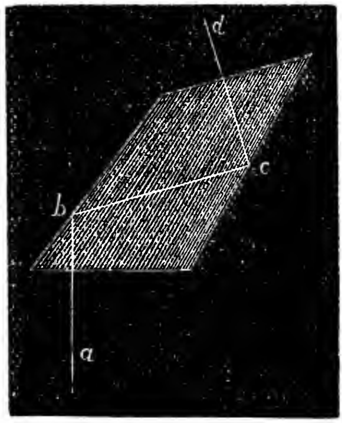


Nachet's Stereoscopic Binocular.

34. *Wenham's Stereoscopic Binocular.*—All these objections are overcome in the admirable arrangement devised by the ingenuity of Mr. Wenham; in whose Binocular the cone of rays proceeding upwards from the objective is divided by the interposition of a prism of the peculiar form shown in Fig. 19, so placed in the tube which carries the objective (Figs. 20, 21, *a*), as only to interrupt one half, *a c*, of the cone, the other half, *a b*, going on continuously to the eye-piece of the principal or right-hand body R, in the axis of which the objective is placed. The interrupted half of the cone (Fig. 19, *a*), on its entrance into the prism, is scarcely subjected to any *refraction*, since its axial ray is perpendicular to the surface it meets; but within the prism it is subjected to two *reflexions* at *b* and *c*, which send it forth again obliquely in the line *d* towards the

eye-piece of the secondary, or left hand body (Fig. 20, L); and since at its emergence its axial ray is again perpendicular to the surface of the glass, it suffers no more refraction on passing out of the prism than on entering it. By this arrangement, the image received by the *right* eye is formed by the rays which have passed through the *left* half of the objective, and have come on without any interruption whatever; whilst the image received by the *left* eye is formed by the rays which have passed through the *right* half of the objective, and have been subjected to two reflexions within the prism, passing through only *two* surfaces of glass. The adjustment for the variation of distance between the axes of the eyes in different individuals, is made by drawing-out or pushing-in the eye-pieces, which are

FIG. 19.



Wenham's Prism.

FIG. 20.

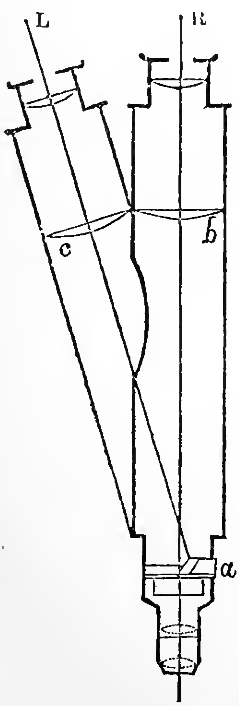
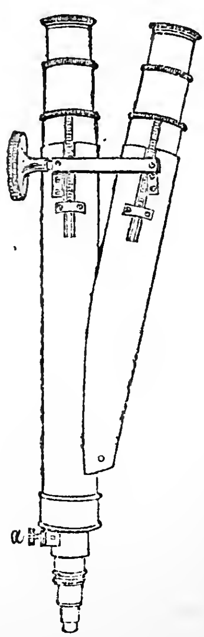


FIG. 21.



Wenham's Stereoscopic Binocular Microscope.

moved consentaneously by means of a milled-head, as shown in Fig. 21.—Now, although it may be objected to Mr. Wenham's method (1), that as the rays which pass through the prism and are obliquely reflected into the secondary body, traverse a longer distance than those which pass-on uninterruptedly into the principal body, the picture formed by them will be somewhat larger than that which is formed by the other set; and (2), that the picture formed by the rays which have been subjected to the action of the prism must be inferior in distinctness to that formed by the uninterrupted half of the cone of rays,—these objections are found to have no practical weight. For it is well known to those who have experimented upon the phenomena of Stereoscopic vision (1), that a slight difference in the size of the two pictures is no bar to their perfect combination; and (2) that if one of the pictures be good, the full effect of relief is given to the image, even though the other picture be faint and imperfect, provided that the outlines of the latter are sufficiently distinct to represent its perspective projection. Hence if, instead of the two equally *half-good* pictures which are obtainable by MM. Nachet's original construction, we had in Mr. Wenham's one *good* and one *indifferent* picture, the latter would be decidedly preferable. But, in point of fact, the deterioration of the *second* picture in Mr. Wenham's arrangement is less considerable than that of *both* pictures in the original arrangement of MM. Nachet; so that the optical performance of the Wenham Binocular is in every way superior. It has, in addition, these further advantages over the preceding:—*First*, the greater comfort in using it (especially for some length of time together), which results from the convergence of the axes of the eyes at their usual angle for moderately-near objects; *second*, that this Binocular arrangement does not necessitate a special instrument, but may be applied to any Microscope which is capable of carrying the weight of the secondary body; the prism being so fixed in a movable frame that it may in a moment be taken out of the tube or replaced therein, so that when it has been removed, the principal body acts in every respect as an ordinary Microscope, the entire cone of rays passing uninterruptedly into it; and *third*, that the simplicity of its construction renders its derangement almost impossible.*

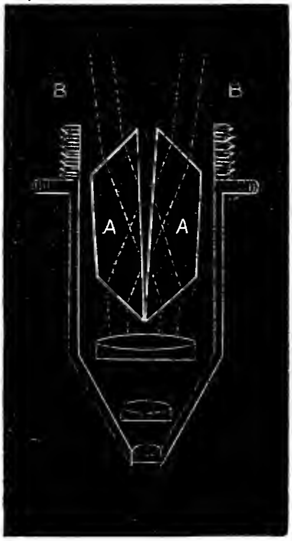
35. *Stephenson's Binocular.*—A new form of Stereoscopic Binocular has been recently introduced by Mr. Stephenson,† which has certain advantages over both the preceding.—The cone of rays passing upwards from the object-glass, meets a pair of prisms (A A, Fig. 22) fixed in the tube of the microscope immediately above the posterior combination of the objective, so as to catch the light-rays on their emergence from it; these it divides into two halves,

* The Author cannot allow this opportunity to pass without expressing his sense of the liberality with which Mr. Wenham freely presented to the Public this important invention, by which there can be no doubt that he might have largely profited if he had chosen to retain the exclusive right to it.

† "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. iv. (1870), p. 61, and Vol. vii. (1872), p. 167.

each of which is subjected to internal reflection from the inner side of the prism through which it passes; and the slight separation of the two prisms at their upper end, gives to the two pencils B B, a divergence which carries them through two obliquely-placed bodies to their respective eye-pieces. By this internal reflection, a lateral reversal is produced, which antagonizes the lateral reversal of the Microscopic image; so that each eye receives the image formed by its own half of the objective, in the position required for the production of Stereoscopic relief by the mental combination of the two. As the cone of rays is equally divided by the two prisms, and its two halves are similarly acted-on, the two pictures are equally illuminated, and of the same size; while the close approximation of the prisms to the back lens of the objective enables even high powers to be used with very little loss of light or of definition, provided that the angles and surfaces of the prisms are worked with exactness. And as the two bodies can be made to converge at a smaller angle than in the Wenham arrangement, the observer looks through them with more comfort. But Mr. Stephenson's ingenious arrangement—which was first worked-out practically by the late Thomas Ross, and has since been very successfully constructed by Browning—is liable to the great drawback of not being convertible (like Mr. Wenham's) into an ordinary Monocular, by the withdrawal of a prism; so that the use of this form of it will be probably restricted to those who desire to work stereoscopically with high powers.—In order to avoid slight errors arising from the impinging of the central ray of the cone, at its emergence from the objective, against the double edge of the prism-combination, Mr. Stephenson has devised a special form of sub-stage Condenser (also made by Mr. Browning), which causes the illuminating rays to issue from the object in two separate pencils, which will strike the *surfaces* of the two prisms. This consists of two deep cylindrical lenses A and B, whose focal lengths are as 2·3 to 1, having their curved faces opposed to each other, as shown in section at C; the larger and less convex being placed with its plane side downwards, so as to receive light from the mirror, or (which is preferable) direct from a lamp. Under this combination slides a movable stop, with two circular openings,

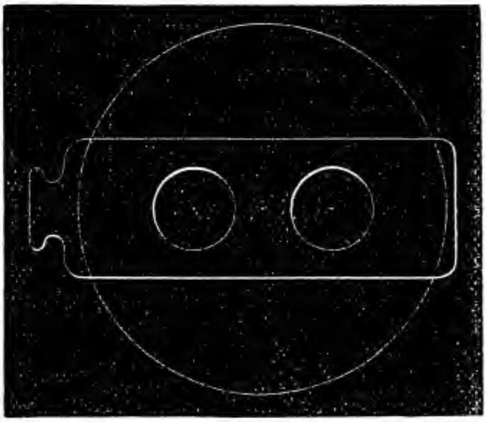
FIG. 22.



Stephenson's Binocular Prisms.

FIG. 23.

FIG. 24.

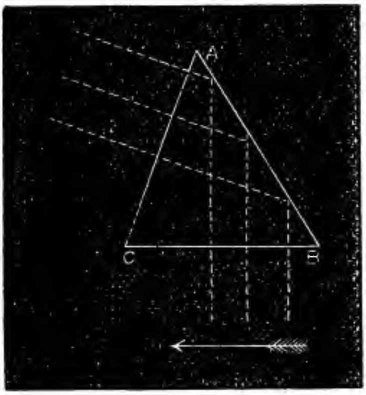


Double Stop for Stephenson Binocular.

as shown in Fig. 24. The lamp being placed in front of the instrument, the two apertures admit similar pencils of light from it; so that each eye receives a completely equal illumination, and no confusion can occur from the impinging of the rays on the lower edges of the prisms. With this arrangement the Podura-markings are shown as figured by the late Richard Beck (Plate II., fig. 2); while the curvatures of the scale come out with the distinctness peculiar to Binocular vision.

36. But one of the greatest advantages attendant on Mr. Stephenson's construction, is its capability of being combined with an *erecting* arrangement; which renders it applicable to purposes for which the Wenham Binocular cannot be conveniently used. By the interposition of a plane silvered mirror, or (still better) of a reflecting prism (Fig. 25), above the tube containing the binocular prisms, each half of the cone of rays is so deflected, that its image is reversed *vertically;* the rays entering the prism through the surface C B, being reflected by the surface A B, so as to pass out again by the surface A C in the direction of the dotted lines. Thus the right and the left half-cones are directed respectively into the right and the left bodies, which are inclined at a convenient angle, as shown in Fig. 26; so that—the stage being horizontal—the observer can look at his object at the inclination which he finds most comfortable. The angle to which the prism is worked can be varied to suit individual requirements; but if it should be desired to use the instrument with Polarized light, it will be found advantageous that the reflection from the surface A B should be at the polarizing angle of $56\frac{3}{4}°$, since, by substituting for the silvered mirror or prism a highly polished mirror of black glass, this will then act as an analyzer,

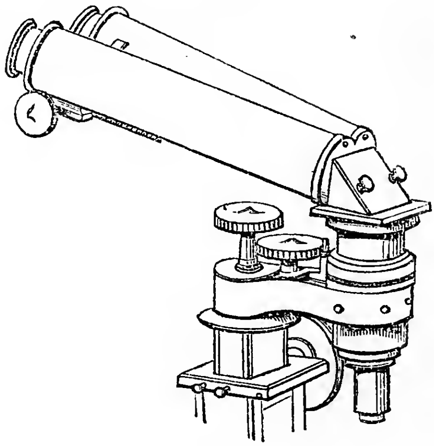
FIG. 25.



Stephenson's Erecting Prism.

with some decided advantages over the Nicol prism, except in being incapable of rotation.—The great value of the Erecting Binocular consists in its applicability to the picking-out of very minute objects, such as *Diatoms*, *Polycystina*, or *Foraminifera*; and to the prosecution of minute dissections, especially when these have to be carried-on in fluid. No one who has only thus worked *monocularly*, can appreciate the guidance derivable from *binocular* vision, when once the habit of working with it has been formed.

FIG. 26.



Stephenson's Erecting Binocular.

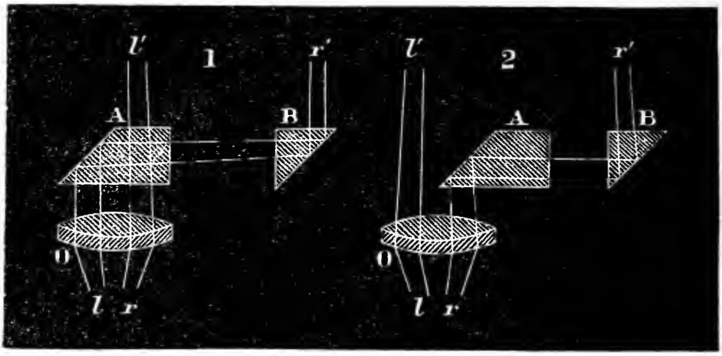
37. *Tolles' Binocular Eye-piece.*—An ingenious Eye-piece has been constructed by Mr. Tolles (Boston, U.S.), which, fitted into the body of a Monocular Microscope, converts it into an Erecting Stereoscopic Binocular. This conversion is effected by the interposition of a system of prisms similar to that originally devised by MM. Nachet (Fig. 17), but made on a larger scale, between an 'erector' (resembling that used in the eye-piece of a day-telescope) and a pair of ordinary Huyghenian eye-pieces; the *central* or dividing prism being placed at or near the plane of the secondary image formed by the erector, while the two eye-pieces are placed immediately above the two *lateral* prisms; and the combination thus making that division in the pencils forming the secondary image, which in the Nachet Binocular it makes in the pencils emerging from the objective.—As all the image-forming rays have to pass through the two surfaces of four lenses and two prisms, besides sustaining two internal reflexions in the latter, it is surprising that Prof. H.L. Smith—while admitting a loss of light—should feel able to speak of the definition of this instrument as not inferior to that of either the Wenham or the Nachet Binocular. It is obviously a great advantage that this Eye-piece can be used with any microscope, and with Objectives of high power; but as its effectiveness must depend upon extraordinary accuracy of workmanship, its cost must necessarily be great.*

38. *Nachet's Stereo-pseudoscopic Binocular.*—An ingenious modification of Mr. Wenham's arrangement has been introduced by MM. Nachet; which has the attribute altogether peculiar to

* See "American Journal of Science," Vol. xxxviii. (1864), p. 111, and Vol. xxxix. (1865), p. 212; and "Monthly Microsc. Journal," Vol. vi. (1871), p 45.

itself, of giving to the image either its true Steroscopic projection, or a Pseudoscopic 'conversion of relief,' at the will of the observer. This is accomplished by the use of two prisms, one of them (Fig. 27, A) placed over the cone of rays proceeding upwards

FIG. 27.

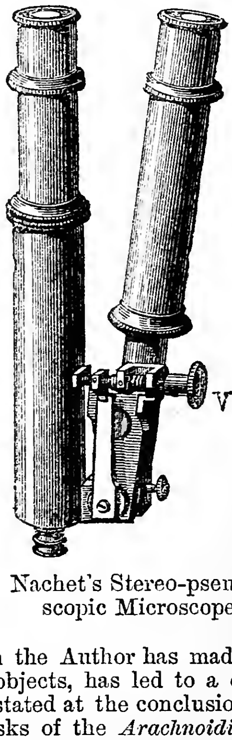


Arrangement of Prisms in Nachet's Stereo-pseudoscopic Binocular:—
1, for Stereoscopic; 2, for Pseudoscopic effect.

from the objective, and the other (B) at the base of the secondary or additional body, which is here placed on the right (Fig. 28). The prism A has its upper and lower surfaces parallel; one of its lateral faces is inclined at an angle of 45°, whilst the other is vertical. When this is placed in the position 1, so that its inclined surface lies over the *left half* (l) of the cone of rays, these rays, entering the prism perpendicularly (or nearly so) to its inferior plane surface, undergo total reflection at its oblique face, and being thus turned into the horizontal direction, emerge through the vertical surface at right angles to it. They then enter the vertical face of the other prism B; and after suffering reflexion within it, are transmitted upwards into the *right*-hand body r', passing out of the prism perpendicularly to the plane of emersion, which has such an inclination that the right-hand or secondary body (R, Fig. 28) may diverge from the left or principal body at a suitable angle. On the other hand, the *right* half (r) of the cone of rays passes upwards, without essential interruption, through the two parallel surfaces of the prism A, into the left-hand body (l'), and is thus crossed by the other in the interior of the prism. But if the prism A be pushed over towards the right (by pressing the button a, Fig. 28), so as to leave the *left* half of the objective uncovered (as shown in Fig. 27, 2), that half (l) of the cone of rays will go on without any interruption into the *left*-hand body (l'), whilst the *right* half (r r') will be reflected by the oblique face of the prism into the horizontal direction) will emerge at its vertical face, and being received by the second prism, B, will be directed by it into the *right*-hand body (r').—Now in the *first* posi-

tion, the two halves of the cone of rays being made to cross into the *opposite* bodies, true Stereoscopic relief is given to the image formed by their recombination, just as in the arrangements previously described. But when, in the *second* position, each half of the cone passes into the body of its own side, so that the reversal of the images produced by the Microscope itself (§ 26) is no longer corrected by the crossing of the two pencils separated by the prism A, a Pseudoscopic effect, or 'conversion of relief,' is produced, the projections of the surface of the object being represented as hollows, and its concavities being turned into convexities. The suddenness with which this conversion is brought about, without any alteration in the position either of the object or of the observer, is a phenomenon which no intelligent person can witness without interest; whilst it has a very special value for those who study the Physiology and Psychology of Binocular vision.*—As originally constructed, the adjustment for distance between the eyes was made by giving a horizontal traversing motion to the prism B and the secondary body placed above it, by means of a screw action. But this method was open to the two objections that the focal distance of the secondary body was thereby altered, and that the traversing fittings were liable to become loose by wear. To meet these, M. Nachet devised the construction represented in Fig. 28; in which the adjustment of the distance between the eye-pieces is effected by altering the angle of convergence between the bodies. This is done by turning the screw V, which is furnished with two threads of different speeds, whereby an inclination is given to the prism equal to half the angular displacement of the tube; an arrangement necessitated by the fact that the displacement of the rays reflected by a rotating surface is double the angle described by that

FIG. 28.



Nachet's Stereo-pseudoscopic Microscope.

* The result of the numerous applications which the Author has made of this instrument to a great variety of Microscopic objects, has led to a confirmation of the principle of Pseudoscopic vision, stated at the conclusion of § 31.—Where, as in the case of the saucer-like disks of the *Arachnoidiscus* (Plate XII.), the real and the converted forms are equally familiar, the 'conversion' either of the convex exterior, or the concave interior, is made both suddenly and completely. In more complex and less familiar forms, on the other hand, the conversion frequently requires time; being often partial in the first instance, and only gradually becoming complete. And there are some objects which resist conversion altogether, the only effect being a confusion of the two images.

surface.*—As an ordinary working instrument, however, this improved Nachet Binocular can scarcely be equal to that of Wenham or Stephenson; whilst it must be regarded as inferior to the former in the following particulars: *First*, that as the uninterrupted half of the cone of rays (when the interposed prism is adjusted for Stereoscopic vision) has to pass through the *two* plane surfaces of the prism, a certain loss of light and deterioration of the picture are necessarily involved; whilst, as the interrupted half of the cone of rays has to pass through *four* surfaces, the picture formed by it is yet more unfavourably affected; *second*, that as power of motion must be given to *both* prisms—to A, for the reversal of the images, and to B for the adjustment of the distance between the two bodies—there is a greater liability to derangement.† It does not give the equal illumination of Mr. Stephenson's, is less free from optical error, and cannot, like his, be used with high powers.

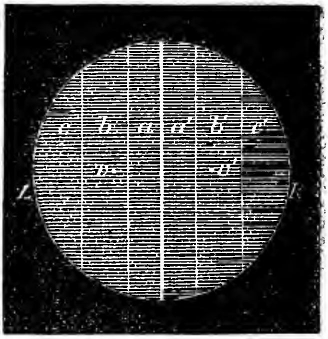
39. The Stereoscopic Binocular is put to its most advantageous use, when applied either to *opaque* objects of whose solid forms we are desirous of gaining an exact appreciation, or to *transparent* objects which have such a thickness as to make the accurate distinction between their nearer and their more remote planes a matter of importance. That its best and truest effects can only be obtained by objectives not exceeding 40° of angular aperture, may be shown both theoretically and practically. Taking the average distance between the pupils of the two eyes as the base of a triangle, and any point of an object placed at the ordinary reading distance as its apex, the vertical angle enclosed between its two sides will be from 12° to 15°; which, in other words, is the angle of divergence between the rays proceeding from any point of an object at the ordinary reading distance to the two eyes respectively. This angle, therefore, represents that at which the two pictures of an object should be taken in the Photographic Camera, in order to produce the effect of ordinary binocular vision without exaggeration; and it is the one which is adopted by Portrait-photographers, who have found by experience that a *smaller* angle makes the image formed by the combination of the pictures appear too *flat*, whilst a *larger* angle *exaggerates* its projection. Now, in applying this principle to the Microscope, we have to treat the two lateral halves (L, R, Fig. 29) of the objective as the two separate lenses of a double portrait-camera; and to consider at what angle each half should

* "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. i. (1869), p. 31.

† M. Nachet's arrangement, like Mr. Wenham's, can be adapted to any existing Microscope; and it seems peculiarly suitable to those of French or German construction, in which the body is much shorter than in the ordinary English models. For in the application of the Wenham arrangement to a *short* Microscope, the requisite distance between the eye-glasses of its two bodies can only be obtained by making those bodies converge at an angle so wide as to produce great discomfort in the use of the instrument, from the necessity of maintaining an unusual degree of convergence between the axes of the eyes.

be entered by the rays passing through it to form its picture.* To any one acquainted with the principles of Optics, it must be obvious that the picture formed by each half of the objective must be (so to speak) an average or general resultant of the dissimilar pictures formed by its different parts. Thus, if we could divide the lateral halves or semi-lenses L, R, of the objective by vertical lines into the three bands $a\ b\ c$ and $a'\ b'\ c'$, and could stop off the two corresponding bands on either side, so as only to allow the light to pass through the remaining pair, we should find that the two pictures

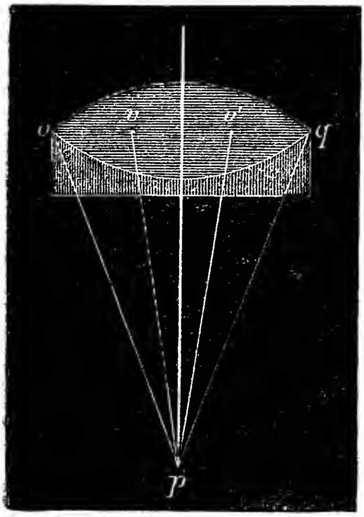
FIG. 29.



we should receive of the object would vary sensibly, according as they are formed by the bands $a\ a'$, $b\ b'$, or $c\ c'$. For supposing the pictures taken through the bands $b\ b'$ to be sufficiently dissimilar in their perspective projections, to give, when combined in the Microscope, a sufficient but unexaggerated Stereoscopic relief, those taken through the bands $a\ a'$ on either side of the centre would be no more dissimilar than two portraits taken at a very small angle between the cameras, and their combination would very inadequately bring out the effect of relief; whilst, on the other hand, the two pictures taken through the extreme lateral bands $c\ c'$, would differ as widely as portraits taken at too great an angle of divergence between the cameras, and their combination would exaggerate the actual relief of the object. Now, in each of the lateral halves, a spot $v\ v'$ may be found by mathematical computation, which may be designated the *visual centre* of the whole Semi-lens; that is, the spot which, if all the rest of the semi-lens were stopped-off, would form a picture most nearly corresponding to that given by the whole of it. This having been determined, it is easy to ascertain what should be the angle of aperture ($o\ p\ q$, Fig. 30) of the entire lens, in order that the angles $v\ p\ v'$ between the 'visual centres' of its two halves should be 15°. The investigation of

* The writer has been surprised to find that the advantages of the Stereoscopic Binocular have been treated by certain Microscopists of eminence as altogether chimerical; no real difference (they assert) being discernible between the right-hand and the left-hand pictures.—This assertion is obviously based upon the limitation of the use of the instrument to *thin transparent* objects. It is where the surface is *uneven* (as is the case with most Opaque objects), or where a Transparent object shows different structures in different planes of its thickness (as in injected preparations), that the special value of the Binocular shows itself. The dissimilarity of the two pictures of such objects received through the two halves of the objective, was long since demonstrated by Mr. Wenham; who, by covering with a diaphragm, first the right and then the left half of an objective of 2-3rds inch focus and 28° of aperture, and carefully drawing the two images thus obtained, found them to be such as would combine stereoscopically, so as to bring out the object in relief. See "Transact. of Microsc. Soc.," N.S., Vol. ii. (1854), p. 1.

FIG. 30.



this question having been kindly undertaken for the author by his friend Dr. Hirst, the conclusion at which he arrived was that the angle of aperture of the entire lens should be about 36·6°. This, which he gave as an *approximate* result only (the requisite data for a complete Mathematical solution of the question not having yet been obtained), harmonizes most remarkably with the results of experimental observations made upon *opaque objects of known shape*, with Objectives of different angular apertures; so that the Stereoscopic images produced by the several objectives may be compared, not only with each other, but with the actual forms which they ought to present. No better objects can be selected for this purpose, than those which are *perfectly spherical;* such as various globular forms of the *Polycystina* (Plate XIX.), or the Pollen-grains of the *Malvaceæ* and many other Flowering-plants. When either of these is placed under a Stereoscopic Binocular, provided with an objective of half-inch or 4-10ths inch focus having an angular aperture of 80° or 90°, the effect of projection is so greatly exaggerated, that the side next the eye, instead of resembling a hemisphere, looks like *the small end of an egg*. If, then, the aperture of such an objective be reduced to 60° by a diaphragm placed behind its back lens, the exaggeration is diminished, though not removed; the hemispherical surface now looking like *the large end of an egg*. But if the aperture be further reduced to 40° by the same means, it is at once seen that the hemispheres turned towards the eye are truly represented; the effect of spherical projection being quite adequate, without being in the least exaggerated. Hence it may be confidently affirmed—alike on theoretical and on practical grounds—that when an objective of wider angle than 40° is used with the Stereoscopic Binocular, the object viewed by it is represented in *exaggerated* relief, so that its apparent form must be more or less distorted.*—There are other substantial reasons,

* This position has been contested by observers who have used high powers binocularly with *transparent* objects, and who, in their zeal for large angles of aperture, affirm that no exaggeration of Stereoscopic effect is produced by the combination of the two pictures thus obtained. But it seems to be forgotten that such objects *cannot* afford the actual measure of Stereoscopic effect, which is given by *opaque objects of known form*—as above described. And, so far as the Author's experience extends, every competent observer who makes use of a good half-inch Objective of 40° aperture—resembling the one first con-

moreover, why Objectives of limited angle of aperture should be preferred (save in particular cases) for use with the Stereoscopic Binocular. As the special value of this instrument is to convey to the mind a notion of the *solid forms* of objects, and of the relations of their parts to each other, not merely on the same but on different planes, it is obvious that those Objectives are most suitable to produce this effect, which possess the greatest amount of *penetration* or *focal depth;* that is, which most distinctly show, not merely what is precisely in the focal plane, but what lies nearer to or more remote from the objective. Now, as will be explained hereafter (§ 158, II.), increase of the angle of aperture is necessarily attended with diminution of 'penetrating' power; so that an objective of 60° or 80° of aperture, though exhibiting minute surface-details which an objective of 40° cannot show, is much inferior to it in suitability to convey a true conception of the general form of any object, the parts of which project considerably above the focal plane or recede below it.

40. In concluding these general observations upon the use of the Stereoscopic Binocular, the Author would draw attention to two important advantages he has found it to possess; his own experience on these points being fully confirmed by that of others.—In the *first* place, the *penetrating power* or *focal depth* of the Binocular is greatly superior to that of the Monocular microscope; so that an object whose surface presents considerable inequalities is very much more distinctly seen with the former than with the latter. The difference may in part be attributed to the practical reduction in the angle of aperture of the Objective, which is produced by the division of the cone of rays transmitted through it into two halves; so that the picture received through each half of an Objective of 60° is formed by rays diverging at an angle of only 30°. But that this optical explanation does not go far to account for the fact, is easily proved by the simple experiment of looking at the object in the first instance through each eye separately (the prism being in place), and then with both eyes together; the distinctness of the parts which lie above and beneath the focal

structed to his order by Messrs. Powell and Lealand, and now procurable from several excellent makers—in the study of *Polycystina*, the smaller *Foraminifera*, or the larger discoidal *Diatoms*, viewed as opaque objects, soon becomes sensible of its advantage over Objectives of the same power but of larger angular aperture, in giving (1) unexaggerated relief, (2) much greater focal depth, and (3) such a working distance as enables *side*-illumination to be conveniently used. Having lately had occasion to give much attention to the structure and development of *Isthmia* (Chap. VII.), the writer has found great advantage from the use of a 1-4th objective, constructed by Zeiss, of what will be considered by many the absurdly low angle of 40°; the truth of the conception it gives of the *solid forms* of the frustules (when viewed as opaque objects), which is capable of easy verification, being in striking contrast with the violent exaggeration of relief which is produced when the same objects are similarly viewed through a 1-4th inch of 90° or 120° aperture. Doubtless the *elementary structure* of the frustule can only be properly studied by an Objective of large angle; but this is an altogether different inquiry.

plane being found to be much greater when the two pictures are combined, than it is in either of them separately. In the absence of any adequate optical explanation of the greater range of focal depth thus shown to be possessed by the Stereoscopic Binocular, the Author is inclined to attribute it to an allowance for the relative distances of the parts, which seems to be unconsciously made by the *mind* of the observer, when the solid image is shaped-out in it by the combination of the two pictures.—This seems the more likely from the *second* fact to be now mentioned: namely, that when the Binocular is employed upon objects suited to its powers, the prolonged use of it is attended with *very much less fatigue* than is that of the Monocular Microscope. This, again, may be in some degree attributed to the division of the work between the two eyes; but the Author is satisfied that, unless there is a feeling of discomfort in the eye itself, the sense of fatigue is rather *mental* than *visual*, and that it proceeds from the constructive effort which the observer has to make, who aims at realizing the solid form of the object he is examining, by an interpretation based on the *flat picture* of it presented by his vision, aided only by the use of the focal adjustment, which enables him to determine what are its near and what its remote parts, and to form an estimate of their difference of distance. Now, a great part of this constructive effort is saved by the use of the Binocular; which at once brings before the Mind's eye the *solid image* of the object, and thus gives to the observer a conception of its form usually more complete and accurate than he could derive from any amount of study of a Monocular picture.*

* It has happened to the Author to be frequently called on to explain the advantages of the Binocular to Continental (especially German) *savans*, who had not been previously acquainted with the instrument. And he has been struck with finding that when he exhibited to them objects with which they had already become familiar by careful study, and of whose solid forms they had attained an accurate conception, they perceived no advantage in the Stereoscopic combination, seeing such objects *with* it (visually) just as they had been previously accustomed to see them (mentally) *without* it. But when he has exhibited to them suitable objects with which they had *not* been previously familiarized, and has caused them to look at these in the first instance *monocularly*, and then *stereoscopically*, he has never failed to satisfy them of the value of the latter method, except when some visual imperfection has prevented them from properly appreciating it. He may mention that he has found the wing of the little Moth known as *Zenzera Œsculi*, which has an undulating surface, whereon the scales are set at various angles, instead of having the usual imbricated arrangement, a peculiarly appropriate object for this demonstration; the general inequality of its surface, and the individual obliquities of its scales, being at once shown by the Binocular, with a force and completeness which could not be attained by the most prolonged and careful Monocular study.

CHAPTER II.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE MICROSCOPE.

41. The *optical* principles whereon the operation of the Microscope depends having now been explained, we have next to consider the *mechanical* provisions whereby they are brought to bear upon the different purposes which the instrument is destined to serve. And first, it will be desirable to state those general principles which have now received the sanction of universal experience, in regard to the best arrangement of its constituent parts.—Every *complete* Microscope, whether Simple or Compound, must possess, in addition to the lens or combination of lenses which affords its magnifying power, a *stage* whereon the Object may securely rest, a *concave mirror* for the illumination of transparent objects from beneath, and a *condensing-lens* for the illumination of opaque objects from above.

I. Now, in whatever mode these may be connected with each other, it is essential that *the Optical part and the Stage should be so disposed, as either to be altogether free from tendency to vibration, or to vibrate together*; since it is obvious that any movement of one, in which the other does not partake, will be augmented to the eye of the observer in proportion to the magnifying power employed. In a badly-constructed instrument, even though placed upon a steady table resting upon the firm floor of a well-built house, when high powers are used, the object is seen to oscillate so rapidly at the slightest tremor—such as that caused by a person walking across the room, or by a carriage rolling-by in the street—as to be frequently almost indistinguishable: whereas in a well-constructed instrument, scarcely any perceptible effect will be produced by even greater disturbances. Hence, in the choice of a Microscope, it should always be subjected to this test, and should be unhesitatingly rejected if the result be unfavourable. If the instrument should be found free from fault when thus tested with *high* powers, its steadiness with *low* powers may be assumed; but, on the other hand, though a Microscope may give an image free from perceptible tremor when the lower powers only are employed, it may be quite unfit for use with the higher.—The Author has found no test for steadiness so *crucial* as the vibration of a paddle-steamer going at full speed against a head-sea; and the result of his comparison between the two principal 'models' generally used in this country will be stated hereafter (§ 49).

II. The next requisite is *a capability of accurate adjustment to every variety of focal distance, without movement of the object.* It is a principle universally recognized in the construction of good Microscopes, that the *stage* whereon the object is placed should be a *fixture;* the movement by which the focus is to be adjusted being given to the optical portion. This movement should be such as to allow free range from a minute fraction of an inch to three or four inches, with equal power of obtaining a delicate adjustment at any part. It should also be so accurate, that the optic axis of the instrument should not be in the least altered by any movement in a vertical direction; so that if an object be brought into the centre of the field with a low power, and a higher power be then substituted, the object should be found in the centre of *its* field, notwithstanding the great alteration in the focus. In this way much time may often be saved by employing a low power as a *finder* for an object to be examined by a higher one; and when an object is being viewed by a succession of powers, little or no readjustment of its place on the stage should be required. For the Simple Microscope, in which it is seldom advantageous to use lenses of shorter focus than 1-4th inch (save where 'doublets' are employed, § 23), a *rack-and-pinion* adjustment, if it be made to work both tightly and smoothly, answers sufficiently well; and this is quite adequate also for the focal adjustment of the Compound body, when objectives of low power only are employed. But for any lenses whose focus is less than half-an-inch, a 'fine adjustment,' or 'slow motion,' by means of a *screw-movement* operating either on the object-glass alone or on the entire body, is of great value; and for the highest powers it is quite indispensable. In some Microscopes, indeed, which are provided with a 'fine adjustment,' the rack-and-pinion movement is dispensed with, the 'coarse adjustment,' being given by merely *sliding* the body up and down in the socket which grasps it; but this plan is only admissible where, for the sake of extreme cheapness or portability, the instrument has to be reduced to the form of utmost simplicity.

III. Scarcely less important than the preceding requisite, in the case of the Compound Microscope, especially with the long body of the ordinary English model, is *the capability of being placed in either a vertical or a horizontal position, or at any angle with the horizon,* without deranging the adjustment of its parts to each other, and without placing the eye-piece in such a position as to be inconvenient to the observer. It is certainly a matter of surprise, that some Microscopists, especially on the Continent, should still forego the advantages of the inclined position, these being attainable by a very small addition to the cost of the instrument; but the inconvenience of the vertical arrangement is much less when the body of the microscope is short, as in the ordinary Continental model; and there are many cases in which it is absolutely necessary that the stage should be horizontal. This position, however, can at any time be given to the stage of the inclining Microscope, by bringing

the optic axis of the instrument into the vertical direction. And even with the stage horizontal, a convenient inclination may be given to the visual axis, not merely by such modifications in general construction as constitute the special features of the erecting Binocular of Mr. Stephenson (§ 36) or the Inverted Microscope of Dr. Laurence Smith (§ 80), but by the application to the ordinary vertical body of the erecting eye-piece of M. Nachet (§ 86).—In ordinary cases an inclination of the body at an angle of about 55° to the horizon will usually be found most convenient for unconstrained observation; and the instrument should be so constructed, as, when thus inclined, to give to the stage such an elevation above the table, that, when the hands are employed at it, the arms may rest conveniently upon the table. In this manner a degree of support is attained, which gives such free play to the muscles of the hands, that movements of the greatest nicety may be executed by them; and the fatigue of long-continued observation is greatly diminished. Such minutiæ may appear too trivial to deserve mention; but no practised Microscopist will be slow to acknowledge their value.—For other purposes, again, it is requisite that the Microscope should be placed horizontally, as when the Camera Lucida is used for drawing or measuring. It ought, therefore, to be made capable of every such variety of position; and the Stage must of course be provided with some means of holding the object, when it is itself placed in a position so inclined that the object would slip down unless sustained.

IV. The last principle on which we shall here dwell, as essential to the value of a Microscope designed for ordinary work, is *Simplicity in the construction and adjustment of every part.* Many ingenious mechanical devices have been invented and executed, for the purpose of overcoming difficulties which are in themselves really trivial. A moderate amount of dexterity in the use of the hands is sufficient to render most of these superfluous; and without such dexterity, no one even with the most complete mechanical facilities, will ever become a good Microscopist. Among the conveniences of simplicity, the practised Microscopist will not fail to recognize the saving of time effected by being able quickly to set up and put away his instrument. Where a number of parts are to be screwed together before it can be brought into use, interesting objects (as well as time) are not unfrequently lost; and the same cause will often occasion the instrument to be left exposed to the air and dust, to its great detriment, because *time* is required to put it away; so that a slight advantage on the side of simplicity of arrangement often causes an inferior instrument to be preferred by the working Microscopist to a superior one. Yet there is, of course, a limit to this simplification; and no arrangement can be objected-to on this score, which gives advantages in the examination of difficult objects, or in the determination of doubtful questions, such as no simpler means can afford.—The meaning of this distinction will become apparent, if it be applied to the cases of the Mechanical Stage

and the Achromatic Condenser. For although the Mechanical Stage may be considered a valuable aid in observation, as facilitating the finding of a minute object, or the examination of the entire surface of a large one, yet it adds nothing to the clearness of our view of either; and its place may in great degree be supplied by the fingers of a good manipulator. On the other hand, the use of the Achromatic Condenser not only contributes very materially, but is absolutely indispensable, to the formation of a perfect image, in the case of many objects of a difficult class; the want of it cannot be compensated by the most dexterous use of the ordinary appliances; and consequently, although it may fairly be considered superfluous as regards a large proportion of the purposes to which the Microscope is directed, whether for investigation or for display, yet as regards the particular objects just alluded to, it must be considered as no less necessary a part of the instrument than the Achromatic Objective itself. Where expense is not an object, the Microscope should doubtless be fitted with *both* these valuable accessories; where, on the other hand, the cost is so limited that only *one* can be afforded, *that* one should be selected which will make the instrument most useful for the purposes to which it is likely to be applied.

In the account now to be given of the principal forms of Microscope readily procurable in this country, it will be the Author's object, not so much to enumerate and describe the various patterns which the several Makers of the instrument have produced; as, by selecting from among them those examples which it seems to him most desirable to make known, and by specifying the peculiar advantages which each of these presents, to guide his readers in the choice of the *kind* of Microscope best suited on the one hand, to the class of investigations they may be desirous of following out, and, on the other, to their pecuniary ability. He is anxious, however, that he should not be supposed to mark any preference for the particular instruments he has selected, over those constructed upon the same general plan by other Makers. To have enumerated them all, would obviously be quite incompatible with the plan of his Treatise; but he has considered it fair (save in one or two special cases) to give the preference to those Makers who have worked out their own plans of construction, and have thus furnished (to say the least) the general designs which have been adopted with more or less of modification by others.

SIMPLE MICROSCOPES.

42. Under this head, the common *Hand-Magnifier* or pocket lens first claims our attention; being in reality a Simple Microscope, although not commonly accounted as such. Although this little instrument is in every one's hands, and is indispensable to the

Naturalist—furnishing him with the means of at once making such *preliminary* examinations as often afford him most important guidance—yet there are comparatively few who know how to handle it to the best advantage. The chief difficulty lies in the steady fixation of it at the requisite distance from the object; especially when the lens employed is of such short focus, that the slightest want of exactness in this adjustment produces evident indistinctness of the image. By carefully resting the hand which carries the glass, however, against that which carries the object, so that both, whenever they move, shall move together, the observer, after a little practice, will be able to employ even high powers with comparative facility. The lenses most generally serviceable for Hand-magnifiers range in focal length from two inches to half an inch; and a combination of two or three such in the same handle, with an intervening perforated plate of tortoiseshell (which serves as a diaphragm when they are used together), will be found very useful. When such a magnifying power is desired as would require a lens of a quarter of an inch focus, it is best obtained by the substitution of a 'Coddington' (§ 24), or, still better, of the Browning or the Steinheil Doublet (§ 25), for the ordinary double-convex lens. The handle of the magnifier may be pierced with a hole at the end most distant from the joint by which the lenses are attached to it; and through this may be passed a wire, which, being fitted vertically into a stand or foot, serves for the support of the magnifying lenses in a horizontal position, at any height at which it may be convenient to fix them. Such a little apparatus is a rudimentary form (so to speak) of what is commonly understood as a Simple Microscope; the term being usually applied to those instruments in which the magnifying powers are supported otherwise than in the hand, or in which, if the whole apparatus be supported by the hand, the lenses have a fixed bearing upon the object.

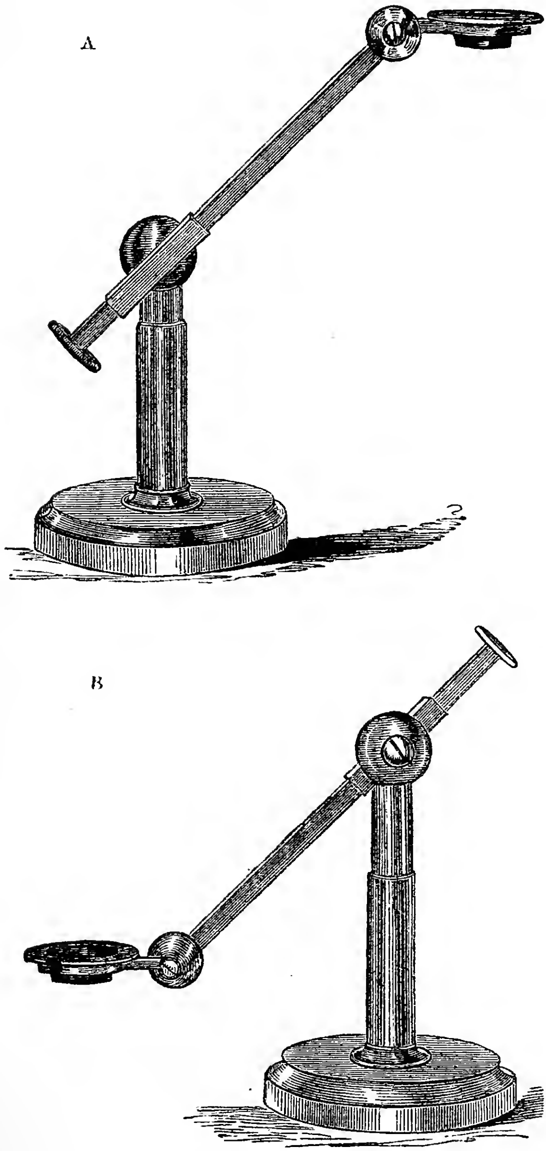
43. *Ross's Simple Microscope.*—This instrument holds an intermediate place between the Hand-magnifier and the complete Microscope; being, in fact, nothing more than a lens supported in such a manner as to be capable of being readily fixed in a variety of positions suitable for dissecting and for other manipulations. It consists of a circular brass foot, wherein is screwed a short tubular pillar (Fig. 31), which is 'sprung' at its upper end, so as to grasp a second tube, also 'sprung,' by the drawing-out of which the pillar may be elongated to about 3 inches. This carries at its upper end a jointed socket, through which a square bar about $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches long slides rather stiffly; and one end of this bar carries another joint, to which is attached a ring for holding the lenses. By lengthening or shortening the pillar, by varying the angle which the square bar makes with its summit, and by sliding that bar through the socket, almost any position and elevation may be given to the lens, that can be required for the purposes to which it may be most usefully applied; care being taken in all instances, that

the ring which carries the lens should (by means of its joint) be placed horizontally. At A is seen the position which adapts it best for picking out minute shells, or for other similar manipulations; the sand or dredgings to be examined being spread upon a piece of black paper, and raised upon a book, a box, or some other support, to such a height that when the lens is adjusted thereto, the eye may be applied to it continuously without unnecessary fatigue. It will be found advantageous that the foot of the microscope should not stand upon the paper over which the objects are spread, as it is desirable to shake this from time to time in order to bring a fresh portion of the matters to be examined into view; and generally speaking, it will be found convenient to place it on the opposite side of the object, rather than on the same side with the observer. At B is shown the position in which it may be most conveniently set for the dissection of objects contained in a plate or trough, the sides of which, being higher than the lens, would

FIG. 31.

A

B

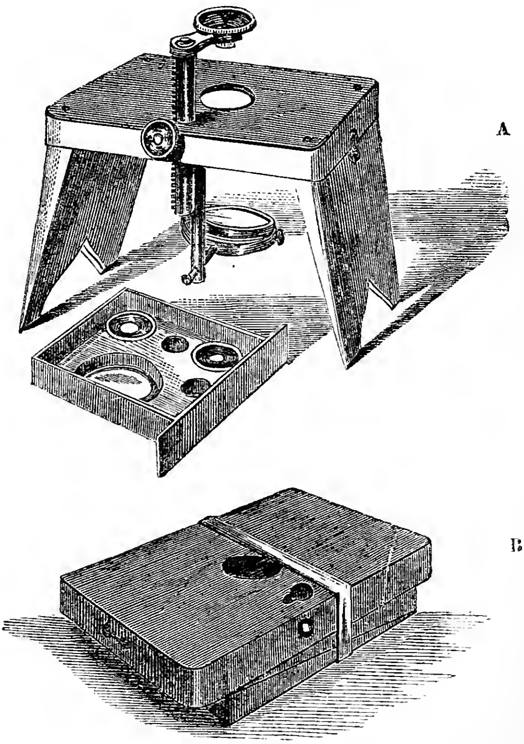


Ross's Simple Microscope.

prevent the use of any magnifier mounted on a horizontal arm.—The powers usually supplied with this instrument are one of an inch focus, and a second of either a half or a quarter of an inch. By unscrewing the pillar, the whole is made to pack into a small flat case, the extreme portability of which is a great recommendation. Although the uses of this little instrument are greatly limited by its want of stage, mirror, &c., yet, for the class of purposes to which it *is* suited, it has advantages over perhaps every other form that has been dévised.

44. *Quekett's Dissecting Microscope.*—By the Scientific investigator who desires a large flat stage, combined with portability, the arrangement devised by Mr. John Quekett (Fig. 32) will be found extremely convenient. The Stage, which constitutes the principal part of the apparatus, is a plate of brass (bronzed*) nearly six inches square, screwed to a piece of mahogany of the same size, and about 5-8ths of an inch thick; underneath this is a folding flap four inches broad, attached on each side by hinges; and the two flaps are so shaped, that, when folded together, one lies closely upon the other, as shown at B, Fig. 32. whilst, when opened, as shown at A, they give a firm support to the stage at a convenient height.† At the back of the stage-plate is a

Fig. 32.



Quekett's Dissecting Microscope, set up for use at A, and packed together at B.

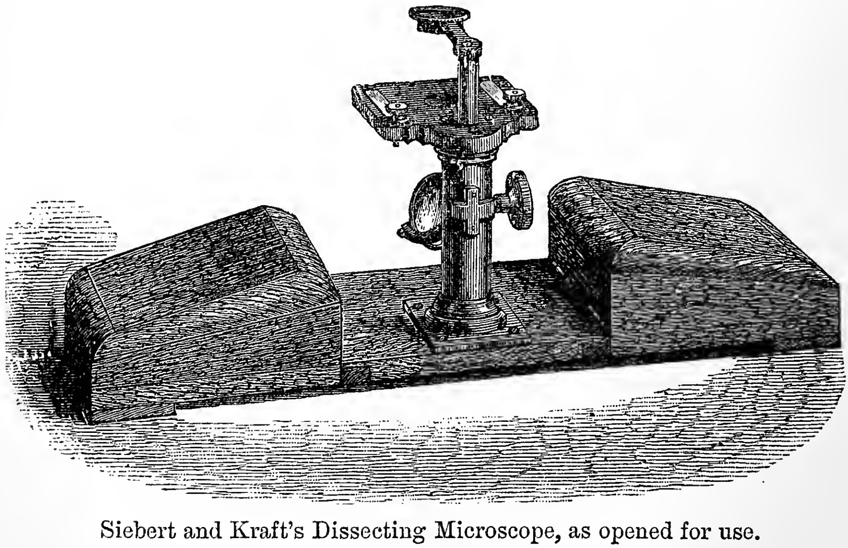
* The Stage-plate is sometimes made of plate-glass or ebonite; and this is decidedly advantageous where Sea-water or Acids are used.

† The Stage is now more generally supported, either (as in Mr. Ladd's model) on four legs of strong brass wire, which screw into its underside, and are packed in its drawer when dismounted; or (as made by Mr. Swift and Messrs. Parkes of Birmingham) on four brass legs which fold beneath it;—either of these constructions remedying the chief disadvantage of the original model, which consists in the exclusion of *side* light from the mirror.

round hole, through which a tubular stem works vertically with a rack-and-pinion movement, carrying at its summit the horizontal Arm for the magnifying powers; and into the underside of the stage-plate there screws a stem which carries the mirror-frame. From this frame the mirror may be removed, and its place supplied by a convex lens, which serves as a condenser for opaque objects, its stem being then fitted into a hole in the stage, at one side or in front of its central perforation. The instrument is usually furnished with three magnifiers—namely, an *inch* and a *half-inch* ordinary lenses, and a *quarter-inch* Coddington; and these (or the combinations of equivalent foci already mentioned, § 25), will be found to be the powers most useful for the purposes to which it is specially adapted. As a black background is often required in dissecting objects which are not transparent, this may be most readily provided by attaching a disk of *dead*-black paper to the back of the mirror. The lenses, mirror, condenser, vertical stem, and milled-head, all fit into a drawer which shuts into the underside of the stage; so that, when packed together, and the flaps kept down by an elastic band, as shown at B, Fig. 32, the instrument is extremely portable, furnishing (so to speak) a case for itself. It may be easily made with an additional arm carrying a light Compound body, furnished with objectives suitable for the examination of dissections or other preparations made upon the stage, without disturbing them by removal to another instrument.

45. *Siebert and Kraft's Dissecting Microscope.*—In making minute

FIG. 33.

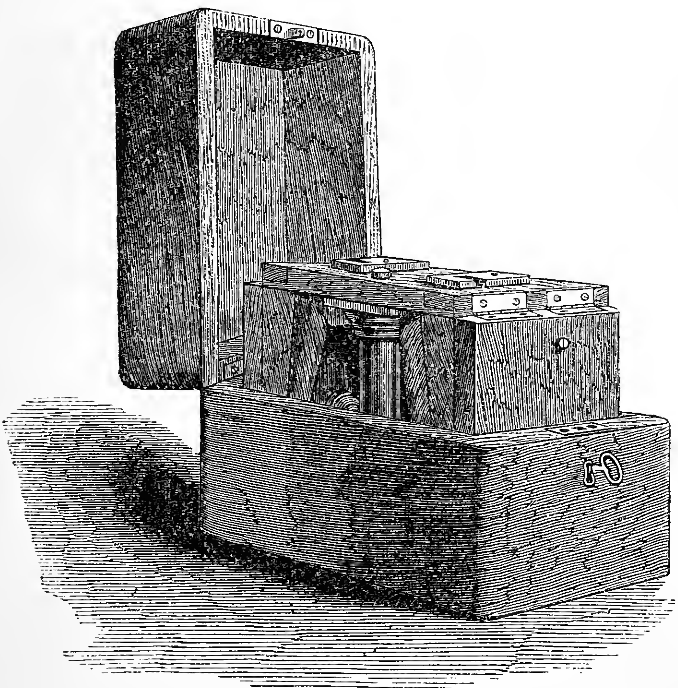


Siebert and Kraft's Dissecting Microscope, as opened for use.

dissections, however, the hands are most advantageously rested, not on the stage itself, but on supports at a level intermediate between

that of the stage and that of the table. Such a support, in some Continental Dissecting Microscopes—as those of Nachet and Zeiss—is attached to each side of the stage of an ordinary Simple Microscope; but this arrangement is subject to the disadvantage of causing the whole weight of the hands to bear on the stage, so as, by depressing it, to throw the object out of focus, unless the stage be made of extraordinary solidity, or be supported in front as well as behind. Hence the Author regards the arrangement adopted by Messrs. Siebert and Kraft (Fig. 33) as preferable; in which the supports for the hands are oblique wooden blocks, altogether disconnected from the stage. These, being hinged to the wooden base

Fig. 34.



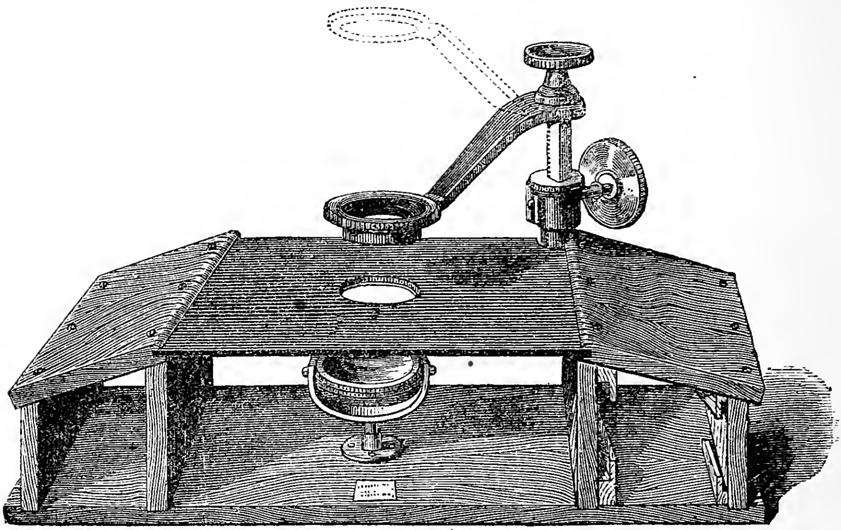
Siebert and Kraft's Dissecting Microscope, as folded in case.

of the pillar, can be made to turn up for portability (as shown in Fig. 34), so that the instrument packs into a very small compass.

46. *Laboratory Dissecting Microscope.*—Where, on the other hand, portability may be altogether sacrificed, and the instrument is to be adapted to the making of large dissections under a low magnifying power, some such form as is represented in Fig. 35—constructed by Messrs. Baker on the basis of that devised by Prof. Huxley for the use of his Practical Class at South Kensington—will be found decidedly preferable. The framework of the instrument

is solidly constructed in mahogany, all its surfaces being blackened; and is so arranged as to give two uprights for the support of the

Fig. 35.



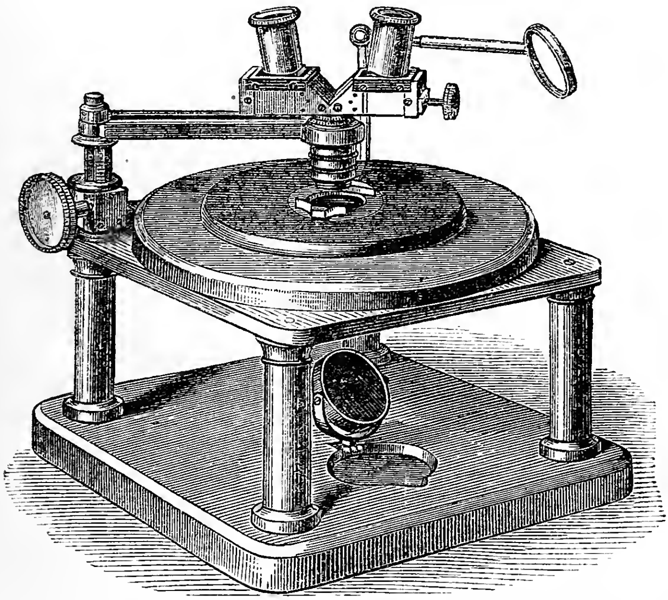
Laboratory Dissecting Microscope.

stage, and two oblique rests for the hands. Close to the summit of each of these uprights is a groove into which the stage-plate slides; and this may be either a square of moderately thick glass, or a plate of ebonite having a central perforation into which a disk of the same material may be fitted so as to lie flush with its surface; one of those being readily substituted for the other, as may best suit the use to be made of it. The magnifier is carried on an arm working on a racked stem, which is raised or lowered by a milled-head pinion attached to a pillar at the further right-hand corner of the stage. The length of the rack is sufficient to allow the arm to be adjusted to any focal distance between 2 inches and 1-4th of an inch. But as the height of the pillar is not sufficient to allow the use of a lens of 3 inches focus (which is very useful for large dissections), the arm carrying the lenses is made with a double bend, which, when its position is reversed (as is readily done by unscrewing the milled head that attaches it to the top of the racked stem), gives the additional inch required. As in the Quekett Microscope, a Compound body may be easily fitted, if desired, to a separate arm capable of being pivotted on the same stem. The mirror frame is fixed to the wooden basis of the instrument; and places for the magnifiers are made in grooves beneath the hand-supports.—The advantages of this general design have now been satisfactorily demonstrated by the large use that has

been made of it; but the details of its construction (such as the height and slope to be given to the hand-rests) may be easily adapted to individual requirements.

47. *Beck's Dissecting Microscope, with Nachet's Binocular.*—A substantial and elaborate form of Dissecting Microscope, devised by the late Mr. R. Beck, is represented in Fig. 36. From the angles of a square mahogany base, there rise four strong brass

Fig. 36.



Beck's Dissecting Microscope, with Nachet's Binocular Microscope.

pillars, which support, at a height of 4 inches, a brass plate $6\frac{1}{2}$ inches square, having a central aperture of 1 inch across; upon this rests a circular brass plate, of which the diameter is equal to the side of the preceding, and which is attached to it by a revolving fitting that surrounds the central aperture, and can be tightened by a large milled-head beneath; whilst above this is a third plate, which slides easily over the second, being held down upon it by springs which allow a movement of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch in any direction. The top-plate has an aperture of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch for the reception of various glasses and troughs suitable for containing objects for dissection; and into it can also be fitted a spring-holder, suitable to receive and secure a glass slide of the ordinary size. By turning the large circular plate, the object under observation may be easily made to rotate, without disturbing its relation to the optical portions of the instrument; whilst a traversing movement may be given to it in any direction, by acting upon the smaller plate. The left-hand back pillar contains a triangular bar with rack-and-pinion

movement for focal adjustment, which carries the horizontal arm for the support of the magnifiers; this arm can be turned away towards the left side, but it is provided with a stop which checks it in the opposite direction, when the magnifier is exactly over the centre of the stage-aperture. Beneath this aperture is a concave mirror, which, when not in use, lies in a recess in the mahogany base, so as to leave the space beneath the stage entirely free to receive a box containing apparatus; whilst from the right-hand back corner there can be raised a stem carrying a side condensing-lens, with a ball-and-socket movement. In addition to the Single lenses and Coddington ordinarily used for the purposes of dissection, a Binocular arrangement was devised by Mr. R. Beck,* on the principle applied by MM. Nachet, about the same date, in their Stereo-pseudoscopic Microscope (§ 38). Adopting Mr. Wenham's method of allowing half the cone of rays to proceed to one eye without interruption, he caused the other half to be intercepted by a pair of prisms disposed as in Fig. 27, 2, and to be by them transmitted to the other eye. It will be readily understood that this arrangement, though *pseudoscopic* for the Compound Microscope, is *stereoscopic* for the Simple Microscope, in which there is no reversal of the pictures; and the Author can testify to the fidelity of the effect of relief obtainable by Mr. R. Beck's apparatus, which, being carried on an arm superposed upon that which bears the magnifier, can be turned aside at pleasure. But he has found its utility to be practically limited by the narrowness of its field of view, by its deficiency of light and of magnifying power, and by the inconvenience of the manner in which the eyes have to be applied to it.—An arrangement greatly superior in all these particulars having been since worked out by MM. Nachet, the Author has combined this with Mr. R. Beck's Stand, and finds every reason to be satisfied with the result; the solidity of the stand giving great firmness, whilst the size of the stage-plate affords ample-room for the hands to rest upon it. The Objective in Nachet's arrangement is an achromatic combination of three pairs, having a clear aperture of nearly 3-4ths of an inch, and a power about equal to that of a single lens of one-inch focus; and immediately over this is a pair of prisms, each resembling A, Fig. 27, having their inclined surfaces opposed to each other, so as to divide the pencil of rays passing upwards from the objective into two halves. These are reflected horizontally, the one to the right and the other to the left; each to be received by a lateral prism corresponding to B, and to be reflected upwards to its own eye, at such a slight divergence from the perpendicular as to give a natural convergence to the axes when the eyes are applied to the eye-tubes superposed on the lateral prisms—the distance between these and the central prisms being made capable of variation, as in the Compound Binocular of the same makers (§ 38). The magnifying power of this instrument may be augmented to 35 or 40 diameters, by

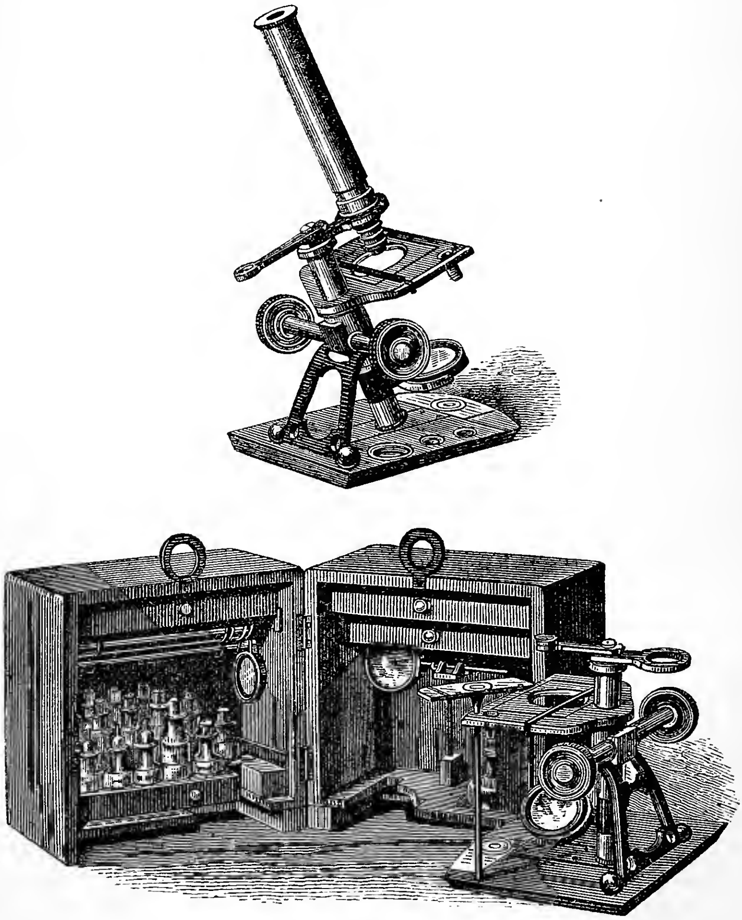
* "Transactions of the Microscopical Society," N. S. Vol. xii. (1864), p. 3.

inserting a *concave* lens in each eye-piece, which converts the combination into the likeness of a Galilean telescope (or opera-glass); and this arrangement (originally suggested by Prof. Brücke of Vienna) has the additional advantage of increasing the distance between the object and the object-glass, so as to give more room for the use of dissecting instruments.—To all who are engaged in investigations requiring very minute and delicate dissection, the Author can most strongly recommend MM. Nachet's instrument. No one who has not had experience of it, can estimate the immense advantage given by the Stereoscopic view, not merely in appreciating the solid form of the object under dissection, but also in precisely estimating the relation of the dissecting instrument to it in the *vertical* direction. This is especially important when fine scissors are being used horizontally; since the course of the section can thus be so regulated as to pass through the plane desired, with an exactness totally unattainable by the use of any monocular magnifier.

48. *Field's Dissecting and Mounting Microscope.*—This instrument, constructed on the plan of Mr. W. P. Marshall, is a combination of a Dissecting Microscope with a set of apparatus and materials for the preparation and mounting of microscopic objects; the whole being packed in a small cubical case about seven inches each way, convenient both for general use, but more particularly as a travelling case for carrying the several requisites for the examination and mounting of objects into the country, or to the seaside. —The Microscope can be used either Simple or Compound, as shown in Fig. 37; and is fitted with a mirror, side-condenser, and stage-forceps, and with metal and glass stage-plates; a dissecting-trough, lined with cork, also fits into the opening of the stage. The Simple Microscope, as used for dissecting and mounting, is shown in the lower figure; it has two powers, used singly or in combination, which are carried by the smaller arm of the stand. The Compound body, as shown in the upper figure, screws into the larger arm of the stand, and has a divided objective, giving a range of three powers; the nose is made with the standard screw, so as to fit any first-class objectives. A telescopic sliding arm, fitting into a socket on either side of the stage, can also be used to carry the simple-microscope powers, as well as a larger low-power lens, that serves also as a hand-magnifier; and the arm can be readily fixed in any desired position for examining objects away from the instrument. A watch-glass holder, used upon the glass stage-plate, gives the means of sliding steadily upon the stage in any direction objects that are under examination in a watch-glass. A turn-table for mounting purposes is carried upon a long spindle that works through the corner of the stage (as shown in the lower figure), the arm of the stand serving as a support for the hand whilst using the turn-table; the top is made of the size of an ordinary glass slide, and the slide is held upon it by an india-rubber band. A hot plate fits into the opening of the stage, and is heated by a

spirit-lamp placed in the position of the mirror, which is then turned to one side; and the larger arm serves also as a watch-glass holder for preparing crystals by evaporation over the spirit-lamp. A selection of materials required in preparing and mount-

FIG. 37.



Field's Dissecting and Mounting Microscope.

ing objects is supplied in a rack of bottles sliding in the case; and a set of instruments—dissecting-needles, knife, forceps, dipping tubes, brushes, &c.—with a supply of cover-glasses, cells, &c., are carried in the three drawers; all the different contents of the case being readily accessible when it is set open, as shown in the lower part of the figure.*

* The whole of this apparatus is supplied complete at the moderate cost of £4; or, without the Compound body and inclined movement of the stand, at £2 10*s*.

COMPOUND MICROSCOPES.

49. Of the various forms of Compound Microscope, the greater number may be grouped with tolerable definiteness into *three* principal Classes: the *First* consisting of those high-class instruments in which the greatest possible perfection and completeness are aimed at, without regard to cost; the *Second* including those which are adapted to all the ordinary requirements of the observer, and which can be fitted with the most important Accessories;* whilst to the *Third* belong the Students' and Educational Microscopes, in which simplicity and cheapness are made the primary considerations. Besides these, there is a class of Microscopes devised for *special* purposes, but not suited for ordinary use.—In all, save the last, the same basis of support is adopted; namely, a tripod 'foot,' carrying a pair of uprights, between which the Microscope itself is swung in such a manner, that the weight of its different parts may be as nearly as possible balanced above and below the centres of suspension in all the ordinary positions of the instrument. This double support was first introduced by Mr. George Jackson, who substituted two pillars (a form which Messrs. Beck retain in their Large Microscope, Plate VII., and is now adopted by Messrs. Ross, Plate V.) for the single pillar, connected with the Microscope itself by a 'cradle-joint,' which was previously in use, and which is still employed in many Continental models (Fig. 45). But in place of pillars screwed into the tripod base, the uprights are now usually cast in one piece with the base, both for greater solidity and for facility of construction (Fig. 39); while in most of the more recent models an open framework is adopted (more or less resembling that first devised by Mr. Swift, Fig. 50), which combines great steadiness with lightness. Messrs. Powell and Lealand, it will be observed, adopt a tripod support of a different kind (Fig. 48 and Plate VI.); still, however, carrying out the same fundamental principle of swinging the Microscope itself between two centres. An entirely new and very effective mode of swinging the body has lately been introduced by Mr. George Wale of New York (Fig. 44).—Two different modes of giving support and motion to the 'body' will be found to prevail. In the first, which may be called the *Ross* model (as having been originally adopted by Mr. Andrew Ross), the 'body' is attached at its base only to a transverse 'arm,' which, being pivoted to the top of the 'stem,' is raised or lowered with it by the rack-and-pinion action that works in the pillar to which the stage is fixed (Fig. 52). The fundamental objection to this method is, that unless the transverse arm and the body are constructed

* It is true that the most important of these accessories *may* be applied to some of the smaller and lighter kind of Microscopes; but when it is desired to render the instrument complete by the addition of them, it is far preferable to adopt one of those larger and more substantial models, which have been devised with express reference to their most advantageous and most convenient employment.

with great solidity, the absence of support along the length of the latter leaves its ocular end subject to vibration, which becomes unpleasantly apparent when high powers are used, giving a dancing motion to the objects. With the view of preventing this vibration, the top of the 'body' is sometimes connected with the back of the transverse arm by a pair of oblique 'stays' (Fig. 48); but the usual plan is to obtain the requisite firmness by the thickness and weight of the several parts. In the other, which may be termed the *Jackson* model, and which was first adopted by Mr. James Smith (the predecessor of Messrs. Beck), the body is supported along a great part of its length on a solid 'limb,' whereby its vibration is reduced to a *minimum;* and the rack, which is acted on by a pinion working in that limb, is attached to the body itself; a construction that gives a great smoothness and easiness of working (Plate VII.).—Having made use of instruments constructed by the best makers on both models, the Author has no hesitation in expressing his preference for the second, which is now employed by most English makers (having been adopted by Messrs. Ross themselves in their more recent instruments), and by nearly all American. He regards it as certain that greater freedom from vibration can be obtained in lightly-framed Microscopes constructed on the Jackson model, than in any but the most solid and cumbrous of the old Ross pattern; and feels assured that the principle of supporting the 'body' along a great part of its length (which may be applied in a variety of modes) will in time supersede that of fixing it by its base alone, which is obviously the mode *least* adapted to prevent vibration at its ocular end.

In describing the Instruments which he has selected as typical of the several groups above enumerated, the Author wishes not to be understood as giving any special preference to these, above what may be the equally good instruments of other Makers. The number of those who now construct really excellent Microscopes has of late years increased greatly; but their models are for the most part copied more or less closely from those previously adopted for their high-class Microscopes by the three principal Firms which long had exclusive possession of the field. Where any individual Maker has introduced a real novelty, either in plan of construction, or in simplification leading to reduction of price, the Author has thought this worthy of special notice; whilst the limits within which he is restricted oblige him to content himself with a bare mention of other Makers whose productions are favourably known to him. It will be found most advantageous to commence with the *Educational* and *Students'* Microscopes, as the most simple in construction; and to proceed from these through the *Second* to the *First-Class* Microscopes, reserving to the last the group of instruments adapted for *Special* purposes.

THIRD-CLASS MICROSCOPES.

50. Very important contributions to our knowledge of Nature have unquestionably been made by the assistance of instruments not surpassing the least perfect of those now to be described. And there is this advantage in commencing Microscope-work with a simple and low-priced instrument—that the risk of injury to a more costly Microscope, which necessarily arises from want of experience in its use, is avoided; whilst the inferior instrument will still be found serviceable for many purposes, after a better one has been acquired. Microscopes, of whatever Class, should be provided with the 'Society's screw' now used not only by British and American, but also by several Continental Makers; so that any of their Objectives may be fitted to them. (See Note, p. 70.)

Educational Microscopes.

51. *Field's Educational Microscope.*—This instrument is known as the 'Society of Arts Microscope,' in consequence of its having gained the medal awarded by that society in 1855 (at the suggestion of the Author) for the best *three-guinea* Compound Microscope that was then produced. It has two Eye-pieces, and two achromatic Objectives, Condenser, Live-box, &c., and retains its place amongst useful instruments of low price. It is within the knowledge of the Author, that the production of this instrument has greatly promoted the spread of Microscopy among many to whom the pursuit has proved most valuable as a refreshing and elevating occupation for hours that might have been otherwise either spent in idleness or turned to much worse account.

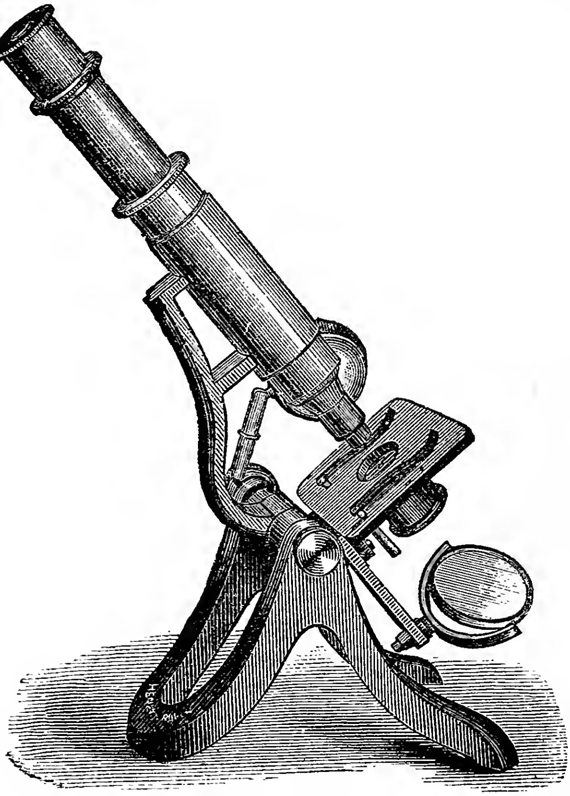
52. *Crouch's Educational Microscope.*—This is a very simple and at the same time serviceable, instrument (Fig. 38); well suited for the display of Botanical objects, small Insects or parts of larger ones, Zoophytes and Polyzoa that may be picked up on almost any sea-shore, or the Circulation in a Frog's foot. In order to minimize its cost, the ordinary modes of focal adjustment are dispensed with; the 'coarse' adjustment being made by sliding the body through the tube which grasps it, and which is lined with velvet to secure a smooth and equable 'slip'; and the 'fine' by slightly drawing-out the eye-piece. This method answers very well for the low powers for which this instrument is intended; and it has the advantage of not allowing the adjustment which a Teacher has made, to be readily disturbed by the Pupils to whom an object is being exhibited. It is provided with a side-condenser for illuminating opaque objects; and with a diaphragm-plate fitted into a tube which is screwed into the aperture of the stage, and which is adapted also to receive a polarizing prism and spot-lens.*

53. *Parkes's Educational Microscope.*—Such as desire a large and

* The cost of this instrument, with a dividing object-glass of ½ inch and 1 inch focus, in mahogany case, is only £2 10*s*.

more substantial instrument, which may be advantageously used for higher powers, and made to serve a greater variety of purposes,

FIG. 38.

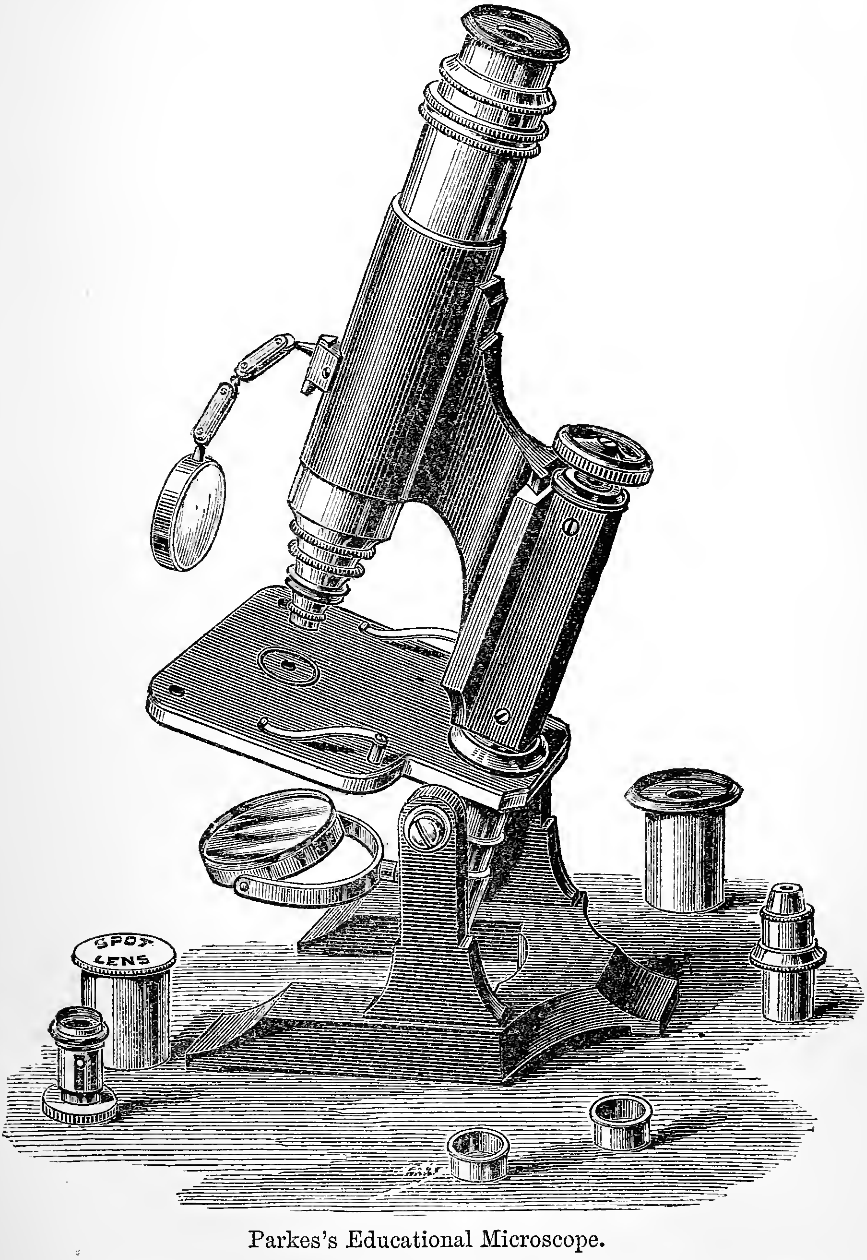


Crouch's Educational Microscope.

will find the Microscope represented in Fig. 39 very suitable to such requirements. It is solidly built, without being unduly weighty, carries a body of full diameter (which can be lengthened by a draw-tube to ten inches), and stands well upon its base. The 'coarse' adjustment is made (as in the preceding case) by sliding the body within the tube that grasps it, the lining of which with cloth makes it work very easily (Fig. 39); but a rack-and-pinion movement may be added at a small additional cost. The 'fine' adjustment is made by a screw (turned by the milled-head at the top of the vertical pillar), which acts on the carriage of the body; and as this carriage slides between dove-tailed grooves, the adjustment is made with entire freedom from 'twist.' The Microscope is furnished with two eye-pieces, of which the lower is preferable for objects requiring good definition; whilst the higher gives a flat field of eight inches diameter, suitable for Sections of Wood and

other like objects viewed with the low-power objective. The powers

Fig. 39.



Parkes's Educational Microscope.

usually supplied are a separating combination of 2 inch and 1 inch,

which, by the use of the two eye-pieces and the draw-tube, gives a range of magnifying power from 15 to 110 diameters; and a 1-4th inch of 70° aperture, from which, by the same means, a range of magnifying power can be obtained from 140 to 450 diameters. The aperture of the stage is furnished with a cylindrical fitting, which carries two diaphragms (one with a small aperture, the other with a larger) for regulating the quantity of light reflected from the mirror to the object, a ground-glass for the equable diffusion of the light over a large field, and a 'spot-lens' for black-ground illumination. The mirror is plane on one side, and concave on the other; and a condenser for opaque objects is attached by a jointed arm, giving universal motion, to the tube that carries the body. The Objectives of this Microscope, as of most of those constructed by the same Makers, are made to fit into the nozzle of the body by their 'patent sliding adapter,' which enables one power to be exchanged for another without any screwing or unscrewing. But their Microscopes can be used with any objective carrying the 'Society's screw,' by simply unscrewing the special nozzle from the end of the body. And by sliding the special nozzle upon either of its own objectives, this may be used with any other instrument furnished with that screw.*

Students' Microscopes.

54. The principle is now universally recognized, that the form of Microscope best adapted to the wants of the Medical or Biological Student, is one in which simplicity and compactness of general construction are combined with excellence in optical performance. The demand for instruments of this kind was first met by Continental Opticians; and at the time when Messrs. Ross, Powell and Lealand, and Smith and Beck—then almost the only constructors of Microscopes in this country—sold no Objectives but such as would stand the highest tests and were costly in proportion, recourse was necessarily had, by such as desired simpler and cheaper instruments, to the Opticians of France and Germany; among whom MM. Nachet, Oberhauser (succeeded by Hartnack), and Kellner (succeeded by Gundlach), long shared the chief English demand. A large number of new Makers, however—many of them trained in one or other of the three principal establishments just named—have now entered the field; and have put themselves in fair competition with Continental Opticians, and with each other, alike in the excellence of their work (both mechanical and optical), and in moderation of price. A distinct class of 'Students' Microscopes' of English construction, more or less framed upon Continental models, has thus come into general use; affording

* The price of this Microscope with the above-named Accessories, in a well-made mahogany Case, is £6 10*s*. An Objective of 1-6th inch focus, giving a maximum power of 560 degrees, or one of 1-7th inch giving a maximum power of 700 diameters, may be substituted for the 1-4th inch at a very small advance of cost. A Polariscope and Achromatic Condenser can be easily added.

ample choice, in the varieties of their pattern, to such as may have a preference for one or other of them as most suitable to the work on which they may be engaged. With few exceptions, the Microscopes properly belonging to this class have the small short 'body' (capable, however, of being lengthened by a 'draw-tube') of the Continental instruments; and this is grasped by a tube attached to the 'limb,' in such a manner as to give a support that is free from vibration even when high powers are in use. In the simplest models, such as that of Messrs. Baker (Fig. 40), there is no rack-and-pinion movement for the 'coarse' adjustment, which can be very easily made by sliding the body through the tube which holds it, provided that this be lined with cloth or velvet: but the rack movement can generally be added at a small cost. A 'fine' adjustment for exact focussing, by means of a micrometer-screw worked by a milled-head, is always provided; and this movement may be given in different ways. In the Continental models, the screw is usually contained within the pillar that supports the arm or limb to which the carriage of the body is attached, the milled-head being at its summit (Figs. 40, 45); this answers well if due provision be made to prevent 'twist' of the movable portion (causing lateral displacement of the image), without interfering with its freedom of vertical motion. By many British and American makers, the fine adjustment is made to act on a tube within the 'nose' of the body, into which the objective is screwed; this being raised or lowered, either by a lever contained within the arm, which is acted-on by the milled-head carried by it (as in the original Ross model, Fig. 52), or by a shorter lever at the lower end of the body, to which the milled-headed screw is attached (as in Messrs. Beck's Large Microscope, Plate VII.). This method is subject to two disadvantages: (1) that the focussing tube which carries the objective can scarcely be made to work with the requisite facility, without a liability to 'twist,' which becomes very perceptible after much wear, in the displacement of the image when a high magnifying power is in use; and (2) that by the vertical movement thus given to the focussing tube, the working length of the body, and consequently the magnifying power, undergoes change in every adjustment for focus. The plan of fine adjustment which has been adopted from an American model by Messrs. Ross (Plate V.) and is employed in Wale's New Working Microscope (Fig. 44), seems to the Author in every way preferable. Here a lever contained within the limb, and acted-on by a micrometer-screw at its back, gives motion to a long slide, working in dovetailed grooves, behind the racked slide which carries the body; and this can be made to work very easily, without either 'twist' or 'lost time.'—The Stage of Students' Microscopes is often a simple plate of brass, with a couple of springs for holding down the object-slide; but in some models (Figs. 40, 45) there is an 'upper stage-plate' of glass, rotating in the optic axis of the body. Into the aperture of the stage a cylindrical fitting is usually screwed, for the purpose of receiving

the Accessories required for giving varied illumination; the most indispensable of these being Diaphragms of different apertures. These should be so fitted that they can be brought up flush with the level of the stage; the limitation of the illuminating pencil for the purpose of obtaining the best definition, being much more effectively made by a very small aperture (not exceeding a large pin-hole) close to the under side of the object-slide, than by a wider aperture at some distance beneath it. For the same reason, if a rotating 'diaphragm-plate' (§ 98) be employed, containing a graduated series of apertures, it should be attached to the under side of the Stage itself, and not to the bottom of the cylindrical fitting beneath it. For perfect regulation of the light, nothing is so effective as the 'Iris-diaphragm' (§ 98); and this, as Mr. Wale has shown (§ 60), may be constructed so cheaply, that its general adoption seems very desirable.—The mirror should be double, one of its surfaces plane and the other concave; and it should be so attached (1) that its distance from the stage may be varied sufficiently, to allow the rays reflected from the concave side to be either brought to a focus on the object, or to give a uniform illumination over a larger field, and this alike with the parallel rays of daylight, and the diverging rays of a lamp; and (2) that it may be thrown so far out of the optic axis, as to reflect rays of considerable obliquity. The first of these objects is answered by making the mirror-frame slide upon a stem fixed into the bottom of the pillar (Fig. 41); but this does not give sufficient obliquity. The second is readily provided-for by attaching the mirror-frame to a swinging bar, pivoted to the under side of the stage (Fig. 42); this gives any amount of obliquity, but does not enable the distance of the mirror from the stage to be varied. If the mirror-frame be made to slide on a stem, it should be mounted on a jointed arm, so as to be made capable of reflecting very oblique light; or, if attached to a swinging bar, this bar should be made capable of elongation by a sliding piece working in a dove-tail groove (as in Wale's Microscope, Fig. 44), so as to allow its distance from the stage to be varied.—A very ingenious arrangement of the rotating 'upper stage' has been devised by Mr. John Phin (of New York). It is so fitted with a short tube, that it may be slid into the cylindrical fitting, not only from above, but also from *below*; and as the object-slide rests upon the springs which press it upwards against the stage-plate, not only may light of any degree of obliquity be thrown upon it, but the advantage of a 'safety-stage' (§ 117) is obtained, since the springs that support the slide readily yield to any pressure exerted on it by the objective. A Student's Microscope fitted with this form of rotating stage, and with either Wenham's 'disk illuminator,' or 'Woodward's prism' (§ 101), and having the mirror hung in the manner just recommended, will be found capable—if furnished with good Objectives—of resolving all but the most difficult Diatom-tests.

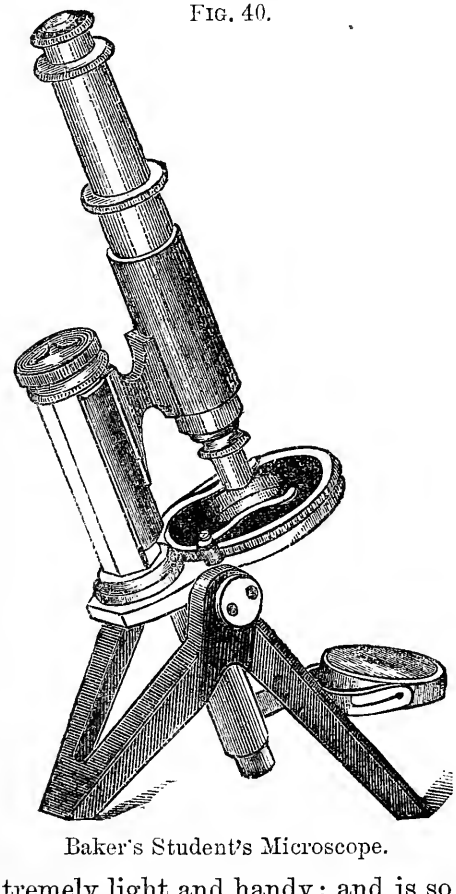
55. In regard to the qualities of the Objectives desirable for a Student's Microscope, the Author feels assured that he expresses

the conviction of the most experienced *workers* in various departments of Biological enquiry, when he re-affirms the doctrine of which nearly half a century's varied experience has satisfied him, but which has been of late vehemently contested (not always very courteously) by Microscopists whose range of study has been less extended—that *good definition, with moderate angle of aperture,* is the essential requisite; Objectives of this class being not only much more easy to use by the inexperienced, but frequently also giving much more information even to the experienced (in virtue of their greater 'penetration' or 'focal depth'), than can be obtained from Objectives of the very wide angles required for the resolution of difficult diatom-tests (see § 161). Every one who is at all conversant with the recent history of Micro-Zoology, Micro-Botany, Micro-Geology, or Animal or Vegetable Histology, must know that at least ninety-nine hundredths of the enormous additions made to each of these departments of enquiry during the last quarter of a century, have been worked-out by Objectives of the kind here recommended; and those who affirm that all this work is so imperfect that it will have to be done over again with Objectives of excessively wide aperture, have to prove the fact. Doubtless *new methods of preparation* are constantly revealing novelties in whole classes of objects which (it was supposed) had been already studied exhaustively; and no one can affirm that he has made out everything, in any object, which it is capable of being thus made to show. But the Author feels confident that no such extension of our knowledge is likely to take place in this direction, as will require the habitual use of the very costly wide-angled Objectives, which certain Microscopists, especially in the United States, are now extolling as alone trustworthy.* In confirmation of the foregoing remarks, the following additional authorities may be cited:—Dr. Beale, whose Histological experience no one can call in question, says ("How to Work with the Microscope," 5th ed., p. 10):—"For "ordinary work it will be found inconvenient if the object-glass, "when in focus, comes too close to the object. This is a defect in "glasses having a high angle of aperture. Such glasses admit "much light, and define many structures of an exceedingly delicate "nature which look confused when examined with ordinary powers. "For *general microscopic work, however, glasses of medium angular "aperture are to be recommended.* Glasses having an angle of 150° "and upwards are valuable for investigations upon many very "delicate and thin structures, such as the *Diatomaceæ; but such "powers are not well adapted for ordinary work.*" So Dr. Heneage Gibbes, who has been trained under Dr. Klein, one of the most distinguished Histologists of the present day, recommends the Student ("Practical Histology and Pathology," p. 6) to get some

* The cost of the Objective of 1-4th inch focus and 170° aperture, made by Mr. Tolles, of Boston, is 70 dollars (about £14); which would purchase a very good English Student's Microscope, with a series of excellent Objectives up to 1-10th 'immersion.'

good Microscopist to test the object-glasses he thinks of purchasing; "and he should see that they are tested on some Histological object, "and *not* on Diatoms, as *the wide angles necessary for resolving test "Diatomaceæ are the reverse of useful to the young histologist.*" And Dr. Leidy, of Philadelphia, everywhere well known as a most able Biological worker of large and varied experience, who has lately produced an admirable Monograph (illustrated by 48 beautiful quarto plates) on the "Fresh-water Rhizopods of North America," makes a point, in his Introduction (p. 3), of informing Students "that Micro-"scopic observations, such as those which form the basis of the pre-"sent work, do not require elaborate and high-priced instruments;" the Students' Microscopes of Zentmayer, Beck, or Hartnack, with a power of 1-4th or 1-5th inch, and the occasional use of a 1-8th or 1-10th inch, furnishing all that is needed. "I give the above "statement," he adds, "not "with any disposition to de-"tract from the value of the "various magnificent in-"struments so much in "vogue, but with the ob-"ject of dispelling a com-"mon impression widely pre-"valent, at least among "those with whom I habitu-"ally come into contact, that "the kind of work such as I "now put forth can be done "only with the help of elabo-"rate and expensive instru-"ments."*

FIG. 40.



Baker's Student's Microscope.

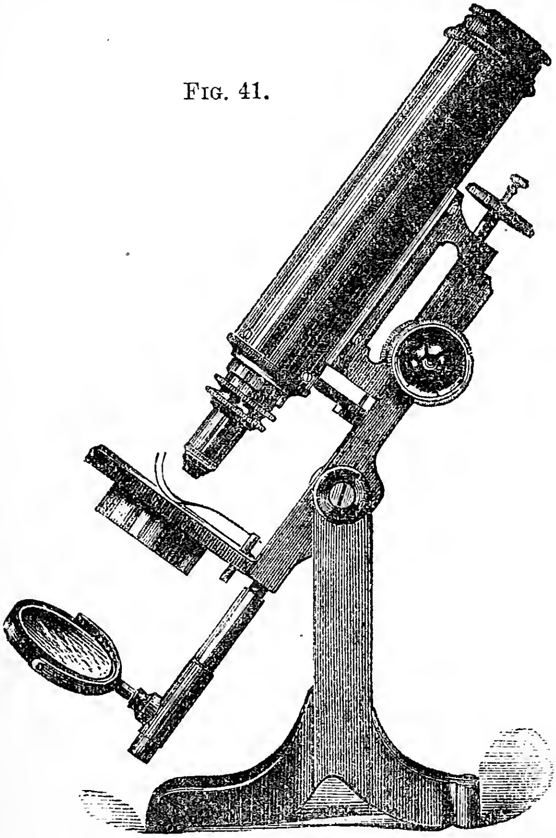
56. *Baker's Student's Microscope.*—Most of the conditions above specified as desirable, are well fulfilled in the instrument represented in Fig. 40; which might easily be brought into entire conformity with them. It is extremely light and handy; and is so well hung as to be very steady in all positions. It is provided with a rotating glass stage; and

* Now that the requirements of a Student's Microscope are so definitely understood, the Author would suggest whether it would not be better that a new standard screw of much smaller size than the 'Society's' should be adopted for it, so as to enable Students' 'Objectives' to be set in the small light 'mounts' used on the Continent, instead of in the massive mounts which the Society's screw necessitates; especially as, on the construction already recommended (§ 17), no

this carries a cylindrical fitting (not represented in the figure) for the usual Accessories.*

57. *Collins's Student's Microscope.*—This instrument (Fig. 41) is

Fig. 41.



Collins's Student's Microscope.

constructed on a plan altogether different; the body having the diameter of that of the larger Microscopes by the same maker

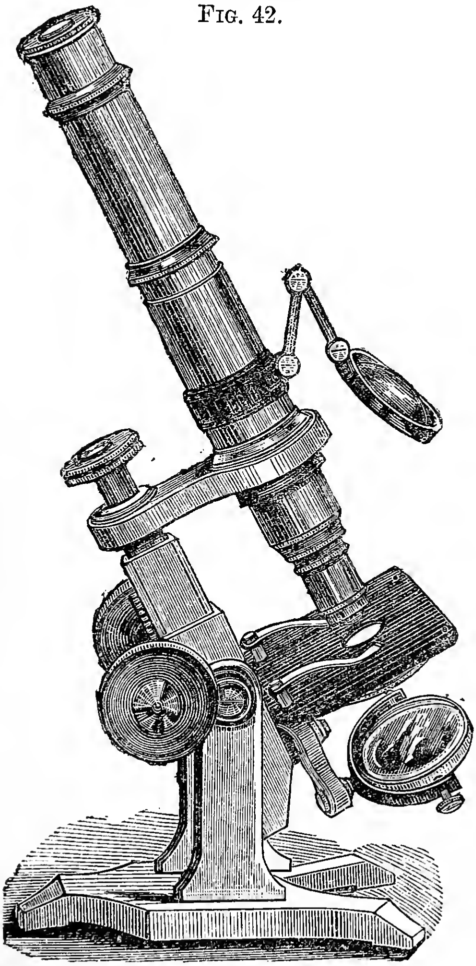
adjustment for thickness of covering-glass is required, even for high powers. A small light 'nose-piece,' for change of Objectives, could then be added at a low cost,—to the great convenience of the worker. Such Microscopists as, commencing with 'Students' Microscopes,' afterwards provide themselves with more complete instruments, would readily employ their Students' objectives with the latter by means of an 'adapter.' But the Author's experience would lead him to recommend any one engaged in *research* to keep his Student's Microscope, with its own series of Objectives, constantly on his table; and to have recourse to his larger instrument, with its first-class Objectives and varied methods of Illumination, only for the more complete scrutiny of the preparations he has made with his simpler model.

* The price of this instrument, with one Eye-piece and two Objectives (1 inch and 1-4th inch), in Case, is 5 guineas; or, with rack-movement for coarse adjustment, 6 guineas.

(Fig. 49), so as to receive their eye-pieces, and being capable of elongation by a draw-tube to the full ordinary length. It is provided with a rack-movement acting on a carriage attached along the length of the body (as in the Jackson model); and the top of this carries the milled-head for the fine adjustment, which acts upon a lever near the bottom of the carriage, so as to raise or lower a focussing tube within the nozzle of the body.

58. *Pillischer's International Microscope.*—The Student who may be willing to incur a slight additional expense, for the sake of obtaining a substantial and well-constructed instrument, cannot do better (in the Author's judgment) than possess himself of the International Microscope of Mr. Pillischer (Fig. 42), in which the advantages of British and Continental methods are ingeniously combined. The pillar, carrying a rack-movement with double milled-head, is swung on two uprights set on a solid foot, in such a manner as to be well balanced; and at the top of the racked stem is the milled-head that works the screw for fine adjustment, raising or lowering the horizontal arm which carries the body, without twist or loss of time. This arm carries a tube firmly screwed into it, through which the body slides; and while this arrangement, by giving additional support to the lower part of the body, effectually antagonizes vibration, it allows the body to be raised to a height that permits the use of objectives of 3 or 4 inches' focus, for which the rack-movement is not long enough to provide. On the outside of this tube is a clip having attached to it a jointed arm that carries a condensing lens for opaque objects; which, by raising or lowering the clip, or turning it round the tube, can be brought into any required position. The stage is simple, and carries a rotating

Fig. 42.

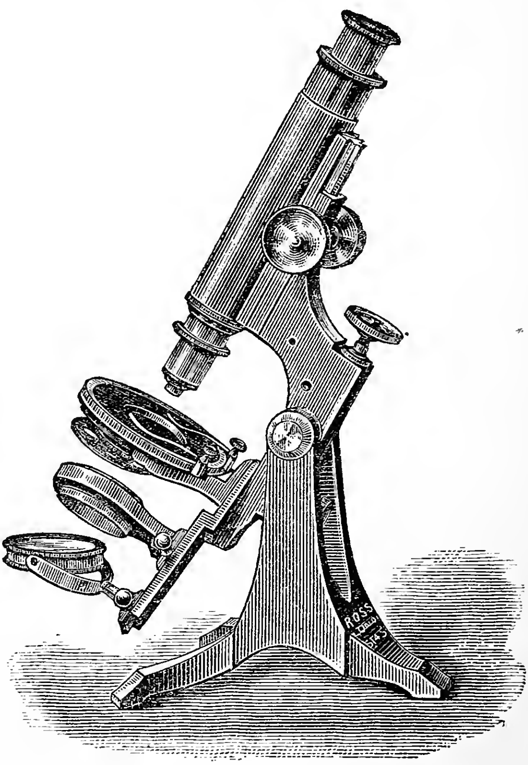


Pillischer's International Microscope.

diaphragm-plate on its under side. The mirror is attached to a swinging bar, which might easily be made to elongate like that of the Wale Microscope (§ 60).—The special merit of this model (of which the Author can speak from considerable experience of its use), lies in the facility with which both the coarse and the fine movements may be worked with either of the hands, while resting on the table in the position most convenient for manipulating the object on the stage; an advantage which every real *worker* with a simple instrument of this class will appreciate.*

59. *Ross's (Zentmayer) Student's Microscope.*—Another instrument of superior make (Fig. 43), has lately been introduced by Messrs. Ross, with the view of affording to the Student the advantage of the 'swinging tail-piece for oblique illumination,' devised by Mr. Zentmayer; of which a fuller description will be given in its application to their First-class Microscope (§ 72). This tail-piece swings round a pivot which serves for the attachment of the stage to the limb; and at the back of the limb is a milled-head working on the projecting end of this pivot, by tightening which the stage may be firmly fixed in its ordinary horizontal position, whilst by loosening it the stage may be made to incline to one side or the other. The 'tail-piece' carries, between the mirror and the stage, a 'sub-stage,' fitting into which may be screwed an ordinary 1 inch, $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch, or 2 inch Objective, which answers the purpose of an Achromatic condenser;

FIG. 43.



Ross's (Zentmayer) Student's Microscope.

* The cost of the above Microscope, with two Eye-pieces (B and C), and two Objectives (5-8ths and 1-7th inch) giving—with the Draw-tube—a range of powers from 50 to 420 diameters, packed in a very compact Case, is only £7 10*s.* 0*d.*; or, with the addition of an A Eye-piece, a $1\frac{1}{2}$ or 2-inch Objective, Polarizing Apparatus, and Beale's Drawing Camera, 10 guineas.

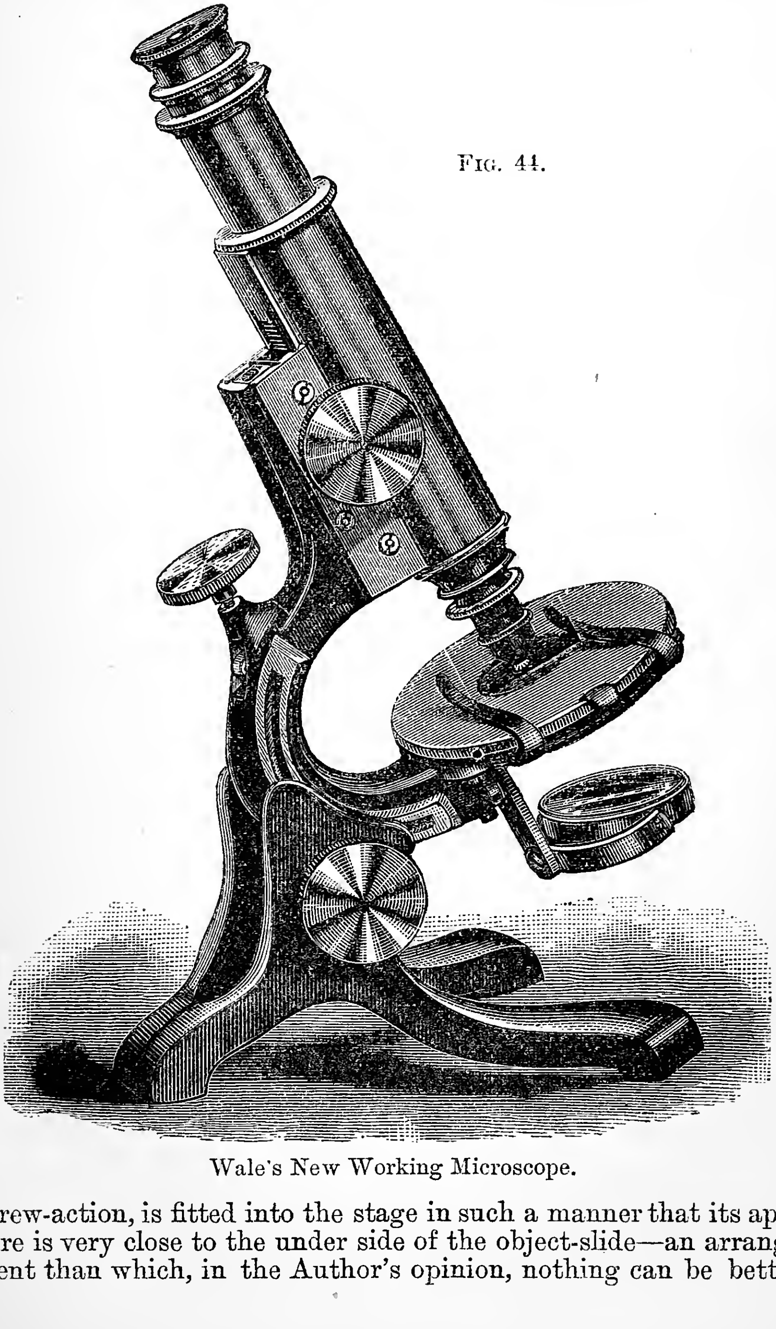
and when a pencil of light reflected from the mirror has been made by it to focus in the object, the swinging of the 'tail-piece' to one side or the other will give any degree of obliquity to the illuminating pencil that may be desired, without throwing its focus off the object, as this lies in the plane of the centre round which it turns. The 'tail-piece' may even be carried round *above* the stage, so that light of various degrees of obliquity may be concentrated upon opaque objects. The object-platform of the stage is of glass, and rotates round the optic axis of the microscope; so that the object may be illuminated by oblique rays from any azimuth. A mechanical stage may be added, if desired.—The workmanship of this simple model is of the highest class; and there is little real *work*, of which, in the hands of an observer who knows how to turn the instrument to the best account, it may not be made capable, by the addition of a Polariscope, Paraboloid, and other accessories, which its Sub-stage adapts it to receive.*

60. *Wale's New Working Microscope.*—A Student's Microscope lately brought out by Mr. George Wale (U.S.), deserves special notice, on account of several ingenious improvements which he has introduced into its construction.—In the first place, the 'limb' which carries the body and the stage, instead of being swung by pivots—as ordinarily—on the two lateral supports (so that the balance of the Microscope is greatly altered when it is much inclined), has a circular groove cut on either side, into which fits a circular ridge cast on the inner side of each support. The two supports, each having its own fore-foot, are cast separately (in iron), so as to meet to form the hinder foot, where they are held together by a strong pin; while by turning the milled-head on the right support, the two are drawn together by a screw, which thus regulates the pressure made by the two ridges that work into the two grooves on the limb. When this pressure is moderate, nothing can be more satisfactory than either the smoothness of the inclining movement, or the balancing of the instrument in all positions; while, by a slight tightening of the screw, it can be firmly fixed either horizontally, vertically, or at any inclination. The 'coarse' adjustment is made by a smooth-working rack; whilst the 'fine,' made by a milled-head at the back of the 'limb,' raises or lowers the body by acting on the slide that carries the rack-and-pinion movement. The body is furnished with a long draw-tube, which carries a screw at its lower end for the reception of objectives of foci too long to be worked from the nose of the outside body. The stage, though thin enough to admit very oblique light, is very firm; it is circular, and has an all-round groove near its edge, alike on its upper and its under side. Into this groove there fits a spring-clip for holding down the slide upon the stage; and this may not only be turned round into any position *above* the stage, but may be

* The price of the Microscope, as above figured, in Case, is 10 guineas. None but first-class Objectives are supplied by Messrs. Ross; but the Student who finds these too costly may obtain elsewhere such as suit his requirements.

reversed so as to hold the slide against its *under* side, thus enabling light of any degree of obliquity to be thrown on the object. A removable 'Iris-diaphragm' (§ 98), which is made to open or close by a

FIG. 44.

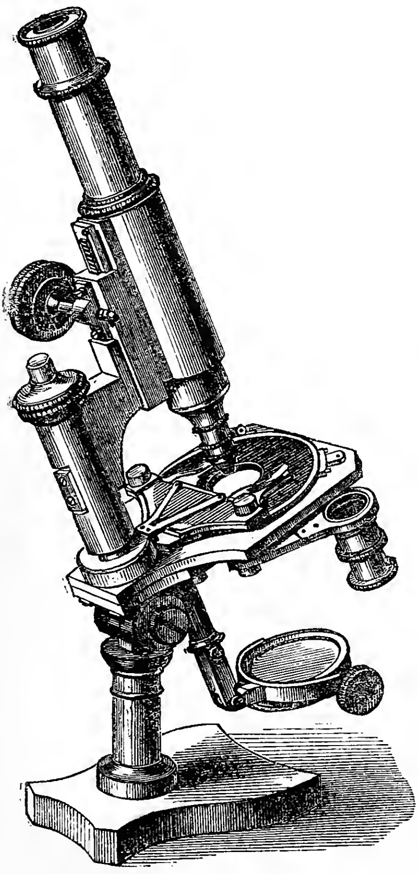


Wale's New Working Microscope.

screw-action, is fitted into the stage in such a manner that its aperture is very close to the under side of the object-slide—an arrangement than which, in the Author's opinion, nothing can be better.

This may be replaced by a cylindrical fitting for the reception of a Polariscope, Paraboloid, &c. The double mirror is carried upon an arm which swings on a pivot from the front of the limb beneath the stage, and is capable of extension by a dovetail sliding bar. —Altogether, this instrument (so far as its mechanical arrangements are concerned), comes nearer than any others that the Author has seen, to his idea of a *model* Student's Microscope.*

FIG. 45.



Nachet's Student's Microscope.

61. *Nachet's Student's Microscope.*—This instrument deserves special mention for certain peculiarities of construction which distinguish it from the ordinary Continental model of Microscopes of this class. While most of these can be used only in the vertical position, the Microscope of MM. Nachet is attached to the supporting pillar by a cradle-joint, which allows it to be inclined at any angle. The body is furnished with a draw-tube, by which it is shortened for packing: and is embraced by a tube which carries the rack, so that it is well supported, and may be readily drawn out and replaced by the Binocular already described. (§ 38, Fig. 28). The 'slow motion' is given by a milled-head placed at the top of the sliding-stem, so as to be near that which gives the rack-and-pinion adjustment. The chief peculiarity of this instrument, however, lies in its Stage, which the Author has no hesitation in pronouncing to be the *most perfect of its kind* that has been yet devised.† Its base is formed of a thick plate, 3½ inches square, having a large circular aperture; and on this is

* This Microscope, with two Eye-pieces, and with fairly good Objectives of 2-3rds and 1-5th inch, is sold in New York for 35 dollars, or little more than £7. It could probably be made in this country (if there were a considerable demand for it) for 5 guineas.

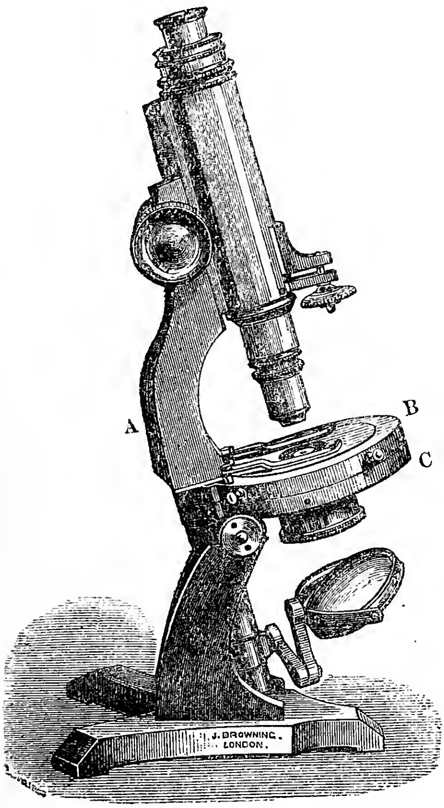
† This Stage, which, on the Author's recommendation, has been copied, first by Mr. Crouch, and now by other English opticians, seems to have been originally invented by Mr. Zentmayer of Philadelphia.

superposed a circular plate of 3 inches in diameter, to which a rotatory movement, concentric with the optic axis of the Microscope, can be given with great facility. In this circular plate a disk of thin plate-glass is cemented with black cement, the united thickness of the two around the central aperture being not more than 1-8th of an inch, so that light of the greatest obliquity can be transmitted to the object from beneath. The rotating plate is furnished with a projection at the back, to which is attached a strong V-shaped pair of springs, having their extremities armed beneath with small ivory knobs, which press down on the Object-carrier. This last consists of a brass frame furnished with tongues and springs projecting forward for the reception of the slide, and also with a pair of knobs, to which the fingers may be applied in giving motion to it; whilst the frame encloses a piece of plate-glass a little thicker than itself. Thus the under surface of the glass-plate of the Object-carrier slides over the upper surface of the circular glass stage-plate; being held down upon it and retained in any position by the pressure of the ivory knobs. The advantages of this arrangement lie (1) in the perfect facility with which the Object-carrier may be moved, and the steadiness with which it keeps its place when not unduly weighted; (2) in the facility with which it can be readjusted, in case the movement should become too easy, by bending down the V springs; and (3) by the absence of liability to derangement by rust—a point of great importance when work is being done with sea-water or chemicals. The front portion of the rotating plate bears a small projecting piece on either side, into which may be screwed a pin that carries a sliding-spring; this arrangement is suited for securing a Zoophyte-trough or other piece of apparatus not suitable to being received by the object-carrier, which can be easily slipped away from beneath the ivory knobs, thus leaving the stage free. To the under side of the stage is firmly pivoted a broad bar, into which is screwed a short sprung tube, that becomes exactly concentric with the optic axis of the instrument, when the bar (which is shown turned away in the figure) is pushed beneath the stage until checked by a firm stop; and as this bar is composed of two pieces, held together by a pair of screws working through slots, the centering of the tube may be precisely readjusted if it should at any time become faulty. Into this tube may be inserted another that carries either (1) a Diaphragm, sliding with caps of different apertures; (2) a Polarizing prism; (3) a Ground-glass for diffusing the light, which may be either plane, or a plano-convex lens ground on its flat side which is directed upwards; (4) an Achromatic Condenser; and (5) a Glass Cone, having its apex pointing downwards, and a large black spot in the centre of the convex base directed towards the object, which gives an excellent 'black ground' illumination. Lastly, the Mirror is attached to a stem which is so jointed as to enable it to reflect rays of very great obliquity.—To those who wish a compact instrument of great completeness and capability, which may be worked

advantageously even with high powers, the Author can strongly recommend this Microscope. The Objectives supplied with it are of great excellence and very moderate cost, and are quite adequate for all the ordinary purposes of scientific investigation.

62. *Browning's Rotating Microscope.*—The peculiarity of this instrument is that, as in many of the Continental models, the object-platform (B), with the limb carrying the body above it, revolves together; whilst the lower plate of the stage (C), with any apparatus fitted into it, as likewise the mirror, remains fixed. Thus the object is enabled to receive illumination in every azimuth, without any derangement either in its centering, or in its focal adjustment. The body is supported, as in the Jackson model, upon a limb, A, which is firmly fixed to the rotating plate B of the stage. In the simplest form of the instrument, shown in the figure, the rotation is effected by pressing a finger on the projecting pins attached to B; but if required, B can be made to move by a pinion and toothed wheel, with graduated scale attached; and a sub-stage for carrying illuminating apparatus can be fixed to an arm below C. This Microscope is further characterized by the solidity of its several parts, and the care taken in its construction to secure it against derangement from an accidental strain. It is particularly adapted to the use of those who work with high powers upon objects requiring the varied illumination for which this rotating arrangement gives special facilities.

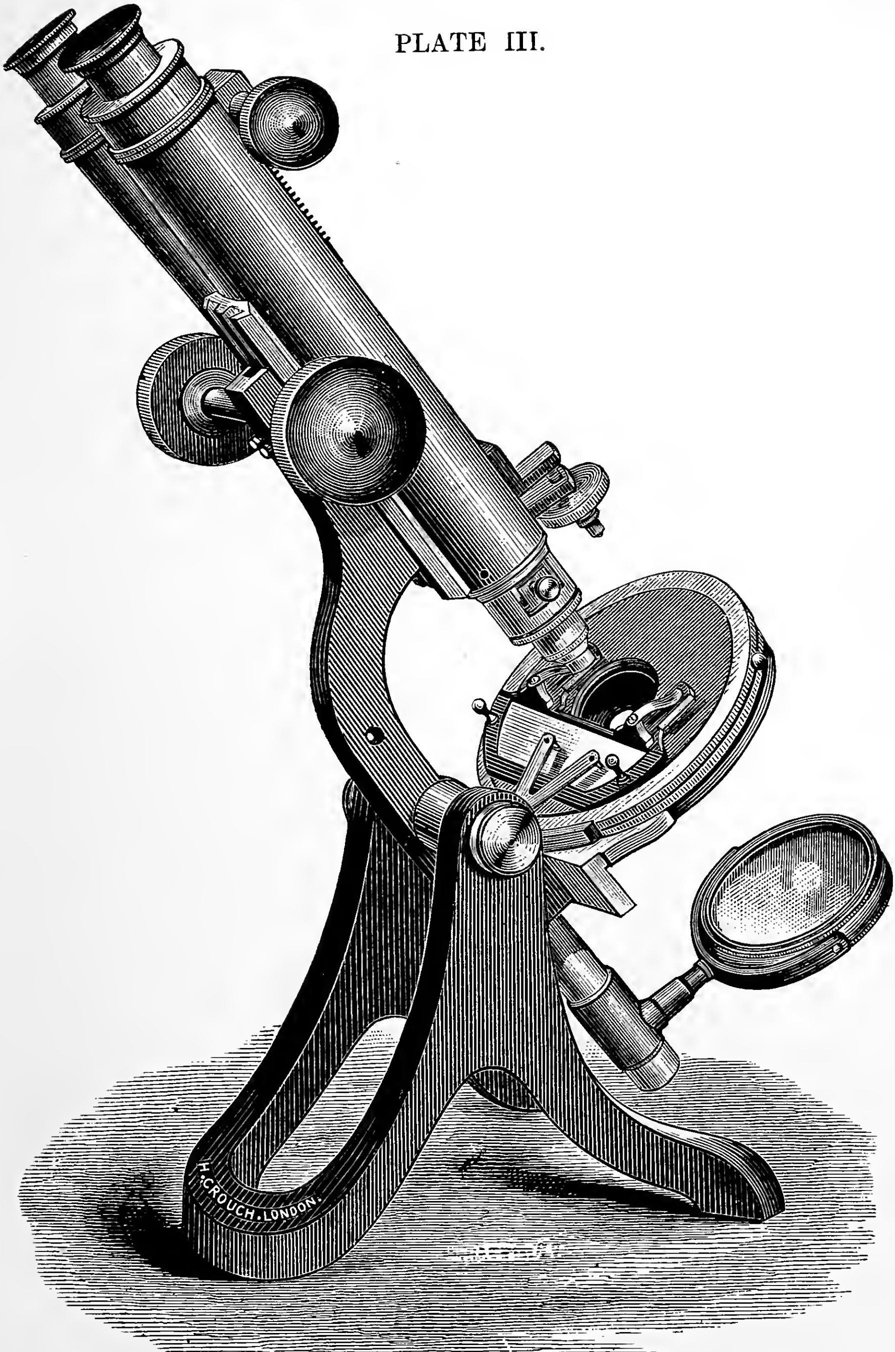
FIG. 46.



Browning's Rotating Microscope.

63. *Crouch's Student's Binocular.*—This instrument (Plate III.) was devised at a time when the construction of the Binocular was still almost exclusively confined to the makers of First-class instruments; and it had the great merit of bringing within reach of the Student a convenient and well-constructed Binocular, at a moderate cost. With the improvements it has since received, it still remains one of the best instruments of its class; and the Author, after considerable use of it, can strongly recommend it to such as desire to possess a

PLATE III.



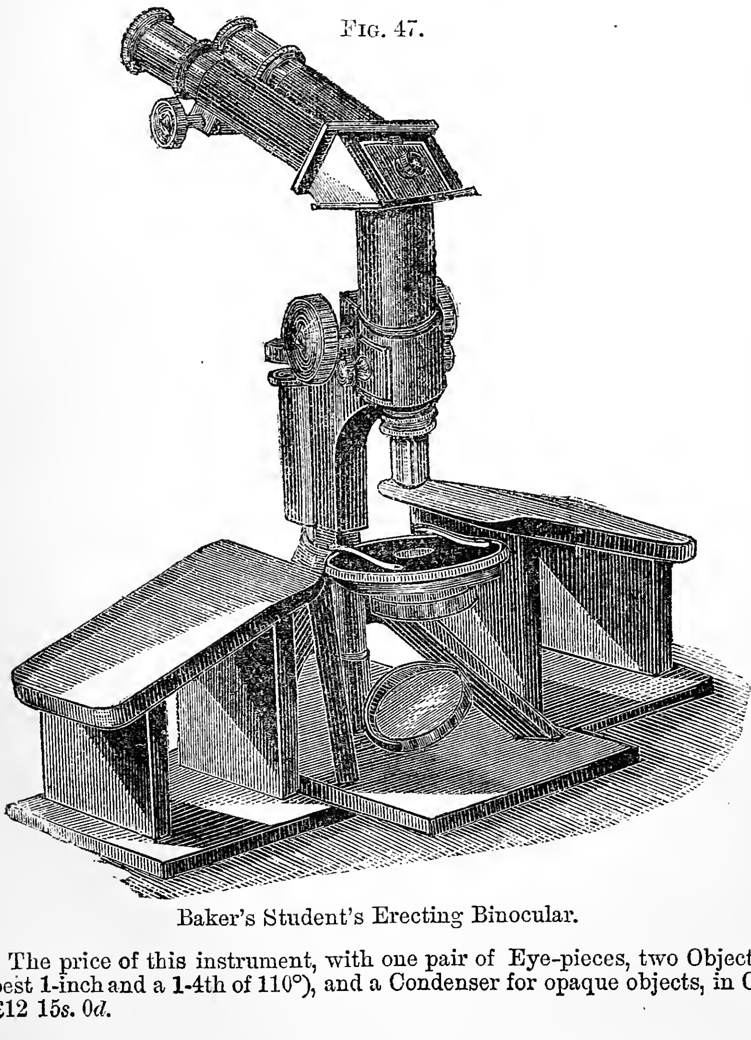
CROUCH'S STUDENT'S BINOCULAR.

[To face p. 78.

Binocular at once cheap, good, and portable. Its general arrangement is shown in Plate III., but a mechanical stage can be substituted, if desired. The rotating stage and object-holder resemble those of MM. Nachet's Microscope (Fig 45).—An Achromatic Condenser, Paraboloid, Polarizing apparatus, &c., can be added to this instrument; or it may be fitted with Mr. Crouch's 'Universal Sub-stage Illuminator,' which, like that of Mr. Swift (Fig. 85), combines the different Accessories ordinarily required for the examination of transparent objects.*

64. *Baker's Student's Erecting Binocular.*—With a special view to the wants of Students in various departments of Biology, Messrs. Baker have adapted a Stephenson Binocular (§ 35) to the stand of

FIG. 47.



Baker's Student's Erecting Binocular.

* The price of this instrument, with one pair of Eye-pieces, two Objectives (a best 1-inch and a 1-4th of 110°), and a Condenser for opaque objects, in Case, is £12 15*s.* 0*d.*

their Student's Microscope, as shown in Fig. 47; with which the stand of their Laboratory Dissecting Microscope (Fig. 35) may be so combined as to afford the requisite support to the hands, when they are engaged in dissecting (or otherwise manipulating) objects on the stage of the Binocular. An ordinary Monocular body may be readily substituted for the Binocular; and the same Eye-pieces and Objectives serve for both. The low cost at which this instrument is made, will doubtless cause many to possess themselves of it, whose pursuits will be specially facilitated by its use.*

Excellent Students' Microscopes are now produced by many other Makers; among whom Messrs. Beck should be particularly mentioned, as having led the way in supplying low-priced but really serviceable instruments, such as could at that time only be obtained on the Continent. Their 'Economic' Microscope framed on the Continental model, and furnished with good Objectives of 1 inch and 1–4th inch, is sold for 5 Guineas; and other Objectives specially constructed for it, ranging to the 1–16th inch, with a complete set of Accessories, are supplied at a very moderate cost. The same Makers supply an 'Economic' Wenham Binocular, having two pairs of Eye-pieces, three Objectives, a glass rotating Stage, and a jointed lengthening arm to the Mirror (which allows it to be used *above* the Stage for the illumination of opaque objects) for 10 Guineas.—Mr. Collins also supplies a 10 guinea Wenham Binocular, with Objectives of 1 inch and 1–4th inch (80°), the latter being specially adapted for use with the Binocular, by a short mount which brings it close to the Wenham prism.—Mr. Swift makes a 'College' Microscope, in which the Stage is fitted with a revolving diaphragm-plate of ingenious construction, that brings its apertures up to the level of the object-slide. Of Mr. Crouch's and Messrs. Parkes's Students' Microscopes also, the Author can speak with approval, as regards both the mechanical and the optical part of their work.

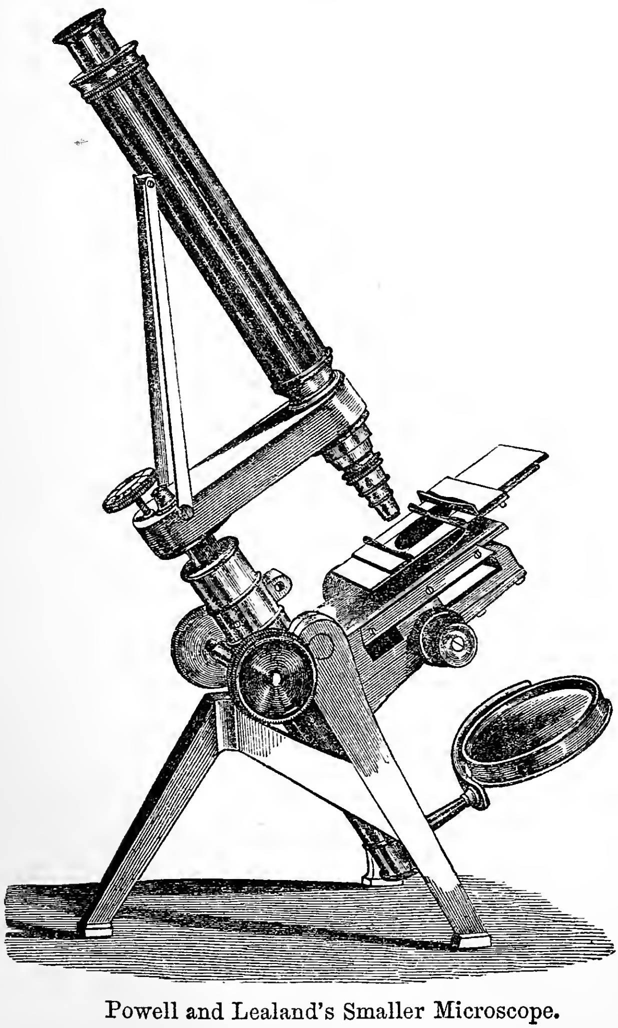
65. *Second-Class Microscopes.*—Under this head may be ranked those instruments which combine first-rate workmanship with simplicity in the plan of construction; and which may be consequently designated as 'Superior Students' Microscopes.' Among these the first place should be given to Messrs. Powell and Lealand's *Smaller Microscope* (Fig. 48), which was long the favourite instrument of British Histologists, and which, though not adapted for objects requiring very oblique light, is still in demand among those who value first-rate workmanship, with all convenient appliances for ordinary Biological research. A Sub-stage (not shown in the figure) carrying every kind of illuminating apparatus, can be attached beneath the stage; and the large angular aperture now given by Messrs. Powell and Lealand to their Immersion Achromatic Condenser, enables this instrument to resolve the most difficult test-objects. The stand is well suited to carry a Binocular body; which may be fitted not only with the ordinary stereoscopic

* The price of this Binocular, with one pair of Eye-pieces, a dividing Objective of 1 inch and 2 inches, and a 1-4th inch of 70°, in Case, is 10 guineas.

'Wenham' prism, but also with the non-stereoscopic arrangement of these Makers (§ 81), which enables even the highest powers to be used binocularly, though not stereoscopically.

66. The value of Stereoscopic Binocular vision in Scientific investigation being now admitted by all who have really worked with it *upon suitable objects*, the Author would earnestly recommend every one about to provide himself with even a Second-class Microscope, to incur the small expense of the Binocular addition. This addition, however, will lose an important element of its value,

Fig. 48.



Powell and Lealand's Smaller Microscope.

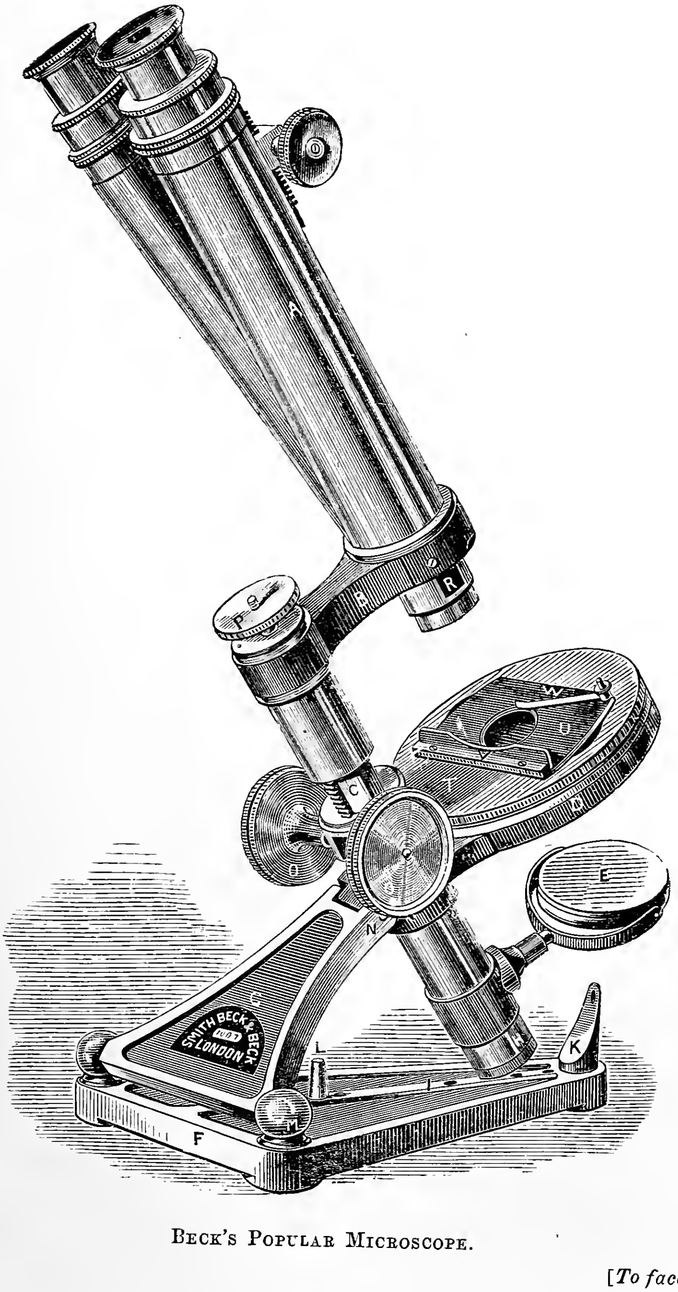
if the Stage of the instrument be not adapted to rotate in the optic axis of the Body; so that objects which are being viewed by

incident light may be presented to the illuminating rays in every direction. Among the first to recognize this principle, and to apply it in practice, were Messrs. Beck; whose *Popular Microscope* (Plate IV.), devised by the late Mr. R. Beck, will be found very suitable to the wants of such as work with low and moderate powers, upon objects for the study of which Binocular vision is peculiarly advantageous; and especially serviceable to Travellers, as the ingenious way in which it is framed and supported enables it to bear a good deal of rough usage without injury. The original Ross model here adopted in the support and movement of the body, is sufficiently steady when only moderate powers are employed; and the stem that forms the centre of the whole, is swung immediately behind the stage on a broad stay G, which, again, is attached by a pair of centres at its lower angles to the triangular base F. The lower end H of the stem carries a stout projecting pin, which fits into various holes along the median line of the base; whereby the instrument may be firmly steadied in positions more or less inclined, or may be fixed upright. It may be also fixed in the horizontal position required for drawing with the Camera Lucida; for the pin at the bottom of the stem then enters the hole at the top of the stud K, and the stay G falls flat down, resting on the top of the stout pin L. The advantages of this construction are that it is strong, firm, and yet light; that the instrument rests securely at the particular inclination desired, which is often not the case on the ordinary construction when the joint has worked loose; and that in every position there is the needful preponderance of balance. The Stage D is circular, and upon it fits a circular plate T, which rotates in the optic axis of the Microscope. On the plate T there slides the Object-holder U, which is so attached to it by a wire spring that bears against its under surface, as to be easily moved by either or both hands; and as access can be readily gained to this spring by detaching the plate T from the stage, it may either be removed altogether so as to leave the stage free, or may be adjusted to any degree of stiffness desired by the observer. The object-holder has a ledge V for the support of the slide; and it is also provided with a small spring W, attached to it by a milled-head, by turning which the spring may be brought to bear with any required pressure against the edge of the slide laid upon the object-holder, so as to prevent it from shifting its place when rotation is given to the stage, or when, the instrument being placed in the horizontal position, the stage becomes vertical. The central tube of the Stage is furnished with a rotating Diaphragm-plate, and is adapted to receive various other fittings; and a Side-Condenser on a separate stand is also supplied.*

67. *Collins's Harley Binocular.*—This instrument, as represented in Fig. 49, is substantially framed and well hung on the Ross

* The price of this instrument, with two pairs of Eye-pieces, three Objectives (a 2-inch of 10°, a 1-inch of 22°, and a 1-4th of 75°), and Side-Condenser on stand, in Case, is £16 10*s*.

PLATE IV.

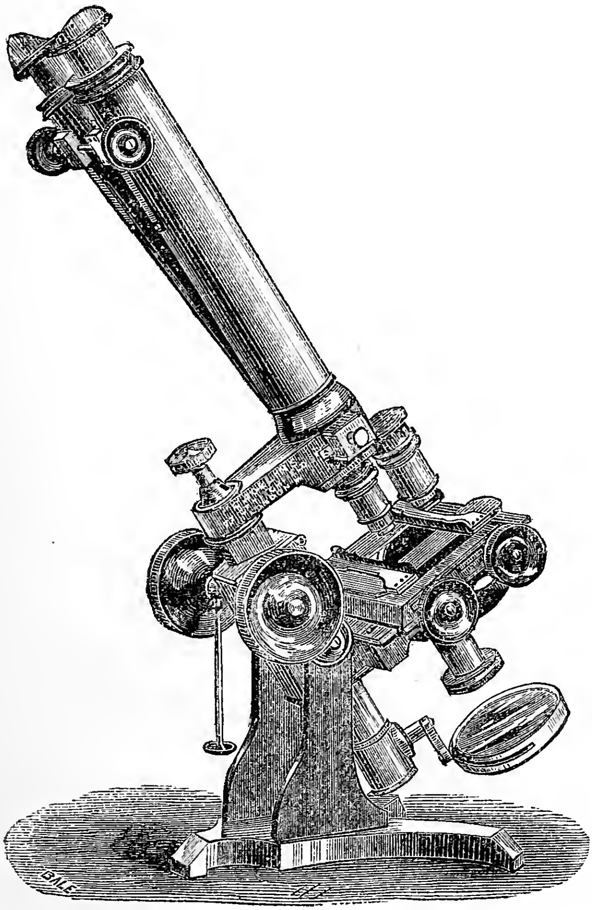


BECK'S POPULAR MICROSCOPE.

[To face p. 82.

model; but is now made also on the Jackson model at the same price. The caps of the Eye-pieces are provided with shades, which cut off the outside lights from each eye; these can be adapted to any instrument, and the Author can speak strongly of their value from his own experience. The Wenham prism at the common base of the bodies is fitted into an oblong box, which slides through the arm that carries them; this contains, in addition, a Nicol analyzing

Fig. 49.



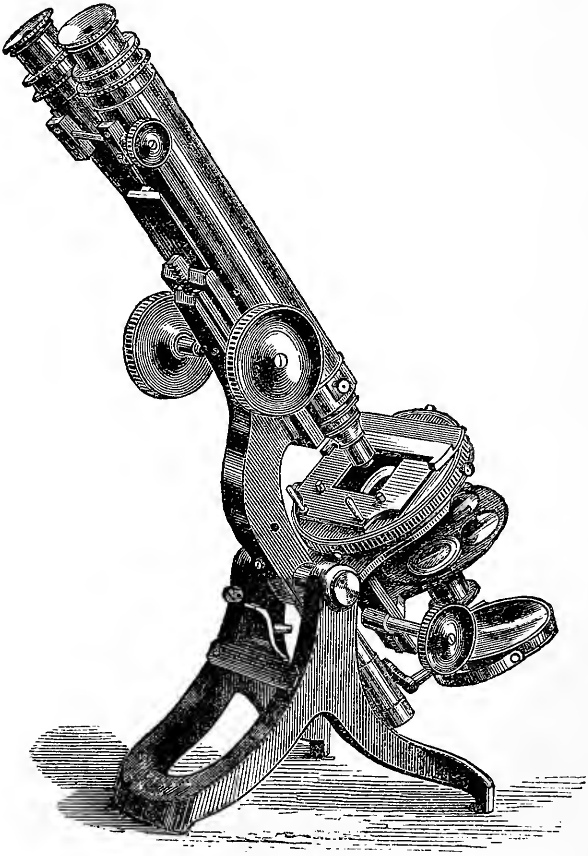
Collins's Harley Binocular.

prism, and is also pierced with a vacant aperture; so that, by merely sliding this box transversely until its aperture comes into the axis, the instrument may be used as an ordinary Monocular; or, if the analyzing prism be made to take the place of the Wenham, whilst the polarizing prism beneath the stage is brought into position by rotating the Diaphragm-plate in which it is fixed, it is

at once converted into a Polarizing Microscope—with the disadvantage, however, of not being then Binocular. It has also a 'nose-piece' carrying two Objectives, by a sliding movement of which one power may be substituted for the other.*

68. *Swift's Challenge Microscope.*—The instrument constructed under this designation by Messrs. Swift, is one of which it may be fairly said that it is surpassed by no other of its price in the excellence of its workmanship, and its suitability to the general wants of the Microscopist. The support on which it is hung is extremely firm

Fig. 50.



Swift's Challenge Microscope.

and substantial without being heavy; and when the limb is brought to the horizontal position, resting on the cross plate between the

* The price of this instrument, with Mechanical rotating Stage, two pairs of Eye-pieces, two Objectives (either a 2-inch of 12°, or a 1-inch of 18°, with a 1-4th of 95°), Side-Condenser on Stand, and Polarizing apparatus in Cabinet, is £19. Accessories of various kinds can be readily fitted to it.—A 'first-class' Binocular is also constructed by the same Maker on the Jackson model.

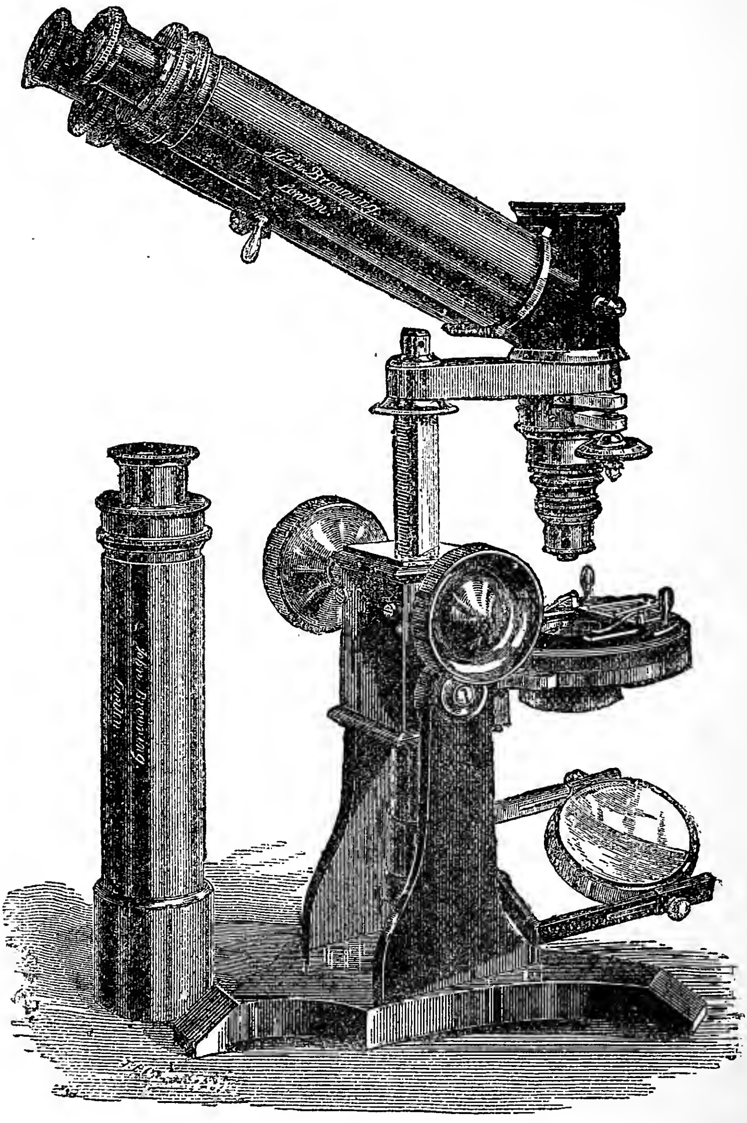
two uprights, the instrument is still well balanced. The rack and pinion movement is made with oblique teeth; a construction which favours smoothness and sensitiveness in the adjustment, so that a 1-4th inch Objective may be focussed by it alone. The fine adjustment is made by the milled-head at the lower end of the body.—It is a peculiarity in this instrument, which especially fits it for those who work much with Polarized light, that the analyzing prism is fitted into the body above the Wenham prism, in such a manner that, when its fitting is drawn out (without being removed), it is completely out of the way of the light-rays; whilst, when the use of the Polariscope is required, the prism can be at once pushed into the body, working in conjunction with the Wenham prism. This mode of mounting the analyzer is found to interfere much less with the definition of the objective, than the insertion of it between the objective and the Wenham prism. The Stage rotates in the optic axis; and may either bear (as in the figure) a sliding object-carrier, or may be furnished with mechanical actions. The mirror is attached to the stem by a crank-arm, allowing it to be so placed as to reflect light of considerable obliquity. Beneath the Stage is a broad horizontal dovetail groove, into which is very exactly fitted a firm (sprung) slide that carries a Sub-stage for illuminating apparatus, fitted with a vertical rack movement, and with horizontal centering screws; this arrangement (devised by Mr. Swift) enables the sub-stage to be placed in position or removed, without disturbing either the stage or the mirror. The extremely ingenious Universal Sub-stage —combining Achromatic Condenser, Black-ground Illuminator, and Polarizer with varied adaptations—devised by Mr. Swift for this Microscope, but capable of being applied to any other, will be described hereafter (§ 112). The Author, having had his instrument (thus fitted) in constant use for several years past, feels justified in unreservedly expressing his high appreciation of it.*

69. *Browning's Smaller Stephenson Binocular.*—This instrument, represented in Fig. 51, is of more substantial build than the Students' Binocular of Messrs. Baker (§ 64); and is further distinguished by its special adaptation for use with Polarized light. In place of the reflecting prism at the junction of the inclined bodies, a plane piece of dark glass, silvered on one face, is hung on a horizontal axis at the polarizing angle; its silvered face being turned in front when it is used for ordinary purposes, so as to

* The price of this instrument in the simple form here figured, with one pair of Eye-pieces and best 1-inch and 1-4th inch (80°) Objectives, and Condensing lens on separate stand, in Case, is £14. A mechanical stage costs £2 10*s.* additional, and the sub-stage (without fittings) £2 2*s.*—A very ingenious 'swinging sub-stage' has been lately devised by Mr. Swift ("Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," vol. iii., 1880, p. 867) for obtaining illumination of any degree of obliquity, even by two pencils at once. The Condenser is made to slide on an arc-piece (as in Mr. Grubb's arrangement, § 72), which is prolonged above the Stage for opaque illumination; and with this may be combined a second arc-piece at right angles to the first, carrying a second Condenser, which is found serviceable in the resolution of difficult Diatom-tests.

reflect into the two inclined bodies, the light-rays which proceed to it from the pair of dividing prisms; whilst, when it is to act as an

Fig. 51.



Browning's Smaller Stephenson Binocular.

analyzer, it is turned on its axis by means of a milled-head so as to bring the dark-glass surface to the front. Further, by fixing into the arm the tube which carries the objective, with its fine adjustment, and by making that which contains the dividing prisms and mirror, and which also carries the double body, slide over it, the latter can

either be turned half round, so as to point the eye-pieces in the reverse direction (for the exhibition of the object to an observer sitting at the opposite side of a small table) without any disturbance of the adjustments; or it can be lifted off altogether, and replaced by an ordinary Monocular body.*

FIRST-CLASS MICROSCOPES.

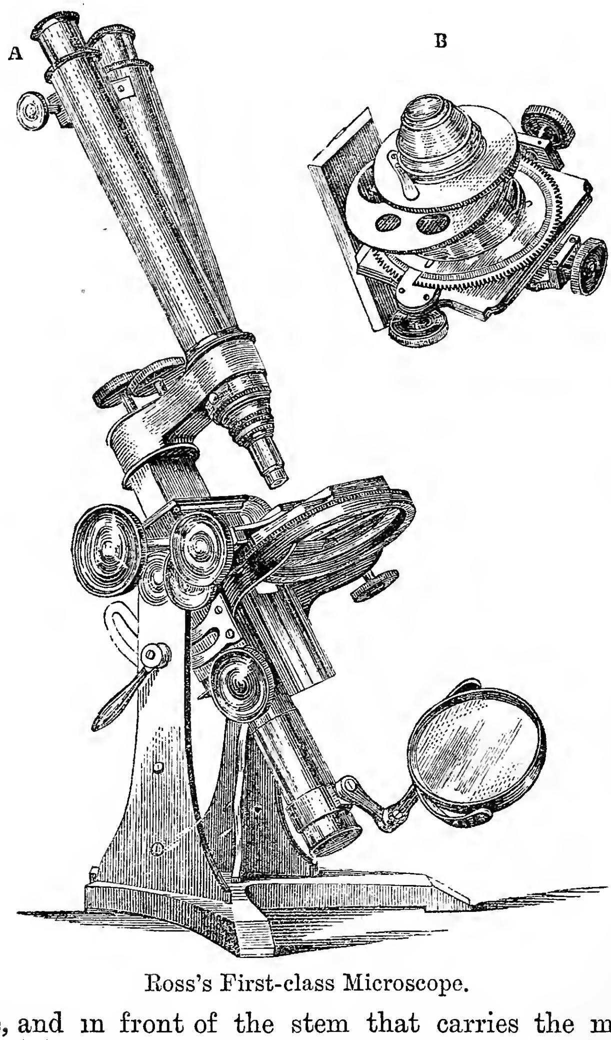
70. We now pass to an entirely different class of Instruments—those of which the aim is, not simplicity, but perfection; not the production of the best effect compatible with limited means, but the attainment of everything that the Microscope *can* accomplish, without regard to cost or complexity. To such, of course, the Stereoscopic Binocular is an indispensable addition; and it is not less essential that the Stage should have a *rotatory movement in the Optic axis of the instrument*;—not only for the due examination of *opaque* objects, as already mentioned (§ 66), but also because this movement is requisite for the effective examination of very delicate *transparent* objects by Oblique light, allowing the effect of light and shadow to be seen in every direction; and, in addition, because in the examination of objects under Polarized light, a class of appearances is produced by the rotation of the object between the prisms, which is not developed by the rotation of either of the prisms themselves.

71. *Ross's First-class Microscope.*—As what is known as the *Ross* model is still made, being preferred by some purchasers, we shall commence with a notice of the original form of the instrument which has gained so high a celebrity.—The general plan of this Microscope, as shown in Fig. 52, is carried out with the greatest attention to solidity of construction, in those parts especially which are most liable to tremor, as also to the due balancing of the weight of its different parts upon the horizontal axis. Any inclination may be given to it; and it may be fixed in any position by a clamping screw, turned by a short lever on the right-hand upright. The 'fine' adjustment is effected by the milled-head on the transverse arm just behind the base of the 'body;' this acts upon the 'nose' or tube projecting below the arm, wherein the objectives are screwed. The other milled-head, seen at the summit of the stem, serves to secure the transverse arm to this, and may be tightened or slackened at pleasure, so as to regulate the traversing movement of the arm; this movement is only allowed to take place in one direction, namely, towards the right side, being checked in the opposite by a 'stop,' which secures the coincidence of the axis of the principal 'body' with the centre of the stage, and with the axis of the illuminating apparatus beneath it. The object-platform, to which rectangular traversing motions are given by the two milled-heads at the right of the stage, is also made to rotate in the optic axis by a milled-

* The price of this instrument, with one pair of Eye-pieces and Objectives of 1 inch (16°) and 1-4th inch (75°), is £20. Any Accessories can readily be added to it.

head placed underneath the stage on the left-hand side; this turns a pinion which works against a circular rack, whereby the whole apparatus above is carried round about two-thirds of a revolution, without in the least disturbing the place of the object, or removing it from the field of the Microscope. The graduation of the circular rack, moreover, enables it to be used as a Goniometer (§ 92). Below

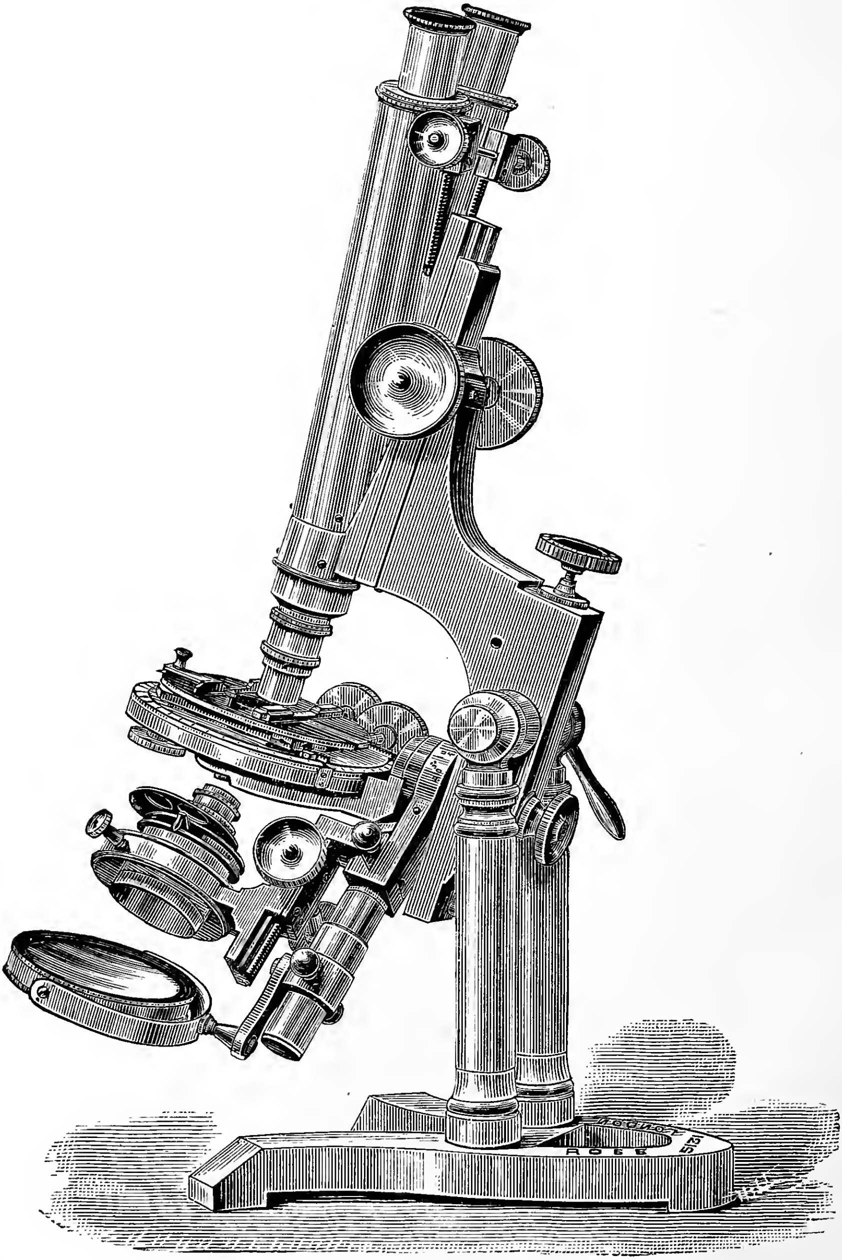
FIG. 52.



Ross's First-class Microscope.

the stage, and in front of the stem that carries the mirror, is a dovetail sliding-bar, which is moved up and down by the milled-head shown at its side; this sliding-bar carries what is termed by Mr. Ross the 'Secondary stage' (shown separately at B), which consists of a tube for the reception of the Achromatic Condenser, Polarizing prisms, and other fittings. To this secondary stage a

PLATE V.



Ross's Improved Jackson-Zentmayer Microscope.

[To face p. 89.

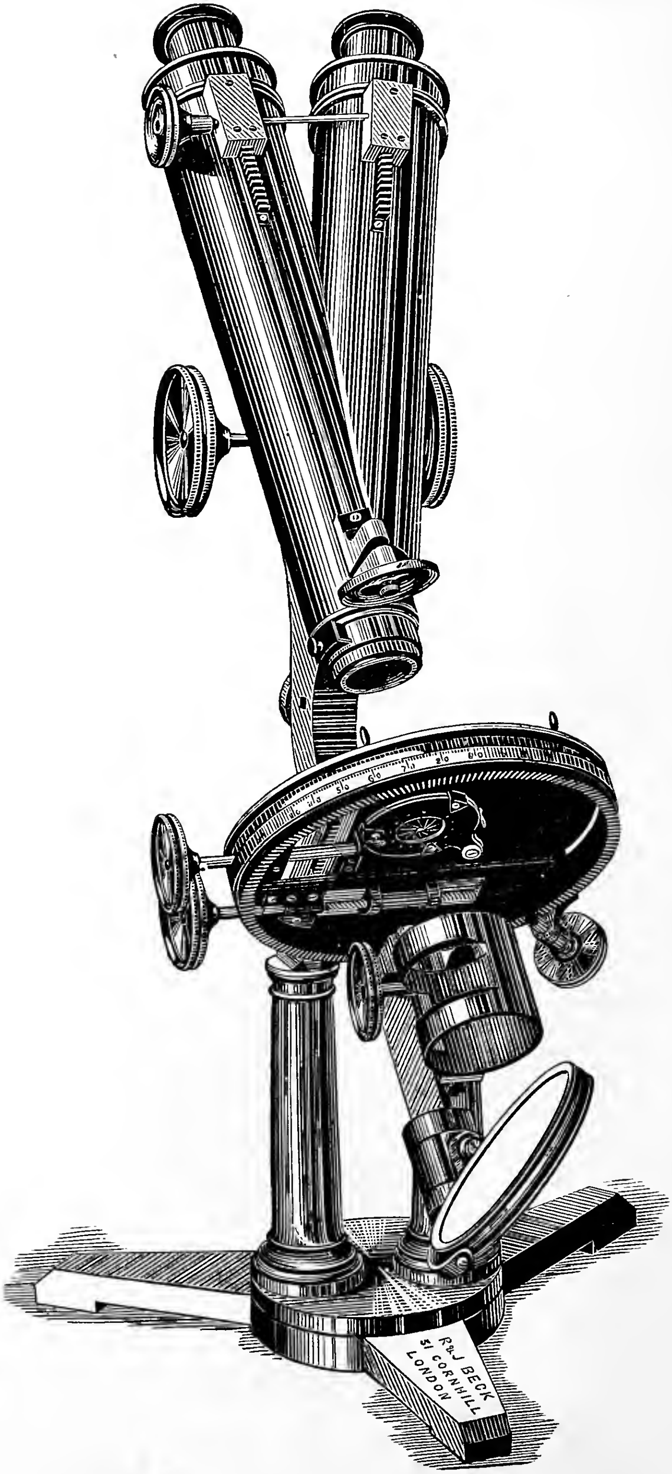
traversing movement of limited extent is given by means of two screws, one on the front and the other on the left-hand side of the frame which carries it, in order that its axis may be brought into perfect coincidence with the axis of the body; and a rotatory movement also is given to it by the turning of a milled-head, which is occasionally useful, and the exact amount of which is measured by a graduated circle.—The special advantages of this instrument consist in its general steadiness, in the admirable finish of its workmanship, and in the variety of movements which may be given both to the object and to the fittings of the secondary or sub-stage. Its disadvantages consist in the want of portability that necessarily arises from the substantial mode of its construction; and in the liability to tremor in the image, when the highest powers are used, through the want of support to the body along its length (§ 49).—This last consideration has induced Messrs. Ross to adopt the 'Jackson-model' in their more recent Microscopes; the newest and most complete form of which will be next described.

72. *Ross's Improved Jackson-Zentmayer Microscope.*—In this admirable instrument (Plate v.) the Jackson-model is followed as to general construction, whilst it is improved-on in various important particulars. The 'limb' that supports the principal body with the usual rack-and-pinion slide for coarse adjustment, carries also a second (or focussing) slide at the back of the first, to which a slow up-and-down movement is given by a lever passing through a channel in the limb, which is acted-on by a micronometer-screw with a large milled-head placed in a very accessible position. This arrangement renders the fine adjustment quite free from either 'twist' or 'loss of time,' whilst permitting it to work with sufficient freedom; and has the advantage of not affecting the magnifying power by altering the length of the body. Further, if a divided scale (with a vernier) be engraved on the edge of the limb, the thickness of any uncovered object lying on the stage can be measured with great exactness. The rotating stage-plate (graduated at its edge to serve as a Goniometer), is supported upon a firm ring composed of metal of peculiar inflexibility; and to this it can be secured in any azimuth by a clamping-screw beneath. Its single traversing platform is moved in rectangular directions by two milled-heads placed on the same axis, that work a combination of screw and pinion (devised by the ingenuity of Mr. Wenham), which is placed above instead of beneath it; and in this device more oblique light (it is affirmed) can be brought to bear upon the lower surface of the object, than in any other mechanical stage yet constructed. The stage-ring is not immovably fixed to the limb, but is attached to a conical stem, which passes through the tubular pivot of the swinging 'tail-piece' to be presently described, and is clamped at the back of the instrument by a strong screw and nut. Thus the stage may be made to incline towards either side at any angle, so that a view may be gained of the sides and edges of a solid object, as well as of its front; or it may be removed alto-

gether, and replaced by any other form of object-support more suitable to the special requirements of the individual Microscopist. —The most important novelty, however, consists in the adoption of the (patented) Zentmayer method of giving to the entire illuminating apparatus any desired degree of obliquity. The 'idea' is by no means new; and it was carried-out many years ago by the late Mr. Grubb of Dublin, who fixed beneath the stage a sector or arc-piece of nearly a semi-circle having its centre in the object, upon which the attachments of the mirror and condenser were made to slide. But the arrangement devised by Mr. Zentmayer, is not only far simpler, but also more effective. It consists in swinging the 'tail-piece' which carries the mirror and the secondary or sub-stage, upon a pivot placed at the back of the stage, the horizontal axis of which is in a line with the point of intersection of the optic axis of the body with the plane of the object on the stage; so that the axis of the condenser shall always pass through that point, whatever may be its inclination to the perpendicular. By means of this arrangement, every kind of illuminating apparatus adapted to the sub-stage can be made to act at any obliquity whatever; and as the tail-piece may be swung round on the side opposite to that of the milled-heads of the traversing stage, until it is brought considerably *above* the stage, oblique illumination may be thrown by the condenser, not only on the under but also on the *upper* surface of any object. It is one great advantage of this method, that condensers of large angle of aperture are not required for the purpose of oblique illumination; the converging pencils given by ordinary Objectives of 1 inch or $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch focus, used as condensers, being fully adequate. Further, the swinging tail-piece may be used to measure the angular aperture of Objectives in the manner to be hereafter described; its inclination to the optic axis being marked by a divided arc on its upper segment, which also enables the illuminating angle at which any particular object is best seen to be observed and recorded.—Altogether, it may be unhesitatingly affirmed, that the Zentmayer system enables the best results of oblique illumination to be obtained with greater facility than any other of equal effectiveness; while the simplicity of the construction of the whole instrument enables Messrs. Ross to reduce its cost considerably below that of the old Ross or Ross-Jackson models.

73. *Powell and Lealand's Large Microscope.*—These eminent Makers have not made any essential modification in the construction of their large Microscope, represented in Plate VII.; preferring to furnish the very oblique illumination now in general demand by enlarging the angular aperture of their Achromatic Condenser (§ 99). The chief peculiarity of their model consists in the attachment both of the Stage and Sub-stage to a large solid brass ring, which is firmly secured to the stem of the instrument. The upper side of this ring bears a sort of carriage that supports the stage; and to this carriage a rotatory movement around the optic axis of the principal body is given by a milled-head, the amount of this

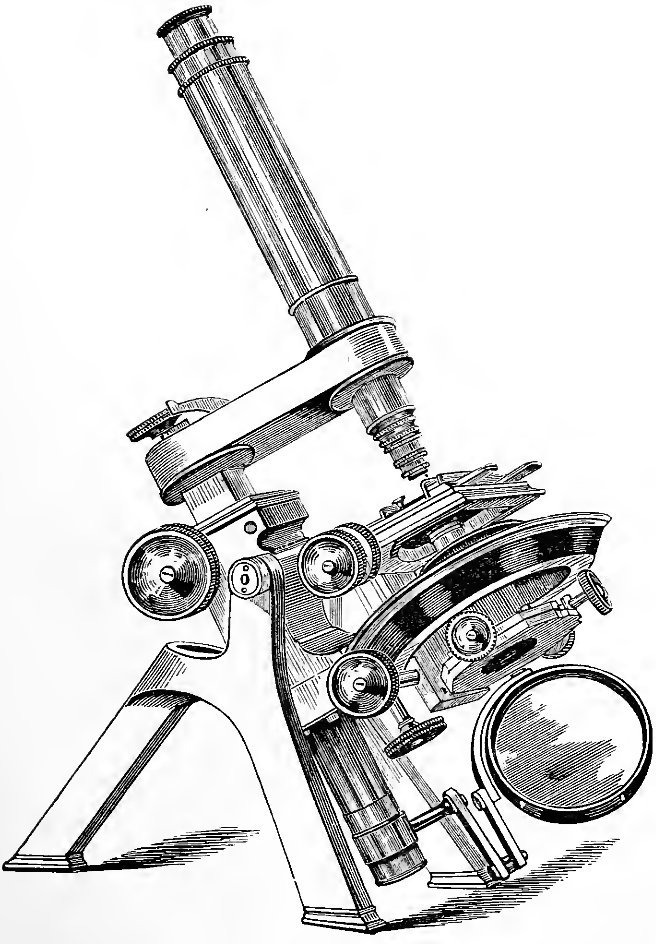
PLATE VI.



Messrs. Beck's Large Microscope.

[To face p. 91.

PLATE VII.



POWELL AND LEALAND'S LARGE MICROSCOPE.

[*To face p.* 90.

movement (which may be carried through an entire revolution) being exactly measured by a graduated circle. The stage, which is furnished with the usual traversing movements, worked by two milled-heads on the same axis, is made thin enough to admit of the mirror being so placed, by means of its extending arm, as to reflect light on the object from outside the large brass ring that supports the stage and sub-stage. Light of the greatest obliquity, however, may be more conveniently obtained by an Amici's prism (§ 102) placed above the supporting ring. The sub-stage is furnished with rotatory and rectangular, as well as with vertical movements. The instrument is so well balanced on its horizontal axis, that it remains perfectly steady without clamping, in whatever position it may be placed.

74. *Beck's First-class Microscope.*—It was by this Firm that the *Jackson* model was first adopted, for which the Author has already expressed his preference (§ 49). Besides the steadiness imparted to the double body by the support given to it by the limb along the greater part of its length, it is an additional advantage of this construction, that, by continuing the limb beneath the stage, the secondary body or Sub-stage (which carries the illuminating apparatus) is made to work in a dovetailed groove that is ploughed-out in continuity with that in which the rack of the principal body slides, an arrangement obviously favourable to exactness of centering. The Stage has a nearly complete rotation in the optic axis of the instrument, motion being given to it by a milled-head beneath the stage, the pinion attached to which can be readily thrown out of gear when a more rapid rotation of the stage by hand is desired; and it bears a graduated circle at its margin for the measurement of angles. It is fitted immediately beneath the object-platform with an iris-diaphragm, worked by a lever action.

75. *Beck's Improved First-class Microscope.*—In order to meet the demand for very oblique illumination, and to supply this in a mode yet more perfect than the Zentmayer system, Messrs. Beck have adapted to the preceding instrument a swinging sub-stage, carried by an arm that works radially upon a large vertical disk attached to the limb, on the plan originally suggested by Mr. Grubb; his semicircle being extended, however, into a nearly complete circle, so as to allow the arm carrying the sub-stage and mirror to be brought round to the upper side of the stage, for the illumination of opaque objects. The essential feature of their construction, however, which differentiates it from every other yet devised, consists in a provision for adjusting the illuminating apparatus to the thickness of the glass slide on which the object is mounted. This is effected by making the disk with its radial arm, slide vertically in a dovetail fitting; the illuminating apparatus attached to it, at whatever degree of obliquity it may be placed, being raised or lowered (by a lever-handle) in the optical axis of the instrument, so as to enable the illuminating cone to be exactly focussed in the object itself—which on the Zentmayer model, can

only be done with precision when the upper surface of the slide is exactly in the plane of the horizontal axis of the swinging 'tail-piece.'—The Stage also, in this elaborate instrument, is so attached to the limb by a firm pivot, as to be capable not only of being inclined towards either side at any angle, but also of being turned completely over, so as to allow the object to be viewed from its under side—a provision to which the Author's experience makes him attach a special value.

First-class Binocular Microscope-Stands, copied (more or less closely) from either the Ross or the Jackson models, are also made by Messrs. Baker, Collins, Crouch, Pillischer, and Swift, as well as by other makers of whose work the Author has no personal knowledge.—That of Mr. Crouch is distinguished by a provision for meeting the difficulty which is continually experienced, of keeping the image in place during the rotation of the stage, especially with high powers; the adjustment which suits one Objective, not being good for another somewhat differently centred. This defect presents itself still more frequently when a 'nose-piece' is in use; its centering being rarely so exact as to be free from an error that makes itself very perceptible when a high power is exchanged for a low one. By means of two diagonal screws beneath the stage, worked by two milled-heads at its hinder margin, Mr. Crouch affords a ready means by which the observer can adapt the centering of his stage to any objective he may have in use.—Mr. Browning also constructs a First-class Stand for his Stephenson Binocular.

MICROSCOPES FOR SPECIAL PURPOSES.

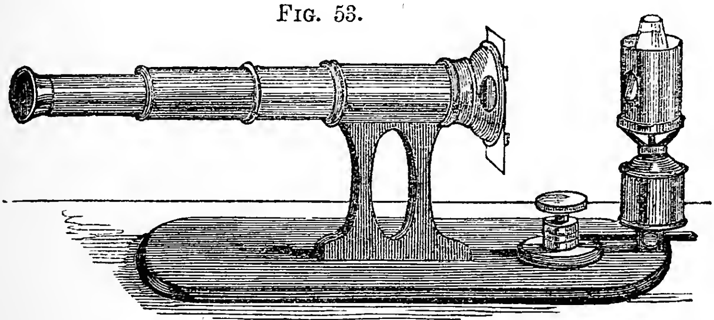
Of the large number of Instruments which have been ingeniously devised, each for some particular use, it would be quite foreign to the purpose of this Treatise to attempt to give an account. A few forms, however, may be noticed, as distinguished either by their special adaptiveness to very common wants, or by the ingenious manner in which the requirements of particular classes of investigators have been met.

76. *Dr. Beale's Pocket Microscope.*—This instrument consists of an ordinary Microscope-body, the Eye-piece of which is fitted with a draw-tube that slides smoothly and easily; whilst its lower end is fitted into an outer tube, of which the end projects beyond the objective. Against this projecting end the object-slide is held by a spring, as shown in Fig. 53, being fixed (if necessary) by a screw-clip. The coarse adjustment is made by sliding the body through the outer tube which carries the object; and the fine adjustment by sliding the eye-tube in or out. The object, if transparent, is illuminated either by holding up the Microscope to a window or lamp, from which the rays may pass directly through it, or by directing it towards a mirror laid on the table at such an angle as to reflect light from either of these sources: if opaque, it is allowed to receive direct light through an aperture in the outer tube. The extreme simplicity and portability of this instrument (which when closed is only six inches long) constitutes its

special recommendation. With due care even high powers may be used, the eye-piece adjustment giving the power of very exact focussing. Hence this Pocket Microscope may be conveniently applied to the purposes of Clinical observation (the examination of Urinary Deposits, Blood, Sputa, &c.), either in hospital or in private practice; whilst it may also be advantageously used by the Field Naturalist in examining specimens of Water for Animalcules, Protophytes, &c.

77. *Dr. Beale's Demonstrating Microscope.*—The same instrument may be used for the purposes of Class-demonstration, by attaching its outer tube on a wooden support to a horizontal board, which also carries a small lamp attached to it in the required position (Fig. 53). The object having been fixed in its place, and the coarse adjustment made by sliding the body in the outer tube, these parts may then be immovably secured, nothing being left movable except the eye-tube, by sliding which in or out the fine adjustment may be effected. Thus the whole apparatus may be passed from hand to hand with the greatest facility, and without any probability of disarrangement; and every observer may readily 'focus' for himself, without any risk of injuring the object.*

FIG. 53.



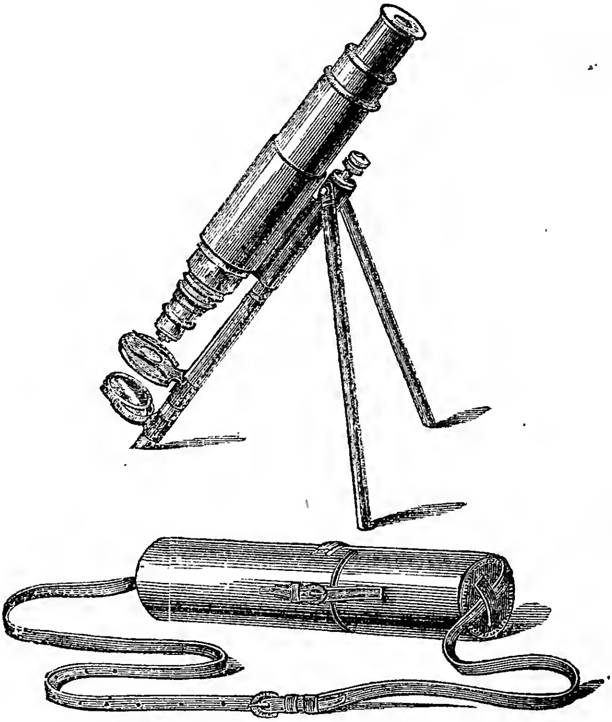
Dr. Beale's Demonstrating Microscope.

78. *Baker's Travelling Microscope.*—An instrument has been devised by Mr. Moginie, which is but little inferior in portability to the Pocket Microscope of Prof. Beale, and has some advantages over it. The body (Fig. 54) slides in a tube which is attached to a stem that carries at its lower end a small Stage and Mirror. The stem itself contains a fine adjustment that is worked by a milled-head at its summit; and near to this is attached by pivot-joint a pair of legs, which, when opened-out, form with the stem a firm tripod support. The coarse adjustment having been made by sliding the body through the tube which grasps it, the fine adjust-

* The price of Dr. Beale's Clinical Microscope, as made by Mr. Collins, without Objectives, is £1 11*s*. 6*d*. That of the same instrument fitted up as a Demonstrating Microscope, is £3 3*s*.—Mr. Collins also makes another Class and Demonstration Microscope, or a pattern of Dr. Lawson's, for £3 10*s*., without Objectives.

ment is made by the milled-head; and thus even high powers may be very conveniently worked. The legs being tubular, one of them is made to hold glass dipping-tubes, whilst the other contains needles set in handles, with three short legs of steel wire, by screwing which into the stem and stage, the Microscope may be

Fig. 54.



Baker's Travelling Microscope.

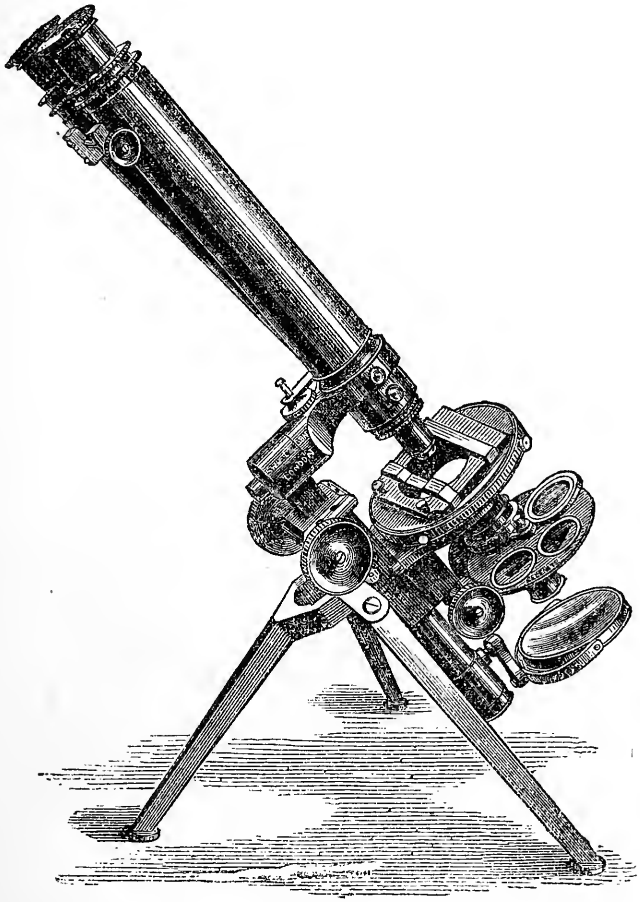
used (though not without risk of overturn) in the vertical position. This instrument may be specially recommended to those who, already possessing a superior Microscope, desire neither to encumber themselves with it whilst travelling, nor to expose it to the risk of injury, but wish to utilize its Objectives by means of a simple and portable arrangement.*

79. *Swift's Portable Binocular.*—Carrying still further an idea originally worked-out by Messrs. Powell and Lealand, Mr. Swift has devised a very complete Portable Binocular, which can be *folded* into a very small compass, without any screwing or unscrewing, and can be thus set up, as in Fig. 55 A, or packed away, as at Fig. 55 B, with great facility, when once the manner of doing so has been learned. Its construction is a marvel of ingenuity; while its workmanship is so excellent that its joints do not easily become

* Instruments nearly resembling the above are made by Messrs. Murray and Heath, Mr. Browning, and Mr. Swift.

loosened by wear, and can all be readily tightened when required. It is so steady as to bear being worked (as a Monocular) with even

FIG. 55 A.



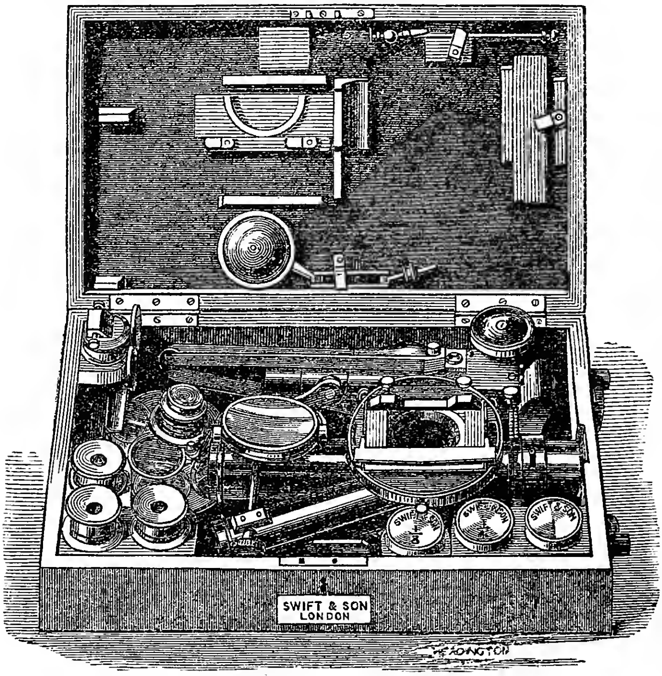
Swift's Portable Binocular, as set up for use.

high powers; but its great advantage consists in its suitability to the Traveller, who either wishes (as often happens to the Author) to display to scientific friends in other countries a set of objects that can be most advantageously seen by the Binocular under low powers, or to avail himself of opportunities of examining on the spot any interesting specimens he may meet with. The instrument also carries Mr. Swift's Combination Sub-stage (Fig. 85), which can be packed, together with three Objectives, Side Condenser, and several other Accessories, into a Case only 11 inches long, $6\frac{1}{2}$ inches wide, and $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches deep, the whole weighing only $7\frac{1}{2}$ lbs.

80. *Nachet's Chemical Microscope.*—The inverted Microscope

originally constructed by MM. Nachet on the plan devised by Dr. J. Lawrence Smith, of Louisiana, U.S., for the purpose of viewing objects from their *under* side when heat or re-agents are being applied to them,* has lately been improved by its constructor with a special view to meeting the requirements of observers engaged in the 'cultivation' of the minute organisms which act as ferments. The general arrangement of this instrument is shown in Fig. 56. On the table which forms its base, there rests a box containing a

FIG. 55 B.



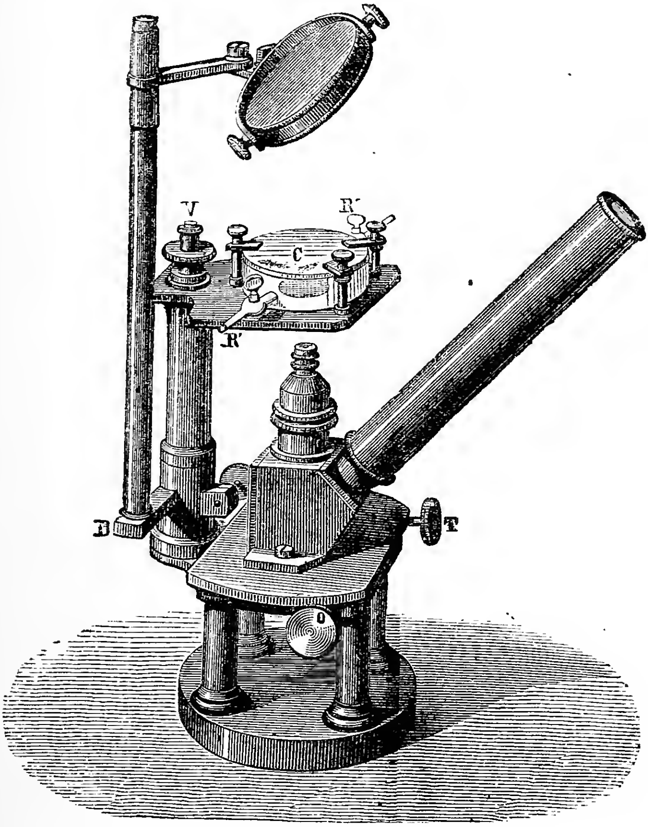
Swift's Portable Binocular, as packed in case.

glass mirror silvered on its upper surface, which is placed at such an angle as to reflect the light-rays received through the inverted Objective mounted on the top of the box, into the body fixed into its oblique face. Over the objective is placed the Stage, above which again is the Mirror for reflecting light downwards through the object placed upon it. The focal adjustment is made in the first place by means of a sliding tube which carries the objective, and then by the micrometer-screw V, which raises or lowers the stage. The platform on which the optical apparatus rests, can be moved in rectangular directions by the two milled-heads O, T; and is furnished with two graduated scales, by means of which it may be brought with exactness into any position previously recorded, so

* This idea was suggested at nearly the same time by Dr. Leeson; and was carried out in an instrument constructed for him by Messrs. Smith and Beck.

that any point of the object may be immediately re-found—an arrangement of special value in cultivation-experiments. On the

Fig. 56.



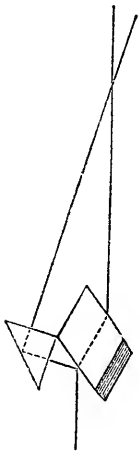
Nachet's Chemical Microscope.

stage is a circular glass cell, C, for holding the fluid to be examined; in the bottom of this is an aperture, which is closed by a piece of thin cover-glass well cemented round its edges, thus allowing the use of high magnifying powers having a very short focus; while its top is ground flat, so that a cover of thin plate-glass may be closely fitted to it by the intervention of a little grease or glycerine; the whole being secured in its place by three small uprights. The cell is furnished also with two small glass taps, R, R, with which india-rubber tubes are connected. By this cell, which may be made to serve as a moist, a warm, and a gas-chamber, experiments on the rarefaction and compression of air, and on the absorption of gases, can be made with great facility. For 'cultivation' experiments, smaller cells are provided, which are attached to brass-

plates so arranged as to have always a fixed position on the stage.*

81. *Non-Stereoscopic Binoculars.*—The great comfort which is experienced by the Microscopist from the conjoint use of both eyes, has led to the invention of more than one arrangement by which this comfort can be secured, when those high powers are required which cannot be employed with the ordinary Stereoscopic Binocular. This is accomplished by Messrs. Powell and Lealand by taking advantage of the fact already adverted to (§ 1), that when a pencil of rays falls obliquely upon the surface of a refracting medium, a part of it is reflected without entering that medium at all. In the place usually occupied by the Wenham prism, they interpose an inclined plate of glass with parallel sides, through which one portion of the rays proceeding upwards from the whole aperture of the Objective passes into the *principal* body with very little change in its course, whilst another portion is reflected from its surface into a rectangular prism so placed as to direct it obliquely upwards into the *secondary* body (Fig. 57). Although there is a decided difference in brightness between the two images, that formed by the reflected rays being the fainter, yet there is marvellously little loss of definition in either, even when the 25th-inch objective is used. The disc and prism are fixed in a short tube, which can be readily substituted in any ordinary Binocular Microscope for the one containing the Wenham prism.—Other arrangements were long since devised by Mr. Wenham†, with a view to obtain a greater equality in the amount of light-rays forming the two pictures; and he has lately carried one of these into practical effect, with the advantage that the compound prism of which it consists, has so nearly the same shape and size as his ordinary stereoscopic prism, as to be capable of being mounted in precisely the same manner, so that the one may be readily exchanged for the other. The axial ray *a*, proceeding upwards from the objective, enters the prism A B D E F (Fig. 58) at right angles to its lower face, and passes on to *c*, where it meets the inclined face A B, at which this prism is nearly in contact with the oblique face of the right-angled prism A B C. By internal reflection from the former, and external reflection from the latter, about half the beam *b* is reflected within the first prism in the direction *c b*, while the other half proceeds straight onwards through the second prism, in the direction *c a'*, so as to pass into the *principal* body. The reflected half, meeting at *d*, the oblique

FIG. 57.



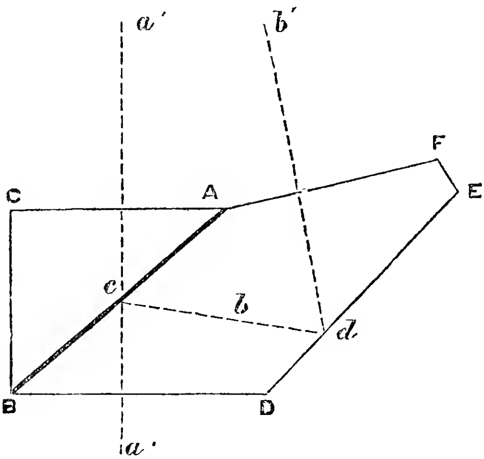
Powell and Lealand's Non-Stereoscopic Binocular Arrangement.

* A *Mineralogical Microscope* specially contrived by M. Nachet for minute Petrological researches, will be described at the end of Chap. XXI.

† "Transactions of the Microsc. Soc." N.S., Vol. xiv. (1866), p. 105.

(silvered) surface D E, of the first prism, is again reflected in the direction $d\ b'$; and passing out of that prism perpendicularly to its surface A F, proceeds towards the *secondary* body. The two prisms

Fig. 58.



must not be in absolute contact along the plane A B, since, if they were, Newton's rings would be formed; and much nicety is required in their adjustment, so that the two reflections may be combined without any blurring of the image in the secondary body. Being (by Mr. Wenham's kindness) the possessor of a prism thus adjusted by himself, the Author can bear testimony to the excellence of its performance; and he feels sure that for the prolonged observation, under high powers, of objects not requiring the *extreme* of perfection in definition—such, for example, as the study of the Cyclosis in Plants,—great advantage is gained from the conjoint use of *both* eyes by one of the above arrangements.

CHAPTER III.

ACCESSORY APPARATUS.

In describing the various pieces of Accessory Apparatus with which the Microscope may be furnished, it will be convenient in the first place to treat of those which form (when in use) part of the instrument itself, being appendages either to its Body or to its Stage, or serving for the Illumination of the objects which are under examination; and secondly, to notice such as have for their function to facilitate that examination, by enabling the Microscopist to bring the objects conveniently under his inspection.

Section 1. *Appendages to the Microscope.*

82. *Amplifier.*—It is obvious that if, by the use of a concave lens interposed between the Objective and the Eye-piece, the divergence of the rays, in the course from the former to the latter, be increased, the magnifying power of the instrument will be augmented in proportion; and such an addition (which was long since introduced into Telescopes, and also into the Solar Microscope) has been brought into general use in the United States, having been first made effective by Mr. Tolles. As constructed by him, the Amplifier is an achromatic concavo-convex lens of small diameter, screwed into the lower end of the draw-tube, so as to be at no great distance behind the objective, the power of which it doubles, without (it is affirmed) producing sensible deterioration of the image. Dr. Devron, of New Orleans, states that two photographs having been taken of *Amphipleura pellucida*, the one by a Tolles' 1-12th with amplifier, the other with a Tolles' 1-25th without amplifier, they proved to be scarcely distinguishable; and that the 19th band of Nobert's ruled plate could be resolved with its aid, by objectives under which without it no resolution could be obtained.* It is obvious that if the magnifying power of our Microscopes can be thus doubled, without the strain of eyes, and the loss of light and of definition, produced by deep Eye-piecing, and without the necessity of employing Objectives of inconveniently short focus and great cost, a great advantage will have been gained; while those who wish to possess a graduated range of powers, need only supply themselves with half the number of Objectives needed to

* "American Monthly Journal of Microscopy," Vol. iii. (1878), p. 38.

give it, since each can be made to do double work (a 1 inch, for example, serving also as a half-inch) without change either of the eye-piece or of the focal adjustment.—Dr. Wythe, of San Francisco, states that he has obtained very good results by placing a double-concave or a concavo-convex lens of about 6 inches focus, and of as large a diameter as the tube will allow, about 3 inches below the eye-piece; counteracting its aberrations by substituting a convexo-concave lens for the plano-convex which forms the field-glass of the ordinary Huyghenian eye-piece.*

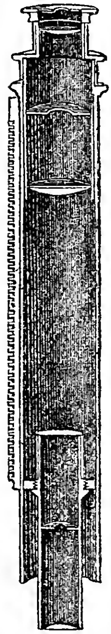
83. *Draw-Tube.*—It is advantageous for many purposes that the Eye-piece should be fitted, not at once into the 'body' of the Microscope, but into an intermediate tube; the drawing-out of which, by augmenting the distance between the objective and the image which it forms in the focus of the eye-glass, still further augments the size of the image in relation to that of the object (§ 25). For although, as a general rule, the magnifying power cannot be thus increased with advantage to any considerable extent, yet, if the corrections of low objectives have been well adjusted, their performance is not seriously impaired by a moderate lengthening of the body; and recourse may be conveniently had to this on many occasions in which some amplification is desired, intermediate between the powers furnished by any two Objectives. Thus, if one objective give a power of 80 diameters, and another a power of 120, by using the first and drawing out the Eye-piece, its power may be increased to 100. Again, it is often very useful to make the object fill up the whole, or nearly the whole, of the field of view; so as to prevent the vividness and distinctness of its image from being interfered with by extraneous light. In the use of the Micrometric eye-pieces to be presently described (§§ 90, 91), very great advantage is to be derived from the assistance of the Draw-tube; as enabling us to make a precise adjustment between the divisions of the Stage-micrometer and those of the Eye-piece micrometer; and as admitting the establishment of a more convenient numerical relation between the two, than could be otherwise secured without far more elaborate contrivances. Moreover, if, for the sake of saving room in packing, it be desired to reduce the length of the body, the draw-tube (in a Monocular Microscope) affords a ready means of doing so.—Objectives of high power, however, require special adjustment when any considerable length of Draw-tube is used.

84. *Lister's Erector.*—This instrument, first applied to the Compound Microscope by Mr. Lister, consists of a tube about three inches long, having a meniscus at one end and a plano-convex lens at the other (the convex sides being upwards in each case), with a diaphragm nearly half way between them; and this is screwed into the lower end of the draw-tube, as shown in Fig. 59. Its effect is (like the corresponding erector of the Telescope), to antagonize the inversion of the image formed by the object-glass, by producing a

* *Op. cit.* Vol. v. (1880), p. 81.

second inversion, so as to make the Image presented to the eye correspond in position with the Object—an arrangement of great service in cases in which the object has to be subjected to any kind of manipulation. The passage of the rays through two additional lenses of course occasions a certain loss of light and impairment of the distinctness of the image; but this need not be an obstacle to its use for the class of purposes for which it is especially adapted in other respects, since these seldom require a very high degree of defining power. By the position given to the Erector, it is made subservient to another purpose of great utility; namely, the procuring a very extensive *range* of Magnifying power, without any change in the Objective. For when the draw-tube, with the erector fitted to it, is completely pushed-in, the *acting length* of the body (so to speak) is so greatly reduced by the formation of the first image much nearer the objective, that, if a lens of 2-3rds of an inch focus be employed, an object of the diameter of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch can be taken in, and enlarged to no more than 4 diameters; whilst, on the other hand, when the tube is drawn-out $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches, the object is enlarged 100 diameters. Of course every intermediate range can be obtained by drawing-out the tube more or less; and the facility with which this can be accomplished, especially when the Draw-tube is furnished with a rack-and-pinion movement (as in Messrs. Beck's Compound Dissecting Microscope), renders such an instrument very useful in various kinds of research.

FIG. 59.



Draw-tube fitted with Erector.

85. *Micro-Megascope.*—This designation has been applied by Dr. J. Matthews,* to an arrangement of the ordinary Microscope, whereby such a low amplification may be obtained, as gives a general view of large objects, without the need of any special apparatus. The method consists in employing the ordinary microscope to magnify —not the object itself—but an image of it formed by a lens placed between the object and the front of the objective. In the *principle* of this method there is nothing new, for every Microscopist who has focussed an Achromatic Condenser, upon a transparent object, has seen the image formed by it of his window-frame, blind-tassel, or (it may be) of sharply defined clouds.† And Dr. Royston-Pigott has been accustomed to employ such images of hairs, fine wires, &c., as 'tests' for the defining quality of Objectives of high magnifying power. The *novelty* consists in the mode of applying it.

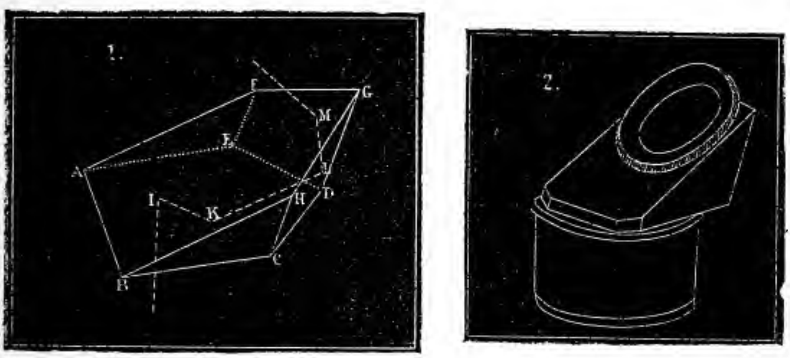
* "Journal of Quekett Microscopical Club," July, 1879.

† The Author has thus exhibited to his friends a Microscopic view of the Moon.

to the purpose just named. This answers best when an Objective of 2-inches or $1\frac{1}{2}$-inch focus is used in the microscope, and a 1-inch Objective is placed in the Sub-stage with its front-lens upward. The object to be imaged by the latter is to be placed either at some distance behind it, the mirror being turned aside, or, if the Mirror be employed, at some distance from it on either side; the distance, in either case, being adapted to give to the Microscopic image the amplification required. The former arrangement is most convenient if the Microscope is being used in a horizontal position; the latter is most suitable when the Microscope is inclined, the distance of an object placed in the optic axis being then limited. If exact definition is required, the Mirror should be replaced by a right-angled Prism (§ 2). The object, whether transparent or opaque, must be suitably illuminated; and it will be found convenient to use a special support so made that its position and height may be conveniently varied.

86. *Nachet's Erecting Prism.*—An extremely ingenious arrangement has been made by MM. Nachet, on the basis of an idea first carried into practice by Prof. Amici, by which the inverted image given by the Compound Microscope is erected by a single rectangular prism placed over the eye-piece. The mode in which this prism is fitted up is shown in Fig. 60 (2); the rationale of its action is explained by the diagram (1). The prism is interposed

FIG. 60.



Nachet's Erecting Prism.

between the two lenses of the Eye-piece, and has somewhat the form of a double wedge, with two pentagonal sides, A B C D E, and A B H G F, which meet each other along the common edge A B, and two facets, D E F G, and C D G H, which meet along the common edge D G, the edges A B and D G being perpendicular to each other. The rays emerging from the field-glass enter this prism by its lower surface, and are reflected at I, upon the face A B H G F, from which they are again reflected upon the lower surface at the point K, and thence to

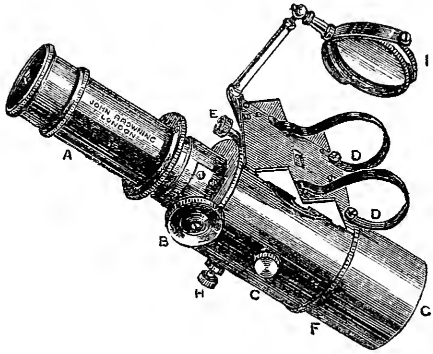
the point L upon the vertical face C D G H, and lastly at the point M, upon the other vertical face D E F G; from which the image normally and completely erected, is again sent back, to issue by the superior surface upon which the eye-glass is placed. All the reflexions are total, except the first at I; and the loss of light is far less than would be anticipated.—The obliquity which this Prism gives to the visual rays, when the Microscope is placed vertically for dissecting or for the examination of objects in fluid, is such as to bring them to the eye at an angle very nearly corresponding with that at which the Microscope may be most conveniently used in the inclined position (§ 41, III.); so that, instead of being an objection, it is a real advantage.

87. *Sorby-Browning Micro-Spectroscope.**—When the Solar ray is decomposed into a coloured spectrum by a prism of sufficient dispersive power, to which the light is admitted by a narrow slit, a multitude of dark lines make their appearance. The existence of these was originally noticed by Wollaston; but as Fraunhofer first subjected them to a thorough investigation, and mapped them out, they are known as *Fraunhofer-lines*. The greater the dispersion given by the multiplication of prisms in the Spectroscope, the more of these lines are seen; and they bear considerable magnification. They result from the interruption or absorption of certain rays in the Solar atmosphere, according to the law, first stated by Angström, that "rays which a substance absorbs are precisely those which it emits when made self-luminous." Kirchhoff showed that while the incandescent vapours of Sodium, Potassium, Lithium, &c., give a spectrum with characteristic *bright* lines, the same vapours intercept portions of white light, so as to give *dark* lines in place of the bright ones, absorbing their own special colour, but allowing rays of other colours to pass through.—Again, when ordinary light is made to pass through coloured bodies (solid, liquid, or gaseous), or is reflected from their surfaces, so as to affect the eye with the sensation of colour, its spectrum is commonly found to exhibit absorption *bands*, which differ from the Fraunhofer lines, not only in their greater breadth, but in being more or less *nebulous* or cloudy, so that they cannot be resolved into distinct lines by magnification, while too much dispersion thins them out to indistinctness. Now, it is by the character of these bands, and by their position in the spectrum, that the colours of different substances can be most accurately and scientifically compared; many colours whose impressions on the eye are so similar that they cannot be distinguished, being readily discriminated by their spectra. The purpose of the Micro-Spectroscope is to apply the spectroscopic test to very minute quantities of coloured substances; and it fundamentally consists of an ordinary Eye-piece (which can be fitted into any Microscope) with certain special modifications. As originally devised by

* For general information on the Spectroscope and its uses, the student is referred to Professor Roscoe's "Lectures on Spectrum Analysis," or the translation of Dr. Schellen's "Spectrum Analysis."

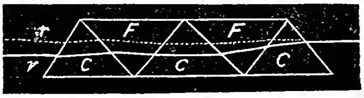
Mr. Sorby, and worked-out by Mr. Browning, the Micro-Spectroscope is constructed as follows (Fig. 61):—Above its Eye-glass, which is achromatic, and made capable of focal adjustment by the milled-head B for rays of different refrangibilities, there is placed a tube A, containing a series of five prisms, two of flint-glass (Fig. 62, F F) interposed between three of crown (C C C), in such a manner that the emergent rays *r r*, which have been separated by the dispersive action of the flint-glass prisms, are parallel to the rays which enter the combination. Below the eye-glass, in the place of the ordinary stop, is a diaphragm with a narrow slit, which limits the admission of light; this can be adjusted in vertical position by the milled-head H, whilst the breadth of the slit is regulated by C. The foregoing, with an Objective of suitable power, would be all that is needed for the examination of the spectra of objects placed on the stage of the Microscope, whether opaque or transparent, solid or liquid, provided that they transmit a sufficient amount of light. But as it is of great importance to make exact comparisons of such artificial spectra, alike with the ordinary or natural Spectrum, and with each other, provision is made for the formation of a second spectrum, by the insertion of a right-angled prism that covers one-half of this slit, and reflects upwards the light transmitted through an aperture seen on the right side of the eye-piece. For the production of the ordinary spectrum, it is only requisite to reflect light into this aperture from the small mirror I, carried at the side; whilst for the production of the spectrum of any substance through which the light reflected from this mirror can be transmitted, it is only necessary to place the slide carrying the section or crystalline film, or the tube containing the solution, in the frame D D adapted to receive it. In either case, this second spectrum is seen by the eye of the observer alongside of that produced by the object viewed through the body of the Microscope, so that the two can be exactly compared.

Fig. 61.



Micro-Spectroscope.

Fig. 62.

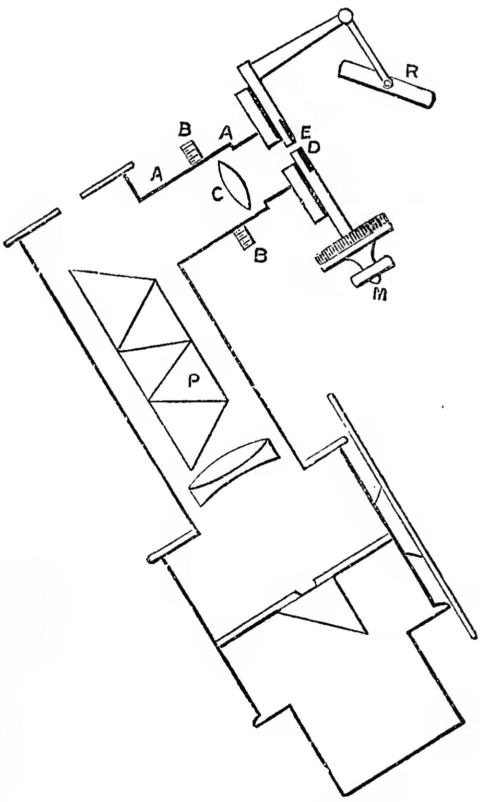


Arrangement of prisms in Spectroscope Eye-piece.

88. The exact position of the Absorption-bands is as important as that of the Fraunhofer-lines; and some of the most conspicuous of the latter afford fixed points of reference, provided the same

Spectroscope be employed. The amount of dispersion determines whether the Fraunhofer-lines and Absorption-bands are seen nearer or farther apart; their actual positions in the field of view varying according to the dispersion, while their relative positions are in constant proportion.—The best contrivance for measuring the spectra of absorption bands is Browning's Bright-line Micrometer, shown in Fig. 63. At R is a small mirror by which light from the lamp employed can be reflected through E D to the lens C, which, by means of a perforated stop, forms a bright pointed image on the surface of the upper prism, whence it is reflected to the eye of the observer. The rotation of a wheel worked by the milled-head M, carries this bright point over the spectrum, and the exact amount of motion may be read off to 1-10,000th inch on the graduated circle of the wheel. To use this apparatus, the Fraunhofer lines must be viewed by sending bright daylight through the spectroscope, and the positions of the principal lines carefully measured, the reading on the micrometer-wheel being noted down. A Spectrum-map may then be drawn on cardboard, on a scale of equal parts; and the lines marked on it, as shown in the upper half of Fig. 64. The lower half of the same figure shows an Absorption-spectrum, with its bands at certain distances from the Fraunhofer lines. The cardboard Spectrum-map, when once drawn, should be kept for reference.*

Fig. 63.

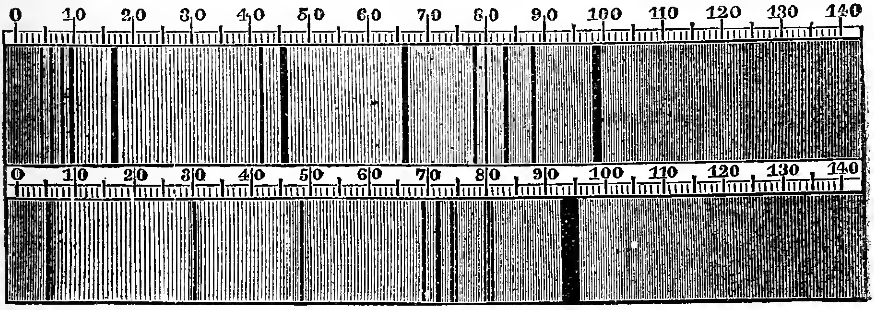


Bright-line Spectro-Micrometer.

* Mr. Swift has devised an improved Micro-Spectroscope, in which the Micrometric apparatus is combined with the ordinary Spectroscopic Eye-piece, and two spectra can be brought into the field at once.—Other improvements devised by Mr. Sorby, and a new form devised by Mr. F. H. Ward, have been carried into execution by Mr. Hilger. (See "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. i., 1878, p. 326, and Vol. ii., 1879, p. 81.) Another construction possessing some advantages over the original form, has been devised by Zeiss of Jena. (See "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. iii., 1880, p. 703).

89. A beginner with the Micro-Spectroscope should first hold it up to the sky on a clear day, without the intervention of the microscope, and note the effects of opening and closing the slit by rotating the screw C (Fig. 61); the lines can only be well seen when the slit is reduced to a narrow opening. The screw H diminishes the length

FIG. 64.



Upper half, Map of Solar Spectrum, showing Fraunhofer lines. Lower half, Absorption Spectrum, showing position of Bands in relation to lines.

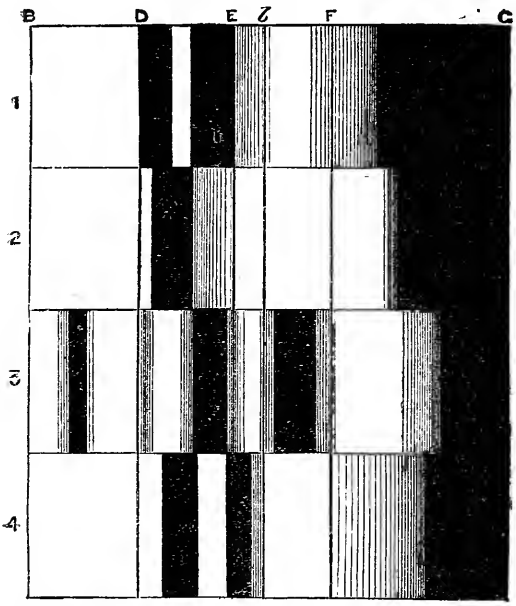
of the slit, and causes the spectrum to be seen as a broad or a narrow ribbon. The screw E (or in some patterns two small sliding-knobs) regulates the quantity of light admitted through the square aperture seen between the points of the springs D D.—Water tinged with port wine, madder, and blood, are good fluids with which to commence this study of absorption-bands. They may be placed in small test tubes, in flat glass cells, or in wedge-shaped cells.* As each colour varies in refrangibility, the focus must be adjusted by the screw B, Fig. 61, according to the part of the spectrum that is examined.—When it is desired to see the spectrum of an exceedingly minute object, or of a small portion only of a larger one, the prisms are to be removed by withdrawing the tube containing them; the slides should then be opened wide, and the object, or part of it, brought into the centre of the field; the vertical and horizontal slits can then be partly shut, so as to enclose it; and if the prisms are then replaced, and a suitable objective employed, the required spectrum will be seen unaffected by adjacent objects. For ordinary observations, Objectives of from 2 inches to 2-3rds inch focus will be found most suitable; but for very minute quantities of material a higher power must be employed. Even a single Red Blood-corpuscle may be made to show the characteristic Absorption-bands represented (after Prof. Stokes) in Fig. 65.†

* A series of specimens, in small tubes, for the study of Absorption-spectra, is kept on sale by Mr. Browning; and the directions given in his "How to Work with the Micro-Spectroscope" should be carefully attended to.

† For further information on "The Spectrum Method of Detecting Blood," see an important paper by Mr. Sorby, in "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. vi. (1871), p. 9.

90. *Micrometric Apparatus.*—Although some have applied their micrometric apparatus to the Stage of the Microscope, yet it is to the Eye-piece that it may be most advantageously adapted.* The *Cobweb Micrometer*, invented by Ramsden for Telescopes, is probably, when well constructed, the most perfect instrument that the Microscopist can employ. It is made by stretching across the field of an Eye-piece two very delicate parallel wires or spider's threads, one of which can be separated from the other by the action of a micrometer screw, the head of which is divided at its edge into a convenient number of parts, which successively pass-by an index as the milled-head is turned. A portion of the field of view on one side is cut off at right angles to the filaments, by a scale formed of a thin plate of brass having notches at its edge, whose distance corresponds to that of the threads of the screw, every fifth notch being made deeper than the rest for the sake of ready enumeration. The object being brought into such a position that one of its edges seems to touch the stationary filament, the other thread is moved by the micrometer-screw until it appears to lie in contact with the other edge of the object; the number of entire divisions on the scale shows how many complete turns of the screw must have been made in thus separating the filaments, while

Fig. 65.



1, Spectroscopic appearance of fresh Scarlet Blood; 2, of Deoxydized Blood (cruorine); 3, of Hæmatin, obtained by acting on cruorine with an acid; 4, of Hæmatin reoxydized.

* The Stage-Micrometer constructed by Fraunhofer is employed by many Continental Microscopists; but it is subject to this disadvantage—that any error in its performance is augmented by the *whole* magnifying power employed; whilst a like error in the Eye-piece Micrometer is increased by the magnifying power of the eye-piece alone.—Dr. Royston-Pigott has pointed out ("Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. ix., 1873, p. 2), that by placing the Cobweb Micrometer at some distance beneath the stage, and by forming an *aerial image* of it (by an interposed lens) in the plane of the object, the delicacy and accuracy of its measurements may be greatly increased; the numerical value of each division being reduced, in proportion to the reduction in the size of the aerial image, which will of course be determined by the focal length of the lens that forms it, and by the distance of the Micrometer beneath it.

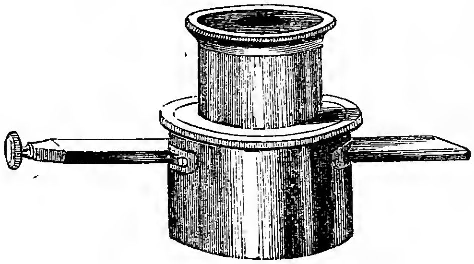
the number to which the index points on the milled-head shows what fraction of a turn may have been made in addition. It is usual, by employing a screw of 100 threads to the inch, to give to each division of the scale the value of 1-100th of an inch, and to divide the milled-head into 100 parts; but the *absolute* value of the divisions is of little consequence, since their *micrometric* value depends upon the Objective with which the instrument may be employed. This must be determined by means of a ruled slip of glass laid upon the stage; and as the distance of the divisions even in the best-ruled slips is by no means uniform, it is advisable to take an average of several measurements, both upon different slips, and upon different parts of the same slip. Here the Draw-tube will be of essential use, in enabling the Microscopist to bring the value of the divisions of his Micrometer to *even numbers*.—The Microscopist who applies himself to researches requiring micrometric measurement, should determine the value of his Micrometer with each of the Objectives he is likely to use for the purpose; and should keep a table of these determinations, recording in each case the extent to which the tube has been drawn out, as marked by the graduated scale of inches which it should possess. And he should also make an accurate estimate of the thickness of the Cobweb-threads themselves; since, if this be not properly allowed for, a serious error will be introduced into the measurements made by this instrument, especially when the spaces measured are extremely minute. (See Michell, in "Transact. Microsc. Soc." N.S., Vol. xiv., p. 71.)

91. The costliness of the Cobweb Micrometer being an important obstacle to its general use, a simpler method (devised by Mr. G. Jackson) is more commonly adopted; which consists in the insertion of a transparent scale into an ordinary Huyghenian Eye-piece in the focus of the eye-glass, so that the image of the object is seen to be projected upon it. This scale is ruled like that of an ordinary measure (*i.e.*, with every tenth line *long*, and every fifth line half its length) on a slip of glass, which is so fitted into a brass frame (Fig. 66, B), as to have a slight motion towards either end; one of its extremities is pressed-upon by a fine milled-head screw which works through the frame, and the other by a spring (concealed in the figure) which antagonizes the screw. The scale thus mounted is introduced through a pair of slits in the Eye-piece tube, immediately above the diaphragm (Fig. 66, A), so as to occupy the centre of the field; and it is brought accurately into focus by unscrewing the eye-glass until the lines of the scale are clearly seen. The value of the divisions of this scale must be determined by means of a ruled Stage-micrometer, as in the former instance, for each Objective employed in micrometry, the use of the Draw-tube enabling the proportions to be adjusted to even and convenient numbers); and this having been accomplished, the scale is brought to bear upon the object to be measured, by moving the latter as nearly as possible into the centre of the field, and

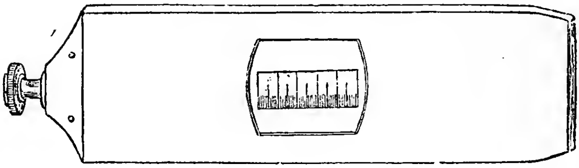
then rotating the Eye-piece in such a manner that the scale may lie across that diameter which it is desired to measure. The pushing-screw at the extremity of the scale being then turned until one edge of the object appears to be in exact contact with one of the long lines, the number of divisions which its diameter occupies is at once read-off by directing the attention to the other edge—the operation being nothing more than laying a rule across the body to be measured.* This method of measurement may be

FIG. 66.

A



B



Jackson's Eye-piece Micrometer.

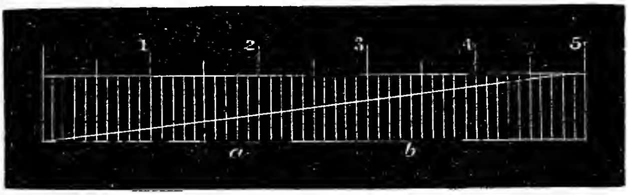
made quite exact enough for all ordinary purposes, provided, in the first place, that the Eye-piece scale be divided with a fair degree of accuracy; and secondly, that the value of its divisions be ascertained (as in the case of the Cobweb Micrometer) by *several* comparisons with a ruled scale laid upon the Stage. Thus if, by a *mean* of numerous observations, we establish the value of each division of the eye-piece scale to be 1-12,500th of an inch, then, if the image of an object be found to measure $3\frac{1}{2}$ of those divisions, its real diameter will be $3\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{12500}$ or $\frac{1}{3571}$ inch.† With an

* Dr. Royston-Pigott (*loc. cit.*) prefers to introduce into the aperture of the diaphragm a plano-convex lens of very long focus, with the lines engraved upon its flat surface. The advantage of the screw-movement is sacrificed, but a greater distinctness of the lines is obtained.

† The calculation of the dimensions is much simplified by the adoption of a Decimal scale; the value of each division being made, by the use of the Draw-tube adjustment, to correspond to some aliquot part of a ten-thousandth or a hundred-thousandth of an inch, and the dimensions of the object being then found by simple multiplication:—Thus (to take the above example) the value of each division in the decimal scale is ·00008, and the diameter of the object is ·00028. The Metric system being now universally employed on the Continent, many British and American Microscopists prefer to record their obser-

Objective of 1-12th-inch focus, the value of the divisions of the Eye-piece scale may be reduced to 1-25,000th of an inch; and as the eye can estimate a fourth part of one of the divisions with tolerable accuracy, it follows that a magnitude of as little as 1-100,000th of an inch can be measured with a near approach to exactness.—Even this exactness may be increased by the application of the *diagonal scale* (Fig. 67) devised by M. Hartnack. The

FIG. 67.



Hartnack's Eye-piece Micrometer.

vertical lines are crossed by two parallel lines, at a distance from each other of five divisions of the vertical scale; and the parallelogram thus formed is crossed by a diagonal. It is obvious from this construction, that the lengths of the lower segments of the 50 vertical lines, cut off by the diagonal, will progressively increase from ·1 to 5·0; so that when it is desired to obtain an exact measurement of an object between these limits, it is only requisite to find the segment whose length precisely coincides with the diameter to be taken, which it will then give in *tenths* of the value of the vertical divisions, whatever these may be. Thus, at *a*, the length of the segment will be 1·8: at *b* it will be 3·4.—Whatever method be adopted, if the measurement be made in the Eye-piece and not on the stage, it will be necessary to make allowance for the adjustment of the Object-glass to the thickness of the glass that covers the object, since its magnifying power is considerably affected by the separation of the front pair of lenses from those behind it (§ 17). It will be found convenient to compensate for this alteration by altering the Draw-tube in such a manner as to neutralize the effect produced by the adjustment of the Objective; thus giving one uniform value to the divisions of the Eye-piece scale, whatever may be the thickness of the covering-glass; the amount of the alteration required for each degree must of course be determined by a series of measurements with the Stage-micrometer.—Micrometric measurements may also be made with the Camera Lucida, in the manner to be presently described, or with Dr. Beale's neutral tint reflector (§ 94).

92. *Goniometer.*—When the Microscope is employed in researches on minute Crystals, their angles may be measured by adapting a

vations in parts of a Millimetre; and with a view to their convenience Messrs. Beck supply Stage-Micrometers ruled on one side of a median line to 100ths and 1000ths of an Inch, and on the other side to 100ths of a Millimetre.

Goniometer to the Eye-piece; but as all First-Class Microscopes are now provided with rotating Stages graduated at their edges, with the addition of a Vernier-scale if desired, the measurement may be more conveniently made by giving rotation to the object. An Eye-piece is required whose field is traversed diametrically by a *fixed line* (either a filament stretched across it, or a line ruled on glass), and is turned so as to bring this line into coincidence with one of the lines forming the angle to be measured, when the Stage is at zero; the stage is then rotated until the fixed line coincides with the other line of the angle, and the amount of movement is read off on the scale.—If a higher degree of precision be required than either of these methods is fitted to afford, the *Double-Refracting Goniometer*, invented by Dr. Leeson, may be substituted.*

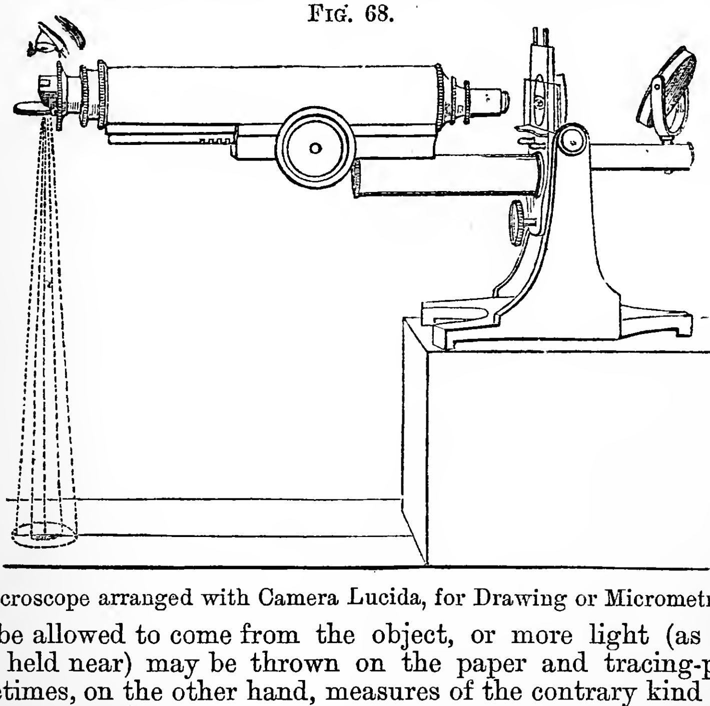
93. *Diaphragm Eye-piece.*—It is often useful to cut off the light surrounding the object or part of the object to be examined; for the sake alike of avoiding glare that is injurious to the eye, and of rendering the features of the object more distinct. This may be accomplished on the plan of Mr. Slack, by the introduction, just above the ordinary 'stop,' of four small shutters, worked by as many milled-heads projecting slightly beyond the flange of the eye-piece. By combining the movements of these shutters in various ways, it is easy to form a series of symmetrical apertures, bounded by straight lines, and of any dimensions required. As remarked by its inventor, this Diaphragm Eye-piece may also be used to isolate one out of many objects that may be on the same slide, and thus to show that object alone to persons who might not otherwise distinguish it.—For this last purpose the *Indicator* of Mr. Quekett may also be used; which is a small steel hand placed just over the diaphragm, so as to point to nearly the centre of the field, whilst it may be turned back when not required, leaving the field of view quite free. The particular object or portion of the object to which it is desired to direct attention, being brought to the extremity of the hand, is thus at once 'indicated' to any other observer.

94. *Camera Lucida and other Drawing Apparatus.*—Various contrivances may be adapted to the Eye-piece, in order to enable the observer to see the image projected upon a surface whereon he may trace its outlines. The one most generally employed is the *Camera Lucida prism* contrived by Dr. Wollaston for the general purposes of delineation; this being fitted on the front of the eye-piece, in place of the 'cap' by which it is usually surmounted. The Microscope being placed in a horizontal position, as shown in Fig. 68, the rays which pass through the eye-piece into the prism sustain such a total reflexion from its oblique surface, that they come to its upper horizontal surface at right angles to their previous direction; and the eye being so placed

* For a description of this instrument, see Dr. Leeson's description of it in Part xxxiii. of the "Proceedings of the Chemical Society," and Mr. Richard Beck's "Treatise on the Microscope," p. 65.

over the edge of this surface as to receive these rays from the prism through part of the pupil, whilst it looks with the other half beyond the prism down to a white paper surface on the table, it sees the image so strongly and clearly projected upon that surface, that the only difficulty in tracing it arises from a certain incapacity which seems to exist in some individuals for seeing the image and the tracing-point at the same time. This difficulty (which is common to all instruments devised for this purpose) is lessened by the interposition of a slightly convex lens in the position shown in the figure, between the eye and the paper, in order that the rays from the paper and tracing-point may diverge at the same angle as those which are received from the prism; and it may be generally got over altogether, by experimentally modifying the relative degrees of light received from the object and from the paper. If the image be too bright, the paper, the tracing-point, and the outline it has made, are scarcely seen; and either less light

Fig. 68.

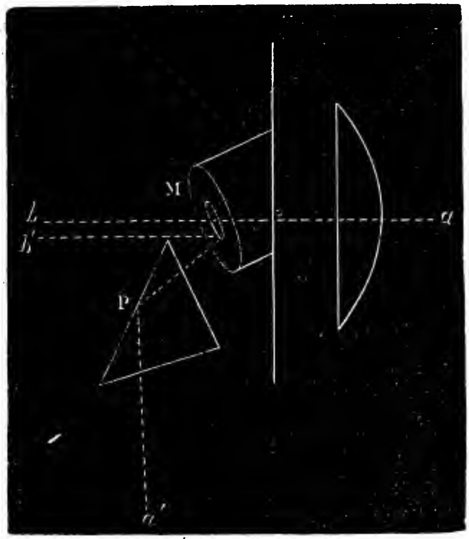


Microscope arranged with Camera Lucida, for Drawing or Micrometry.

may be allowed to come from the object, or more light (as by a taper held near) may be thrown on the paper and tracing-point. Sometimes, on the other hand, measures of the contrary kind must be taken.—Another instrument for the same purpose, invented by the celebrated anatomist Soemmering, and preferred by some Microscopists, is a flat *speculum* of polished steel or speculum-metal, of smaller diameter than the ordinary pupil of the eye, fixed at an angle of 45° in front of the eye-piece. The rays from the eye-piece are reflected vertically upwards to the central part of the pupil placed above the mirror, whilst, as the eye also receives rays from the paper and tracer in the same direction, through the peripheral portion

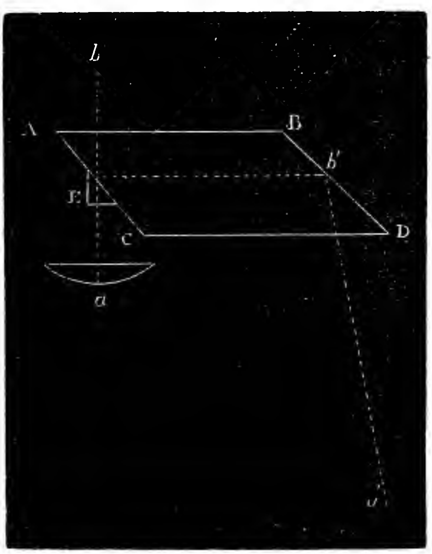
of the pupil, the image formed by the Microscope is visually projected downwards.—In another form of Camera Lucida, devised by Amici, and adapted to the horizontal microscope by Chevalier, the eye looks through the Microscope at the object (as in the ordinary view of it), instead of looking at its projection upon the paper, the image of the tracing-point being projected upon the field—an arrangement which is in many respects more advantageous. This is effected by combining a perforated steel mirror with a reflecting prism; and its action will be understood by the accompanying diagram (Fig. 69.) The ray *a b* proceeding from the object, after emerging from the eye-piece of the Microscope, passes through the central perforation in the oblique mirror M, which is placed in front of it, and so directly onwards to the eye. On the other hand, the ray *a′*, proceeding upwards from the tracing-point, enters the prism P, is reflected from its inclined surface to the inclined surface of the mirror M, and is by it reflected to the eye at *b′*, in such parallelism to the ray *b* proceeding from the object, that the two blend into one image.—The same effect is produced by a contrivance which has been devised by MM. Nachet for use with vertical Microscopes, and is much employed on the Continent. It consists of a prism of a nearly rhomboidal form (Fig. 70), which is placed with one of its inclined sides A C, over the eye-piece of the Microscope; to this side is cemented an oblique segment E, of a small glass cylinder, which presents to the ray *a b*, proceeding directly upwards from the object, a surface at right angles to it; so that this ray

Fig. 69.



Chevalier's Camera Lucida.

Fig. 70.



Nachet's Camera Lucida.

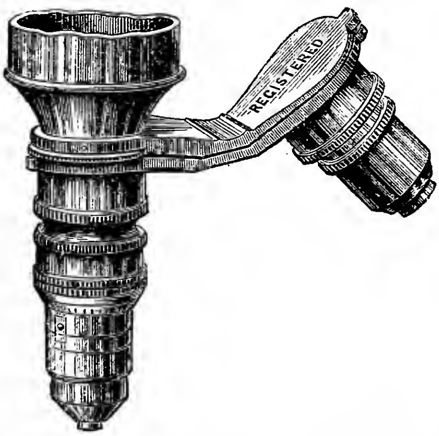
passes into the small cylinder E, and out from the side A B, of the larger prism, without sustaining any refraction, and with very little loss by reflexion from the inclined surfaces at which they join. But the ray $a' b'$, which comes from the tracing point on a paper at the end of the base of the Microscope, entering the rhomboidal prism, is reflected from its inclined side B D, to its inclined side A C, and thence it is again reflected to b, in coincidence with the ray which has directly proceeded from the object. As the ray $a' b'$ is necessarily oblique, the picture visually projected on the paper will be distorted, unless the right side of the drawing-board be raised, so that its plane shall be at right angles to $a' b'$.—Of the numerous contrivances for drawing from the Microscope, the simplest and by no means the least effective, is the *Neutral Tint Reflector*, recommended by Dr. Beale, which consists of a piece of neutral-tint glass, set in a cap fitted on the Eye-piece, with which it makes an angle of 45°. The Microscope being arranged as in Fig. 68, the eye, looking downwards, receives at the same time the image-forming rays from the eye-piece, which come to it by reflection from *the surface* of the glass, and those from the paper, tracing-point, or rule, which pass to it *through* the glass. A simple and inexpensive substitute for this, which its inventor (Mr. T. B. Jennings, U.S.) has found very efficient, may be made by taking a flat cork about $1\frac{1}{4}$ inch in diameter, cutting a hole in it sufficiently large to enable it to fit tightly on the Eye-piece (without its cap), and then making a transverse slit beneath the hole, into which is to be inserted a thin-glass cover at an angle of 45°.

95. With one or other of the foregoing contrivances, every one may learn to draw an outline of the Microscopic image; and it is extremely desirable for the sake of accuracy, that every representation of an object should be based on such a delineation. Some persons will use one instrument most readily, some another; the fact being that there is a sort of 'knack' in the use of each, which is commonly acquired by practice alone, so that a person accustomed to the use of any one of them does not at first work well with another. Although some persons at once acquire the power of seeing the image and the tracing-point with equal distinctness, the case is more frequently otherwise; and hence no one should allow himself to be baffled by the failure of his first attempt. It will sometimes happen, especially when the Wollaston prism is employed, that the want of power to see the pencil is due to the faulty position of the eye, too large a part of it being over the prism itself. When once a good position has been obtained, the eye should be held there as steadily as possible, until the tracing shall have been completed. It is essential to keep in view that the proportion between the size of the tracing and that of the object is affected by the distance of the eye from the paper; and hence that if the Microscope be placed upon a support of different height, or the Eye-piece be elevated or depressed by a slight inclination given to the body, the scale will be altered.—This it is, of course, peculiarly important to bear in

mind, when a series of tracings is being made of any set of objects which it is intended to delineate on a uniform scale; or when the Camera Lucida (or any similar arrangement) is employed for the purpose of *Micrometry*. All that is requisite to turn it to this account, is an accurately-divided Stage-micrometer, which, being placed in the position of the object, enables the observer to see its lines projected upon the surface upon which he has drawn his outline; for if the divisions be marked upon the paper, the average of several taken, and the paper then divided by parallel lines at the distance thus ascertained (the spaces being subdivided by intermediate lines, if desirable), a very accurate scale is furnished, by which the dimensions of any object drawn in outline under the same power may be minutely determined. Thus, if the divisions of a Stage-micrometer, the real value of each of which is a 100th of an inch, should be projected on the paper with such a magnifying power as to be at the distance of an inch from one another, it is obvious that an ordinary inch-scale applied to the measurement of an outline, would give its dimensions in 100ths of an inch, whilst each tenth of that scale would be the equivalent of a 1,000th of an inch. When a sufficient magnifying power is used, and the dimensions of the image are measured by the 'diagonal' scale (which subdivides the inch into 1000 parts), great accuracy may be obtained. It was by the use of this method, that Mr. Gulliver made his admirable series of measurements of the diameters of the Blood-corpuscles of different animals.—In using Nachet's vertical Camera for Micrometry, care must be taken so to adjust the slope of the drawing-board, that the Micrometer scale shall be projected on the paper without distortion.

96. *Nose-piece.*—It is continually desirable to be able to substitute one Objective for another with as little expenditure of time and trouble as possible; so as to be able to examine under a higher magnifying power the details of an object of which a general view has been obtained by means of a lower; or to use the lower for the purpose of *finding* a minute object (such as a particular Diatom in the midst of a slide-full) which we wish to submit to high amplification. This is effected by the Nose-piece of Mr. C. Brooke, which, being screwed into the object-end of the body of the Microscope, carries two Objectives, either of which may be brought into position by turning the arm on a pivot. In its

Fig. 71.



Swift's Improved Nose-piece.

original form, the arm was straight; so that the Objective *not* in use was often brought down upon the Stage, unless the relative lengths of the two objectives were specially adjusted. This inconvenience is avoided, however, in the construction adopted by Messrs. Powell and Lealand, and further simplified by Mr. Swift (Fig. 71); the bend given to the arm having the effect of keeping the Objective not in use completely off the stage.—The working Microscopist will scarcely find any Accessory more practically useful to him than this simple piece of apparatus.

97. *Finders.*—All Microscopists occasionally, and some continually, feel the need of a ready means of *finding*, upon a glass slide, the particular object, or portion of an object, which they desire to bring into view; and various contrivances have been suggested for the purpose. Where different magnifying powers can be readily substituted one for another, as by the use of the Erector (§ 84) or of the Nose-piece, no special means are required; since, when the object has been found by a low power, and brought into the centre of the field, it is rightly placed for examination by any other Objective. Even this slight trouble, however, may be saved by the adoption of more special methods; among the simplest of which is *marking* the position of the object on the surface of the thin glass which covers it. The readiest mode of doing this, when the object is large enough to be distinguished by the naked eye or under the Simple Microscope, is to make a small ring round it with a fine camel's-hair pencil dipped in Asphalte, or Brunswick black (Indian ink being objectionable, as liable to be washed-off when water-immersion Objectives are in use); but when the object is not thus visible, the slide must be laid in position on the stage, the object 'found' in the Microscope, the Condenser adjusted to give a bright and defined circle of light, and then, the Microscope-body being withdrawn, the black ring is to be marked around the illuminated spot. This method, however, has the disadvantage of concealing any other objects that may lie in close proximity to the one around which the circle is drawn; and recourse must be had in such cases to some other plan.—The Mechanical Stage may be easily turned to account as a *finder*, by engraving upon it two scales, *horizontal* and *vertical*, by which the object-platform may be exactly set to any desired position; this platform being itself provided with a removable 'stop', against which the glass slide (resting on its lower edge) may so abut, as always to occupy the same place on the platform. Now supposing an observer to be examining a newly-mounted slide, containing any object which he is likely to wish to find on some future occasion, he first lays the slide on the object-platform, with its lower edge resting on the ledge, and its end abutting against the lateral stop, and brings the object-platform itself to the *zero* of the scales; then, whenever, on moving the slide by the traversing action, he meets with any particular form worthy of note, he reads-off its position upon the two scales, and records it in any convenient mode. The scale may be divided to 50ths of an inch, and each of these spaces

may be again halved by the eye; and the record may perhaps be best made thus,—*Triceratium favus* $\frac{26}{18\frac{1}{2}}$; the upper number marking the 'latitude' of the object on the vertical scale, and the lower its 'longitude' on the horizontal. Whenever the Microscopist may wish again to bring this object under examination, he has merely to lay the slide in the same position on the platform, and to adjust the platform by its scales according to the recorded numbers.*—The 'finder' most commonly used is that invented by Mr. Maltwood,† which consists of a glass slide 3 inches by $1\frac{1}{4}$ inch, on which is *photographed* a scale that occupies a square inch and is divided by horizontal and vertical lines at 1-50th of an inch apart into 2,500 squares, each of which contains two numbers, one marking its 'latitude' or place in the vertical series, and the other its 'longitude' or place in the horizontal series. The slide, when in use, should rest upon the ledge of the stage of the Microscope, and be made to abut against a stop about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch from the centre of the stage.—In order to use this 'finder,' the Object-slide must be laid upon the Stage in such a manner as to rest upon its ledge and to abut against the stop; and when some particular object, whose place it is desired to record, has been brought into the field of view, the object-slide being removed and the 'finder' laid down in its place, the numbers of the square then in the field are to be read-off and recorded. To find that object again at any time, the 'finder' is to be laid in its place on the stage, and the stage moved so as to bring the recorded number into view; and the object-slide being then substituted for the finder, the desired object will present itself in the field. As care is taken in the production of each 'Maltwood,' that the scale shall be at an exact distance from the bottom and left-hand end of the glass-slide, the Microscopist may thus enable any other observer provided with a similar 'finder' to bring into view any desired object, by informing him of the numbers that mark its latitude and longitude. These numbers may either be marked upon the object-slide itself, or recorded in a separate list.‡

* This plan, first suggested by Mr. Okeden, might be adopted with so little trouble or expense in every Microscope possessed of a Mechanical stage, that it would be very desirable for *every* such Microscope to be furnished with these graduated scales. If the different Makers would agree to use the 1-50th inch scale, Observers at a distance from one another, who might wish to examine each other's objects, would have no difficulty in finding them by the record of their positions accompanying each slide.

† "Transactions of the Microscopical Society," N.S. Vol. vi. (1858), p. 59.

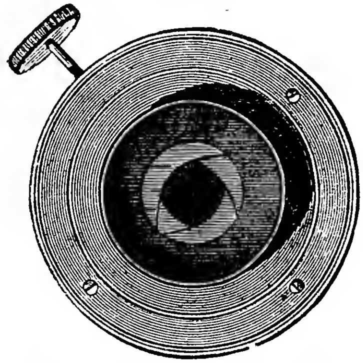
‡ The only drawback to the utility of the Maltwood finder lies in the fact that a single square more than covers the field taken-in by 1-4th Objective with the A eye-piece; so that with powers many times as great, the proportion of the square viewed at once is so small, as to make it impossible to fix the place of the object with any precision. To obviate this difficulty, Mr. W. Webb proposes a finder *ruled* with lines only 1-200th of an inch apart, so as to divide a square of only 3-4ths of an inch into 22,500 squares. As it would be impossible to mark distinguishing numerals within squares of such

98. *Diaphragms.*—Every Microscope should be provided with some means of regulating the amount of light sent upwards from the Mirror through transparent objects under examination. This is usually accomplished by means of a *Diaphragm-plate*, perforated by apertures of different sizes (the smallest of which should be no larger than a pin-hole), and pivoted to a removable fitting attached to the under side of the Stage, in such a manner that by rotating the plate, either of the apertures can be brought into the optic axis of the instrument. The largest of its apertures should be made to carry a ground-glass (so fitted as to be removable at pleasure), the use of which is to diffuse a soft and equable light over the field when large transparent objects are under examination with a low power; while between the smallest and the largest aperture there should be an unperforated space, to serve as a dark background for Opaque objects. The edge of the Diaphragm-plate should be notched at certain intervals, and a spring-catch fitted so as to drop into the notches, in order that each aperture may be brought into its proper central position. When the Diaphragm-plate is used to improve the definition of high powers, it loses much of its value if its aperture be not *very close* to the under side of the object-slide; and any arrangement which sets it at some distance beneath the stage is consequently objectionable. Its best position is *in the thickness* of the stage, which, for receiving it, is made of two plates screwed together.—A different arrangement may be adopted with advantage, when the Stage is provided with a cylindrical fitting for the reception of Illuminating and Polarizing apparatus. A short tube sliding into this may carry a shoulder at its upper end, upon which may be fitted two or more caps with apertures of different sizes, so that these perforated caps may be either pushed up flush with the surface of the stage, or may be lowered to any distance beneath it, according as the best effect is produced. A ground-glass for diffusing light may also be adapted to lie on the shoulder in the place of the perforated caps; and there should also be an *un*perforated cap to serve as a back-ground to opaque objects.—Such great advantage is often derivable from a *gradational* modification of the light, that the Microscopist who desires to avail himself of this will do well to provide himself with one of the forms of *graduating diaphragm* which have been recently introduced. That long ago invented by Dollond for Telescopic purposes is equally applicable to the Microscope; the circumstance that its aperture is square, instead of round, not constituting any practical objection to its use.

minuteness, he rules stronger lines at intervals, so as to divide the whole area into 'blocks' of 100 squares in each; and any individual square can be easily described (1) by the block in which it lies, and (2) by its position in that block. ("Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. iii., 1880, p. 750).—To those who prefer the simplicity given by the numbering of each square in the Maltwood finder, the Author would suggest that the object may be always 'found' by it with the 1-4th Objective; and that, if thus brought into the centre of *its* field, the object will lie within the field of any Objective of higher power, provided the centering of the two be conformable.

In another form, introduced by Mr. Collins (Fig. 72), four shutters are made to move inwards simultaneously, by acting on a lever-handle, so as to narrow the aperture, the shape of which always remains more nearly circular than square. And in the 'Iris Diaphragm' devised by Mr. J. H. Brown,* the multiplication of the number of shutters makes the aperture practically circular. The new construction of this, devised by Mr. George Wale, U.S., is so simple, inexpensive, and effectual, that its general adoption in place of the Diaphragm-plate may be anticipated.

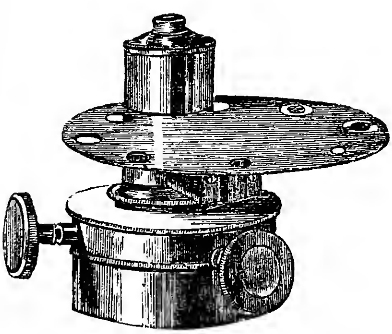
Fig. 72.



Collins's Graduating Diaphragm.

99. *Achromatic Condensers.*—In almost every case in which an Objective of 1-4th inch or any shorter focus is employed, its performance is greatly improved by the interposition of an Achromatic combination between the mirror and the object, in such a manner that the rays reflected from the former shall be brought to a focus in the spot to which the objective is directed. A distinct picture of the source of light is thus thrown on the object, from which the rays emanate again as if it were self-luminous. The Achromatic combination, which (at least in all First-class Microscopes) is one specially adapted to the purpose, is furnished with a Diaphragm-plate immediately beneath its lowest lens (Fig. 73); and this is pierced with holes of such forms and sizes as to cut off in various degrees, not merely the peripheral but also the central part of the illuminating pencil, or to allow oblique light to pass only in some one azimuth, or in two azimuths at right angles to each other. The Achromatic Condenser of Messrs. Beck is a combination of three pairs, of which the first and second are removable, so that the back pair may be used alone for the illumination of objects viewed with low or medium powers.—The Achromatic Condenser of Messrs. Powell and Lealand has an angular aperture of 170°, and thus transmits rays of extreme obliquity through objects mounted on thin glass; all other rays being excluded (if desired) by a special

Fig. 73.

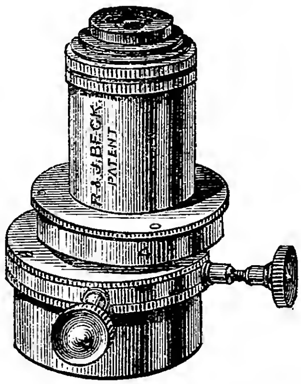


Beck's Achromatic Condenser.

* "Transactions of the Microscopical Society," Vol. xv., p. 74.

arrangement of stops. The Diaphragm-plate being perforated by apertures of different sizes, the largest of these (which transmits the entire pencil) can be partially closed by centric or excentric stops attached to a separate arm, any one of which can be brought into the optic axis; and thus, whilst the graduated apertures of the diaphragm-plate limit the *peripheral* portion of the pencil, the stops cut off its *central*, allowing the transmission either of its entire peripheral portion, or of the rays proceeding only from some special part or parts of it. The same eminent makers have lately introduced a Non-achromatic Oil-immersion Condenser; which, at a much lower cost, serves for the resolution of the most difficult tests, their illumination by coloured rays not being found practically objectionable.—In the Achromatic Condenser now made by Messrs. Ross, extreme obliquity of the illuminating rays is not provided for, this being obtained by means of their 'swinging tail-piece' (§ 72). Its combination has a focus of about 4-10ths inch; and beneath its back-lens, which has an aperture of half an inch, is an Iris-diaphragm for reducing it in any desired degree, with a rotating Diaphragm-plate having a set of stops adapted to limit the aperture and to give a 'black-ground' illumination under objectives of different angular apertures.—Messrs. Beck have recently introduced a new Achromatic Condenser with a front revolving excentrically (Fig. 74), by which means its focus may be varied, and a 'black-ground' illumination may be obtained suitable for objectives having angles as high as 120°.

FIG. 74.

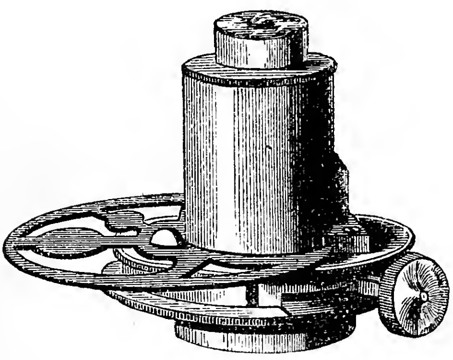


Beck's New Achromatic Condenser.

100. *Webster Condenser.*—Though the original idea of the arrangement which has come into general use under this designation, and which is at the same time comparatively inexpensive and applicable to a great variety of purposes, was given by Mr. J. Webster ("Science Gossip," April 1, 1865), it has received important modifications at the hands of the Opticians by whom the instrument is manufactured; and has, perhaps, not even yet undergone its full development. In its present form the arrangement of the lenses strongly resembles that used in the Kellner eye-piece (§ 28); the field-glass of the latter serving as a condenser to receive the cone of rays reflected upwards from the mirror, and to make it converge upon a smaller Achromatic combination, which consists of a double-convex lens of crown, with a plano-convex lens of flint, the plane side of the latter being next the object. These lenses are of large size and deep curvature; so that when their central part is stopped-out, the rays transmitted from their *peripheral* portion meet at a wide angle of convergence, and have the

effect of those transmitted through the peripheral portion of the ordinary Achromatic Condenser. When, on the other hand, this combination is used with a diaphragm that allows only the *central* rays to pass, these rays meet at a small angle; and the illumination thus given is very suitable for objects viewed with low powers. Again, by stopping-out the central portion of the combination, and removing the Condenser to a short distance beneath the object, the effect of a 'black-ground' illumination (§ 104) can be very satisfactorily obtained with Objectives of low or moderate angular aperture. Further, by stopping-out not only the central but also a great part of the peripheral rays, so as only to allow the light to enter from a small portion or portions of the margin, illumination of considerable obliquity can be obtained. All this can be provided for by a Diaphragm-plate made to rotate at as short a distance as possible beneath the condensing-lens; but as the number of apertures in this plate is necessarily limited, a greater variety is obtained by the use of a Graduating Diaphragm (§ 98) for the regulation of the centric aperture, and by making the apertures in the rotating plate subservient to the other purposes already named, as is done in the arrangement of Mr. Collins (Fig. 75).—Still greater variety can be obtained by substituting for the Diaphragm-plate a short tube sliding within the one that carries the lenses; its summit being furnished with a socket into which may be inserted a diaphragm of blackened card or of thin metal, with an aperture or apertures of any shape or size that may be desired. In this manner the diaphragm may be carried up quite close to the condensing lens, which is a great advantage; and when oblique illumination is desired, the light may be transmitted from any azimuth, by giving rotation to the tube carrying a diaphragm with a marginal aperture.—The Webster Condenser thus improved (which may also be used in combination with the Polariscope) will be found one of the most universally-useful accessories with which a Student's Microscope can be provided.*

Fig. 75.



Webster's Condenser, fitted with Collins's Graduating Diaphragm.

* A form of Condenser specially adapted for very oblique and also for 'black-ground' illumination was devised a few years ago by Prof. Abbe of Jena ("Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. xiii., 1875, p. 77), and has since been specially adapted by him for use with 'homogeneous immersion' objectives, being fitted to the Microscope-stands constructed by Zeiss; but not being found easily applicable to Microscopes of the ordinary English models, it has not been taken

101. *Oblique Illuminators.*—The extremely oblique illumination-quired for the resolution of the more difficult lined 'tests,' may be provided, as has been shown, either by the employment of a Condenser of very wide angular aperture (§ 99); or by giving to the whole Illuminating apparatus (as originally suggested by Mr. Grubb, of Dublin) a position of such obliquity to the optic axis of the Microscope, that even its axial ray shall fall upon the object-slide at a very low inclination—as in the Ross-Zentmayer Microscopes (§§ 59, 72), and in the arrangements of Messrs. Beck (§ 75) and Mr. Swift (§ 68). It is considered by Mr. Wenham that there is no better method of utilizing this arrangement, than by making the Sub-stage carry an ordinary Objective of about 1-inch focus, and throwing its pencil upon a hemispherical lens of half an inch diameter, the plane side of which has a film of glycerine interposed between itself and the object-slide. The lens may either be held in this position by its own adhesion, or it may be so fitted into a thin stage, that its plain surface shall lie flush with the surface of the object-platform. This (as also the Disk-Illuminator to be next described) may be made to work well with any form of Students' Microscope, which, like Wale's (§ 60), has a thin stage and a mirror so swung as to be capable of reflecting rays of great obliquity.—For the illumination of objects by a line of light thrown upon them very obliquely, Mr. Wenham has devised the simple Illuminator shown in Fig. 76. This consists of a semi-circular *disk* of glass (somewhat resembling the half of a button) of half an inch in diameter, the sides of which are flattened, while the circular edge is rounded and well polished to a transverse radius of 1-10th of an inch. This concentrates the light thrown upon any part of its circumference, upon an object mounted on a slide of the usual thickness, with whose under side it is brought into immersion-contact by the intervention of either water, glycerine, or a more refractive oil. As it should be so fitted to the Microscope as to illuminate the object from any azimuth, it should have its flat sides grasped in a clip, which may either be mounted on the Sub-stage, or attached to under side of the Stage—in either case having its diametric section brought up to the under surface of the object-slide. By giving rotation to the object, the illuminator remaining fixed, the illuminating beam may be made to cross the former in any direction that is fitted to bring out its markings. With this simple Illuminator, even *Amphipleura pellucida* may be resolved without the aid of a Con-

Fig. 76.

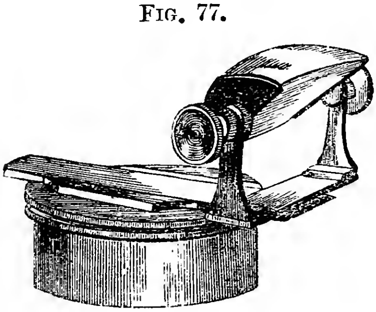
Wenham's Disk-Illuminator.

up by Makers in this country. It seems to the Author, however, that the *sliding*-plate, by which any degree of excentricity can be given to the apertures that the optical combination admits of, might, in combination with the Iris-diaphragm for limiting the angle of the pencil, be advantageously substituted for the *rotating* diaphragm-plate.

denser, the mirror alone sufficing.*—Another simple and effective appliance for the same purpose, is the *Woodward Prism:* a small obtuse-angled triangle of glass, whose long face must be brought into immersion-contact with the object-slide by a film of interposed glycerine. Originally devised as a right-angled prism, it was suited only for the illumination of objects seen under immersion Objectives of widest angular aperture; but by reducing its oblique angles to less than 45°, so as to open-out the two equal sides, it may be adapted to Objectives of much smaller aperture. In using it, the light is made to enter one of the oblique facets perpendicularly to its surface; and by looking in the like direction through the other side of the prism, the observer can see when the face of the object is best illuminated, by the rays reflected on it from the inner surface of that facet.—This prism can be made to hang to the under surface of the object-slide by the film of interposed glycerine; but as it is very apt to slip when the microscope is inclined, and as its full advantage can only be obtained when the object is made to rotate so as to meet the illuminating beam in every azimuth, it should be mounted, like the Disk-illuminator just described, in an independent fitting.†

102. The *Amici Prism*, which causes the rays to be at once reflected by a plane surface and concentrated by lenticular surfaces, so as to answer the purpose of Mirror and Condenser at the same time, is much approved by many who have used it. Such a Prism may be either mounted on a separate base, or attached to some part of the Microscope-stand. The mounting shown in Fig. 77, is a very simple and convenient one; this consists in attaching the frame of the prism to a sliding bar, which works in dovetail grooves on the top of a cap that may be set on the 'secondary body' beneath the stage; the slide serves to regulate the distance of the prism from the axis of the microscope, and consequently the obliquity of the illumination; whilst its distance beneath the stage is adjusted by the rack-movement of the cylindrical fitting. In this manner, an illuminating pencil of almost any degree of obliquity that is permitted by the construction of the Stage may be readily obtained; but there is no provision for the correction of its aberrations. In order to use this oblique illumination to the greatest advantage, either the prism or the object should be made to rotate, thus causing the oblique rays to fall upon the latter from

Fig. 77.



Amici's Prism.

* For the mode of constructing this Illuminator, see "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc." Vol. iii. (1880), p. 146.

† Ibid., Vol. i. (1878), p. 246

every azimuth in succession, so as to bring out all its markings (§ 145).

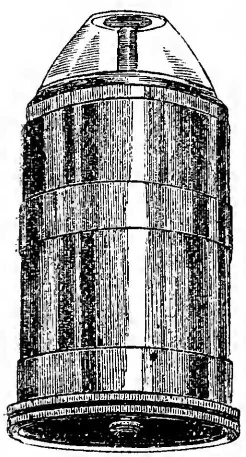
103. *Black-Ground Illuminators.*—When the rays are directed with such obliquity as not to be received into the Object-glass at all, but are sufficiently retained by the Object to render it (so to speak) self-luminous, we have what is known as the *black-ground illumination.* For low powers whose angular aperture is small, and for such objects as do not require any more special provision, a sufficiently good 'black-ground' illumination may be obtained by turning the concave Mirror as far as possible out of the axis of the microscope, especially if it be so mounted as to be capable of a more than ordinary degree of obliquity. In this manner it is often possible, not merely to bring into view features of structure that might not otherwise be distinguishable, but to see bodies of extreme transparence (such, for instance, as very minute Animalcules) that are not visible when the field is flooded (so to speak) by direct light; these presenting the beautiful spectacle of phosphorescent points rapidly sailing through a dark ocean. It is one of the great advantages of this kind of illumination, that, as the light *radiates from* each part of the object as its proper source, instead of merely *passing through* it from a more remote source, its different parts are seen much more in their normal relations to one another, and it acquires far more of the aspect of solidity. The rationale of this is easily made apparent, by holding up a glass vessel with a figured surface in front of a lamp or a window, at some distance from the eye, so that it is seen by transmitted light alone; for the figures of its two surfaces are then so blended together, that unless their form and distribution be previously known, it can scarcely be said with certainty which markings belong to either. If, on the other hand, an opaque body be so placed behind the vessel that no rays are transmitted directly through it, whilst it receives adequate illumination from the light around, its form is clearly discerned, and the two surfaces are distinguished without the least difficulty.

104. A simple method of obtaining 'black-ground' illumination, which works well with objectives of low power and small angular aperture, consists in fixing into the top of a short tube that slides into the 'cylindrical fitting' usually carried beneath the stage in Educational and Students' Microscopes, a small 'bull's-eye' lens, the plane surface of which (placed uppermost) has its central portion covered by a black spot. When light reflected by the mirror falls on the lower surface of this *Spot-Lens*, only the rays that fall on its marginal ring are allowed to pass; and these, owing to its high curvature, are so strongly refracted inwards, as to cross each other in the object (when the lens is focussed for it), and then diverge again at an angle sufficiently wide to pass beyond the margin of the objective, like those transmitted by the Paraboloid to be presently described (Fig. 79, F G, F H). Thus the field is left dark; whilst the light stopped by the object gives it a luminosity of its own.—The same effect is gained by the use of the Webster Condenser

(§ 100) with a central stop placed immediately behind the lower lens or upon the flat surface of the upper.—Neither of the foregoing plans, however, will answer well for Objectives of high power, having such large angles of aperture that the light must fall *very* obliquely to pass beyond them altogether. Thus if the pencil formed by the 'spot-lens' have an angle of 50°, its rays will enter a 4-10ths objective of 60°, and the field will not be darkened.

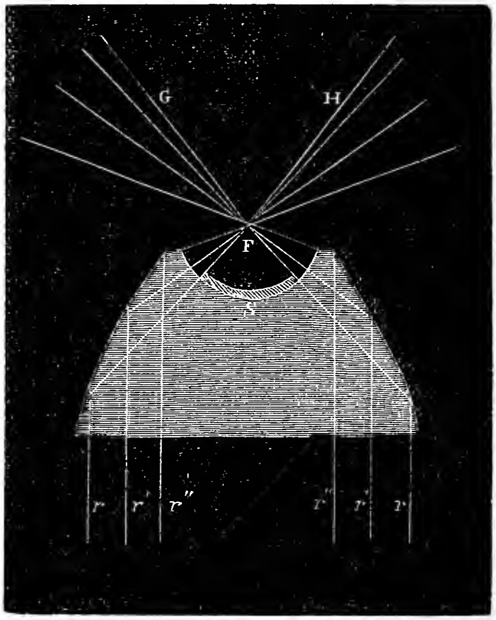
105. A greater degree of obliquity, suited to afford 'black-ground' illumination with Objectives of larger angular aperture, may be obtained by the use of the *Parabolic Illuminator** (Fig. 78); which consists of a Paraboloid of glass that reflects to its focus the rays which fall upon its internal surface. A diagrammatic section of this instrument, showing the course of the rays through it, is given in Fig. 79, the shaded portion representing the Paraboloid. The

FIG. 78.



Parabolic Illuminator.

FIG. 79.



parallel rays $r\ r'\ r''$, entering its lower surface perpendicularly, pass on until they meet its parabolic surface, on which they fall at such an angle as to be totally reflected by it (§ 2), and are all directed towards its focus, F. The top of the Paraboloid being ground out into a spherical curve of which F is the centre, the rays in emerging from it undergo no refraction, since each falls perpendicularly upon the part of the surface through which it passes. A stop placed at

* A Parabolic Illuminator was first devised by Mr. Wenham, who, however, employed a Silver speculum for the purpose. About the same time Mr. Shadbolt devised an Annular Condenser of Glass for the same purpose (see "Transact. of Microsc. Soc.," Ser.I., Vol. iii., 1852, pp. 85, 132). The two principles are combined in the Glass Paraboloid.

prevents any of the rays reflected upwards by the mirror from passing to the object, which, being placed at F, is illuminated by the rays reflected into it from all sides of the Paraboloid. Those rays which pass through it diverge again at various angles; and if the least of these, G F H, be greater than the angle of aperture of the Object-glass, none of them can enter it. The stop S, is attached to a stem of wire, which passes vertically through the Paraboloid and terminates in a knob beneath, as shown in Fig. 78; and by means of this it may be pushed upwards so as to cut off the less divergent rays in their passage towards the object, thus giving a black-ground illumination with Objectives of an angle of aperture much wider than G F H.—In using the Paraboloid for delicate objects, the rays which are made to enter it should be parallel, consequently the *plane* Mirror should always be employed; and when, instead of the parallel rays of daylight, we are obliged to use the diverging rays of a lamp, these should be rendered as parallel as possible, previously to their reflexion from the mirror, by the interposition of the 'bull's-eye' Condenser (Fig. 87) so adjusted as to produce this effect. There are many cases, however, in which the stronger light of the *concave* Mirror is preferable.—When it is desired that the light should fall on the object from one side only, the circular opening at the bottom of the wide tube (Fig. 78) that carries the Paraboloid, may be fitted with a diaphragm adapted to cover all but a certain portion of it; and by giving rotation to this diaphragm, rays of great obliquity may be made to fall upon the object from every azimuth in succession.*—A small glass cone, with the apex downwards, and the base somewhat convex, with a stop in the centre, is fitted by MM. Nachet to their Microscopes for the same purpose; and performs very effectively.

106. In order to adapt the Paraboloid for black-ground illumination under Objectives of wide angle of aperture, Mr. Wenham† long since constructed a *flat-topped* paraboloid, fitted to reflect only rays of such extreme obliquity, that they would not pass out of the flat surface of the paraboloid into the under surface of the slide, unless a film of either water or of some liquid of higher refractive index (such as turpentine, or oil of cloves) was interposed between them. When thus enabled to enter the slide, these rays pass on until they meet the cover, from which (in the case of dry-front objectives) they are reflected downwards upon the surface of the object, giving it a bright illumination on a perfectly dark field. The special value of this instrument, however, not being then understood, it was not constructed for sale.—The same principle, however, having been more recently taken up by Dr. Edmunds, an Immersion Paraboloid specially devised by him for use with

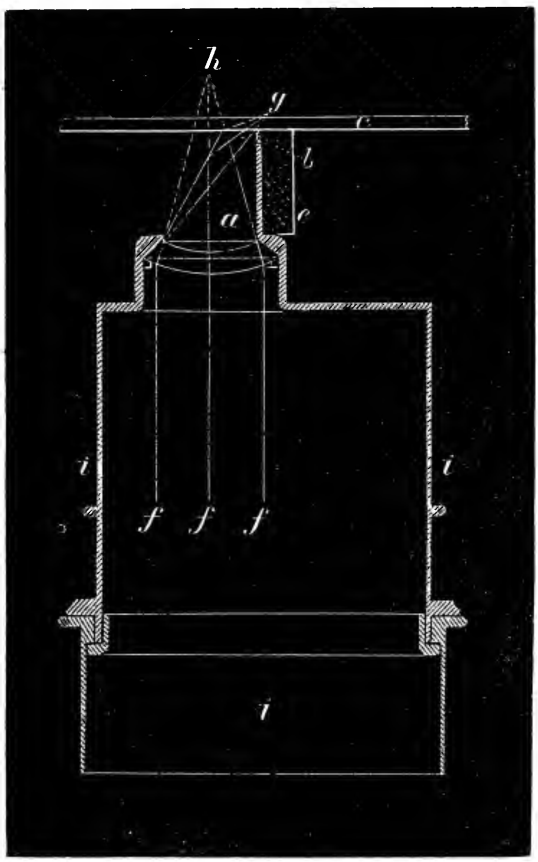
* By the use of such a diaphragm, or of a large stop with an excentric perforation, Mr. G. Williams has succeeded in resolving the transverse striæ of *Amiphipleura pellucida* with water-immersion Objectives. See "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. iii. (1880), p. 524.

† "Transact. of Microsc. Soc.," N.S. Vol. iv. (1856) p. 59.

immersion Objectives of large aperture, has been constructed by Messrs. Powell & Lealand, with results so satisfactory, that it now ranks among the Accessories most valued by such as habitually work with Objectives of that highest class.*

107. *Wenham's Reflex Illuminator.*—Another very ingenious and valuable illuminator for high powers has been devised by Mr. Wenham,† and constructed by Messrs. Ross. It is composed of a glass cylinder (Fig. 80, *a*) half-an-inch long, and four-tenths of an inch in diameter; one side of which, starting from the bottom edge, is worked to a polished face at an angle of 64° with the base. The top of the cylinder is polished flat, whilst its lower surface is convex, being polished to a radius of 4-10ths of an inch; close beneath this last is set a plano-convex lens of $1\frac{1}{4}$-inch focus; and the combination is set excentrically in a fitting, *i i*, adapted to be received into the Sub-stage. The parallel rays, *f f f*, reflected up into it from the mirror, are made to converge, by the convex surfaces at the base of the cylinder, at such an angle, that if their course were continued through glass they would meet at the point *h*, above the glass slide *c*; but by impinging on the inclined polished surface, they are reflected to the flat segmental top, from which again they would be reflected obliquely downwards so as to meet in the point *b*, but for its being brought into 'immersion-contact' with the under side of the slide. Passing upwards through the slide, they meet in a point, *g*, a little above its upper surface, in the optic axis of the Microscope, to which point the object must be brought; and by giving rotation either to the object or to the Illuminator, it may

Fig. 80.



Wenham's Reflex Illuminator.

* "Monthly Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," Vol. xviii., p. 78. † *Ibid.* Vol. vii., p. 239.

be illuminated from every azimuth. For convenience of centering, a black half-cylinder *e*, is so fixed by the side of the cylinder, that if a dot upon its upper surface be brought into the centre of the field of view of a low-power objective, its focus *g*, will lie in the optic axis.—Some skill and practice are required to use this apparatus to advantage, but it will amply repay the trouble of mastering its difficulties. It is best suited to thin flat objects; with those that are thick and irregular, distortion is unavoidable. Although specially designed as a 'black-ground' illuminator, it may also be made useful in the resolution of difficult Test-objects by *transmitted* light,* the illuminator being lowered until a coloured spectrum appears in the field, the rays of which bring out their markings with remarkable distinctness.—For use with either of these arrangements for 'black-ground' illumination, it is better that the objects should be mounted 'dry,' especially when they are to be viewed under 'immersion' objectives; balsam-mounted objects being thus seen better with dry-front objectives.

108. The following directions are given by Mr. Schulze ("English Mechanic," 1877, No. 661) for the use of the two illuminators last described:—"First, rack up the Sub-stage, until the plane top of the illuminator is level with the stage; centre carefully; put a drop or two of glycerine on the under side of the slide, taking care that no air-bells are formed; and place the slide on the stage. If, now, rays parallel to the optic axis are thrown up by the plane mirror or rectangular prism, a luminous spot will appear on the slide if an object lies in the optic axis. Next focus; and by adjusting the mirror or rectangular prism more carefully, the object will be brilliantly illuminated by very oblique rays on a black ground. . . . . I generally use one of How's common Microscope lamps filled with good paraffin oil, and having a wick half an inch broad; but for the highest powers I have recourse to the Dallinger lamp (§ 131). After I have obtained the best results, I interpolate a bull's-eye Condenser to increase the light, focussing carefully a miniature image of the flame on the slide. I invariably use the narrow side of the flame turned towards the mirror or prism, when resolving lined tests. It is, however, by sunlight that the performances of the Immersion Paraboloid and Reflex Illuminator seem to eclipse any resolution that can be obtained by transmitted light." [This was written *before* Mr. Schulze had found out the mode of working these instruments already noticed.] In regard to the relative values of the two illuminators, Mr. Schulze states as the result of careful comparative trials of them:—"The Paraboloid is a trifle easier managed, gives a little more light by lamplight, and is somewhat cheaper than the Reflex Illuminator. Both perform equally well on dark ground by sunlight; but the Reflex Illuminator can also be used on balsamed slides and with immersion lenses for the examination of objects by transmitted very oblique white light."

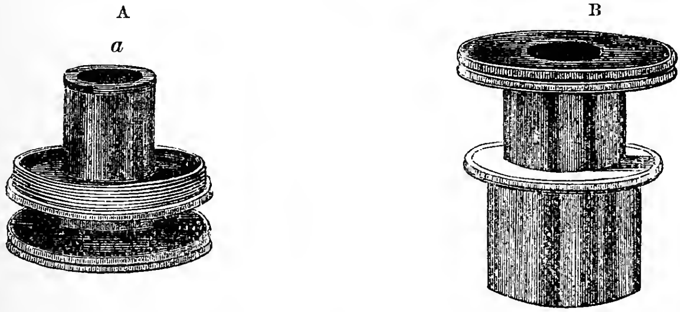
* See Schulze in "Journ. Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. i. (1878), p. 45; and Col. Dr. Woodward in same Vol., p. 248.

109. *Light-Modifiers.*—For (1) reducing the intensity either of Solar-light or Lamp-light, (2) for correcting the yellowness of the latter, and (3) for the equable diffusion of either light over a large field, it is often convenient to employ interposed media, the nature of which must be varied according to the particular purpose to be attained.—The direct rays of the Sun are very little employed by Microscopists, except for Photography or some other special purpose. But when recourse is had to them in ordinary Microscopy, it is well to take advantage of 'Rainey's Light-modifier,' which is a combination of one thickness of dark-blue glass free from any tint of red, another of very pale blue with a slight shade of green, and two of thick white plate-glass, all cemented together by Canada balsam. This is mounted by Messrs. Powell and Lealand on a separate stand; and may be used with Lamp-light as with sunlight.—Some observers use Lamp-chimneys of either neutral-tint or blueish glass for the purpose of moderating the glare of the flame or of correcting its yellowness; but as the chimney cannot be conveniently changed whenever the full light is required, the Author much prefers making such 'light-modifiers' a part of the Illuminating apparatus attached to the Microscope itself: and this may be done in different modes, according to the construction of the instrument. Thus, when the Webster Condenser (§ 100) is in use, it may be furnished with three caps made to slide upon its upper portion; one of them fitted with a disk of blue-glass, second with one of neutral-tint glass, and the third with a finely-ground glass. And in Swift's Combination Sub-stage (§ 112) similar disks may be made to drop into the openings of the rotating plate; so that one may readily be changed for another, or, if all three be placed in the plate at once, an object may be examined under any one of them by merely rotating the plate. Every ordinary Diaphragm-plate (§ 98) ought to have its largest aperture fitted, by means of a projecting shoulder, to carry such a set of disks.—The three arms on which the rotating Selenites are attached to the Sub-stage of Messrs. Beck's First-class Microscope (Fig. 82), may be fitted with similar disks, each of which may then be used either separately or in combination with one or both of the others.—Every 'Light-modifier' should be so constructed and worked, that the light should be made as nearly as possible to resemble that of a bright white cloud. For this purpose a white-cloud Reflector may be easily made—either flat, by casting a Plaster of Paris disk upon the plane surface of the mirror—or concave, by casting it on the surface of a glass globe; the light reflected from the surface of the plaster requiring to be condensed for the illumination of small objects.—Very pleasant white-cloud effects may be obtained by methods adopted by Mr. Slack. For large objects, viewed with powers of $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 4 inches, he places under the stage a tube holding a large disk ($1\frac{1}{2}$ inch diameter) of ground glass, the ground surface being protected by a plain glass cover over it. By this means the peculiar tint of the freshly ground surface is permanently retained. For 2-3rds and half-inch powers

he employs a glass slide carrying a disk or square of thin paper, saturated with spermaceti, and protected from dirt by a thin glass cover that adheres to it. This slide, disk downwards, is placed under the object. Under still higher powers, some objects may be very conveniently illuminated by a small bull's-eye finely ground on its flat surface, and fixed with its convex face downwards in a tube that slides into the Sub-stage fitting.

110. *Polarizing Apparatus.*—In order to examine transparent objects by Polarized Light, it is necessary to employ some means of *polarizing* the rays before they pass through the object, and to apply to them, in some part of their course between the object and the eye, an *analysing* medium. These two requirements may be provided for in different modes. The *polarizer* may be either a bundle of plates of thin glass, used in place of the mirror, and polarizing the rays by reflexion; or it may be a 'single image' or 'Nicol' prism of Iceland Spar, which is so constructed as to transmit only one of the two rays into which a beam of ordinary light is made to divaricate by passing through this substance. Of these two methods, the 'Nicol' prism is the one generally preferred, the objection to the reflecting polarizer being that it cannot be made to rotate. This polarizing prism is usually fixed in a tube (Fig. 81, A, *a*), furnished with a large milled-head, *c*, at the bottom, by which it is made to rotate in a collar, *b*, that screws into the

Fig. 81.



A, Fitting of Polarizing Prism in Sub-stage.

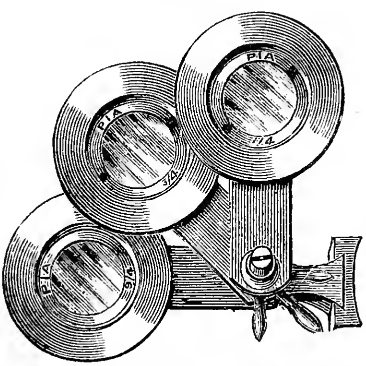
B, Fitting of Analysing Prism above Eye-piece.

Sub-stage fitting. For the *analyser* a second 'Nicol' prism is usually employed; and this, fixed in a short tube, may be fitted either into a collar interposed between the lower end of the body and the Objective, or into a cap placed over the Eye-piece (Fig. 81, B), in the stead of the ordinary eye-piece cap. The former arrangement, which is specially adapted for use with the Binocular Microscope, has the advantage of not limiting the field, but it stops a good deal of light; while in the latter, the image is brighter, but a good deal of the margin of the field is cut off. In the Harley Binocular (§ 68) the analysing prism is fitted into a slide below the Wenham prism, which is drawn out when the polariscope is not in use;

while in Swift's Challenge Binocular, a similar slide is fitted into the body above the Wenham prism. In these arrangements, such advantage as is obtainable by the rotation of the analysing prism is of course foregone; and the same sacrifice is made, when, in the Stephenson Binocular (§ 36), the Iceland spar analyser is replaced by a reflector.—The Polarizing apparatus may be worked in combination either with the Achromatic Condenser (by which means it may be used with high power Objectives), or with either of the 'black-ground' Illuminators (§§ 104, 105), which show many objects —such as the horny polyparies of Zoophytes—gorgeously projected in colours upon a dark field.

111. For bringing out certain effects of Colour by the use of Polarized Light (Chap. XXII.), it is desirable to interpose a plate of *Selenite* between the polarizer and the object; and it is advantageous that this should be made to revolve. A very convenient mode of effecting this, is to mount the Selenite plate in a revolving collar, which fits into the upper end of the tube that receives the Polarizing prism. In order to obtain the greatest variety of coloration with different objects, films of Selenite of different thicknesses should be employed; and this may be accomplished by substituting one for another in the revolving collar. A still greater variety may be obtained by mounting three films, which separately give three different colours, in collars revolving in a frame resembling that in which hand-magnifiers are usually mounted; this frame being fitted into the Sub-stage in such a manner, that either a single Selenite, or any combination of two Selenites, or all three together, may be brought into the optic axis above the polarizing prism (Fig. 82). As many as thirteen different tints may thus be obtained.—When the construction of the Microscope does not readily admit of the connexion of the Selenite plate with the Polarizing prism, it is convenient to make use of a plate of brass (Fig. 83) somewhat larger than the glass slides in which objects are ordinarily mounted, with a ledge near one edge for the slide to rest against, and a large circular aperture into which a glass is fitted, having a film of Selenite cemented to it; this 'Selenite stage' or object-carrier being laid upon the Stage of the Microscope, the slide containing the object is placed upon it; and, by an ingenious modification contrived by Dr. Leeson, the ring into which the Selenite plate is fitted being made movable, one plate may be substituted for another, whilst rotation may be given to the ring by means of a tangent-screw fitted into the brass-plate.—The variety

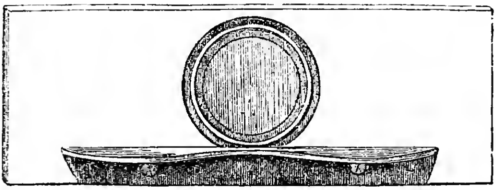
FIG. 82.



Darker's Selenites, as fitted by Messrs. Beck.

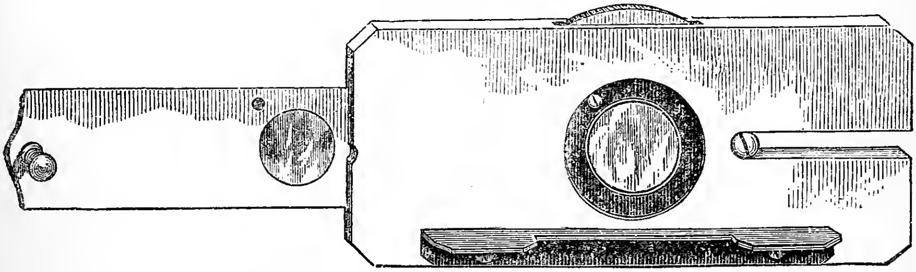
of tints given by a Selenite-film under Polarized light, is so greatly increased by the interposition of a rotating film of Mica, that two Selenites—*red* and *blue*—with a Mica-film, are found to give the entire series of colours obtainable from any number of Selenite-films, either separately or in combination with each other. The *Revolving Mica-Selenite Stage* (Fig. 84) devised by Mr. Blankley, and made by Mr. Swift, furnishes a very simple and effective means of obtaining these beautiful effects; the Mica-film being set in a diaphragm which can be made to rotate by applying the

FIG. 83.



Selenite Object-carrier.

FIG. 84.



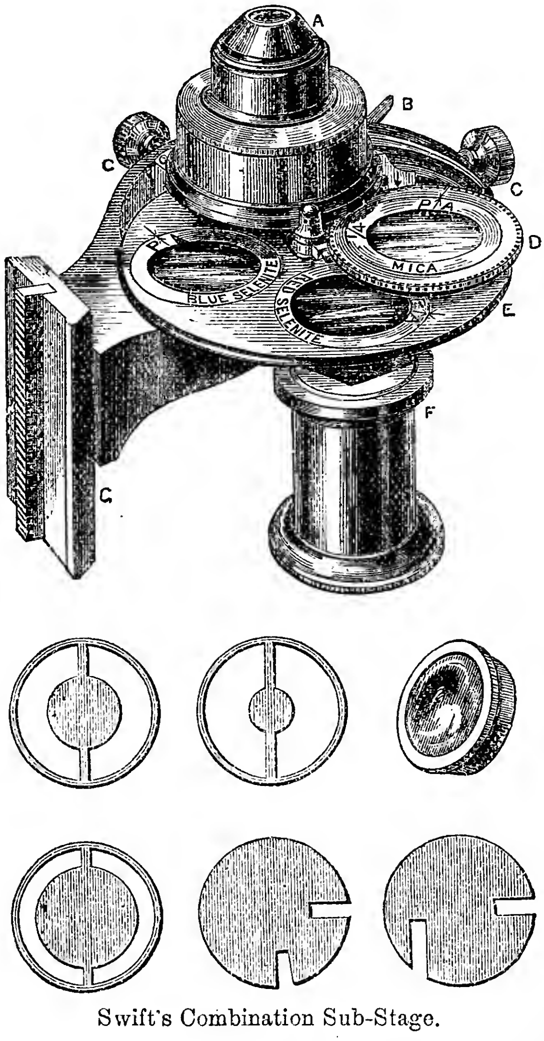
Blankley's Revolving Mica-Selenite Stage.

finger at the front edge of the stage; whilst the two Selenites are so placed in a slide, that either of them can be brought under the aperture as desired.

112. *Swift's Combination Sub-Stage.*—In this ingenious piece of apparatus (Fig. 85) are combined the advantages of (1) an Achromatic Condenser, A, centred by two milled-headed screws, C C, and having an angle of 140°, which fits it for use with Objectives of very wide angular aperture, whilst, by removing the upper combination, it is made to suit lower powers; (2) a contracting Diaphragm worked by the lever B; (3) a revolving Diaphragm, E, with four apertures, into which can be fitted either (*a*) a series of three central stops, giving a Black-ground illumination scarcely inferior to that of the paraboloid, and capable of being used with the small angled 1-5th, (*b*) tinted or ground-glass Moderators, or (*c*) two Selenite-films for the Polarizing apparatus; (4) a Polarizing prism, F, mounted on an excentric arm, so as to be brought under the axis of the condenser when not in use, and thrown out when not wanted; and (5) an upper arm carrying two revolving cells geared together by fine teeth (one of them shown at D, while the

other is under the condenser), so that a revolving motion may be given to either by acting on the other; one of these cells carries a plate of Mica, the revolution of which over the selenite-films gives a

Fig. 85.



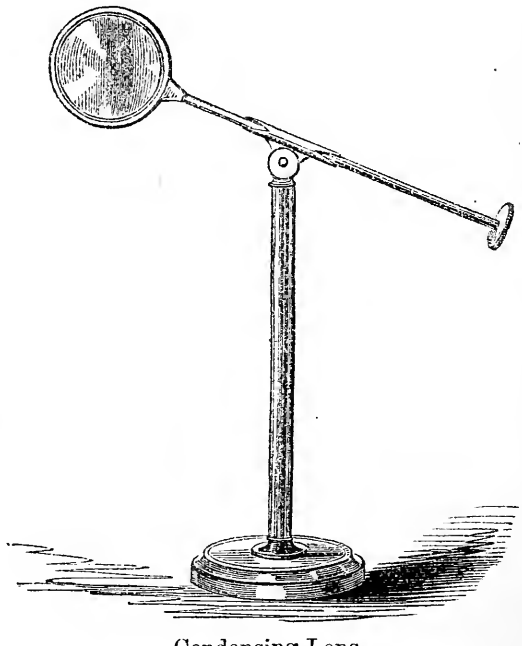
Swift's Combination Sub-Stage.

great variety of colour-tints with Polarized light; while the other serves to receive oblique-light disks, to which rotation can be given by the same means.—The special advantage of this Condenser lies in its having the polarizing prism, the selenite- and mica-films, the black-ground and oblique-light stops, and the moderator, all brought close under the back lens of the Achromatic; whilst it combines in itself all the most important appliances which the Sub-stage of

Secondary body of First-class Microscopes is able to afford. It may be specially recommended to such as make much use of Polarized light.

113. *Illuminators for Opaque Objects.*—All objects through which sufficient light cannot be *transmitted* to enable them to be viewed in the modes already described, require to be illuminated by rays, which, being thrown *upon* the surface under examination, shall be *reflected* from it into the Microscope; and this mode of viewing them may often be advantageously adopted in regard to semi-transparent or even transparent objects, for the sake of the diverse aspects it affords. Among the various methods devised for this purpose, the one most generally adopted consists in the use of a *Condensing Lens* (Fig. 86), either attached to the Microscope, or mounted upon a separate stand, by which the rays proceeding from a lamp or from a bright sky are made to converge upon the object.—For the efficient illumination of large opaque objects, however, it is desirable to employ a *Bull's eye* Condenser (which is a plano-convex lens of short focus, two or three inches in diameter), mounted upon a separate stand, in such a manner as to allow of being placed in a great variety of positions. The mounting shown in Fig. 87, is one of the best that can be adopted: the frame which carries the lens is borne at the bottom upon a swivel joint, which allows it to be turned in any azimuth; whilst it may be inclined at any angle to the horizon, by the revolution of the horizontal tube to which it is attached, around the other horizontal tube which projects from the stem; by the sliding of one of these tubes within the other, again, the horizontal arm may be lengthened or shortened; the lens may be secured in any position (as its weight is apt to drag it down when it is inclined, unless the tubes be made to work, the one into the other, more stiffly than is convenient) by means of a tightening collar milled at its edges;

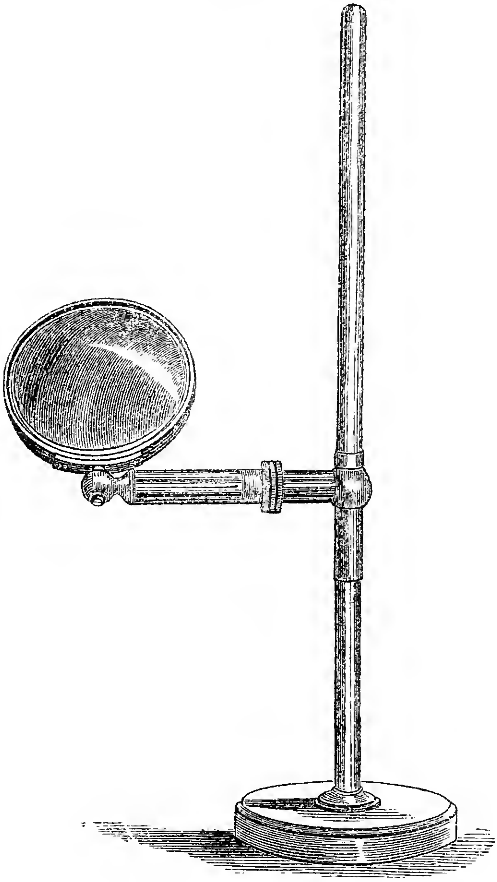
FIG. 86.



Condensing Lens.

and finally the horizontal arm is attached to a sprung socket, which slides up and down upon a vertical stem. The optical effect of such a 'bull's-eye' differs according to the side of it turned towards the light, and the condition of the rays which fall upon it.

Fig. 87.



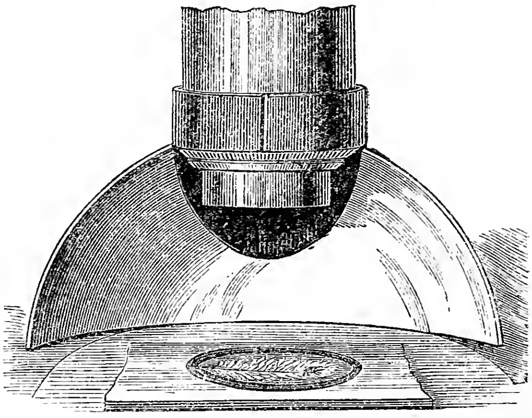
Bull's-eye Condenser.

The position of *least* spherical aberration is when its *convex* side is turned towards *parallel* or towards the *least diverging* rays: consequently, when used by Daylight, its *plane* side should be turned towards the *object;* and the same position should be given to it when it is used for procuring converging rays from a lamp, this being placed four or five times farther off on one side than the object is on the other. But it may also be employed for the purpose of reducing the diverging rays of the Lamp to parallelism, for use either with the Paraboloid (§ 105), or with the Parabolic speculum to be presently described; and the *plane* side is then to be turned towards the lamp, which must be placed at such a distance from the 'bull's-eye,' that the rays which have passed through the latter shall form a luminous circle equal to it in size, at whatever distance from the lens the screen may be held. For viewing minute objects under high powers, the smaller Condensing lens may be used to obtain a further concentration of the rays already brought into convergence by the 'bull's-eye.'—An ingenious and effective mode of using the 'Bull's-eye' condenser, for the illumination of very minute objects under high-power Objectives, has been devised by Mr. James Smith. The Microscope being in position for observation, the lamp should be placed either in the front or at the side (as most convenient), so that its flame, turned edge-ways to the stage, should be at a somewhat *lower level,* and at a distance of about

three inches. The bull's-eye should be placed between the stage and the lamp, with its plane surface uppermost, and with its convex surface a little *above* the stage. The light entering its convex surface near the margin turned towards the lamp, falls on its plane surface at an angle so oblique as to be almost totally reflected towards the opposite margin of the convex surface, through which it passes to the object, a little above the plane of the stage, on which it should cast a sharp and brilliant wedge of light. The adjustment is best made by first placing a slip of white card on the stage, and, when this is well illuminated, substituting the object-slide for it; making the final adjustment while the object is being viewed under the Microscope. No difficulty is experienced in getting good results with powers of from 200 to 400 diameters; but high powers require careful manipulation. Mr. Smith states, that he has succeeded in illuminating by this simple method, minute objects (such as *Diatoms* and scales of *Lepidoptera*), very brilliantly and clearly, upon a dark field, under an immersion 1-16th inch Objective. But he considers that it answers better for objectives of moderate than of very wide angular aperture.*

114. The Illumination of Opaque objects may be effected by *reflection* as well as by refraction; and the most convenient as well as most efficient instrument yet devised for this purpose is the *Parabolic Speculum* of Mr. R. Beck (Fig 88), which is attached to a spring-clip that fits upon the Objectives (2 inch, 1½ inch, 1 inch, 2-3rds inch) to which it is especially suited, and is slid up or down, or turned round its axis, when the object has been brought into focus, until the most suitable illumination has been obtained. The ordinary rays of diffused Daylight, which may be considered as falling in a parallel direction on the Speculum turned towards the window to receive them, are reflected upon a small object in its focus, so as to illuminate it sufficiently brightly for most purposes; but a much stronger light may be concentrated on it, when the Speculum receives its rays from a lamp placed near the opposite side of the stage, a 'bull's-eye' being interposed to give parallelism to the rays. For the sake of Microscopists who may desire to use

Fig. 88.

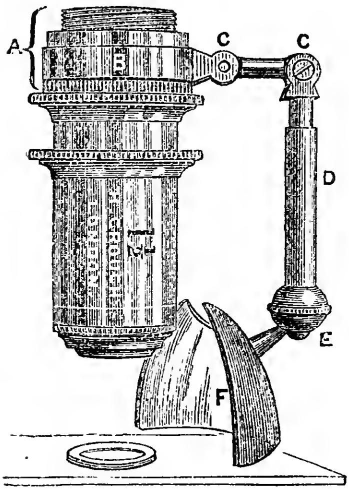


Beck's Parabolic Speculum.

* See "Journ. Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. iii. (1880), p. 398.

this admirable instrument with Objectives to which it has not been specially fitted, an adapter is made by Mr. Crouch, consisting of a collar (Fig. 89, A) interposed between the lower end of the body of the Microscope and the objective; on this is fitted the ring B, which turns easily round it, and carries the horizontal arm C C, jointed at each end; whilst the stem D, which can be lengthened or shortened at pleasure, hanging from this, carries at its lower end the Speculum F attached to it by the ball-and-socket joint E. By this arrangement the Parabolic Speculum may be used not only with the objectives already named, but also with those of one-half or 4-10ths inch focus, if these do not approach the object so nearly as to interfere with the reflexion of the illuminating rays from the Speculum.

Fig. 89.



Crouch's Adapter for Parabolic Speculum.

115. *Lieberkühn.*—A mode of illuminating opaque objects by a small concave Speculum reflecting directly down upon them the light reflected up to it from the Mirror, was formerly much in use, but is now comparatively seldom employed. This concave Speculum, termed a 'Lieberkühn' from the celebrated Microscopist who invented it, is made to fit upon the end of the Objective, having a perforation in its centre for the passage of the rays from the object to the lens; and in order that it may receive its light from a Mirror beneath (Fig. 90, A), the object must be so mounted as only to stop-out the central portion of the rays that are reflected upwards. The curvature of the Speculum is so adapted to the focus of the Objective, that, when the latter is duly adjusted, the rays reflected up to it from the mirror shall be made to converge strongly upon the part of the object that is in focus: a separate speculum is consequently required for every objective. The disadvantages of this mode of illumination are chiefly these:—first, that by sending the light down upon the object almost perpendicularly, there is scarcely any shadow, so that the inequalities of its surface and any minute markings which it may present, are but faintly or not at all seen; second, that the size of the object must be limited by that of the speculum, so as to allow the rays to pass to its marginal portion; and third, that a special mode of mounting is required, to allow the light to be reflected from the mirror around the margin of the object. The first objection may be in some degree removed by turning the mirror considerably out of the axis, so as to reflect its light obliquely upon the Lieberkühn, which will then send it down obliquely upon the object (Fig. 90, B);

or by covering one side of the Lieberkühn by a diaphragm, which should be made capable of rotation, so that light may be reflected from the uncovered portion in every azimuth: the illumination, however, will in neither case be so good as that which is afforded

A FIG. 90. B

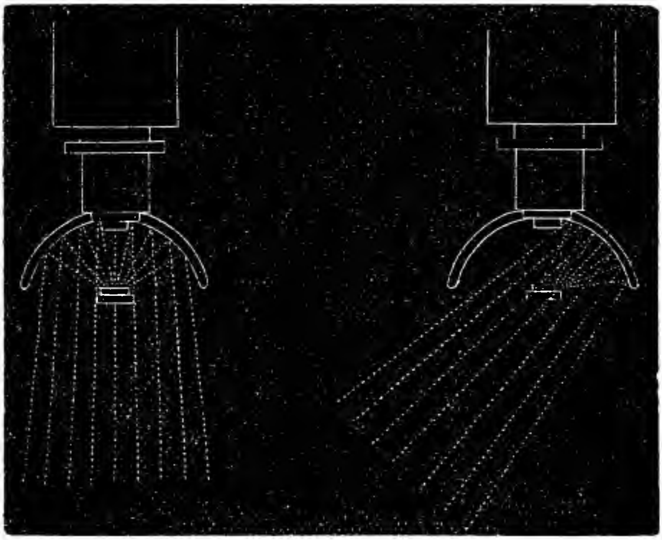


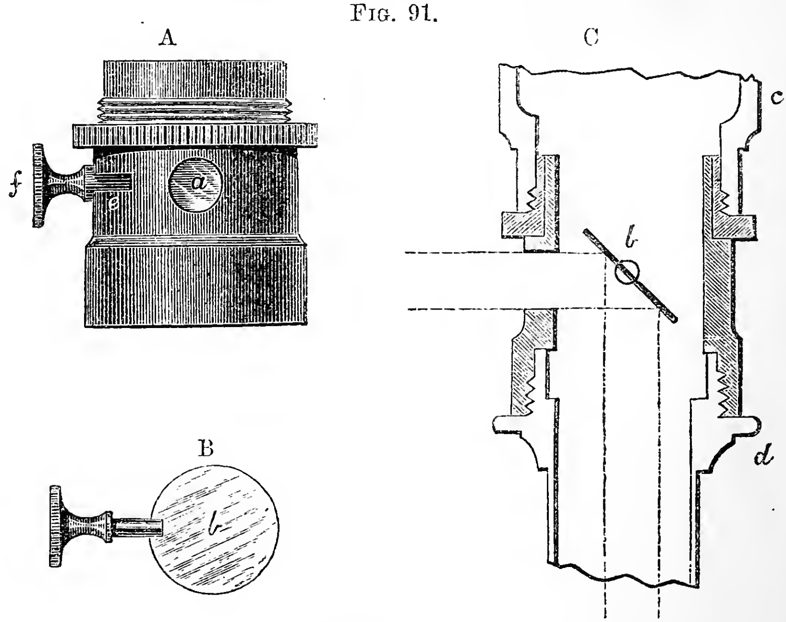
Diagram of Lieberkühn.

with powers up to 2-3rds inch, by the Parabolic Speculum just described. The mounting of Opaque objects in wooden slides (Fig. 124), which affords in many cases the most convenient means of preserving them, completely prevents the employment of the Lieberkühn in the examination of them; and they must be set for this purpose either upon disks which afford them no protection, or in cells (§ 169) with a blackened background. The cases wherein the Lieberkühn is most useful, are those in which it is desired to examine small opaque objects, such as can be held in the Stage-Forceps (§ 118), or mounted on small disks (§ 119), or laid upon a slip of glass, with objectives of *half-inch* focus or less; since a stronger light can be thus concentrated upon them, than can be easily obtained by side-illumination. In every such case, a black background must be provided, of such a size as to fill the field, so that no light shall come to the eye direct from the mirror, and yet not large enough to create any unnecessary obstruction to the passage of the rays from the mirror to the speculum. With each Lieberkühn is commonly provided a blackened stop of appropriate size, having a well-like cavity, and mounted upon a pin which fits into a support connected with the under side of the stage; but though this 'dark well' serves to throw out a few objects with peculiar force, yet, for all ordinary purposes, a spot

of black paper or black varnish will answer the required purpose very effectually, this spot being either made on the under side of the cell which contains the object, or upon a separate slip of glass laid upon the stage beneath this.

116. *Vertical Illumination for High Powers.*—Various attempts have been made by Mr. Wenham and others to view opaque objects under powers too high for the advantageous use of the Lieberkühn, by employing the Objective itself as the illuminator, light being transmitted into it downwards from above. By Prof. H. L. Smith, of Geneva College, U.S., a pencil of light admitted from a lateral aperture above the objective, was reflected downwards upon the object through its lenses, by means of a small silver speculum placed on one side of its axis and cutting off a portion of its aperture. By Messrs. Powell and Lealand, a piece of plane glass was placed at an angle of 45° across a tube placed like an adapter between the Objective and the body of the Microscope; and whilst a pencil of light, entering at the side aperture and striking against this inclined surface, is reflected by it downwards through the objective on to the object, the rays proceeding upwards from the object pass upwards (with some loss by reflexion) through the plane glass into the body of the Microscope. For this fixed plate of glass, Mr. R. Beck substituted a disk of thin glass attached to a milled-head (Fig. 91, B), by the rotation of which its angle may be exactly

Fig. 91.



Beck's Vertical Illuminator.

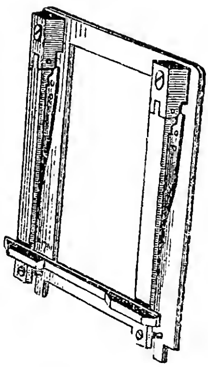
adjusted; and this is introduced by a slot (shown at *e*, Fig. 91, A) into the interior of an adapter that is interposed between the

objective (C, *d*) and the nose (*c*) of the Microscope. The light which enters at the lateral aperture (A, *a*) falling upon the oblique surface of the disk (C, *b*), is reflected downwards, and is concentrated by the lenses of the Objective upon the object beneath. The lateral aperture may be provided with a diaphragm, having a series of apertures, for diminishing the false light to which this method is liable; or a screen with a small aperture may be placed at any distance between the lamp and the Illuminator, that is found to produce the best effects. In using this Illuminator, the lamp should be placed at a distance of about 8 inches from the aperture; and when the proper adjustments have been made, the image of the flame should be seen upon the object. The illumination of the entire field, or the direction of the light more or less to either side of it, can easily be managed by the interposition of a small Condensing lens placed at about the distance of its own focus from the lamp. The Objects viewed by this mode of illumination with dry-front objectives, are best uncovered; since, if they are covered with thin glass, so large a proportion of the light sent down upon them is reflected from the cover (especially when Objectives of large angle of aperture are employed) that very little is seen of the objects beneath, unless their reflective power is very high. With immersion objectives, however, covered objects may be used; and the Author has seen a more perfect resolution of difficult tests by this mode of viewing them (first suggested by Mr. Morehouse, of Wayland, New York) than by any other.*—Another method of Vertical Illumination long since devised by Mr. Tolles has recently been brought into notice by Prof. W. A. Rogers, of Boston, U.S. It consists in the introduction of a small rectangular prism, resembling that of Nachet's Binocular (A, Fig. 27), at a short distance behind the front combination of the Objective: so that parallel rays entering its vertical end-surface, pass-on between its parallel horizontal surfaces, until they meet the inclined surface by which they are reflected downwards. In passing through the front combination of the objective, they are deflected towards its axis; but as their angle of convergence is less than the angle of divergence of the rays proceeding from the object, the reflected rays will not meet in the focal point of the lens, but will be so distributed as to illuminate a sufficient area. By altering the extent to which the prism is pushed in, or by lifting or depressing its outer end by means of a milled-head screw, the field of illumination can be regulated. The working of this prism with immersion objectives is stated by Mr. Tolles to be peculiarly satisfactory.†

117. *Stephenson's Safety Stage.*—In examining objects with those higher powers which focus extremely close to the covering glass, the slightest inadvertence is likely to lead to a fracture of the glass, and perhaps to the destruction of a valuable slide. This is a serious

* "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc," Vol. ii. (1879), pp. 194, 266.
† Ibid., Vol. iii., pp. 526, 754.

FIG. 92.



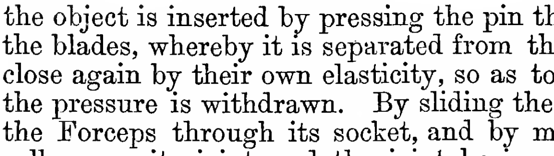
Safety-Stage.

matter with Möller's Diatom Type Slide, or Nobert's Test Lines, or with many others that are expensive or perhaps impossible to replace. To remove this source of danger, Mr. Stephenson contrived the "safety stage," shown in Fig. 92. The frame on which the slide carrying the object rests, is hinged at its upper part, and kept in its true position by slight springs, which give way directly the slide is pressed by the objective. It is found that springs firm enough to insure the steadiness required for high powers, may yet be sufficiently flexible to give way before very thin glass is endangered, and a glance at the stage shows if it is made to deviate from the normal position in which its upper and lower edges are parallel.—(See also § 54.)

Section 2. *Apparatus for the Presentation of Objects.*

118. *Stage-Forceps and Vice.*—For bringing under the Object-glass in different positions such small opaque objects as can be conveniently held in a pair of forceps, the *Stage-Forceps* (Fig. 93) supplied with most Microscopes afford a ready means. These are mounted by means of a joint upon a pin, which fits into a hole either in the corner of the Stage itself or in the object - platform;

FIG. 93.



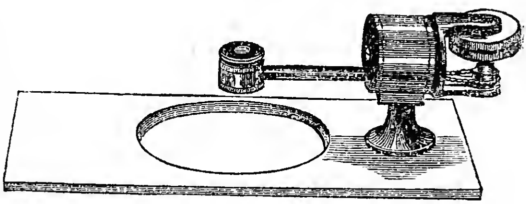
Stage-Forceps.

the object is inserted by pressing the pin that projects from one of the blades, whereby it is separated from the other; and the blades close again by their own elasticity, so as to retain the object when the pressure is withdrawn. By sliding the wire stem which bears the Forceps through its socket, and by moving that socket vertically upon its joint, and the joint horizontally upon the pin, the object may be brought into the field precisely in the position required; and it may be turned round and round, so that all sides of it may be examined, by simply giving a twisting movement to the wire stem. The other extremity of the stem often bears a small brass box filled with cork, and perforated with holes in its side; this affords a secure hold to common pins, to the heads of which small objects can be attached by gum, or to which disks of card, &c., may be attached, whereon objects are mounted for being viewed with the Lieberkühn (§ 115). This method of mounting was formerly much in vogue, but has been less employed of late, since the Lieberkühn has fallen into comparative disuse.—The

Stage Vice, as made by Mr. Ross for Mr. Slack, was contrived for the purpose of holding small hard bodies, such as Minerals, apt to be jerked-out by the angular motion of the blades of the forceps, or very delicate substances that will not bear rough compression. In this apparatus the blades meet horizontally, and their movements can be regulated to a nicety with a fine screw. The Stage Vice fits into a plate, as is the case with Beck's disk-holder, Fig. 94.

119. For the examination of objects which cannot be conveniently held in the stage-forceps, but which can be temporarily or permanently attached to disks, no means is comparable to the *Disk-holder* of Mr. R. Beck (Fig. 94) in regard to the facility it affords for presenting them in every variety of position. The object being attached by gum (having a small quantity of glycerine mixed with it) or by gold-size, to the surface of a small blackened metallic Disk, this is fitted by a short stem projecting from its under surface into a cylindrical holder; and the holder carrying the disk can be made to rotate around a vertical axis by turning the milled-head on the right, which acts on it by means of a small chain that works through the horizontal tubular stem; whilst it can be made to incline to one side or to the other, until its plane becomes vertical, by turning the whole movement on the horizontal axis of its cylindrical socket.* The supporting plate being perforated by a large aperture, the object may be illuminated by the Lieberkühn if desired. The Disks are inserted into the holder, or are removed from it, by a pair of Forceps constructed for the purpose; and they may be safely put away, by inserting their stems into a plate perforated with holes. Several such plates, with intervening guards to prevent them from coming into too close apposition, may be packed into a small box. To the value of this little piece of apparatus the Author can bear the strongest testimony from his own experience, having found his study of the *Foraminifera* greatly facilitated by it.—A less costly substitute, however, which answers sufficiently well for general purposes, is found in the *Object-holder* of Mr. Morris (Fig. 95), which consists of a supporting plate that carries a ball-and-socket joint in its centre, into the ball of which can be fitted by a tapering stem either a holder for small cardboard disks, or a larger holder suitable for carrying an ordinary slide. By the free play of the ball-and-socket joint in

Fig. 94.

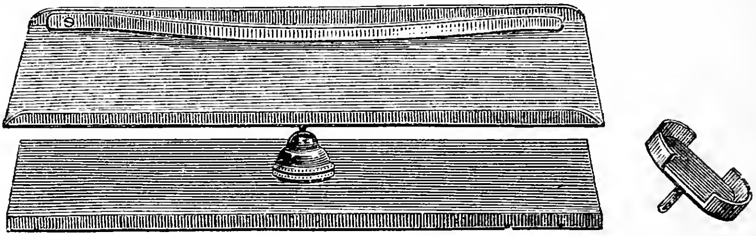


Beck's Disk-holder.

* A small pair of Forceps adapted to take up minute objects may be fitted into the cylindrical holder, in place of a disk.

different directions, the object may either be made to rotate, or may be so tilted as to be viewed obliquely or almost laterally. This

Fig. 95.



Morris's Object-Holder.

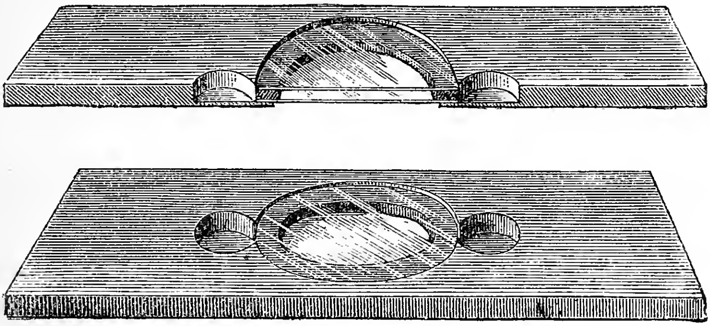
instrument can, of course, be used only by side-illumination; and in order to turn it to the best account, the objects to be viewed by it must be mounted on special disks; but it has an advantage over the preceding, in being applicable also to objects mounted in ordinary slides.—The same purpose is answered, in the Ross Zentmayer Microscopes (§§ 59, 72), and in the Improved Beck Microscope (§ 75), by turning the stage round its *horizontal* axis, so that an object mounted on a slide may be viewed at any desired angle of inclination, when it has been brought into the most suitable azimuth by the rotating of the Stage round its *vertical* axis.

120. *Glass Stage-plate.*—Every Microscope should be furnished with a piece of Plate-glass, about 4 in. by $1\frac{1}{2}$ in., to one margin of which a narrow strip of glass is cemented, so as to form a ledge. This is extremely useful, both for laying objects upon (the ledge preventing them—together with their covers, if used—from sliding down when the Microscope is inclined), and for preserving the stage from injury by the spilling of sea-water or other saline or corrosive liquids, when such are in use. Such a plate not only serves for the examination of transparent, but also of opaque objects; for if the Condensing-lens be so adjusted as to throw a side-light upon an object laid upon it, either the Diaphragm-plate or a slip of black-paper will afford a dark back-ground; whilst objects mounted on the small black disks suitable to the Lieberkühn may conveniently rest on it, instead of being held in the Stage-forceps.

121. *Growing Slide.*—A number of contrivances have been devised of late years, for the purpose of watching the life-histories of minute aquatic organisms, and of 'cultivating' such as develop and multiply themselves in particular fluids. One of the simplest and most effective, that of Mr. Botterill, represented in Fig. 96,—consists of a slip of ebonite, three inches by one, with a central aperture of 3-4ths of an inch at its under side; this aperture is reduced by a projecting shoulder, whereon is cemented a disk of thin glass, which thus forms the bottom of a cell hollowed in the thickness of the ebonite slide. On each side of this central cell, a small lateral

cell communicating with it and about 1-4th inch in diameter, is drilled-out to the same depth; this serves for the reception of a

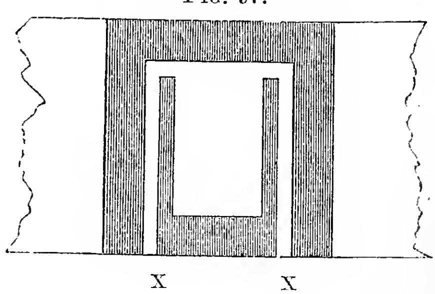
Fig. 96.



Botterill's Growing-Slide.

supply of water or other fluid, which is imparted, as required, to the central 'growing' cell, which is completed by placing a thin-glass cover over the objects introduced into it, with the interposition of a ring of thin paper, or (if a greater thickness be required) of a ring of cardboard or vulcanite. If the fluid be introduced into one of the lateral cells, and be drawn-off from the others—either by the use, from time to time, of the small glass Syringe to be hereafter described (§ 127), or by threads so arranged as to produce a continuous drip *into* one and *from* the other—a constantly renewed supply is furnished to the central cell, which it enters on one side, and leaves on the other, by capillary attraction.* — *Dr. Maddox's Growing-Slide* will be understood from the annexed sketch. The shaded parts are pieces of tinfoil fastened with shellac glue to a glass slide. The minute fungi or spores to be grown are placed on a glass cover large enough to cover the tinfoil, with a droplet of the fluid required. This, after examination to see that no extraneous matter is introduced, is placed over the tinfoil, and the edges fastened with wax softened with oil, leaving free the spaces x x for entrance of air. Growing-slides of this description could be made cheaply with thin glass instead of tinfoil.†—For an

Fig. 97.



Maddox's Growing-Slide.

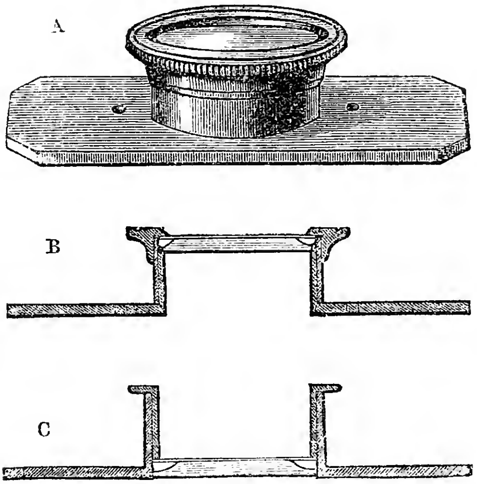
* For descriptions of other forms of Growing-Slide, see "Transact. of Microsc. Soc." Vol. xiv. N.S. p. 34, and "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," N.S. Vol. vii. p. 11.

† See his paper on Cultivation of Microscopic Fungi, in "Monthly Microsc. Journ." Vol. iii. (1870), p. 14.—Dr. Maddox recommends the following fluid as

account of a more elaborate apparatus devised by Messrs. Dallinger & Drysdale for the prosecution of their admirable researches hereafter to be noticed (Chap. XI.), the reader is referred to the description and figures given by them in the "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. xi., 1874, p. 97.

122. *Aquatic Box.*—The Live-box or Animalcule-cage (Fig. 98, A) consists of a short piece of wide brass tube, fixed perpendicularly into an aperture of its own diameter in a flat-plate of brass, and closed-in at its top by the object-tablet, a disk of glass with bevelled edges (B): over this box there slides a cover, consisting of another piece of brass tube having a disk of thin glass fixed into its top. The cover being taken off, a drop of the liquid to be examined, or any thin object which can be most advantageously looked-at in fluid, is placed upon the lower plate; the cover is then slipped over it, and is pressed down until the drop of liquid be spread out, or the object be flattened, to the degree most convenient for observation. If the glass disk which forms the lid be cemented or burnished into the brass ring which carries it, a small hole should be left for the escape of air or superfluous fluid; and this may be closed up with a morsel of wax, if it be desired to prevent the included fluid from evaporating. But as it is desirable that the cover-glass should be thin enough to allow a 1-4th or a 1-6th inch Objective to be employed, and as such thin glass is extremely apt to be broken, it is a much better plan to furnish the brass cover with a screw-cap, which holds the glass disk with sufficient firmness, but permits it to be readily replaced. It is always desirable,

Fig. 98.



Aquatic Box or Animalcule-Cage, as seen in perspective at A, and in section at B and C.

sufficiently hygrometric to keep the spores moist, and as adapted to Fungoid growth:—

Dextrine	2 grains.
Phosphate of Soda and Ammonia.	2 "
Saturated Solution of Acetate Potash	12 drops.
Grape Sugar	16 grains.
Freshly Distilled Water	1 oz.

The water is to be boiled in a large test-tube or breaker for 15 minutes, and covered whilst boiling and cooling; when settled, it should be poured into perfectly clean 2-drachm stoppered bottles, and kept for use.

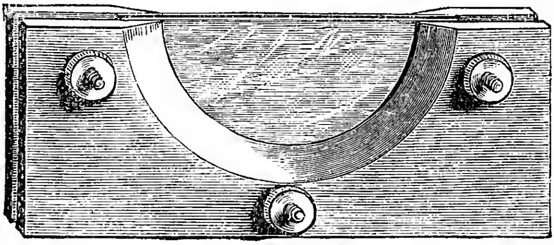
if possible, to prevent the liquid from spreading to the edge of the disk, since any objects it may contain are very apt in such a case to be lost under the opaque ring of the cover: this is to be avoided by limiting the quantity of liquid introduced, by laying it upon the centre of the lower plate, and by pressing down the cover with great caution, so as to flatten the drop equally on all sides, stopping short when it is spreading too close to the margin. If the Live-box be well constructed, and the glass disks be quite flat, they will come into such close contact, that objects of extreme thinness may be compressed between them; and it may thus be made, with a little practice, to serve the purpose of a Compressor (§ 125). In its ordinary form, however, the elevation of the object-tablet above the stage prevents the Live-box from being used with the Achromatic Condenser or Paraboloid: but another form is made by Mr. Swift, in which the object-tablet is fixed at the bottom of the tube, flush with the surface of the plate (as shown at C); and as the covering disk is fixed to the *bottom* of the cover-tube, and thus slides *inside* the box-tube, the object can be illuminated by any of the means applicable to objects contained in ordinary flat cells (§ 123). The only disadvantage of this construction is that the cover-disk must be *fixed* in the tube which carries it.

123. Infusoria, minute Algæ, &c., however, can be well seen by placing a drop of the water containing them on an ordinary slide, and laying a thin piece of covering-glass on the top. And objects of somewhat greater thickness can be examined by placing a loop or ring of fine cotton-thread upon an ordinary slide, to keep the covering-glass at a small distance from it; and the object to be examined being placed on the slide with a drop of water, the covering-glass is gently pressed down till it touches the ring. Still thicker objects may be viewed in the various forms of 'cells' hereafter to be described (§§ 171–3); and as, when the cells are filled with fluid, their glass covers will adhere by capillary attraction, provided the superfluous moisture that surrounds their edges be removed by blotting-paper, they will remain in place when the Microscope is inclined.—An *Annular Cell,* that may be used either as a 'live-box' or as a 'growing-slide,' has lately been devised by Mr. Weber (U.S.). It is a slip of plate-glass of the usual size and ordinary thickness, out of which a circular 'cell' of 3-4ths inch diameter is ground, in such a manner that its bottom is *convex* instead of concave, its shallowest part being in the centre, and the deepest round the margin. A small drop of the fluid to be examined being placed upon the central convexity (the highest part of which should be almost flush with the general surface of the plate), and the thin-glass cover being placed upon it, the drop spreads itself out in a thin film, without finding its way into the deep furrow around it; and thus it holds-on the covering-glass by capillary attraction, while the furrow serves as an air-chamber. If the cover be cemented down by a ring of gold-size or dammar, so that the evaporation of the fluid is prevented, either Animal or Vegetable life may thus be maintained

for some days, or, if the two should be balanced (as in an Aquarium), for some weeks.*—An improvement has been devised by Dr. Edmunds in the form of this Annular Cell; which he also makes to serve as a 'gas-chamber' for the introduction of gases or vapours into the annular space. The central prominence is shaped as a truncated paraboloid; and while, by focussing in the object a 2-inch objective used as a condenser, a bright field is obtained, this may be exchanged for a dark field by putting the condenser out of focus (so that its light is thrown on the *sides* of the paraboloid), and by gumming a black disk on the centre of its under surface. A straight groove being cut in the slide, parallel to its long side, and tangentially to the annular groove which it should equal in depth, two fine glass tubes are cemented in it; one of them, which is left projecting beyond the end of the slide, being connected with a slender elastic tube through which gases or vapours may be projected into the annular space, while the other serves to convey them away.†

124. *Zoophyte Trough.*—For the examination of larger aquatic Animals or Plants under low or moderate powers, recourse may be advantageously had either to the original Zoophyte-trough of Mr. Lister (which is still kept on sale by most Makers), or to a form lately devised by Mr. Botterill, which has several advantages over the older one. This consists of two plates of vulcanite, a back and a front, shaped as in Fig. 99, connected together by three brass screws; these, being fixed in the back plates, pass through the front, where their projecting ends are furnished with small milled-heads. Between these plates are two rectangular plates of glass, cut to such a length as to lie between the two side-screws of the vulcanite plates, and having such a breadth that while their lower edges rest on the bottom-screw, their upper are flush with the top of the vulcanite disks. The glass plates are kept apart by a half-ring of vulcanized

Fig. 99.



Botterill's Zoophyte Trough.

india-rubber, of such a diameter as to lie just outside the semicircular margin of the vulcanite plates; and they thus form the sides

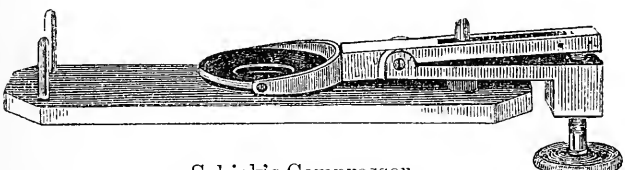
* "Journ. Roy. Microsc. Society," Vol. ii. (1879), p. 55.

† *Ibid.*, Vol. iii. (1880), p. 585.—This *Parabolized Gas-Slide* is made by Messrs. Beck.

and bottom of a trough, which is made water-tight by a moderate pressure exerted by turning the milled-heads. The space between the two glass plates may be varied by using half-rings of different thicknesses; whilst, if it be desired to use a higher power than will work through ordinary glass, a front plate of *thin* glass may be substituted.—One great advantage of this arrangement is the facility with which the pieces composing it may be taken apart, either for cleaning or for the repair of a fracture—an accident to which the use of thin glass of course renders it specially liable.

125. *Compressor.*—The purpose of this instrument is to apply a gradual pressure to objects whose structure can only be made out when they are thinned by extension, while their organization is so delicate as to be confused or altogether destroyed by the slightest excess of pressure. For the examination of such, an instrument in which the degree of compression can be regulated with precision is almost indispensable. The Compressorium represented in Fig. 100 was originally devised by Schiek of Berlin; whilst its details were

Fig. 100.

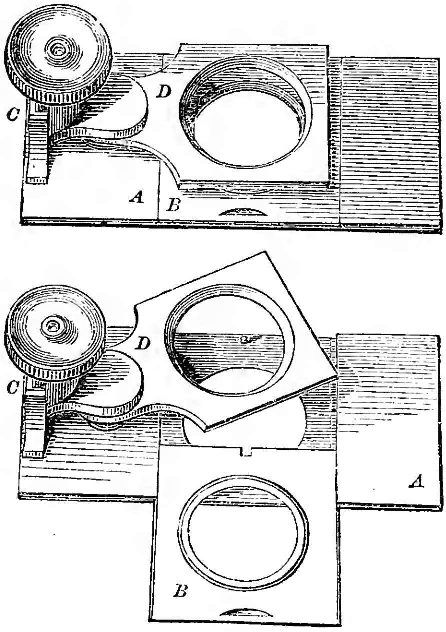


Schiek's Compressor.

modified by M. de Quatrefages, who constantly employed it in his elaborate and most successful researches on the organization of the Marine Worms. Being, however, deficient in any provision for securing the parallelism of the approximated surfaces, it has been superseded by other forms devised expressly with that view.—In *Ross's Improved Compressor*, shown in Fig. 101, the upper plate D is attached to a slide that works between grooves in the vertical piece C, so that, when raised or lowered by the milled-head, it always maintains its parallelism to the lower plate A. The thin glass carried by the upper plate D (which can be turned aside on a swivel joint, as shown in the lower figure) is a square that slides into grooves on its under side, so as to be easily replaced if broken. The glass to which it is opposed is a circular disk lodged in a shallow socket in plate B, which is received into a part of the lower plate A that is sunk below the rest. The plate B carrying the lower glass can be drawn out (as shown in the lower figure) and laid upon the Dissecting Microscope, to be replaced in the Compressorium after the object has been prepared for compression. The only drawback to the use of this instrument lies in the inconvenience of using it in the reversed position so as to look at the object from its under side.—This reversion is provided for in the two forms of the instrument made by Messrs. Beck, which are

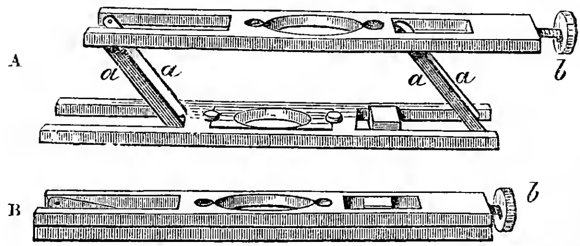
shown in Figs. 102, 104. In both, the upper and the lower glasses are fixed, upon a plan devised by Mr. Slack, by means of flat-headed screws, two to each glass (Fig. 103, A), the heads fitting into holes of the opposite frame, so as to permit the close approximation of the two glass surfaces. In their *Parallel Plate Compressor* (Fig. 102) the constant parallelism of the two plates is secured by the two parallel bars, *a*, *a*; while the degree of their approximation and pressure is regulated by the screw *b*, which works out of centre in a conical hole of the lower frame, so that, the further it is introduced, the more closely the two frames, with their glasses, are approximated. This pattern works equally well whichever side is uppermost. In the *Reversible Cell Compressor* of the same makers (Figs. 103 B, 104) the upper glass is held down by a ring *a*, which screws-on to that whch bears the lower one, giving any degree of pressure that may be required. When screwed together, they form

FIG. 101.



Ross's Improved Compressor.

FIG. 102.



Beck's Parallel Plate Compressorium.

a cell that fits into the plate *b*, and is attached to it by the milled-head *c*; by unscrewing which the cell can be instantly detached and replaced in a reverse position.—In all these Compressors, it is easy to vary the thickness of the glass within convenient limits; and the observer should be always provided with a stock of glass slips and disks of the requisite sizes and of different thicknesses,

suitable to the kind of investigation he may be prosecuting. As thin glasses, when used for compression, are very liable to fracture, the

Fig. 103.

A B

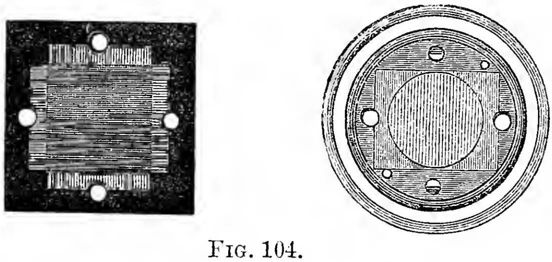
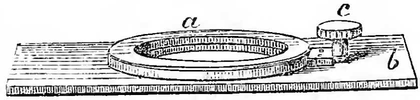


Fig. 104.



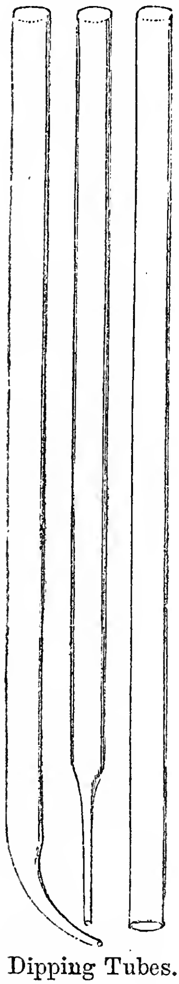
Beck's Reversible Cell Compressorium.

power of immediately replacing them without the employment of cement (as in Mr. Slack's construction) is a great convenience.

126. *Dipping Tubes.*—In every operation in which small quantities of liquid, or small objects contained in liquid, have to be dealt with by the Microscopist, he will find it a very great convenience to be provided with a set of Tubes of the forms represented in Fig. 105, but of somewhat larger dimensions. These were formerly designated as 'fishing tubes;' the purpose for which they were originally devised having been the fishing-out of Water-fleas, aquatic Insect-larvæ, the larger Animalcules, or other living objects distinguishable either by the unaided eye or by the assistance of a magnifying-glass, from the vessels that may contain them. But they are equally applicable, of course, to the selection of minute Plants; and they may be turned to many other no less useful purposes, some of which will be specified hereafter.—When it is desired to secure an object which can be seen either with the eye alone or with a magnifying-glass, one of these tubes is passed down into the liquid, its upper orifice having been previously closed by the forefinger, until its lower orifice is immediately above the object; the finger being then removed, the liquid suddenly rises into the tube, probably carrying the object up with it; and if this is seen to be the case, by putting the finger again on the top of the tube, its contents remain in it when the tube is lifted out, and may be deposited on a slip of glass, or on the lower disk of the Aquatic-box, or, if too copious for either receptacle, may be discharged into a large glass cell (Fig. 120). In thus fishing in jars for any but minute objects, it will be generally found convenient to employ the open-mouthed tube C; those with smaller orifices, B, C, being employed for 'fishing' for Animalcules, &c., in small bottles or tubes, or for

selecting minute objects from the cell into which the water taken up by the tube A has been discharged. It will be found very convenient to have the tops of these last blown into small funnels, which shall be covered with thin sheet India-rubber; for their action (like that of the stopper of the Dropping-bottle, Fig. 138) can then be regulated with the greatest nicety by the pressure of the finger.

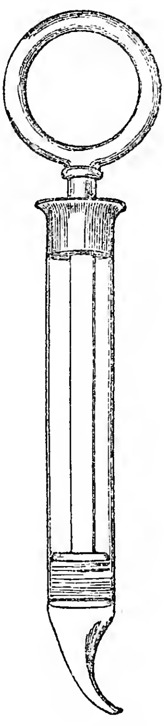
Fig. 105.



Dipping Tubes.

127. *Glass Syringe.*—In dealing with minute Aquatic objects, and in a great variety of other manipulations, a small Glass Syringe of the pattern represented in Fig. 106, and of about double the dimensions, will be found extremely convenient. When this is firmly held between the fore and middle fingers, and the thumb is inserted into the ring at the summit of the piston-rod, such complete command is gained over the piston, that its motion may be regulated with the greatest nicety: and thus minute quantities of fluid may be removed or added, in the various operations which have to be performed in the preparation and mounting of Objects (Chap. v.); or any minute object may be selected (by the aid of the simple Microscope, if necessary) from amongst a number in the same drop, and transferred to a separate slip. A set of such Syringes, with points drawn to different degrees of fineness, and bent to different curvatures, will be found to be among the most useful 'tools' that the working Microscopist can have at his command.

Fig. 106.

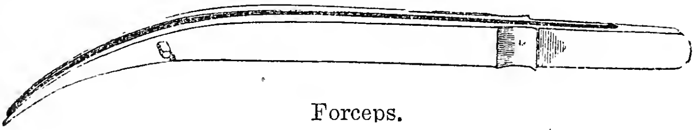


Glass Syringe.

128. *Forceps.*—Another instrument so indispensable to the Microscopist as to be commonly considered an appendage to the Microscope, is the Forceps for taking up minute objects; many forms of this have been devised, of which one of the most convenient is represented in Fig. 107, of something less than the actual size. As the forceps, in Marine researches, have continually to be plunged into sea-water, it is better that they should be made of brass or of

German silver than of steel, since the latter rusts far more readily; and as they are not intended (like Dissecting-forceps) to take a firm

Fig. 107.



Forceps.

grasp of the object, but merely to hold it, they may be made very light, and their spring-portion slender. As it is essential, however, to their utility, that their points should meet accurately, it is well that one of the blades should be furnished with a guide-pin passing through a hole in the other.

The foregoing constitute, it is believed, all the most important pieces of Apparatus which can be considered in the light of Accessories to the Microscope. Those which have been contrived to afford facilities for the preparation and mounting of Objects, will be described in a future chapter (Chap. v.). And the simple and efficient substitute which the Author has been accustomed to use for the *Frog-Plate* thought essential by many Microscopists, will be described in Chap. xx. under the head of Circulation of the Blood.

CHAPTER IV.

MANAGEMENT OF THE MICROSCOPE.

129. *Table.*—The Table on which the Microscope is placed when in use, should be one whose size enables it also to receive the various appurtenances which the observer finds it convenient to have within his reach, and whose steadiness is such as to allow of his arms being rested upon it without any yielding; it should, moreover, be so framed, as to be as free as possible from any tendency to transmit the vibrations of the building or floor whereon it stands. The working Microscopist will find it a matter of great convenience to have a Table specially set apart for his use, furnished with drawers, in which are contained the various Accessories he may require for the preparation and mounting of objects. If he should desire to carry about with him all the apparatus he may need for the prosecution of his investigations in different localities, and for the mounting of his preparations on the spot, he will find it very convenient to provide himself with a small Cabinet, fitted with drawers in which every requisite can be securely packed, and of such a height, that, when laid upon an ordinary table, it may bring up the Quekett or other Dissecting Microscope placed upon it to the position most convenient for use.*—If the Microscope be one which is not very readily taken out from and put back into its case, it is very convenient to cover it with a large bell-glass; which may be so suspended from the ceiling, by a cord carrying a counterpoise at its other end, as to be raised or lowered with the least possible trouble, and to be entirely out of the way when the Microscope is in use. Similar but smaller bell-glasses (wine-glasses whose stems have been broken answer very well) are also useful for the protection of objects which are in course of being examined or prepared, and which it is desirable to seclude from dust.—For the purpose of Demonstration in the Lecture-room, a small traversing Platform may be constructed to run easily upon rollers, and to

* The dimensions of the Cabinet which the Author has had constructed for himself (its size being so adapted to that of the box of his Crouch's Binocular that the two are received into the same travelling-case) are 14 inches long, 7 inches broad, and $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches high. In the middle there are five shallow drawers, 5 inches broad, containing dissecting apparatus, large flat cells, glass-covers, syringes, &c.; on one side are two drawers, each $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches broad, the upper one, containing slides, cells, &c., rather more than one inch deep inside, the lower, for larger pieces of apparatus, 2 inches deep; on the other side is a single drawer of the same breadth and $3\frac{1}{4}$ inches deep, for bottles containing solutions, cements, &c.

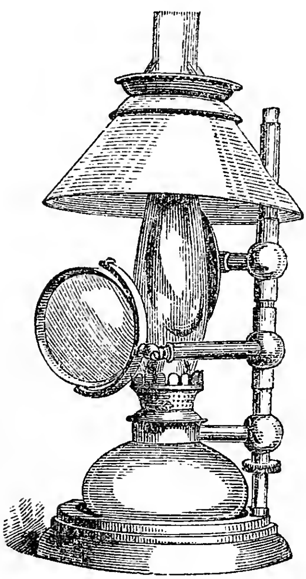
carry the Microscope and Lamp securely clamped down upon it, so as to be passed from one observer to another. For Demonstration to a small party sitting round a circular table, it is covenient to employ a Λ-shaped platform, the vertical angle of which is pivoted to a weight placed in the centre of the table, whilst the angles at the base are supported upon castors, so that the platform may run round to each observer in succession. Or the table itself, if not too large, may rotate (like a dumb-waiter) upon its central pillar, as made by Messrs. Beck.

130. *Light.*—Whatever may be the purposes to which the Microscope is applied, it is a matter of the first importance to secure a pure and adequate Illumination. For the examination of the greater proportion of objects, *good daylight* is to be preferred to any other kind of light; but *good lamplight* is preferable to bad daylight, especially for the illumination of *opaque* objects. When daylight is employed, the Microscope should be placed near a window, whose aspect should be (as nearly as may be convenient) *opposite* to the side on which the sun is shining; for the light of the sun reflected from a bright cloud is that which the experienced Microscopist will almost always prefer, the rays proceeding from a cloudless blue sky being by no means so well-fitted for his purpose, and the dull lurid reflection of a dark cloud being the worst of all. The *direct* light of the Sun is far too powerful to be ordinarily used with advantage, unless its intensity be moderated, either by reflection from a plaster of Paris mirror, or by passage through some 'Modifier' (§ 109); it is, however, occasionally used by some observers to work out intricate markings or fine colour, and may sometimes be of advantage for these purposes, but without great care would be a fertile source of error.—The young Microscopist is earnestly recommended to make as much use of *daylight* as possible; not only because, in a large number of cases, the view of the object which it affords is more satisfactory than that which can be obtained by any kind of lamplight, but also because it is much less trying to the eyes. So great, indeed, is the difference between the two in this respect, that there are many who find themselves unable to carry-on their observations for any length of time by lamplight, although they experience neither fatigue nor strain from many hours' continuous work by daylight. Even ordinary daylight may be considerably improved by the interposition of a glass globe of about six inches in diameter, filled with water; and this may also be advantageously used for the illumination of transparent objects by lamp-light, if the water be *very slightly* tinged with ammonio-sulphate of copper, which takes off the yellow glare.

131. *Lamps.*—When recourse is had to Artificial light, it is essential, not only that it should be of good quality, but that the arrangement for furnishing it should be suitable to the special wants of the Microscopist. The most useful light for ordinary use is that furnished by the steady and constant flame of a flat-wicked

Lamp, fed with one of the best varieties of Paraffin oil. This (with its chimney-shade) should be so mounted on a stem rising from a secure base, as to be capable of adjustment to any height above the table; and on the same stem should also slide a telescope-arm having a bull's-eye condenser attached to it by a ball-and-socket joint, in such a manner as to be adjustable in any position in regard to the flame, and at the same time to be carried upwards or downwards with the lamp—an arrangement originally devised by Mr. Bockett (Fig. 108). It is preferable, however, to surround the glass chimney by a cylinder of porcelain, having a large aperture on one side for the passage of the light; and this may be advantageously blackened on the outside, contracted above into a cone, and furnished with a shade over the aperture (as in Mr. Swift's construction, Fig. 109), so that as little light as possible may enter the eye of the observer, except that which proceeds from the object. The lamp should be so hung as to be capable of being rotated on its own vertical axis; so that either the whole breadth of the flame, or its edge only, may be turned towards the mirror or condenser, according as diffused or concentrated light is required. In Mr. Swift's Lamp (Fig. 110), the Bull's-eye is mounted on a separate stem, capable both of vertical elevation and of horizontal adjustment, which rises from one end of an arm that is pivoted beneath the base of the brass cylinder that carries the lamp; and from the other end of this arm there rises a second stem, carrying a speculum, from which additional light may be reflected when desired. By rotating this arm on its pivot, the speculum and condenser are shifted together, so as to direct the full power of the flame wherever it may be required; an arrangement especially convenient for the illumination of opaque objects.—As it is often found extremely difficult to obtain an exact centering of the illuminating beam, when very high powers are employed, by mere hand-shiftings of the lamp and its condenser, Messrs. Dallinger and Drysdale, in the admirable investigations of whose results a summary will be given hereafter (Chap. XI.), have found great advantage from the use of a Lamp mounted on a base to which a traversing horizontal movement can be given in any direction by rectangular screws, and furnished with an upright standard carrying two racks, on which the lamp itself and the bull's-eye condenser can be separately raised or lowered by milled-head pinions. By this more exact method of adjustment, the observer is able, after a little experience

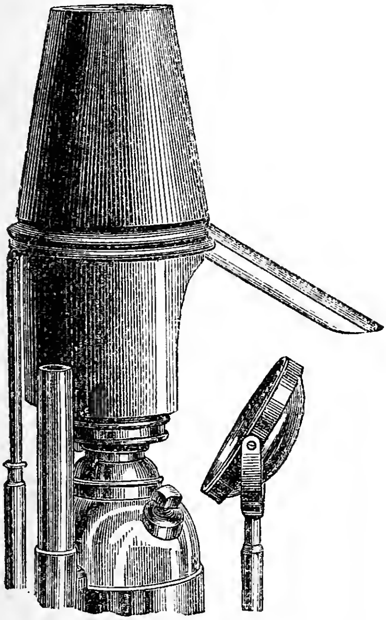
FIG. 108.



Bockett Lamp.

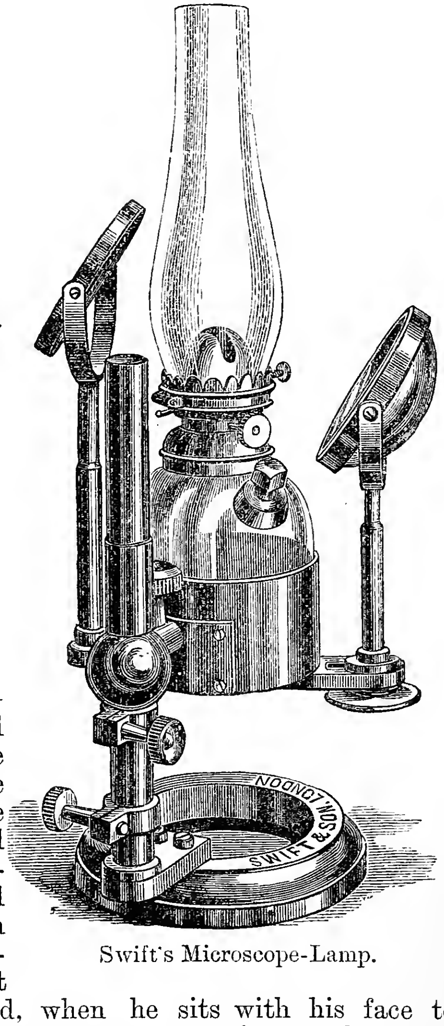
in its use, to *secure* that most perfect position of the flame and condenser, which ordinary hand-adjustment might not succeed in attaining until after a great expenditure of time and patience.*

Fig. 109.



Chimney and Shade of Swift's Microscope-Lamp.

Fig. 110.



Swift's Microscope-Lamp.

132. *Position of the Light.*—When the Microscope is used by daylight, it will usually be found most convenient to place it in such a manner that the light shall be at the left hand of the observer. It is most important that no light should enter his eye, save that which comes to it through the Microscope; and the access of direct light can scarcely be avoided, when he sits with his face to the light. Of the two sides, it is more convenient to have the light on the *left*; first, because it is not interfered with by the right hand, when this is employed in giving the requisite direction to the mirror, or in adjusting the illuminating apparatus;

* See "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. xv. (1876), p. 165.—As the directions given by these excellent observers for centering the illuminating beam are too long for citation, such as desire to profit by their experience must learn its results from their own account of them.

and secondly, because, as most persons in using a Monocular Microscope employ the right eye rather than the left, the projection of the nose serves to cut off those lateral rays, which, when the light comes from the right side, glance between the eye and the eye-piece. The *side-shades* fitted by Mr. Collins to the eye-pieces of his Harley Binocular (Fig. 49) may be advantageously employed with every instrument of that class.—When Artificial light is employed, the same general precautions should be taken. The Lamp should always be placed on the left side, unless some special reason exist for placing it otherwise; and if the Object under examination be *transparent*, the lamp should be placed at a distance from the eye about midway between that of the stage and that of the mirror. In the examination of objects of the greatest delicacy and difficulty, however, in which it is important to get rid of the reflection from the front surface of the Mirror, a rectangular Prism should be substituted for it, when the conditions of the observation necessitate the use of the Microscope in the vertical position; but when the instrument can be inclined, the Lamp may be most advantageously placed in the axis of the Achromatic Condenser or other Illuminator, so that its light may be transmitted to the object without intermediate reflexion. If, on the other hand, the Object be *opaque*, the Lamp should be at a distance about midway behind the eye and the stage; so that its light may fall on the object at an angle of about 45° with the axis of the Microscope.—The passage of direct rays from the flame to the eye should be guarded against by the interposition of the lamp-shade; and no more light should be diffused through the apartment, than is absolutely necessary for other purposes. If observations of a very delicate nature are being made, it is desirable, alike by daylight and by lamplight, to exclude all lateral rays from the eye as completely as possible; and this may be readily accomplished by means of a shade made like the upper part of a Mask, and lined with black cloth or velvet, which should be fixed on the ocular end of the Microscope.

133. *Care of the Eyes.*—Although most Microscopists who habitually work with the Monocular microscope acquire a habit of employing only *one* eye (generally the right), yet it will be decidedly advantageous to the beginner that he should learn to use either eye indifferently; since by employing and resting each alternately, he may work much longer without incurring unpleasant or injurious fatigue, than when he always employs the same.—Whether or not he do this, he will find it of great importance to acquire the habit of *keeping open the unemployed eye.* This, to such as are unaccustomed to it, seems at first very embarrassing, on account of the interference with the microscopic image, which is occasioned by the picture of surrounding objects formed upon the retina of the second eye; but the habit of restricting the attention to that impression only which is received through the microscopic eye, may generally be soon acquired; and when it has once been formed, all difficulty ceases. Those who find it unusually difficult to acquire this habit,

may do well to learn it in the first instance with the assistance of the shade just described; the employment of which will permit the second eye to be kept open without any confusion.—So much advantage, however, is derived from the use of the Binocular arrangement, either stereoscopic or non-stereoscopic, that the Author would strongly recommend its use to every observer, save in cases of exceptional difficulty. There can be no doubt that the habitual use of the Microscope, for many hours together, especially by lamp-light, and with high magnifying powers, has a great tendency to injure the sight. Every Microscopist who thus occupies himself, therefore, will do well, as he values his eyes, not merely to adopt the various precautionary measures already specified, but rigorously to keep to the simple rule of *not continuing to observe any longer than he can do so without fatigue.**

134. *Care of the Microscope.*—Before the Microscope is brought into use, the cleanliness and dryness of its glasses ought to be ascertained. If dust or moisture should have settled on the Mirror, this can be readily wiped off. If any spots should show themselves on the field of view, when it is illuminated by the mirror, these are probably due to particles adherent to one of the lenses of the Eye-piece: and this may be determined by turning the eye-piece round, which will cause the spots also to rotate, if their source lies in it. It may very probably be sufficient to wipe the upper surface of the eye-glass (by removing its cap), and the lower surface of the field-glass; but if, after this has been done, the spots should still present themselves, it will be necessary to unscrew the lenses from their sockets, and to wipe their inner surfaces; taking care to screw them firmly into their places again, and not to confuse the lenses of different eye-pieces. Sometimes the eye-glass is obscured by dust of extreme fineness, which may be carried off by a smart puff of breath; the vapour which then remains upon the surface being readily dissipated by rapidly moving the glass backwards and forwards a few times through the air. And it is always desirable to try this plan in the first instance; since, however soft the substance with which the glasses are wiped, their polish is impaired in the end by the too frequent repetition of the process. The best material for wiping glass is a piece of soft wash-leather, from which the dust it generally contains has been well beaten out.—If the Object-glasses be carefully handled, and kept in their

* The Author attributes to his rigorous observance of the above rule his entire freedom from any injurious affection of his visual organs, notwithstanding that, of the whole amount of Microscopic study which he has prosecuted for forty-five years past, a large proportion has been necessarily carried on by Artificial light, most of his daylight hours having been occupied in other ways. He has found the length of time during which he can 'microscopize' without the sense of fatigue, to vary greatly at different periods; half-an-hour's work being sometimes sufficient to induce discomfort, whilst on other occasions none has been left by three or four hours' almost continuous use of the instrument—his power of visual endurance being usually in relation to the vigour of his general system.

boxes when not in use, they will not be likely to require cleansing. One of the chief dangers, however, to which they are liable in the hands of an inexperienced Microscopist, arises from the neglect of precaution in using them with fluids; which, when allowed to come in contact wtih the surface of the outer glass, should be wiped off as soon as possible. In screwing and unscrewing them, great care should be taken to keep the glasses at a distance from the surface of the hands; since they are liable not only to be soiled by actual contact, but to be dimmed by the vaporous exhalation from skin which they do not touch. This dimness will be best dissipated by moving the glass quickly through the air. It will sometimes be found, on holding an Object-glass to the light, that particles either of ordinary dust, or more often of the black coating of the interior of the Microscope, have settled upon the surface of its back-lens; these are best removed by a clean and dry camel's-hair pencil. If any cloudiness or dust should still present itself in an object-glass, after its front and back surfaces have been carefully cleansed, it should be sent to the maker (if it be of English manufacture) to be taken to pieces, as the amateur will seldom succeed in doing this without injury to the work; the foreign combinations, however, being usually put together in a simpler manner, may be readily unscrewed, cleansed, and screwed together again. Not unfrequently an objective is rendered dim by the cracking of the cement by which the lenses are united, or by the insinuation of moisture between them; this last defect occasionally arises from a fault in the quality of the glass, which is technically said to 'sweat.' In neither of these cases has the Microscopist any resource, save in an Optician experienced in this kind of work; since his own attempts to remedy the defect are pretty sure to be attended with more injury than benefit.

135. *General Arrangement of the Microscope for Use.*—The inclined position of the instrument, already so frequently referred to, is that in which observation by it may be so much more advantageously carried-on than in any other, that recourse should always be had to it, unless particular circumstances render it unsuitable. The precise inclination that may prove to be most convenient will depend upon the 'build' of the Microscope, upon the height of the observer's seat as compared with that of the table on which the instrument rests, and lastly, upon the sitting-height of the individual; and it must be determined in each case by his own experience of what suits him best—that which he finds *most comfortable* being that in which he will be able not only to work the longest, but to see most distinctly.—The selection of the Objectives and Eye-pieces to be employed must be entirely determined by the character of the object. Large objects presenting no minute structural features should always be examined in the first instance by the *lowest* powers, whereby a general view of their nature is obtained; and since, with lenses of comparatively long focus and small angle of aperture, the precision of the focal

adjustment is not of so much consequence as it is with the higher powers, not only those parts can be seen which are exactly in focus, but those also can be tolerably well distinguished which are not precisely in that plane, but are a little nearer or more remote. When the general aspect of an object has been sufficiently examined through low powers, its details may be scrutinized under a higher amplification; and this will be required in the first instance, if the object be so minute that little or nothing can be made out respecting it save when a very enlarged image is formed. The power needed in each particular case can only be learned by experience; that which is most suitable for the several classes of objects hereafter to be described, will be specified under each head. In the general examination of the larger class of objects, the range of power that is afforded by Zeiss's Adjustable Low-power Objective (§ 159, I.) will often be found useful; whilst for the ready exchange of a low power for a higher one, great convenience is afforded by the Nose-piece (§ 96).

136. When the Microscopist wishes to augment his magnifying power, he has a choice between the employment of an Objective of shorter focus, and the use of a deeper Eye-piece. If he possess a complete series of Objectives, he will frequently find it best to substitute one of these for another without changing the Eye-piece for a deeper one; but if his 'powers' be separated by wide intervals, he will be able to break the abruptness of the increase in amplification which they produce, by using each Objective first with the shallower and then with the deeper Eye-piece. Thus, if a Microscope be provided only with two Objectives of 1-inch and 1-4th inch focus respectively, and with two Eye-pieces, one nearly double the power of the other, such a range as the following may be obtained—60, 90, 240, 360 diameters; or, with two Objectives of somewhat shorter focus, and with deeper Eye-pieces (as in some French and German instruments)—88, 176, 350, 700 diameters. In the examination of large Opaque objects having uneven surfaces, it is generally preferable to increase the power by the Eye-piece rather than by the Objective; thus a more satisfactory view of such objects may usually be obtained with a 3-inch or 2-inch Objective and the B Eye-piece, than with a $1\frac{1}{2}$-inch or 1-inch Objective and the A Eye-piece. The reason of this is, that in virtue of their smaller Angle of Aperture, the Objectives first named have a much greater amount of 'penetrating power' or 'focal depth' than the latter (§ 158, I.); and in the case just specified this quality is of the first importance. The use of the Draw-tube (§ 83) enables the Microscopist still further to vary the magnifying power of his instrument, and thus to obtain almost any exact number of diameters he may desire, within the limits to which he is restricted by the focal length of his Objectives. The advantage to be derived, however, either from 'deep Eye-piecing' or from the use of the Draw-tube, will mainly depend upon the quality of the Object-glass. For, if it be imperfectly corrected, its

errors are so much exaggerated, that more is lost in definition than is gained in amplification; whilst, if its apertures be small, the loss of light is an equally serious drawback. On the other hand, an Objective of perfect correction and adequate angle of aperture will sustain this treatment with so little impairment in the perfection of its image, that a magnifying power may be obtained by its use, such as, with an inferior instrument, can only be derived from an Objective of much shorter focus combined with a shallow Eyepiece.—The Author thinks it a great mistake, however, to attempt to make an Objective of *medium* power ordinarily do the work on which an Objective of *high* power should properly be employed. For not only can it not be brought up to this without such an increase of its angle of aperture as unfits it for its own proper work, but the 'deep eye-piecing' required cannot be had recourse to habitually without exposing the eyes to severe overstrain. The advantage of *low* Eye-pieces and *deep* Objectives, as compared with *deep* Eye-pieces and *low* Objectives, has been very well put by likening it to the comfort of reading *large* print without spectacles, or with spectacles suited to the sight, and reading *small* print with a magnifying-glass.

137. In making the *Focal Adjustment*, when low powers are used, it will scarcely be necessary to employ any but the *coarse adjustment*, or 'quick motion;' provided that the rack be well cut, the pinion work in it smoothly and easily, without either 'spring,' 'loss of time,' or 'twist,' and the milled-head be large enough to give the requisite leverage. All these are requisites which should be found in every well-constructed instrument; and its possession of them should be tested, like its freedom from vibration, by the use of high powers, since a really good coarse adjustment should enable the observer to 'focus' an Objective of 1-8th inch with precision.—What is meant by 'spring' is the alteration which may often be observed to take place on the withdrawal of the hand; the object which has been brought precisely into focus, and which so remains as long as the milled-head is between the fingers, becoming indistinct when the milled-head is let go. The source of this fault may lie either in the rack-movement itself, or in the general framing of the instrument, which is so weak as to allow of displacement by the mere weight or pressure of the hand: should the latter be the case, the 'spring' may be in great degree prevented by carefully abstaining from *bearing on* the milled-head, which should be simply *rotated* between the fingers.—By 'loss of time' is meant the want of sufficient readiness in the action of the pinion upon the rack, so that the milled-head may be moved slightly in either direction without affecting the body; thus occasioning a great diminution in the sensitiveness of the adjustment. This fault may sometimes be detected in Microscopes of the best original construction, which have gradually worked loose owing to the constancy with which they have been in employment; and it may often be corrected by tightening the screws that

bring the pinion to bear against the rack.—And by 'twist' it is intended to express that apparent movement of the object across the field, which results from a real displacement of the axis of the body to one side or the other, owing to a want of correct fitting in the working parts.* As this last fault depends entirely on bad original workmanship, there is no remedy for it; but it is one which most seriously interferes with the convenient use of the instrument, however excellent may be its optical performance.—In the use of the coarse adjustment with an Objective of short focus, extreme care is necessary to avoid bringing it down upon the object, to the injury of one or both; for although the spring with which the tube for the reception of the object-glass is furnished, whenever the 'fine adjustment' is immediately applied to this, takes off the violence of the crushing action, yet such an action, even when thus moderated, can scarcely fail to damage or disturb the object, and *may* do great mischief to the lenses. Where the fine adjustment is otherwise provided for, still greater care is of course required, unless a spring 'safety-tube' be provided, into which the Objectives are screwed.—It is here, perhaps, well to notice, for the guidance of the young Microscopist, that the *actual* distance between the Objective and the object, when a distinct image is formed, is always considerably less than the *nominal* focal length of the objective.—One more precaution it may be well to specify; namely, that either in changing one object for another, or in substituting one Objective for another, save when powers of such focal length are employed as to remove all likelihood of injury, the Body should have its distance from the Stage increased by the 'coarse adjustment.' This precaution is absolutely necessary when Objectives of short focus are in use, to avoid injury either to the lenses or to the object; and when it is habitually practised with regard to these, it becomes so much like an 'acquired instinct,' as to be almost invariably practised in other cases.

138. In obtaining an exact Focal Adjustment with Objectives of less than half-an-inch focus, it will be generally found convenient to employ the *fine adjustment* or 'slow motion;' and as recourse will frequently be had to its assistance for other purposes also, it is very important that it should be well constructed and in good working order. The points to be particularly looked-to in testing it, are for the most part the same with those already noticed in relation to the coarse movement. It should work smoothly and equably, producing that *graduated* alteration of the distance of the Objective from the object which it is its special duty to effect, without any jerking or irregularity. It should be so sensitive, that any movement of the milled-head should at once make

* In testing either the 'coarse' or the 'fine' adjustment for 'twist,' care should be taken that the light reflected from the mirror is *axial* not *oblique;* since, if the illuminating rays are *inclined* to the optic axis, the object, when thrown out of focus, will appear to vanish *laterally*, which it does not do (provided the adjustments work well) when illuminated axially.

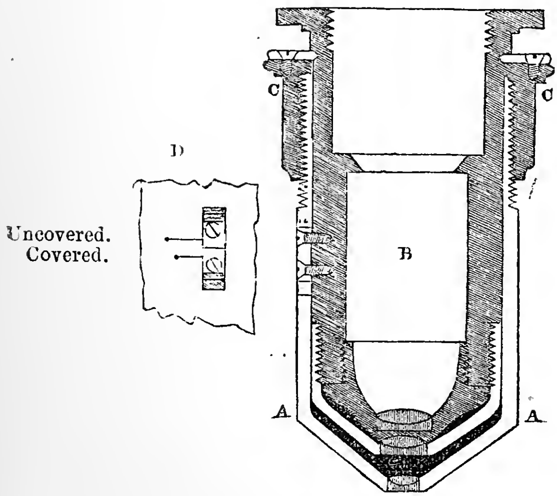
its action apparent by an alteration in the distinctness of the image, when high powers are employed, without any 'loss of time.'* And its action should not give rise to any twisting or displacing movement of the image, which ought not to be in the least degree disturbed by any number of rotations of the milled-head, still less by a rotation through only a few degrees.—One great use of this adjustment consists in bringing into view different *strata* of the object, and this in such a gradual manner that their connexion with one another shall be made apparent. Whether an Opaque or a Transparent object be under examination, only that part which is exactly in focus can be perfectly discerned under any power; and when high powers of large angular aperture are employed, this is the only part that can be seen at all. A minute alteration of the focus often causes so different a set of appearances to be presented, that, if this alteration be made abruptly, the relation of each to its predecessor can scarcely be even guessed at; and the gradual transition from the one to the other, which the 'slow motion' alone affords, is therefore necessary to the correct interpretation of either. To take a very simple case:—The transparent body of a certain animal being traversed by vessels lying in different planes, one set of these vessels is brought into view by one adjustment, another set by 'focussing' to a different plane; and the connexion of the two sets of vessels, which may be the point of most importance in the whole anatomy of the animal, may be entirely overlooked for want of a 'fine adjustment,' whose graduated action shall enable one to be traced continuously into the other. What is true even of low and medium powers, is of course true to a still greater degree as to high powers; for although the 'quick motion' *may* enable the observer to bring any stratum of the object into accurate focus, it is impossible for him by its means to secure that *transitional* 'focussing' which is often much more instructive than an exact adjustment at any one point. A clearer idea of the nature of a doubtful structure is, in fact, often derived from what is caught sight of *in the act* of changing the focus, than by the most attentive study and comparison of the different views obtained by any number of separate 'focussings.' The experienced Microscopist, therefore, whilst examining an object of almost any description, constantly keeps his finger upon the milled-head of the 'slow motion,' and watches the effect produced by its revolution upon every feature which he distinguishes; never leaving off until he be satisfied that he has scrutinized not only the entire *surface*, but the entire *thickness* of the object. It will often happen that, where different structural features present themselves on different planes, it

* It will sometimes happen that the 'slow motion' will seem not to act, merely because it has been so habitually worked in one direction rather than the other, that its screw had been turned too far. In that case, nothing more is required for its restoration to good working order, than turning the screw in the other direction, until it shall have reached about the middle of its range of action.

will be difficult or even impossible to determine with the Monocular microscope which of them is the nearer and which the more remote, unless it be ascertained by the use of the 'slow motion,' when they are successively brought into focus, whether the Objective has been moved *towards* or *away from* the object.* Even this, however, will not always succeed in certain of the most difficult cases, in which the difference of level is so slight as to be almost inappreciable; as, for instance, in the case of the markings on the siliceous valves of the Diatoms (Fig. 166.)

139. When Objectives of short focus and of wide angular aperture are in use, something more is necessary (save in the case of 'homogeneous-immersion' lenses, § 20), than exact focal adjustment; this being the *adjustment of the Objective* itself, which is required to neutralize the disturbing effect of the glass cover upon the course of the rays proceeding from the object (§ 17),—unless (as in the Objectives now commonly made for Students' Microscopes) they are constructed for working *only* with cover-glasses of a certain standard thickness. For such adjustment, it will be recollected, a power of altering the distance between the front pair and the remainder of the combination is required; and this power is obtained in the following manner:—The front pair of lenses is fixed into a tube (Fig. 111, A), which slides over an interior tube (B) by which the other two pairs are held; and it is drawn up or down by means of a collar (C), which works in a furrow cut in the inner tube, and upon a screw-thread cut in the outer, so that its revolution in the plane to which it is fixed by the one tube gives a vertical movement to the other. In one part of the outer tube an oblong slit is made, as seen at D, into which projects a small tongue screwed on the inner tube; at the side of the former two horizontal lines are engraved, one pointing to the word 'uncovered,' the other to the word 'covered;' whilst the latter is crossed by a horizontal mark, which is brought to coincide with either of the two lines by the

FIG. 111.



Section of Adjusting Object-Glass.

* It is in objects of this kind that the great advantage of the Stereoscopic Binocular arrangement makes itself most felt (§§ 30-40).

rotation of the screw-collar, whereby the outer tube is moved up or down. When the mark has been made to point to the line 'uncovered,' it indicates that the distance of the lenses of the object-glass is such as to make it suitable for viewing an object without any interference from thin glass; when, on the other hand, the mark has been brought by the revolution of the screw-collar into coincidence with the line 'covered,' it indicates that the front lens has been brought into such proximity with the other two, as to produce a 'positive aberration' in the Objective, fitted to neutralize the 'negative aberration' produced by the interposition of a glass cover of extremest thickness. But unless this correction be made, with the greatest precision, to the thickness of the particular cover in use, the enlargement of the Angle of Aperture, to which Opticians have of late applied themselves with such remarkable success, becomes worse than useless; being a source of diminished instead of increased distinctness in the details of the object, which are far better seen with an Objective of greatly inferior aperture, possessing no special adjustment for the thickness of the glass. The following general rule is given by Mr. Wenham for securing the most efficient performance of an Object-glass with any ordinary object:—"Select any dark speck or opaque portion of the object, and bring the outline into perfect focus; then lay the finger on the milled-head of the fine motion, and move it briskly backwards and forwards in both directions from the first position. Observe the expansion of the dark outline of the object, both when within and when without the focus. If the greater expansion, or coma, is when the object is *without* the focus, or farthest from the Objective, the lenses must be placed farther asunder, or towards the mark 'uncovered.' If the greater coma is when the object is *within* the focus, or nearest to the Objective, the lenses must be brought closer together, or towards the mark 'covered.' When the object-glass is in proper adjustment, the expansion of the outline is exactly the same both within and without the focus." A different indication, however, is afforded by such 'test-objects' as present (like the Podura-scale and the Diatomaceæ) a set of distinct dots or other markings. For "if the dots have a tendency to run into lines when the object is placed *without* the focus, the glasses must be brought closer together; on the contrary, if the lines appear when the object is *within* the focal point, the lenses must be farther separated." * When the Angle of Aperture is very wide, the difference in the aspect of any severe test under different adjustments becomes at once evident; markings which are very distinct when the correction has been exactly made, disappearing almost instantaneously when the screw-collar is turned a little way round.†

* See "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. ii. (1854), p. 138.

† Mr. Wenham remarks (loc. cit.), not without justice, upon the difficulty of making this adjustment even in the Objectives of our best Opticians; and he states that he has himself succeeded much better by making the *outer* tube the fixture, and by making the tube that carries the other pairs slide within

140. Although the *most perfect* correction required for each particular object (which depends not merely upon the thickness of its glass cover, but upon that of the fluid or balsam in which it may be mounted) can only be found by experimental trial, yet for all ordinary purposes, the following simple method, first devised by Mr. Powell, will suffice. The object-glass, adjusted to 'uncovered,' is to be 'focussed' to the object; the screw-collar is next to be turned until the surface of the glass cover comes into focus, as may be perceived by the spots or striæ by which it may be marked; the object is then to be again brought into focus by the 'slow motion.' The edge of the screw-collar being graduated, the particular adjustment which any object may have been found to require, and of which a record has been kept, may be made again without any difficulty.—By Messrs. Smith and Beck, however, who first introduced this graduation, a further use is made of it. By experiments such as those described in the last paragraph, the correct adjustment is first found for any particular object, and the number of divisions observed through which the screw-collar must be moved in order to bring it back to 0°, the position suitable for an uncovered object. The thickness of the glass cover must then be measured by means of the 'slow motion;' this is done by bringing into exact focus, first the object itself, and then the surface of the glass cover, and by observing the number of divisions through which the milled-head (which is itself graduated) has passed in making this change. A definite ratio between that thickness of glass, and the correction required in that particular Objective, is thus established; and this serves as the guide to the requisite correction for any other thickness, which has been determined in like manner by the 'slow motion.' Thus, supposing a particular thickness of glass to be measured by 12 divisions of the milled-head of the 'slow-motion,' and the most perfect performance of the Objective to be obtained by moving the screw-collar through 8 divisions, then a thickness of glass measured by 9 divisions of the milled-head would require the screw-collar to be adjusted to 6 divisions in order to obtain the best effect. The ratio between the two sets of divisions is by no means the same for different combinations; and it ought to be determined for each Objective by its maker, who will generally be the fittest judge of the best 'points' of his lenses; but when this ratio has been once ascertained, the adjustment for any thickness of glass with which the object may happen to be covered, is readily made by the Microscopist himself. Although this method appears somewhat more complex than that of Mr. Powell, yet it is more perfect; and when the

this; the motion being given by the action of an inclined slit in the revolving collar upon a pin that passes through a longitudinal slit in the outer tube, to be attached to the inner.—The admirable Objectives of the first-class American Opticians, are (the Author believes) always constructed so that the adjustment is effected by the movement of the *back* combinations, as long since recommended by Mr. Wenham.

ratio between the two sets of divisions has been once determined, the adjustment does not really involve more trouble.—Another use is made of this adjustment by Messrs. Smith and Beck; namely, to correct the disturbance in the performance of Objectives, which is made by the increase of distance between the Objective and the Eye-piece, occasioned by the use of the Draw-tube (§ 83). Accordingly, they mark a scale of inches on the Draw-tube (which is useful for many other purposes), and direct that for every inch the body is lengthened, the screw-collar of the Objective shall be moved through a certain number of divisions.

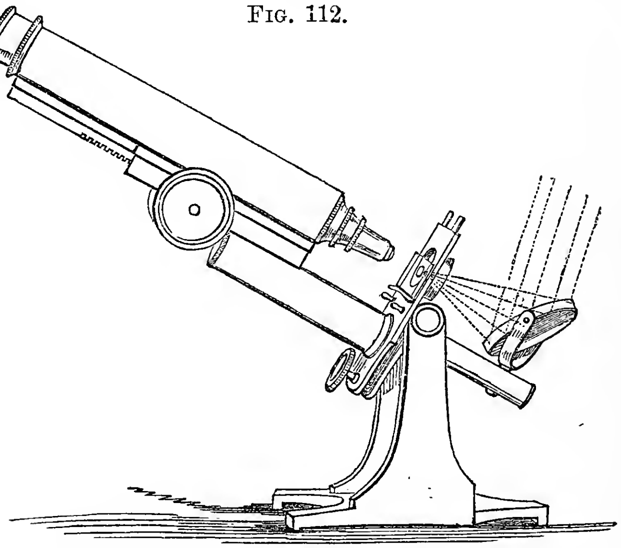
141. *Arrangement for Transparent Objects.*—If the Object be already 'mounted' in a slide, nothing more is necessary, in order to bring it into the right position for viewing it, than to lay the slide upon the Object-platform of the Stage, and so to support it by means of the spring-clips, sliding ledge, or other contrivance, that the part to be viewed is, as nearly as can be guessed, in the centre of the aperture of the stage, and therefore in a line with the axis of the body. If the object be not 'mounted,' and be of such a kind that it is best seen dry, it may be simply laid upon the glass Stage-plate (§ 120), the ledge of which will prevent it from slipping off when the Microscope is inclined; and a plate of thin glass may be laid over it for its protection, if its delicacy should seem to render this desirable. If, again, it be disposed to curl up, so that a slight pressure is needed to flatten or extend it, recourse may be had to the use of the Aquatic Box (§ 122) or the Compressor (§ 125), without the introduction of any liquid between the surfaces of glass. In a very large proportion of cases, however, either the objects to be examined are already floating in fluid or it is preferable to examine them in fluid, on account of the greater distinctness with which they may be seen. If such objects be minute, and the quantity of liquid be small, the drop is simply to be laid on a slip of glass, and covered with a plate of thin glass; if the object or the quantity of liquid be larger, it will be better to place it in a concave slide or cell; whilst, if the object have dimensions which render even this inconvenient, the Zoophyte Trough (§ 124) will afford the best medium for its examination.—In the case of minute living animals, whose movements it is desired to limit (so as to keep them within the field of view) without restraining them by compression, the Author has found the following plan extremely convenient. The drop of water taken up with the animal by the Dipping-tube being allowed to fall into a concave slide (Fig. 122), the whole of the superfluous water may be removed by the Syringe (§ 127), only just as much being left as will keep the animal alive. If the animal be very minute, it is convenient to effect this withdrawal by placing the slide on the stage of the Dissecting Microscope (§ 44), and working the Syringe under the magnifier; and it will be found after a little practice, that the complete command which the operator has over the movements of the piston, as well as over the place of the point of the syringe,

enables him to remove every drop of superfluous water without drawing the animal into the syringe. When, on the other hand, it is desired to isolate a particular animal from a number of others, the syringe may be conveniently used, after the same fashion, to draw it up and transfer it to another slide; care being, of course, taken that the syringe so employed has a sufficient aperture to receive it freely.—If it be wished to have recourse to *compression*, for the expansion or flattening of the object, this may be made upon the ordinary slide, by pressing down the thin-glass cover with a pointed stick; and this method, which allows the pressure to be applied at the spot where it is most required, will generally be found preferable for delicate portions of tissue which are easily spread out, and which, in fact, require little other compression than is afforded by the weight of the glass cover, and by the capillary attraction which draws it into proximity with the slide beneath. A firmer and more enduring pressure may be exerted by the dexterous management of a well-constructed Aquatic Box; and this method is peculiarly valuable for confining the movements of minute animals, so as to keep them at rest under the field of the microscope, without killing them. It is where a firm but graduated pressure is required, for the flattening-out of the bodies of thin semi-transparent animals, without the necessity of removing them from the field of the Microscope, that the Compressor is most useful.

142. In whatever way the Object is submitted to examination, it must be first brought approximately into position, and supported there, just as if it were in a mounted Slide. The precise mode of effecting this will differ, according to the particular plan of the instrument employed: thus, in some it is only the ledge itself that slides along the stage; in others it is a carriage of some kind, whereon the object-slide rests; in others, again, it is the entire platform itself that moves upon a fixed plane beneath. Having guided his object, as nearly as he can do by the unassisted eye, into its proper place, the Microscopist then brings his light (whether natural or artificial) to bear upon it, by turning the Mirror in such a direction as to reflect upon its under surface the rays which are received by itself from the sky or the lamp. The *concave* mirror is that which should always be first employed, the *plane* being reserved for special purposes; and it should bring the rays to convergence in or near the plane in which the object lies (Fig. 112). The distance at which it should be ordinarily set beneath the stage, is that at which it brings parallel rays to a focus; but this distance should be capable of elongation, by the lengthening of the stem to which the mirror is attached, since the rays diverging from a lamp at a short distance are not so soon brought to a focus. The correct focal adjustment of the Mirror may be judged by its formation of images of window-bars, chimneys, &c., upon any semi-transparent medium placed in the plane of the object. It is only, however, when small objects are being viewed

under high magnifying powers, that such a concentration of the light reflected by the Mirror is either necessary or desirable; for, with large objects seen under low powers, the field would not in

Fig. 112.



Arrangement of Microscope for Transparent Objects.

this mode be equally illuminated. The diffusion of the light over a larger area may be secured, either by shifting the Mirror so much above or so much below its previous position, that the pencil will fall upon the object whilst still converging, or after it has met and diverged; or, on the other hand, by the interposition of a disk of Ground-glass in the course of the converging pencil,—this method, which is peculiarly appropriate to lamp-light, being very easily had recourse to, if the diaphragm-plate have had its larger aperture fitted to receive such a disk (§ 98). The eye being now applied to the Eye-piece, and the body being 'focussed,' the object is to be brought into the exact position required by the use of the traversing movement, if the stage be provided with it; if not, by the use of the two hands, one moving the object-slide from side to side, the other pushing the ledge, fork, or holder that carries it, either forwards or backwards as may be required.—It is always to be remembered, in making such adjustments by the direct use of the hands, that, owing to the inverting action of the Microscope, the motion to be given to the object, whether lateral or vertical, must be precisely opposed to that which its image *seems* to require, save when Erectors (§§ 84, 86) are employed. When the object has been thus brought fully into view, the Mirror may require a more accurate adjustment. What should be aimed-at is the diffusion of a clear and equable light over the entire field; and the observer should not be satisfied until he has attained this end. If the field should be

darker on one side than on the other, the Mirror should be slightly turned in such a direction as to throw more light upon that side; perhaps in so doing, the light may be withdrawn from some part previously illuminated; and it may thus be found that the pencil is not large enough to light up the entire field. This may be owing to one of three causes: either the cone of rays may be received by the object too near to its focal apex, the remedy for which lies in an alteration in the distance of the Mirror from the stage; or, from the very oblique position of the Mirror, the cone is too much narrowed across one of its diameters, and the remedy must be sought in a change in the position either of the Microscope or of the Lamp, so that the face of the Mirror may not be turned so much away from the axis of vision; or, again, from the centre of the Mirror being out of the optic axis of the instrument, so that the illuminating cone is projected obliquely,—an error which can be rectified without the least difficulty. If the cone of rays should come to a focus in the object, the field is not unlikely to be crossed (in the day-time) by the images of window-bars or chimneys, or (at night) the form of the lamp-flame may be distinguished upon it; the former must be got rid of by a slight change in the inclination of the Mirror; and if the latter cannot be dissipated in the same way, the lamp should be brought a little nearer.

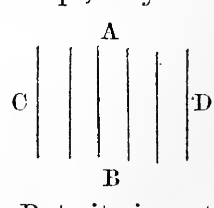
143. The equable illumination of the entire field having been thus obtained, the *quantity* of light to be admitted should be regulated by the Diaphragm-plate (§ 98). This must depend very much upon the nature of the object, and upon the intensity of the light. Generally speaking, the more transparent the object, the less light does it need for its most perfect display; and its most delicate markings are frequently only made visible, when the major part of the cone of rays has been cut off. Thus the movement of the *cilia*—those minute vibratile filaments with which almost every Animal is provided in some part of its organism, and which many of the humbler Plants also possess in the early stages of their existence—can only be discerned in many instances when the light is admitted through the smallest aperture. On the other hand, the less transparent objects usually require the stronger illumination which is afforded by a wider cone of rays; and there are some (such as semi-transparent sections of Fossil Teeth) which, even when viewed with low powers, are better seen with the intenser light afforded by the Achromatic Condenser.—In every case in which the object presents any considerable obstruction to the passage of the rays through it, great care should be taken to protect it entirely from *incident* light; since this extremely weakens the effect of that which is received into the Microscope by transmission. It is by daylight that this interference is most likely to occur; since, if the precautions already given (§ 132) respecting the use of lamp-light be observed, no great amount of light *can* fall upon the upper surface of the object. The observer will be warned that such an effect is being produced, by perceiving that there is a

want not only of brightness but of clearness in the image, the field being veiled, as it were, by a kind of thin vapour; and he may at once satisfy himself of the cause, by interposing his hand between the stage and the source of light, when the immediate increase of brilliancy and distinctness will reveal to him the source of the previous deficiency in both. Nothing more is necessary for its permanent avoidance, than the interposition of an opaque screen (blackened on the side towards the stage) between the window and the object; care being of course taken that the screen does not interfere with the passage of light to the mirror. Such a screen may be easily shaped and adapted either to be carried by the stage itself, or by the stand for the condenser; but it is seldom employed by Microscopists, as it interferes with access to the left side of the stage; and the interposition of the hand, so often as it may be needed, is more frequently had recourse to in preference, as the more convenient expedient. The young Microscopist who may be examining transparent objects by daylight, is recommended never to omit ascertaining whether the view which he may obtain of them is in any degree thus marred by incident light.

144. Although the illumination afforded by the Mirror alone is quite adequate for a very large proportion of the purposes for which the Microscope may be profitably employed (nothing else having been used by many of those who have made most valuable contributions to Science by means of this instrument), yet, when high magnifying powers are employed, and sometimes even when but a very moderate amplification is needed, great advantage is gained from the use of a Condenser. The form which has been described under the name of the *Webster Condenser* (§ 100) answers so well for most purposes, and may in addition be so easily converted into a 'black-ground' Illuminator, that the working Microscopist will find it convenient to keep it always in place; substituting an *Achromatic Condenser* of greater power (§ 99) only when specially needed. Special care is needed in the use of this last, both as to the coincidence of its optic axis with that of the Microscope itself, and as to its focal distance from the object. The *centering* may be most readily accomplished by so adjusting the distance of the Condenser from the Stage (by the rack-and-pinion action or the sliding movement with which it is always provided), that a sharp circle of light shall be thrown on any semi-transparent medium laid upon it; then, on this being viewed through the Microscope with an Objective of sufficiently low power to take in the whole of it, if this circle be not found concentric with the field of view, the axis of the Condenser must be altered by means of the milled-head tangent-screws with which it is provided. Or a cap with a minute central aperture may be fitted on the top of the Condenser, and this aperture centred in the field of an objective of medium power. Or, again, a diaphragm with a very minute central perforation may be placed at a little distance *beneath* the Achromatic Condenser, and the image of this may be brought into the

centre of the field of a 1-4th objective, which is the best arrangement when it is to be used with very high powers. The *focal adjustment* of the Condenser, on the other hand, must be made under the Objective which is to be employed in the examination of the object, by turning the Mirror in such a manner as to throw upon the visual image of the object (previously brought into the focus of the Microscope) an image of a chimney or a window-bar, if daylight be employed, or of the top, bottom, or edge of the lamp-flame, if lamp-light be in use; the focus of the condenser should then be so adjusted as to render the view of this as distinct as possible; and the direction of the Mirror should then be sufficiently changed to displace the image, and to substitute for it the clearest light that can be obtained. It will generally be found, however, that although such an exact focussing gives the most perfect results by Daylight, yet that by Lamp-light the best illumination is obtained when the Condenser is removed to a somewhat greater distance from the object, than that at which it gives a distinct image of the lamp. In every case, indeed, in which it is desired to ascertain the effect of *variety* in the method of illumination, the effects of alterations in the distance of the condenser from the object should be tried; as it will often happen that delicate markings become visible when the condenser is a little *out of* focus, which cannot be distinguished when it is precisely *in* focus. The regulation of the *amount of light* transmitted through the object is often of the very first importance; and no means of accomplishing this is so convenient as a Graduating or Iris Diaphragm (§ 98). For some objects of great transparence, the White-Cloud illumination (§ 109) may be had recourse to with advantage.

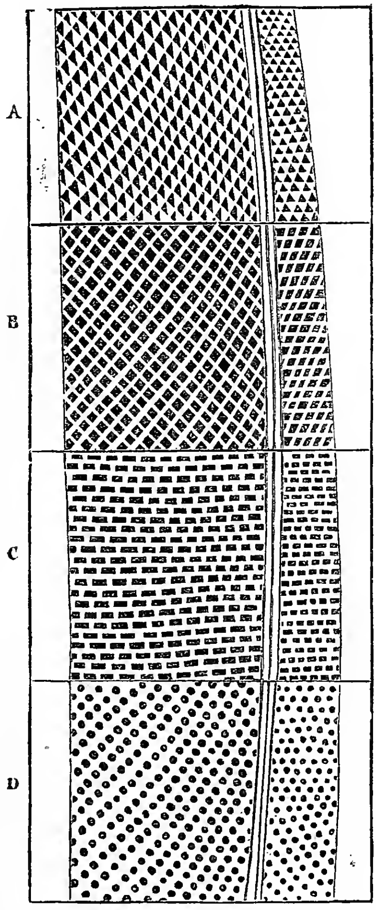
145. There are many Transparent Objects, however, whose peculiar features can only be distinctly made out, when they are viewed by light transmitted through them *obliquely* instead of axially; and this is especially the case with such as have their surfaces marked by very delicate and closely-approximated furrows, the *direction* of the oblique rays being then a matter of primary importance. Thus, suppose that an object be marked by longitudinal striæ too delicate to be seen by ordinary direct light; the oblique light most fitted to bring them into view will be that proceeding in either of the directions C or D; that which falls upon it in the directions A and B tending to obscure the striæ rather than to disclose them. But if the striæ should be due to furrows or prominences which have one side inclined and the other side abrupt, they will not be brought into view indifferently by light from C or from D, but will be shown best by that which makes the strongest shadow: hence, if there be a projecting ridge, with an abrupt side looking towards C, it will be best seen by light from D; whilst if there be a furrow with a steep bank on the side of C, it will be by light from that side that it will be best displayed. But it is not



at all unfrequent for the longitudinal striæ to be crossed by others; and these transverse striæ will usually be best seen by the light that is least favourable for the longitudinal; so that, in order to bring them into distinct view, either the illuminating pencil or the object must be moved a quarter round. The simplest mode of obtaining this end, is to make the Mirror capable of being turned into such a position as to reflect light into the object from one side and at a very oblique angle (which is best done by the Zentmayer arrangement); and to give the Stage a rotatory movement, so that the object may be presented to that light under every azimuth.

146. For objects of greater difficulty, however, it is better to have recourse to the Accessories already described (§§ 101–108), which are specially provided to furnish oblique illumination in the most effectual manner. A good example of the variety of appearances which the same object may exhibit, when illuminated from different azimuths, and with slight changes of focussing, is shown in Fig. 113, which represents portions of a valve of *Pleurosigma formosum* as seen under a power of 1300 diameters; the markings shown at A, B, and C being brought-out by *oblique* light in different directions, which, however, when carefully used, does not produce these erroneous aspects; whilst at D is shown the effect of *axial* illumination with the Achromatic Condenser.—It cannot be too strongly impressed on the young Microscopist, however, that the special value of *very oblique* illumination is limited to the resolution of 'test-objects;' and that for the ordinary purposes of *scientific* study and research, *axial* illumination is generally preferable. As in regard to the qualities of Objectives (§ 55), so in respect to Illumination, may it be confidently asserted that the solution of the most difficult Biological problems to which the Microscope has been yet applied, has been attained by arrangements by no means the most favourable to the discernment of the

Fig. 113.



Valve of *Pleurosigma formosum*, with portions A, B, C, D, showing diverse effects of Illumination.

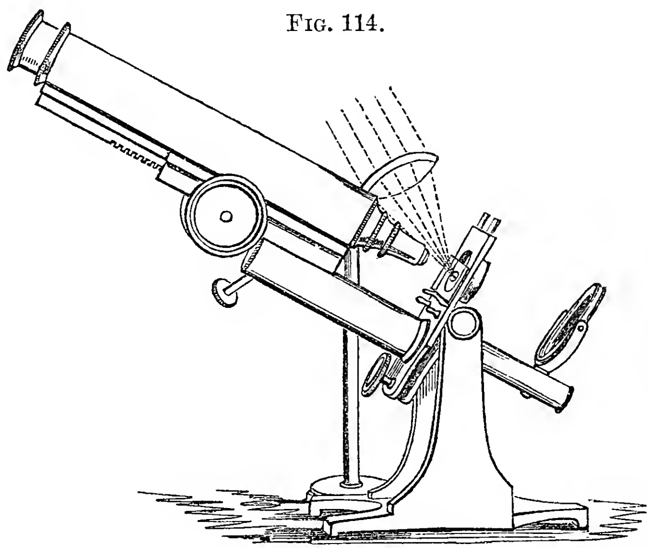
markings on Diatom-valves or the lines on Nobert's test-plate; and that, conversely, the arrangements specially effective for the 'resolution' of the most difficult *lined* 'tests,' have not, as yet, been shown to have much value in Biological investigation (§ 158).

147. There are many kinds of Transparent objects—especially such as either consist of thin plates, disks, or spicules of Siliceous or Calcareous matter, or contain such bodies—which are peculiarly well seen under the *Black-ground* illumination (§§ 104, 105); for not only does the brilliant luminosity which they then present, in contrast with the dark ground behind them, show their forms to extraordinary advantage; but this mode of illumination imparts to them an appearance of solidity which they do not exhibit by ordinary transmitted light (§ 103); and it also frequently brings out surface-markings which are not otherwise distinguishable. Hence, when any object is under examination that can be supposed to be a good subject for this method, the trial of it should never be omitted. For low powers, the use of the Spot-lens or the Webster Condenser with the central stop will be found sufficiently satisfactory; for the higher, the Paraboloid or the Reflex Illuminator should be employed.—Similar general remarks may be made respecting the examination of objects by *Polarized* light (§ 110). Some of the most striking effects of this kind of illumination are produced upon bodies whose particles have a crystalline aggregation; and hence it may often be employed with great advantage to bring such bodies into view, when they would not otherwise be distinguished: thus, for example, the *raphides* of Plants are much more clearly made out by its means, in the midst of the tissues, than they can be by any other. But the peculiar effects of Polarized light are also exerted upon a great number of other Organized substances, both animal and vegetable; and it often reveals differences in the arrangement or in the relative density of their component particles, the existence of which would not otherwise have been suspected; hence the Microscopist will do well to have recourse to it, whenever he may have the least suspicion that its use can give him an addditional power of discrimination.

148. *Arrangement for Opaque Objects.*—There are many objects of the most interesting character, the opacity of which entirely forbids the transmission of light through them, and of which, therefore, the *surfaces* only can be viewed by means of the *incident* rays which they *reflect.* These are, for the most part, objects of comparatively large dimensions, for which a low magnifying power suffices; and it is specially important, in the examination of such objects, not to use a lens of shorter focus than is absolutely necessary for discerning the details of the structure; since, the longer the focus of the Objective employed, the less is the indistinctness produced by inequalities of the surface, and the larger, too, may be its aperture, so as to admit a greater quantity of light, to the great improvement of the brightness of the image. Objectives of long focus are especially required in Microscopes that are to be used for

Educational purposes;* and an endless variety of 'common objects' suitable to these may be found by such as will take the trouble to search for them.—The mode of bringing Opaque objects under view will differ according to their 'mounting,' and to the manner in which it is desired to illuminate them. If the object be mounted in a 'slide' of glass or wood, upon a large Opaque surface, the slide must be laid on the stage in the usual manner, and the object brought as nearly as possible into position by the eye alone (§ 141). If it be not so mounted, it may be simply laid upon the glass Stage-plate, resting against its ledge; and the Diaphragm-plate must then be so turned as to afford it a black background, light being thrown upon it by a Condensing Lens or Bull's-eye placed as in Fig. 114, or, (still better) by Beck's Parabolic Speculum, which

Fig. 114.



Arrangement of Microscope for Opaque Objects.

gives a far better illumination by diffused daylight than can be obtained by any other means yet devised, and which is equally well adapted to lamp-light, when used in combination with the Bull's-eye (§ 114). Direct sunlight cannot be employed without the production of an injurious glare, and the risk of burning the object; but the sunlight reflected from a bright cloud is the best light possible. When a Condensing Lens is used, it should always be placed at right angles to the direction of the illuminating rays, and at a distance from the object which will be determined by the size of the surface to be illuminated and by the kind of light required.

* The makers of Educational Microscopes supply at a small cost, single (triplet) combinations of 3 inches, 2 inches, or $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch focus, or dividing combinations of half-inch and 1 inch, 1 inch and 2 inches, or $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch and 3 inches, which are quite adequate for ordinary requirements.

If the magnifying power employed be high, and the field of view be consequently limited, it will be desirable so to adjust the lens as to bring the cone of rays to a point upon the part of the object under examination; and this adjustment can only be rightly made whilst the object is kept in view under the Microscope, the Condenser being moved in various modes until that position has been found for it in which it gives the best light. If, on the other hand, the power be low, and it be desired to spread the light equably over a large field, the Condenser should be placed either within or beyond its focal distance; and here, too, the best position will be ascertained by trial. It will often be desirable also to vary both the obliquity of the light and the direction in which it falls upon the object; the aspect of which is greatly affected by the manner in which the shadows are projected upon its surface, and in which the lights are reflected from the various points of it. Many objects, indeed, which are distinguished by their striking appearance when the light falls upon them on one side, are entirely destitute both of brilliancy of colour and of sharpness of outline when illuminated from the opposite side. Hence it is always desirable to try the effect of changing the position of the object; which, if it be 'mounted,' may be first shifted by merely reversing the place of the two ends of the slide, and then, if this be not satisfactory, may be more completely as well as more gradually altered by making the object-platform itself to rotate. With regard to the obliquity of the illuminating rays, it is well to remark, that if the object be 'mounted' under a glass cover, and the incident rays fall at too great an angle with the perpendicular, a large proportion of them will be reflected, and the brilliancy of the object will be greatly impaired; and hence when Opaque objects are being examined under high powers with a very oblique illuminating pencil, they should always be *uncovered.*

149. The same general arrangement must be made when Artificial light is used for the illumination of Opaque objects; the Lamp being placed in such a position in regard to the Stage that its rays may fall in the direction indicated in Fig. 114, and these rays being collected and concentrated by the Condenser, as already directed. Since the rays proceeding from a lamp within a short distance are already diverging, they will not be brought by the Condenser to such speedy convergence as are the parallel rays of daylight; and it must, therefore, be farther removed from the object to produce the same effect. By modifying the distance of the Condenser from the lamp and from the object respectively, the cone of rays may be brought nearly to a focus, or it may be spread almost equably over a large surface, as may be desired. And the same effect may be produced by shifting the position of the Condenser, when the Parabolic Speculum is employed in combination with it. No more effective illumination can be desired for objects viewed under the low powers to which the Parabolic Speculum is adapted, than that which is afforded by this combination; the Bockett Lamp (Fig. 108)

supplying a most convenient means of using it, as the Author can testify from a very large experience. In the illumination of Opaque objects, Artificial light has the advantage over ordinary daylight, of being more easily concentrated to the precise degree, and of being more readily made to fall in the precise direction, that may be found most advantageous. Moreover, the contrast of light and shadow will be more strongly marked when no light falls upon the object except that proceeding from the Lamp used for its illumination, than it can be when the shadows are partially lightened by the rays which fall upon the object from every quarter, as must be the case if it be viewed by daylight.—If a more concentrated light be required, the flame of the lamp may be turned edgewise to the object, and the small Condensing-lens may be used in combination with the Bull's-eye; being so placed as to receive the cone projected by it, and to bring its rays to a more exact convergence. It was in this way that Mr. Beck obtained the views of the *Podura*-scale given in Plate II., Figs. 4, 5. In this manner very minute bodies may be viewed as Opaque objects under high magnifying powers, provided that the brasswork of the extremities of the Objectives be so bevelled-off as to allow the illuminating cone to have access to the object. As none but a very oblique illumination, however, can be thus obtained, the view of the object will be by no means complete, unless it be supplemented by that which may be obtained by means of the Vertical Illuminator (§ 116), which supplies for high powers the kind of illumination that is given by the Lieberkühn for the lower.

150. There are many Opaque objects, such as *Foraminifera*, which it is desirable to view from all sides, in order that their features may be completely made out. This may be readily done with objects mounted in slides, when the Microscope is provided with the Zentmayer stage, by inclining the stage to one side or the other (first taking care that the object is well secured upon it), and then giving rotation to the object-platform. For such objects as can be conveniently attached to small disks, Beck's Disk-holder (Fig. 94), affords by far the most convenient and effective mode of presenting them in every variety of aspect; but the disks may also be held by attached pins, either in the Stage-forceps, or by the insertion of the pins into the cork-box at its other end (§ 118), a variety of movements being given in either case by turning the forceps in its tube. So, again, many small objects, such as parts of Insects, may be grasped in the Stage-forceps itself, and, by a little care in manipulation, each aspect may be brought into view successively. In either of these cases, the Lieberkühn may be employed for their illumination; and light of considerable obliquity may be obtained by its means, either by turning the Mirror out of the axis, or by covering part of the reflecting surface of the Lieberkühn by a cap, or by a combination of both methods. Whenever the Lieberkühn is employed, care must be taken that the direct light from the Mirror is entirely stopped-out by the interposition of a 'dark well' or of a black disk, of such a size as

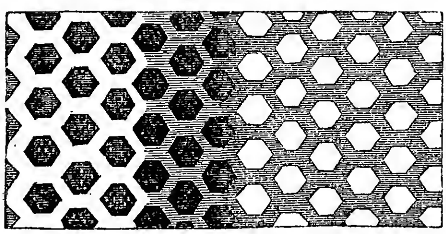
to *fill* the field given by the particular Objective employed, but not to pass much beyond it.—Opaque objects that are permanently mounted either upon cardboard disks, or in the slides specially provided for them, may be presented to the Microscope in a considerable variety of directions by means of Morris's Object-holder (Fig. 95); which, however, can only be employed with side-illumination. If it be desired to make the most advantageous use of this appliance, objects mounted in slides should be so placed that the parts to be brought into view by its tilting movement may look towards the long edges of the slide; since it is obvious that a much greater inclination may be given to it in either of these directions, than in the direction of either of its extremities.

151. *Errors of Interpretation.*—The correctness of the conclusions which the Microscopist will draw regarding the nature of any object, from the visual appearances which it presents to him when examined in the various modes now specified, will necessarily depend in a great degree upon his previous experience in Microscopic observation, and upon his knowledge of the class of bodies to which the particular specimen may belong. Not only are observations of *any* kind liable to certain fallacies, arising out of the previous notions which the observer may entertain in regard to the constitution of the objects or the nature of the actions to which his attention is directed, but even the most practised observer is apt to take no note of such phenomena as his mind is not prepared to appreciate. Errors and imperfections of this kind can only be corrected, it is obvious, by general advance in scientific knowledge; but the history of them affords a useful warning against hasty conclusions drawn from a too cursory examination. If the history of almost *any* scientific investigation were fully made known, it would generally appear that the stability and completeness of the conclusions finally arrived-at had only been attained after many modifications, or even entire alterations, of doctrine. And it is, therefore, of such great importance as to be almost essential to the correctness of our conclusions, that they should not be finally formed and announced until they have been tested in every conceivable mode. It is due to Science that it should be burdened with as few false facts and false doctrines as possible. It is due to other truth-seekers that they should not be misled, to the great waste of *their* time and pains, by *our* errors. And it is due to ourselves that we should not commit our reputation to the chance of impairment, by the premature formation and publication of conclusions, which may be at once reversed by other observers better informed than ourselves, or may be proved to be fallacious at some future time, perhaps even by our own more extended and careful researches. The *suspension of the judgment, whenever there seems room for doubt,* is a lesson inculcated by all those Philosophers who have gained the highest repute for practical wisdom; and it is one which the Microscopist cannot too soon learn, or too constantly practise.—Besides these general warnings, however, certain

special cautions should be given to the young Microscopist, with regard to errors into which he is liable to be led, even when the very best instruments are employed.

152. Errors of interpretation arising from the imperfection of the *focal adjustment* are not at all uncommon amongst young Microscopists. With lenses of high power, and especially with those of large angular aperture, it very seldom happens that all the parts of an object, however minute and flat it may be, can be in focus together; and hence, when the focal adjustment is exactly made for one part, everything that is not in exact focus is not only more or less indistinct, but is often wrongly represented. The indistinctness of outline will sometimes present the appearance of a pellucid border, which, like the diffraction-band, may be mistaken for actual substance. But the most common error is that which is produced by the reversal of the lights and shadows resulting from the refractive powers of the object itself; thus, the bi-concavity of the blood-disks of Human (and other Mammalian) Blood occasions their centres to appear *dark* when in the focus of the Microscope, through the divergence of the rays which it occasions; but when they are brought a little within the focus by a slight approximation of the object-glass, the centres appear brighter than the peripheral parts of the disks. An opposite reversal presents itself in the markings of certain *Diatoms*, which, like *Pleurosigma angulatum*, present, when exactly focussed, the aspect of rows of hemispherical beads (Fig. 166, A). When the surface is viewed a little inside the focus, its aspect is that shown at A, Fig. 115; whilst, when the surface is slightly beyond the focus (B), the hexagonal areolæ are dark, and the intervening partitions light. — The *experienced* Microscopist will find in the optical effects produced by variations of focal adjustment the most certain indications in regard to the nature of such inequalities of surface as are too minute to be made apparent by the use of the Stereoscopic Binocular. For superficial *elevations* must necessarily appear brightest when the distance between the Objective and the object is *increased*, whilst *depressions* must appear brightest when that distance is diminished. — The Student should be warned against supposing that, in all cases, the most *positive* and *striking* appearance is the truest; for this is often not the case. Mr. Slack's *optical illusion*, or *silica-crack slide*,* illustrates an error of this description. A drop of water holding colloid silica in

B FIG. 115. A



False hexagonal areolation of *Pleurosigma angulatum*, as seen in a Photograph magnified to 15,000 diameters.

* "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. v. (1872), p. 14.

solution is allowed to evaporate on a glass slide, and, when quite dry, is covered with thin glass to keep it clean. The silica deposited in this way is curiously cracked; and the *finest* of these cracks can be made to present a very positive and deceptive appearance of being raised bodies like glass threads. It is also easy to obtain diffraction-lines at their edges, giving an appearance of duplicity to that which is really single.

153. A very important and very frequent source of error, which sometimes operates even on experienced Microscopists, lies in the refractive influence exerted by certain peculiarities in the internal structure of objects upon the rays of light transmitted through them; this influence being of a nature to give rise to appearances in the image, which suggest to the observer an idea of their cause that may be altogether different from the reality. Of this fallacy we have a 'pregnant instance' in the misinterpretation of the nature of the *lacunæ* and *canaliculi* of Bone, which were long supposed to be solid corpuscles with radiating filaments of peculiar opacity, instead of being, as is now universally admitted, minute chambers with diverging passages excavated in the solid osseous substance. For, just as the convexity of its surface will cause a transparent cylinder to show a bright axial band,* so will the concavity of the internal surfaces of the cavities or tubes hollowed-out in the midst of highly-refracting substances, occasion a divergence of the rays passing through them, and consequently render them so dark that they are easily mistaken for opaque solids. That such is the case with the so-called 'bone corpuscles,' is shown by the effect of the infiltration of Canada balsam through the osseous substance; for when this fills up the excavations, being nearly of the same refractive power with the bone itself, it obliterates them altogether.—So, again, if a person who is unaccustomed to the use of the Microscope should have his attention directed to a preparation mounted in liquid or in balsam that might chance to contain *air-bubbles,* he will be almost certain to be so much more strongly impressed by the appearances of these than by that of the object, that his first remark will be upon the number of strange-looking black rings which he sees, and his first inquiry will be in regard to their meaning.

154. Although no experienced Microscopist could now be led astray by such obvious fallacies as those alluded to, it is necessary to notice them as warnings to those who have still to go through the same education. The best method of learning to appreciate the class of appearances in question, is the comparison of the aspect of globules of Oil in water, with that of globules of Water in oil, or of bubbles of Air in water or Canada balsam. This comparison may be very readily made by shaking up some oil with water to which a little gum has been added, so as to form an

* This was the appearance which gave rise to the erroneous notion that long prevailed amongst Microscopic observers, and still lingers in the Public mind, of the *tubular* structure of the *Human Hair.*

emulsion; or by simply placing a drop of oil of turpentine (coloured by magenta or carmine) and a drop of water together on a slip of glass, laying a thin-glass cover upon them, and then moving the cover several times backwards and forwards upon the slide. Now when such a mixture is examined with a sufficiently high magnifying power, all the globules present nearly the same appearance, namely, dark margins with bright centres; but when the test of alteration of the focus is applied to them, the difference is at once revealed; for whilst the globules of Oil surrounded by water become *darker* as the object-glass is *depressed*, and *lighter* as it is *raised*, those of Water surrounded by oil become *more luminous* as the object-glass is *depressed*, and *darker* as it is *raised*. The reason of this lies in the fact that the high refracting power of the Oil causes each of its globules to act like a double-*convex* lens of very short focus; and as this will bring the rays which pass through it into convergence *above* the globule (*i.e.*, between the globule and the Objective), its brightest image is given when the object-glass is removed somewhat farther from it than the exact focal distance of the object. On the other hand, the globule of Water in oil, or the minute bubble of air in water or balsam, acts, in virtue of its inferior refractive power, like a double-*concave* lens; and as the rays of this diverge from a virtual focus *below* the globule (*i.e.*, between the globule and the mirror), the spot of greatest luminosity will be found by causing the object-glass to approach *within* the proper focus. A thorough mastery of these appearances is very important in the study of the 'protoplasm' of Plants—the 'sarcode' of Animals,—which includes oil-particles, together with spaces occupied by a watery fluid, which (having been at one time supposed to be *void*) are known as 'vacuoles.'

155. Among the sources of fallacy by which the young Microscopist is liable to be misled, one of the most curious is the *movement* exhibited by very minute particles of nearly all bodies that are sufficiently finely divided, when suspended in water or other fluids. This movement was first observed in the fine granular particles which exist in great abundance in the contents of the Pollen-grains of plants (sometimes termed the *fovilla*), and which are set free by crushing them; and it was imagined that they indicated the possession of some special vital endowment by these particles, analogous to that of the Spermatozoa of animals. In the year 1827, however, it was announced by Dr. Robert Brown that numerous other substances, Organic and Inorganic, when reduced to a state of equally minute division, exhibit a like movement, so that it cannot be regarded as indicative of any endowment peculiar to the fovilla granules; and subsequent researches have shown that there is no known exception to the rule that such motion takes place in the particles of all substances, though some require to be more finely divided than others before they will exhibit it. The closer the conformity between the specific gravity of the solid particles and that of the liquid, the less minute need be that reduction in

their size which is a necessary condition of their movement: and thus Carmine, Indigo, or Gamboge rubbed up with water, show it extremely well; whilst the particles of Metals, which are from seven to twenty times as heavy as water, require to be reduced to a minuteness many times greater, before they will exhibit it. The movement is chiefly of an oscillatory kind; but the particles also rotate backwards and forwards upon their axes, and gradually change their places in the field of view. The movement of the smallest particles is the most energetic, and the largest (exceeding 1–5000th of an inch) are quite motionless, whilst those of intermediate size move with comparative inertness. A drop of common ink which has been exposed to the air for some weeks, or a drop of fine clay (such as the prepared *kaolin* used by Photographers) shaken-up with water, is recommended by Prof. Jevons,* who has recently studied this subject, as showing the movement (which he designates *pedesis*) extremely well. But none of the particles he has examined are so active as those of pumice-stone that has been ground-up in an agate mortar; for these are seen under the microscope to leap and swarm with an incessant quivering movement, so rapid that it is impossible to follow the course of a particle which probably changes its direction of motion 15 or 20 times in a second. The distance through which a particle moves at any one bound is usually less than 1–5000th of an inch. This 'Brownian movement' (as it is commonly termed) is not due to evaporation of the liquid: for it continues, without the least abatement of energy, in a drop of aqueous fluid that is completely surrounded by oil, and is therefore cut off from all possibility of evaporation; and it has been known to continue for many years in a small quantity of fluid enclosed between two glasses in an air-tight case. And, for the same reason, it can scarcely be connected with chemical change. But the observations of Prof. Jevons (loc. cit.) show that it is greatly affected by the admixture of various substances with water; being, for example, increased by a small admixture of gum, while it is checked by an extremely minute admixture of sulphuric acid or of various saline compounds, these (as Prof. J. points out) being all such as increase the conducting power of water for Electricity. The rate of subsidence of finely-divided clays or other particles suspended in water, thus greatly depends upon the activity of their 'Brownian movement;' for, when this is brought to a stand, the particles aggregate and sink, so that the liquid clears itself.—In any case in which the motions of very minute particles, of whatever kind, are in question, it is necessary to make allowance for this 'molecular' movement; and the young Microscopist will therefore do well to familiarize himself with its ordinary characters, by the careful observation of it in such cases as those just named, and in any others in which he may meet with it.†

* "Quarterly Journal of Science," N.S., Vol. viii. (1878), p. 172.

† See also the Rev. J. Delsaulx "On the Thermo-Dynamic Origin of the Brownian Motions" in "Monthly Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," Vol. xviii. (1877),

*

156. *Diffraction.*—The course of Light-rays is altered not only by *refraction* when they pass from one transparent medium into another, and by *reflexion* when they fall on polished surfaces which they do not enter, but also by *inflexion* at the edges of objects by which they pass; and as the differently coloured rays which altogether make up white light are affected by such inflexion in different degrees, they are separated by it (as by refractive 'dispersion') into coloured bands; the phenomenon being altogether known as *diffraction*. This may be made evident by causing a beam of sunlight to enter a darkened room through a very narrow slit, and to fall on a white screen; for the narrow line of white light will show a border of coloured fringes, which become wider as the slit is narrowed; and if these fringes be viewed through a piece of coloured glass, which allows only rays of its own colour to pass, they will appear as a succession of bands alternately bright and dark. This alternation is produced by the *interference* of the Light-waves; just as the alternations of sound and comparative silence termed 'beats,' which are heard when two slightly different tones are being sounded together, are due to the interference of the Sound-waves.* The coloured fringes are produced by the superposition of all these bands.—When, again, a small opaque plate of any substance is interposed in the course of the pencil of solar light admitted into a darkened room through a very small hole in a card, or diverging from the point at which it has been collected by a convex lens of short focus, the shadow thrown by it on the screen will be surrounded by a series of coloured fringes, and the shadow itself will be larger than the geometrical shadow.—But, further, if a piece of glass be ruled by a diamond with parallel lines, some hundreds or thousands to an inch, so as to form what is called a 'grating,' and the narrow beam proceeding from the slit be looked-at through this grating (so held that the direction of its lines is parallel to that of the slit), a number of spectra come into view, ranged at nearly equal distances on both sides of the slit.† Now, it is manifest that when a beam of light is made to pass through an object that is being examined Microscopically, the light and shade in the picture seen by the eye must be occasioned by the greater or less transparence of the different parts of that object; and that, wherever there are definite lines or margins sufficiently opaque to throw a definite shadow, such shadow must be bordered more or less obviously by 'interference' or 'diffraction' spectra, especially in the

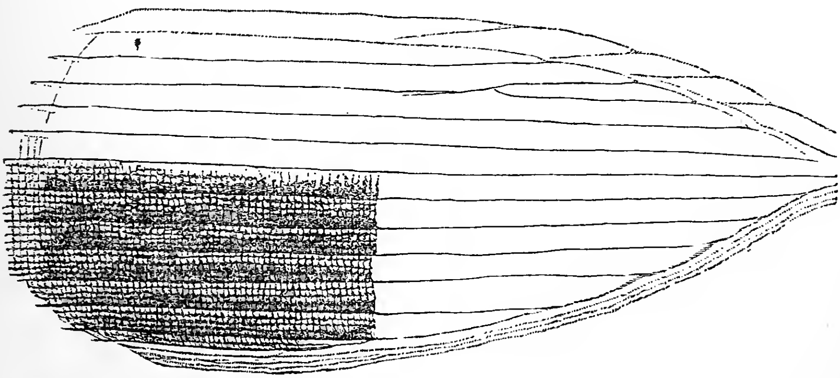
p. 1; and Dr. W. M. Ord "On some Causes of Brownian Movements" in "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. ii. (1879), p. 656.

* The colours of thin plates,—as seen when the sun shines on a soap-bubble or on a film of oil spread out over a surface of water—or when we look at a window through two glasses separated by an attenuated film of air,—are familiar examples of 'interference-fringes,' which, when displayed annularly, are known as 'Newton's rings.'

† Such 'gratings' are now much used in Spectroscopic observation; and afford the best means of determining the wave-lengths of the rays of the several parts of the spectrum.

case of objects having strongly-marked lines with very transparent intermediate spaces. There are many objects of great delicacy, in which 'diffraction-bands' are liable to be mistaken for indications of actual substance; whilst, on the other hand, the presence of an actual substance of extreme transparence may sometimes be doubted or denied, through its image being attributed to diffraction. No rules can be given for the avoidance of such errors; since they can only be escaped by the discriminating power which education and habit confer on the experienced Microscopist.—A good example of this kind is afforded by the minute beading presented in the scales of the Gnat and Mosquito (Fig. 116). These scales are composed of a very delicate double membrane, strengthened by longitudinal ribs on either side, those of the opposite sides uniting at the broad end of the scale, where they generally project as bristle-like appendages beyond the intermediate membrane; and they are crossed transversely by fine markings, which are probably ridge-like corrugations of their membrane, these also existing on both surfaces of the scale. The attention of Dr. Woodward having been drawn by Dr. Anthony to the presence in these scales of *three uniform parallel rows of beads in every interspace between two adjoining ribs*, he was at first inclined to believe that the markings are real, representing an actual structure in the scale; but having obtained an excellent Photograph of it by monochromatic sun-light, under a

FIG. 116.



Scale of *Gnat* showing beaded markings; photographed by Dr. Woodward.

power of 1,350 diameters, he was led to alter his opinion, and to regard them as produced by the crossing of the transverse markings by *longitudinal diffraction-lines, conditioned by the longitudinal ribs and parallel to them.** His chief reasons for so regarding them were (1), that "the longitudinal diffraction-lines are clearly seen "alike in the Microscopic image and in the Photographs, to extend

* "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. xv. (1876), p. 253.

"into empty space beyond the contour of the scales, almost as far as "the ends of the bristles in which the parallel ribs terminate;" and (2), "that they vary in number with varying obliquity of illumi-"nation, so that in the same scale two, three, four, and five rows of "beads can be seen, and photographed at pleasure, in every inter-"costal space." The true appearance, Dr. Woodward considers, is given when the Achromatic Condenser is so adjusted that its light is either central or slightly oblique in the longitudinal direction of the scale.

157. The recent researches of Prof. Abbe of Jena appear to have conclusively proved that Diffraction has a most important share, previously altogether unsuspected, in the formation of the Microscopic images of very closely approximated lines or other markings, in objects viewed under high magnifying powers of large Angular aperture.—All that has been hitherto said of the formation of Microscopic images, relates to such as are produced, in accordance with the laws of *refraction*, by the alteration in their course which the Light-rays undergo in their passage through the lenses interposed between the object and the eye. These *dioptric* images, when formed by lenses free from Spherical and Chromatic aberration, are *geometrically correct pictures*, truly representing the appearances which the objects themselves would present, were they enlarged to the same scale, and viewed under similar illumination. And we are fully justified, therefore, in drawing from such Microscopic images (provided that they are free from diffraction-spectra) the same conclusions in regard to the structure of the objects they picture, as we should draw from the direct vision of actual objects having the same dimensions. There is, however, an optical limit as to the completeness of such images in regard to minute detail; as it appears from the theoretical researches of Profrs. Helmholtz and Abbe, that no amount of magnifying power can separate *dioptrically* two lines, apertures, or markings of any kind, not more than 1-2500th of an inch apart. The visual separation or 'resolution' of more closely approximated lines or other markings is entirely the result of *diffraction;* the Objective receiving and transmitting, not only the ordinary dioptric rays, but the 'inflected' rays whose course has been altered in their course *through* the object by some peculiarity in the disposition of its particles. These rays, when acted-on by the Objective, produce 'diffraction-spectra;' the number and relative position of which bear a relation to the structural arrangement on which their production depends. If the Objective be perfectly corrected, and all the diffraction-spectra lie within its field, they will be re-united by the Eye-piece to form a secondary or 'diffraction' image, lying in the same focal plane with the dioptric image, and coinciding with it, while filling up its outlines by supplying intermediate details. But where the markings (of whatever nature) are so closely approximated as to produce a wide dispersion of the interference-spectra, only a part of them may fall within the range of the Objective; and the re-combination of these

may produce a diffraction-image differing more or less completely (perhaps even totally) from the real structure; whilst, if they should lie entirely outside the field of the Objective, no secondary or diffraction-image will be produced. Thus, whilst the dioptric image represents the actual object, a diffraction-image formed by the reunion of some of the interference-spectra is only an optical expression of the result of their partial re-combination, which may represent something entirely different from the real structure;—the *same* arrangement of lines (for example) being presented to the eye by *differently*-lined surfaces, and *different* arrangements by *similarly*-lined surfaces, according to the numbers and positions of the re-united spectra.*—This doctrine, originally based on elaborate theoretical investigations in connection with the 'Undulatory Theory of Light,' has been so fully borne out by experimental inquiries instituted to test it, and is in such complete harmony with the most certain experiences of Microscopists, that its truth scarcely admits of doubt. Although any attempt to explain its theory in a Treatise like the present must necessarily be altogether futile, yet a selection from the experiments by which Prof. Abbe has verified it, will not only assist in the comprehension of the doctrine, but will enable every Microscopist to satisfy himself of their correctness.

A 'grating' should be provided, ruled alternately with long and with short lines, as in Fig. 117, A; the lines being traced with a diamond-point on a film of silver of extreme tenuity deposited on a thin-glass cover; and the ruled surface being cemented to an ordinary glass slide with Canada balsam.† The 'adapter' ordinarily used for rotating the analysing prism of the Polariscope between the Objective and the Microscope-body, should be fitted with a small tube for the introduction of diaphragms with varied slits, so that these may be rotated immediately behind the back combination of the Objective.—The 'grating' being placed on the Stage of the Microscope, illuminated from the mirror, and focussed under a 1-inch Objective, so as to show the ordinary microscopic image of its ruled surface as at A, the eye-piece is removed, and the observer, looking into the body of the instrument, and changing the place of his eyes, sees two rows of spectra, each having a central circle, with ovals on either side of it (C). The central circle is bright and colourless; while each of the ovals shows the colours of the solar spectrum, with the blue always towards the centre. These ovals are 'diffraction-spectra;' of which the four closely approximated pairs in the *upper* row are formed by the *wider* lines of the single ruling, and the two pairs in the *lower* row (which are at double the distance of the preceding) by the *closer* lines of the double ruling.

* The reader may, perhaps, be aided in comprehending Prof. Abbe's doctrine by the following analogy:—When a solar spectrum is projected by a prism on a white surface, its entire re-combination by a convex lens will reproduce a beam of white light. But, if only certain parts of the spectrum be thus recombined, the beam will have a colour dependent upon the selection.

† In the grating used by Mr. Stephenson ("Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. xvii., p. 83), the lines in the upper half were about 1,790 to the inch, and in the lower about 3,580.

The following experiments show (1) that the dioptric image, when viewed by the eye-piece separately from all diffraction-spectra, gives no Microscopic representation at all of the lined surface; whilst (2) by varying the combinations of the diffraction-spectra, the lineation shown in the Microscopic image of the ruled surface may be partially or completely changed.

Experiment 1.—If, in the first place, a diaphragm with a single diametric slit (B) be so placed immediately behind the Objective, that the slit is *parallel* to the direction of the ruled lines—thus giving passage to the direct rays forming the dioptric image, but excluding all diffraction-spectra—the field seen through the replaced eye-piece shows *no lineation whatever*, the 'grating' being replaced by a plain silver band. Yet, if the diaphragm be turned a quarter round, so that the slit lies *transversely* to the lines, and admits the pairs of diffraction-spectra in each row that lie nearest the centre, *the lineation reappears, as it actually is in the grating.*

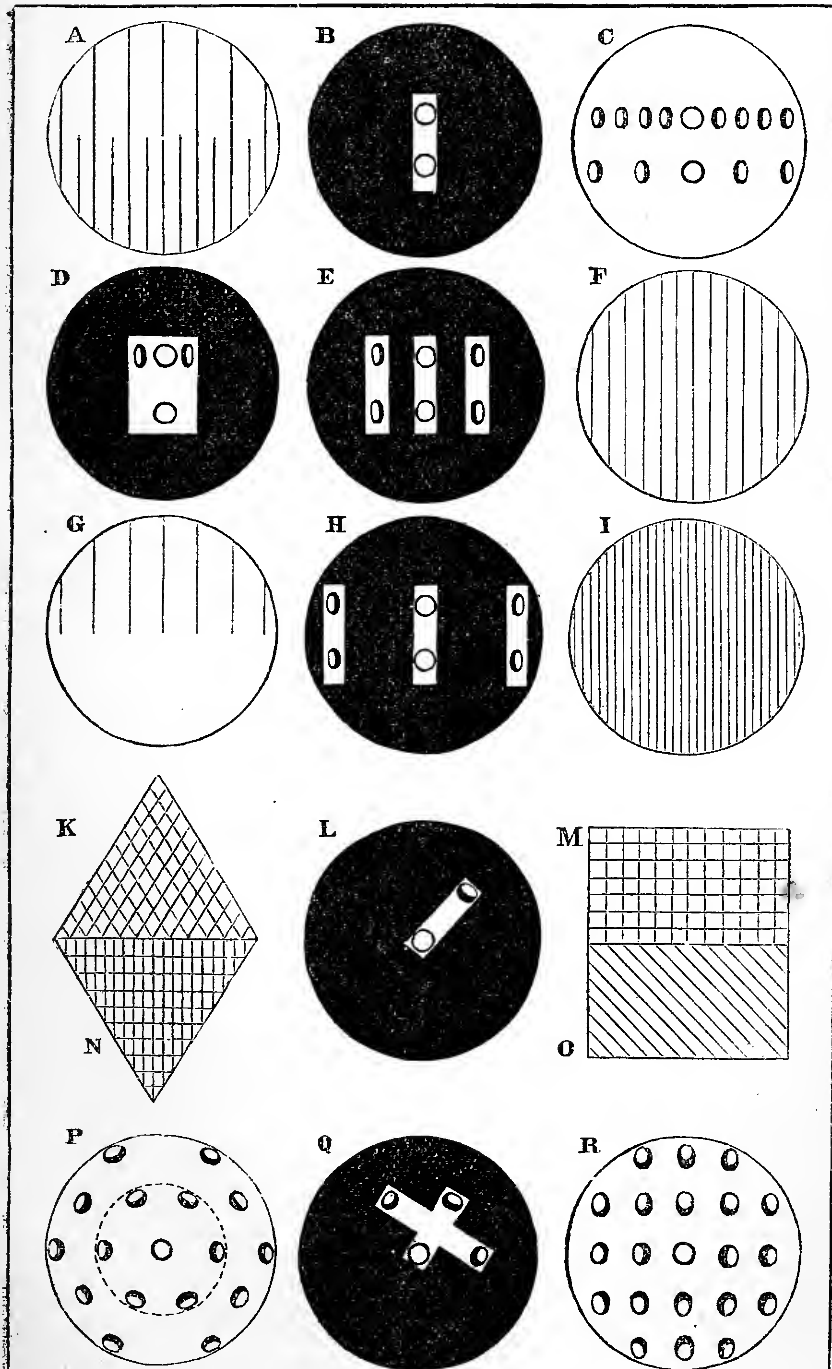
Experiment 2.—If, now, a diaphragm be used having three slits (E), of which the central admits the direct rays only, while the two lateral receive the *first* pair of the wider spectra and the *second* pair of the closer, it will be found, on replacing the eye-piece, that *the whole field is covered with the closer lines,* as at F. For the stopping-out of the alternate spectra of the upper series brings into combination only that pair which corresponds with the lower, and therefore makes the *apparent* lineation of the upper half correspond with the *real* lineation of the lower, by *the introduction of an intermediate set of spectral lines,* scarcely distinguishable from those of which they seem to be prolongations.

Experiment 3.—Further, by carrying the two lateral slits (as at H) to the distance of the extreme spectra of both rows—which distance represents that of the spectra that would be produced by a lineation *twice* as close as that of the lower half of A, and *four times* as close as that of the upper half—the entire field, when the eye-piece is replaced, is seen to be *covered with the doubly-close lines* corresponding to that distance, as shown at I.

Experiment 4.—On the other hand, by using a single aperture shaped as in D, which is broad enough to admit the innermost pair of spectra in the upper row, but not to admit any of the spectra of the lower row, the field, when the eye-piece is replaced, shows the wide lines (G) of the upper half of the grating, whilst *its lower half is perfectly blank.*

It has thus been experimentally demonstrated that the formation of the true image of the grating is dependent upon the normal re-combination of its diffraction-spectra, while the entire exclusion of these altogether obliterates the lineation. And we thus have now for the first time the scientific rationale of the fact which has long been practically known—the relation of the 'resolving power' of Objectives to their Angle of aperture. For it is obvious that since the 'inflected' rays which form the 'diffraction-spectra' diverge more and more widely in proportion to the approximation of the lines that separate them—so that those spectra (as already shown) are carried apart to greater and yet greater distances—the separation of those of a very close lineation may be such as to carry them completely beyond the aperture of an Objective which may take-in the spectra of a more open lineation (Exper. 4). And

Fig. 117.



thus an Objective may be able clearly to separate lines of 50,000 to an inch, from which no amount of 'coaxing' by oblique or any other kind of illumination can obtain a resolution of lines of 80,000 to an inch.—But further, it has been made clear that most distinct 'spectral' lines can be produced in the Microscopic image, by the re-combination of selected pairs of diffraction-spectra, without any real lines answering to them; and hence, that the images thus formed cannot be regarded as indicative of the actual structure of the objects they represent; the grating, for example, whose real lineation is shown at A, being made to appear (according to the manner in which it is viewed) either entirely blank, as half-blank (G), as having the intermediate lines of its lower half extended over its upper (F), or as having its whole field covered with lines at only half the distance of those of its closest part (I). The same effects of obliteration or duplication of lines may be produced on such objects as the scale of *Lepisma saccharina* (Fig. 417), by using higher powers with suitable diaphragms.—It will now be shown that the variations producible by similar treatment in the appearances of *cross-lined* objects, are yet more remarkable.

A grating with lines crossed at any angle may be prepared by cementing a cover-glass, with one set of lines ruled through a silver-film on its under side, upon a glass slide having another set ruled on a silver-film on its upper surface. If the two sets of lines are placed at right angles to each other, a rectangular grating is the result (N); if at any oblique angle, the grating is rhombic (K).

If the *square* grating be focussed, and its image examined by looking into the tube of the Microscope without the eye-piece, the diffraction-spectra will exhibit the regular arrangement shown at R; the round image being in the centre of the field, and the ovals being disposed in five rows at equal distances.

Experiment 5. A diaphragm being interposed (L) with an oblique slit just large enough to admit the central circle and one of the diffraction-spectra, and the eye-piece being replaced, the *real rectangular lines will not be seen at all*, but the field will be traversed by *oblique spectral lines* (O), whose direction is at right angles to that of the slit.

If the image of the *rhombic* grating be examined in the same manner as that of the square, it will exhibit the arrangement shown at P (the dotted inner circle being here disregarded).

Experiment 6. By using a diaphragm with a single slit in the direction of one of the diagonals of the rhomb, a Microscopic image will be presented from which *both sets of real lines are entirely absent*, whilst *a single set of spectral lines is seen, whose direction is at right angles to the slit*, that is, in the direction of the other diagonal.

Experiment 7. Again, by using a diaphragm with two slits at right angles to each other (Q), the Microscopic image will show *two sets of spurious lines crossing one another at right angles* (M), in the directions of the two diameters of the rhomb, *the real lines being altogether* invisible.

Experiment 8. A very singular effect is produced by the use of a single circular diaphragm, whose aperture is reduced so as only to include the six spectral ovals lying within the dotted circle at P; for on then placing the eye-piece, *the entire field is seen to be marked-out in hexagons.*

Now if a valve of *Pleurosigma angulatum* be focussed with central illumination under an Objective of sufficiently high power and large aperture, and the eye-piece be removed, there will be seen on looking down the body a bright central beam, with six coloured spectra arranged round it,—just as in the interior spectrum (P) of the rhomboidal grating; the reason that no other spectra are seen, being, that the approximation of the markings carries these six spectra to the extreme border of the field of even the largest-angled Objective. An Objective of smaller angle will not show them at all with central light; but if oblique light be used, the circular beam is carried to one margin, and a single spectral oval is seen at the other; and the re-combination of these suffices to make one set of lines visible. Again, by re-combining, by means of appropriate diaphragms, any three of the spectral ovals, or any two of these with the central beam, the very same part of the valve may be made to show a great variety of appearances—such as are actually seen in different parts of the same valve under the same illumination (Fig. 166).*

The foregoing experiments, then, entirely confirm the general conclusions drawn from those of the previous series, (1) as to the entire distinctness in character between the images Dioptrically formed of the general outlines and larger details of Microscopic objects, and the representations of their finer details which result from the reunion of their Interference-spectra; and (2) as to the very limited trustworthiness of the latter, when the minuteness of the structure occasions such a wide separation of the 'diffraction-spectra,' as limits the number thus combined.—Thus it becomes clear (1) that the 'resolving power' by which closely-approximated lines or other markings are separated, increases (the completeness of the corrections for Spherical and Chromatic Aberration being presupposed) with the *Angular Aperture*† of the Objective; and (2) that, as there is a like increase in the number of separate diffraction spectra which can be combined with the dioptric image, the representations of minute structure given by Objectives of widest Angular aperture are more trustworthy than those given by those of narrower.

158. *Relative Qualities of Objectives.*—In estimating the comparative values of different Objectives, regard must always be had to the *purpose* for which each is designed; since it is impossible to construct a combination which shall be equally serviceable for *every* requirement. It is commonly assumed that an Objective which

* See the original Memoir by Prof. Abbe, 'Beiträge zur Theorie des Microscopes,' in "Archiv für Microscop. Anatomie," Bd. ix. (1874), p. 418; Dr. H. E. Fripp's translation of it in the "Proceedings of the Bristol Naturalists' Society," N.S. Vol. i., part 2 (1875); extracts from Dr. F's translation in "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. xiv. (1875), pp. 191, 245; also Mr. Stephenson's 'Observations' thereon—to which the Author has been specially indebted —*op. cit.*, Vol. xvii. (1878), p. 82; and Mr. F. Crisp "On the Influence of Diffraction in Microscopic Vision," in "Journ. of Quekett Club," Vol. v., p. 79.

† The term *Angular Aperture* is to be understood as differentiated from "Angle of Aperture" (§ 10), by the allowance made for the modification in the course of the rays, by the medium—whether Air, Water, Glycerine, Balsam, or Oil—through which they pass in their course from the object into the Objective. (See Appendix.)

will show certain *Test-objects,* must be very superior for everything else to a glass which will not resolve these; but this is known to every practised Microscopist to be a complete mistake, the qualities which enable it to resolve some of the more difficult 'tests,' not being by any means identical with those which make it most useful in all the ordinary purposes of Scientific investigation. Five distinct attributes have to be specially considered in judging of the character of an Object-glass, viz.—(1) its *working-distance,* or actual interval between its front lens and the object on which it is focussed; (2) its *defining power,* or power of giving a clear and distinct image of all well-marked features of an object, especially of its boundaries; (3) its *penetrating power,* or *focal depth,* by which the observer is enabled to *look into* the structure of objects; (4) its *resolving power,* by which it enables closely-approximated markings to be distinguished; and (5) the *flatness of the field* which it gives.

I. The 'Working distance' of an Objective has no fixed relation to its 'focal length;' the latter being estimated by its equality in magnifying power with a single lens of given curvature;* while the former varies with the mode in which the combination is constructed, and with the angular aperture given to it. Of two Objectives of 1-inch focus and the same angle of aperture (say 25°), one may have, in virtue of its construction, a much longer 'working distance' than the other; and this is not only an advantage in facilitating the side-illumination of opaque objects, but also in admitting (as will presently appear) of greater 'focal depth' or 'penetration.' But it is especially in the case of high powers, that 'working distance' comes to be of essential importance. The widening of angular aperture which is required to give them their highest degree of 'resolving' power (IV.) necessitates a very close approximation of the front lens to the object; and whilst it is an absolute necessity that the interval should be sufficient for the interposition of a cover of the thinnest glass, or (if this be inadmissible) of a film of mica, every addition to this interval is a clear gain, not only in convenience of working, but also in regard to the 'penetrating' power (III.) of the Objective.—The increase of 'working distance' obtainable by the use of the Immersion system, is by no means the least of its advantages.

II. The 'Defining power' of an Objective depends upon the *completeness of its corrections* for Spherical and Chromatic aberration (§§ 9–15), especially the former; and it is an attribute essential to the satisfactory performance of *any* Objective, whatever be its other qualities. Good definition may be more easily obtained with

* Owing to the want of some common standard, Objectives constructed by different Makers of the same *nominal* focal length, often differ considerably from each other in magnifying power; and the proportional amplification given by the different Objectives of any one Maker's series is often very different from that indicated by their nomenclature. It is therefore greatly to be wished that some uniform standard could be agreed on; such as that of Magnifying power under an Eye-piece of definite focal length, at a fixed distance from the Objective.

lenses of *small* or *moderate*, than with lenses of *large* angular aperture; and as it is impossible to construct 'dry' Objectives of very wide angle, without some sacrifice of perfect correction (Abbe), there is a limit which, where 'definition' is of primary importance. cannot be advantageously passed. On the immersion system, however, and especially on the 'homogeneous immersion' system (§§ 19, 20), Objectives can be constructed of very much wider angle, without any injurious sacrifice of definition arising from inadequate correction. But here there comes-in another source of impairment,—*the difference in the perspective views of every object not a mere mathematical point or line, which are received through the different parts of the area of the Objective.* The picture given by the entire area is —so to speak—the 'general resultant' of the dissimilar pictures received through these several parts;* and as this dissimilarity obviously increases with the angle of aperture of the Objective, its defining power *must* be proportionally impaired. This theoretical conclusion has been experimentally verified by Dr. Royston Pigott; who has found that by comparing Objectives of *large* with those of *moderate* apertures, on such objects as the cracks in Mr. Slack's silica-films (§ 152), or the aerial image formed by the Achromatic Condenser of a hair stretched before the light at some distance, the advantage was *decidedly on the side of the latter.* He has shown† "that the black margins or black marginal annuli of "refracting spherules constantly displayed by small aperture Ob-"jectives, are attenuated gradually to invisibility as the apertures "are widened to the utmost; that the black margins of cylinders, "tubules, or semi-tubules, also suffer similar obliterations; and that, "in consequence, *minute details are concealed or destroyed till the* "*aperture is sufficiently reduced.*"—It is also the experience of Messrs. Dallinger and Drysdale, that for the definition of the immeasurably-minute reproductive granules of the *Monadine* forms whose life-history they have studied (§ 418), or of the flagella of *Bacterium termo* (§ 305), which may be characterized as the highest feats of Biological Microscopy yet performed, *moderate* angles of aperture are unquestionably to be preferred (VI.).—An experienced Microscopist will judge of the defining power of an Objective, by the quality of the image it gives of any fitting object with which he is familiar; no

* This point has been long kept before the mind of the Author, by his studies in Stereoscopic Microscopy; the condition of the effect of *relief* in the Binocular image, being the *dissimilarity* of the pictures of any object not absolutely flat, that are formed by the right and the left halves of the Objective respectively (§ 39). And he is glad to find his view of its importance confirmed so by able a practical Optician as Mr. Zentmayer; who, in a Lecture on the Elementary Properties of Lenses, published in the "Journal of the Franklin Institute" for May and June, 1876, and cited in the "Monthly Microscop. Journ.," Vol. xvi. (1876), p. 317, called attention prominently to *the confusion of images necessarily attendant upon large apertures, except when viewing absolutely flat objects*, from the fact that the image formed by pencils transmitted by one side of the lens are unavoidably different from corresponding images formed by the opposite side of the lens.

† "Proceedings of Royal Society," June 19, 1879.

test being, in the Author's judgment, more suitable than the *Podura*-scale (§ 162). Any imperfection in Defining power is exaggerated, as already pointed out (§§ 26, 136), by 'deep Eye-piecing;' so that, in determining the value of an Objective, it is by no means sufficient to estimate its performance under a low Eye-piece,—an image which appears tolerably clear when moderately magnified, being often found exceedingly deficient in sharpness when more highly amplified. The use of the Draw-tube (§ 83) affords an additional means of testing the Defining power; but recourse cannot be fairly had to this, unless an alteration be made in the adjustment for the thickness of the glass that covers the object (§ 139), in proportion to the nearer approximation of the object to the Objective which the lengthening of the body involves.

III. The Penetrating power or 'focal depth' of an Object-glass may be defined as consisting in the *vertical range* through which the parts of an object *not precisely in the focal plane* may be seen with sufficient distinctness to enable their relations with what *does* lie precisely in that plane to be clearly traced-out; just as we could do by ordinary vision, if the object were itself enlarged to the size of its Microscopic image.—Now this is a quality which is very differently valued by different observers, according to the nature of the work on which they may be severally engaged. The Histologist who is scrutinizing the elementary components of a tissue that is spread-out in the thinnest possible film between two plane surfaces of glass, considers 'penetration' rather an evidence of *imperfection* in his Objective, which (he affirms) cannot show him anything save what is *exactly* in the focal plane, without a sacrifice of its highest attainable capacity for doing the latter. On the other hand, the Anatomist who is studying the general organization of some minute Plant or Animal, or the structure of individual organs in a larger one, finds a certain amount of 'penetration' essential to his recognition of the *relations* between the several parts of the object which are successively brought into distinct view by alterations of the focal adjustment. And the Physiologist who is watching the *actions* that are going on in a living Organism or in some component part of it (as, for example, the internal movements of an *Amœba*, or the *cyclosis* in a leaf-cell of *Vallisneria*) could form no satisfactory conception of such phenomena, if, instead of passing gradationally (as an Objective of good 'penetration' allows him to do) from one focal plane to another, he can only get a series of 'dissolving views' with an interval of 'chaos' between each, as he does when working with an Objective whose 'penetration' has been sacrificed to Angular aperture.—For the study of *opaque* objects which present such inequalities of surface as to render it impossible to apprehend their true forms unless much more can be seen than is precisely in focus at once, good 'penetrating' power is obviously essential; and this is indispensable to the advantageous use of the Stereoscopic Binocular, which grossly exaggerates the effect of *projection*, when objects are

viewed under Objectives of too wide an angle (§ 39).—No definite rule can be laid down as to the relation which the 'focal depth' of an Objective bears to its 'working distance' and its 'angular aperture;' because much depends upon the mode of their construction. But it may be stated generally that Objectives of longest working distance have the greatest 'penetration;' whilst the widening of the Angular aperture diminishes penetration at a rapidly increasing rate.*

IV. The 'Resolving power' by which very minute and closely approximated markings—whether lines, striæ, dots, or apertures—are separately discerned, has now been clearly shown to depend upon Angular aperture (§ 157); and this, not so much—as formerly supposed—on account of the greater obliquity of the rays which large-angled Objectives will admit, as because of their capacity to receive and recombine the 'diffraction-spectra' that lie without the range of Objectives of more limited angle. In comparing the 'resolving' powers of different Objectives, it must be borne in mind that the advantage of wide aperture will be lost, if the obliquity of the illumination does not correspond with that of the most divergent rays which enter the Objective to take part in the formation of the image. But when the question is not of the resolution of surface-markings (such as those of Diatom-valves), but of the determination of internal structure (as, for example, in the study of the process of division in cell-nuclei), axial illumination is decidedly to be preferred, as being attended with less liability than oblique to produce deceptive appearances.—It appears from the theoretical researches of Prof. Abbe, that the *maximum* attainable resolving power with an Angular aperture of 180° should separate 118,000 lines to the inch; and this agrees well with what has been actually accomplished (§ 160). But the loss of 'resolving' power consequent upon the contraction of the aperture from 180° to $128\frac{1}{3}$° is only 10 per cent.; while a further reduction to $106\frac{1}{4}$° only lowers the number of separable lines to 94,400 per inch.

V. The 'Flatness of the field' afforded by the Object-glass is a condition of great importance to the advantageous use of the Microscope, since the real extent of the field of view practically depends upon it. Many Objectives are so constructed, that, even with a perfectly flat object, the foci of the central and of the peripheral parts of the field are so different, that when the adjustment is made for one, the other is extremely indistinct. Hence, when the

* The Author is informed by Prof. Abbe, that, theoretically—the plan of construction remaining the same—the 'penetration' of an Objective decreases, as the square of the Angular aperture increases.—It is perfectly well-known to Photographers, that a good picture of the interior of a long Sculpture-gallery, showing both the near and the distant parts with tolerable distinctness, can only be obtained by a lens of *very* narrow angle.—The singular assertion lately made by Dr. Blackham "(On Angular Aperture of Objectives," New York, 1880), that 'depth of focus, has no relation to Aperture, but depends on "residual" (*i.e.*, uncorrected) Spherical Aberration, and that "the less the lens has of it, the better the lens," does not require serious refutation.

central portion is being looked at, no more information is gained respecting the peripheral, than if it had been altogether stopped out. With a really good Object-glass, not only should the image be distinct even to the margin of the field, but the marginal portion should be as free from colour as the central. In many Microscopes of inferior construction, the imperfection of the Objectives in this respect is masked by the contraction of the aperture of the diaphragm in the Eye-piece (§ 27), which limits the dimensions of the field; and the performance of one Objective within this limit may scarcely be distinguishable from that of another, although, if the two were compared under an Eye-piece of larger aperture, their difference of excellence would be at once made apparent by the perfect correctness of one to the margin of the field, and by the entire failure of the other in every part save its centre. In estimating the relative merits of two lenses, therefore, as regards this condition, the comparison should be made under an Eye-piece giving a large field.

VI. The most perfect Objective for general purposes, is obviously that which combines *all* the preceding attributes in the degree in which they are mutually compatible. But it seems to be now clear that the highest perfection of the two primary qualities, 'defining' power and 'resolving power,' cannot be obtained in the same combination; so that the choice between two Objectives, one distinguished by the former of these attributes, and the other by the latter, will depend upon the kind of work on which it is to be employed. If the resolution of the markings on Diatom-valves is the Microscopist's special pursuit,* he will rightly prefer an Objective of the largest attainable angle, with the best definition that is compatible with it. But if he be engaged upon difficult Biological investigations, he will do well to make perfect 'definition' his *sine quâ non*, and to be content with the largest angle that can be obtained without a sacrifice of this. It is, as already stated, in admitting of perfect correction for Spherical Aberration, even to an aperture of

* It is assuredly neither the *only* nor yet the *chief* work of the Microscope (as some appear to suppose) to resolve the markings on the siliceous valves of *Diatoms;* in fact, the interest which attaches to observations of this class is entirely confined to the value of these objects as 'tests' of the performance of Objectives (§ 159). If one-tenth of the attention which has been devoted to the scrutiny of these objects with instruments of the highest class, had been given to the study of the Life-history of the minute Plants which furnish them, with such a Student's Microscope as thirty years ago enabled Mr. Thwaites to discover their 'conjugation,' it cannot be doubted that vast benefit would have accrued to Biological Science.—It has been urged that the acquirement of the power of displaying 'difficult' Diatom-tests, is a valuable 'gymnastic' for the training of Microscopists; but the experience of the Author, and of every Biological Teacher he knows, is that a much better training for the Student is to begin with the study of such easy objects—*e.g.*, the Yeast-Plant, and Colourless Blood-corpuscles,—as afford him the experience which it is absolutely essential that he should acquire in the first instance, and to proceed gradually from these to the more difficult, gaining new knowledge at every stage.

180°, that the great superiority of the 'immersion system' consists; but the greatest perfection in the construction of even an immersion Objective, cannot (in the nature of things) prevent that impairment of definition, which has been experimentally as well as theoretically shown by Dr. Royston Pigott to be consequent upon excessive widening of the angle of aperture. The most serviceable Objectives for the most difficult Biological investigations, therefore, will (in the Author's judgment) be such as possess the combination of qualities attributed by Mr. Dallinger to the 1-35 inch constructed specially for his work by Messrs. Powell and Lealand; "the angle is moderate; its definition very crisp and clear; and its penetration, considering its magnifying power, very considerable."

159. *Test-Objects.*—It is usual to judge of the optical perfection of a Microscope by its capacity for exhibiting certain objects, which are regarded as *Tests* of the merits of its Object-glasses; these tests being of various degrees of difficulty, and that being accounted the best instrument which shows the most 'difficult' of such tests. Now it must be borne in mind that of the qualities which have been just enumerated, the 'tests' usually relied-on have reference almost exclusively to two—viz., *definition* and *resolving power;* and that the greater number of them, being objects whose surface is marked by lines, striæ, or dots, are tests of *resolving* power, and thus of Angular aperture only. Hence, as already shown, an Objective may resolve some very difficult *test-objects,* and yet may be very unfit for ordinary use. Moreover, these 'difficult' tests are only suitable to Object-glasses of very short focus and high magnifying power; whereas the greater part of the real *work* of the Microscope is done with Objectives of low and medium power; and the enlargement of the Angular aperture, which enables one of these to resolve (under deep Eye-pieces) many objects which were formerly considered adequate tests for higher powers, is *for ordinary purposes* rather injurious than beneficial, detracting from the value of the Objective for the work to which it is specially adapted. For Microscopists of large Biological experience know perfectly well that every 'power' has its own proper range and capacity; and that they work most satisfactorily with the 'power' most suitable to the investigation on which they may be engaged. In estimating the value of an Object-glass, it should always be considered *for what purpose it is intended;* and its merits should be judged-of according to the degree in which it fulfils that purpose. We shall therefore consider what are the objects proper to the several 'powers' of Object-glasses—*low, medium,* and *high;* and what are the objects by its mode of exhibiting which, each may be fairly judged.

I. By Objectives of *low* power we may understand any whose focal length is *greater than Half-an-inch.* The 'powers' usually made in this country are known as 4 inch, 3 inch, 2 inch, $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch, 1 inch, and 2-3rds inch focus; and they give a range of amplification of from 10 to 70 diameters with the A eye-piece, and of from

16 to 120 diameters with the B eye-piece. An 'adjustable' low power is made by Zeiss of Jena (obtainable from Messrs. Baker), in which, by varying the position of the front-lens by means of a screw-collar, a *range* of power is obtainable from about 8 to 16 diameters with the A eye-piece, and from 12 to 24 with the B eye-piece. This has been found by the Author extremely convenient for the display of large opaque objects, of which it is desired to show the whole under as high an amplification as will make their images fill the field. Objectives of *low* power are most used in the examination of opaque Objects, and of Transparent objects of large size and of comparatively coarse texture; and the qualities most desirable in them are a sufficiently large aperture to give a *bright* image, combined with such accurate definition as to give a *clear* image, with 'focal depth' sufficient to prevent any moderate inequalities of surface from seriously interfering with the distinctness of the entire picture, and with perfect 'flatness' of the image when the object itself is flat. For the 3 inch, 2 inch, or $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch Objectives,* no ground of judgment is better than the manner in which it shows such an injected preparation as the interior of a Frog's Lung (Fig. 485) or a portion of the villous coat of the Monkey's Intestine (Fig. 479); for the aperture ought to be sufficient to give a bright image of such objects by ordinary daylight, without the use of any illuminator; the border of every vessel should be clearly defined, without any thickness or blackness of edge; every part of such an object that comes within the field should be capable of being made-out when the focal adjustment is adapted for any other part; whilst, by making that adjustment a medium one, the whole should be seen without any marked indistinctness. If the Aperture be too small, the image will be dark: but if it be too large, details are brought into view (such as the separateness of the particles of the vermilion injection) which it is of no advantage to see; whilst, through the sacrifice of penetration, those parts of the object which are brought exactly into focus being seen with over-minuteness, the remainder are enveloped in a thick fog through which even their general contour can scarcely be seen to loom. If the corrections be imperfectly made, no line or edge will be seen with perfect sharpness. For Defining power, the Author has found the Pollen-grains of the Hollyhock or any other flower of the *Mallow* kind (Fig. 277, A) viewed as an opaque object, a very good test; the minute spines with which they are beset being but dimly seen with any save a *good* Object-glass of these long foci, and being really-well exhibited only by adding such power to the Eye-piece, as will exaggerate any want of definition on the part of an inferior lens. For Flatness of field no test is better than a section of Wood (Fig. 253) or a large Echinus-spine (Fig. 369), under an Eye-piece that will give a field of the diameter of from

* These are ordinarily composed of *two pairs* of lenses only, as the corrections can be adequately made by this combination for an Angular aperture of 23°, which is the largest that is found practically useful for the $1\frac{1}{2}$-inch.

9 to 12 inches. The general performance of Object-glasses of 1-inch and 2-3rds inch focus, may be partly judged-of by the manner in which they show such injections as those of the Gill of the Eel (Fig. 484), or of the Bird's Lung (Fig. 486), which require a higher magnifying power for their resolution than those previously named; still better, perhaps, by the mode in which they exhibit a portion of the wing of some Lepidopterous Insect having well marked scales. The same qualities should here be looked-for, as in the case of the lowest powers; and a want of either of them is to be distinguished in a similar manner. The increase of Angular aperture which these Objectives may advantageously receive up to 30°, should render them capable of resolving all the easier 'test' scales of Lepidoptera, such as those of the *Morpho menelaus* (Fig. 414), in which, with the B eye-piece, they should show the transverse as well as the longitudinal markings. The Proboscis of the Blow-fly (Fig. 428)* is one of the best transparent objects for enabling a practised eye to estimate the general performance of Object-glasses of these powers; since it is only under a really good lens, that all the details of its structure can be well shown. In particular, all the outlines and edges should be seen clearly and sharply, without any haze or fringe; the tracheal spires and rings should be well-defined, without any colour between them; and there should be no indication of general mist. An Objective which shows *this* well, may be trusted for any other object of its kind. For Flatness of field, sections of small Echinus-spines (Plate II., fig. 1) are very good tests. The exactness of the corrections in lenses of these foci, may be judged-of by the examination of objects which are almost sure to exhibit Colour if the correction be otherwise than perfect. This is the case, for example, with the so-called *glandulæ* of Coniferous wood (Fig. 248), the centres of which ought to be clearly defined under such objectives, and to be quite free from colour; and also with the *tracheæ* of Insects (Fig. 432), the spires of which ought to be distinctly separated from each other, without any appearance of intervening chromatic fringes.

II. We may consider as Objectives of *medium* power the Half-inch, 4-10ths inch, 1-4th inch, and 1-5th inch; the magnifying power of which ranges from about 90 to 250 diameters under the A eye-piece, and from about 150 to 400 diameters with the B eye-piece. The first three, when used by reflected light, can be advantageously employed in the examination of such small *opaque* objects as Diatoms, Polycystina, portions of small Feathers, capsules of the lesser Mosses, Hairs, &c,; they should be so mounted on cones as to allow of side-illumination; and the 1-4th should have sufficient working distance to permit its easy use for these purposes, with an aperture not exceeding 80°. Larger-angled 1-4ths and 1-5ths cannot be conveniently used for opaque objects, unless these are

* This object should be mounted in Glycerine-jelly; for when mounted in Balsam, the parts are usually flattened-out and squeezed together, so that their real forms and relative positions cannot be seen.

shown by Prof. Smith's or some analogous illumination (§ 116).—The great value of these powers lies in the information they enable us to obtain regarding the details of organized structures and of living actions, by the examination of properly-prepared *transparent* objects by transmitted light; and it is to them that the remarks already made respecting Angular aperture (§ 158, II.) especially apply; since it is here that the greatest difference exists between the ordinary requirements of the Scientific investigator, and the special needs of those who devote themselves to the particular classes of objects for which the greatest 'resolving' power is required. A moderate amount of such power is essential to the value of every Objective within the above-named range of foci: thus, even a good half-inch should enable the markings of the larger scales of the *Polyommatus argus* ('azure-blue' Butterfly) to be well distinguished —these being of the same kind with those of the Menelaus, but more delicate,—and should clearly separate the dots of the small or 'battledoor' scales (Fig. 416) of the same Insect, which, if unresolved, are seen as coarse longitudinal lines; a good 4-10ths inch should resolve the larger scales of the *Podura* (Plate II., fig. 2) without difficulty; and a good 1-4th or 1-5th-inch should bring out the markings on the smaller scales of the Podura, and should resolve the markings on the *Pleurosigma angulatum* into lozenge-lines, the B and C eye-pieces being used when the scales are very small and their markings delicate. Even the Half-inch or the 4-10ths inch *may* be made with angles of aperture sufficiently wide to resolve the objects named as difficult tests for the powers above them;* but for the reasons already stated, the Author thinks it most undesirable that they should be thus *forced up* to the work altogether unsuited to their powers, by a sacrifice of those very qualities which constitute their special value in the study of the objects whereon they can be most appropriately and effectively employed. And he is decidedly of opinion that an angular aperture of 50° is as great as should be given to a Half-inch, 60° to a 4-10ths inch, and 90° to a 1-4th inch, that are destined for the ordinary purposes of Scientific investigation: whilst his own experience would lead him to prefer an angle of 40° for the Half-inch (§ 39),

* By Mr. Tolles (Boston, N.E.) the Angle of the half-inch is carried to 80°; and that of the 4-10ths to 145°. And it has lately been seriously maintained that an Objective of the latter focus supplies almost every need of the Biologist, since, as even difficult Diatom-tests can be shown by it, it can be worked-up by deep Eyepiecing to the highest power that he requires, except for special investigations. But the resolution of a Diatom is one thing, while the prosecution of investigation continued through several hours at a time is quite another; and the Author, regarding the advice of this writer as most dangerous to the eyes of those who may follow it, deems it his duty to enter his protest against it.—Many excellent makers now make *first-class* Objectives of *narrow* as well as *wide* angles; thus, Messrs. Powell and Lealand, followed by several others, make the half-inch of 40° (first constructed for the Author, to be used with the Stereoscopic Binocular), as well as a half-inch of 70°; Messrs. Beck make a 4-10ths of 55°, as well as one of 90°; and Mr. Crouch a 1-4th of 60°, another of 105°, and another of 140°.

and of 80° for the 1-4th inch, provided the corrections are perfect. Objectives of these apertures should show the easier tests first enumerated, with perfect Definition, a fair amount of Penetrating power, and complete Flatness of field. No single object is so useful as the *Podura-scale* for the purpose of testing these qualities in a 1-4th inch or 1-5th inch Objective; and it may be safely said that a lens which brings out its markings satisfactorily will suit the requirements of the ordinary working Microscopist, although it may not resolve difficult Diatoms. In every case, the Objective should be tried with the B and C as well as with the A eye-piece; and the effect of this substitution will be a fair test of its merits. Where markings are undistinguishable under a certain Objective, merely because of their minuteness or their too close approximation, they may be enlarged or separated by a deeper Eye-piece, provided that the Objective be well corrected. But if, in such a case, the image be darkened or blurred, so as to be rather deteriorated than improved, it may be concluded that the Objective is of inferior quality, having either an insufficient Angular aperture, or being imperfectly corrected, or both.

III. All Object-glasses of less than 1-5th inch focus may be classed as *high* powers; the focal lengths to which they are ordinarily constructed being 1-6th, 1-8th, 1-10th, 1-12th, 1-16th, 1-20th, 1-25th, 1-40th, and 1-50th of an inch respectively; the 1-12th, 1-16th, 1-25th, and 1-50th being made by Messrs. Powell and Lealand, and the 1-10th, 1-20th, and 1-40th by Messrs. Beck. The magnifying powers which Objectives from 1-6th to 1-25th inch focus are fitted to afford, range from about 320 to 1250 diameters with the shallower Eye-piece, and from 480 to 1850 diameters with the deeper: but by the use of still deeper Eye-pieces, or by the Objective of 1-50th inch, or the 1-80th recently constructed by Messrs. Powell and Lealand, a power of 4000 or more may be obtained. It is seldom, however, that anything is really gained thereby.—The introduction of *immersion*-lenses (§ 19) has considerably increased the utility of what may be called moderately high powers, such as 1-8th, 1-10th, and 1-12th. These, if really good, can be used when necessary with deep Eye-pieces; and very little of scientific importance that is beyond their reach has yet been seen by higher Objectives, though the latter have, no doubt, special value in certain circumstances when skilfully employed. With these and higher powers not intended for exclusive use upon 'vexatious' Diatoms, the Angle of aperture should be so proportioned to focal length, as not to sacrifice the 'definition' and 'penetration' required to show the internal organs of small Rotifers, large Infusoria, minute Worms, &c. An Objective that will show *surfaces* only, may be broadly stated to be of little use for Biological investigation. Dry-front 1-8ths or 1-12ths with an aperture closely approaching 170°, are of very limited utility, from want of penetration, and from focussing extremely close to their objects; while with 30° or 40° less aperture, and good corrections, they are much more serviceable, losing very

little (as already shown, § 158, IV) in 'resolving' power, and gaining much in working distance and penetration.

160. For Resolving power, the best tests are afforded by the lines artificially ruled by M. Nobert, and by the more 'difficult' Diatoms. —What is known as *Nobert's Test* is a plate of glass, on a small space of which, not exceeding one-fiftieth of an inch in breadth, are ruled from ten to nineteen series of lines, forming as many separate bands of equal breadth. In each of these bands, the lines are ruled at a certain known distance; and the distances are so adjusted in the successive bands, as to form a regularly diminishing series, and thus to present a succession of tests of progressively increasing difficulty. The distances of the lines differ on different plates; all the bands in some series being resolvable under a good Objective of 1-4th inch focus, whilst the closest bands in others long defied the resolving power of 1-12th inch Objectives of large Aperture. On the nineteen-band Test-plate the lines are ruled at the following distances, expressed in parts of a Paris line, which, to an English inch, is usually reckoned as ·088 to 1·000, or as 11 to 125:—

Band 1.	1-1000th.	Band 8.	1-4500th.	Band 14.	1-7500th.
„ 2.	1-1500th.	„ 9.	1-5000th.	„ 15.	1-8000th.
„ 3.	1-2000th.	„ 10.	1-5500th.	„ 16.	1-8500th.
„ 4.	1-2500th.	„ 11.	1-6000th.	„ 17.	1-9000th.
„ 5.	1-3000th.	„ 12.	1-6500th.	„ 18.	1-9500th.
„ 6.	1-3500th.	„ 13.	1-7000th.	„ 19.	1-10060th.
„ 7.	1-4000th.				

The following exact estimates of the numbers of the lines to the English inch, in some of the Bands, are given by Dr. Royston Pigott:*—

Band.	*No. of spaces per inch.*	*Band.*	*No. of spaces per inch.*	*Band.*	*No. of spaces per inch.*
I.	11,259·51358.	IX.	56,297·56790.	XV.	90,076·10864.
III.	22,519·02716.	XI.	67,557·08148.	XVII.	101,335·62222.
IV.	33,778·54074.	XIII.	78,816·59506.	XIX.	112,595·13580.
VII.	45,038·05432.				

In objects like Nobert's Test-plate, spurious diffraction-lines are easily mistaken for genuine resolution; and the difficulty of resolving the higher bands of his series was formerly supposed to be an optical impossibility. The more recent investigations of Helmholtz and Abbe, however, have disposed of this thoretical objection; and the 'resolution' of Nobert's 19th band, which was long supposed to be a sort of *crux* of Microscopy, is now easily demonstrable.

161. It cannot be questioned that the recognition of the value of the markings on the siliceous valves of the *Diatoms* as Test-objects

* "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. ix. (1873), p. 63.—A much larger number of lines to the inch has been assigned to Nobert's Test-plate by Mr. J. Allan Broun ("Proceedings of Royal Society," Vol. xxiii. 1875, p. 531), on the basis of his measurement of Photographs taken by Dr. E. Carter (Surgeon, U.S. Army); but there seems strong ground to believe that either from diffraction, or from some mistake in the magnifying power employed, Mr. Brown's estimate must be greatly in excess of the reality.

(first made by Messrs. Harrison and Sollitt, of Hull, in 1841) has largely contributed to the success of the endeavours which have since been so effectually made, to perfect high-power Objectives, and to devise new methods of using them to the best advantage. But it has now been demonstrated, both theoretically and practically, that the power of 'resolving' these markings essentially depends on the Angular aperture of the Objective: so that, as a lens which possesses it in a high degree may be very deficient in 'definition,' and will probably have an inconveniently short 'working distance' with very little 'penetration'—qualities essential to an Objective to be employed in Biological investigation,—the resolution of difficult Diatom-tests by no means proves the fitness of an Objective for the *ordinary work* of the Microscopist.—Still, these tests are of great value for the purpose to which they are really adapted; and it will therefore be desirable here to specify their relative degrees of 'difficulty,' which is indicated by the closeness of their lineation, leaving for future discussion (§ 277) the nature of the structure to which that lineation is due. The greater part of the Diatoms now in use for this purpose, are comprehended in the genus *Pleurosigma* of Prof. W. Smith; which includes those *Naviculæ* whose 'frustules' are distinguished by their sigmoid (S-like) curvature (Fig. 165.)

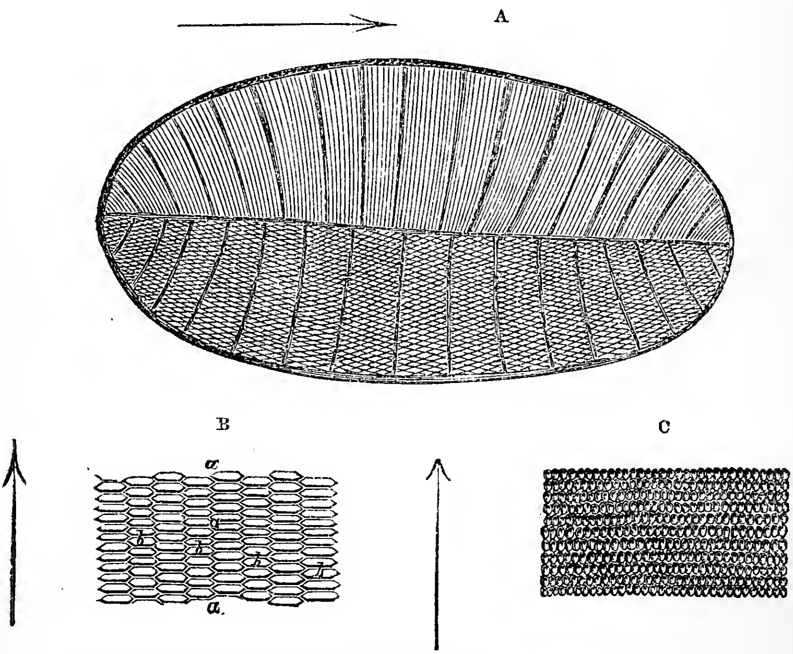
	Direction of Striæ.	*Striæ in 1-100th of an inch.* SMITH.	SOLLITT.
1. Pleurosigma formosum	... diagonal	34	32 — 20
2. ——— strigile	... transverse	36	30
3. ——— Balticum	... transverse	38	40 — 20
4. ——— attenuatum	... transverse	40	46 — 35
5. ——— hippocampus	... transverse	40	45 — 40
6. ——— strigosum	... diagonal	44	80 — 40
7. ——— quadratum	... diagonal	45	60 — 35
8. ——— elongatum	... diagonal	48	
9. ——— lacustre	... transverse	48	
10. ——— angulatum	... diagonal	52	51 — 46
11. ——— æstuarii	... diagonal	54	
12. ——— fasciola	... transverse	64	90 — 50
13. Navicula rhomboides	... transverse	85	111 — 60
14. Nitzschia sigmoidea	... transverse	85	
15. Amphipleura pellucida. (*Navicula acus*).	... transverse	......	130 —120

Good specimens of the first ten of the foregoing list may be resolved, with judicious management, by good small-angled 1-4th or 1-5th inch Objectives, and even, with very oblique illumination, by Objectives of one-half and 4-10ths inch, having an angular aperture of 90°; the remainder require the larger aperture proper to the 1-8th inch or higher power, for the satisfactory exhibition of their markings. The first column of measurements in the above table gives the numbers stated by Prof. W. Smith as *averages;* the second column gives the numbers subsequently assigned as the *extremes* by Mr. Sollitt,* who pointed out that great differences exist in the

* 'On the Measurement of the Striæ of Diatoms,' in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. viii. (1860), p. 48.

fineness of the markings of specimens of the same species obtained from different localities—a statement now so abundantly confirmed, as to be entitled to rank as an established fact. It is in regard to *Amphipleura pellucida*, however, that the greatest diversity of opinion has existed; and the conclusion which the Author had expressed in the earlier editions of this Manual, that Mr. Sollitt's estimate was much too high, (having been based on 'spurious' lineation), has been fully confirmed by Col. Dr. Woodward; who, having succeeded in obtaining very perfect Photographs of this Diatom, under powers of 1500 and 1650 diameters, has found that the striæ on the largest valves were never more than 91 in 1-1000th of an inch, while those on the smallest never exceeded 100 in the 1-1000th inch.* The 'resolution' of the *lines* on this test may be made without much difficulty by 'immersion' Objectives of 1-8th inch without any excessive Aperture; but the resolution of the lines into distinct *dots* is a severe test for Objectives of largest Aperture.—Several

FIG. 118.



Valve of *Surirella gemma*, with portion (B) more highly magnified, showing two systems of markings *a* and *b*, as represented by Hartnack; while C is copied from a photograph taken by Dr. Woodward.

very difficult tests of this description have been furnished by the late Prof. Bailey† of West Point (U.S.); among them the very

* "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. v. (1871), p. 162.

† See his interesting Memoirs in Vols. ii. and vii. of the "Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge." On *Hyalodiscus subtilis*, see Hendry, in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. i., N.S. (1861), p. 179.

beautiful *Grammatophora subtilissima* and the *Hyalodiscus subtilis*, the latter being of discoid form, and having markings which radiate in all directions, very much like those of an engine-turned watch.—To these may be added the *Surirella gemma*, which presents appearances of a very deceptive character. These appearances, as represented by M. Hartnack, are shown in Fig. 118, A, B; the upper part of the valve A being illuminated by oblique light in the direction of its axis, and the lower part by oblique light in a direction transverse to its axis; while B shows a portion more highly magnified under the last illumination. This Diatom, however, has been successfully photographed by Dr. Woodward (Fig. 118, C), who says of it:—"A careful examination of specimens mounted dry, has satisfied me that Hartnack's interpretation is erroneous. The fine striæ are, I think, rows of minute hemispherical beads; the appearance of hexagons is the optical result of imperfect definition or of unsuitable illumination. For photographing this object, I have selected a frustule of somewhat less than the medium size. It measures 1-290th of an inch in length. Longitudinally the fine striæ count at the rate of 72,000 to the inch. These striæ are resolved into beaded appearances, which count laterally 84,000 to the inch."*

162. As a test for those qualities of Objectives which best fit them for the general purposes of Biological investigation, the Author remains of the opinion (which he finds to be shared by many able and experienced Microscopists, and by Makers specially familiar with their requirements) that nothing is better than the scale of the *Lepidocyrtus cervicollis*, commonly known as the *Podura* (Fig. 419). It is a fact perfectly familiar to such Makers, that an Objective may serve, in virtue of its wide Angular aperture, to resolve Diatom-tests of considerable difficulty, and may yet fail utterly on the Podura-scale, in consequence of its inferior defining power; and such an Objective can be of very little service to the Biological investigator. On the other hand, although the exact *structure* of the Podura-scale is still (like that of the Diatom-valve) a matter of discussion, yet all are agreed as to the *appearances* it presents, under Objectives that combine in the fullest degree the attributes already specified as best qualifying them for Scientific work; so that any glass which shows these appearances satisfactorily, may be safely accounted suitable for that purpose. The surface of this scale, when viewed under a sufficiently high amplification, is seen to be covered with the peculiar markings shown in Plate II., Figs. 2, 3, which are sometimes designated 'spines,' but are more commonly known as 'notes of admiration' or 'exclamation-markings.' These should be clearly separated from each other, and their margins well defined. An Objective of *small* angle (such as a 1-4th inch of 60°) will show the 'spines' dark throughout; a 1-4th inch of 100° will show a light streak extending from the large end, down the centre of each marking; and a further enlargement of the aperture will show an extension of this streak through the entire

* "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. vi. (1871), p. 100.

length of each 'spine.' The degree in which these markings retain their brightness and distinctness under deep Eye-piecing, may be considered a most valuable test of the excellence of the defining power of the Objective. As it is impossible that large-angled Objectives used 'dry,' should be perfectly corrected for *spherical* aberration (so as to possess the greatest possible *defining* power) without some residuum of *chromatic* aberration, all the best defining glasses will show the thick part of the spines tinged with either blue or red. Perfect Achromatism, on the other hand, is only attainable with 'dry' lenses at some sacrifice of resolving and defining power; and many Microscopists prefer to keep the latter to their highest point, even at the expense of complete colour-correction. Most Physiologists, however, will prefer the highest attainable achromatism, at some sacrifice of aperture. But it is one of the advantages of the 'immersion-system,' that the residual aberrations of even large-angled Objectives can be much more perfectly compensated than they can be in 'dry' Objectives; so that on this as on several other accounts, their use is to be recommended whenever permitted by the nature of the research.

163. *Determination of Magnifying Power.*—The last subject to be here adverted to, is the mode of estimating the magnifying power of Microscopes, or, in other words, the number of times that any object is magnified. This will of course depend upon a comparison of the *real* size of the Object with the *apparent* size of the Image; but our estimate of the latter will depend upon the distance at which we assume it to be seen; since, if it be projected at different distances from the Eye, it will present very different dimensions. Opticians generally, however, have agreed to consider *ten inches* as the standard of comparison; and when, therefore, an object is said to be magnified 100 diameters, it is meant that its visual image projected at ten inches from the Eye (as when thrown down by the Camera Lucida, § 94, upon a surface at that distance beneath), has 100 times the actual dimensions of the object. The measurement of the magnifying power of Simple or Compound Microscopes by this standard is attended with no difficulty. All that is required is a Stage-Micrometer accurately divided to a small fraction of an inch (the 1-100th will answer very well for low powers, the 1-1000th for high), and a common foot-rule divided to tenths of an inch. The Micrometer being adjusted to the focus of the Objective, the rule is held parallel with it at the distance of ten inches from the eye. If the second eye be then opened whilst the other is looking through the Microscope, the circle of light included within the field of view crossed by the lines of the Micrometer will be seen faintly projected upon the rule: and it will be very easy to mark upon the latter the apparent distances of the divisions on the Micrometer, and thence to ascertain the magnifying power. Thus, supposing each of the divisions of 1-100th of an inch to correspond with $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch upon the rule, the linear magnifying power is 150 diameters: if it correspond with half an inch, the magnifying

power is 50 diameters. If, again, each of the divisions of the 1-1000th inch Micrometer corresponds to 0·6 of an inch upon the rule, the magnifying power is 600 diameters; and if it correspond to 1·2 inches, the magnifying power is 1200 diameters. In this mode of measurement, the estimate of *parts* of tenths on the rule can only be made by guess; but greater accuracy may be obtained by the use of the Diagonal scale (Fig. 67), or still better, by projecting the Micrometer-scale with the Camera Lucida at the distance of ten inches from the eye, marking the intervals on paper, taking an average of these, and repeating this with the compasses ten times along the inch-scale. Thus, if the space given by one of the divisions of the 1-1000th-inch Micrometer, repeated ten times along the rule, amounts to 6 inches and $2\frac{1}{2}$ tenths, the value of each division will be ·625 of an inch, and the magnifying power 625.—It is very important, whenever a high degree of accuracy is aimed at in Micrometry, to bear in mind the caution already given (§ 91) in regard to the difference in magnifying power produced in the adjustment of the Objective to the thickness of the glass that covers the object.—The *superficial* Magnifying power is of course estimated by *squaring* the linear; but this is a mode of statement never adopted by Scientific observers.

CHAPTER V.

PREPARATION, MOUNTING, AND COLLECTION OF OBJECTS.

164. UNDER this head it is intended to give an account of those Materials, Instruments, and Appliances of various kinds, which have been found most serviceable to Microscopists engaged in general Biological research; and to describe the most approved methods of employing them in the preparation and mounting of Objects, for the display of the minute structures thus brought to our knowledge. Not only is it of the greatest advantage that the discoveries made by Microscopic research should—as far as possible—be embodied (so to speak) in 'preparations,' which shall enable them to be studied by every one who may desire to do so; but it is now universally admitted that such 'preparations' often show so much more than can be seen in the fresh organism, that no examination of it can be considered as complete, in which the methods most suitable to each particular case have not been put in practice.—It must be obvious that in a comprehensive Treatise like the present, such a *general* treatment of this subject is all that can be attempted, excepting in a few instances of peculiar interest. And as the Histological student can find all the guidance he needs in the numerous Manuals now prepared for his instruction, the Author will not feel it requisite to furnish him with the *special* directions that are readily accessible to him elsewhere.

SECTION 1.—*Materials, Instruments, and Appliances.*

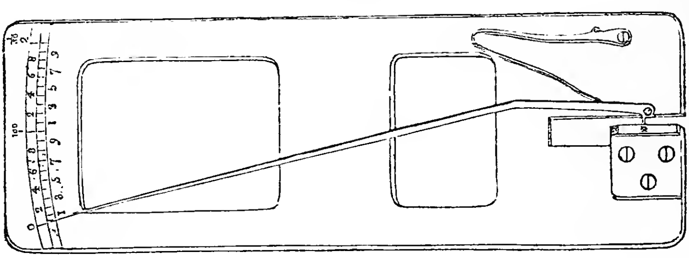
165. *Glass Slides.*—The kind of Glass best suited for mounting objects, is that which is known as 'patent plate;' and it is now almost invariably cut, by the common consent of Microscopists in this country, into slips measuring 3 in. by 1 inch. For objects too large to be mounted on these, the size of 3 in. by $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. may be adopted. Such slips may be purchased, accurately cut to size, and ground at the edges, for so little more than the cost of the glass, that few persons to whom time is an object, would trouble themselves to prepare them; it being only when glass slides of some unusual dimensions are required, or when it is desired to construct 'built-up cells' (§ 174), that a facility in cutting glass with a glazier's diamond becomes useful. The glass slides prepared for use should be free from veins, air-bubbles, or other flaws, at least in the central part on which the object is placed; and any whose defects render them unsuitable for ordinary purposes, should

be selected and laid aside for uses to which the working Microscopist will find no difficulty in putting them. As the slips vary considerably in thickness, it will be advantageous to separate the *thin* and the *thick* from those of *medium* substance. The first may be employed for mounting delicate objects to be viewed by the high powers with which the Achromatic Condenser is to be used, so as to avoid any unnecessary deflection of the illuminating pencil by the thickness of the plate which it has to traverse beneath the object; the second should be set aside for the attachment of objects which are to be ground-down, and for which, therefore, a stronger mounting than usual is desirable; and the third are to be used for mounting ordinary objects. Great care should be taken in washing the slides, and in removing from them every trace of greasiness by the use of a little soda or potass solution. If this should not suffice, they may be immersed in the solution recommended by Dr. Seiler, composed of 2 oz. of Bichromate of Potass, 3 fl. oz. of Sulphuric Acid, and 25 oz. of Water, and afterwards thoroughly rinsed. (The same solution may be advantageously used for cleansing Cover-glasses, § 132.) Before they are put away, the slides should be wiped perfectly dry, first with an ordinary 'glass-cloth,' and afterwards with an old cambric handkerchief. And before being used, each slide should be again carefully wiped, so as to remove all adherent dust. Where slides that have been already employed for mounting preparations are again brought into use, great care should be taken in completely removing all trace of adherent varnish or cement; first by scraping (care being taken not to scratch the glass), then by using an appropriate solvent, and then by rubbing the slide with a mixture of equal parts of alcohol, benzole, and liquor sodæ, finishing with clean water.

166. *Thin Glass.*—The older Microscopists were obliged to employ thin laminæ of *talc* for covering objects to be viewed with lenses of short focus: but this material, which was in many respects objectionable, is now only employed for Objectives of exceptionally short focus (such as 1-50th or 1-75th inch), being entirely superseded for other purposes by the thin glass manufactured by Messrs. Chance of Birmingham, which may be obtained of various degrees of thickness, down to 1-500th of an inch. This glass, being unannealed, is very hard and brittle; and much care and some dexterity are required in cutting it. This should be done with the *writing* diamond; and it is advantageous to lay the thin glass upon a piece of wetted plate-glass, as its tendency to crack and 'star' is thereby diminished. For cutting *square* or other *rectangular* covers, nothing but a flat rule is required. The cutting of *rounds* by unaccustomed hands is usually attended with so much breakage, that it is really a saving of money as well as of time to purchase them from the dealers; who usually keep them in several sizes, and supply any others to order. The different thicknesses are usually ranked as 1, 2, and 3; the first being used for covering

objects to be viewed with *low* powers, the second for objects to be viewed with *medium* powers; and the third for objects requiring *high* powers. The thinnest glass is of course most difficult to handle safely, and is most liable to fracture from accidents of various kinds; and hence it should only be employed for the purpose for which it is absolutely needed. The thickest pieces, again, may be most advantageously employed as covers for large Cells, in which objects are mounted in fluid (§§ 171–174) to be viewed by the low powers whose performance is not sensibly affected by the aberration thus produced. The working Microscopist will find it desirable to provide himself with some means of measuring the thickness of his cover-glass; and this is especially needed if he is in the habit of employing Objectives without adjustment, which are corrected to a particular standard (§ 17). A small screw-gauge of steel, made for measuring the thickness of rolled plates of brass, and sold at the Tool-shops, answers this purpose very well; but Ross's *Lever of Contact* (Fig. 119), devised for this express purpose, is in many respects preferable. This consists of a small horizontal table of brass, mounted upon a stand, and having at one end an arc graduated into 20 divisions, each of which represents 1-1000th of

FIG. 119.



Ross's Lever of Contact.

an inch, so that the entire arc measures 1-50th of an inch; at the other end is a pivot on which moves a long and delicate lever of steel, whose extremity points to the graduated arc, whilst it has very near its pivot a sort of projecting tooth, which bears at * against a vertical plate of steel that is screwed to the horizontal table. The piece of thin-glass to be measured being inserted between the vertical plate and the projecting tooth of the lever, its thickness in thousandths of an inch is given by the number on the graduated arc to which the extremity of the lever points. Thus, if the number be 8, the thickness of the glass is ·008 or 1-125th of an inch.*—It will be found convenient to sort the covers according to their thicknesses, and to keep the sortings apart, so

* Another form of gauge, in which the measurement is obtained with great precision and facility by the sliding of a wedge, is described in the "Journ. of the Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. ii. (1879), p. 65.

that each may be used for the powers to which it is the most suitable. For Objectives whose angle of aperture is between 40° and 75°, glass of ·008 is not too thick; for Objectives of between 75° and 120° of aperture, the thickness may range from ·006 to ·004; but for Objectives whose angle of aperture exceeds 120°, and whose focus is less than 1-10th of an inch, only covers of from ·004 to ·002 should be used.

167. On account of the extreme brittleness of the Thin-glass, it is desirable to keep the covers, when cut and sorted, in some fine and soft powder, such as Starch. Before using a cover, however, the Microscopist should be careful to clean it thoroughly; not merely for the sake of removing foulness which would interfere with the view of the object, but also for the sake of getting rid of adherent starch-grains, the presence of which might lead to wrong conclusions; and also to free the surface from that slight greasiness, which, by preventing it from being readily wetted by water, frequently occasions great inconvenience in the mounting of objects in fluid. The thicker pieces may be washed and wiped without much danger of fracture, if due care be employed; but the thinner require much precaution; and in cleansing these, a simple instrument devised by Mr. W. W. Jones will be found very useful. This consists of a small tube of brass about an inch in diameter and the same in height (a stout pill-box makes a good substitute), into which fits loosely a weighted plug, to the flat bottom of which is cemented a piece of chamois leather. Another piece of soft leather is stretched upon a flat tablet of wood or plate-glass; and by placing the cover-glass (damped by the breath) under the plug, within the end of the tube, and keeping the tube well down on the tablet, the glass can be rubbed between the two leather surfaces with perfect security, the weight of the plug affording sufficient pressure.*

168. *Varnishes and Cements.*—There are three very distinct purposes for which Cements that possess the power of holding firmly to Glass, and of resisting not merely water but other preservative liquids, are required by the Microscopist; these being (1) the attachment of the glass covers to the slides or cells containing the object, (2) the formation of thin 'cells' of cement only, and (3) the attachment of the 'glass-plate' or 'tube-cells' to the slides. The two former of these purposes are answered by liquid cements or *varnishes*, which may be applied without heat; the last requires a *solid cement* of greater tenacity, which can only be used in the melted state.—Among the many such Cements that have been recommended by different workers, the following may be specially named as having stood the test of a large experience, both as to general utility and permanent value:—

a. Japanners' Gold size.—This, which may be obtained at every Colour-shop, is (according to the Author's experience) the most trustworthy of

* In the improved form of this little instrument made by Messrs. Hunter & Sands, the leather is not cemented to the bottom of the plug, but merely strained over it, so as to be easily renewable.

all cements for closing-in mounted objects of almost any description. It takes a peculiarly firm hold of glass: and when dry it becomes extremely tough, without brittleness. When new, it is very liquid and 'runs' rather too freely; so that it is often advantageous to leave open for a time the bottle containing it, until the varnish is somewhat thickened. By keeping it still longer with occasional exposure to air, it is rendered much more viscid: and though such 'old' Gold-size is not fit for ordinary use, yet one or two coats of it may be advantageously laid over the films of newer varnish, for securing the thicker covers of large cells (§§ 171–4). Whenever any other varnish or cement is used, either in making a cell or in closing it in, the rings of these should be covered with one or two layers of Gold-size extending beyond it on either side, so as to form a continuous film extending from the marginal ring of the cover to the adjacent portion of the glass slide.*

b. Asphalte Varnish.—This is a black varnish made by dissolving half a drachm of Caoutchouc in mineral naphtha, and then adding 4 oz. of Asphaltum, using heat if necessary for its solution. It is very important that the Asphaltum should be genuine, and the other materials of the best quality. Some use Asphalte as a substitute for gold-size; but the Author's experience leads him to recommend that it should only be employed either for making shallow 'cement-cells' (§ 170), or for finishing-off preparations already secured with gold-size. For the former purpose it may advantageously be slightly thickened by evaporation.

c. Black Japan.—The varnish sold at the Colour-shops under this name, may be used for the same purposes as the preceding. When it is used for making 'cement-cells,' the slides to which it has been applied should be exposed for a time to the heat of an oven, not raised so high as to cause it to blister; this will increase its adhesion to the glass slide, and will flatten the surface of the rings.

d. Dammar Cement, which is made by dissolving gum dammar in benzole, and adding about one-third of gold-size, has the advantage of drying very quickly; and may be preferably used for a first coat when glycerine is used as the material for mounting.

e. Bell's Cement may be recommended on the same grounds; but it 'runs' so freely, that for ordinary purposes the Author much prefers gold-size or dammar.

f. Canada Balsam is so brittle when hardened by time, that it cannot be safely used as a cement, except for the special purpose of attaching hard specimens to glass, in order that they may be reduced by grinding, &c. Although fresh soft balsam may be hardened by heating it on the slide to which the object is to be attached, yet it may be preferably hardened *en masse* by exposing it in a shallow vessel to the prolonged but moderate heat of an oven, until so much of its volatile oil has been driven off that it becomes *almost* (but not quite) resinous on cooling. If, when a drop is spread out on a glass and allowed to become quite cold, it is found to be so hard as not to be readily indented by the thumb-nail, and yet not so hard as to 'chip,' it is in the best condition to be used for cementing. If too soft, it will require a little more hardening on the slide, to which it should be transferred in the liquid state, being brought to it by the

* The Author has fluid preparations mounted with Gold-size nearly forty years ago, which have remained perfectly free from leakage; the precaution having been taken to lay on a fresh coat every two or three years.

heat of a water-bath ; if too hard, it may be dissolved in chloroform or benzole, for use as a mounting 'medium' (§ 205).

g. Shell-lac Cement is made by keeping small pieces of picked Shell-lac in a bottle of rectified spirit, and shaking it from time to time. It cannot be recommended as a substitute for any of the preceding; as, when dry and hard, it has little hold on glass. But it answers very well for making cells for dry-mounting (§ 169).—What is known as *Liquid-glue* is an inferior kind of the same cement, made by dissolving inferior shell-lac, or some commoner resin, in naphtha. It cannot be trusted for a permanent hold; and those who employ it are likely to find themselves disappointed in regard to the *durability* of their preparations.*

h. Marine Glue, which is composed of shell-lac, caoutchouc, and naphtha, is distinguished by its extraordinary tenacity, and by its power of resisting solvents of almost every kind. Different qualities of this substance are made for the several purposes to which it is applied; and the one most suitable to the wants of the Microscopist is known in commerce as G K 4. The special value of this cement, which can only be applied hot, is in attaching to glass slides the glass or metal rings which thus form 'cells' for the reception of objects to be mounted in fluid; no other cement being comparable to it either for tenacity or for durability. The manner of so using it will be presently described (§ 171).

i. Various *coloured* Varnishes are used to give a finish to mounted preparations, or to mark on the covering-glasses of large preparations the parts containing special kinds of noteworthy structure. A very good *black* varnish of this kind is made by working up very finely powdered lamp-black with gold-size. For *red*, sealing-wax varnish made by dissolving red sealing-wax (the best is alone worth using) in rectified spirit, is commonly used ; but it is very liable to chip and leave the glass, when hardened by time. The red varnish specially prepared for Microscopic purposes by Messrs. Thompson & Capper (of Liverpool) seems likely to stand better, but the Author's experience of it has been short. For white, 'zinc cement' answers well: which may be made by dissolving 1 oz. of gum dammar in 1 oz. of oil of turpentine by the aid of heat; rubbing up 1 drachm of oxide of zinc with an equal quantity of oil of turpentine (adding the latter drop by drop) into a creamy mixture perfectly free from lumps or grit; and then mixing the two fluids, which must be well stirred together, and strained through a piece of fine muslin previously wetted with turpentine. Blue or green pigments may be worked-up with this, if cements of those colours be desired.

k. For attaching labels and covering papers to slides either of glass or wood, and for fixing-down small objects to be mounted 'dry' (such as Foraminifera, parts of Insects, &c.), the Author has found nothing preferable to a rather thick mucilage of Gum Arabic, to which enough Glycerine has been added to prevent it from drying hard, with a few drops of some Essential oil to prevent the development of mould. The following formula has also been recommended:—Dissolve 2 oz. of Gum Arabic in 2 oz. of water, and then add 1-4th oz. of soaked gelatine (for the solution of which the action of heat will be required), 30 drops of glycerine, and a lump of camphor.—The further advantage is gained by

* From the appearance and smell of the Hollis's Glue recommended by Dr. Heneage Gibbs, the Author cannot but believe that its nature is essentially the same as that of ordinary 'liquid glue,' and that it is therefore liable to the same objection.

the addition of a slightly increased proportion of Glycerine to either of the foregoing, that the gum can be very readily softened by water; so that covers may be easily removed (to be cleansed if necessary) and the arrangement of objects (where many are mounted together, § 175) altered.

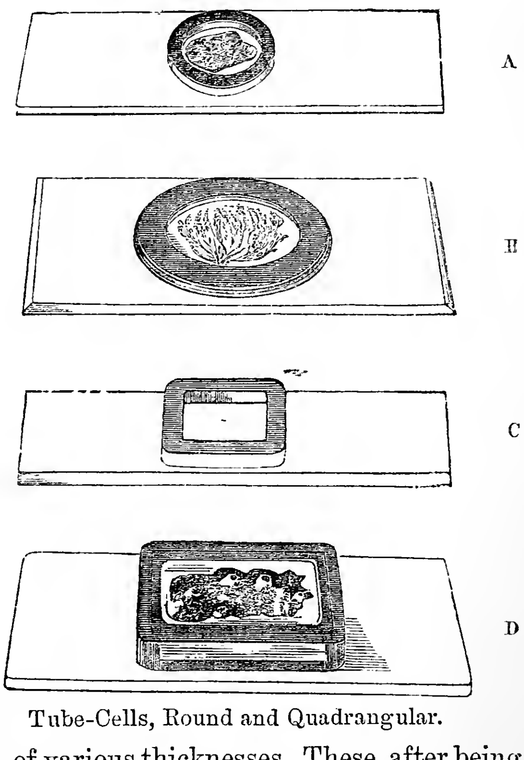
169. *Cells for Dry-mounting.*—Where the object to be mounted 'dry' (*i.e.* not immersed either in fluid or in any 'medium') is so thin as to require that the cover should be but little raised above the slide, a 'cement-cell' (§ 170) answers this purpose very well; and if the application of a gentle warmth be not injurious, the pressing-down of the cover on the softened cement will help both to fix it, and to prevent the varnish applied round its border from running in. Where a somewhat deeper cell is required, it can be made in the manner suggested by Prof. H. L. Smith (U.S.) specially for the mounting of Diatoms. A sheet of thin writing-paper dipped into thick shell-lac varnish is hung up to dry; and rings are then cut out from it by punches of two different sizes. One of these rings being laid on a glass slide, and the cover, with the object dried upon it, laid on the ring, it is to be held in its place by the forceps or spring-clip, and the slide gently warmed so as cause a slight adhesion of the cover to the ring, and of the ring to the slide; and this adhesion may then be rendered complete, by laying another glass slide on the cover, and pressing the two slides together, with the aid of a continued gentle heat.—Still deeper cells may be made with rings punched out of tin-foil of various thicknesses; and cemented with shell-lac varnish on either side. And if yet deeper cells are needed, they may be made of turned rings of vulcanite or ebonite, cemented in the same manner.—It is always safer to protect such dry mounts by attaching paper covers to the slides; as the tendency of the rings to start at any 'jar,' when the shell-lac has re-acquired its resinous hardness, is thereby greatly diminished.—Small objects, such as *Diatoms* and *Polycystina*, which are to be viewed by Lieberkühn illumination (§ 115), should be mounted on disks punched out of thin black card-board, whose diameter scarcely exceeds the field of the Objective under which they are to be shown; and the protecting cell should be large enough to allow an ample opening for the light-rays to pass up from the mirror to the speculum, between the inner edge of its ring and the outer margin of the disk.

170. *Cement-Cells.*—Cells for mounting *thin* objects in any watery medium, may be readily made with Asphalte or Black Japan varnish, by the use of Mr. Shadbolt's 'Turn-table' (§ 176) or one of its modifications. The glass slide being placed under its springs, in such a manner that its two edges shall be equidistant from the centre (a guide to which position is afforded by the circles traced on the brass), and its four corners equally projecting beyond the circular margin of the plate, a camel's hair pencil dipped in the varnish is held in the right hand, so that its point comes into contact with the glass over whichever of the circles may be selected as

the guide to the size of the ring. The turn-table being made to rotate by the application of the left fore-finger to the milled-head beneath, a ring of varnish of a suitable breadth is made upon the glass; and if this be set aside in a horizontal position, it will be found, when hard, to present a very level surface. If a greater thickness be desired than a single application will conveniently make, a second layer may be afterwards laid on. It will be found convenient to make a considerable number of such cells at once, and to keep a stock of them ready prepared for use. If the surface of any ring should not be sufficiently level for a covering-glass to lie flat upon it, a slight rubbing upon a piece of fine emery-paper laid upon a flat table (the ring being held downwards) will make it so.

171. *Ring-Cells.*—For mounting objects of greater thickness, it is desirable to use cells made by cementing rings, either of glass or metal, to the glass slides, with marine glue. Glass-rings of any size, diameter, thickness, and breadth are made by cutting transverse sections of thick-walled tubes; the surfaces of these sections being ground flat and parallel. Not only may round cells (Fig. 120 A, B) of various sizes be made by this simple method, but, by flattening the tube (when hot) from which they are cut, the sections may be made quadrangular, or square, or oblong (C, D). For intermediate thicknesses between cement-cells and glass ring-cells, the Author has found no kind so convenient as the rings (sold by Mr. Collins) stamped out of tin, of various thicknesses. These, after being cemented to the slides, should have their surfaces made perfectly flat by rubbing on a piece of fine grit or a corundum-file, and then smoothed on a Water of Ayr stone; to such surfaces the glass covers will be found to adhere with great tenacity.

FIG. 120.



Tube-Cells, Round and Quadrangular.

The Glass Slides and Cells which are to be attached to each other, must first be heated on the Mounting plate; and some small cuttings of

Marine glue are then to be placed either upon that surface of the cell which is to be attached, or upon that portion of the slide on which it is to lie, the former being perhaps preferable. When they begin to melt, they may be worked over the surface of attachment by means of a needle point; and in this manner the melted glue may be uniformly spread, care being taken to pick out any of the small gritty particles which this cement sometimes contains. When the surface of attachment is thus completely covered with liquefied glue, the cell is to be taken up with a pair of forceps, turned over, and deposited in its proper place on the slide; and it is then to be firmly pressed down with a stick (such as the handle of the needle), or with a piece of flat wood, so as to squeeze out any superfluous glue from beneath. If any air-bubbles should be seen between the cell and the slide, these should if possible be got rid of by pressure, or by slightly moving the cell from side to side; but if their presence results, as is sometimes the case, from deficiency of cement at that point, the cell must be lifted off again, and more glue applied at the required spot. Sometimes, in spite of care, the glue becomes hardened and blackened by overheating; and as it will not then stick well to the glass, it is preferable not to attempt to proceed, but to lift off the cell from the slide, to let it cool, scrape off the overheated glue, and then repeat the process. When the cementing has been satisfactorily accomplished, the slides should be allowed to cool gradually in order to secure the firm adhesion of the glue; and this is readily accomplished, in the first instance, by pushing each, as it is finished, towards one of the extremities of the plate. If two plates are in use, the heated plate may then be readily moved away upon the ring which supports it, the other being brought down in its place, and as the heated plate will be some little time in cooling, the firm attachment of the cells will be secured. If, on the other hand, there be only a single plate, and the operator desire to proceed at once in mounting more cells, the slides already completed should be carefully removed from it, and laid upon a *wooden* surface, the slow conduction of which will prevent them from cooling too fast. Before they are quite cold, the superfluous glue should be scraped from the glass with a small chisel or awl; and the surface should then be carefully cleansed with a solution of potash, which may be rubbed upon it with a piece of rag covering a stick shaped like a chisel. The cells should next be washed with a hard brush and soap and water, and may be finally cleansed by rubbing with a little weak spirit and a soft cloth. In cases in which *appearance* is not of much consequence, and especially in those in which the cell is to be used for mounting large opaque objects, it is decidedly preferable not to scrape off the glue too closely round the edges of attachment; as the 'hold' is much firmer, and the probability of the penetration of air or fluid much less, if the immediate margin of glue be left both outside and inside the cell.—To those to whom *time* is of value, it is recommended that all cells which require Marine-glue cementing be purchased from the dealers in Microscopic apparatus.

172. *Plate-Glass Cells.*—Where large shallow cells with flat bottoms are required (as for mounting *Zoophytes*, small *Medusæ*, &c.), they may be made by drilling holes in pieces of plate-glass of various sizes, shapes, and thicknesses (Fig. 121, A), which are then cemented to glass slides with marine glue. By drilling two holes at a suitable

distance, and cutting out the piece between them, any required elongation of the cavity may be obtained (B, C, D).

173. *Sunk Cells.* — This name is given to round or oval hollows excavated by grinding in the substance of glass slides, which, for this purpose, should be thicker than ordinary. Such cells have the advantage not only of comparative cheapness, but also of durability, as they are not liable to injury by a sudden jar, such as sometimes causes the detachment of a cemented plate or ring. For objects whose shape adapts them to the form and depth of the cavity, such cells will be found very convenient; thus the Author has a series of young *Comatulæ* (Fig. 378) thus mounted, which are extremely well displayed, alike on their upper and on their under surfaces. It naturally suggests itself as an objection to the use of such cells, that the concavity of their bottom must

FIG. 121.

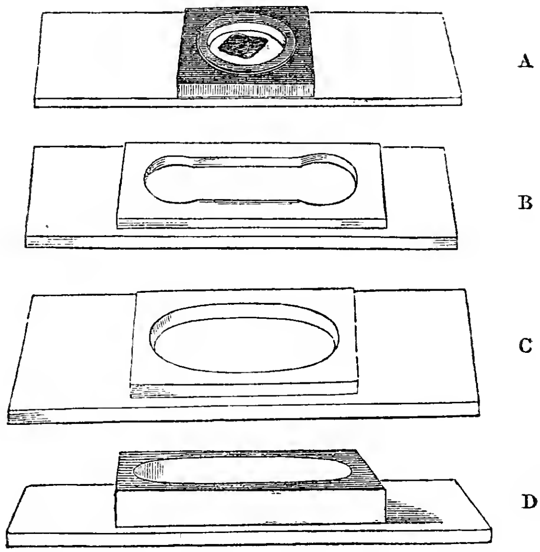
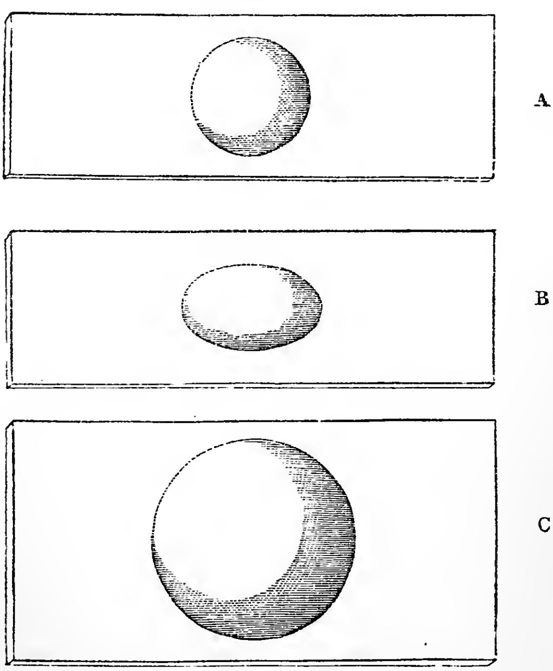


Plate-Glass Cells.

FIG. 122.



Sunk Cells.

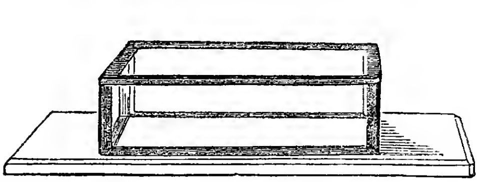
so deflect the light-rays, as to distort or obscure the image; but as the cavity is filled either with water or some other liquid of higher refractive power, the deflection is so slight as to be practically inoperative. Before mounting objects in such cells, the Microscopist should see that their concave surfaces are free from scratches or roughnesses.

174. *Built-up Cells.*—When Cells are required of forms or dimensions not otherwise procurable, they may be *built-up* of separate pieces of glass cemented together. Large *shallow* Cells, suitable for mounting Zoophytes or similar flat objects, may be easily constructed after the following method:—A piece of plate-glass, of a thickness that shall give the desired depth to the cell, is to be cut to the dimensions of its outside wall; and a strip is then to be cut-off with the diamond from each of its edges, of such breadth as shall leave the interior piece equal its dimensions to the cavity of the cell that is desired. This piece being rejected, the four strips are then to be cemented upon the glass slide in their original position, so that the diamond-cuts shall fit together with the most exact precision; and the upper surface is then to be ground flat with emery upon a pewter plate, and left rough.—The perfect construction of large *deep* cells of this kind (Fig. 123, A, B), however, requires a nicety of workmanship which few amateurs possess, and the expenditure of more time than Microscopists generally have to spare; and as is it consequently preferable to obtain them ready-made, directions for making them need not be here given.

Fig. 123.

A

B

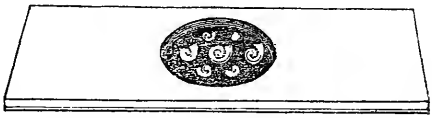


Built-up Cells.

175. *Wooden Slides for Opaque Objects.*—Such 'dry' objects as *Foraminifera,* the capsules of *Mosses,* parts of *Insects,* and the like, may be conveniently mounted in a very simple form of wooden slide (first devised by the Author and now come into general use), which also serves as a protective 'cell.' Let a number of slips of mahogany or cedar be provided, each of the 3-inch by 1-inch size, and of any thickness that may be found convenient, with a corresponding number of slips of card of the same dimensions, and of pieces of *dead*-black paper rather larger than the aperture of the slide. A piece of this paper being gummed to the middle of the card, and some stiff gum having been previously spread over one

side of the wooden slide (care being taken that there is no superfluity of it immediately around the aperture), this is to be laid down upon the card, and subjected to pressure.* An extremely neat 'cell' will thus be formed for the reception of the object (Fig. 124), the depth of which will be determined by the thickness of the slide, and the diameter by the size of the perforation; and it will be found convenient to provide slides of various thicknesses, with apertures of different sizes. The cell should always be deep enough for its wall to rise above the object; but, on the other hand, it should not be too deep for its walls to interfere with the oblique incidence of the light upon any object that may be near its periphery. The object, if flat or small, may be attached by Gum-mucilage (§ 168 *k*); if, however, it be large, and the part of it to be attached have an irregular surface, it is desirable to form a 'bed' to this by gum thickened with starch. If, on the other hand, it should be desired to mount the object edgeways (as when the *mouth* of a *Foraminifer* is to be brought into view), the *side* of the object may be attached with a little gum to the *wall* of the cell.—The complete protection thus given to the Object is the great recommendation of this method. But this is by no means its only convenience. It allows the slides not only to range in the ordinary Cabinets, but also to be laid one against or over another, and to be packed closely in cases, or secured by elastic bands; which plan is extremely convenient not merely for the saving of space, but also for preserving the objects from dust. Should any more special protection be required, a thin glass cover may be laid over the top of the cell, and secured there either by a rim of gum or by a perforated paper cover attached to the slide; and if it should be desired to pack these covered slides together, it is only necessary to interpose *guards* of card somewhat thicker than the glass covers.

Fig. 124.



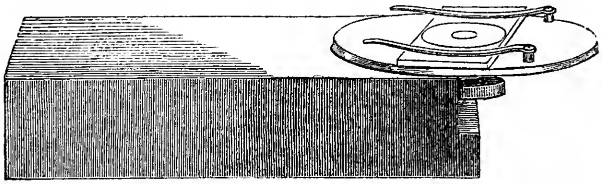
Wooden Slide for Opaque Objects.

176. *Turn-table.*—This simple instrument (Fig. 125), devised by Mr. Shadbolt, is almost indispensable to the Microscopist who desires to preserve preparations that are mounted in any 'medium' beneath circular covers; since it not only serves for the making of those 'Cement-cells' (§ 170) in which thin transparent objects can be best mounted in any kind of 'medium,' but also enables him to apply his varnish for the securing of circular cover-glasses not only with greater neatness and quickness, but also with greater certainty

* It will be found a very convenient plan to prepare a large number of such Slides at once: and this may be done in a marvellously short time, if the slips of card have been previously cut to the exact size in a bookbinder's press. The slides, when put together, should be placed in pairs, back to back; and every pair should have each of its ends embraced by a Spring-press (Fig. 129) until dry.

than he can by the hand alone. As the method of using it for the latter purpose is essentially the same as that already described

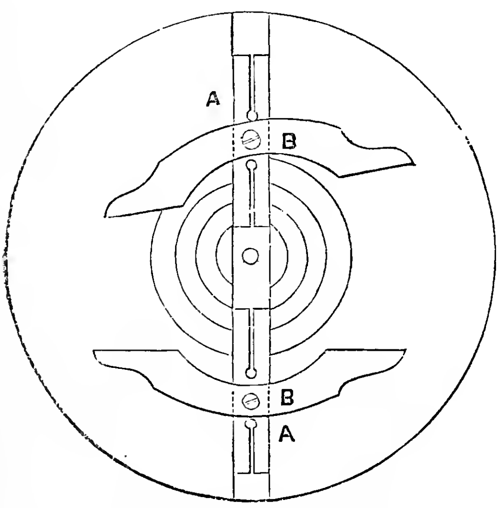
FIG. 125.



Shadbolt's Turn-table for making Cement-Cells.

under the former head, it need not be here repeated; the only special precaution to be observed, being that the cover-glass, not the slide, should be 'centred;' which can be readily done, if *several* concentric circles have been turned on the rotating-table, by making the cover-glass correspond with the one having its own diameter.—A number of ingenious modifications have been devised in this simple instrument, with the view of securing exact centering; the simplest of them (which has the advantage of being applicable at a trifling expense to any existing turn-table) being that of Mr. C. S. Rolfe.* But as it is often requisite to use this instrument with slides not accurately cut to size and shape, or of greater breadth than the 'regulation' 1-inch, the Author is disposed to prefer the form devised by Mr. Dunning† (Fig. 126). The circular table, made rather thicker than usual, has a dovetail groove ploughed out across its diameter, in which work two sliding guides A, A, the ends of which are cut and 'sprung,' so as to have a sufficiently firm hold. These guides carry the two clips B, B; one of which is fixed at right angles to its guide, whilst the other is pivotted, in order that it may adjust itself to any irregularity in the form of the slide.—When Cement-cells are being made either with this or the ordinary Turn-table, it is convenient to mark the centre of each slide with a dot of ink on its under surface; this may be easily applied in its right place by laying on it a slip of card cut to the regulation

FIG. 126.



Dunning's Turn-table.

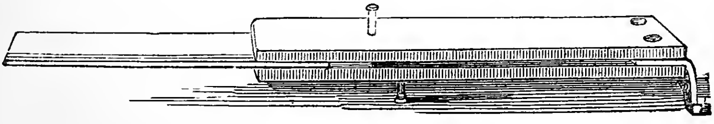
* "Journal of the Quekett Microscopical Club," Vol. v., p. 249.
† Op. cit., Vol. vi., p. 81.

size, with a small central perforation; and by so laying down the slide that the dot lies on the centre of the rotating plate, much trouble may afterwards be saved.

177. *Mounting Plate and Water-Bath.*—Whenever heat has to be applied either in the cementing of Cells or in the mounting of Objects, it is desirable that the slide should not be exposed direct to the flame, but that it should be laid upon a surface of regulated temperature. As cementing with Marine Glue or hardened Canada Balsam requires a heat above that of boiling water, it must be supplied by a plate of metal; and the Author's experience leads him to recommend that this should be a piece of iron not less than six inches square and half an inch thick; and that it should be supported, not on legs of its own, but on the ring of a Retort-stand, so that by raising or lowering the ring, any desired amount of heat may be imparted to it by the lamp or gas-flame beneath. The advantage of a plate of this size and thickness consists in the *gradational* temperature which its different parts afford, and in the slowness of its cooling when removed from the lamp. When many cells are being cemented at once, it is convenient to have two such plates, that one may be cooling while the other is being heated.—The Retort-stand also serves for the support of the Water-Bath, which affords the heat required for liquefying and mixing the fats employed in the imbedding process (§ 189), for melting the glycerine jelly or other media used in mounting, and for a variety of other purposes. A circular-bottomed flat tin vessel, 6 inches in diameter and $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches deep, with a handle like that of a saucepan, and two covers,—one a flat plate of 8 inches square (its edges guarded by being turned over wire) for slides to lie upon, having a hole large enough to admit a small bottle of cement or medium,—the other fitting the vessel, but with an opening large enough for a porcelain basin,—will answer every purpose.

178. *Slider-Forceps, Spring-Clip, and Spring-Press.*—For holding slides to which heat is being applied, especially while cementing objects to be ground-down into thin sections, the wooden *Slider-Forceps* (Fig. 127) will be found extremely convenient. This, by its

Fig. 127.

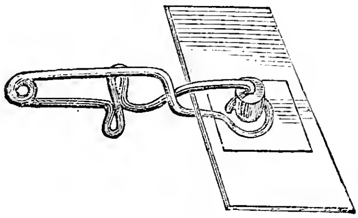


Slider-Forceps.

elasticity, affords a secure grasp to a slide of any ordinary thickness, the wooden blades being separated by pressure upon the brass studs; while the lower stud, with the bent piece of brass at the junction of the blades, affords a level support to the forceps, which thus, while resting upon the table, keeps the heated glass from

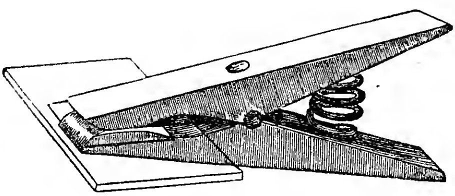
contact with its surface. For holding-down cover-glasses whilst the balsam or other medium is cooling, if the elasticity of the object should tend to make them spring-up, the wire Spring-Clip (Fig. 128), sold at a cheap rate by dealers in Microscopic apparatus, will be found extremely convenient. Or, if a stronger pressure be required, recourse may be had to a simple Spring-Press made by a slight alteration of the 'American clothes peg' which is now in general use in this country for a variety of purposes; all that is necessary being to rub down the opposed surfaces of the 'clip' with a flat file, so that they shall be parallel to each other when an ordinary slide with its cover is interposed between them (Fig. 129). One of these convenient little implements may also be easily made to serve the purpose of a Slider-forceps, by cutting back the upper edge of the clip, and filing the lower to such a plane, that when it rests on its flat side, it shall hold the slide parallel to the surface of the table, as in Fig. 127.

Fig. 128.



Spring-Clip.

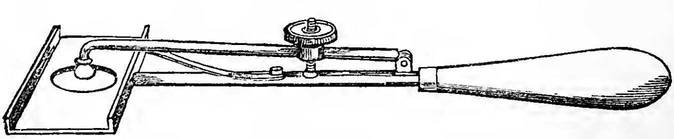
Fig. 129.



Spring-Press.

179. *Mounting Instrument.*—A simple mode of applying graduated pressure concurrently with the heat of a lamp, which will be found very convenient in the mounting of certain classes of objects, is afforded by the Mounting instrument devised by Mr. James Smith. This consists of a plate of brass turned up at its edges, of the proper size to allow the ordinary glass slide to lie loosely in the bed thus formed; this plate has a large perforation in its centre, in order to allow heat to be directly applied to the slide from beneath; and it is attached by a stout wire to a handle (Fig. 130). Close to this handle there is attached by a joint an upper wire, which lies nearly parallel to the first, but makes a downward turn just above the centre of the slide-plate, and is termi-

Fig. 130.



Smith's Mounting Instrument.

nated by an ivory knob; this wire is pressed upwards by a spring beneath it, whilst, on the other hand, it is made to approximate the lower by a milled-head turning on a screw, so as to bring its ivory knob to bear with greater or less force on the covering glass. The special use of this arrangement will be explained hereafter (§ 210).

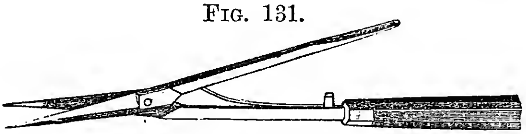
180. *Dissecting Apparatus.*—The mode of making a dissection for Microscopic purposes must be determined by the size and character of the object. Generally speaking, it will be found advantageous to carry on the dissection under Water, with which Alcohol should be mingled where the substance has been long immersed in spirit. The size and depth of the vessel should be proportioned to the dimensions of the object to be dissected; since, for the ready access of the hands and dissecting-instruments, it is convenient that the object should neither be far from its walls, nor lie under any great depth of water. Where there is no occasion that the bottom of the vessel should be transparent, no kind of Dissecting trough is more convenient than that which every one may readily make for himself, of any dimension he may desire, by taking a piece of sheet Gutta-percha of adequate size and stoutness, warming it sufficiently to render it flexible, and then turning-up its four sides, drawing out one corner into a sort of spout, which serves to pour away its contents when it needs emptying. The dark colour of this substance enables it to furnish a back-ground, which assists the observer in distinguishing delicate membranes, fibres, &c., especially when magnifying lenses are employed; and it is hard enough (without being too hard) to allow of pins being fixed into it, both for securing the object, and for keeping apart such portions as it is useful to put on the stretch. When glass or earthenware troughs are employed, a piece of sheet-cork loaded with lead must be provided, to answer the same purposes. In carrying-on dissections in such a trough, it is frequently desirable to concentrate additional light upon the part which is being operated-on, by means of the smaller Condensing-lens (Fig. 86); and when a low magnifying power is wanted, it may be supplied either by a single lens mounted after the manner of Ross's Simple Microscope (Fig. 31, B), or by a pair of Spectacles mounted with the 'semi-lenses' ordinarily used for Stereoscopes.* Portions of the body under dissection being floated-off when detached, may be conveniently taken up from the trough by placing a slip of glass beneath them (which is often the only mode in which delicate membranes can be satisfactorily spread out); and may be then placed under the Microscope for minute examination, being first covered with

* The Author can strongly recommend these Spectacles, as useful in a great variety of manipulations which are best performed under a low magnifying power, with the conjoint use of both eyes.—Where a higher power is needed, recourse may be advantageously had to Messrs. Beck's 3-inch Achromatic Binocular Magnifier, which is constructed on the same principle, allowing the object to be brought very near the eyes, without requiring any uncomfortable convergence of their axes.

thin glass, beneath the edges of which is to be introduced a little of the liquid wherein the dissection is being carried-on. Where the body under dissection is so transparent, that more advantage is gained by transmitting light through it than by looking at it as an opaque object, the trough should have a glass bottom; and for this purpose, unless the body be of unusual size, some of the Glass Cells already described (Figs. 121-123) will usually answer very well. The finest dissections may often be best made upon ordinary slips of glass; care being taken to keep the object sufficiently surrounded by fluid. For work of this kind no simple instrument is more generally serviceable than the Laboratory Dissecting Microscope (Fig. 35), which will carry any power from a 3-inch to a 1-4th inch; whilst the Stephenson Erecting Binocular (Fig. 47) may be used with the like supports for the hands, when a higher power is preferred.

181. The *Instruments* used in Microscopic dissection are for the most part of the same kind as those which are needed in ordinary minute Anatomical research, such as scalpels, scissors, forceps, &c.; the fine instruments used in operations upon the eye, however, will commonly be found most suitable. A pair of delicate Scissors, curved to one side, is extremely convenient for cutting open tubular parts; these should have their points blunted; but other

FIG. 131.



Spring-Scissors.

scissors should have fine points. A pair of very fine-pointed Scissors (Fig. 131), one leg of which is fixed in a light handle, and the other kept apart from it by a spring, so as to close by the pressure of the finger and to open of itself, will be found (if the blades be well sharpened) much superior to any kind of knives, for cutting through delicate tissues with as little disturbance of them as possible.—A pair of small straight Forceps with fine points, and another pair of curved forceps, will be found useful in addition to the ordinary dissecting forceps.

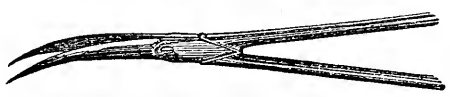
182. Of all the instruments contrived for delicate dissections, however, none are more serviceable than those which the Microscopist may make for himself out of ordinary *needles*. These should be fixed in light wooden handles* (the cedar sticks used for camel-hair pencils, or the handles of steel-penholders, or small Por-

* The handles of ladies' Crochet-needles have been recommended for this purpose; and although they afford the facility of lengthening or shortening the acting point of the needle at will, and also of carrying a reserve store of needles at the other end, yet the Author would decidedly recommend the use of the wooden handles, of which it will be found convenient always to have several at hand, mounted with needles of different sizes.

cupine-quills, will answer extremely well), in such a manner that their points should not project far,* since they will otherwise have too much 'spring;' much may be done by their mere *tearing* action; but if it be desired to use them as *cutting* instruments, all that is necessary is to harden and temper them, and then give them an edge upon a hone. It will sometimes be desirable to give a finer point to such needles than they originally possess; this also may be done upon a hone. A needle with its point bent to a right angle, or nearly so, is often useful; and this may be shaped by simply heating the point in a lamp or candle, giving to it the required turn with a pair of pliers, and then hardening the point again by re-heating it and plunging it into cold water or tallow.

183. *Section-cutting.*—The young Microscopist will do well to practise the cutting of thin Sections of soft Vegetable and Animal substances with a sharp Razor: considerable practice is needed, however, to make effectual use of it; and some individuals acquire a degree of dexterity which others never succeed in attaining. The

FIG. 132.



Curved Scissors for Cutting Thin Sections.

making of hand-sections will be greatly facilitated by the previous use of the hardening and imbedding processes to be hereafter described (§§ 189, 199); but the best of them rarely equal good sections cut by a Microtome.—For the preliminary examination of any soft structure, such a pair of Scissors as is represented in Fig. 132 will often be found very useful; since, owing to the curvature of the blades,† the two extremities of a section taken from a flat surface will generally be found to thin away, although the middle of it may be too thick to exhibit any structure. The two-bladed Knife contrived by Prof. Valentin was formerly much used for

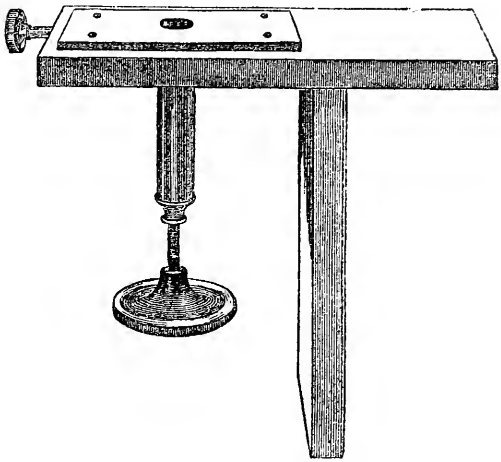
* The following is the mode in which the Author has found it convenient to mount his Needles for this and other purposes:—The needle being held firmly in a pair of pliers grasped by the right hand, its point may be forced into the end of a cedar or other stick held in the left, until it has entered to the depth of half an inch or more; the needle is then cut off to the desired length (the eye-end being thus got rid of); and being then drawn out of the stick, the truncated end is forced into the hole previously made by the point, until it cannot be made to penetrate farther, when it will be found to be very securely fixed. The end of the handle which embraces it may then be bevelled-away round its point of insertion.

† It is difficult to convey by a drawing the idea of the real curvature of this instrument, the blades of which, when it is held in front view, curve—not to either side—but towards the observer; these scissors being, as the French instrument-makers say, *courbés sur le plat.*

cutting microscopic sections of soft tissues: but as such sections can be cut far more effectively by the methods to be presently described, a mere mention of this instrument will here suffice.

184. *Microtome.*—There is a large class of substances, of moderate hardness, both Animal and Vegetable, of which extremely thin and uniform slices can be made by a sharp-cutting instrument, if they be properly held and supported, and the thickness of the section be regulated by a mechanical contrivance; such are, in particular, the Stems and Roots of Plants, and the Horns, Hoofs, Cartilages, and similarly firm structures of Animals. Various costly machines have been devised for this purpose, some of them characterized by great ingenuity of contrivance and beauty of workmanship; but most of the purposes to which these are adapted will be found to be answered by a very simple and inexpensive little instrument, which may either be held in the hand, or (as is preferable) may be firmly attached by means of a T-shaped piece of wood (Fig. 133), to the end of a table or work-bench. This instrument essentially consists of an upright hollow cylinder of brass, with a kind of piston which is pushed from below upwards by a fine-threaded or 'micrometer' screw turned by a large milled-head; at the upper end the cylinder terminates in a brass table, which is planed to a flat surface, or (which is preferable) has a piece of plate-glass cemented to it, to form its cutting bed. At one side is seen a small milled-head, which acts upon a 'binding screw,' whose extremity projects into the cavity of the cylinder, and serves to compress and steady anything that it holds. For this is now generally substituted a pair of screws, working through the side of the cylinder, as in Fig. 120. A cylindrical stem of wood, a piece of horn, whalebone, cartilage, &c., is to be fitted to the interior of the cylinder so as to project a little above its top, and is to be steadied by the 'binding screw;' it is then to be cut to a level by means of a sharp knife or razor laid flat upon the table. The large milled-head is next to be moved through such a portion of a turn as may very slightly elevate the substance to be cut, so as to make it project in an almost insen-

Fig. 133.



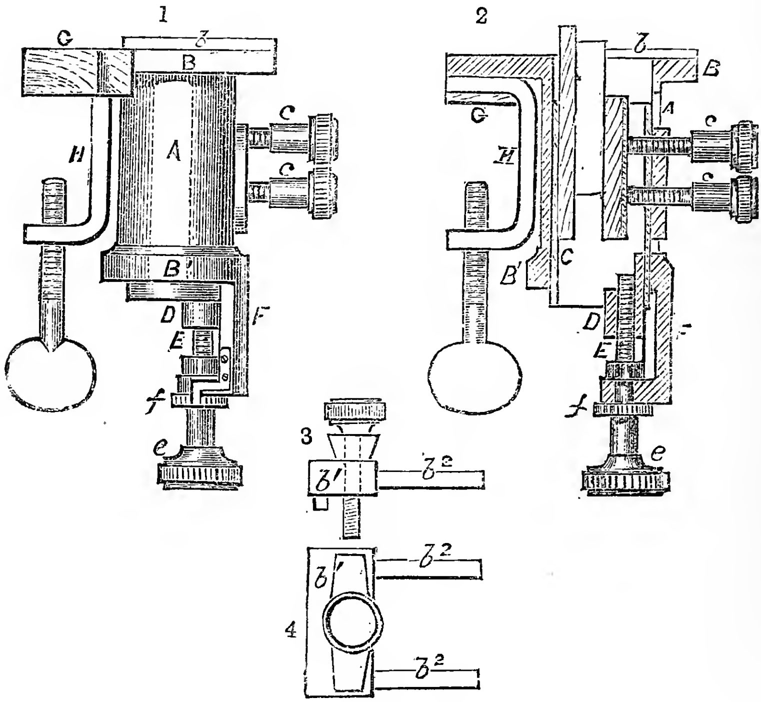
Simple Microtome.

sible degree above the table, and this projecting part is to be sliced off with a knife previously dipped in water. For many purposes, an ordinary razor will answer sufficiently well; but thinner and more uniform sections can be cut by a special knife, having its edge parallel to its back, its sides slightly concave, and its back with a uniform thickness of rather less than 1-4th inch. Such a knife should be 4 or 5 inches long, and 7-8ths inch broad; and should be set in a box-wood handle about 4 inches long (Dr. S. Marsh). The motion given to its edge should be a combination of *drawing* and *pressing*. (It will be generally found that better sections are made by working the knife *from* the operator, than *towards* him). When one slice has been thus taken off, it should be removed from the blade by dipping it into water, or by the use of a camel-hair brush; the milled-head should be again advanced, and another section taken: and so on. Different substances will be found both to *bear* and to *require* different degrees of thickness; and the amount that suits each can only be found by trial. It is advantageous to have the large milled-head graduated, and furnished with a fixed index; so that this amount having been once determined, the screw shall be so turned as to always produce the exact elevation required.—Where the substance of which it is desired to obtain sections by this instrument is of too small a size or of too soft a texture to be held firmly in the manner just described, it may be placed between the two vertical halves of a cork of suitable size to be pressed into the cylinder; and the cork, with the object it grasps, is then to be sliced in the manner already described, the small section of the latter being carefully taken-off the knife, or floated-away from it, on each occasion, to prevent it from being lost among the lamellæ of cork which are removed at the same time. Vertical sections of many Leaves may be successfully made in this way; and if their texture be so soft as to be injured by the pressure of the cork, they may be placed between two half-cylinders of carrot or elder-pith.

185. *Hailes's Microtome.*—The foregoing simple form of Microtome has received, at various hands, numerous modifications of detail, without any essential change in its plan of construction. Its chief defect is, that as the body to be cut is directly acted-on by the screw at the bottom of the cylinder, its motion (if it be tightly held by the binding screws) is apt to be jerky and irregular. To remedy this defect, Mr. H. P. Hailes has devised an improved model, the essential feature of which is that the body to be cut is secured within an inner tube, which, sliding freely within the outer cylinder, is raised smoothly and equally by the micrometer screw attached to the base of the latter, as shown in Fig. 134 (1, 2). The cutting-bed formed by the flange B, is provided with two slips *b* of hardened steel, on which, in ordinary section-cutting, the knife or razor slides horizontally, as in the ordinary Microtome. But by the addition shown in 3, 4, this instrument can also be effectively adapted for cutting thin sections of substances hard enough to

require the use of the saw. At the back of the cutting-bed, there can be secured (by means of a screw and steadying-pins) a metal

Fig. 134.



Hailes's Microtome.

The two upper figures show the instrument (1) as seen from the side, (2) as seen in section:—A, outer cylinder, carrying upper flange B, on whose surface lie two strips of hard steel, *b*, *b*; this flange is fixed to the bar G, which carries a clamp and screw for attaching the Microtome to a table; in the sectional figure (2) is seen the inner tube C, within which the substance to be cut is fixed by the two binding screws *c*, *c*, which work through a slot in the outer cylinder; to the bottom of the inner tube is fixed a block D, through which works the micrometer-screw E, turned by the milled-head *e* in the bracket F attached to the bottom of the outer cylinder, and having a graduated collar *f*.

The two lower figures show the additional Saw-guide, seen from the side at 3, and from above at 4:—b^1, metal block with a screw to secure it on cutting-bed; b^2, b^2, steel guides.

block, b^1, which carries two guides b^2, b^2, of hard steel; and these, when thus attached, lie over the two similar strips fixed on the cutting-bed. By passing the blade of a fine saw between the movable guides and the fixed strips, and screwing down the former (which are raised by a spring) as far as will confine the saw without impeding its working, sections of Bone, Teeth, &c., may be cut

as thin as the nature of the substance will allow, and with a uniformity that without such guidance cannot be attained.—When the Microtome is employed for this last purpose, the saw may be most conveniently worked vertically; and this is readily done by detaching the instrument from the table, and holding it down upon its clamp-side, which is so shaped as to afford a level support.

186. In what is known as the *Strasburg Microtome*, invented by Prof. Schiefferdecker, the substance to be cut is *fixed* in the cylinder by binding-screws, while the circular cutting-bed, instead of being fixed on the upper end of the cylinder, is made to *screw* upon it, so as to be raised or lowered by turning it round. Thus, after a section has been taken, a slight lowering of the cutting-bed, measured by the graduation of its margin, prepares it for the cutting of the next.†—The simplicity of this instrument, which is made to be held in one hand whilst the section is cut with the other, is its great recommendation.

187. *Imbedding and Freezing Microtomes.*—For making thin sections of *soft* tissues, however, preference is now generally given to Microtomes in which the substance to be cut is so *imbedded* in some material that fills the cylinder, that it does not need to be fixed by binding-screws, being pushed upwards by the action of the micrometer-screw beneath upon the imbedding plug. This plug may be either a cylinder of carrot, turnip, potato or elder-pith, cut to fit the well of the Microtome, and excavated to receive the substance to be cut; or it may be a *cast* of the interior, made either by pouring into it paraffine or some similar substance liquefied by heat (§ 189), or by filling it with thick gum-mucilage which is then rendered dense by cold (§ 191). The latter plan was first devised by Prof. Rutherford, whose *Freezing Microtome*, in which the upper part of the cylinder is surrounded by a well filled with a freezing-mixture, has now come into general use.—The substitution of ether-spray for ice-congelation was suggested by Mr. Bevan Lewis; and an improved model, which can be used either as a Freezing or as an Imbedding Microtome, has been devised by Messrs. Beck. An ingenious method of so attaching the cutting-blade by a 'parallel-motion,' as to make its edge at the same time move tangentially and transversely to the plane of section, has been devised by Prof. Seiler of Philadelphia, and has found much approval, as well in this country as in the United States.†

188. *Rivet-Leiser Microtome.*—For the cutting of very thin sections of soft Animal or Vegetable subtances which may be advantageously *imbedded* in paraffine or some other hard fat (§ 189), no instrument is more effective than that represented in Fig. 135, which is known as the 'Leipsig' or 'Rivet-Leiser' Microtome. This has for its base an oblong solid metal plate, from which rises

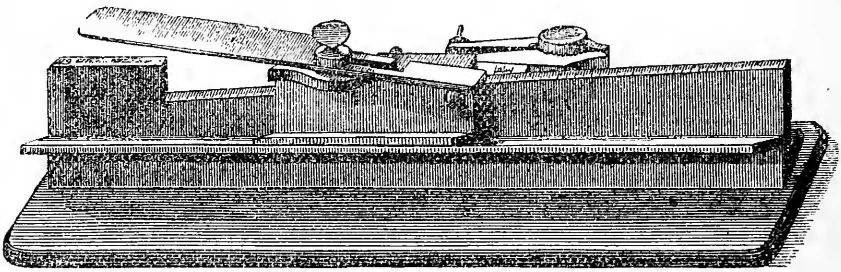
* "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. xvii. (1877), p. 35.—Another Microtome, suggested by the preceding, is described by Mr. W. Teesdale in "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. iii. (1880), p. 1035.

† "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. ii. (1879), p. 329.

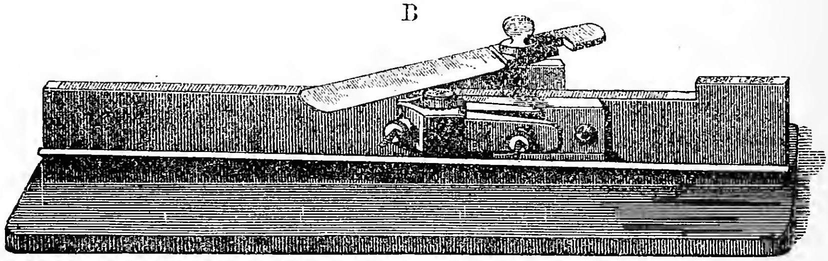
a vertical plate, of which the upper edge is inclined at a gentle angle. From either side of this vertical plate, there projects a

FIG. 135.

A



B

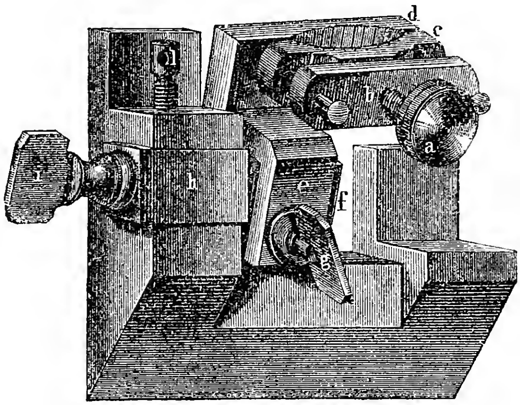


Rivet-Leiser Microtome;—A, as seen from the front; B, as seen from behind.

smoothly-planed plate, like a shelf sloping inwards; but while the edge of one of these shelves is parallel to the base, that of the other is parallel to the inclined margin of the vertical plate. On the former slides a carrier bearing a Knife, the position of which can be adjusted and fixed by means of a binding-screw that works through a slot in its handle; whilst on the latter there slides an Object-carrier, consisting of a clamp, whose opening is controlled by a binding-screw, for holding the block of paraffine in which the substance to be cut is imbedded. From this description it will be obvious that when the carrier that bears the knife (as seen at A) is slid from one end of its shelf to the other, the knife always remains on the same level; but that when the Object-carrier is similarly slid (from right to left in Fig. B), it gradually rises, always keeping at the same height in relation to the inclined edge of the vertical plate. This edge being graduated, and a 'vernier' being engraved on the carriage, the progressive elevation of the surface from which the section is to be taken can be measured with the most minute exactness; as the substitution of the inclined plane for the screw altogether does away with the 'lost time' from which the action of the latter is seldom entirely free. The manner in which the knife

is attached to its carriage, enables it to be so fixed as to give any proportion that may be desired between the *sliding* and the *pressing* cut.—The simple model here described is extensively used on the Continent; and the Author can endorse its reputation from large personal experience. Certain modifications have been recently made in it, however, which must not be passed without notice. One of these relates to the mode in which the block of paraffine is held in its carrier, so that the position of the body imbedded in it may be varied, without taking the block out of the clamp. The screw *a* (Fig. 136), working through the fixed piece *b*, brings the movable piece *c* (which is guided by two pins that work through *b*) against the fixed piece *d*, and thus secures the body to be cut. The clamp is connected by means of the bent arm *e* with the block *f*, the upper surface of which is rounded; and on this it can be moved in a plane parallel to the middle plate of the instrument, so as to take a position more or less oblique, in which it may be fixed by the binding-screw *g*. The block *f* again, is connected with the fixed block *h*, by a pivot passing through the latter; and on this it may be rotated in a plane at right angles to the middle plate, being fixed in any position by the binding-screw *i*. By the combination of these two movements, the object can be placed (and then fixed) in such a position that the sectional plane shall traverse it in any desired direction.—The knife-carrier is also furnished with screws, that enable the inclination of the blade to be regulated with great precision. And, if desired, the object-carrier may be advanced up its incline by a screw traversing the entire length of the instrument, instead of by hand; an addition, however, which seems to the Author quite unnecessary, and certainly not worth its cost.*—This Microtome can be made in hard wood at a lower cost than in metal, and with very little sacrifice (if any) of efficiency; and it has been lately recommended that the body of the instrument should be divided longitudinally, and its two halves attached at one end, but made to diverge at the other at any angle, being there fixed by a clamping screw.†

Fig. 136.



Improved Object Carrier for the Rivet-Leiser Microtome.

* "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. ii. (1880), p. 334.
† Brandt in "Zeitschrift für Mikrosk.," Bd. ii. (1880), p. 172.

Section 2.—*Preparation and Mounting of Objects.*

189. *Imbedding Processes.*—The preparation of soft Organic substances for Section-cutting by 'imbedding,' may be made in two modes, the choice between which will depend upon the consistence of the substance. If (1) it be compact, like a piece of liver or kidney, it only needs to be *surrounded* by the imbedding mass, which will afford it *as a whole* the requisite support. But if (2) it be partly occupied, like a piece of lung, by interstitial cavities, it must be *penetrated* by the imbedding substance, so that *every part* may be duly supported.—For simple imbedding, nothing is so suitable as the firmer fats; which must not, however, be so hard as to be brittle. Thus, if white Wax be used, it should be melted with an equal weight of olive oil; if Paraffine or Spermaceti, it should be melted with about one-fifth of its weight of lard or soft tallow. The latter is generally to be preferred, as shrinking less in cooling; the cylinder formed by the hardened wax being liable to become loose in the well of the Microtone. Either mixture being kept in stock, carefully secluded from dust, a small quantity of it should be melted for use in a porcelain basin floated in a water-bath. To avoid injury to the tissue, its temperature should not be raised more than is requisite for its thorough liquefaction. The substance to be cut, having been previously hardened (§ 199), should be taken out of the spirit in which it is preserved; and a piece of suitable size having been cut off, this should be placed on blotting-paper, so that the spirit may drain away, and its surface may become dry. It is then to be dipped (as recommended by Dr. Sylvester Marsh), in a very weak solution—20 grains to the ounce—of Gum Arabic, care being taken in doing so not to squeeze out the spirit so as to remoisten the surface; and the superfluous liquid being then again removed by blotting-paper, the surface will in a few minutes become dry and glazed with a thin film of gum, the use of which is to keep the imbedding substance from adhering to it. The plug of the Microtome (which may advantageously have a large-headed screw inserted into its upper side, to furnish a 'hold' for the imbedding substance) being set at the depth of about an inch beneath the cutting-bed, melted wax or paraffine is to be poured into it to about half this depth; and the substance to be cut being then held in the tube in the best position (which is not its centre, but nearer the side next the operator), the imbedding material is to be slowly poured in, until the imbedded substance is entirely covered, and the cavity completely filled. When the imbedding material has become quite solidified by cooling, the cutting of sections may be proceeded with.

190. When, however, it is necessary that the substance to be cut should be entirely *penetrated* by the imbedding material, a much longer preparatory process is necessary. In many cases in which the sections are required to display rather the *general* than the *minute* structure, satisfactory results may be obtained by keeping the substance (previously steeped in pure water) immersed for a

lengthened period at a gentle warmth, either in a strong mucilage of Gum Arabic, or in a solution of Gelatine that will 'set' on cooling, its cavities having been laid open sufficiently for the gradual penetration of the liquid to their interior. The entire mass being then exposed to the air, the slow evaporation of its water will at last reduce it to a consistence sufficiently firm to enable sections of it to be taken; or the water may be drawn out by steeping in Alcohol. This plan has been found to answer for the entire bodies of Insects, Stems of herbaceous Plants, and the like.—But when the sections are to be cut of the extreme thinness required for showing minute histological detail, it is much better to use either Paraffine slightly softened with lard, or Cacao-butter, which last has been much recommended for the imbedding of structures of extreme delicacy. The material to be cut must be first *dehydrated*, or deprived of its Water; which is done by letting it lie for a time in ordinary Spirit, then transferring it to Rectified spirit, and at last treating it with absolute Alcohol. From this it is to be transferred to some volatile oil; oil of bergamot being used for delicate objects; oil of turpentine answering sufficiently well for larger bodies. When this has completely replaced the spirit, the body is to be immersed for some little time in a hot saturated solution of paraffine in oil of turpentine. When it has lain sufficiently long in this to be thoroughly penetrated, it is to be immersed in the melted paraffine, which should not be more heated than is necessary to keep it quite liquid; and it should be moved about in this for some little time, an occasional gentle squeeze being given to it with the forceps, so that the solution may be replaced as completely as possible by the liquefied paraffine. When hardened by cooling, the substance thus prepared may be 'imbedded' in any ordinary cylinder Microtome, in the manner already described; the coating with gum being of course omitted. But if the sections are to be made either with the Rivet-Leiser Microtome, or by hand, it is necessary to provide a mould into which the imbedding material can be poured. This may be made of cylindrical form, by twisting a strip of paper round the end of a small ruler; or a brick-shaped block may be cast in a mould made by turning up the edges of a suitably-sized piece of paper, and pinning together the cross-folds at the two ends. But it is generally more convenient to use for this purpose small boxes of tin 2 inches long, and 3-4ths of an inch in breadth and depth, with removable bottoms. A small piece of filtering paper being placed between the bottom and the sides of the box, and the substance to be imbedded being held in it in the most suitable position, the paraffine is poured-in until the box is completely filled, and this is set aside to cool. When the paraffine has perfectly solidified, the box is to be lifted off its bottom; and the block, being pushed out of it, is then ready for cutting.—In using the section-knife, care should be taken to keep it constantly wetted with methylated spirit; and it is desirable that each section should be removed from it before another is taken.

When, for the study of the anatomy of an animal, sections are being taken *in series*, and it is important that their *order* should be preserved, a set of watch-glasses should be previously provided, each about half filled with spirit, and the sections successively taken should be dropped singly into them; care being taken in the arrangement of the glasses to maintain the relative position of the sections. In order to dissolve out the imbedding material, the sections should be soaked in oil of turpentine with about one-fourth part of creasote; and if its structure is suitable for examination with high powers, it may be cleared by a short immersion in oil of cloves. They are then to be mounted either in Canada balsam solution (§ 209) or in Dammar cement.

191. When the freezing process is employed, the substance to be cut (which may either be fresh, or have been hardened by some of the processes to be hereafter described, § 199) must be thoroughly penetrated by a thick solution of gum; for this, when frozen, does not become crystalline, and may be cut like cheese. If the substance to be cut has been immersed in alcohol, this must be completely removed in the first instance by immersion in water for from six to twenty-four hours, according to the size of the mass; for the gum will not penetrate any part which is still alcoholized. And the substance should be then immersed in the gum-solution for from twelve to twenty-four hours before it is frozen; in order that every part may be permeated by the gum, and no water be left to form crystals of ice. If the freezing Microtome of Prof. Rutherford * be employed, the freezing-box should be filled with alternate spoonsfull of salt and either snow or finely powdered ice, which are to be stirred round the well previously filled with the gum solution. With the Ether-spray Microtome, the freezing is produced by the rapid evaporation of the liquid injected into the freezing-chamber. In either case, the substance to be cut is to be introduced into the well, as soon as the gum begins to harden at its periphery; and should be held in place until fixed by the advancing congelation. In cutting the sections, no wetting of the knife is necessary; as it is kept sufficiently wetted by the thawing gum. The sections should be placed in methylated spirit diluted with twice its volume of water; and this soon not only dissolves out the gum, but removes any air-bubbles the section may contain. If the section is to be at once mounted (which should always be done if it is very delicate and liable to be spoiled by manipulation), it should be placed on a slide before it has thawed, and washed by forming around it a little pool of dilute spirit, which may be readily changed two or three times by the glass syringe (§ 127). Sections cut by the freezing process may for the

* This instrument has received various improvements since it was first devised, and should be obtained from Mr. Gardner, South Bridge, Edinburgh, —the maker recommended by its inventor. It may be employed also as an ordinary 'imbedding' Microtome, when the 'imbedding' is thought preferable to the freezing process.

most part be mounted in glycerine jelly, for which no other preparation will be needed than the use (if desired) of the Staining process hereafter to be described (§ 202). But if, for the sake of rendering the sections more transparent, mounting them in Canada balsam or Dammar is preferred, they must be treated first with strong spirit, then with absolute alcohol, and then with either oil of cloves or oil of turpentine.—It is claimed by Dr. Rutherford as the special advantage of the freezing process, that "delicate organs, "such as the retina, the embryo, villi of the intestines, lung, trachea "with its ciliated epithelium, may all be readily cut without fear "of their being destroyed by the imbedding agent." When imbedded in paraffine, very delicate structures are more liable to damage; the villi of the intestine, for instance, being often denuded of their epithelium, and sometimes themselves torn.

192. *Grinding and Polishing Sections of Hard Substances.*—Substances which are too hard to be sliced in a Microtome—such as Bones, Teeth, Shells, Corals, Fossils of all kinds, and even some dense Vegetable Tissues—can only be reduced to the requisite thinness for Microscopical examination, by grinding-down thick sections until they become so thin as to be transparent. General directions for making such preparations will be here given;* but those special details of management which particular substances may require, will be given when these are respectively described.—The first thing to be done will usually be to procure a *section* of the substance, as thin as it can be safely cut. Most substances not siliceous may be divided by the fine Saws used by artizans for cutting brass; and these may be best worked either by a mechanical arrangement such as that devised by Dr. Matthews,† or, if by hand, between 'guides,' such as are attached for this purpose to Hailes's and some other Microtomes. But there are some bodies (such as the Enamel of Teeth, and Porcellaneous Shells), which, though merely calcareous, are so hard as to make it very difficult and tedious to divide them in this mode; and it is much the quicker operation to *slit* them with a disc of soft iron (resembling that used by the Lapidary) charged at its edge with diamond-dust, which disc may be driven in an ordinary lathe. Where waste of material is of no account, a very expeditious method of obtaining pieces fit to grind down, is to detach them from the mass with a strong pair of 'cutting pincers,' or, if they be of small dimensions, with 'cutting pliers;' and a flat surface must then be given to it, either by holding them to the side of an ordinary grindstone, or by rubbing on a plate of lead (cast or planed to a perfect level) charged with emery, or by a strong-toothed file; the former being the most suitable for the *hardest* substances, the latter for the *toughest*. There are certain substances, especially Calcareous Fossils of Wood, Bone, and Teeth,

* The following directions do not apply to *Siliceous* substances; as sections of these can only be prepared by those who possess a regular Lapidary's apparatus, and have been specially instructed in the use of it.

† "Journ. Quekett Microsc. Club," Vol. vi. (1880), p. 83.

in which the greatest care is required in the performance of these preliminary operations, on account of their extreme friability; the vibration produced by the working of the saw or the file, or by grinding on a rough surface, being sufficient to disintegrate even a thick mass, so that it falls to pieces under the hand; such specimens, therefore, it is requisite to treat with great caution, dividing them by the smooth action of the wheel, and then rubbing them down upon nothing rougher than a very fine 'grit,' or on the 'corundum-files' now sold in the tool-shops, which are made by imbedding corundum of various degrees of fineness in a hard resinous substance. Where (as often happens) such specimens are sufficiently porous to admit of the penetration of Canada Balsam, it will be desirable, after soaking them in turpentine for a while, to lay some liquid balsam upon the parts through which the section is to pass, and then to place the specimen before a fire or in an oven for some little time, so as first to cause the balsam to run-in, and then to harden it; by this means the specimen will be rendered much more fit for the processes it has afterwards to undergo.—It not unfrequently happens that the small size, awkward shape, or extreme hardness of the body, occasions a difficulty in holding it either for cutting or grinding; in such a case, it is much better to attach it to the glass in the first instance by any side that happens to be flattest, and then to rub it down by means of the 'hold' of the glass upon it, until the projecting portion has been brought to a plane, and has been prepared for permanent attachment to the glass. This is the method which it is generally most convenient to pursue with regard to small bodies; and there are many which can scarcely be treated in any other way than by attaching a number of them to the glass at once, in such a manner as to make them mutually support one another.*

193. The mode in which the operation is then to be proceeded with, depends upon whether the section is to be ultimately set up in Canada balsam (§ 210), or is to be mounted 'dry' (§ 169), or in

* Thus, in making horizontal and vertical sections of *Foraminifera*, as it would be impossible to slice them through, they must be laid close together in a bed of hardened Canada Balsam on a slip of glass, in such positions, that when rubbed down, the plane of section shall traverse them in the desired directions; and one flat surface having been thus obtained for each, this must be turned downwards, and the other side ground away. The following ingenious plan was suggested by Dr. Wallich ("Ann. of Nat. Hist.," July, 1861, p. 58), for turning a number of minute objects together, and thus avoiding the tediousness and difficulty of turning each one separately:—The specimens are cemented with Canada Balsam, in the first instance, to a thin film of mica, which is then attached to a glass slide by the same means; when they have been ground-down as far as may be desired, the slide is gradually heated just sufficiently to allow of the detachment of the mica-film and the specimens it carries; and a clean slide with a thin layer of hardened balsam having been prepared, the mica-film is transferred to it with the ground surface downwards. When its adhesion is complete, the grinding may be proceeded with; and as the mica-film will yield to the stone without the least difficulty, the specimens, now reversed in position, may be reduced to requisite thinness.

fluid (§ 211). In the former case, the following is the plan to be pursued:—The flattened surface is to be polished by rubbing it with water on a 'Water-of-Ayr' stone, or on a hone or 'Turkey'-stone, or on an 'Arkansas'-stone; the first of the three is the best for all ordinary purposes, but the two latter, being much harder, may be employed for substances which resist it.* When this has been sufficiently accomplished, the section is to be attached with hard Canada balsam to a slip of thick well-annealed glass; and as the success of the final result will often depend upon the completeness of its adhesion to this, the means of most effectually securing that adhesion will now be described in detail. The slide having been placed on the cover of the Water-bath, and the previously-hardened balsam having been softened by the immersion of the jar containing it in the bath itself, a sufficient quantity of this should be laid on the slide to form, when spread out by liquefaction, a thick drop somewhat larger than the surface of the object to be attached. The slide should then be allowed to cool, in order that the hardness of the balsam should be tested. If too soft, as indicated by its ready yielding to the thumb-nail, it should be heated a little more, care being taken not to make it boil so as to form bubbles; if too hard, which will be shown by its chipping, it should be re-melted and diluted with more fluid balsam, and then set aside to cool as before. When it is found to be of the right consistence, the section should be laid upon its surface with the polished side downwards; the slip of glass is next to be gradually warmed until the balsam is softened, special care being taken to avoid the formation of bubbles; and the section is then to be gently pressed down upon the liquefied balsam, the pressure being at first applied rather on one side than over its whole area, so as to drive the superfluous balsam in a sort of wave towards the other side, and an equable pressure being finally made over the whole. If this be carefully done, even a very large section may be attached to glass without the intervention of any air-bubbles; if, however, they should present themselves, and they cannot be expelled by increasing the pressure over the part beneath which they are, or by slightly shifting the section from side to side, it is better to take the section entirely off, to melt a little fresh balsam upon the glass, and then to lay the section upon it as before.

194. When the section has been thus secured to the glass, and the attached part thoroughly saturated (if it be porous) with hard Canada balsam, it may be readily reduced in thickness, either by grinding or filing, as before, or, if the thickness be excessive, by taking off the chief part of it at once by the slitting wheel. So soon, however, as it approaches the thinness of a piece of ordinary

* As the *flatness* of the polished surface is a matter of the first importance, that of the Stones themselves should be tested from time to time; and whenever they are found to have been rubbed-down on any one part more than on another, they should be flattened on a paving-stone with fine sand, or on the lead-plate with emery.

card, it should be rubbed down with water on one of the smooth stones previously named, the glass slip being held beneath the fingers with its face downwards, and the pressure being applied with such equality that the thickness of the section shall be (as nearly as can be discerned) equal over its entire surface. As soon as it begins to be translucent, it should be placed under the Microscope (particular regard being had to the precaution specified in § 143), and note taken of any inequality; and then, when it is again laid upon the stone, such inequality may be brought down by making special pressure with the forefinger upon the part of the slide above it. When the thinness of the section is such as to cause the water to spread around it between the glass and the stone, an excess of thickness on either side may often be detected by noticing the smaller distance to which the liquid extends. In proportion as the substance attached to the glass is ground away, the superfluous balsam which may have exuded around it will be brought into contact with the stone; and this should be removed with a knife, care being taken, however, that a margin be still left round the edge of the section. As the section approaches the degree of thinness which is most suitable for the display of its organisation, great care must be taken that the grinding process be not carried too far; and frequent recourse should be had to the Microscope, which it is convenient to have always at hand when work of this kind is being carried on. There are many substances whose intimate structure can only be displayed in its highest perfection, when a very little more reduction would destroy the section altogether; and every Microscopist who has occupied himself in making such preparations, can tell of the number which he has sacrificed in order to attain this perfection. Hence, if the amount of material be limited, it is advisable to stop short as soon as a *good* section has been made, and to lay it aside—'letting well alone'—whilst the attempt is being made to procure a *better* one; if this should fail, another attempt may be made, and so on, until either success has been attained, or the whole of the material has been consumed—the *first* section, however, still remaining: whereas, if the first, like every subsequent section, be sacrificed in the attempt to obtain perfection, no trace will be left "to show what once has been." In judging of the appearance of a section in this stage under the Microscope, it is to be remembered that its transparence will subsequently be considerably increased by mounting in Canada balsam: this is particularly the case with Fossils to which a deep hue has been given by the infiltration of some colouring matter, and with any substances whose particles have a molecular aggregation that is rather amorphous than crystalline. When a sufficient thinness has been attained, the section may generally be mounted in Canada balsam; and the mode in which this must be managed will be detailed hereafter (§ 210).

195. By a slight variation in the foregoing process, sections may be made of structures, in which (as in Corals) *hard and soft parts*

are combined, so as to show both to advantage. Small pieces of the substance are first to be stained thoroughly (§ 202), and are then to be 'dehydrated' by alcohol (§ 190). A thin solution of copal in chloroform is to be prepared, in which the pieces are to be immersed; and this solution is to be concentrated by slow evaporation, until it can be drawn out in threads which become brittle on cooling. The pieces are then to be taken out, and laid aside to harden; and when the copal has become so firm that the edge of the finger-nail makes no impression, they are to be cut into slices, and ground-down attached to glass, in the manner already described, the sections being finally mounted in Canada balsam.—The sections (attached to glass) may be partially or completely decalcified, the soft parts remaining *in situ,* by first dissolving out the copal with chloroform; when, after being well washed in water, they should be again stained, and mounted either in weak spirit, or (after having been dehydrated) in Canada balsam.*

196. A different mode of procedure, however, must be adopted when it is desired to obtain sections of Bone, Tooth or other finely tubular structures, *un*penetrated by Canada balsam. If tolerably thin sections of them can be cut in the first instance, or if they are of a size and shape to be held in the hand whilst they are being roughly ground-down, there will be no occasion to attach them to glass at all: it is frequently convenient to do this at first, however, for the purpose of obtaining a 'hold' upon the specimen; but the surface which has been thus attached must afterwards be completely rubbed away, in order to bring into view a stratum which the Canada balsam shall not have penetrated. As none but substances possessing considerable toughness, such as Bones and Teeth, can be treated in this manner, and as these are the substances which are most quickly reduced by a coarse file, and are least liable to be injured by its action, it will be generally found possible to reduce the sections nearly to the required thinness, by laying them upon a piece of cork or soft wood held in a vice, and operating upon them first with a coarser and then with a finer file. When this cannot safely be carried farther, the section must be rubbed down upon that one of the fine stones already mentioned (§ 193) which is found best to suit it: as long as the section is tolerably thick, the finger may be used to press and move it; but as soon as the finger itself begins to come into contact with the stone, it must be guarded by a flat slice of cork, or by a piece of gutta-percha, a little larger than the object. Under either of these, the section may be rubbed-down to the desired thinness; but even the most careful working on the finest-grained stone will leave its surface covered with scratches, which not only detract from its appearance, but prevent the details of its internal structure from being as readily made-out as they can be in a polished section.

* See Koch in "Zoologischer Anzeig.," Bd. i., p. 36.—The Author, having seen (by the kindness of Mr. H. N. Moseley) some sections of Corals prepared by this process, can testify to its complete success.

This polish may be imparted by rubbing the section with putty-powder (peroxide of tin) and water upon a leather strap, made by covering the surface of a board with buff-leather, having three or four thicknesses of cloth, flannel, or soft leather beneath it: this operation must be performed on both sides of the section, until all the marks of the scratches left by the stone shall have been rubbed out; when the specimen will be fit for mounting 'dry' after having been carefully cleansed from any adhering particles of putty-powder.

197. *Decalcification.*—When it is desired to examine the structure of the Organic matrix, in which the Calcareous salts are deposited that give hardness to many Animal and to a few Vegetable structures (such as the true Corallines), these salts must be dissolved away by the action of some Mineral Acid, which may be either Nitric or Hydrochloric. This should be employed in a very dilute state, in order that it may make as little change as possible in the soft tissue it leaves behind. When the Lime is in the state of Carbonate (as, for example, in the skeletons of *Echinoderms*, Chap. XIV.), the body to be decalcified should be placed in a glass jar or wide-mouthed bottle holding from 4 to 6 oz. of water, and the acid should be added drop by drop, until the disengagement of air-bubbles shows that it is taking effect; and the solvent process should be allowed to take place very gradually, more acid being added as required. When, on the other hand, much of the lime is in the state of Phosphate, as in Bones and Teeth, the strength of the acid solvent must be increased; and for the hardening of the softer parts of the organic matrix, it is desirable that Chromic acid should be used. In the case of small bones, or delicate portions of large (such as the cochlea of the ear), a half per cent. solution of chromic acid will itself serve as the solvent; but larger masses require either Nitric or Hydrochloric acid in addition, to the extent of 2 per cent. of the former or 5 per cent. of the latter. By some the chromic and the nitric or muriatic acid are mixed in the first instance; while by others it is recommended that the bone should lie first in the chromic acid solution for a week or ten days, and that the second acid should be then added. If the softening is not completed in a month, more acid must be added. When thoroughly decalcified, the bone should be transferred to rectified spirit; and it may then be either sliced in the Microtome, or torn into shreds for the demonstration of its lamellæ.—Acid solvents may also be employed in removing the outer parts of Calcareous skeletons, for the display of their internal cavities (a plan which the Author has often found very useful in the study of *Foraminifera*); or for getting rid of them entirely, so as to bring into complete view any 'internal cast' which may have been formed by the silicification of its originally soft contents (Figs. 332, 337). It has been in this mode, even more than by the cutting of thin sections, that the structure of *Eozöon Canadense* (Plate XVII.) has been elucidated by Professor Dawson and the Author. For the first of these purposes, strong acid should be applied (under

the Dissecting Microscope) with a fine camel's hair pencil; and another such pencil charged with water should be at hand, to enable the observer to stop the solvent action whenever he thinks it has been carried far enough. For the second, it is better that the acid should only be strong enough for the *slow* solution of the shelly substance; as the too rapid disengagement of bubbles often produces displacement of delicate parts of the substituted mineral, whilst, if the acid be too strong, the 'internal cast' may be altogether dissolved away.

198. *Preparation of Vegetable Substances.*—Little preparation is required, beyond steeping for a short time in distilled water to get rid of saline or other impurities, for mounting in preservative media specimens of the minuter forms of Vegetable life, or portions of the larger kinds of *Algæ, Fungi,* or other succulent Cryptograms. But the Woody structures of *Phanerogams* are often so consolidated by gummy, resinous, or other deposits, that sections of them should not be cut until they have been *softened* by being partially or wholly freed from these. Accordingly, pieces of stems or roots should be soaked for some days in water, with the aid of a gentle heat if they are very dense, and should then be steeped for some days in methylated spirit, after which they should again be transferred to water. The same treatment may be applied to hard-coated seeds, the 'stones' of fruit, 'vegetable ivory,' and other like substances.—Some Vegetable substances, on the other hand, are too soft to be cut sufficiently thin without previous *hardening,* either by allowing them to lose some of their moisture by evaporation, or by drawing it out by steeping them in spirit. Either treatment answers very well with such substances as that which forms the tuber of the Potato; sections of which display the starch-grains *in situ.* Where, on the other hand, it is desired to preserve colour, spirit must not be used; and recourse may be had to Gum-imbedding (§ 191), which is particularly serviceable where the substance is penetrated by air-cavities, as is the case with the Stem of the *Rush,* the thick Leaves of the *Water-lily,* &c. But where the *staining* process is to be employed (§ 200), the substance should be previously bleached by the action of chlorine (preferably by Labarraque's chlorinated soda), and then treated with Alcohol for a few hours.

199. *Hardening of Animal Substances.*—Save in the case already treated-of (§ 192), in which the tissues are consolidated by Calcareous deposit, the preparatory treatment of Animal substances consists in *hardening* them. The very soft tissues of which most of the *lower* Animals are composed, contain so large a proportion of Water, that the withdrawal of this by immersion in strong spirit causes them to shrink so much as completely to obscure their structure. Nothing has yet been found so serviceable in preserving them as *Osmic acid;* the poisonous action of which at once kills living Infusoria, &c., Echinoderm or Annelid larvæ, and the like; and hardens their delicate organisms, so as to allow them to be afterwards

stained and preserved with very little change; and thus many points of their structure can be better made out in their 'mounted' than in their living state. The special procedures which have been successfully worked-out by M. Certes for *Infusoria*, and by Mr. Percy Sladen for *Echinoderm-larvæ*, will be described under those heads. —The hardening of the general body-substance of the larger *Invertebrata* is for the most part sufficiently effected by the action of the Alcoholic spirit in which they are usually preserved; and this may be carried farther, if required, by steeping them for a time in absolute Alcohol. For hardening particular tissues, however, such as Nerves, recourse must be had to some of those *hardening agents*, used in the preparation of the Tissues of the higher Animals, which will be now specified:—

a. Alcohol.—For hardening purposes, Rectified spirit should be used in preference to methylated; and its action is (as a rule) most beneficial after some of the other hardening agents have been employed. The substance to be hardened should be first placed for a day or two in a mixture of equal parts of rectified spirit and water, then transferred for about 48 hours to rectified spirit, and from this to absolute alcohol.—One injurious effect of this treatment is, that by the coagulation of their albuminous components many textures are rendered opaque: but, as Dr. Beale pointed out, this may be corrected by the addition of a little caustic Soda, which must be made, however, with great caution.—When the Alcoholic treatment is used merely for so *dehydrating* sections previously immersed in watery solutions, that they may be mounted in Canada balsam or Dammar, they may be transferred at once from rectified spirit to oil of turpentine, without treating them with absolute alcohol.

b. Chromic Acid, which is one of the most generally useful of hardening agents, is most conveniently kept in a 1 per cent. solution, which may be diluted with several times its volume of water, with or without the addition of spirit. Although its hardening action may be effected by a strong solution in two or three days, it is far better to prolong the process by using the menstruum weak, especially when the substance is in mass; since, if its exterior be so hardened as to prevent the penetration of the fluid, its interior will soften and decay. The following is the mode of procedure most generally approved:—The menstruum having been prepared by mixing two parts of a 1-6th per cent. solution of chromic acid and one part of methylated spirit, the material must be cut into small pieces about half an inch square, and put into a wide-mouthed stoppered bottle holding from 6 to 10 ozs. of the fluid; this fluid should be changed at the end of 24 hours, and then every third day; and the material will be probably found sufficiently hardened (which must be ascertained by trying whether a tolerably thin hand-section can be made with a razor) in the course of from 8 to 12 days. If not, the process must be continued, care being taken that it be not so prolonged as to render the substance brittle. The hardening may afterwards be completed by transferring the substance first into dilute and then into stronger spirit; and this will get rid of the colour given by the chromic acid, as well as of other flocculent matter. The spirit must be changed as often as it becomes foul and discoloured; and when it remains bright and clear, the specimens will be ready for cutting.

c. Bichromate of Potass, in a 2 per cent. watery solution, may be used

where very slow and prolonged hardening is required. With the addition of 1 per cent. of sulphate of soda, it constitutes *Müller's Fluid*, which may be conveniently used to harden large pieces that may be left in it for several weeks; no change of the fluid being necessary after the first week.—The hardened substance, after being well washed, is to be treated with spirit, as in the preceding case.

d. Picric or *Carbazotic Acid* is used for the same purposes as Chromic acid; its hardening power is not so great, but it does not shrivel the tissues as much, its action is more rapid, and it may be advantageously used where 'decalcification' is necessary (§ 197). As it is but slightly soluble in water, a cold-water solution must be saturated; and the quantity of liquid should be large in proportion to that of the substance to be acted-on.—Picric acid is used, in combination with Carmine or Aniline-blue, as a staining material (§ 202, *b*).

e. Kleinenberg's Fluid.—The following method of preparing delicate and perishable tissues is strongly recommended by Kleinenberg; who has had much experience of it in his investigations on the anatomy of the lower Invertebrata:—To a saturated solution of picric acid in distilled water, add 2 per cent. of concentrated sulphuric acid; all the picric acid which is precipitated must be removed by filtration. One part of the filtrate is to be diluted with 3 parts of water; and, finally, as much pure kreosote must be added as will mix. The object to be preserved must remain in this liquid for 3, 4, or more hours; and is then to be transferred for 5 or 6 hours into 70 per cent. alcohol, and thence removed into 90 per cent. alcohol, which should be changed until it ceases to acquire a yellow tint.

f. Osmic Acid.—This agent is one of peculiar value to the Microscopist whose studies lie among the lower forms of Animal and Vegetable life; as its application immediately kills them, without producing any retraction or shrinking of their parts, and not only preserves their tissues, but brings out differences in those which might otherwise escape observation. It is sold in the solid state in sealed tubes; and is most conveniently kept as a 1 per cent. solution in distilled water. The solution should be preserved in well-stoppered bottles secluded from the light; and should be used with great caution, as it gives forth a pungent vapour which is very irritating to the eyes and nostrils. It is recommended by Dr. Pelletan,* M. Certes,† and M. Raphael Blanchard,‡ for fixing and preserving Animalcules (*Infusoria* and *Rotifera*), *Desmidieæ*, *Diatomaceæ*, *Bacteria*, and *Vibriones*, &c.; by Dr. Vignal§ for *Noctiluca*; by Mr. T. Jeffrey Parker|| for *Entomostraca* and other small *Crustacea*; and it has been successfully used also in the preparation of *Insect* structures. To the Histologist its special value lies in its blackening of fatty matters and the medullary substance of nerve-fibres. And the Embryologist finds it of peculiar value in giving firmness and distinctness to the delicate textures with which he has to deal. Various degrees of dilution of the 1 per cent. solution will be needed for these different purposes. Mr. Parker further states (*loc. cit.*) that he has found this agent very serviceable in the preparation of delicate Vegetable structures. "The acid seems to be taken up

* "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. i. (1878), p. 189.

† *Ibid.*, Vol. ii. (1879), p. 331, and 'Comptes Rendus,' 1879, p. 433.

‡ *Ibid.*, Vol. ii. (1879), p. 463.

§ Robin's "Archives de Physiologie," Tom. xiv. (1878), p. 586.

|| "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. ii. (1879), p. 381.

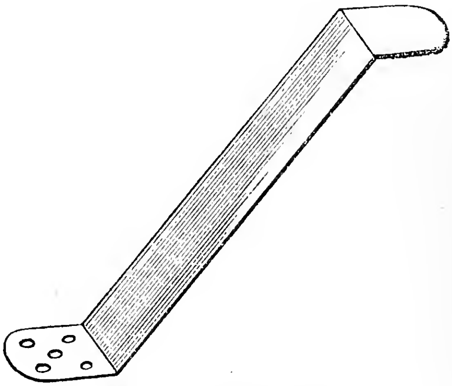
by each granule of the protoplasm, and these to be decomposed, giving to the granule the characteristic grey colour, thus at the same time both hardening and staining."—A mixture of 9 parts of a 1·4th per cent. solution of Chromic acid, with one part of a 1 per cent. solution of Osmic acid, answers for many purposes better than osmic acid alone, the brittleness produced by its use being completely avoided.—After being subjected to this agent, the specimens should be treated with 30 per cent. alcohol, gradually increased in strength to absolute.

200. *Staining Processes.*—Much attention has been given of late years to the use of agents, which, either by simply dyeing, or by chemically acting on Organic substances, in different modes and degrees, serve to differentiate the different parts of organs or tissues of complex structure, and to render more distinct such delicate features in preparations mounted in transparent media, as might otherwise escape notice. The agents which merely *dye* the tissues are for the most part Colouring matters of Vegetable or Animal origin; those which act upon them *chemically* are Mineral substances. The dyes need generally to be 'fixed' by some 'mordant;' but the effects of chemical agents are usually permanent. The staining-processes may be used either before or after section-cutting, according to circumstances. Where the substance is in mass, and is not readily penetrable by the staining fluid (which is especially liable to be the case where it has been hardened in chromic acid), it is generally better to stain the sections *after* cutting, if they hold sufficiently well together to bear being transferred from one fluid to another. And if the substance is to be imbedded in gum, and cut with the freezing Microtome, it is generally preferable to stain the sections *after* they have been cut; as the processes necessary for the removal of the gum would be likely also to remove the dye. But where the substance to be cut has to be penetrated by wax or paraffine, it is better that the staining should be effected in the first instance. As a general rule, it is better that where the substance is to be stained *en masse*, the staining fluid should be weak and its action slow; because in that mode the stain is more equably diffused. When, on the other hand, the process is made use of with thin sections, it is convenient that the action should be more rapid, and the staining fluid may therefore be stronger; but unless its operation be carefully watched so as to be stopped at the right stage, the whole tissue may be deeply dyed, and the value of the *selective* staining altogether lost.

201. It will generally be found convenient to carry-on the staining of thin sections either in watch-glasses, or in small cups of white porcelain; but care must be taken not to place many sections together so as to lie one upon another, as this will prevent the staining from being uniform. Small delicate sections may often be advantageously stained upon the glass slides upon which they are to be mounted; a pool of the staining fluid being made upon the slide, to be removed, when the staining has proceeded far enough, by the small glass Syringe (§ 127). It is even possible to

stain a section after it has been covered with thin glass, by depositing the fluid in contact with one edge of the glass cover, and drawing it through by applying a bit of blotting-paper to the opposite margin; and the process may thus be performed while the section is actually under observation on the stage of the Microscope, the staining liquid being withdrawn in the same manner when the desired effect has been produced, and being replaced by the preservative medium.—For taking-up sections without injury to them, and transferring them from one vessel to another, recourse may be advantageously had to the 'lifter' of Dr. Sylvester Marsh* (Fig. 137); which is a strip of German silver or copper of the thickness of stout cardboard, 7 inches long and 5-8ths inch broad, each end of which, carefully smoothed and rounded, is to be turned at the distance of 5-8ths inch to an angle of about 35°. One end is to be left plain, for lifting the section with some of its fluid, when it is to be deposited on a slide; while the other is perforated for letting the fluid escape, when the section is to be floated-off into a vessel filled with some different fluid.

FIG. 137.



Marsh's Section-Lifter.

202. The relative value of different Staining Agents, the best modes of applying them, and the benefits derivable from their use in the study of the minute structure of Man and the higher Animals,† have now been pretty fully determined by Histologists; and considerable progress has also been made in the application of the differential staining process to the various parts of the higher Vegetable fabrics.‡ But there is still a wide field which has been as yet but little cultivated, in the application of the staining process to the study of the lower Organisms of both Kingdoms: and every one who is engaged in the minute investigation of any particular group, must work out for himself the modifications which the ordinary methods may require. All that can be here attempted, is to give such directions as to the agents to be employed, and the best modes of using them, as are likely to be most generally useful.

* See his useful little Treatise on "Section-Cutting."

† See the "Treatises on Practical Histology" by Prof. Rutherford, Prof. Schäfer, Dr. Heneage Gibbes, Prof. Ranvier, Prof. Frey, and others; "How to Work with the Microscope" by Dr. Beale; and Davies's "Preparation and Mounting of Microscopic Objects" (2nd Edition, edited by Dr. Matthews).

‡ This has been chiefly carried out in the United States by Dr. Beatty, Mr. Walmsley, and Mr. Merriman, whose processes are described in the successive volumes of the "American Journal of Microscopy."

a. Carmine.—This was one of the first Dyes employed for staining purposes; and its value was specially insisted-on by Dr. Beale, as enabling living Protoplasm (by him designated 'germinal matter,' or 'bioplasm') to be distinguished from any kind of 'formed material.' It has a special affinity for cell-nuclei (protoplasts) and the axial cylinders of white nerve-fibres; and thus, if the substance to be stained be only left in the carmine-fluid long enough for it to dye these substances, they are strikingly differentiated from all others. It is essential that the fluid should have a slight alkaline reaction, especially where the substance has been hardened with chromic acid. The presence of too much alkali is injurious; the want of it, on the other hand, causes the dye to act on the tissues generally, and thus negatives its differentiating effect. Dr. Beale directs it to be prepared as follows:—Ten grains of Carmine in small fragments are to be placed in a test-tube, and half a drachm of strong Liquor Ammoniæ added; by agitation and the heat of a spirit-lamp the carmine is soon dissolved, and the liquid, after boiling for a few seconds, is to be allowed to cool. After the lapse of an hour, much of the excess of ammonia will have escaped; and the solution is then to be mixed with 2 oz. of Distilled Water, 2 oz. of pure Glycerine, and ½ oz. of Alcohol. The whole may be passed through a filter, or, after being allowed to stand for some time, the perfectly clear supernatant fluid may be poured off and kept for use. If, after long keeping, a little of the Carmine should be deposited through the escape of the Ammonia, the addition of a drop or two of Liquor Ammoniæ will re-dissolve it. Prof. Rutherford recommends that, for slow but more certain staining, the liquid should at once be put into a stoppered bottle, so as not to allow the ammonia to evaporate, and should be diluted by the addition of from two to seven volumes of water. Carmine is used as a *general* stain in 'double staining' (§ 203); and a suitable fluid for this purpose is made by mixing 30 grains of carmine with 2 drachms of borax, and 4 fl. oz. of water, and pouring off the clear supernatant fluid.—To *fix* the stain of carmine, the section should be immersed for a few minutes in a mixture of five drops of glacial Acetic acid and 1 oz. of water.

b. Picro-Carminate of Ammonia, known as *Picro-Carmine,* is a very excellent staining material, which is applicable to a great variety of purposes. Being somewhat difficult to prepare, it is best purchased ready for use (from Martindale, New Cavendish Street). About ten drops should be filtered into a watch-glass, and diluted with distilled water; the sections should remain in the solution for from 20 to 30 minutes; and if at the end of that time they should not be sufficiently stained, a little more picro-carmine should be added. This dye, used alone, produces a double-staining; nuclei fixing upon the carmine, while other tissues are coloured yellow by the picric acid. If the sections be placed in methylated spirit, they may be kept without loss of colour, and may be afterwards subjected to other processes. If placed in water, the picric acid stain is removed, while the carmine is left.

c. Hæmatoxylin, or Extract of Logwood, is now employed more generally than carmine (which it much resembles in action), its violet colour being more pleasant to the eye. The following is given by Kleinenberg as the best mode of preparing it:—Make a saturated solution of crystallized chloride of calcium in 70 per cent. alcohol; mix one volume of this solution with from 6 to 8 volumes of a saturated solution of alum in 70 per cent. Alcohol; and having half filled a watch-glass with this

mixture, pour into it as many drops of a concentrated solution of Hæmatoxylin in absolute alcohol as will serve to give the required intensity of colour. The object must remain in the dye for a period varying from a few minutes to six hours, according to its size and the nature of the tissues composing it, and is then to be washed in water. If it should be stained throughout, and it be desired that only tissues to be specially distinguished should retain their colour, the diffused stain may be removed by immersion in rectified or methylated spirit, or in a 1-half per cent. solution of alum.—The following is another formula given by Dr. Gibbes:—Mix 6 grammes of Extract of Logwood (as obtainable from Martindale, New Cavendish Street) with 18 grammes of alum, and add 28 cub. centim. of distilled water. Filter, and add to the filtrate 1 drachm of spirit. Keep in a stoppered bottle a week before using. If what remains on the filter be mixed with 14 cub. centim. of distilled water, and, after soaking for an hour or two, be filtered, and ½ drachm of spirit be then added, a second solution will be made as strong as the first. From 7 to 10 drops of this solution are to be diluted with a watch-glassfull of distilled water; the best degree of dilution being only to be found by trial. All staining fluids of this kind are liable to change by keeping; a portion of the colouring matter passing out of solution, and being deposited on the sides and bottom of the vessel containing it. A deposit of the same kind is liable to occur on the specimen during the staining, especially if the process be prolonged; and it is better in such cases at once to transfer the specimen to a fresh solution. When sufficiently stained, the specimens may be treated with methylated spirit, which will *fix* the colour; whilst, if the staining has been carried too far, the excess of colour may be removed by the Acetic-acid mixture which is used to fix carmine.—If the substance to be stained with Logwood should have been previously hardened with chromic acid, it should be previously steeped in a weak solution of bicarbonate of soda.

d. Magenta has nearly the same *selective* staining property as carmine; and is useful in the examination of specimens for which rapid action and sharp definition are required. But, like other Aniline dyes, it is liable to fade; and should, therefore, not be employed for permanent preparations. Ordinary magenta fluid may be prepared by dissolving 1½ grains of magenta crystals in 7 fl. oz. of distilled water, and adding ½ fl. oz. of rectified spirit. The colour of a section stained with this may be preserved for some time, by immersing it in a 1-3rd per cent. watery solution of corrosive sublimate.

e. Eosin, which dyes the tissues generally of a beautiful garnet-red colour, should be used in a strong watery solution; and the sections must be well washed in water after staining. Its chief use is in 'double staining' (§ 203).

f. For *blue* and *green* staining, the various *Aniline* dyes are principally used. They are, for the most part, however, rather fugitive in their effects; not forming durable combinations with the tissues they stain. Some of them are soluble in water, others only in spirit; and the selection between the dyes of these two classes will have to be guided by the mode in which the preparations are treated. These dyes are for the most part best fixed by benzole; and as the sections treated with this fluid may be at once mounted in Canada balsam, there is greater probability of their colours being preserved. Besides blue and green, the Aniline series furnishes a deep rich *brown*, known as Bismarck's

Brown; and a *blue-black*, which has been recommended for staining nerve-cells.

g. A good *blue* stain (tending to purple) is also given by the substance termed *Indigo-Carmine;* which is particularly recommended for sections of the brain and spinal cord that have been hardened in chromic acid. A saturated solution of the powder in distilled water having been prepared, this may either be used with the addition of about 4 per cent. of oxalic acid; or, if an alcoholic fluid be preferred, methylated spirit may be added to the aqueous solution, the mixture being filtered to remove any colouring matter that may have been precipitated. If sections thus stained have an excess of colour, this may be removed by the action of a saturated solution of oxalic acid in alcohol.

h. A beautiful *green* hue is given by treating with a saturated solution of Picric acid in water, sections previously stained with Aniline blue; or the two agents may be used together, 4 or 5 parts of a saturated solution of the latter being added to a saturated aqueous solution of the former. This *picro-aniline*, it is believed, may be relied-on for permanence; and it acts well in double staining with picro-carmine.

i. Two *chemical* agents, Nitrate of Silver and Chloride of Gold, are much used by Histologists for bringing-out particular tissues; the former being especially valuable for the staining of Epithelium-cells; the latter for staining Nerve-cells, Connective-tissue corpuscles, Tendon-cells, and Cartilage-cells. The most advantageous use of these can only be made by the careful observance of the directions which will be found in treatises on Practical Histology.

k. *Molybdate of Ammonia* is recommended as affording a cool blue-grey or neutral-tint *general* stain, which affords a pleasant 'ground' to parts strongly coloured by bright *selective* stains.

203. *Double and Triple Staining.*—Very instructive as well as beautiful effects are produced by the simultaneous or successive action of two or three staining fluids; which will respectively pick out (so to speak) the parts of a section for which they have special affinities. Thus, if a section through the base of the tongue of a cat or dog, be stained with picro-carmine, rosein, and iodine-green, the muscle-fibres will take the first, the connective tissue and protoplasm of cells will be coloured by the second, while the third will lay hold of the nuclei in the superficial epithelium, serous glands, and non-striated muscle in the vessels; and, further, the mucous glands will show a purple formed by the combined action of the red and green (Gibbes).* A very striking contrast of the like kind is shown in the double staining of the frond of a Fern with logwood and aniline blue; the *sori* taking the latter, and standing out brilliantly on the general surface tinged by the former.—The effects produced by using one stain *after* the other, are generally much better than those obtained by simultaneous staining. The selective action of a second stain is not prevented by a previous general staining; for the dye which gives the latter seems to be more

* See his "Practical Histology," Chap. v., and his Paper in "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. iii. (1880), p. 390.

weakly held by the parts which take the former, so as to be (as it were) displaced by it. Thus, if a section of a Stem be stained throughout by a solution of Eosin (2 grains to 1 oz.), and be then placed, after washing in strong alcohol, in a half-grain solution of Nicholson's blue made neutral, the blue will in no long time entirely drive out the red; but by carefully watching the process, it will be seen that the different tissues will change colour in different times, the softer cells giving up their red and taking-in the blue more quickly than the harder; so that, by stopping the process at the right point (which must be determined by taking-out a section, dipping it in alcohol, and examining it under the microscope), the two kinds of cells are beautifully differentiated by their colouring.* The best effects are usually produced by Carmine and Indigo-carmine, Logwood and Picro-carmine, Carmine or Logwood and Aniline-blue or Aniline-green. But very much has yet to be learned on this subject; and the further investigation of it will be likely to produce results that will amply repay the time and labour bestowed.

204. *Chemical Testing.*—It is often requisite, alike in Biological and in Mineralogical investigations, to apply Chemical Tests in minute quantity to objects under Microscopic examination. Various contrivances have been devised for this purpose; but the Author would recommend, from his own experience, the small glass Syringe already described (Fig. 106), with a fine-pointed nozzle, as the most convenient instrument. One of its advantages is the very precise regulation of the quantity of the test to be deposited, which can be obtained by the dexterous use of it; whilst another consists in the power of withdrawing any excess. Care must be taken in using it, to avoid the contact of the test-liquid with the packing of the piston.—Whatever method is employed, great care should be taken to avoid carrying away from the slide to which the test-liquid is applied, any loose particles which may lie upon it, and which may be thus transferred to some other object, to the great perplexity of the Microscopist. For testing Inorganic substances, the ordinary Chemical Reagents are of course to be employed; but certain special Tests are required in Biological investigation, the following being those most frequently required:

a. Solution of *Iodine* in water (1 gr. of iodine, 3 grs. of iodide of potassium, 1 oz. of distilled water) turns *Starch* blue and *Cellulose* brown; it also gives an intense brown to *Albuminous* substances.

b. Dilute *Sulphuric Acid* (one of acid to two or three parts of water), gives to *Cellulose* that has been previously dyed with iodine a blue or purple hue; also, when mixed with a solution of sugar, it gives a rose-red hue, more or less deep, with *Nitrogenous* substances and with bile (Pettenkofer's test).

c. What is known as *Schulze's Test* is a solution of Chloride of Zinc, Iodine, and Iodide of Potassium, made in the following way:—Zinc is

* See "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. iii. (1880), p. 694.

dissolved in Hydrochloric acid, and the solution is permitted to evaporate in contact with metallic zinc, until it attains the thickness of a syrup; this syrup is then saturated with iodide of potassium, and iodine is last added. This solution serves, like the preceding, to detect the presence of *Cellulose;* and has the advantage over sulphuric acid of being less destructive to the tissues. Each will sometimes succeed where the other fails; consequently, in doubtful cases, both should be employed.

d. Concentrated *Nitric Acid* gives to *Albuminous* substances an intense yellow.

e. Acid Nitrate of Mercury (Millon's Test) colours Albuminous substances red.

f. Acetic Acid, which should be kept both concentrated and diluted with from 3 to 5 parts of water, is very useful to the Animal Histologist from its power of dissolving, or at least of reducing to such a state of transparence that they can no longer be distinguished, certain kinds of membranous and fibrous tissues, so that other parts (especially *nuclei*) are brought more strongly into view.

g. Solution of *Caustic Potass or Soda* (the latter being generally preferable) has a remarkable solvent effect upon many Organic substances, both Animal and Vegetable; and is extremely useful in rendering some structures transparent, whilst others are brought into view,—its special action being upon *horny* textures, whose component cells are thus rendered more clearly distinguishable.

h. Ether dissolves Resins, Fats, and Oils; but it will not act on these through membranes penetrated with watery fluid.

i. Alcohol dissolves Resins and some Volatile Oils; but it does not act on ordinary Oils and Fats. It coagulates Albuminous matters, and consequently renders more opaque such textures as contain them. The opacity, however, may be removed by the addition of a small quantity of Soda.

205. *Preservative Media.*—We have now to consider the various modes of preserving the preparations that have been made by the several methods now indicated; and shall first treat of such as are applicable to those minute Animal and Vegetable organisms, and to those Sections or Dissections of large structures, which are suitable for being mounted as *transparent* objects. A broad distinction may be in the first place laid down between *resinous* and *aqueous* preservative media; to the former belong only Canada Balsam and Dammar; whilst the latter include all the mixtures of which Water is a component.—The choice between the two kinds of media will partly depend upon the nature of the processes to which the object may have been previously subjected, and partly upon the degree of transparence which may be advantageously imparted to it. Sections of substances which have been not only imbedded in, but penetrated by paraffine, wax, or cacao-butter, and have been stained (if desired) previously to cutting, are, as a rule, most conveniently mounted in Canada balsam or Dammar; since they can be at once transferred to either of these from the menstruum by which the imbedding material has been dissolved-out. The durability of this method of mounting makes it preferable in all cases to which it is suitable; the exception being where it renders a very

thin section *too* transparent, which is specially liable to happen with Dammar.—When it is desired to mount in either of these media Sections of structures that have been imbedded in gum or gelatine, these substances must first be completely dissolved-out by steeping in water; the sections must then be 'dehydrated' by subjecting them to mixtures of spirit and water progressively increased in strength to absolute alcohol; and after this has been effected, they are to be transferred to turpentine, and thence to benzole. In this process much of the staining is apt to be lost; so that stained sections are often more advantageously mounted in some of those aqueous preparations of Glycerine, which approach the resinous media in transparence and permanence.—When Canada balsam was first employed for mounting preparations, it was employed in its natural semifluid state, in which it consists of a solution of resin in volatile oil of turpentine; and unless a large proportion of the latter constituent was driven off by heat in the process of mounting (bubbles being thus formed of which it was often difficult to get rid), or the mounted slide was afterwards subjected to a more moderate heat of long continuance, the balsam would remain soft, and the cover liable to displacement. This is avoided by the method now generally adopted, of previously getting rid of the turpentine by protracted exposure of the balsam to a heat not sufficient to boil it, and dissolving the resin thus obtained either in benzole or chloroform, the solution being made (with the aid of gentle heat) of such viscidity as will allow it to 'run' freely when slightly warmed. Either of these solvents evaporates so much more quickly than turpentine, that the balsam left behind hardens in a comparatively short time.—The *natural* Balsam, however, may be preferably used (with care to avoid the liberation of bubbles by overheating) in mounting sections already cemented to the slides by hardened balsam (§ 193); and also for mounting the chitinous textures of Insects, which it has a peculiar power of rendering transparent, and which seem to be penetrated by it more thoroughly than they are by the artificially-prepared solution (§ 210).—The solution of Dammar in benzole is very convenient to work with, and hardens quickly.

206. The following are the principal *aqueous* media whose value has been best tested by general and protracted experience:—

a. Fresh specimens of minute Protophytes can often be very well preserved in *Distilled Water* saturated with Camphor; the complete exclusion of air serving both to check their living actions and to prevent decomposing changes. When the preservation of colour is not a special object, about a tenth part of Alcohol may be added, and this will be found a suitable medium for the preservation of many delicate Animal textures.

b. *Aqueous Solution of Carbolic Acid*.—Even the very small quantity of this agent which cold water will take up, has a powerful preservative effect; and the solution may be advantageously employed for mounting preparations of many delicate structures, both Animal and Vegetable.

c. The same may be said of *Salycylic* Acid, which has been very success-

fully employed for delicate preparations in the small proportion that will dissolve in cold water. For coarser structures a stronger solution is preferable: and this may be made by combining with the acid a small quantity either of borax dissolved in glycerine or of acetate of potass.

d. Where the preservation of minute histological detail is not so much desired, as the exhibition of larger structural features of objects to be viewed by reflected light, nothing is better than *Dilute Spirit*; the proportion most generally serviceable being 1 of Alcohol to 4 or 5 of water; and an even weaker mixture serving to prevent further change in tissues already hardened by strong Alcohol. The Author has a series of the beautiful Pentacrinoid larvæ of *Comatula* (Plate XXI.) thus preserved in cells twenty years ago; which are as perfect as when first mounted. These weaker mixtures have no action on Gold Size.

Of late years, *Glycerine* has been largely used as a preservative; either alone, according to the method of Dr. Beale (§ 208), or diluted with water, or mixed with gelatinous substances.—It is much more favourable to the preservation of colour than most other media; and is therefore specially useful as a constituent of fluids used for mounting Vegetable objects in their natural aspects. It has also the property of increasing the transparence of Animal structures, though in a less degree than resinous substances; and may thus be advantageously employed as a component of media for mounting objects that are rendered too transparent by Balsam or Dammar.—Two cautions should be given in regard to the employment of Glycerine; *first*, that, as it has a solvent power for Carbonate of Lime, it should not be used for mounting any object having a calcareous skeleton; and *second*, that in proportion as it increases the transparence of organic substances, it diminishes the reflecting power of their surfaces, and should never be employed, therefore, in the mounting of objects to be viewed by *reflected* light, although many objects mounted in the media to be presently specified are beautifully shown by 'black-ground' illumination.

e. A mixture of one part of Glycerine and two parts of Camphor-water may be used for the preservation of many Vegetable structures.

f. For preserving soft and delicate Marine Animals which are shrivelled-up, so to speak, by stronger agents, the Author has found a mixture of 1 part of Glycerine and 1 of Spirit with 8 or 10 parts of Sea Water, the most suitable preservative.

g. For preserving minute Vegetable preparations, the following method, devised by Hantzsch, is said to be peculiarly efficient:—A mixture is made of 3 parts of pure Alcohol, 2 parts of Distilled Water, and 1 part of Glycerine; and the object, laid in a cement-cell, is to be covered with a drop of this liquid, and then put aside under a bell-glass. The Alcohol and Water soon evaporate, so that the Glycerine alone is left; and another drop of the liquid is then to be added, and a second evaporation permitted; the process being repeated, if necessary, until enough Glycerine is left to fill the cell, which is then to be covered and closed in the usual mode.*

* See the Rev. W. W. Spicer's "Handy-Book to the Collection and Preparation of Freshwater and Marine Algæ, &c.," pp. 57-59. "Nothing," says Mr.

h. The Glycerine Jelly prepared after the manner of Mr. Lawrence may be strongly recommended as suitable for a great variety of objects, Animal as well as Vegetable, subject to the cautions already given :—"Take any quantity of Nelson's Gelatine, and let it soak for two or three hours in cold water, pour off the superfluous water, and heat the soaked gelatine until melted. To each fluid ounce of the Gelatine add one drachm of Alcohol, and mix well; then add a fluid drachm of the white of an egg. Mix well while the Gelatine is fluid, but cool. Now boil until the albumen coagulates, and the gelatine is quite clear. Filter through fine flannel, and to each fluid ounce of the clarified Gelatine add six fluid drachms of Price's pure Glycerine, and mix well. For the six fluid drachms of Glycerine, a mixture of two parts of Glycerine to four of Camphor-water may be substituted. The objects intended to be mounted in this medium are best prepared by being immersed for some time in a mixture of one part of Glycerine with one part of diluted Alcohol (1 of alcohol to 6 of water)."* A small quantity of Carbolic acid may be added to it with advantage. When used, the jelly must be liquefied by gentle warmth, and it is useful to warm both the slide and the cover-glass previously to mounting.—This takes the place of what was formerly known as Deane's Medium, in which honey was used to prevent the hardening of the gelatine.

i. For objects which would be injured by the small amount of heat required to liquefy the last-mentioned medium, the *Glycerine and Gum* Medium of Mr. Farrants will be found very useful. This is made by dissolving 4 parts (by weight) of picked Gum Arabic in 4 parts of cold Distilled Water, and then adding 2 parts of Glycerine. The solution must be made without the aid of heat, the mixture being occasionally stirred, but not shaken, whilst it is proceeding: after it has been completed, the liquid should be strained (if not perfectly free from impurity) through fine cambric previously well washed out by a current of clean cold water; and it should be kept in a bottle closed with a glass stopper or cap (not with cork), containing a small piece of Camphor.—The great advantage of this Medium is that it can be used cold, and yet soon viscifies without cracking; it is well suited to preserve delicate Animal as well as Vegetable tissues, and in most cases increases their transparence.

It often is quite impossible to predicate beforehand what preservative medium will answer best for a particular kind of preparation; and it is consequently desirable, where there is no lack of material, to mount similar objects in two or three different ways, marking on each slide the method employed, and comparing the specimens from time to time, so as to judge the condition of each.

207. In dealing with the small quantities of fluid media required in mounting Microscopic objects, it is essential for the operator to be provided with the means of transferring very small quantities from the vessels containing them to the slide, as well as of taking up from the slide what may be lying superfluous upon it. Where some one fluid, such as Diluted Alcohol or the Carbolic acid solution, is

Spicer, "can exceed the beauty of the preparations of *Desmidiaceæ* prepared after Herr Hantzsch's method; the form of the plant and the colouring of the endochrome having undergone no change whatever."

* A very pure Glycerine jelly, of which the Author has made considerable use, is prepared by Mr. Rimmington, chemist, Bradford, Yorkshire.

in continual use, it will be found very convenient to keep it in the small Dropping-bottle represented in Fig. 138. The stopper is perforated, and is elongated below into a fine tube, whilst it expands above into a bulbous funnel, the mouth of which is covered with a piece of thin Vulcanized India-rubber tied firmly round its lip. If pressure be made on this cover with the point of the finger, and the end of the tube be immersed in the liquid in the bottle, this will rise into it on the removal of the finger; if, then, the funnel be inverted, and the pressure be re-applied, some of the residual air will be forced out, so that by again immersing the end of the tube, and removing the pressure, more fluid will enter. This operation may be repeated as often as may be necessary, until the bulb is entirely filled; and when it is thus charged with fluid, as much or as little as may be needed is then readily expelled from it by the pressure of the finger on the cover, the bulb being always refilled if care be taken to immerse the lower end of the tube before the pressure is withdrawn. The Author can speak from large experience of the value of this little implement; as he can also of the utility of the small Glass Syringe (§ 127) for the same purpose, and this not only for fine Aqueous liquids, but also for Glycerine jelly, and Canada balsam. For these media having been poured, when liquefied by warmth, each into its own syringe (its piston having been previously drawn out), can be forced out as occasion requires, by pressure on the replaced piston, which may be graduated with great nicety, when the syringe has been gently warmed by lying for a short time on the Water-bath cover (§ 177). Farrants's medium may be conveniently used in the same manner. But the solutions of Canada Balsam and Gum Dammar in volatile fluids will not be sufficiently secure from change by evaporation through the point of the syringe; and are better kept in wide-mouthed *capped* jars, the liquid being taken-out on a pointed glass rod, or 'stirrer,' cut to such a length as will enable it to stand in the jar when its cap is in place.—Great care should be taken to keep the inside of the cap and the part of the neck of the jar on which it fits, *quite clean*, so as to prevent the fixation of the neck by the adhesion between these two surfaces. Should such adhesion take place, the cautious application of the heat of a spirit-lamp will usually make the cap removable. In taking out the liquid, care should be taken not to drop it prematurely from the rod,—a mischance which may be avoided by not taking up more than it will properly carry, and by holding it in a horizontal position, after drawing it out of the bottle, until its point is just over the slip or cover on which the liquid is to be deposited.

FIG. 138.

Dropping-Bottle.

208. *Mounting Thin Sections.*—The thin sections cut by the Microtome, or mentranes obtained by Dissection, do not require to be placed in cells when mounted in any viscid medium; since its tenacity will serve to keep off injurious pressure by the cover-glass. When the preparation has been previously immersed in Aqueous liquids, and is to be mounted in glycerine, glycerine jelly, or Farrants's medium, the best mode of placing it on the slide is to float it in a saucer or shallow capsule of water, to place the slide beneath it, and, when the object lies in a suitable position above it, to raise the slide cautiously, holding the object in place by a needle, until it is entirely out of the water. The slide is then to be wiped by an absorbent cloth, taking care not to touch the object with it; and the small quantity of liquid still surrounding the object is to be carefully drawn off by a bit of blotting-paper, care being taken not to touch the object with it (as its fibres are apt to adhere), or to leave any loose fibres on the slide. Before the object is covered, it should be looked at under a Dissecting or Mounting Microscope, for the purpose of improving (if desirable) its disposition on the slide, and of removing any foreign particles that may be accidentally present. A drop of the medium (liquefied, if necessary, by a gentle warmth) is then to be placed upon it, and another drop placed on the cover and allowed to spread out. The cover being then taken up with a pair of forceps, must be inverted over the object, and brought to touch the slide at one part of its margin; the slide being itself inclined in the direction of the place of contact, so that the medium accumulates there in a little pool. By gently letting down the cover, a little wave of the medium is pressed before it; and, if enough of the medium has been deposited, the whole space beneath the cover will be filled, and the object completely saturated. If air-bubbles should unfortunately show themselves, the cover must be raised at one margin, and a further quantity of the medium deposited. If, again, there are no air-bubbles, but the medium does not extend itself to the edge of the cover, the cover need not be raised, but a little may be deposited at its edge, whence it will soon be drawn in by capillary attraction, especially if a gentle warmth be applied to the slide. It will then be advantageous again to examine the preparation under the Dissecting Microscope; for it will often happen that an opportunity may thus be found of spreading it better, by the application of gentle pressure to one part or another of the covering-glass, which may be done without injurious effect either with a stiff needle or by a pointed stick, a method whose peculiar value, when viscid media are employed, was first pointed out by Dr. Beale.—The slide should then be set aside for a few days, after which its mounting may be completed. Any excess of the medium must first be removed. If Glycerine has been employed, much of it may be drawn off by blotting-paper (taking care not to touch the edge of the cover, as it will be very easily displaced); and the remainder may be washed away with a camel-hair brush dipped in water, which may be thus carried to the edge of the

cover. The water having been drawn off, a narrow ring of liquefied glycerine-jelly may be made *around—not on*—the margin of the cover (according to the suggestion of Dr. S. Marsh) for the purpose of fixing it before the cement is applied; and when this has set, the slide may be placed on the Turn-table (§ 176), and the preparation 'sealed' by a ring either of Dammar or of Bell's cement, which should be carried a little *over* the edge of the cover, and outside the margin of the ring of glycerine-jelly This 'ringing' should be repeated two or three times; and if the preparation is to be viewed with 'oil-immersion' lenses, it should be finished off with a coat of Hollis's glue, which is not attacked by cedar-oil. Until the cover has been perfectly secured, a slide carrying a glycerine preparation should never be placed in an inclined position, as its cover will be almost sure to slide by its own weight.—If Glycerine-jelly or Farrants's medium have been employed, less caution need be used, as the cover-glass, after a few days' setting, will adhere with sufficient firmness to resist displacement. The superfluous medium having been removed by the cautious use of a knife, the slide and the margin of the cover may be completely cleansed by a camel-hair brush dipped in warm water; and, when quite dried, the slide, placed on the Turn-table, may be sealed with Gold-size,—any other Cement being afterwards added, either for additional security or for 'appearance.'

209. When, on the other hand, the Section or other preparation is to be mounted in a Resinous medium, it must have been previously prepared for this in the modes already described (§§ 190, 191), which will present it to the mounter either in Turpentine or some other essential oil, or in Alcohol. From either of these it may be transferred to the slide by the 'lifter' (§ 201); its *un*perforated end being employed, so as to carry with the object a small pool of the fluid from which it has been taken.—This will greatly facilitate the transfer of the object from the lifter to the slide; as it may be readily floated off with the aid of a slight touch of a needle. The fluid thus deposited with it having been drained away by blotting-paper, the object may be treated (if desirable for thoroughly clearing it) with a drop of Clove-oil, which should be deposited, not *on* the object, but *near* it, and made to run to it by inclining the slide, so as, by running *under* it, to rise through it and saturate it thoroughly. After about two minutes, the clove-oil is to be drained away, and the Balsam or Dammar solution applied by the glass rod; one drop being placed on the object, and another on the cover, which is then to be turned and lowered-down on the object in the manner already described. The presence of a few air-bubbles may be here disregarded, as they will ultimately disappear; but care must be taken that the resinous solution not only fills the space between the cover and the slide, but extends beyond its entire margin, as much shrinkage will be produced by the evaporation of the solvent. If this precaution be attended-to, and 'appearance' is not a serious consideration, nothing more is requisite for the protection of the preparation;

since the margin of resin left by the evaporation of its solvent forms an adequate cement, especially if the cover be secured by gummed-paper from being loosened by a 'jar.' But if it be desired to replace this by a black or coloured cement*, the resin must first be scraped away with the edge of an awl† carried *along* (not towards) the margin of the cover; and the slide, being then cleaned with benzole, and finally wiped with methylated spirit, may finally be 'ringed' on the Turn-table.

210. *Mounting Objects in Canada Balsam.*—Although it is preferable for Histological purposes to employ a solution of hardened Balsam, yet as there are many objects for mounting for which the use of the 'natural' Balsam is preferable, it will be well to give some directions for its use.—When Sections of hard substances have been ground-down on the slides to which they have been cemented (§ 194), it is much better that they should be mounted without being detached, unless they have become clogged with the abraded particles, and require to be cleansed out,—as is sometimes the case with sections of the shells, spines, &c., of Echinoderms, when the balsam by which they have been cemented is too soft. If the detachment of a specimen be desirable, it may be loosened by heat, and lifted off with a camel-hair brush dipped in Oil of Turpentine. But, where time is not an object, it is far better to place the slide to steep in Ether or Chloroform in a capped jar, until the object then falls off of itself by the solution of its cement. It may be thoroughly cleansed by boiling it in methylated spirit, and afterwards laid upon a piece of blotting-paper to dry; after which it may be mounted in fresh balsam on a slide, just as if it had remained attached. The slide having been warmed on the water-bath lid, a sufficient quantity of balsam should be pressed out from the syringe on the object; and care should be taken that this, if previously loosened, should be thoroughly penetrated by it. If any air-bubbles arise, they should be broken with the needle-point. The cover having been similarly warmed, a drop of balsam should be placed on it, and made to spread over its surface; and the cover should then be turned over and let down on the object in the manner already described. If this operation be performed over the water-bath, instead of over the spirit-lamp, there will be little risk of the formation of air-bubbles. However large the section may be, care should be taken that the Balsam is well-spread both over its surface and that of its cover; and by attending to the precaution of making it accumulate on one side by sloping the slide, and letting down the cover so as to drive a wave before it to the opposite side, very large

* The great Scientific investigators of Germany, who cut an entire Worm into thin transverse sections, carefully mounted in their order, would scorn to spend time in such a mere 'finish,' which they would consider only worthy of Amateurs.

† The Author has found this implement, mounted in a *small* handle, far less liable to disturb the cover, than the 'old penknife,' the slipping of whose point in chipping-away hard resin has often occasioned him much mischief.

sections may thus be mounted without a single air-bubble. (The Author has thus mounted sections of *Eozoön* three inches square.) —In mounting minute Balsam-objects, such as *Diatoms*, *Polycystina*, *Sponge-spicules*, and the beautiful minute spines of *Ophiurida*, great advantage will be obtained from following the plan suggested by Mr. James Smith, for which his Mounting Instrument (Fig. 130) is specially adapted. The slide being placed upon its slide-plate, and the object having been laid upon the glass in the desired position, the covering-glass is laid upon this, and the ivory knob is to be screwed down, so as, by a very slight pressure on the cover, to keep it in its place. The slide is then to be *very gently* warmed, and the Balsam to be applied at the edge of the cover, from which it will be drawn-in by capillary attraction, penetrating the objects, and leaving no bubbles if too much heat be not applied. In this manner the objects are kept exactly in the places in which they were at first laid; and scarcely a particle of superfluous balsam, if due care has been employed, remains on the slide.—When the chitinous textures of Insects are to be thus mounted, they must be first softened by steeping in Oil of Turpentine; and a large drop of Balsam being placed on a warmed slide, the object, taken up in the forceps, is to be plunged in it, and the cover (balsamed as before) let down upon it. It is with objects of this class, that the *Spring-Clip* (Fig. 128) and the *Spring-Press* (Fig. 129) prove most useful in holding down the cover until the balsam has hardened sufficiently to prevent its being lifted by the elasticity of the object.—Various objects (such as the palates of Gasteropods), which have been prepared by dissection in water or weak spirit, may be advantageously mounted in Balsam; for which purpose they must be first dehydrated, and then transferred from rectified Spirit into Turpentine. *Carbolic Acid* liquefied by heat has been lately recommended by Dr. Ralph* as most efficient in drawing out water from specimens to be mounted in Balsam or Dammar, which afterwards readily take its place.—Sections of Horns, Hoofs, &c., which afford most beautiful objects for the Polariscope, are best mounted in natural Balsam, which has a remarkable power of increasing their transparence.—It is better to set aside in a warm place the slides which have been thus mounted, before attempting to clean off the superfluous Balsam; in order that the covers may be fixed by the gradual hardening of what lies beneath them.

211. *Mounting Objects in Aqueous Liquids.*—By far the greater number of preparations which are to be preserved in liquid, however, should be mounted in a Cell of some kind, which forms a *well* of suitable depth, wherein the preservative liquid may be retained. This is *absolutely necessary* in the case of all objects whose thickness is such as to prevent the glass-cover from coming into close approximation with the slide; and it is *desirable* whenever that approximation is not such as to cause the cover to be

* See the account of Dr. Ralph's method in "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. iii. (1880), p. 858.

drawn to the glass-slide by capillary attraction, or whenever the cover is *sensibly* kept apart from the slide by the thickness of any portion of the object. Hence it is only in the case of objects of the most extreme tenuity, that the Cell can be advantageously dispensed with; the danger of *not* employing it, in many cases in which there is no difficulty in mounting the object without it, being that after a time the cement is apt to run-in beneath the cover, which process is pretty sure to continue when it may have once commenced. When Cement-cells (§ 170) are employed for this purpose, care must be taken that the surface of the ring is perfectly flat, so that when the cover-glass is laid-on, no tilting is produced by pressure on any part of its margin. As a general rule it is desirable that the object to be mounted should be steeped for a little time previously in the preservative fluid employed.—A sufficient quantity of this fluid being deposited from the Syringe or Dropping-bottle to over-fill the cell, the object is to be introduced into it either with the Forceps or the Dipping-tube (§ 126); and the slide should then be examined on the Dissecting Microscope, that its entire freedom from foreign particles and from air-bubbles may be assured, and that its disposition may be corrected if necessary. The cover should then be laid on very cautiously, so as not to displace the object; which in this case is best done by keeping the drop highest in the centre, and keeping the cover parallel to the slide whilst it is being lowered, so as to expel the superfluous fluid *all round*. This being taken up by the syringe, the cement ring and the margin of the cover are to be dried with blotting-paper, especial care being taken to avoid drawing-off too much liquid, which will cause the gold-size to run-in. It is generally best to apply the first coat of Gold-size *thin*, with a very small and flexible brush worked with the hand; this will dry sufficiently in an hour or two, to hold the cover whilst being 'ringed' on the Turn-table. And it is safer to apply a third coat a day or two afterwards; *old* Gold-size, which lies thickly, being then applied so as to raise the ring to the level of the surface of the cover. As experience shows that preparations thus mounted, which have remained in perfectly good order for many years, may be afterwards spoiled by leakage, the Author strongly recommends that to prevent the loss of valuable specimens, an additional coating of gold-size be laid-on from time to time.

212. *Mounting of Objects in Deep Cells.*—The objects which require deep cells are, as a rule, such as are to be viewed by reflected light; and are usually of sufficient size and substance to allow of air being entangled in their tissues. This is especially liable to occur where they have undergone the process of decalcification (§ 197); which will very probably leave behind it bubbles of Carbonic acid. For the extraction of such bubbles, the use of an Air-pump is commonly recommended; but the Author has seldom found this answer the purpose satisfactorily, and is much disposed to place confidence in a method lately recommended—steeping the

specimen in a stoppered jar filled with *freshly boiled water*, which has great power of drawing into itself either Air or Carbonic acid. Where the structure is one which is not injured by Alcohol, prolonged steeping in this will often have the same effect.—The next point of importance is to select a cover of a size exactly suitable to that of the ring, of whose breadth it should cover about two-thirds, leaving an adequate margin uncovered for the attachment of the cement. And the perfect flatness of that ring should then be carefully tested, since on this mainly depends the security of the mounting. It is to secure this, that the Author prefers rings of *tin* (§ 171) to those of glass, for cells of moderate depth; for their surface can be easily made perfectly flat by grinding with water, first on a piece of grit, and then on a Water-of-Ayr stone—these stones having been previously reduced to a plane surface (§ 193). If glass rings are not found to be 'true,' they must be ground-down with fine emery on a plate of lead. When the cell has been thus finished-off, it must be carefully cleaned-out by syringing into it some of the mounting-fluid; and should be then examined under the Dissecting Microscope for minute air-bubbles, which often cling to the bottom or sides. These having been got rid of by the needle, the cell should be finally filled with the preservative liquid, and the object immersed in it, care being taken that no air-bubbles are carried-down beneath it. The cell being completely filled so that the liquid is running over its side, the cover may then be lowered down upon it as in the preceding case; or, if the cell be quadrangular, the cover may be sloped so as to rest one margin on its wall, and fresh liquid may be thrown in by the Syringe, while the other edge is lowered. When the cover is in place, and the liquid expelled from it has been taken up by the syringe, it should again be examined under a lens for air-bubbles; and if any of these troublesome intruders should present themselves beneath the cover, the slide should be inclined, so as to cause them to rise towards the highest part of its circumference, and the cover slipped away from that part, so as to admit of the introduction of a little additional fluid by the pipette or syringe; and when this has taken the place of the air-bubbles, the cover may be slipped back into its place. The surface of the ring and the edge of the cover must then be thoroughly dried with blotting-paper, care being taken that the fluid be not drawn away from between the cover and the edge of the cell on which it rests. These minutiæ having been attended to, the closure of the cell may be at once effected by carrying a thin layer of Gold-size or Dammar around and upon the edge of the glass-cover, taking care that it touches every point of it, and fills the angular channel which is left along its margin. The Author has found it advantageous, however, to delay closing the cell for some little time after the superfluous fluid has been drawn off; for as soon as evaporation from beneath the edge of the cover begins to diminish the quantity of fluid in the cell, air-bubbles often begin to make their appearance, which were previously hidden in the

recesses of the object; and in the course of half an hour, a considerable number are often collected. The cover should then be slipped aside, fresh fluid introduced, the air-bubbles removed, and the cover put on again; and this operation should be repeated until it fails to draw forth any more air-bubbles. It will of course be observed, that if the evaporation of fluid should proceed far, air-bubbles will *enter* beneath the cover; but these will show themselves on the *surface* of the fluid; whereas those which arise from the object itself are found in the deeper parts of the cell. When all these have been successfully disposed of, the cell may be 'sealed' and 'ringed' in the manner already described.

213. *Importance of Cleanliness.*—The success of the result of any of the foregoing operations is greatly detracted-from, if, in consequence of the adhesion of foreign substances to the glasses whereon the objects are mounted, or to the implements used in the manipulations, any extraneous particles are brought into view with the object itself. Some such will occasionally present themselves, even under careful management; especially fibres of silk, wool, cotton, or linen, from the handkerchiefs, &c., with which the glass-slides may have been wiped; fibres of the blotting-paper employed to absorb superfluous fluid; and grains of starch, which often remain obstinately adherent to the thin glass-covers kept in it. But a careless and uncleanly manipulator will allow his objects to contract many other impurities than these; and especially to be contaminated by particles of dust floating through the air, the access of which may be readily prevented by proper precautions. It is desirable to have at hand a well-closed cupboard furnished with shelves, or a cabinet of well-fitted drawers, or a number of bell-glasses upon a flat table, for the purpose of securing glasses, objects, &c., from this contamination in the intervals of the work of preparation; and the more readily accessible these receptacles are, the more use will the Microscopist be likely to make of them. Great care, ought, of course, to be taken that the Media employed for mounting should be freed by effectual filtration from all floating particles, and that they should be kept in well-closed bottles.

214. *Labelling and Preserving of Objects.*—Whenever the mounting of an object has been completed, its name ought to be *at once* marked on it, and the slide should be put away in its appropriate place. Some inscribe the name on the glass itself with a writing diamond; whilst others prefer to gum a label* on the slide; and others, again, cover one or both surfaces of the slide with coloured paper, and attach the label to it. In the case of objects mounted dry or in balsam, the latter method has the advantage of rendering the glass-cover more secure from

* Very neat gummed labels, of the various sizes and patterns suitable to the wants of the Microscopist, may be obtained from the "Drapers' Stationers" in the City; and covering slips of various patterns are supplied by many of the dealers in Microscopic Apparatus.

displacement by a slight blow or 'jar,' when the varnish or balsam may have become brittle by the lapse of years. Instead, however, of attaching the white label on which the name of the object is written, to the outside of the coloured paper with which the slide is covered, it is better to attach the label to the glass, and to punch a hole out of the coloured paper, sufficiently large enough to show the name, in the part corresponding to it: in this manner the label is prevented from falling-off, which it frequently does when attached to the glass without protection, or to the outside of the paper cover. When objects are mounted in fluid, either with or without cells, paper coverings to the slides had better be dispensed with; and besides the name of the object, it is desirable to inscribe on the label that of the fluid in which it is mounted.—For the preservation of objects, the pasteboard boxes now made at a very reasonable cost, with wooden racks, to contain 6, 12, or 24 slides, will be found extremely useful. In these, however, the slides must always stand upon their edges; a position which, besides interfering with that ready view of them which is required for the immediate selection of any particular specimen, is unfavourable to the continued soundness of preparations mounted in fluid. Although such boxes are most useful, indeed almost indispensable, to the Microscopist, for holding slides which he desires (for whatever purpose) to keep for awhile constantly at hand, yet his regularly-classified series is much more conveniently stored either in a Cabinet containing numerous very shallow drawers, in which they lie flat and exposed to view, or (which the Author finds much preferable) in a series of smaller cases, each holding a dozen trays, every one of which is divided into twelve compartments for as many slides. These have the advantage, not only of cheapness (their outside case being made of polished pine, while the trays are made of thin pasteboard glued to a wooden framing), but also of facilitating the classification of Objects in groups, and of enabling any particular series to be transported without risk of injury, every slide being lodged in its own receptacle. Further, when provision has to be made for slides requiring greater depth than usual (such, for instance, as extra-thick wooden slides, or glasses bearing deep cells), trays can be made either of double the usual depth, or in the proportion of 3 to 2 (two such trays equalling three ordinary ones in thickness), so as still, by keeping the case filled, to prevent shake to its contents when it is carried. Smaller Slide-cases of the same kind, containing from two to six trays, each of which holds six slides, are made for the pocket.

Section 3. *Collection of Objects.*

215. A large proportion of the objects with which the Microscopist is concerned, are derived from the minute parts of those larger organisms, whether Vegetable or Animal, the collection of which does not require any other methods than those pursued by

the ordinary Naturalist. With regard to such, therefore, no special directions are required. But there are several most interesting and important groups both of Plants and Animals, which are themselves, on account of their minuteness, essentially *microscopic;* and the collection of these requires peculiar methods and implements, which are, however, very simple,—the chief element of success lying in the knowledge *where* to look and *what* to look for. In the present place, *general* directions only will be given; the particular details relating to the several groups, being reserved for the account to be hereafter given of each.

216. Of the Microscopic organisms in question, those which inhabit fresh water must be sought for in pools, ditches, or streams, through which some of them freely move; whilst others attach themselves to the stems and leaves of aquatic Plants, or even to pieces of stick or decaying leaves, &c., that may be floating on the surface or submerged beneath it; while others, again, are to be sought for in the muddy sediments at the bottom. Of those which have the power of free motion, some keep near the surface, whilst others swim in the deeper waters; but the situation of many depends entirely upon the light, since they rise to the surface in sunshine, and subside again afterwards. The Collector will, therefore, require a means of obtaining samples of water at different depths, and of drawing to himself portions of the larger bodies to which the microscopic organisms may be attached. For these purposes nothing is so convenient as the *Pond-Stick* (sold by Mr. Baker), which is made in two lengths, one of them sliding within the other, so as when closed to serve as a walking-stick. Into the extremity of this may be fitted, by means of a screw socket, (1) a cutting-hook or curved knife, for bringing up portions of larger Plants in order to obtain the minute forms of Vegetable or Animal life that may be parasitic upon them; (2) a broad collar, with a screw in its interior, into which is fitted one of the screw-topped Bottles made by the York Glass Company; (3) a ring or hoop for a muslin Ring-Net. When the Bottle is used for collecting at the surface, it should be moved sideways with its mouth partly below the water; but if it be desired to bring up a sample of the liquid from below, or to draw into the bottle any bodies that may be loosely attached to the submerged plants, the bottle is to be plunged into the water with its mouth downwards, carried into the situation in which it is desired that it should be filled, and then suddenly turned with its mouth upwards. By unscrewing the bottle from the collar, and screwing on its cover, the contents may be securely preserved. The Net should be a bag of fine muslin, which may be simply sewn to a ring of stout wire. But it is desirable for many purposes that the muslin should be made removable; and this may be provided-for (as suggested in the "Micrographic Dictionary," Introduction, p. xxiv.) by the substitution of a wooden hoop grooved on its outside, for the wire ring; the muslin being strained upon it by a ring of vulcanized India-rubber, which lies

in the groove, and which may be readily slipped off and on, so as to allow a fresh piece of muslin to be put in the place of that which has been last used. The collector should also be furnished with a number of Bottles, into which he may transfer the samples thus obtained, and none are so convenient as the screw-topped bottles made in all sizes by the York Glass Company. It is well that the bottles should be fitted into cases, to avoid the risk of breakage. When Animalcules are being collected, the botttles should not be above two-thirds filled, so that adequate air-space may be left.—Whilst engaged in the search for Microscopic objects, it is desirable for the Collector to possess a means of at once recognizing the forms which he may gather, where this is possible, in order that he may decide whether the 'gathering' is or is not worth preserving; for this purpose either a powerful 'Coddington' or 'Stanhope' lens (§ 24), a Beale's Pocket Microscope (§ 76), or the Travelling Microscope of Messrs. Baker or other opticians (§ 78), will be found most useful, according to the class of objects of which the Collector is in search. The former will answer very well for Zoophytes and the larger Diatomaceæ; but the latter will be needed for Desmidiaceæ, the smaller Diatomaceæ, and Animalcules.

217. The same general method is to be followed in the collection of such *marine* forms of Vegetable and Animal life as inhabit the neighbourhood of the shore, and can be reached by the Pond-stick. But there are many which need to be brought up from the bottom by means of the *Dredge;* and many others which swim freely through the waters of the Ocean, and are only to be captured by the *Tow-net.* As the former is part of the ordinary equipment of every Marine Naturalist, whether he concern himself with the Microscope or not, the mode of using it need not be here described; but the use of the latter for the purposes of the Microscopist requires special management. The net should be of fine muslin, firmly sewn to a ring of strong wire about 10 or 12 inches in diameter. This may be either fastened by a pair of strings to the stern of a boat, so as to tow *behind* it, or it may be fixed to a stick so held in the hand as to project from the *side* of the boat. In either case the net should be taken in from time to time, and held up to allow the water it contains to drain through it; and should then be turned inside-out and moved about in a bucket of water carried in the boat, so that any minute organisms adhering to it may be washed off before it is again immersed. It is by this simple method that Marine *Animalcules*, the living forms of *Radiolaria*, the smaller *Medusoids* (with their allies, *Beroe* and *Cydippe*), *Noctiluca*, the free-swimming larvæ of *Echinodermata*, some of the most curious of the *Tunicata*, the larvæ of *Mollusca*, *Turbellaria*, and *Annelida*, some curious adult forms of these classes, *Entomostraca*, and the larvæ of higher *Crustacea*, are obtained by the Naturalist; and the great increase in our knowledge of these forms which has been gained within recent years, is mainly due to the assiduous use which has been made of it by qualified observers.—It is important

to bear in mind, that, for the collection of all the more delicate of the organisms just named (such, for instance, as *Echinoderm larvæ*), it is essential that the boat should be rowed so slowly that the net may move *gently* through the water, so as to avoid crushing its soft contents against its sides. Those of firmer structure (such as the *Entomostraca*), on the other hand, may be obtained by the use of a Tow-net attached to the stern of a sailing-vessel, or even of a steamer, in much more rapid motion.* When this method is employed, it will be found advantageous to make the net of conical form, and to attach to its deepest part a wide-mouthed bottle, which may be prevented from sinking too deeply by suspending it from a cork float: into this bottle many of the minute Animals caught by the net will be carried by the current produced by the motion of the vessel through the water, and they will be thus removed from liability to injury. It will also be useful to attach to the ring an inner net, the cone of which, more obtuse than that of the outer, is cut off at some little distance from the apex; this serves as a kind of valve, to prevent objects once caught from being washed out again. The net is to be drawn-in from time to time, and the bottle to be thrust-up through the hole in the inner cone; and its contents being transferred to a screw-capped bottle for examination, the net may be again immersed. This form of net, however, is less suitable for the most delicate objects, than the simple *Stick-net* used in the manner just described.—The Microscopist on a visit to the sea-side, who prefers a quiet row in tranquil waters to the trouble (and occasional *malaise*) of dredging, will find in the collection of floating Animals by the careful use of the Stick-net or Tow-net a never-ending source of interesting occupation.

* In the 'Challenger' Expedition, Tow-nets were almost constantly kept in use, not only at the surface, but at various depths beneath it; being attached to a line which was made to hang vertically in the water by the attachment of heavy weights at its extremity. The collections thus made showed the enormous amount of minute Animal life pervading the upper waters of the Ocean.

CHAPTER VI.

MICROSCOPIC FORMS OF VEGETABLE LIFE.—SIMPLER ALGÆ.

218. Those who desire to make themselves familiar with Microscopic appearances, and to acquire dexterity in Microscopic manipulation, cannot do better than educate themselves for more difficult inquiries by the study of those humblest types of Vegetation, which present Organic Structure under its most elementary aspect. And such as desire to search out the nature and conditions of Living Action, will find in the study of its simplest manifestations the best clue to the analysis of those intricate and diversified combinations, under which it presents itself in the highest Animal Organisms. For it has now been put beyond question, that the fundamental phenomena of Life are identical in Plants and in Animals; and that the living substance which exhibits them is of a nature essentially the same throughout both Kingdoms. The determination of this general fact, which forms the basis of the Science of BIOLOGY, is the most important result of modern Microscopic inquiry; and the illustration of it will be kept constantly in view, in the exposition now to be given of the chief applications of the Microscope to the study of those minute *Protophytes* (or simplest forms of Plant-life), with whose form and structure, and with whose very existence in many cases, we can only acquaint ourselves by its aid.

219. It was formerly supposed that *living action* could only be exhibited by *organized structure*. But we now know that all the functions of Life may be carried on by minute 'jelly-specks,' in whose apparently-homogeneous semi-fluid substance nothing like 'organization' can be detected; and further, that even in the very highest organisms, which present us with the greatest variety of 'differentiated' structures, the essential part of the Life-work is done by the same material,—these structures merely furnishing the mechanism (so to speak) through which its wonderful properties exert themselves. Hence this substance,* known in Vegetable

* Attention was drawn in 1835 by Dujardin (the French Zoologist to whom we owe the transfer of the *Foraminifera* from the highest to the lowest place among Invertebrate Animals), to the fact that the bodies of some of the lowest members of the Animal kingdom consist of a structureless, semi-fluid, contractile substance, to which he gave the name *sarcode* (rudimentary flesh). In 1851, the eminent Botanist Von Mohl showed that a similar substance forms the essential constituent of the cells of Plants, and termed it *protoplasm* (primitive plastic or organizable material). And in 1863 it was pointed out by Prof. Max Schultze, who had made a special study of the Rhizopod group, that the 'sarcode' of Animals and the 'protoplasm' of Plants are *identical.*—See his Memoir "Ueber das Protoplasma der Rhizopoden und Pflanzenzellen."

Physiology as *protoplasm*, but often referred to by Zoologists as *sarcode*, has been appropriately designated by Prof. Huxley "the Physical Basis of Life." In its typical state (such as it presents among *Rhizopods*, § 396) it is a semi-fluid, tenacious, glairy substance, resembling—alike in aspect and in composition—the *albumen* (or uncoagulated 'white') of an unboiled egg. But it is fundamentally distinguished from that or any other form of dead matter, by two attributes, which (as being peculiar to living substances) are designated *vital*:—1, its power of increase, by *assimilating* (that is, converting into the likeness of itself, and endowing with its own properties) nutrient material obtained from without; 2, its power of *spontaneous movement*, which shows itself in an extraordinary variety of actions, sometimes slow and progressive, sometimes rapid, sometimes wave-like and continuous, and sometimes rhythmical with regular intervals of rest. When examined under a sufficiently high magnifying power, multitudes of minute granules are usually seen to be diffused through it; but these do not appear to belong to it, their presence being (so to speak) accidental, depending upon the nature of the material which is undergoing assimilation.—Protoplasm, whether living or dead, has a great power of absorbing water; but the distinction between these two states is singularly marked by its behaviour in regard to any colouring matter which the water may contain. Thus, if living protoplasm be treated with a solution of carmine, it will remain unstained so long as it retains its vitality. But if the protoplasm be dead, the carmine will at once pervade its whole substance, and stain it throughout with a colour even more intense than that of the solution; thus furnishing (as was first pointed out by Dr. Beale) a ready means of distinguishing the 'germinal matter' or protoplasmic component of the Tissues of higher Animals, from the 'formed material' which is the most conspicuous part of their structure (Chap. xx.).

220. All those minute and simple forms of Life with which the Microscope brings us into acquaintance, essentially consist of particles of protoplasm; each kind having usually a tolerably definite size and shape, and showing (at least in some stage of its existence) something distinctive in its habit of life. And it is rather according to the manner in which they respectively live, grow, and multiply, than on account of any structural peculiarities, that they are assigned to the Vegetable or to the Animal kingdom respectively. It is impossible, in the present state of our knowledge, to lay down any definite line of demarcation between the two Kingdoms; since there is no single character by which the Animal or Vegetable nature of any organism can be tested. Probably the one which is most generally applicable among those that most closely approximate to one another, is not, as formerly supposed, the presence or absence of spontaneous motion; but, on the one hand, the dependence of the organism for nutriment upon *organic compounds already formed*, which it takes (in some way or other)

into the interior of its body; or, on the other, its possession of the power of *producing the organic compounds* which it applies to the increase of its fabric, at the expense of the *inorganic elements* with which it is supplied by Air and Water. The former, though perhaps not an *absolute* is a *general* characteristic of the *Animal* kingdom; the latter, but for the existence of which Animal life would be impossible, is certainly the *prominent* attribute of the *Vegetable*. We shall find that the *Protozoa* (or simplest Animals, Chaps. X. XI.) are supported as exclusively either upon other Protozoa or upon Protophytes, as are the highest Animals upon the flesh of other Animals or upon the products of the Vegetable kingdom; whilst *Protophytes*, in common with the highest Plants, draw *their* nourishment from the atmosphere or the water in which they live; and, like them, are distinguished by their power of decomposing Carbonic acid (CO^2) under the influence of Light,—setting free its Oxygen, and combining its Carbon with the elements of Water to form the Carbo-hydrogen compounds (Starch, Cellulose, &c.), and with those of atmospheric Ammonia to form Nitrogenous (albuminoid) compounds. And we shall find, moreover, that even such *Protozoa* as have neither stomach nor mouth, receive their alimentary matter direct into the very substance of their bodies, in which it undergoes a kind of digestion; whilst *Protophyta* absorb through their external surface only, and take-in no solid particles of any description. With regard to *motion*, which was formerly considered the distinctive attribute of Animality, we now know not merely that many Protophytes (perhaps all, at some period or other of their lives,) possess a power of spontaneous movement, but also that the instruments of motion (when these can be discovered) are of the very same character in the Plant as in the Animal; being little hair-like filaments, termed *cilia* (from the Latin *cilium*, an eyelash), or longer whip-like *flagella*, by whose rhythmical vibrations the body of which they form part is propelled in definite directions. The peculiar contractility of these organs seems to be an intensification of that of the general protoplasmic substance, of which they are special extensions.

221. There are certain Plants, however, which resemble Animals in their dependence upon Organic compounds prepared by other organisms; being themselves unable to effect that fixation of Carbon by the decomposition of the CO^2 of the Atmosphere, which is the first stage in their production. Such is the case, among *Phanerogams* (flowering plants), with the 'leafless parasites' which draw their support from the juices of their 'hosts.' And it is the case also, among the lower *Cryptogams*, with the entire group of FUNGI; which, however, seem generally to depend rather, for their nutritive materials, upon organic matter in a state of decomposition, many of them having the power of promoting that process by their *zymotic* (fermentative) action (Chap. VII.).—Among Animals, again, there are several in whose tissues are found organic compounds, such as Chlorophyll, Starch, and Cellulose, which are

characteristically Vegetable; but it has not yet been proved that they *generate* these compounds for themselves, by the decomposition of CO^2.

222. The plan of Organization recognizable throughout the Vegetable kingdom presents this remarkable feature of uniformity,—that the fabric, alike in the highest and most complicated Plants, and in the lowest and simplest forms of Vegetation, consists of nothing else than an aggregation of the bodies termed *Cells;* every one of which (save in the forms that lie near the border-ground between Animal and Vegetable life) has its little particle of protoplasm enclosed by a casing of the substance termed *cellulose*—a non-nitrogenous substance nearly allied in chemical composition to starch. The entire mass of cells of which any Vegetable organism is composed, has been generated from one primordial cell by processes of self-multiplication to be presently described: and the difference between the fabrics of the lowest and of the highest Plants essentially consists in this,—that whilst the cells produced by the self-multiplication of the primordial cell of the Protophyte are all mere repetitions of it and of one another, each living *by* and *for* itself—those produced by the like self-multiplication of the primordial cell in the Oak or Palm, not only remain in mutual connection, but undergo a progressive 'differentiation,' the ordinary type of the Cell undergoing various modifications to be described in their proper place (Chap. VIII.). A composite structure is thus developed, which is made up of a number of distinct 'organs' (stem, leaves, roots, flowers, &c.); each of them characterized by specialities not merely of external form, but of intimate structure; and each performing actions peculiar to itself, which contribute to the life of the Plant *as a whole.* Hence, as was first definitely stated by Schleiden, it is in the *life history of the individual cell* that we find the true basis of the study of Vegetable Life in general.

223. We have now to consider in more detail the structure and life-history of the typical Plant-cell; and shall begin by treating of the *Cell-wall.*—This consists of two layers, differing entirely in composition and properties. It is the *inner*, termed the 'primordial utricle,' that is first formed, and is most essential to the existence of the cell; it is extremely thin and delicate, so that it escapes attention so long as it remains in contact with the external layer; and it is only brought into view when separated from this, either by developmental changes (Fig. 141, A), or by the influence of re-agents which cause it to contract by drawing-forth part of its contents (Fig. 139, C). It is not sharply defined on its internal face, but passes gradationally into the protoplasmic substance it encloses, from which it is chiefly distinguishable by the absence of granules. And it is shown by the effects of re-agents to have the *albuminous* composition of protoplasm. It may thus be regarded as the slightly condensed external film of the protoplasmic layer with which its inner surface is in contact; and as it essentially corresponds with the 'ectosarc' of *Amœba* or any other Rhizopod (§ 396),

it may be termed the *ectoplasm*.—The *outer* layer, on the other hand, entirely consists of *cellulose*, which seems to be excreted from the surface of the 'ectoplasm' for the protection of its contents; it is usually thick and strong, and can often be seen to consist of several layers. The 'ectoplasm' and 'cellulose wall' can be readily distinguished from one another by Chemical tests (§ 204); and also by the action of Carmine, which stains the protoplasmic substance (when dead) without affecting the cellulose-wall.

224. The *contents* of the Plant-cell, which may be collectively termed the *endoplasm* (answering to the 'endosarc' of Rhizopods), or, when strongly coloured throughout (as in many *Algæ*) the *endochrome*, consist in the first place of the layer of protoplasmic substance which lines the 'ectoplasm;' secondly, of a watery fluid, called 'cell-sap,' which holds in solution sugar, vegetable acids, saline matters, &c.; thirdly, of the peculiar body termed the 'nucleus;' and fourthly, of chlorophyll-corpuscles (enclosing starch-granules), oil-particles, &c.—In the young state of the cell, the whole cavity is occupied by the protoplasmic substance, which is, however, viscid and granular near the cell-wall, but more watery towards the interior. With the enlargement of the cell and the imbibition of water, clear spaces termed *vacuoles*, filled with watery cell-sap, are seen in the protoplasmic substance; and these progressively increase in size and number, until they come to occupy a considerable proportion of the cavity, the protoplasm stretching across it as an irregular network of bands. Where, as usually happens, the 'nucleus' lies imbedded in the outer protoplasmic layers, these bands are gradually withdrawn into it, so that the separate vacuoles unite into one large general vacuole which is filled with watery cell-sap. But where the 'nucleus' occupies the centre of the cell, part of the protoplasm collects around it, and bands or threads of protoplasm stretch thence to various parts of the parietal layer. It is by the contractility of the protoplasmic layer, that the curious 'cyclosis' hereafter to be described (§ 258) is carried-on within the Plant-cell, which is the most interesting to the Microscopist of all its manifestations of vital activity.—The *nucleus* is a small body, usually of lenticular or sub-globose form (Fig. 139, A, *a*), and of albuminous composition, that lies imbedded in protoplasmic substance, either on the cell-wall or in the central cavity. It is not, however, constantly present even in the higher forms of cell-structure; for in those cells whose active life has been completed, the nucleus is usually absent, having probably been resolved again into the protoplasm from which it was originally formed. And in the cells of many of the lower Cryptogams, it cannot be distinguished at any stage of their existence. Within the nucleus are often seen one or more small distinct particles termed *nucleoli* (Fig. 139, A, *b*), which can be best distinguished by the strong coloration they receive from a 24 hours' immersion in carmine, and subsequent washing in water slightly acidulated with

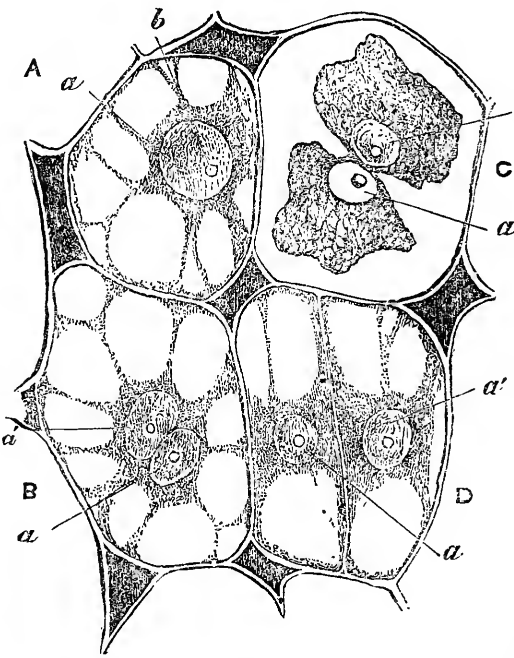
acetic acid. Though the precise function of the nucleus is still unknown, there can be no reasonable doubt of its peculiar relation to the vital activity of the cell: for in the nucleated cells which exhibit 'cyclosis,' it may be observed that if the nucleus remains attached to the cell-wall, it constitutes a centre from which the protoplasmic streams diverge, and to which they return; whilst if it retains its freedom to wander about, the course of the streams alters in conformity with its position. But it is in the multiplication of cells by binary subdivision which will be presently described (§ 226), that the speciality of the nucleus as *the centre of the vital activity of the cell* is most strongly manifested.—The *chlorophyll corpuscles*, which are limited to the cells of the parts of plants acted-on by light, are specialized particles of protoplasm through which a green colouring matter is diffused; and it is by them that the work of decomposing CO^2, and of 'fixing' its carbon, by union with the oxygen and hydrogen of water, into *starch* (which seems to be the basis of all other vegetable compounds), is effected. The characteristic green of chlorophyll often gives place to other colours, which seem to be produced from it by chemical action.—Starch-grains are always formed in the first instance in the interior of the chlorophyll-corpuscles, and gradually increase in size until they take the places of the corpuscles that produced them. So long as they continue to grow, they are always imbedded in the protoplasm of the cell; and it is only when fully formed, that they lie free within its cavity (Fig. 246).

225. But although these component parts may be made-out without any difficulty in a large proportion of Vegetable Cells, yet they cannot be distinguished in some of those humble organisms which are nearest to the border-line between the two Kingdoms. For in them we find the 'cell-wall' very imperfectly differentiated from the 'cell-contents;' the former not having by any means the firmness of a perfect membrane, and the latter not possessing the liquidity which elsewhere characterizes them. And in some instances the cell appears to be represented only by a mass of endochrome, so viscid as to retain its external form without any limitary membrane, though the superficial layer seems to have a firmer consistence than the interior substance; and this may or may not be surrounded by a gelatinous-looking envelope, which is equally far from possessing a membranous firmness, and yet is the only representative of the cellulose-wall. This viscid endochrome consists, as elsewhere, of a colourless protoplasm, through which minute colouring particles are diffused, sometimes uniformly, sometimes in local aggregations, leaving parts of the protoplasm uncoloured. The superficial layer, in particular, is frequently destitute of colour; and the partial solidification of its surface gives it the character of an 'ectoplasm.' The nucleus, as already mentioned, is frequently absent from the cells of the lower Protophytes.—It is an extremely curious feature in the cell-life of certain *Protophytes*,

that they not only move like Animalcules by cilia or flagella, but that they exhibit the rhythmically-contracting vacuoles which are specially characteristic of *Protozoic* organisms.

226. So far as we yet know, every Vegetable Cell derives its existence from a pre-existing cell; and this derivation may take place (in the ordinary process of growth and extension, as distinguished from 'sexual generation') in one of two modes:—either (1) *binary subdivision* of the parent-cell, or (2) *free cell-formation* within the parent-cell.—The first stage of the former process consists in the elongation and transverse constriction of the nucleus; and this constriction becomes deeper and deeper, until the nucleus divides itself into two halves (Fig. 139, B, *a*, *a'*). These then separating from each other, the endoplasm of the parent-cell collects round the

Fig. 139.

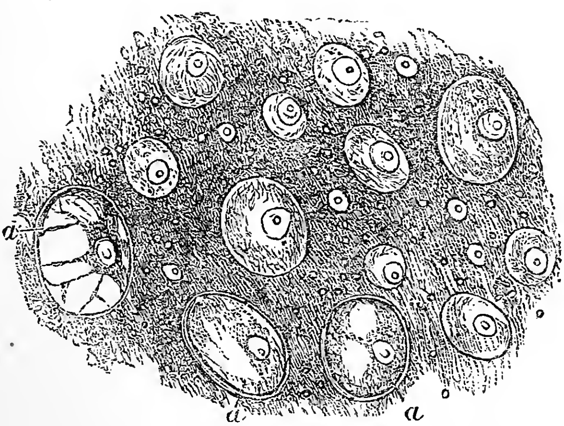


Duplicative Subdivision of Cells in Endosperm of Seed of Scarlet-runner:—A, ordinary cell, with nucleus *a*, and nucleolus *b*, imbeded in its protoplasm;—B, cell showing subdivision of nucleus into two halves, *a* and *a'*;—C, cell in same stage, showing contraction of endoplasm (produced by addition of water), into two separate masses round the two segments of original nucleus;—D, two complete cells within mother-cell, divided by partition.

two new centres, so as to divide itself into two distinct masses (C, *a*, *a'*); and by the investment of these two secondary 'endoplasms,' first with 'ectoplasms,' and afterwards with cellulose-walls, a complete pair of new cells (D, *a*, *a'*) is formed within the cavity of

the parent-cell.—The latter process, which is very common among Protophytes (being that by which 'zoöspores,' or 'swarm-spores,' are commonly produced, § 245), is chiefly seen among Phanerogams in the production of a number of cells at once within the cavity of the 'embryo-sac' (§ 349), which may itself be considered as a distended parent-cell. The endoplasm, in the former of these cases, instead of dividing itself into two halves, usually breaks up into numerous segments corresponding with one another in size and form (Fig. 149), each of which escaping from the parent cavity becomes an independent cell, and gives origin by duplicative subdivision to a new fabric. In the second case, the endoplasm groups itself, more or less completely, round several centres, each of which may or may not contain a nucleus in the first instance; and these secondary cells, in various stages of development, lie free within the cavity of the parent-cell, imbedded in its residual endoplasm, each proceeding to complete itself as a cell by the formation of a limiting wall, and by the development of a nucleus if none was previously present (Fig. 140). Now, in this second case, as the new brood of cells continues to form part of the fabric in which it originated, its pro-

FIG. 140.



Successive stages of *free Cell-formation* in Embryo-sac of Seed of Scarlet-runner:—*a*, *a*, *a*, completed cells, each having its proper cell-wall, nucleus, and endoplasm, lying in a protoplasmic mass, through which are dispersed nuclei and cells in various stages of development.

duction is clearly an act of *growth;* and although, in the first case, the setting-free of the 'swarm-spores' from the parent-cell calls into existence a fresh brood of secondary organisms, this is no more to be regarded in strictness as a 'new generation,' than is the putting-forth of a new set of leaf-buds by a tree—every one of them, when separated from its stock, developing itself under favourable conditions into the likeness of that which produced it. As a 'new generation,' in any *Phanerogamic* plant, has its origin in the

fertilization of a highly specialized 'germ-cell' (contained within the ovule) by the contents of a 'sperm-cell' (the pollen-grain), so do we find among all save the lowest *Cryptogams* a provision for the union of the contents of two highly specialized cells; the 'germ-cells' being fertilized by the access of motile filaments (antherozoids), set free from the cavities of the 'sperm-cells' within which they were developed (§ 259). But although the sexual process can be traced downwards under this form into the group of Protophytes, we find among the lower types of that group a yet simpler mode of bringing it about; for there is strong reason to regard the act of 'conjugation,' which takes place among the 'unicellular' *Algæ* (§§ 229, 235), in the same light, and to look upon the 'oöspore'* which is its immediate product, as the originator (like the fertilized embryo-cell of the Phanerogamic seed) of a 'new generation.'

227. In the lowest forms of vegetation, every single cell is not only capable of living in a state of isolation from the rest, but even normally does so; and thus the plant may be said to be *unicellular*, every cell having an independent 'individuality.' There are others, again, in which amorphous masses are made up by the aggregation of cells, which, though quite capable of living independently, remain attached to each other by the mutual fusion (so to speak) of their gelatinous investments. And there are others, moreover, in which a definite adhesion exists between the cells, and in which regular plant-like structures are thus formed, notwithstanding that every cell is but a repetition of every other, and is capable of living independently if detached, so as still to answer to the designation of a 'unicellular' or single-celled Plant. These different conditions we shall find to arise out of the mode in which each particular species multiplies by binary subdivision (§ 226): for where the cells of the new pair that is produced within the previous cell undergo a *complete* separation from one another, they will henceforth live independently; but, if, instead of undergoing this complete fission, they should be held together by the intervening gelatinous envelope, a shapeless mass results from repeated subdivisions not taking place on any determinate plan; and if, moreover, the binary subdivision should always take place in a determinate direction, a long narrow filament (Fig. 145, D), or a broad flat leaf-like

* The term *spore* has been long used by Cryptogamists to designate the minute reproductive particles (such as those set free from the 'fructification' of Ferns, Mosses, &c.), which were supposed—in the absence of all knowledge of their sexual relations—to be the equivalents of the Seeds of Flowering plants. But it is now known that such 'spores' have (so to speak) very different values in different cases; being, in by far the larger proportion of Cryptogams, but the remote descendants of the fertilized cell which is the immediate product of the sexual act under any of its forms. This cell, which will be distinguished throughout the present treatise as the *oöspore*, is the real representative of the 'primordial cell' of the 'embryo' developed within the *seed* of the Flowering plant. On the other hand, the various kinds of *non-sexual* spores emitted by Cryptogams, which have received a great variety of designations, are all to be regarded (as will be presently explained) as equivalents of the *leaf-buds* of Flowering plants. (See the next Note.)

expansion (G), may be generated. To such extended fabrics the term 'unicellular' plants can scarcely be applied with propriety; since they may be built-up of many thousands or millions of distinct cells, which have no disposition to separate from each other spontaneously. Still they correspond with those which are strictly unicellular, as to the *absence of differentiation* either in structure or in actions between their component cells; each one of these being a repetition of the rest, and no relation of mutual dependence existing among them. And all such simple organisms, therefore, may still be included under the general term of PROTOPHYTES.

228. Excluding *Lichens*, for the reasons to be stated hereafter (§ 325), Botanists now rank these Protophytes under two series;—*Algæ*, which form chlorophyll, and can support themselves upon air, water, and mineral matters; and *Fungi*, which, not forming chlorophyll for themselves, depend for their nutriment upon materials drawn from other organisms. Each series contains a large variety of forms, which, when traced from below upwards, present gradationally increasing complexities of structure; and these gradations show themselves especially in the provisions made for the Generative process. Thus, in the lowest, a 'zygospore' is produced by the fusion of the contents of two cells, which neither present any sexual difference, the one from the other, nor can be distinguished in any way from the rest (§ 229). In the following stage, while the 'conjugating' cells are still apparently undifferentiated from the rest of the structure, a sexual difference shows itself between them; the contents of one cell (male) passing over into the cavity of the other (female), within which the 'zygospore' is formed (§ 235). The next stage in the ascent is the resolution of the contents of the male cell into motile filaments ('antheroids'), which, escaping from it, move freely through the water, and find their way to the female cell, whose contents, fertilized by mixture with the material they bring (§ 249), form an 'oöspore.' In the lower forms of this stage, again, the generative cells are not distinguishable from the rest, until the contents begin to show their characteristically sexual aspect (§ 253); but in the higher they are developed in special organs, constituting a true 'fructification' (§ 259). This must, however, be distinguished from organs, which, though commonly spoken of as the 'fructification,' have no real analogy with the generative apparatus of Flowering-plants; their function being merely to give origin to *gonidial** cells

* The term *Gonidia*, originally applied to certain green cells in the Lichen-crusts, that are capable, when detached, of reproducing the vegetative portion of the Plant (§ 325), has latterly come into use as a designation of the *non-sexual spores* of Cryptogamia generally, which it is very important to discriminate from the generative 'oöspores.' If possessed of *motile* powers, they are spoken of as 'zoöspores,' or sometimes (on account of the appearance they present when a number are set free at once) as 'swarm-spores.' In contradistinction to 'motile' gonidia or 'zoöspores,' those which show no movement are often termed *resting* spores or *statospores*: but such may be either sexual *oöspores* or non-sexual *gonidia*; the latter, like the former, often 'encysting' themselves

or groups of cells, which simply *multiply* the parent stock, in the same manner that many Flowering-plants (such as the Potato), can be propagated by the artificial separation of their leaf-buds. It frequently happens among Cryptogamia, that this *gonidial* fructification is by far the more conspicuous; the *sexual* fructification being often so obscure that it cannot be detected at all without great difficulty. And we shall presently see that there are some Protophytes in which the production of *gonidia* seems to go on indefinitely, no form of sexual generation having been detected in them (§ 245).—These general statements will now be illustrated by sketches of the Life-history of some of those humble Protophytes, which present the phenomena of cell-division, conjugation, and gonidial multiplication, under their simplest and most instructive aspect.

229. The first of these is the *Palmoglœa macrococca* (Kützing); one of those humble kinds of vegetation which spreads itself as a green slime over damp stones, walls, &c. When this slime is examined with the microscope, it is found to consist of a multitude of green cells (Plate VIII., fig., 1, A), each surrounded by a gelatinous envelope; the cell, which does not seem to have any distinct membranous wall, is filled with a granular 'endochrome' consisting of green particles diffused through colourless protoplasm; and in the midst of this a nucleus may sometimes be distinguished, but can always be brought into view by tincture of iodine, which turns the 'endochrome' cell to a brownish hue, and makes the nucleus (G) dark brown. Other cells are seen (B), which are considerably elongated, some of them beginning to present a sort of hour-glass contraction across the middle; and when cells in this condition are treated with tincture of iodine, the nucleus is seen to be undergoing the like elongation and constriction (H). A more advanced state of the process of subdivision is seen at C, in which the constriction has proceeded to the extent of completely cutting-off the two halves of the cell, as well as of the nucleus (I), from each other, though they still remain in mutual contact; but in a yet later stage they are found detached from each other (D), though still included within the same gelatinous envelope. Each new cell then begins to secrete its own gelatinous envelope, so that by its intervention, the two are usually soon separated from one another (E). Sometimes, however, this is not the case; the process of subdivision being quickly repeated before there is time for the production of the gelatinous envelope, so that a series of cells (F) hanging-on one to another is produced. There appears to be no definite limit to this kind of multiplication; and extensive areas may be quickly covered, in circumstances favourable to the growth of the plant, by the products of the binary

in a firm envelope, and remaining dormant within it for long periods of time. Gonidial spores, again, are sometimes distinctively named according to their size; some of them, which consist of numerous cell-particles clustered together, being designated *macro-gonidia*, in contrast to the *micro-gonidia* consisting of single cell-particles, which, when motile, are known as 'zoöspores.'

PLATE VIII.

Fig 1.

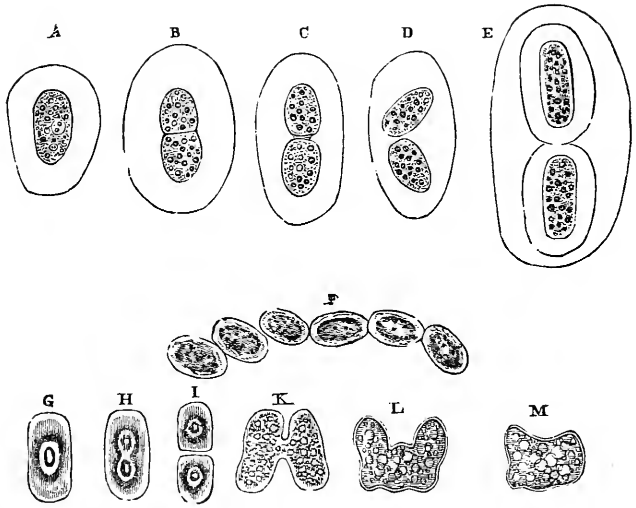
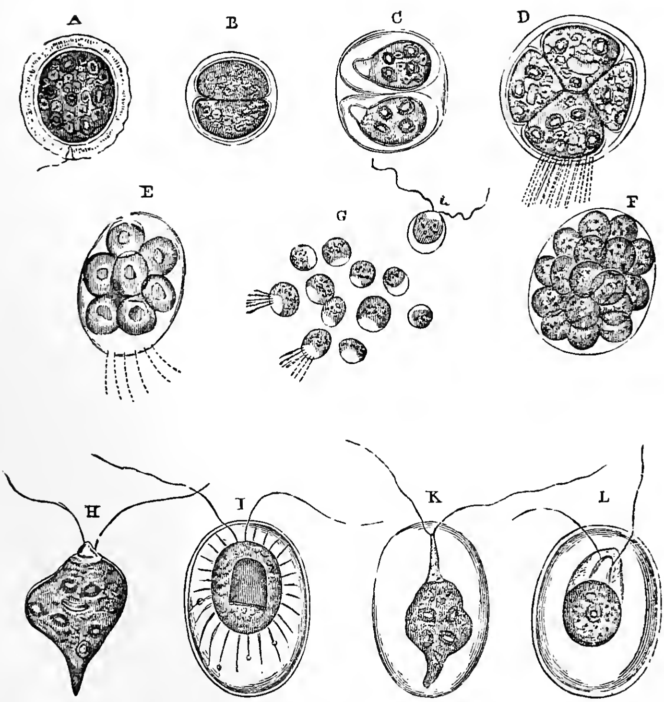


Fig. 2.



Development of Palmoglæa and Protoccocus.

[*To face p.* 276.

subdivision of one primordial cell. This, as already shown (§ 226), is really an act of *growth*, which continues indefinitely so long as moisture is abundant, and the temperature low.—But under the influence of heat and dryness, the process of cell-multiplication gives place to that of 'conjugation;' in which two cells, apparently similar in all respects, fuse together for the production of a 'zygospore,' which (like the seed of a Flowering-plant) can endure being reduced to a quiescent state for an unlimited time, and may be so completely dried up as to seem like a particle of dust, yet resumes its vegetative activity whenever placed in the conditions favourable to it. The conjugating process commences by the putting-forth of protrusions from the boundaries of two adjacent cells, which meet, fuse together (thereby showing the want of firmness of their 'ectoplasms'), and form a connecting bridge between their cavities (K). The fusion extends before long through a large part of the contiguous sides of the two cells (L); and at last becomes so complete, that the combined mass (M) shows no trace of its double origin. It soon forms for itself a firm cellulose envelope, which bursts when the 'zygospore' is wetted; and the contained cell begins life as a *new generation*, speedily multiplying, like the former ones, by binary subdivision.—It is curious to observe that during this conjugating process a production of oil-particles takes place in the cells; these at first are small and distant, but gradually become larger, and approximate more closely to each other, and at last coalesce so as to form oil-drops of various sizes, the green granular matter disappearing; and the colour of the conjugated body changes, with the advance of this process, from green to a light yellowish-brown. When the zygospore begins to vegetate, on the other hand, a converse change occurs; the oil-globules disappear, and green granular matter takes their place. This is precisely what happens in the formation of the seed among the higher Plants; for starchy substances are transformed into oil, which is stored up in the seed for the nutrition of the embryo, and is applied during germination to the purposes which are at other times answered by them.

230. If this (as seems probable) constitutes the entire life-cycle of the *Palmoglœa*, it affords no example of that curious 'motile' stage which is exhibited by most Algal protophytes in some stage of their existence, and which constitutes a large part of the life-history of the minute unicellular organism now to be described, the *Protococcus pluvialis*,* (Plate VIII., fig. 2), which is not uncommon in

* The Author had under his own observation, thirty-five years ago, an extraordinary abundance of what he now feels satisfied must have been this Protophyte, in an open rain-water cistern which had been newly cleaned-out. His notice was attracted to it by seeing the surface of the water covered with a green froth, whenever the sun shone upon it. On examining a portion of this froth under the Microscope, he found that the water was crowded with green cells in active motion; and although the only bodies at all resembling them of which he could find any description, were the so-called *Animalcules* constituting the genus *Chlamydomonas* of Prof. Ehrenberg, and very little was known at

collections of rain-water. Not only has this Protophyte, in its motile-condition, been very commonly regarded as an Animalcule, but its different states have been described under several different names. In the first place, the *colour* of its cells varies considerably; since, although they are usually *green* at the period of their most active life, they are sometimes *red;* and their red form has received the distinguishing appellation of *Hæmatococcus.* Very commonly the red-colouring matter forms only a central mass of greater or less size, having the appearance of a nucleus (as shown at E); and sometimes it is reduced to a single granular point, which has been erroneously represented by Prof. Ehrenberg as the *eye* of these so-called Animalcules. It is quite certain that the red colouring-substance is very nearly related in its chemical character to the green, and that the one may be converted into the other: though the conditions under which this conversion takes place are not precisely known. In the *still* form of the cell, with which we may commence the history of its life, the endoplasm consists of a colourless protoplasm, through which red or green-coloured granules are more or less uniformly diffused: and the surface of the colourless protoplasm is condensed into an ectoplasm, which is surrounded by a tolerably firm layer, consisting of cellulose or of some modification of it. Outside this (as shown at A), when the 'still' cell is formed by a change in the condition of a cell that has been previously 'motile,' we find another envelope, which seems to be of the same nature, but which is separated by the interposition of aqueous fluid; this, however, may be altogether wanting. The multiplication of the 'still' cells by subdivision takes place as in *Palmoglœa;* the endoplasm first undergoing separation into two halves (as seen at B), and each of these halves subsequently developing a cellulose envelope around itself, and undergoing the same division in its turn. Thus 2, 4, 8, 16 new cells are successively produced; and these are sometimes set-free by the complete dissolution of the envelope of the original cell; but they are more commonly held

that time of the 'motile' conditions of *Plants* of this description, yet of the Vegetable nature of these bodies he could not entertain the smallest doubt. They appeared in freshly collected rain-water, and could not, therefore, be deriving their support from Organic matter: under the influence of light they were obviously decomposing Carbonic acid and liberating Oxygen; and this influence he found to be essential to the continuance of their growth and development, which took place entirely upon the Vegetative plan. Not many days after the Protophyte first appeared in the water, a few Wheel-animalcules presented themselves: these fed greedily upon it, and increased so rapidly (the weather being very warm) that they speedily became almost as crowded as the cells of the Protococcus had been; and it was probably due in part to their voracity, that the Plant soon became less abundant, and before long disappeared altogether. Had the Author been then aware of its assumption of the 'still' condition, he might have found it at the bottom of the cistern, after it had ceased to present itself at the surface.—The account of this Plant given above, is derived from that of Dr. Cohn, in the "Nova Acta Acad. Nat. Curios." (Bonn, 1850), Tom. xxii.; of which an abstract by Mr. George Busk is contained in the "Botanical and Physiological Memoirs" published by the Ray Society for 1853.

together by its transformation into a gelatinous investment, in which they remain imbedded. Sometimes the endoplasm subdivides at once into four segments (as at D), of which every one forthwith acquires the characters of an independent cell; but this, although an ordinary method of multiplication among the 'motile' cells, is comparatively rare in the 'still' condition. Sometimes, again, the endoplasm of the 'still' form subdivides at once into eight portions, which, being of small size, and endowed with motile power, may be considered as *zoöspores*. It is not quite clear what becomes of these; but there is reason to believe that some of them retain their motile powers, and develope themselves into the ordinary 'motile' cells; that others produce a firm cellulose envelope, and become 'still' cells; and that others (perhaps the majority) perish without any further change.

231. When the ordinary self-division of the 'still' cells into two segments has been repeated four times, so as to produce 16 cells—and sometimes at an earlier period—the new cells thus produced assume the 'motile' condition; being liberated before the development of the cellulose envelope, and becoming furnished with two long vibratile *flagella*, which seem to be extensions of the colourless protoplasm-layer that accumulates at their base so as to form a sort of transparent beak (H). In this condition it seems obvious that the colourless protoplasm is more developed relatively to the colouring-matter, than it is in the 'still' cells; and it usually contains 'vacuoles' occupied only by clear aqueous fluid, which are sometimes so numerous as to take-in a large part of the cavity of the cell, so that the coloured contents seem only like a deposit on its walls. Before long, this 'motile' cell acquires a peculiar saccular investment, which seems to correspond with the cellulose envelope of the 'still' cells, but is not so firm in its consistence (I, K, L); and between this and the surface of the ectoplasm a considerable space intervenes, traversed by thread-like extensions of the latter, which are rendered more distinct by iodine, and can be made to retract by means of re-agents. The flagella pass through the cellulose envelope, which invests their base with a sort of sheath; and in the portion that is within this sheath no movement is seen. During the active life of the 'motile' cell, the vibration of these flagella is so rapid, that it can be recognised only by the currents it produces in the water through which the cells are quickly propelled; but when the motion becomes slacker, the filaments themselves are readily distinguishable; and they may be made more obvious by the addition of iodine.

232. The multiplication of these 'motile' cells may take place in various modes, giving rise to a great variety of appearances. Sometimes they undergo a regular binary subdivision (B), whereby a pair of motile cells is produced (C), each resembling its single predecessor in possessing the cellulose investment, the transparent beak, and the vibratile filaments, before the dissolution of the original investment. Sometimes, again, the contents of the primordial

cell undergo a segmentation in the first instance into four divisions (D); which may either become isolated by the dissolution of their envelope, and may separate from each other in the condition of free primordial utricles (H), developing their cellulose investments at a future time; or may acquire their cellulose investments (as in the preceding case) before the solution of that of the original cell; while sometimes, even after the disappearance of this, and the formation of their own independent investments, they remain attached to each other at their beaked extremities, the primordial utricles being connected with each other by peduncular prolongations, and the whole compound body having the form of a +. This quaternary segmentation appears to be a more frequent mode of multiplication among the 'motile' cells, than the subdivision into two; although, as we have seen, it is less common in the 'still' condition. So, also, a primary segmentation of the entire endochrome of the 'motile' cells into 8, 16, or even 32 parts, may take place (E, F), thus giving rise to as many minute gonidial cells. These *micro-gonidia*, when set free, and possessing active powers of movement, rank as 'zoöspores' (G): they may either develope a loose cellulose investment or cyst, so as to attain the full dimensions of the ordinary motile cells (I, K), or they may become clothed with a dense envelope and lose their flagella, thus passing into the 'still' condition (A); and this last transformation may even take place before they are set free from the envelope within which they were produced, so that they constitute a mulberry-like mass, which fills the whole cavity of the original cell, and is kept in motion by its flagella.

233. These varied forms, whose relation to each other has been clearly proved by watching the successional changes that make up the history of this one Plant, have been described, not merely as distinct *species*, but as distinct *genera* of Animalcules, such as *Chlamydomonas*, *Euglena*, *Trachelomonas*, *Gyges*, *Gonium*, *Pandorina*, *Botryocystis*, *Uvella*, *Syncrypta*, *Monas*, *Astasia*, *Bodo*, and probably many others. Certain forms, such as the 'motile' cells I, K, L, appear in a given infusion, at first exclusively and then principally; they gradually diminish, become more and more rare, and finally disappear altogether, being replaced by the 'still' form. After some time, the number of the 'motile' cells again increases, and reaches, as before, an extraordinary amount; and this alternation may be repeated several times in the course of a few weeks. The process of segmentation is often accomplished with great rapidity. If a number of motile cells be transferred from a larger glass into a smaller, it will be found, after the lapse of a few hours, that most of them have subsided to the bottom; in the course of the day, they will all be observed to be upon the point of subdivision; on the following morning, the divisional brood will have become quite free; and on the next, the bottom of the vessel will be found covered with a new brood of self-dividing cells, which again proceed to the formation of a new brood, and so on.—The

activity of Motion and the activity of Multiplication seem to stand, in some degree, in a relation of reciprocity to each other; for the self-dividing process takes-place with greater rapidity in the 'still' cells, than it does in the 'motile.'

234. What are the precise conditions which determine the transition between the 'still' and the 'motile' states, cannot yet be precisely stated; but the influence of certain agencies can be predicted with tolerable certainty. Thus it is only necessary to pour the water containing these organisms from a smaller and deeper into a larger and shallower vessel, at once to determine segmentation in numerous cells—a phenomenon which is observable also in many other Protophytes. The 'motile' cells seem to be favourably affected by Light, for they collect themselves at the surface of the water and at the edges of the vessel; but when they are about to undergo segmentation, or to pass into the 'still' condition, they sink to the bottom of the vessel, or retreat to that part of it in which they are least subjected to light. When kept in the dark, the 'motile' cells undergo a great diminution of their chlorophyll, which becomes very pale, and is diffused, instead of forming definite granules; they continue their movement, however, uninterruptedly, without either sinking to the bottom, or passing into the still form, or undergoing segmentation. A moderate warmth, particularly that of the vernal sun, is favourable to the development of the 'motile' cells; but a temperature of excessive elevation prevents it. Rapid evaporation of the water in which the 'motile' forms may be contained, kills them at once; but a more gradual loss, such as takes-place in deep glasses, causes them merely to pass into the 'still' form; and in this condition—especially when they have assumed a red hue—they may be completely dried-up, and may remain in a state of dormant vitality for many years. It is in this state that they are wafted-about in atmospheric currents, and that, being brought-down by rain into pools, cisterns, &c., they may present themselves where none had been previously known to exist; and there, under favourable circumstances, they may undergo a very rapid multiplication, and may maintain themselves until the water is dried-up, or some other change occurs which is incompatible with the continuance of their vital activity. They then very commonly become red throughout, the red colouring-substance extending itself from the centre towards the circumference, and assuming an appearance like that of oil-drops; and these red cells, acquiring thick cell-walls and a mucous envelope, float in flocculent aggregations on the surface of the water. This state seems to correspond with the 'winter-spores' of other Protophytes; and it may continue until warmth, air, and moisture cause the development of the red cells into the ordinary 'still' cells, green matter being gradually produced, until the red substance forms only the central part of the endochrome. After this, the cycle of changes occurs which has been already described; and the Plant may pass through a long series of these, before it returns

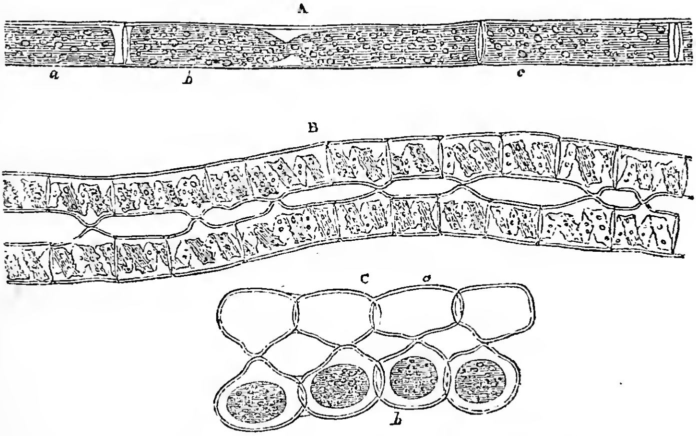
to the state of the red thick-walled cell, in which it may again remain dormant for an unlimited period.—Even this cycle, however, cannot be regarded as completing the history of the *Protococcus;* since it does not include the performance of any true Generative act. There can be little doubt that, in some stage of its existence, a 'conjugation' of two cells occurs, as in *Palmoglœa;* and the attention of observers should be directed to its discovery, as well as to the detection of other varieties in the condition of this interesting little Plant, which will be probably found to present themselves before and after the performance of that act.*

235. Nearly related to the foregoing in the independence of their individual cells, are the two groups *Desmidiaceæ* and *Diatomaceæ,* which, in a systematic view, rank as subordinate divisions of the family *Conjugateæ;* their Generative process being performed in the same simple manner as that of *Palmoglœa* (§ 229). But these two tribes being of such special interest to the Microscopist as to require separate treatment (§ 260), only that higher group, the *Zygnemaceæ,* will be here noticed, in which the cells produced by binary subdivision remain attached to each other, end to end, so as to form long unbranched filaments (Fig. 141), whose length is continually being increased by a repetition of the same process, which may take place in any part of the filaments, and not at their ends alone. The plants of this group are not found so much in running streams, as in waters that are perfectly still, such as those of ponds, reservoirs, ditches, or marshy grounds; and they are for the most part unattached, floating freely at or near the surface, especially when buoyed-up by the bubbles of gas which are liberated from the midst of them under the influence of solar light and heat. In the early stage of their growth, whilst as yet the cells are undergoing multiplication by subdivision, the endochrome is commonly diffused pretty uniformly through their cavities (Fig. 141, A); but as they advance towards the stage of conjugation, it ordinarily arranges itself into regular spirals (B), though occasionally in some other forms. The act of conjugation usually occurs between the cells of two distinct filaments that happen to lie in proximity to each other; and all the cells of each filament generally take part in it at once. The adjacent cells put forth little protuberances, which come into contact with each other, and then coalesce by the breaking-down of the intervening partitions, so as to establish a free passage between the cavities of the conjugating cells. In some genera of this family (such as *Mesocarpus*), the conjugating cells pour their endochromes into a dilatation of the

* In the above sketch, the Author has presented the facts described by Dr. Cohn, under the relation which they seemed to him naturally to bear, but which differs from that in which they will be found in the original Memoir; and he is glad to be able te state, from personal communication with its able Author, that Dr. Cohn's later observations have led him to adopt a view of the relationship of the 'still' and 'motile' forms, which is in essential accordance with his own.

passage that has been established between them; and it is there that they commingle so as to form the 'zygospore.' But in the *Zygnema* (Fig. 141, B), which is among the commonest and best-

FIG. 141.



Various stages of the history of *Zygnema quininum*:—A, three cells *a*, *b*, *c*, of a young filament, of which *b* is undergoing subdivision; B, two filaments in the first stage of conjugation, showing the spiral disposition of their endochromes, and the protuberances from the conjugating cells; C, completion of the act of conjugation, the endochromes of the cells of the filament *a* having entirely passed over to those of filament *b*, in which the zygospores are formed.

known of Conjugateæ, the endochrome of one cell passes over entirely into the cavity of the other; and it is within the latter that the 'zygospore' is formed (C), the two endochromes coalescing into a simple mass, around which a firm envelope gradually makes its appearance. Further, it may be generally observed that *all* the cells of one filament thus empty themselves, whilst *all* the cells of the other filament become the recipients: here, therefore, we seem to have a foreshadowing of the sexual distinction of the Generative cells into 'sperm-cells' and 'germ-cells,' which we shall presently see in the filamentous *Confervaceæ*. Multiplication by 'zoöspores' has not been seen to take place among the Conjugateæ.

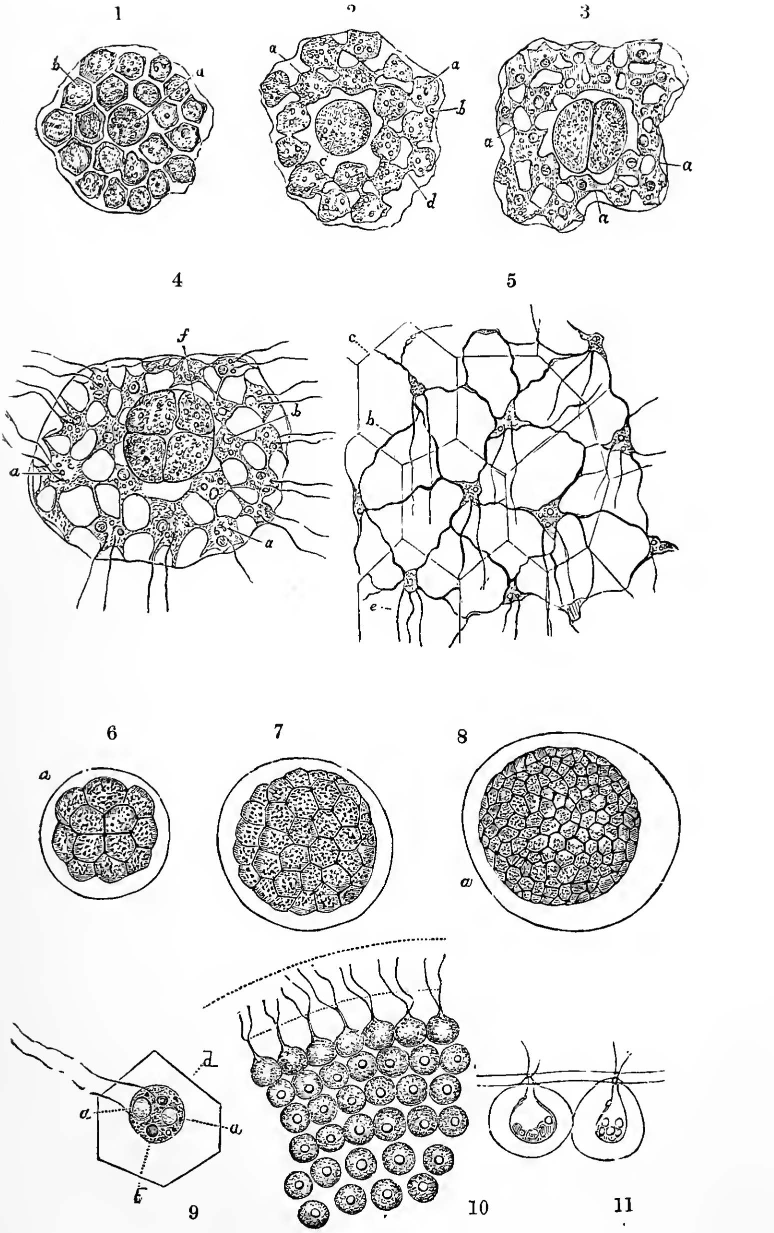
236. From the composite 'motile' forms of *Protococcus* (§ 232), the transition is easy to the group of *Volvocineæ*,—an assemblage of minute Plants of the greatest interest to the Microscopist, on account both of the Animalcule-like activity of their movements, and of the great beauty and regularity of their forms. The most remarkable example of this group is the well-known *Volvox globator* (FRONTISPIECE), which is not uncommon in fresh-water pools, and which, attaining a diameter of about 1-50th or even 1-30th of an inch, may be seen with the naked eye when the drop containing it is held-up to the light, swimming through the water which it

inhabits. Its onward motion is usually of a rolling kind; but it sometimes glides smoothly along, without turning on its axis; whilst sometimes, again, it rotates like a top, without changing its position. When examined with a sufficient magnifying power, the *Volvox* is seen to consist of a hollow sphere, composed of a very pellucid material, which is studded at regular intervals with minute green spots, and which is often (but not constantly) traversed by green threads connecting these spots together. From each of the spots proceed two long *flagella;* so that the entire surface is beset with these lashing filaments, to whose combined action its movements are due. Within the external sphere may generally be seen from two to twenty other globes, of a darker colour, and of varying sizes; the smaller of these are attached to the inner surface of the investing sphere, and project into its cavity; but the larger lie freely within the cavity, and may often be observed to revolve by the agency of their own *flagella.* After a time, the original sphere bursts, and the contained spherules swim forth and speedily develope themselves into the likeness of that within which they have been evolved; their coloured particles, which are at first closely aggregated together, being separated from each other by the interposition of the transparent pellicle.—It was long supposed that the *Volvox* is a *single* Animal; and it was first shown to be a *composite* fabric, made up of a repetition of organisms in all respects similar to each other, by Prof. Ehrenberg; who, however, considered these organisms as *Monads,* and described them as each possessing a mouth, several stomachs, and an eye! Our present knowledge of their nature, however, leaves little doubt of their Vegetable character;* and the peculiarity of their history renders it desirable to describe it in some detail.

237. Each of the so-called 'monads' (Plate IX., figs. 9, 11) is a somewhat flask-shaped Plant-cell, about 1-3000th of an inch in diameter; consisting, as in the previous instances, of green chlorophyll-granules diffused through a colourless protoplasm, constituting an 'endochrome' (which commonly includes also a red spot of altered chlorophyll); and bounded by an 'ectoplasm' formed of the condensed and colourless surface-layer of the protoplasmic mass. It is prolonged outwardly (or towards the circumference of the sphere) into a sort of colourless beak or proboscis, from which proceed two *flagella* (fig. 11); and it is invested by a pellucid or hyaline envelope (fig. 9, *d*) of considerable thickness, the borders of which are flattened against those of other similar envelopes (fig. 5, *c, c*), but which does not appear to have the tenacity of a true

* Prof. Stein, however, in the last-published part of his great work on the Infusoria ("Organismus der Infusionsthiere," Abtheilung III., Leipzig, 1878), still ranks the *Volvocineæ* among the Flagellate animalcules, to which they undoubtedly show a remarkable parallelism in *structure,* the chief evidence of their Vegetable nature lying in their *physiological* conformity to undoubted Protophytes.

PLATE IX.



DEVELOPMENT OF VOLVOX GLOBATOR.

[To face p. 284.

membrane. It is impossible not to recognise the precise similarity between the structure of this body, and that of the motile 'encysted' cell of *Protococcus pluvialis* (Plate VIII., fig. 2, K); there is not, in fact, any perceptible difference between them, save that which arises from the regular aggregation, in *Volvox*, of the cells which normally detach themselves from one another in *Protococcus*. The presence of cellulose in the hyaline substance is not indicated, in the ordinary condition of *Volvox globator*, by the iodine and sulphuric acid test, though the use of 'Schultz's solution' gives to it a faint blue tinge; there can be no doubt of its existence, however, in the hyaline envelope of *Volvox aureus* (§ 240). The flagella and endoplasm, as in the motile forms of Protococcus, are tinged of a deep brown by iodine, with the exception of one or two starch-particles in each cell, which are turned blue; and when the contents of the cell are liberated, bluish flocculi, apparently indicative of the presence of cellulose, are brought into view by the action of sulphuric acid and iodine. All these reactions are characteristically *Vegetable* in their nature.—When the cell is approaching maturity, its endoplasm always exhibits one or more 'vacuoles' (fig. 9, *a a*), of a spherical form, and usually about one-third of its own diameter; and these 'vacuoles' (which are the so-called 'stomachs' of Prof. Ehrenberg) have been observed by Mr. G. Busk to undergo a very curious rhythmical contraction and dilatation at intervals of about 40 seconds; the contraction (which seems to amount to complete obliteration of the cavity of the vacuole) taking-place rapidly or suddenly, whilst the dilatation is slow and gradual. This curious action ceases, however, as the cell arrives at its full maturity;* a condition which seems to be marked by the greater consolidation of the 'ectoplasm,' by the removal or transformation of some of the chlorophyll, and by the formation of the red spot (*b*), which obviously consists, as in *Protococcus*, of a peculiar modification of chlorophyll.

238. Each cell normally communicates with the cells in nearest proximity with it, by extensions of its own endochrome, which are sometimes single and sometimes double (fig. 5, *b, b*); and these connecting processes necessarily cross the lines of division between their respective hyaline investments. The thickness of these processes varies very considerably; for sometimes they are broad bands, and in other cases mere threads; whilst they are occasionally wanting altogether. This difference seems partly to depend upon the age of the specimen, and partly upon the abundance of nutriment which it obtains; for, as we shall presently see, the connection is most intimate at an early period, before the hyaline investments of the cells have increased so much as to separate the masses

* The existence of rhythmically contracting vacuoles in *Volvox* (though confirmed by the observations of Prof. Stein) is denied by Mr. Saville Kent ("Manual of the Infusoria," p. 47); but it may be fairly presumed that he has not looked for them at the stage of development at which their action was witnessed by Mr. Busk.

of endochrome to a distance from one another (figs. 2, 3, 4); whilst in a mature individual, in which the separation has taken place to its full extent, and the nutritive processes have become less active, the masses of endochrome very commonly assume an angular form, and the connecting processes are drawn-out into threads (as seen in fig. 5), or they retain their globular form, and the connecting processes altogether disappear. The influence of re-agents, or the infiltration of water into the interior of the hyaline investment, will sometimes cause the connecting processes (as in *Protococcus*, § 231) to be drawn back into the central mass of endochrome; and they will also retreat on the mere rupture of the hyaline investment: from these circumstances it may be inferred that they are not enclosed in any definite membrane. On the other hand, the connecting threads are sometimes seen as double lines, which seem like tubular prolongations of a consistent membrane, without any protoplasmic granules in their interior. It is obvious, then, that an examination of a considerable number of specimens, exhibiting various phases of conformation, is necessary to demonstrate the nature of these communications; but this may be best made-out by attending to the history of their development, which we shall now describe.

239. The spherical body of the young *Volvox* (Plate IX., fig. 1) is composed of an aggregation of somewhat angular masses of endochrome (*b*), separated by the interposition of hyaline substance; and the whole seems to be enclosed in a distinctly membranous envelope, which is probably the distended hyaline investment of the 'primordial' cell, within which, as will presently appear, the entire aggregation originated. In the midst of the polygonal masses of endochrome, one mass (*a*), rather larger than the rest, is seen to present a circular form; and this, as will presently appear, is the originating cell of what is hereafter to become a new sphere. The growing *Volvox* at first increases in size, not only by the interposition of new hyaline substance between its component masses of endochrome, but also by an increase in these masses themselves (fig. 2, *a*), which come into continuous connection with each other by the coalescence of processes (*b*) which they severally put-forth; at the same time an increase is observed in the size of the globular cell (*c*), which is preliminary to its binary subdivision. A more advanced stage of the same developmental process is seen in fig. 3; in which the connecting processes (*a*, *a*) are so much increased in size, as to establish a most intimate union between the masses of endochrome, although the increase of the intervening hyaline substance carries these masses apart from one another; whilst the endochrome of the central globular cell has undergone segmentation into two halves. In the stage represented in fig. 4, the masses of endochrome have been still more widely separated by the interposition of hyaline substance; each has become furnished with its pair of flagella; and the globular cell has undergone a second segmentation. Finally, in fig. 5, which represents a portion of the

spherical wall of a mature *Volvox*, the endochrome-masses are observed to present a more scattered aspect, partly on account of their own reduction in size, and partly through the interposition of a greatly-increased amount of hyaline substance, which is secreted from the surface of each mass; and that portion which belongs to each cell, standing to the endochrome-mass in the relation of the cellulose coat of an ordinary cell to its ectoplasm, is frequently seen to be marked-out from the rest by delicate lines of hexagonal areolation (*c*, *c*), which indicate the boundaries of each. Of these it is often difficult to obtain a sight, a nice management of the light being usually requisite with fresh specimens; but the prolonged action of water (especially when it contains a trace of iodine), or of glycerine, will often bring them into clear view. The prolonged action of glycerine, moreover, will often show that the boundary lines are double, being formed by the coalescence of two contiguous cell-walls; and they sometimes retreat from each other so far that the hexagonal areolæ become rounded. As the primary sphere approaches maturity, the large secondary germ-mass, or *macrogonidium*, whose origin has been traced from the beginning, also advances in development; its contents undergoing multiplication by successive segmentations, so that we find it to consist of 8, 16, 32, 64, and still more numerous divisions, as shown in figs. 6, 7, 8. Up to this stage, at which first the sphere appears to become hollow, it is retained within the hyaline envelope of the cell within which it has been produced; a similar envelope can be easily distinguished, as shown in fig. 10, just when the segmentation has been completed, and at that stage the flagella pass into it, but do not extend beyond it; and even in the mature *Volvox* it continues to form an investment around the hyaline envelopes of the separate cells, as shown in fig. 11. It seems to be by the adhesion of the hyaline investment of the new sphere to that of the old, that the secondary sphere remains for a time attached to the interior wall of the primary; at what exact period, or in what precise manner, the separation between the two takes place, has not yet been determined. At the time of the separation, the developmental process has generally advanced as far as the stage represented in fig. 1; the foundation of one or more tertiary spheres being usually distinguishable in the enlargement of certain of its cells.

240. The development and setting-free of these composite 'macro-gonidia,' which is essentially a process of cell-subdivision or *gemmiparous extension* (§ 226), is the ordinary mode of multiplication in *Volvox;* taking place at all times of the year, except when the *sexual generation* (now to be described) is in progress. The mode in which this process is here performed (for our knowledge of which we are indebted to the persevering investigations of Prof. Cohn*) shows a great advance upon the simple

* The original observations of Cohn on the sexuality of *Volvox*, published in the "Ann. des Sci. Nat.," 4ième Sér., Botan., Tom. v. (1857), p. 323, were confirmed by Mr. Carter, "Ann. Nat. Hist.," 3rd Ser., Vol. iii. (1859), p. 4, who

'conjugation' of two similar cells (§ 229), and closely resembles that which prevails not only among the higher *Algæ*, but (under some form or other) through a large part of the Cryptogamic series. As autumn advances, the Volvox-spheres usually cease to multiply themselves by the formation of 'macro-gonidia;' and certain of their ordinary cells begin to undergo changes by which they are converted, some into male or 'sperm-cells,' others into female or 'germ-cells,'—the greater number, however, remaining 'sterile.' Each sphere of *Volvox globator* (FRONTISPIECE, fig. 1) contains both kinds of sexual cells, so that this species ranks as *monœcious*; but *V. aureus* is *diœcious*, the 'sperm-cells' and 'germ-cells' occurring in separate spheres. Both kinds of 'sexual' cells are at first distinguishable from the ordinary 'sterile' cells by their larger size (fig. 2, *a*), in this respect resembling 'macro-gonidia' in an early stage; but their subsequent history is altogether different. The '*sperm*-cells' begin to undergo subdivision when they attain about three times the size of the 'sterile' cells; this, however, takes place not on the 'binary' plan, but in such a manner that the endochrome of the primary cell resolves itself into a cluster of very peculiar secondary cells (fig. 1, a, a^2, fig. 5), each consisting of an elongated 'body' containing an orange-coloured endochrome with a red corpuscle, and of a long colourless beak, from the base of which proceeds a pair of long flagella (figs. 6, 7),—as in the 'antherozoids' of the higher Cryptogams (Fig. 154, H). As the sperm-cells approach maturity, the aggregate clusters may be seen to move within them, at first slowly, and afterwards more rapidly; the bundles then separate into their component 'antherozoids,' which show an active independent movement whilst still within the cavity of the primary cell (fig. 1, a^3); and finally escape by the giving-way of its wall (a^4), diffusing themselves through the cavity of the Volvox-sphere. The *germ*-cells (fig. 1, *b*, *b*), on the other hand, continue to increase in size without undergoing subdivision; at first showing large vacuoles in their protoplasm (b^2, b^2), but subsequently becoming filled with dark-green endochrome. The form of the 'germ-cell' gradually changes from its original flask-shape to the globular (b^3); and it projects into the cavity of the Volvox-sphere, at the same time acquiring a gelatinous envelope. Over this the swarming antherozoids diffuse themselves (fig. 3), penetrating its substance, so as to find their way to the interior; and in this situation

observed the sexual process in *Eudorina* also.—In the well-known form *Pandorina morum*, the generative process is performed, according to the observations of Pringsheim, in a manner curiously intermediate between the lower and the higher types referred to above. For within each cell of the original sixteen of which its mulberry-like mass is composed, a brood of sixteen secondary cells is formed by ordinary binary subdivision; and these, when set free by the dissolution of their containing cell-wall, swim forth as 'swarm-spores,' each being furnished with a pair of flagella. Among the crowd of these swarm-spores may be observed some which approach in pairs, as if seeking one another; when they meet, their points at first come together, but gradually their whole bodies coalesce; and a globular 'zygospore' is thus formed, which germinates after a period of rest, reproducing by binary subdivision the original sixteen-celled mulberry-like *Pandorina*. (See Sachs' "Botany," p. 219).

they seem to dissolve-away, so as to become incorporated with the endochrome. The product of this fusion (which is only 'conjugation' under another form) is a reproductive globule or *oö-spore;* which speedily becomes enveloped by an internal smooth membrane, and with a thicker external coat which is usually beset with conical-pointed processes (fig.4); and the contained chlorophyll gives place, as in *Palmoglœa* (§ 229), to starch and a red or orange-coloured oil. As many as forty of such 'oö-spores' have been seen by Dr. Cohn in a single sphere of *Volvox*, which thus acquires the peculiar appearance that has been distinguished by Ehrenberg by a different specific name, *Volvox stellatus*. Soon after the 'oö-spores' reach maturity, the parent-sphere breaks up, and the oö-spores fall to the bottom, where they remain during the winter. Their further history has since been traced out by Kirchner; who found that their germination commenced in February with the liberation of the spherical 'endospore' from its envelope, and with its division into four cells by the formation of two partitions at right angles to one another. These partially separate, holding together only at one end, which becomes one pole of the globular cluster subsequently formed by cell-multiplication; the other pole only closing-in when a large number of cells have been formed. The cells are then carried apart from one another by the hyaline investment formed by each; and the characteristic Volvox-sphere is thus completed.*

241. There are other points in the life-history of *Volvox* which must not be left without mention, although their precise import is as yet uncertain. Thus, according to Mr. G. Busk (with whom Prof. Cohn is in accord on this point), the body designated by Prof.

* The doctrine of the *vegetable* nature of *Volvox*, which had been suggested by Siebold, Braun, and other German Naturalists, was first distinctly enunciated by Prof. Williamson, on the basis of the history of its development, in the "Transactions of the Philosophical Society of Manchester," Vol. ix. Subsequently Mr. G. Busk, whilst adducing additional evidence of the Vegetable nature of Volvox, in his extremely valuable Memoir in the "Transactions of the Microscopical Society," N.S., Vol. i. (1853), p. 31, called in question some of the views of Prof. Williamson, which were justified by that gentleman in his "Further Elucidations" in the same "Transactions." The description above given by the Author, on the basis of the facts in which these excellent observers were agreed (their original differences having been in great degree reconciled by their mutual admissions), is in entire harmony with the most recent account of this most interesting organism given by Prof. Cohn ("Beiträge zur Biologie der Pflanzen," Bd. i., Heft 3, 1875), to whom we owe the discovery of its generative process. The observations of Dr. Kirchner on its germination will be found in Bd. iii. Heft 1 (1879), of the same serial.—An extremely interesting Volvocine form described by Cohn under the name *Stephanosphœra pluvialis* exhibits all the phenomena of reproduction by *macro-gonidia* or composite masses of adherent cells, by *micro-gonidia* or active zoöspores, by 'still' or *stato-spores*, and by *oö-spores* produced by true sexual action, in a very characteristic manner; and his account of its life-history should be consulted by every one who desires to study that of any of the Protophyta. See "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," 2nd Ser., Vol. x. (1852), pp. 321, 401, and "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," Vol. vi. (1858), p. 131.

Ehrenberg *Sphærosira volvox* is an ordinary Volvox in a different phase of development; its only marked feature of dissimilarity being that a large proportion of the green cells, instead of being single (as in the ordinary form of *Volvox*) save where they are developing themselves into young spheres, are very commonly double, quadruple, or multiple; and the groups of ciliated cells thus produced, instead of constituting a hollow sphere, form by their aggregation discoid bodies, of which the separate fusiform cells are connected at one end, whilst at the other they are free, each being furnished with a single flagellum. These clusters separate themselves from the primary sphere, and swim forth freely, under the forms which have been designated by Prof. Ehrenberg as *Uvella* and *Syncrypta*.—Again, it has been noticed by Dr. Hicks* that towards the end of the autumn, the bodies formed by the binary subdivision of the single cells of *Volvox*, instead of forming spherical flagellated 'macro-gonidia' which tend to escape outwards, form clusters of irregular shape, each composed of an indefinite mass of gelatinous substance in which the green cells lie separately imbedded. These clusters, being without motion, may be termed *stato-spores;* and it is probable that they constitute one of the forms in which the existence of this organism is prolonged through the winter.

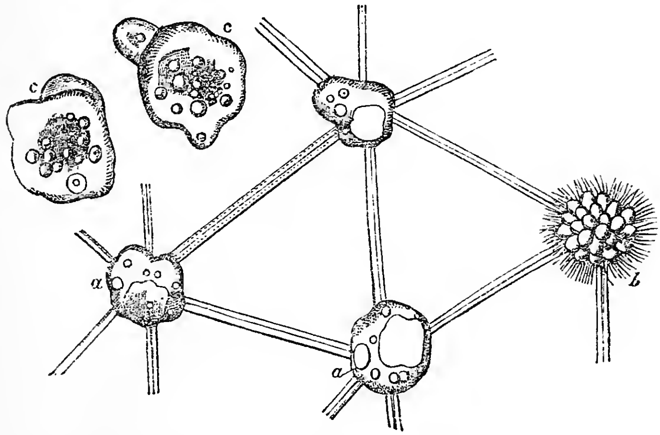
242. Another phenomenon of a very remarkable nature, namely, the conversion of the contents of an ordinary Vegetable cell into a free moving mass of protoplasm that bears a strong resemblance to the animal *Amœba* (Fig. 289), is affirmed by Dr. Hicks † to take place in *Volvox*, under circumstances that leave no reasonable ground for that doubt of its reality which has been raised in regard to the accounts of similar phenomena occurring elsewhere. The endochrome-mass of one of the ordinary cells increases to nearly double its usual size; but instead of undergoing duplicative subdivision so as to produce a 'macro-gonidium,' as in Fig. 142, *b*, it loses its colour and its regularity of form, and becomes an irregular mass of colourless protoplasm, containing a number of brown or reddish-brown granules (*a*, *a*), and capable of altering its form by protruding or retracting any portion of its membranous wall, exactly like a true *Amœba*. By this self-moving power, each of these bodies, *c*, *c* (of which twenty may sometimes be counted within a single Volvox) glides independently over the inner surface of the sphere among its unchanged green cells, bending itself round any one of these with which it may come into contact, precisely after the manner of an *Amœba*. After the 'amœboid' has begun to travel, it is always noticed that for every such moving body in the *Volvox* there is the empty space of a missing cell; and this confirms the belief—founded on observation of the gradational transition from the one condition to the other, and on the difficulty of supposing that any such bodies could have entered the sphere

* "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," N.S., Vol. i. (1861), p. 281.

† "Trans. of Microsc. Society," N.S., Vol. viii. (1860), p. 99, and "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," N.S., Vol. ii. (1862), p. 96.

parasitically from without—that the 'amœboid' is really the product of the metamorphosis of a mass of Vegetable protoplasm. This

FIG. 142.



Formation of Amœboid bodies in *Volvox*:—*a*, *a*, ordinary cells passing into the amœboid condition; *b*, ordinary macro-gonidium; *c*, *c*, free amœboids.

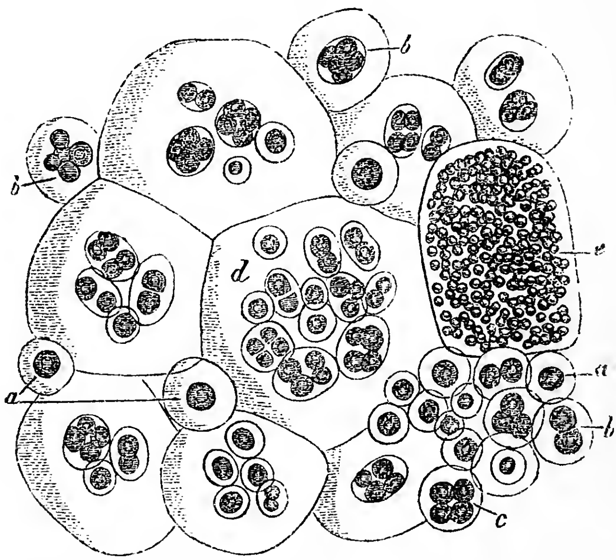
metamorphosis may take place, according to Dr. Hicks, even after the process of binary subdivision has commenced. What is the subsequent destination of these Amœboid bodies, has not yet been ascertained.*

243. With the two Protophytes just described may be ranked under the general designation *Palmellaceæ* a number of others scarcely less simple in their essential characters, but sometimes attaining considerable dimensions. They all grow either on damp surfaces, or in fresh or salt water; and they may either form (1) a mere powdery layer, of which the component particles have little or no adhesion to each other, or they may present themselves (2) in the condition of an indefinite slimy film, or (3) in that of a tolerably firm and definitely bounded membranous 'frond.'—The *first* of these states we have seen to be characteristic of *Palmoglœa* and *Protococcus*; the new cells, which are originated by the process of binary subdivision, usually separating from each other after a short time; and, even where they remain in cohesion, not forming a 'frond' or membranous expansion. The 'red snow,' which sometimes colours extensive tracts in Arctic or Alpine regions, penetrating even to the depth of several feet, and vegetating actively at a temperature which reduces most plants to a state of torpor, is generally considered to be a species of Protococcus; but as its cells are connected by a tolerably firm gelatinous investment, it would rather seem to

* A similar production of 'amœboids' has been observed by Mr. Archer in *Stephanosphæra pluvialis*; and is scarcely now to be considered an exceptional phenomenon.

be a Palmella.—The *second* is the condition of the *Palmella* proper; of which one species, the *P. cruenta*, usually known under the name of 'gory dew,' is common on damp walls and in shady places, sometimes extending itself over a considerable area as a tough gelatinous mass, of the colour and general appearance of coagulated blood. A characteristic illustration of it is also afforded by the *Hæmatococcus sanguineus* (Fig. 143), which chiefly differs from Palmella in the partial persistence of the walls of the parent-cells, so that the whole

Fig. 143.



Hæmatococcus sanguineus, in various stages of development:—*a*, single cells, enclosed in their mucous envelope; *b*, *c*, cluster formed by subdivision of parent-cell; *d*, more numerous cluster, its component cells in various stages of division; *e*, large mass of young cells, formed by the subdivision of the parent endochrome, and enclosed within a common mucous envelope.

mass is subdivided by partitions, which enclose a larger or smaller number of cells originating in the subdivision of their contents. Besides increasing in the ordinary mode of binary multiplication, the Palmella-cells seem occasionally to rupture and diffuse their granular contents through the gelatinous stratum, and thus to give origin to a whole cluster at once, as seen at *e*, after the manner of other simple Plants to be presently described (§ 245), save that these minute segments of the endochrome, having no power of spontaneous motion, cannot be ranked as 'zoöspores.' The gelatinous masses of the Palmellæ are frequently found to contain parasitic growths formed by the extension of other plants through their substance; but numerous branched filaments sometimes present themselves, which, being traceable into absolute continuity with

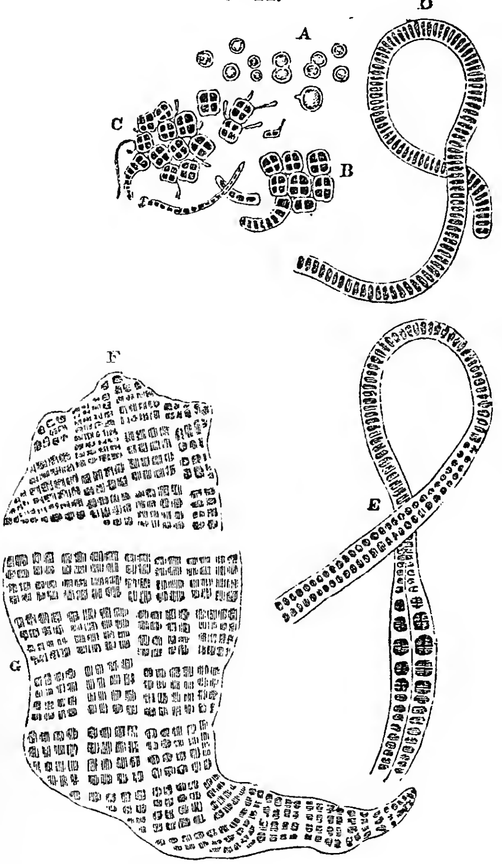
the cells, must be considered as properly appertaining to them. Sometimes these filaments radiate in various directions from a single central cell, and must at first be considered as mere extensions of this; their extremities dilate, however, into new cells; and when these are fully formed, the tubular connections close up, and the cells become detached from each other.*—Of the *third* condition, we have an example in the curious *Palmodictyon* described by Kützing; the frond of which appears to the naked eye like a delicate network consisting of anastomosing branches, each composed of a single or double row of large vesicles, within every one of which is produced a pair of elliptical cellules that ultimately escape as 'zoöspores.' The alternation between the 'motile' form and the 'still' or resting form, which has been described as occurring in *Protococcus* (§ 231), has been observed in several other forms of this group; and it seems obviously intended, like the production of 'zoöspores,' to secure the dispersion of the plant, and to prevent it from choking itself by overgrowth in any one locality.—It is very commonly by plants of this group, that the Algal portions of *Lichens* are formed (§ 325).

244. Notwithstanding the very definite form and large size attained by the fronds or leafy expansions of the *Ulvaceæ*, to which group belong the grass-green Sea-weeds (or 'lavers') found on every coast, yet their essential structure differs but very little from that of the preceding group; and the principal advance is shown in this, that the cells, when multiplied by binary subdivision, not only remain in firm connection with each other, but possess a very regular arrangement (in virtue of the determinate plan on which the subdivision takes place), and form a definite membranous expansion. The mode in which this frond is produced may be best understood by studying the history of its development, some of the principal phases of which are seen in Fig. 144; for the isolated cells (A), in which it originates, resembling in all points those of a *Protococcus*, give rise by their successive subdivisions in determinate directions, to such regular clusters as those seen at B and C, or to such Converfoid filaments as that shown at D. A continuation of the same regular mode of subdivision, taking place alternately in two directions, may at once extend the clusters B and C into leaf-like expansions; or, if the filamentous stage be passed through (different species presenting variations in the history of their development), the filament increases in breadth as well as in length (as seen at E), and finally becomes such a 'frond' as is shown at F, G. In the simple membranous expansion, or *thallus*, thus formed, there is no approach to a differentiation of parts by even the semblance of a formation of root, stem, and leaf, such as the higher Algæ present; every portion is the exact counterpart of every other; and every portion seems to take an equal share in the

* This fact, first made public by Mr. Thwaites ("Ann. of Nat. Hist.," 2nd Series, Vol. ii., 1848, p. 313), is one of fundamental importance in the determination of the real character of this group.

operations of growth and reproduction. Each cell is very commonly found to exhibit an imperfect partitioning into four parts, preparatory to multiplication by double subdivision; and the entire frond usually shows the groups of cells arranged in clusters containing some multiple of four.

FIG. 144.

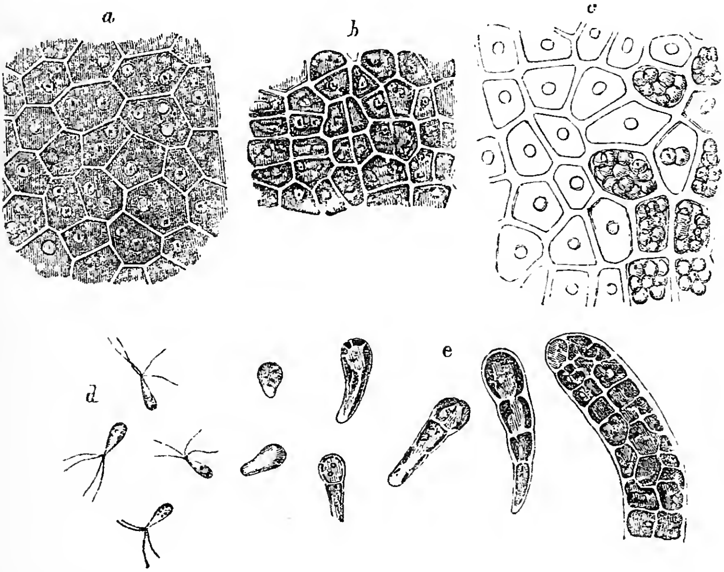


Successive stages of development of *Ulva*.

245. Besides this continuous increase of the individual frond, however, we find in most species of *Ulva* a provision for extending the plant by the dispersion of 'zoöspores;' for the endrochrome (Fig. 145, *a*) subdivides into numerous segments (as at *b* and *c*), which at first are seen to lie in close contact within the cell that contains them, then begin to exhibit a kind of restless motion, and at last pass forth through an aperture in the cell-wall, acquire four or more flagella (*d*), and swim freely through the water for some time. At last, however, they come to rest, attach themselves to some fixed point, and begin to grow into clusters or filaments (*e*), in the manner already described. The walls of the cells which have thus discharged their endochrome, remain as colourless spots on the frond; sometimes these are intermingled with the portions still vegetating in the usual mode; but sometimes the whole endochrome of one portion of the frond may thus escape in the form of zoöspores, thus leaving behind it nothing but a white flaccid membrane. If the Microscopist who meets with a frond of an Ulva in this condition should examine the line of separation between its green and its coloured portions, he may not improbably meet with cells in the very act of discharging their zoöspores, which 'swarm' around their points of exit very much in the manner that Animalcules are often seen to do around particular spots of the field of view, and which might easily be taken for true Infusoria;

but on carrying his observations further, he would see that similar bodies are moving *within* cells a little more remote from the

Fig. 145.



Formation of Zoöspores in *Phycoseris gigantea* (Ulva latissima) :—
a, portion of the ordinary frond: *b*, cells in which the endochrome is beginning to break up into segments; *c*, cells from the boundary between the coloured and colourless portions, some of them containing zoöspores, others being empty; *d*, flagellated zoöspores, as in active motion; *e*, subsequent development of the zoöspores.

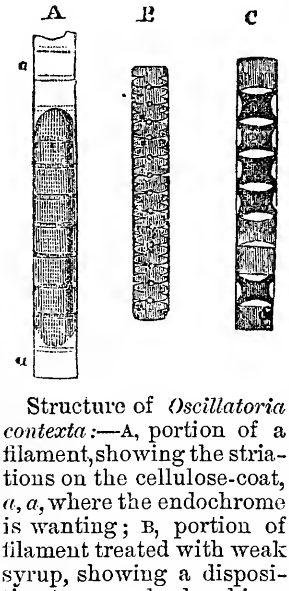
dividing line, and that, a little farther still, they are obviously but masses of endochrome in the act of subdivision.*—Of the true Generative process in the *Ulvaceæ*, nothing whatever is known.

246. The *Oscillatoriaceæ* constitute another tribe of Protophytes of great interest to the Microscopist, on account both of the extreme simplicity of their structure, and of the peculiar Animal-like movements which they exhibit. They are continuous tubular filaments, formed by the elongation of their primordial cells, usually lying together in bundles or in strata, sometimes quite free, and sometimes invested by gelatinous sheaths. The cellulose envelope (Fig. 146, A, *a, a*) usually exhibits some degree of transverse striation, as if the tube were undergoing division into cells; but this division is never perfected by the formation of complete partitions, though the endochrome shows a disposition to separate into regular segments (B, C), especially when treated with re-agents.

* Such an observation the Author had the good fortune to make in the year 1842, when the emission of zoöspores from the *Ulvaceæ*, although it had been described by the Swedish Algologist Agardh, had not been seen (he believes) by any British naturalist.

According to Dr. F. d'Alquen,* each filament—at least in certain species—has an axis of different composition from the surrounding endochrome; being solid, highly refractive, but slightly affected by iodine, and nearly colourless when moist, though slightly greenish when dry. And he gives reasons for the belief that it is in this (protoplasmic?) axis that the peculiar motor power of the filament specially, if not exclusively, resides. The filaments ultimately break up into distinct joints; the fragments of endochrome, which are to be regarded as *gonidia*, usually escaping from their sheaths, and giving origin to new filaments.—These Plants are commonly of some shade of green, often mingled, however, with blue; but not unfrequently they are of a purplish hue, and are sometimes so dark as when in mass to seem nearly black. They occur not only in fresh, stagnant, brackish, and salt waters (certain species being peculiar to each), but also in mud, on wet stones, or on damp ground. Their movements are described by Dr. Harvey† as of three kinds; first, a pendulum-like movement from side to side, performed by one end, whilst the other remains fixed so as to form a sort of pivot; second, a movement of flexure of the filament itself, the oscillating extremity bending over, first to one side and then to the other, like the head of a worm or caterpillar seeking something on its line of march; and third, a simple onward movement of progression. "The whole phenomenon," continues Dr. H., "may perhaps be resolved into a spiral onward movement of the filament. If a piece of the stratum of an *Oscillatoria* be placed in a vessel of water, and allowed to remain there for some hours, its edge will first become fringed with filaments, radiating as from a central point, with their tips outwards. These filaments, by their constant oscillatory movements, are continually loosened from their hold on the stratum, cast into the water, and at the same time propelled forward; and as the oscillation continues after the filament has left its nest, the little swimmer gradually moves along, till it not only reaches the edge of the vessel, but often—as if in the attempt to escape confinement—continues its voyage up the sides, till it is stopped by dryness. Thus in a very short time a small piece of Oscillatoria will

Fig. 146.



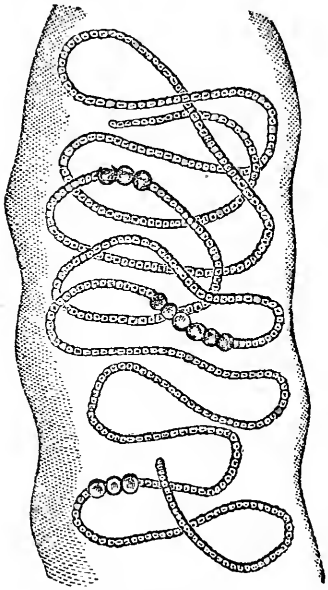
Structure of *Oscillatoria contexta*:—A, portion of a filament, showing the striations on the cellulose-coat, *a*, *a*, where the endochrome is wanting; B, portion of filament treated with weak syrup, showing a disposition to a regular breaking-up of the endochrome into masses; C, portion of filament treated with strong solution of chloride of calcium, showing a more advanced stage of the same separation.

* "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. iv. (1856), p. 245.
† "Manual of British Marine Algæ," p. 220.

spread itself over a large vessel of water." This rhythmical movement, impelling the filaments in an undeviating onward course, is greatly influenced by temperature and light, being much more active in warmth and sunshine than in cold and shade; and it is checked by any strong chemical agents.—The true Generation of *Oscillatoriaceæ* is as yet completely unknown.

247. Nearly allied to the preceding is the little tribe of *Nostochaceæ;* which consists of distinctly-beaded filaments, lying in firmly-gelatinous fronds of definite outline (Fig. 147). The filaments are usually simple, though sometimes branched; and are almost always curved or twisted, often taking a spiral direction. The masses of jelly in which they are imbedded are sometimes globular or nearly so, and sometimes extend in more or less regular branches; they frequently attain a very considerable size; and as they occasionally present themselves quite suddenly (especially in the latter part of autumn, on damp garden-walks), they have received the name of 'fallen stars.' They are not always so suddenly produced, however, as they appear to be; for they shrink up into mere films in dry weather, and expand again with the first shower.* Nostocs multiply, like the Oscillatoriaceæ, by the subdivision of their filaments, portions of which escape from the gelatinous mass wherein they were imbedded, and move slowly through the water in the direction of their length: after a time they cease to move, and a new gelatinous envelope is formed around each piece, which then begins not only to increase in length by the transverse subdivision of its segments, but also to double itself by longitudinal fission, so that each filament splits lengthways (as it were) into two new ones. By the repetition of this process a mass of new filaments is produced, the parts of which are at first confused, but afterwards become more distinctly separated by the interposition of the gelatinous substance developed between them.—Besides the ordinary cells of the beaded filaments, two other kinds are occasionally observable; but it has not yet been ascertained whether these are in any way subservient to the true Generative act.

Fig. 147.



Portion of gelatinous frond of *Nostoc*.

248. Although many of the plants belonging to the Family *Siphonaceæ* attain a considerable size, and resemble the higher Sea

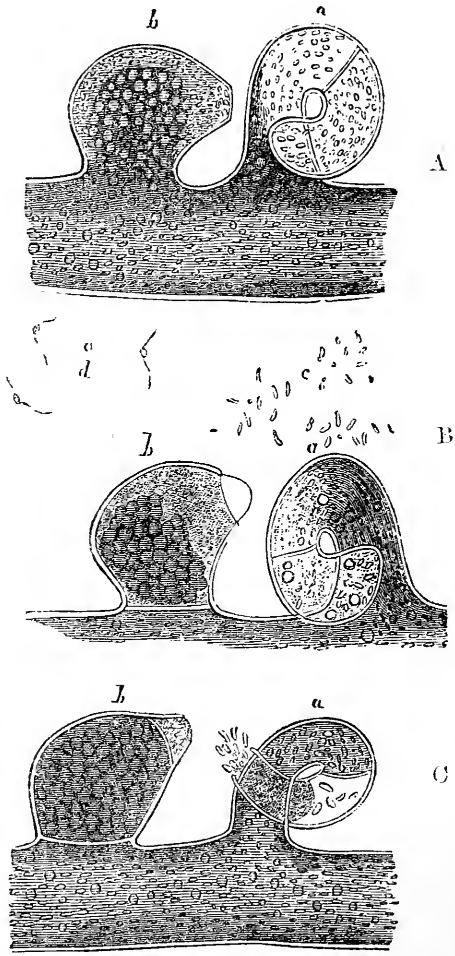
* See Hicks in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," N.S., Vol. i. (1861), p. 90.

weeds in their general mode of growth, yet they retain a simplicity of structure so extreme that it apparently requires them to be ranked among the Protophytes. They are inhabitants both of fresh-water and of the sea; and consist of very large tubular cells, which commonly extend themselves into branches, so as to form an arborescent frond. These branches, however, are seldom separated from the stem by any intervening partition; but the whole frond is composed of a simple continuous tube, the entire contents of which may be readily pressed-out through an orifice made by wounding any part of the wall. The *Vaucheria*, named after the Genevese botanist by whom the fresh-water Confervæ were first carefully studied, may be selected as a particularly good illustration of this family; its history having been pretty completely made out. Most of its species are inhabitants of fresh water; but some are marine; and they commonly present themselves in the form of cushion-like masses, composed of irregularly branching filaments, which, although they remain distinct, are densely tufted together and variously interwoven.—The formation of motile *gonidia* or 'zoöspores' may be readily observed in these plants, the whole process usually occupying but a very short time. The extremity of one of the filaments usually swells up in the form of a club, and the endochrome accumulates in it so as to give it a darker hue than the rest; a separation of this part from the remainder of the filament, by the interposition of a transparent space, is next seen; a new envelope is then formed around the mass thus cut off; and at last the membranous wall of the investing tube gives way, and the 'zoöspore' escapes, not, however, until it has undergone marked changes of form, and exhibited curious movements. Its motions continue for some time after its escape, and are then plainly seen to be due to the action of the *cilia* with which its whole surface is clothed. If it be placed in water in which some carmine or indigo has been rubbed, the coloured granules are seen to be driven in such a manner as to show that a powerful current is produced by their propulsive action, and a long track is left behind it. When it meets with an obstacle, the ciliary action not being arrested, the zoöspore is flattened against the object; and it may thus be compressed, even to the extent of causing its endochrome to be discharged. The cilia are best seen when their movements have been retarded or entirely arrested by means of opium, iodine, or other chemical re-agents. The motion of the spore continues for about two hours; but after the lapse of that time it soon comes to an end, and the spore begins to develope itself into a new plant. It has been observed by Unger, that the escape of the zoöspores generally takes place towards 8 A.M.; to watch this phenomenon, therefore, the plant should be gathered the day before, and its tufts examined early in the morning. It is stated by Dr. Hassall, that he has seen the same filament give off two or three zoöspores successively.

249. Recent discoveries have shown that there exists in this humble plant a true process of sexual Generation, as was, indeed,

long ago suspected by Vaucher, though upon no sufficient grounds. The branching filaments are often seen to bear at their sides peculiar globular or oval capsular protuberances, sometimes separated by the interposition of a stalk, which are filled with dark endochrome; and these give exit to large bodies covered with a firm envelope, from which, after a time, new plants arise. In the immediate neighbourhood of these 'capsules' are always found certain other projections, which, from being usually pointed and somewhat curved, have been named 'horns' (Fig. 148, A, *a*); and these have been shown by Pringsheim to be 'antheridia,' which produce 'antherozoids' in their interior; whilst the capsules (A, *b*) are 'oögonia,' each containing a mass of endochrome which constitutes a 'germ-cell' that is destined to become, when fertilized, the primordial cell of a new generation. The antherozoids (B, *c*, *d*), when set free from the antheridium *a*, swarm over the exterior of the oögonium *b*, and have actually been seen to penetrate its cavity through an aperture which opportunely forms in its wall, and to come into contact with the surface of its endochrome-mass, over which they diffuse themselves: there they seem to undergo dissolution, their substance mingling itself with that of the germ-cell; and the endoplasm of the 'oöspore' thus formed, which had previously no proper investment of its own, soon begins to form an

FIG. 148.



Successive phases of Generative process in *Vaucheria sessilis*:—at A are seen one of the 'horns' or Antheridia (*a*) and one of the Capsules (*b*), as yet unopened; at B the antheridium is seen in the act of emitting the antherozoids (*c*), of which many enter the opening at the apex of the capsule, whilst others (*d*) which do not enter it, display their flagella when they become motionless; at C the orifice of the capsule is closed again by the formation of a proper coat around its endochrome, thus constituting an oöspore.

envelope (C, *b*), which increases in thickness and strength, until it has acquired such a density as enables it to afford a firm protection to its contents.

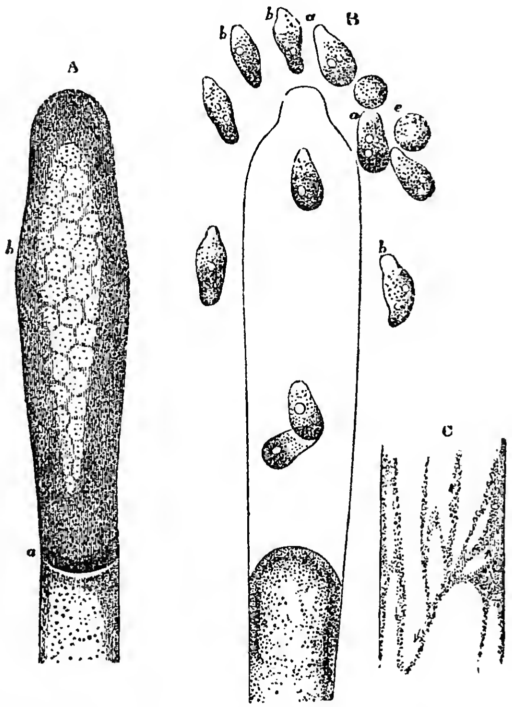
250. The Microscopist who wishes to study the development of 'zoöspores,' as well as several other phenomena of this low type of vegetation, may advantageously have recourse to the little plant termed *Achlya prolifera*, which grows parasitically upon the bodies of dead Flies lying in the water, but also not unfrequently attaches itself to the gills of Fish, and is occasionally found on the bodies of Frogs.* Its tufts are distinguishable by the naked eye as clusters of minute colourless filaments; and these are found, when examined by the microscope, to be long tubes, devoid of all partitions, extending themselves in various directions. The tubes contain a colourless slightly-granular protoplasm, the particles of which are seen to move slowly in streams along the walls, as in Chara, the currents occasionally anastomosing with each other (Fig. 149, C). Within about thirty-six hours after the first appearance of the parasite on any body, the protoplasm begins to accumulate in the dilated ends of the filaments, each of which is cut off from the remainder by the formation of a partition; and within this dilated cell the movement of the protoplasm continues for a time to be distinguishable. Very speedily, however, its endoplasm shows the appearance of being broken up into a large number of distinct masses, which are at first in close contact with each other, and with the walls of the cell (Fig. 149, A), but which gradually become more isolated, each seeming to acquire a proper cell-wall; they then begin to move about within the parent-cell; and, when quite mature, they are set free by the rupture of its wall (B), to go forth and form new attachments, and to develope themselves into tubiform cells resembling those from which they sprang. Each of these 'motile gonidia' is possessed of two flagella; their movements are not so powerful as those of the zoöspores of Vaucheria, and come to an end sooner.—The Generative process in this type is performed in a manner that may be regarded as an advance upon ordinary conjugation. The end of one of the long tubiform cells enlarges into a globular dilatation, the cavity of which becomes shut off by a transverse partition. Its contained endoplasm divides into two, three, or four segments, each of which takes a globular form, and is then fertilized by the penetration of an antheridial tube which comes off from the filament a little below the partition.† The 'oöspores' thus produced, escaping from the globular cavities, acquire firm envelopes, and may remain unchanged for a long time even in water, when no appropriate *nidus*

* This Plant, though, as an inhabitant of water, formerly ranked among *Algæ*, is now more generally regarded as belonging to the group of *Fungi*, on account of its incapacity for the production of chlorophyll, and its parasitism on the bodies of Animals, from whose juices its cells seem to draw their nourishment.

† See Prof. Sachs's "Text-book of Botany" (translated by A. W. Bennett), p. 12.

exists for them; but will quickly germinate if a dead Insect or other suitable object be thrown-in.

Fig. 149.



Development of *Achlya prolifera*:—A, dilated extremity of a filament *b*, separated from the rest by a partition *a*, and containing gonidia in progress of formation;—B, conceptacle discharging itself, and setting-free gonidia, *a*, *b*, *c*;—C, portion of filament, showing the course of the circulation of granular protoplasm.

251. One of the most curious forms of this group is the *Hydrodictyon utriculatum*, which is found in fresh-water pools in the midland and southern counties of England. Its frond consists of a green open network of filaments, acquiring, when full grown, a length of from four to six inches, and composed of a vast number of cylindrical tubular cells, which attain the length of four lines or more, and adhere to each other by their rounded extremities, the points of junction corresponding to the knots or intersections of the network. Each of these cells may form within itself an enormous multitude (from 7,000 to 20,000) of 'swarm-spores,' which, at a certain stage of their development, are observed in active motion in its interior; but of which clusters are afterwards formed by their mutual adhesion, that are set-free by the dissolution

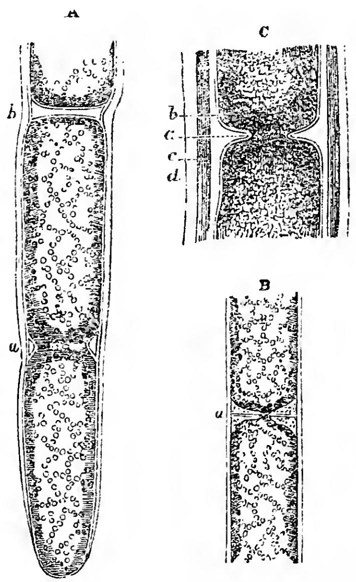
of their envelopes, each cluster, or 'macro-gonidium,' giving origin to a new plant-net. Besides these bodies, however, certain cells produce from 30,000 to 100,000 'micro-gonidia' of longer shape, each furnished with four long flagella and a red spot; these escape from the cell in a swarm, move freely in the water for some time, and then come to rest and sink to the bottom, where they remain heaped in green masses. It appears from the observations of Pringsheim,* that they become surrounded with a firm cellulose envelope, and may remain for a considerable length of time in a dormant condition, in which they are known as 'statospores;' and that in this state they are able to endure being completely dried-up without the loss of their vitality, provided that they are secluded from the action of Light, which causes them to wither and die. In this state they bear a strong resemblance to the cells of *Protococcus*.—The first change that manifests itself in them is a simple enlargement; next, the endochrome divides itself successively into distinct masses, usually from two to five in number; and these, when set free by the giving-way of the enveloping membrane, present the characters of ordinary 'zoöspores,' each of them possessing one or two flagella at its anterior semi-transparent extremity. Their motile condition, however, does not last long, often giving place to the motionless stage before they have quite freed themselves from the parent-cell; they then project long angular processes, so as to assume the form of irregular polyhedra, at the same time augmenting in size; and the endochrome contained within each of these breaks-up into a multitude of gonidia, which are at first quite independent and move actively within the cell-cavity, but soon unite into a network that becomes invested with a gelatinous envelope, and speedily increases so much in size as to rupture the containing cell-wall, on escaping from which it presents all the essential characters of a young *Hydrodictyon*. Thus, whilst this plant multiplies itself by 'macro-gonidia' during the period of its most active vegetation, this method of multiplication by 'micro-gonidia' appears destined to secure its perpetuation under conditions that would be fatal to it in its perfect form.—The rapidity of the growth of this curious organism is not one of the least remarkable parts of its history. The individual cells of which the net is composed, at the time of their emersion as 'gonidia,' measure no more than 1-2500th of an inch in length; but in the course of a few hours, they grow to a length of from 1-12th to 1-3rd of an inch.—Nothing has been as yet ascertained respecting the sexual Generation of this type.

252. Almost every pond and ditch contains some members of the Family *Confervaceæ;* but they are especially abundant in moving water; and they constitute the greater part of those green threads which are to be seen attached to stones, with their free ends floating in the direction of the current, in every running stream, and upon almost every part of the sea-shore, and which are com-

* "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," N.S., Vol. ii. (1862), pp. 54, 104.

monly known under the name of 'silk-weeds,' or 'crow-silk.' Their form is usually very regular, each thread being a long cylinder made-up by the union of a single file of short cylindrical cells united to each other by their flattened extremities; sometimes these threads give-off lateral branches, which have the same structure. The endochrome, though usually green, is occasionally of a brown or purple hue; it is sometimes distributed uniformly throughout the cell (as in Fig. 150), whilst in other instances it is arranged in a pattern of some kind, as a network or spiral; but this may be only a transitory stage in its development.—The plants of this family are extremely favourable subjects for the study of the method of cell-multiplication by *binary subdivision*. This process usually takes place only in the *terminal* cell; and it may be almost always observed there in some one of its stages. The first step is seen to be the subdivision of the endochrome, and the inflexion of the ectoplasm around it (Fig. 150, A, *a*); and thus there is gradually formed a sort of hour-glass contraction across the cavity of the parent-cell, by which it is divided into two equal halves (B). The two surfaces of the infolded utricle produce a double layer of cellulose-membrane between them; this is not confined, however, to the contiguous surfaces of the young cells, but extends over the whole of their exterior, so that the new septum becomes continuous with a new layer that is formed throughout the interior of the cellulose wall of the original cell (C). Sometimes, however, as in *Conferva glomerata* (a common species), new cells may originate as branches from any part of the surface, by a process of budding; which, notwithstanding its difference of mode, agrees with that just described in its essential character, being the result of the subdivision of the original cell. A certain portion of the ectoplasm seems to undergo increased nutrition, for it is seen to project, carrying the cellulose envelope before it, so as to form a little protuberance; and this sometimes attains a considerable length, before any separation of its cavity from that of the cell which gave origin to it begins to

FIG. 150.



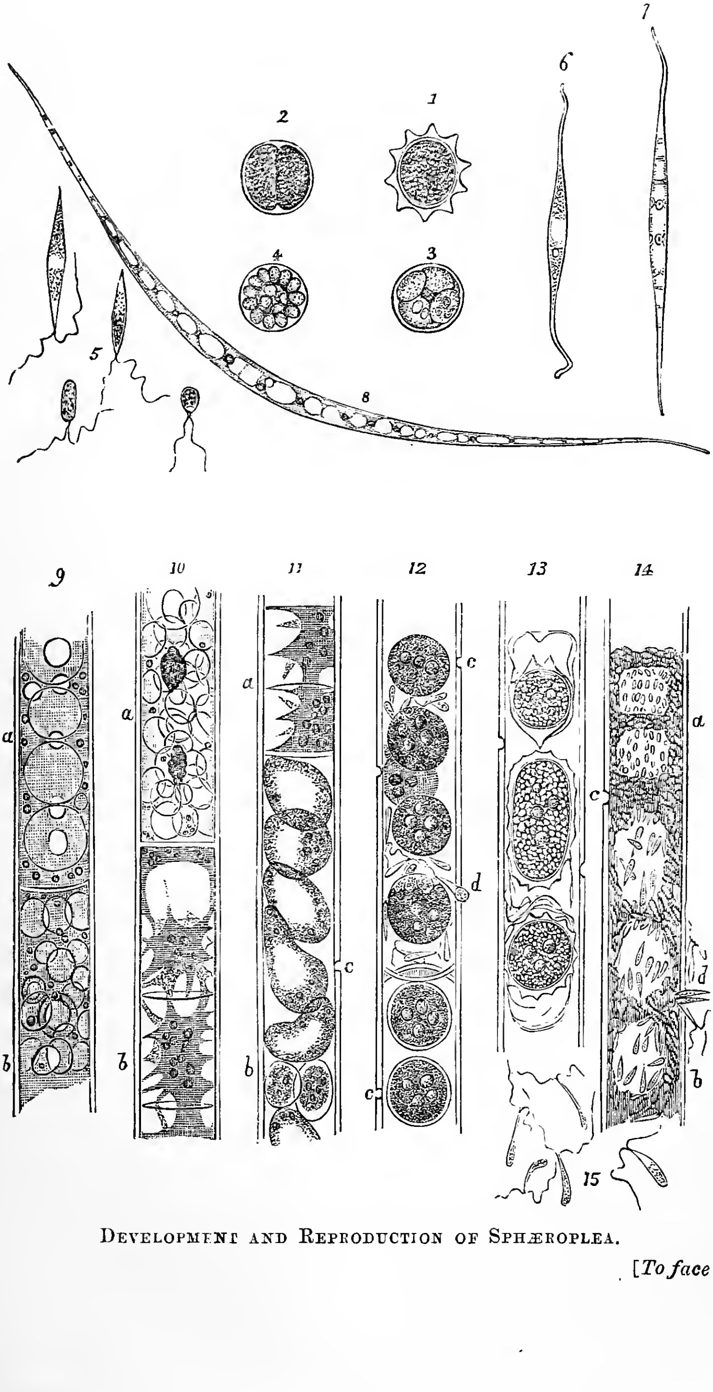
Process of cell-multiplication in *Conferva glomerata*:—A, portion of filament with incomplete separation at *a*, and complete partition at *b*; B, the separation completed, a new cellulose partition being formed at *a*; C, formation of additional layers of cellulose wall *c*, beneath the mucous investment *d*, and around the ectoplasm *a*, which encloses the endochrome *b*.

take place. This separation is gradually effected, however, by the infolding of the ectoplasm, just as in the preceding case: and thus the endochrome of the branch-cell becomes completely severed from that of the stock. The branch then begins to elongate itself by the subdivision of its first-formed cell; and this process may be repeated for a time in all the cells of the filament, though it usually comes to be restricted at last to the terminal cell.—The *Confervaceæ* multiply themselves by zoöspores, which are produced within their cells, and are then set-free, just as in the Ulvaceæ (§ 245).

253. A true sexual Generation has been observed in several Confervaceæ, and is probably universal throughout the group. It is presented under a very interesting form in a plant termed *Sphæroplea annulina,* the development and generation of which have been specially studied by Dr. F. Cohn.* The 'oöspore,' which is the product of the sexual process to be presently described, is filled when mature with a red oil, and is enveloped by two membranes, of which the outer one is furnished with stellate prolongations (Plate x., fig. 1). When it begins to vegetate, its endochrome breaks up—first into two halves (fig. 2), and then by successive subdivisions into numerous segments (figs. 3, 4), at the same time becoming green towards its margin. These segments, set free by the rupture of their containing envelope, escape as 'micro-gonidia,' which are at first rounded or oval, each having a semi-transparent beak whence proceed two flagella, but which gradually elongate so as to become fusiform (fig. 5), at the same time changing their colour from red to green. These move actively for a time, and then, losing their motile power, begin to develop themselves into filaments. The first stage in this development consists in the elongation of the cell, and the separation of the endochrome of its two halves by the interposition of a vacuole (fig. 6); and in more advanced stages (figs. 7, 8) a repetition of the like interposition gives to the endochrome that annular arrangement from which the plant derives its specific name. This is seen at *a*, fig. 9, as it presents itself in the filaments of the adult plant; whilst at *b*, in the same figure, we see a sort of frothy appearance which the endochrome comes to possess through the multiplication of the vacuoles. The next stage in the development of the filaments that are to produce the oöspores, consists in the aggregation of the endochrome into definite masses (as seen at fig. 10, *a*), which soon become star-shaped (as seen at *b*), each one being contained within a distinct compartment of the cell. In a somewhat more advanced stage (fig. 11, *a*), the masses of endochrome begin to draw themselves together again; and they soon assume a globular or ovoidal shape (*b*), whilst at the same time definite openings (*c*) are formed in their containing cell-wall. Through these openings the 'antherozoids' developed within other filaments gain admission, as shown at *d*, fig. 12; and they seem to dissolve away (as it were) upon the surface of the before-mentioned masses, which soon after-

* "Ann. des Sci. Nat.," 4ème Sér., Botan., Tom. v. p. 187.

PLATE X.



DEVELOPMENT AND REPRODUCTION OF SPHÆROPLEA.

[To face p. 304.

wards become invested with a firm membranous envelope, as shown in the lower part of fig. 12. These undergo further changes whilst still contained within their tubular parent-cells; their colour passing from green to red, and a second investment being formed within the first, which extends itself into stellate prolongations, as seen in fig. 13; so that, when set free, they precisely resemble the mature oöspores which we have taken as the starting-point in this curious history. Certain of the filaments (fig. 14), instead of giving origin to spores, have their annular collections of endochrome converted into 'antherozoids,' which, as soon as they have disengaged themselves from the mucilaginous sheath that envelopes them, move about rapidly in the cavity of their containing cell (*a*, *b*) around the large vacuoles which occupy its interior; and then make their escape through apertures (*c*, *d*) which form themselves in its wall, to find their way through similar apertures into the interior of the spore-bearing cells, as already described. These antherozoids are shown in fig. 15, as they appear when swimming actively through the water by means of the two flagella which each possesses.—The peculiar interest of this history consists in the entire absence of any special organs for the Generative process, the ordinary filamentous cells developing oöspores on the one hand, and antherozoids on the other; and in the simplicity of the means by which the fecundating process is accomplished

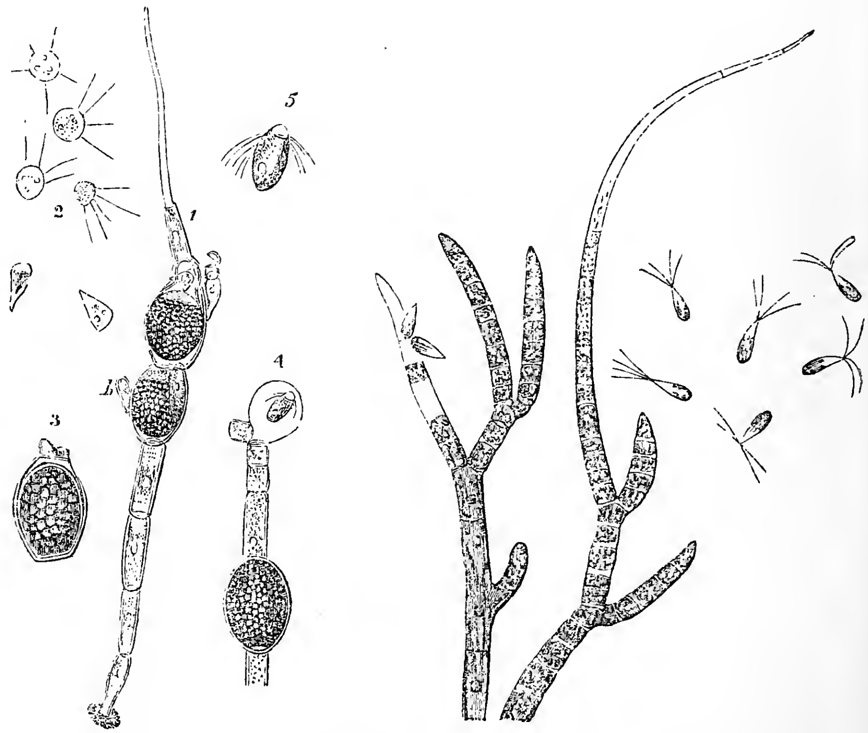
254. The *Œdogonieæ* resemble *Confervaceæ* in general aspect and habit of life, but differ from them in some curious particulars. As the component cells of the filaments extend themselves longitudinally, new rings of cellulose are formed successively, and intercalated into the cell-wall at its upper end, giving it a ringed appearance. Only a single large zoöspore is set free from each cell; and its liberation is accomplished by the almost complete fission of the wall of the cell through one of these rings, a small part only remaining uncleft, which serves as a kind of hinge whereby the two parts of the filament are prevented from being altogether separated. Sometimes the zoöspore does not completely extricate itself from the parent-cell; and it may begin to grow in this situation, the root-like processes which it puts-forth being extended into the cavity. Professor A. M. Edwards (U.S.) states that he has seen the so-called 'motile spores' of the *Œdogonium* develope into objects exactly resembling *Euglenæ*, and finally reproducing "a filament exactly like that from which the original green spore was projected." He further asserts he has seen the cell-contents of *Œdogonium* develope into forms identical with several genera of Ehrenberg's Polygastric Animalcules.* Observations of an analogous character were previously made by Cohn and Itzigsohn.

255. In their Generative process, also, the *Œdogonieæ* show a curious departure from the ordinary type; for whilst the 'oöspores' are formed within certain dilated cells of the ordinary filament (Fig. 151, A, I), and are fertilized by the penetration of

* "Monthly Microsc. Journal," Vol. viii. (1872), p. 28.

'antherozoids' (2), these antherozoids are not the immediate product of the sperm-cells of the same or of another filament, but are developed within a body termed an 'androspore' (5), which is to be set free from within a sperm-cell (4), and which, being furnished with a circular fringe of cilia, and having motile powers, very strongly resembles an ordinary zoöspore. This *androspore*, after its period of activity has come to an end, attaches itself to the outer surface of a germ-cell, as shown at 1, *b*; it then

A FIG. 151. B



A. Sexual generation of *Œdogonium ciliatum*:—1, filament with two oöspores in process of formation, the lower one having two androspores attached to its exterior, the contents of the upper one in the act of being fertilized by the entrance of an antherozoid set free from the interior of its androspore; 2, free antherozoids; 3, mature oöspore, still invested with the cell-membrane of the parent filament; 4, portions of a filament bearing sperm cells, from one of which an androspore is being set free; 5, liberated androspore.
B. Branches of *Chætophora elegans*, in the act of discharging flagellated zoospores, which are seen, as in motion, on the right.

undergoes a change of shape, and a sort of lid drops off from its free extremity, as seen in the upper part of 1, by which its contained antherozoids (2) are set free; and at the same time an aperture is formed in the wall of the germ-cell, by which the antherozoid enters its cavity, and fertilizes its endoplasm by dissolving

upon it and blending with it. This mass then becomes an oöspore (3), invested with a thick wall of its own, but still retains more or less of the envelope derived from the cell within which it was developed.* It is probable that the same thing happens in many Confervaceæ, and that some of the bodies which have been termed 'micro-gonidia' are really androspores.—The offices of these different classes of reproductive bodies are only now beginning to be understood; and the inquiry is one so fraught with Physiological interest, and, from the facility of growing these plants in Aquaria, may be so easily pursued, that it may be hoped that the zeal of Microscopists will not long leave any part of it in obscurity.

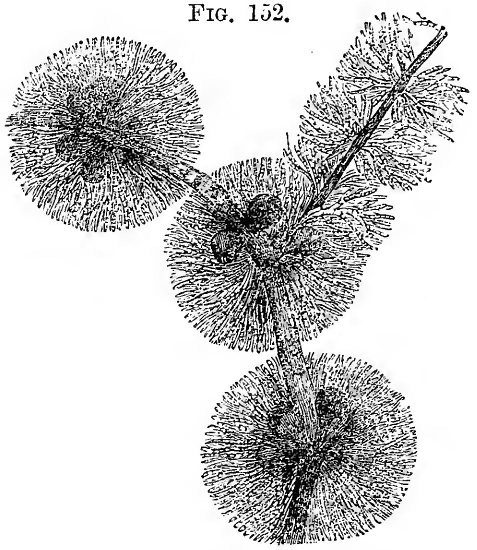
256. The *Chætophoraceæ* constitute a beautiful and interesting little group of Confervoid plants, of which some species inhabit the sea, whilst others are found in fresh and pure water,—rather in that of gently moving streams, however, than in strongly flowing currents. Generally speaking, their filaments put forth lateral branches, and extend themselves into arborescent fronds; and one of the distinctive characters of the group is afforded by the fact, that the extremities of these branches are usually prolonged into bristle-shaped processes (Fig. 151, B). As in many preceding cases, these plants multiply themselves by the conversion of the endochrome of certain of their cells into 'zoöspores;' and these, when set free, are seen to be furnished with four flagella. 'Resting-spores' have also been seen in many species; and it is probable that these, as in *Confervaceæ*, are really oöspores.

257. The *Batrachospermeæ*, whose name is indicative of the strong resemblance which their beaded filaments bear to frog spawn, are now ranked as humble fresh-water forms of a far higher marine group of Algæ, the *Rhodospermeæ* or Red Sea-weeds (§ 330). But they deserve special notice here on account of the simplicity of their structure, and the extreme beauty of the objects they afford to the Microscopist (Fig. 152). They are chiefly found in water which is pure and gently-flowing. "They are so extremely flexible," says Dr. Hassall, "that they obey the slightest motion of the fluid which surrounds them; and nothing can surpass the ease and grace of their movements. When removed from the water they lose all form, and appear like pieces of jelly, without trace of organization; on immersion, however, the branches quickly resume their former disposition." Their colour is for the most part of a brownish-green; but sometimes they are of a reddish or bluish purple. The central axis of each plant is originally composed of a single file of large cylindrical cells laid end to end; but this is subsequently invested by other cells, in the manner to be presently described. It bears, at pretty regular intervals, whorls of short radiating branches, each of them composed of rounded

* See Pringsheim in "Ann. des Sci. Nat.," 4ème Sér., Botan., Tom. v. (1856), p. 187.

cells, arranged in a bead-like row, and sometimes subdividing again into two, or themselves giving off lateral branches. Each of the primary branches originates in a little protuberance from the primitive cell of the central axis, precisely after the manner of the lateral cells of *Conferva glomerata* (§ 252); as this protuberance increases in size, its cavity is cut off by a septum, so as to render it an independent cell; and by the continual repetition of the process of binary subdivision, this single cell becomes converted into a beaded filament. Certain of these branches, however, instead of radiating from the main axis, grow downwards upon it, so as to form a closely-fitting investment that seems properly to belong to it. Some of the radiating branches grow out into long transparent points, like those of Chætophoraceæ; and within those are produced 'antherozoids,' which, though not endowed with the power of spontaneous movement, find their way to the germ-cells contained in other parts of the filaments; and by the fertilization of the contents of these are produced 'oöspores,' which are seen as dark bodies lying in the midst of the whorls of branches (Fig. 152).

Fig. 152.

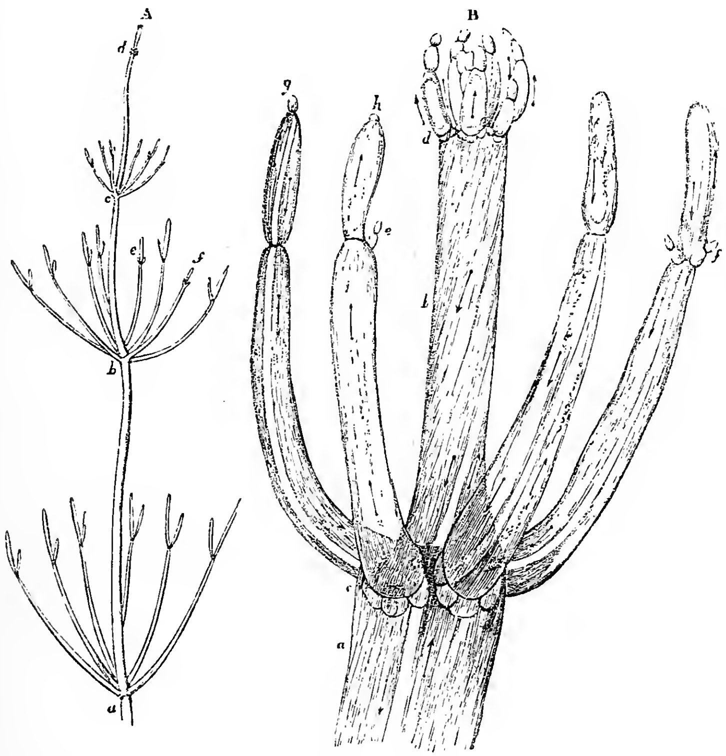


Batrachospermum moniliforme.

258. Among the highest of the Algæ in regard to the complexity of their Generative apparatus, which contrasts strongly with the general simplicity of their structure, is the Family of *Characeæ*, (ranked by some Botanists as a group of primary importance); some members of which have received a large amount of attention from Microscopists, on account of the interesting phenomena they exhibit. These humble plants are for the most part inhabitants of fresh waters, and are found rather in such as are still, than in those which are in motion; one species, however, may be met with in ditches whose waters are rendered salt by communication with the sea. They may be easily grown for the purposes of observation in large glass jars exposed to the light; all that is necessary being to pour off the water occasionally from the upper part of the vessel (thus carrying away a film that is apt to form on its surface), and to replace this by fresh water. Each plant is composed of an assemblage of long tubiform cells, placed end to end; with a distinct central axis, around which the branches are disposed at

intervals with great regularity (Fig. 153, A). In the genus *Nitella*, the stem and branches are simple cells, which sometimes attain the

FIG. 153.



Nitella flexilis:—A, stem and branches of the natural size; *a, b, c, d*, four verticils of branches issuing from the stem; *e, f*, subdivision of the branches;—B, portion of the stem and branches enlarged; *a, b*, joints of stem; *c, d*, verticils; *e, f*, new cells sprouting from the sides of the branches; *g, h*, new cells sprouting at the extremities of the branches.

length of several inches; whilst in the true *Chara* each central tube is surrounded by an envelope of smaller ones, which is formed as in Batrachospermeæ, save that the investing cells grow upwards as well as downwards from each node, and meet each other on the stem half-way between the nodes. Some species have the power of secreting carbonate of lime from the water in which they grow, if this be at all impregnated with calcareous matter; and by the deposition of it beneath their teguments they have gained their popular name of 'stoneworts.' The long tubiform cells of *Nitella* afford a very beautiful and instructive display of the phenomenon of *cyclosis*, or rotation of fluid in their interior. Each cell, in the healthy state, is lined by a layer of green oval granules, which

cover every part, except two longitudinal lines that remain nearly colourless (Fig. 153, B); and a constant stream of semi-fluid matter containing numerous jelly-like globules is seen to flow over the green layer, the current passing up one side, changing its direction at the extremity, and flowing down the other side, the ascending and descending spaces being bounded by the transparent lines just mentioned. That the currents are in some way directed by the layer of granules, appears from the fact noticed by Mr. Varley,* that if accident damages or removes them near the boundary between the ascending and descending currents, a portion of the fluid of the two currents will intermingle by passing the boundary; whilst, if the injury be repaired by the development of new granules on the part from which they had been detached, the circulation resumes its regularity, no part of either current passing the boundary. In the young cells, however, the rotation may be seen before this granular lining is formed. The rate of the movement is affected by anything that influences the vital activity of the Plant; thus, it is accelerated by moderate warmth, whilst it is retarded by cold; and it may be at once checked by a slight electric discharge through the plant. The moving globules, which consist of starchy matter, are of various sizes; being sometimes very small and of definite figure, whilst in other instances they are seen as large irregular masses, which appear to be formed by the aggregation of the smaller particles.† The production of new cells for the extension of the stem or branches, or for the origination of new whorls, is not here accomplished by the subdivision of the parent-cell, but takes place by the method of out-growth (Fig. 153, B, *e, f, g, h*), which, as already shown (§ 252), is nothing but a modification of the usual process of cell-multiplication: in this manner, the extension of the individual plant is effected with considerable rapidity. When these plants are well supplied with nutriment, and are actively vegetating under the influence of light, warmth, &c., they not unfrequently develope 'bulbels,' or 'gonidia,' which are little clusters of cells, filled with starch, that sprout from the sides of the central axis, and then, falling off, evolve the long tubiform cells characteristic of the plant from which they they were produced. The *Characeæ* may also be multiplied by artificial subdivision; the separated parts continuing to grow under favourable circumstances, and gradually developing themselves into the typical form.

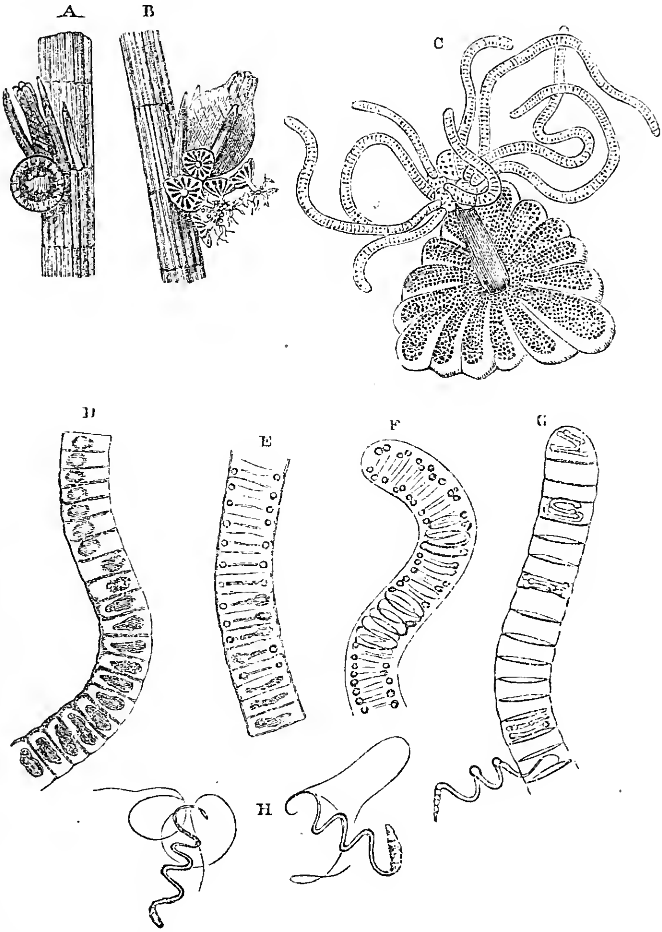
259. The Generative apparatus of *Characeæ* consists of two sets of bodies, both of which grow at the bases of the branches (Fig. 154, A, B):

* "Transactions of the Microscopical Society," 3rd Series, Vol. ii. p. 99.

† This interesting phenomenon may be readily observed, by taking a small portion of the plant out of the water in which it is growing, and either placing it in a large Aquatic box (§ 122) or in the Zoöphyte-trough (§ 124), or laying it on the glass Stage-plate (§ 120) and covering it with thin glass. A portion of *Chara* or *Nitella* placed in the Growing-slide (§ 121) may be kept under observation for many days together.

one set, formerly known as 'globules,' are really *antheridia;* whilst the other, known as 'nucules,' contain the germ-cells, and are true *pistillidia.* The 'globules,' which are nearly spherical, have an

Fig. 154.



Generative organs of *Chara fragilis*:—A, antheridium or 'globule' developed at the base of pistillidium or 'nucule;'—B, nucule enlarged, and globule laid open by the separation of its valves;—C, one of the valves, with its group of antheridial filaments, each composed of a linear series of cells, within every one of which an antherozoid is formed;—in D, E, and F, the successive stages of this formation are seen:—and at G is shown the escape of the mature antherozoids, H.

envelope made up of eight triangular valves (B, C), often curiously marked, which encloses a nucleus of a light reddish colour: this nucleus is principally composed of a mass of filaments rolled up

compactly together; and each of these filaments (*c*) consists, like a Conferva, of a linear succession of cells. In every one of these cells there is formed, by a gradual change in its contents (the successive stages of which are seen at D, E, F), a spiral thread of two or three coils, which, at first motionless, after a time begins to move and revolve within the cell; and at last the cell-wall gives way, and the spiral thread makes its escape (G), partially straightens itself, and moves actively through the water for some time (H) in a tolerably determinate direction, by the lashing action of two long and very delicate filaments with which they are furnished. The exterior of the 'nucule' (A, B) is formed by five spirally-twisted tubes, that give it a very peculiar aspect; and these enclose a central sac containing protoplasm, oil, and starch-globules. At a certain period the spirally-twisted tubes, which form a kind of crown around the summit, separate from each other, leaving a canal that leads down to the central germ-cell or *oösphere;* and it is probable that through this canal the antherozoids make their way down to perform the act of fertilization. Ultimately the nucule falls off like a seed; and the fertilized germ-cell, or 'oöspore,' gives origin to a single new plant by a kind of germination.*

DESMIDIACEÆ AND DIATOMACEÆ.

260. Among those simple *Algæ* whose Generative process consists in the 'conjugation' of two similar cells (§ 235), there are two groups of such peculiar interest to the Microscopist as to need a special notice; these are the *Desmidiaceæ* and the *Diatomaceæ.* Both of them were ranked by Ehrenberg and many other Naturalists as Animalcules; but the fuller knowledge of their life-history, and the more extended acquaintance with the parallel histories of other simple forms of Vegetation, which have been gained during the last twenty years, are now generally accepted as decisive of their Vegetable nature.

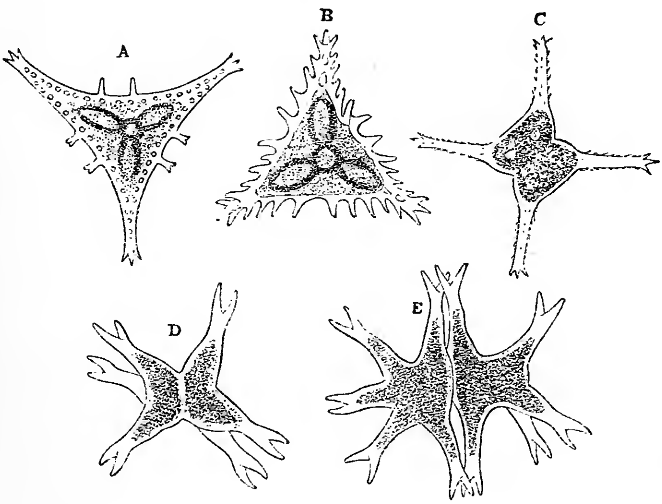
261. The DESMIDIACEÆ† are minute plants of a green colour,

* A full account of the *Characeæ* will be found in Prof. Sachs's "Text-book of Botany," (translated by A. W. Bennett), p. 278.—Various observers have asserted that particles of the protoplasmic contents of the cells of the *Characeæ,* when set free by the rupture of their cells, may continue to live, move, and grow as independent Rhizopods. But the writer is disposed to think that the phenomena thus represented are rather to be regarded as cases of parasitism; the decaying cells of *Nitella* having been found by Cienkowski ('Beiträge zur Kentniss der Monaden,' in "Arch. f. Mikr. Anat." Bd. i., 1865, p. 203) to be inhabited by minute spindle-shaped ciliated bodies, which seem to correspond with the 'spores' of the *Myxomycetes* (§ 322), going through an amœboid stage, and then producing a *plasmodium,* which, after undergoing a sort of encysting process, finally 'breaks up' into spindle-shaped particles resembling those found in the *Nitella*-cells.

† Our first accurate knowledge of this group dates from the publication of Mr. Ralfs's admirable Monograph in 1848. Later information in regard to it will be found in the Section contributed by Mr. W. Archer to the 4th Edition of Pritchard's 'Infusoria.'

growing in fresh water; generally speaking, the cells are independent of each other (Figs. 155–158); but sometimes those which have been produced by binary subdivision from a single primordial cell, remain adherent one to another in linear series, so as to form a filament (Fig. 160). The tribe is distinguished by two peculiar features: one of these being the semblance of a division of each cell into two symmetrical halves by a 'sutural line,' which is sometimes so decided as to have led to the belief that the cell is really double (Fig. 158, A), though in other cases it is merely indicated by a slight notch; whilst the other is the frequency of projections from the surface, which are sometimes short and inconspicuous (Fig. 158), but are often elongated into spines, presenting a very symmetrical arrangement (Fig. 155). These projections are generally formed by the cellulose envelope alone; which possesses an almost horny consistence, so as to retain its form after the discharge of its

Fig. 155.



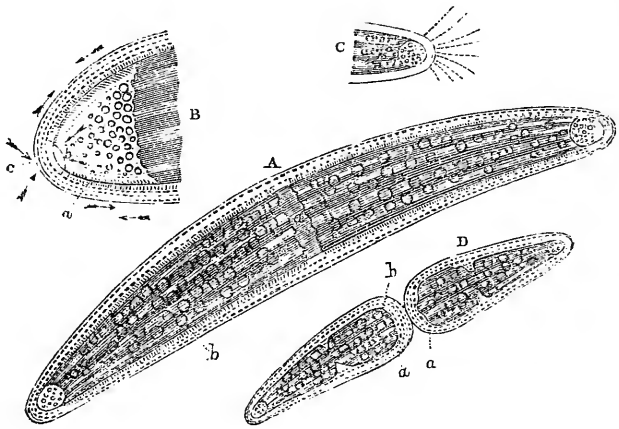
Various species of *Staurastrum*:—A, *S. vestitum*; B, *S. aculeatum*; C, *S. paradoxum*; D, E, *S. brachiatum*.

contents (Figs. 158, B, D, 162, E), but does not include any mineral ingredient, either calcareous or siliceous, in its composition; in other instances, however, they are formed by a notching of the margin of the cell (Fig. 157) which may affect only the outer casing, or may extend into the cell-cavity. The outer coat is surrounded by a very transparent sheet of gelatinous substance, which is sometimes very distinct (as shown in Fig. 160), whilst in other cases its existence is only indicated by its preventing the contact of the cells. The outer coat encloses a primordial utricle, which is not always closely adherent to it; and this immediately surrounds the endochrome, which occupies nearly the whole interior of the cell, and in

certain stages of its growth is found to contain starch-granules.—Many of these Plants have a power of slowly changing their place, so that they approach the light side of the vessel in which they are kept, and will even traverse the field of the Microscope under the eye of the observer; by what agency this movement is effected has not yet been certainly made out.

262. A 'cyclosis' may be readily observed in many *Desmidiaceæ;* and is particularly obvious along the convex and concave edges of the cell of any vigorous specimen of *Closterium*, with a magnifying power of 250 or 300 diameters (Fig. 156, A, B). By careful focussing,

FIG. 156.



Cyclosis in *Closterium lunula*:—A, cell showing central separation at *a*, in which the large globules, *b*, are not seen;—B, one extremity enlarged, showing the movement of globules in the colourless space;—C, external jet produced by pressure on the cell, probably through an opening in the cellulose envelope;—D, cell in a state of self-division.

the flow may be seen in broad streams over the whole surface of the endochrome; and these streams detach and carry with them, from time to time, little oval or globular bodies (A, *b*) which are put-forth from it, and are carried by the course of the flow to the transparent spaces at the extremities, where they join a crowd of similar bodies. In each of these spaces (B), a protoplasmic flow proceeds from the somewhat abrupt termination of the endochrome, towards the obtuse end of the cell (as indicated by the interior arrows); and the globules it contains are kept in a sort of twisting movement on the *inner* side (*a*) of the primordial utricle. Other currents are seen apparently external to it, which form three or four distinct courses of globules, passing towards and away-from *c* (as indicated by the outer arrows), where they seem to encounter a fluid jetted towards them as if through an aperture in the primordial utricle at the apex of the chamber; and here some communication between

the inner and the outer currents appears to take place*.—Another curious movement is often to be witnessed in the interior of the cells of members of this family, especially the various species of *Cosmarium*, which has been described as 'the swarming of the granules,' from the extraordinary resemblance which the mass of particles of endochrome in active vibratory motion bears to a swarm of bees. This motion continues for some time after the particles have been expelled by pressure from the interior of the cell; and it does not seem to depend (like that of true 'zoöspores') upon the action of cilia or flagella, but rather to be a more active form of the molecular movement common to other minute particles freely suspended in fluid (§ 155). It has been supposed that the 'swarming' is related to the production of zoöspores; but for this idea there does not seem any adequate foundation.†

263. When the single cell has come to its full maturity, it commonly multiplies itself by *binary subdivision;* but the plan on which this takes place is often peculiarly modified, so as to maintain the symmetry characteristic of the tribe. In a cell of the simple cylindrical form of those of *Didymoprium* (Fig. 160), little more is necessary than the separation of the two halves at the sutural line, and the formation of a partition between them by the infolding of the primordial utricle; and in this manner, out of the lowest cell of the filament A, a double cell, B, is produced. But it will be observed that each of the simple cells has a bifid wart-like projection of the cellulose wall on either side, and that the half of this projection, which has been appropriated by each of the two new cells, is itself becoming bifid, though not symmetrically; in process of time, however, the increased development of the sides of the cells which remain in contiguity with each other brings up the smaller projections to the dimensions of the larger, and the symmetry of the cells is restored.—In *Closterium* (Fig. 156, D), the two halves of the endochrome first retreat from one another at the sutural line, and a constriction takes place round the cellulose wall; this constriction deepens until it becomes an hour-glass contraction, which proceeds until the cellulose wall entirely closes round the primordial

* See Lord S. G. Osborne's communications to the "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," Vol. ii. (1854), p. 234, and Vol. iii. (1855), p. 54.—Although the movement is an unquestionable fact, yet there can be no hesitation in regarding the appearance of *ciliary action* described by that observer as an optical illusion; as was early pointed out by Mr. Wenham in the same Journal, Vol. iv., 1856, p. 158.—The character of this movement has been described by a recent observer (Mr. A. W. Wills) as one of ebb and flow, alternately towards and from the ends, in delicate longitudinal bands or streams; its direction in any one band being usually reversed every few seconds; while in different bands the flow may be in opposite directions at the same time. The clear spaces at the ends of the cell he affirms to be contractile vesicles; and these (he says) can be seen under a 1-4th or 1-6th inch objective to be undergoing incessant though slight changes in form, with which the flow of the currents can be distinctly connected. (See "Midland Naturalist," 1880, p. 187, quoted in "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. iii. (1880), p. 845.

† See Archer in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," Vol. viii. (1860), p. 215.

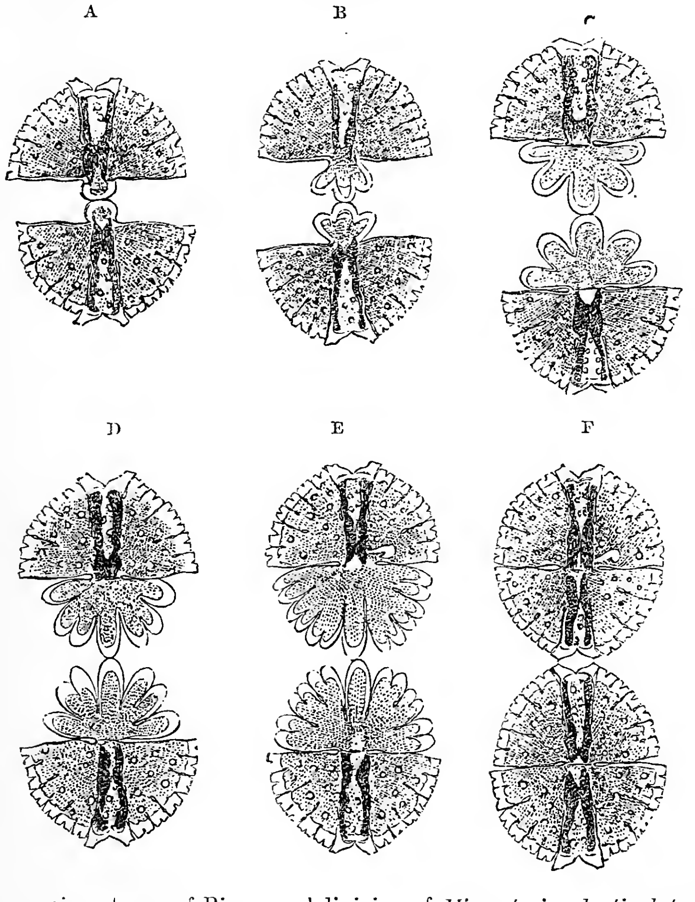
utricle of the two segments: in this state, one half commonly remains passive, whilst the other has a motion from side to side, which gradually becomes more active; and at last one segment quits the other with a sort of jerk. At this time a constriction is seen across the middle of the primordial utricle of each segment, indicating the formation of the sutural band; but there is no division of the cell-cavity, which is that belonging to one of the halves of the original entire cell. The cyclosis, for some hours previously to subdivision, and for a few hours afterwards, runs quite round the obtuse end, *a*, of the endochrome; but gradually a transparent space is formed, like that at the opposite extremity, by the retreat of the coloured layer; whilst, at the same time, its obtuse form becomes changed to a more elongated and contracted shape. Thus, in five or six hours after the separation, the aspect of each extremity becomes the same, and each half resembles the cell in whose self-division it originated.

264. The process is seen to be performed after nearly the same method in *Staurastrum* (Fig. 155, D, E); the division taking place across the central constriction, and each half gradually acquiring the symmetry of the original.—In such forms as *Cosmarium*, however, in which the cell consists of two lobes united together by a narrow isthmus (Fig. 158), the division takes place after a different method; for when the two halves of the outer wall separate at the sutural line, a semiglobular protrusion of the endochrome is put forth from each half; these protrusions are separated from one another, and from the two halves of the original cell (which their interposition carries apart), by a narrow neck; and they progressively increase until they assume the appearance of the half-segments of the original cell. In this state, therefore, the plant consists of a row of four segments, lying end to end, the two old ones forming the extremes, and the two new ones (which do not usually acquire the full size or the characteristic markings of the original before the division occurs) occupying the intermediate place. At last the central fission becomes complete, and two bipartite fronds are formed, each having one old and one young segment: the young segment, however, soon acquires the full size and characteristic aspect of the old one; and the same process, the whole of which may take place within twenty-four hours, is repeated ere long.* The same general plan is followed in *Micrasterias denticulata* (Fig. 157); but as the small hyaline hemisphere, put forth in the first instance from each frustule (A), enlarges with the flowing-in of the endochrome, it undergoes progressive subdivision at its edges, first into three lobes (B), then into five (C), then into seven (D), then into thirteen (E), and finally at the time of its separation (F), acquires the characteristic notched outline of its type, being

* See the observations of Mrs. Herbert Thomas on *Cosmarium margaritiferum*, in "Transact. of Microsc. Society," N.S., Vol. iii. (1855), pp. 33-36.—Several varieties in the mode of subdivision are described in this short record of long-continued observations, as of occasional occurrence.

only distinguishable from the older half by its smaller size. The whole of this process may take place within three hours and a

FIG. 157.



Successive stages of Binary subdivision of *Micrasterias denticulata.*

half.*—In *Sphærozosma*, the cells thus produced remain connected in rows within a gelatinous sheath, like those of Didymoprium (Fig. 160); and different stages of the process may commonly be observed in the different parts of any one of the filaments thus formed. In any such filament, it is obvious that the two oldest segments are found at its opposite extremities, and that each subdivision of the intermediate cells must carry them farther and farther from each other. This is a very different mode of increase from that of the *Confervaceæ*, in which the terminal cell alone undergoes subdivision (§ 252), and is consequently the one last formed.

* See Lobb in "Transact. of Microsc. Society," N.S., Vol. ix. (1861), p. 1.

265. Although it is probable that the *Desmidiaceæ* generally multiply themselves also by the subdivision of their endochrome into a number of zoospores, only one undoubted case of the kind has yet been recorded (the *Pediastreæ*, § 270, being no longer ranked within this group); that, namely, of *Docidium Ehrenbergii*, whose elongated cell puts forth from the vicinity of the sutural line, one, two, or three tubular extensions resembling the finger of a glove, through which there pass out from 20 to 50 motile *micro-gonidia* formed by the breaking-up of the endochrome of the neighbouring portion of each segment.*

266. Whether there is in this group anything that corresponds to the 'encysting' process (§ 228 *note*) or the formation of 'stato-spores' (§ 241) in other Protophytes, has not yet been certainly ascertained; but the following observations may have reference to such a condition. It is stated by Focke that the entire endochrome of *Closterium* sometimes retracts itself from the cell-wall, and breaks itself up into a number of globules, every one of which acquires a very firm envelope. And it is affirmed by Mr. Jenner that "in all the Desmidiaceæ, but especially in *Closterium* and *Micrasterias*, small, compact, seed-like bodies of a blackish colour are at times to be met with. Their situation is uncertain, and their number varies from one to four. In their immediate neighbourhood the endochrome is wanting, as if it had been required to form them; but in the rest of the frond it retains its usual colour and appearance." It seems likely that, when thus enclosed in a firm cyst, the gonidia are more capable of preserving their vitality, than they are when destitute of such a protection; and that in this condition they may be taken-up and wafted through the air, so as to convey the species into new localities.

267. The proper Generative process in the *Desmidiaceæ* is always accomplished by the act of 'conjugation;' which commences with the dehiscence of the firm external envelope of each of the conjugating cells, so as to separate it into two valves (Fig. 158, C, D; Fig. 159, C). The contents of each cell thus set-free without any distinct investment, blend with those of the other; and a 'zygospore' is formed by their union, which soon acquires a truly membranous envelope.† This envelope is at first very delicate, and is filled with green and granular contents; by degrees the envelope acquires increased thickness, and its contents become brown or red. The surface of the zygospore is sometimes smooth, as in *Closterium* and its allies (Fig. 159); but in the *Cosmarieæ*, it becomes granular, tuberculated, or even spinous (Fig. 158, D), the spines being sometimes simple and sometimes forked at their extremities.‡—

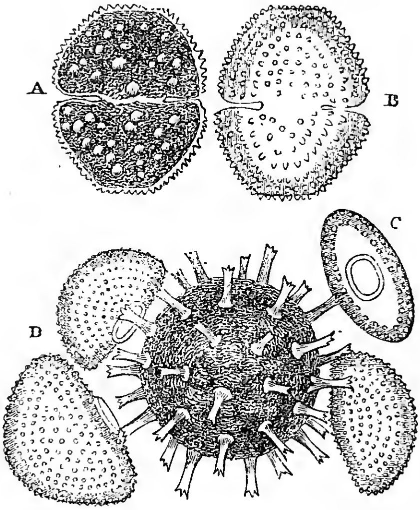
* See Archer in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," Vol. viii. (1860), p. 227.

† In certain species of *Closterium*, as in many of the *Diatomaceæ* (§ 280), the act of conjugation gives origin to *two* sporangia.

‡ Bodies precisely resembling these, and almost certainly to be regarded as of like kind, are often found fossilized in Flints, and have been described by Ehrenberg as the remains of Animalcules, under the name of *Xanthidia*.

The mode in which conjugation takes place in the filamentous species constituting the *Desmidieæ* proper, is, however, in many respects different. The filaments first separate into their component joints; and when two cells approach in conjugation, the outer cell-wall of each splits or gapes at that part which adjoins the other cell, and a new growth takes place, which forms a sort of connecting tube that unites the cavities of the two cells (Fig. 160, D, E). Through this tube the entire endochrome of one cell passes over into the cavity of the other (D); and the two are commingled so as to form a single mass (E), as is the case in many of the *Conjugateæ* (§ 235). The joint which contains the zygospore can scarcely be distinguished at first (after the separation of the empty cell), save by the greater density of its contents; but the proper coats of the zygospore gradually become more distinct, and the enveloping cell-wall disappears.

FIG. 158.



Conjugation of *Cosmarium botrytis*:—A, mature cell; B, empty cell-envelope; C, transverse view; D, zygospore with empty cell-envelopes.

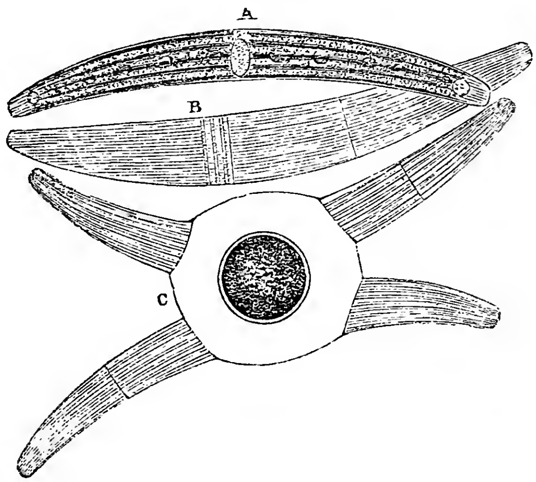
—The subsequent history of the zygospores has hitherto been made out in only a few cases. From the observations of Mrs. H. Thomas (*loc. cit.*) on *Cosmarium*, it appeared that each zygospore gives origin, not to a single cell but to a brood of cells; and this view is fully confirmed by Hoffmeister,* who speaks of it as beyond doubt that the contents of the zygospores are transformed by repeated binary subdivisions into 8 or 16 cells, which assume the original form of the parent before they are set free by the rupture or diffluence of the enclosing wall. The observations of Jenner and Focke render it probable that the same is the case in *Closterium;* but much has still to be learned in regard to the development of the products of the Generative process, as it is by no means certain that they always resemble the parent forms. For it is affirmed by Mr. Ralfs that there are several Desmidiaceæ which never make their appearance in the same pools for two years successively, although their zygospores are abundantly produced—a circumstance which would seem to indicate an 'alternation of generations.' It is a subject, therefore, to which the attention of Microscopists cannot be too sedulously directed.

268. The subdivision of this Family into Genera, according to

* "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," 3rd Ser., Vol. i. (1858), p. 2.

the method of Mr. Ralfs ("British Desmidieæ"), as modified by Mr. Archer (Pritchard's "Infusoria"), is based in the first instance

FIG. 159.

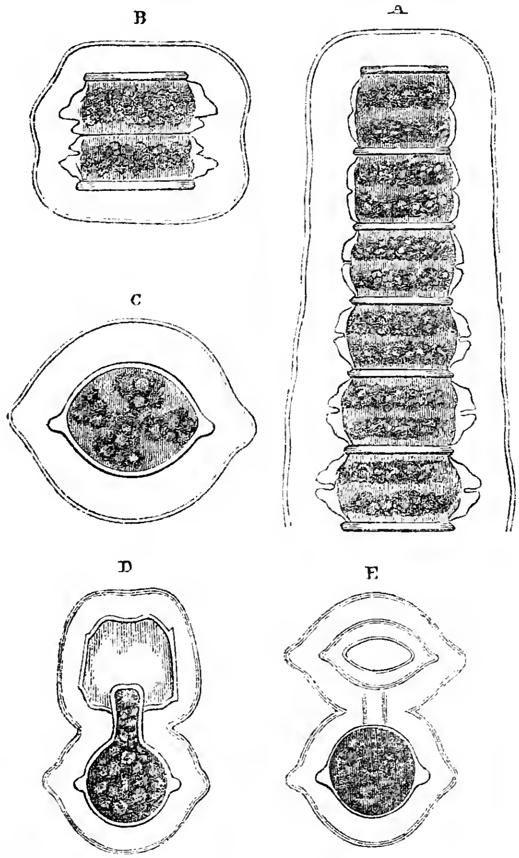


Conjugation of *Closterium striatulum*:—A, ordinary cell; B, empty cell; C, two cells in conjugation, with incipient zygospore.

upon the connection or disconnection of the individual cells; two groups being thus formed, of which one includes all the genera whose cells, when multiplied by binary subdivision, remain united into an elongated filament; whilst the other comprehends all those in which the cells become separated by the completion of the fission. The further division of the filamentous group, in which the zygospores are always globular and smooth, is based on the fact that in one set of genera the joints are many times longer than they are broad, and that they are neither constricted nor furnished with lateral teeth or projections; whilst in the other set (of which *Didymoprium*, Fig. 160, is an example) the length and breadth of each joint are nearly equal, and the joints are more or less constricted, or have lateral teeth or projecting angles, or are otherwise figured; and it is for the most part upon the variations in these last particulars, that the generic characters are based. The solitary group presents a similar basis for primary division in the marked difference in the proportions of its cells; such elongated forms as *Closterium* (Figs. 156, 159), in which the length is many times the breadth, being thus separated from those in which, as in *Micrasterias* (Fig. 157), *Cosmarium* (Fig. 158), and *Staurastrum* (Fig. 155), the breadth more nearly equals the length. In the former the sporangia are smooth, whilst in the latter they are very commonly spinous and are sometimes quadrate. In this group, the chief secondary characters are derived from the degree of constriction between the two halves of the cell, the division of

its margin into segments by incisions more or less deep, and its extension into teeth or spines.

Fig. 160.



Binary subdivision and Conjugation of *Didymoprium Grevillii*:— A, portion of filament, surrounded by gelatinous envelope; B, dividing cell; C, single cell viewed transversely; D, two cells in conjugation; E, formation of zygospore.

269. The *Desmidiaceæ* are not found in running streams, unless the motion of the water be very slow; but are to be looked-for in standing though not stagnant waters. Small shallow pools that do not dry-up in summer, especially in open exposed situations, such as boggy moors, are most productive. The larger and heavier species commonly lie at the bottom of the pools, either spread-out as a thin gelatinous stratum, or collected into finger-like tufts. By gently passing the fingers beneath these, they may be caused to rise towards the surface of the water, and may then be lifted out by a tin-box or scoop. Other species form a greenish or dirty

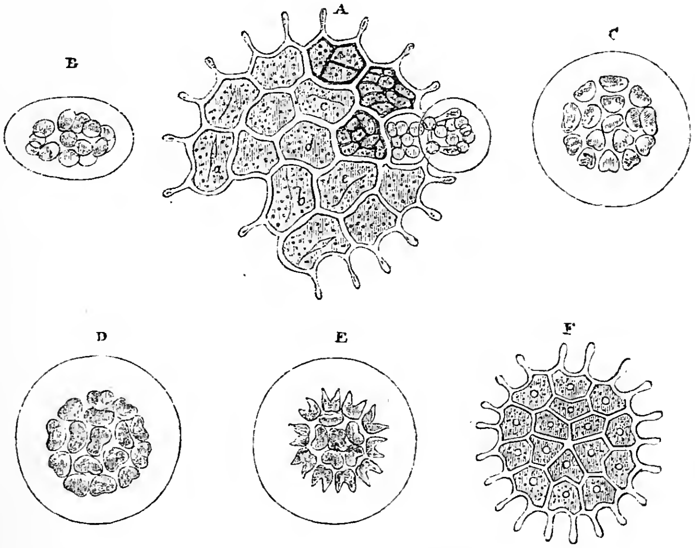
cloud upon the stems and leaves of other aquatic plants; and these also are best detached by passing the hand beneath them, and 'stripping' the plant between the fingers, so as to carry off upon them what adhered to it. If, on the other hand, the bodies of which we are in search should be much diffused through the water, there is no other course than to take it up in large quantities by the box or scoop, and to separate them by straining through a piece of linen. At first, nothing appears on the linen but a mere stain or a little dirt; but by the straining of repeated quantities, a considerable accumulation may be gradually made. This should be then scraped-off with a knife, and transferred into bottles with fresh water. If what has been brought up by hand be richly charged with these forms, it should be at once deposited in a bottle; this at first seems only to contain foul water; but by allowing it to remain undisturbed for a little time, the Desmids will sink to the bottom, and most of the water may then be poured-off, to be replaced by a fresh supply. If the bottles be freely exposed to solar light, these little plants will flourish, apparently as well as in their native pools; and their various phases of multiplication and reproduction may be observed during successive months or even years.—If the pools be too deep for the use of the hand and the scoop, a collecting-bottle attached to a stick (§ 216) may be employed in its stead. The ring-net (§ 216) may also be advantageously employed, especially if it be so constructed as to allow of the ready substitution of one piece of muslin for another. For by using several pieces of previously wetted muslin in succession, a large number of these minute organisms may be separated from the water; the pieces of muslin may be brought home folded-up in wide-mouthed bottles, either separately, or several in one, according as the organisms are obtained from one or from several waters; and they are then to be opened out in jars of filtered river-water, and exposed to the light, when the Desmids will detach themselves.

270. *Pediastreæ.*—The members of this family were formerly included in the preceding group; but, though doubtless related to the true *Desmidiaceæ* in certain particulars, they present too many points of difference to be properly associated with them. Their chief point of resemblance consists in the firmness of the outer casing, and in the frequent interruption of its margin either by the protrusion of 'horns' (Fig. 161, A), or by a notching more or less deep (Fig. 162, B); but they differ in these two important particulars, that the cells are not made up of two symmetrical halves, and that they are always found in aggregation, which is not—except in such genera as *Scenodesmus* (*Arthrodesmus*, Ehr.), which connect this group with the preceding—in linear series, but in the form of discoidal fronds. In this tribe we meet with a form of multiplication by zoöspores aggregated into *macro-gonidia*,* which

* Solitary zoöspores or *micro-gonidia* have been observed by Braun to make their way out and swim away; but their subsequent history is unknown.

reminds us of the formation of the motile spheres of *Volvox* (§ 239), and which takes place in such a manner that the resultant product

FIG. 161.



Various phases of development of *Pediastrum granulatum*.

may vary greatly in number of its cells, and consequently both in size and in form. Thus, in *Pediastrum granulatum* (Fig. 161), the zoöspores formed by the subdivision of the endochrome of one cell into gonidia, which may be 4, 8, 16, 32, or 64 in number, escape from the parent frond still enclosed in the inner tunic of the cell; and it is within this that they develop themselves into a cluster resembling that in which they originated, so that whilst the frond normally consists of sixteen cells, it may be composed of either of the just-mentioned multiples or sub-multiples of that number. At A, is seen an old disk, of irregular shape, nearly emptied by the emission of its macro-gonidia, which had been seen to take-place within a few hours previously from the cells *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*; most of the empty cells exhibit the cross slit through which their contents had been discharged; and where this does not present itself on the side next the observer, it is found on the other. Three of the cells still possess their coloured contents, but in different conditions. One of them exhibits an early stage of the subdivision of the endochrome, namely, into two halves, one of which already appears halved again. Two others are filled by sixteen very closely-crowded gonidia, only half of which are visible, as they form a double layer. Besides these, one cell is in the very act of discharging its gonidia; nine of which have passed forth from its cavity, though still enveloped in a vesicle formed by the extension of its innermost membrane; whilst seven yet remain in its interior. The new-born

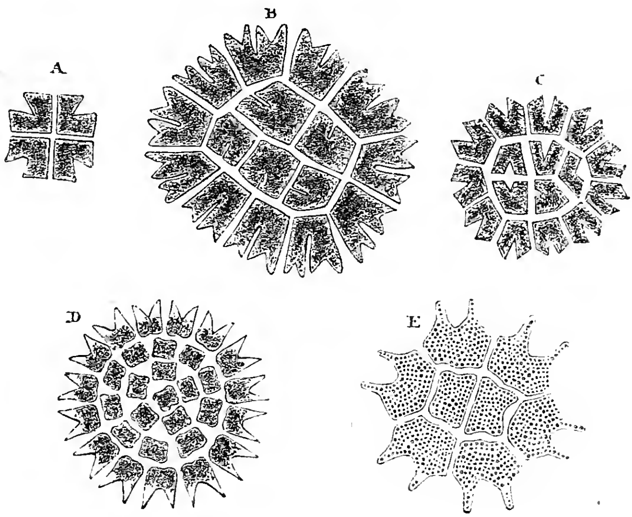
family, as it appears immediately on its complete emersion, is shown at B; the gonidia are actively moving within the vesicle; and they do not as yet show any indication either of symmetrical arrangement, or of the peculiar form which they are subsequently to assume. Within a quarter of an hour, however, the gonidia are observed to settle-down into one plane, and to assume some kind of regular arrangement, most commonly that seen at C, in which there is a single central body surrounded by a circle of five, and this again by a circle of ten; they do not, however, as yet adhere firmly together. The gonidia now begin to develop themselves into new cells, increase in size, and come into closer approximation (D); and the edge of each, especially in the marginal row, presents a notch, which foreshadows the production of its characteristic 'horns.' Within about four or five hours after the escape of the gonidia, the cluster has come to assume much more of the distinctive aspect of the species, the marginal cells having grown-out into horns (E); still, however, they are not very closely connected with each other; and between the cells of the inner row considerable spaces yet intervene. It is in the course of the second day that the cells become closely applied to each other, and that the growth of the horns is completed, so as to constitute a perfect disk like that seen at F, in which, however, the arrangement of the interior cells does not follow the typical plan *

271. The varieties which present themselves, indeed, both as to the number of cells in each cluster, and the plan on which they are disposed, are such as to baffle all attempts to base specific distinctions on such grounds; and the more attentively the life-history of any one of these plants is studied, the more evident does it appear that many reputed 'species' have no real existence. Some of these, indeed, are nothing else than mere transitory forms; thus it can scarcely be doubted that the specimen represented in Fig. 162, D, under the name of *Pediastrum pertusum*, is in reality nothing else than a young frond of *P. granulatum*, in the stage represented in Fig. 161, E, but consisting of 32 cells. On the other hand, in Fig. 162, E, we see an emptied frond of *P. granulatum*, exhibiting the peculiar surface-marking from which the name of the species is derived, but composed of no more than eight cells. And instances every now and then occur in which the frond consists of only four cells, each of them presenting the two-horned shape. So, again, in Fig. 162 B and C, are shown two varieties of *Pediastrum biradiatum*, whose frond is normally composed of sixteen cells; whilst at A is figured a form which is designated as *P. tetras*, but which may be strongly suspected to be merely a four-celled variety of B and C. Many similar cases might be cited; and the Author would strongly urge those Microscopists who have the requisite time and opportunities, to apply themselves to the deter-

* See Prof. Braun on "The Phenomenon of Rejuvenescence in Nature," published by the Ray Society in 1853; and his subsequent Memoir, "Algarum Unicellularum Genera nova aut minus cognita," 1855.

mination of the *real species* of these groups, by studying the entire life-history of whatever forms may happen to lie within their

FIG. 162.



Various species (?) of *Pediastrum*.—A, *P. tetras*; B, C, P. biradiatum; D, *P. pertusum*; E, empty frond of *P. granulatum*.

reach, and noting all the varieties which present themselves among the offsets from any one stock. The characters of such varieties are diffused by the process of binary subdivision amongst vast multitudes of so-called individuals. Thus it happens that, as Mr. Ralfs has remarked, "one pool may abound with individuals of *Staurastrum dejectum* or *Arthrodesmus incus*, having the mucro curved outwards; in a neighbouring pool, every specimen may have it curved inwards; and in another it may be straight. The cause of the similarity in each pool no doubt is, that all its plants are offsets from a few primary fronds." Hence the universality of any particular character, in all the specimens of one gathering, is by no means sufficient to entitle these to take rank as a distinct species; since they are, properly speaking, but repetitions of the same variety by a process of simple multiplication, really representing in their entire aggregate the one plant or tree that grows from a single seed.

272. DIATOMACEÆ.—These, like the Desmidiaceæ, are *simple cells*, having a firm external coating, within which is included an 'endochrome' whose superficial layer constitutes a 'primordial utricle:' but their external coat is consolidated by *silex*, the presence of which is one of the most distinctive characters of the group, and gives rise to the peculiar surface-markings of its members (§ 277). It has been thought by some that the solidifying mineral forms a distinct layer exuded from the exterior of the cellulose-wall; but

there seems good reason for regarding that wall as itself interpenetrated by the silex, since a membrane bearing the characteristic surface-markings is found to remain after its removal by hydrofluoric acid. The 'endochrome' of Diatoms consists, as in other plants, of a viscid protoplasm, in which float the granules of colouring matter. In the ordinary condition of the cell, these granules are diffused through it with tolerable uniformity, except in the central spot, which is occupied by a *nucleus;* round this nucleus they commonly form a ring, from which radiating lines of granules may be seen to diverge into the cell-cavity. Instead of being bright green, however, the endochrome is of a yellowish brown. The principal colouring substance appears to be a modification of ordinary chlorophyll; it takes a green or greenish-blue tint with sulphuric acid, and often assumes this hue in drying; but with it is combined in greater or less proportion a yellow colouring matter termed *phycoxanthin*, which is very unstable in the light, and fades in drying.* At certain times, oil-globules are observable in the protoplasm; these seem to represent the starch-granules of the Desmidiaceæ (§ 261) and the oil-globules of other Protophytes (§ 229). A distinct movement of the granular particles of the endochrome, closely resembling the cyclosis of the Desmidiaceæ (§ 262), has been noticed by Prof. W. Smith† in some of the larger species of Diatomaceæ, such as *Surirella biseriata*, *Nitzschia scalaris*, and *Campylodiscus spiralis;* and by Prof. Max Schultze‡ in *Coscinodiscus*, *Denticella*, and *Rhizosolenia;* but this movement has not the regularity so remarkable in the preceding group.

273. The *Diatomaceæ* seem to have received their name from the readiness with which those forms that grow in coherent masses (which were those with which Naturalists first became acquainted) may be *cut* or *broken-through;* hence they have been also designated by the vernacular term 'brittle-worts.' Of this we have an example in the common *Diatoma* (Fig. 173), whose component cells (which in this tribe are usually designated as *frustules*) are sometimes found adherent side by side (as at *b*) so as to form filaments, but are more commonly met-with in a state of partial separation, remaining connected at their angles only (usually the *alternate*

* A full account by M. Petit of recent Chemical and Spectroscopic investigations on the endochrome of Diatoms, will be found in "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. iii. (1880), p. 680.

† The account of the *Diatomaceæ* here given, is chiefly based on the valuable "Synopsis of the British Diatomaceæ," by the late Prof. W. Smith; of which, and of its beautiful illustrations by Mr. Tuffen West, the Author has been enabled to make free use by the liberality of Messrs. Beck. In the sketch he has given of the Systematic arrangement of the group, however, he has followed the Classification of Mr. Ralfs (Pritchard's "Infusoria," 4th edition). A more recent Classification proposed by M. Paul Petit will be found in the "Monthly Journal of the Microscopical Society," Vol. xviii. (1877), pp. 10, 65. The new Monograph of the group by Prof. Hamilton Smith (U.S.), announced as forthcoming, will doubtless supersede all previous descriptions of it.

‡ "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. vii. (1859), p. 13.

angles of the contiguous frustules) so as to form a zigzag chain. A similar cohesion at the angles is seen in the allied genus *Grammatophora* (Fig. 174), in *Isthmia* (Fig. 181), and in many other Diatoms; in *Biddulphia* (Fig. 167) there even seems to be a special organ of attachment at these points. In some Diatoms, however, the frustules produced by successive acts of binary subdivision habitually remain coherent one to another, and thus are produced filaments or clusters of various shapes. Thus it is obvious that when each frustule is a short cylinder, an aggregation of such cylinders, end to end, must form a rounded filament, as in *Melosira* (Figs. 177, 178); and whatever may be the form of the sides of the frustules, if they be parallel one to the other, a *straight* filament will be produced, as in *Achnanthes* (Fig. 185). But if, instead of being parallel, the sides be somewhat inclined towards each other, a *curved* band will be the result; this may not continue entire, but may so divide itself as to form fan-shaped expansions, as those of *Lichmophora flabellata* (Fig. 172); or the cohesion may be sufficient to occasion the band to wind itself (as it were) round a central axis, and thus to form, not merely a complete circle, but a spiral of several turns, as in *Meridion circulare* (Fig. 170). Many Diatoms, again, possess a *stipes*, or stalk-like appendage, by which aggregations of frustules are attached to other plants, or to stones, pieces of wood, &c.; and this may be a simple foot-like appendage, as in *Achnanthes longipes* (Fig. 185), or it may be a composite plant-like structure, as in *Lichmophora* (Fig. 172), *Gomphonema* (Fig. 186), and *Mastogloia* (Fig. 189). Little is known respecting the nature of this stipes; it is, however, quite flexible, and may be conceived to be an extension of the cellulose coat unconsolidated by silex, analogous to the prolongations which have been seen in the *Desmidiaceæ* (§ 261), and to the filaments which sometimes connect the cells of the *Palmellaceæ* (§ 243). Some Diatoms, again, have a mucous or gelatinous investment, which may even be so substantial that their frustules lie—as it were—in a bed of it, as in *Mastogloia* (Figs. 189 B, 190), or may form a sort of tubular sheath to them, as in *Schizonema* (Fig. 188). In a large proportion of the group, however, the frustules are always met with entirely *free*; neither remaining in the least degree coherent one to another after the process of binary subdivision has once been completed, nor being in any way connected either by a stipes or by a gelatinous investment. This is the case, for example, with *Triceratium* (Fig. 164), *Pleurosigma* (Fig. 165), *Actinocyclus* (Fig. 191, *b*, *b*), *Actinoptychus* (Fig. 180), *Arachnoidiscus* (Plate XI.), *Campylodiscus* (Fig. 176), *Surirella* (Fig. 175), *Coscinodiscus* (Fig. 191, *a*, *a*, *a*). *Heliopelta* (Plate I., Fig. 3), and many others. The solitary discoidal forms, however, when obtained in their living state, are commonly found cohering to the surface of Seaweeds.

274. We have now to examine more minutely into the curious structure of the silicified casing which encloses every Diatom-cell or 'frustule,' and the presence of which imparts a peculiar interest

to the group; not merely on account of the elaborately-marked pattern which it often exhibits (Fig. 277), but also through the perpetuation of the minutest details of that pattern in the specimens obtained from fossilized deposits (Fig. 299). This casing consists of two *valves* or plates, usually of the most perfect symmetry, closely applied to each other, like the two valves of a Pecten or other bivalve shell, along a line of junction or *suture;* and as each valve is more or less concavo-convex, a cavity is left between the two, which is occupied by the cell-contents. The form of this cavity, however, varies widely in different Diatoms; for sometimes each valve is hemispherical, so that the cavity is globular; sometimes it is a smaller segment of a sphere resembling a watch-glass, so that the cavity is lenticular; sometimes the central portion is completely flattened and the sides abruptly turned-up, so that the valve resembles the cover of a pill-box, in which case the cavity will be cylindrical; and these and other varieties may co-exist with any modifications of the contour of the valves, which may be square, triangular (Fig. 164), heart-shaped (Fig. 176), boat-shaped (Fig. 175, A), or very much elongated (Fig. 171), and may be furnished (though this is rare among Diatoms) with projecting out-growths (Figs. 182, 183). Hence the shape presented by the frustule differs completely with the aspect under which it is seen. In all instances, the frustule is considered to present its 'front' view when its suture is turned towards the eye, as in Fig. 175, B, C; whilst its 'side' view is seen when the centre of either valve is directly beneath the eye (A). Although the two valves meet along the suture in those newly-formed frustules which have been just produced by binary subdivision (as shown in Fig. 167 A, *e*), yet as soon as they begin to undergo any increase, the valves separate from one another; and by the silicification of the cell-membrane thus left exposed, a pair of *hoops* is formed, each of which is attached by one edge to the adjacent valve, while the other edge is free. As will be presently explained, one of the valves is always older than the other; and the hoop of the older valve partly encloses that of the younger, just as the cover of a pill-box surrounds the upper part of the box itself.* As the newly-formed cell increases

* This was long since pointed out by Dr. Wallich in his important Memoir on the 'Development and Structure of the Diatom-valve' ("Transact. of Microsc. Soc.," N.S. Vol. viii., 1860, p. 129); but his observation seems not to have attracted the notice of Diatomists, until in 1877 he called attention to it in a more explicit manner ("Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. xvii., p. 61). The correctness of his statement has been confirmed by the distinguished American Diatomist, Prof. W. Hamilton Smith; but as it has been called in question by Mr. J. D. Cox ("American Journal of Microscopy," Vol. iii., 1878, p. 100), who asserts that in *Isthmia* there are *three* hoops—two attached to the two valves, and the third overlapping them both at their line of junction,—the Author has himself made a very careful examination of a large series of specimens of *Isthmia* and *Biddulphia*, the result of which has fully satisfied him of the correctness of Dr. Wallich's original description.

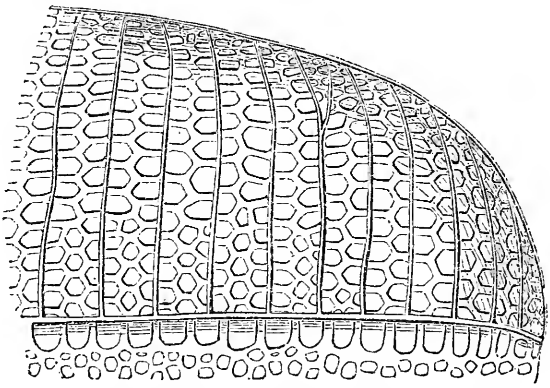
in length, separating the valves from one another, both hoops increase in breadth by additions to their free edges; and the outer hoop slides off the inner one, until there is often but a very small 'overlap.' As growth and self-division are continually going on when the frustules are in a healthy vigorous condition, it is rare to find a specimen in which the valves are not in some degree separated by the interposition of the hoops.

275. The impermeability of the silicified casing renders necessary some special aperture, through which the surrounding water may come into relation with the contents of the cell. Such apertures are found along the whole line of suture in disk-like frustules; but when the Diatom is of an elongated form, they are found at the extremities of the frustules only. They do not appear to be absolute perforations in the envelope, but are merely points at which its siliceous impregnation is wanting; and these are usually indicated by slight depressions of its surface. In some Diatoms, as *Surirella* (Fig. 175) and *Campylodiscus* (Fig. 176), these interruptions are connected with what were thought, by Prof. W. Smith, to be minute canals hollowed out between the silicified casing and the membrane investing the endochrome; but the apparent canals are really internal ribs, or projections of the shell, showing its characteristic 'beaded' structure under sufficiently good objectives. —In many genera the surface of each valve is distinguished by the presence of a longitudinal band on which the usual markings are deficient, and this is widened into small expansions at the extremities, and sometimes at the centre also, as we see in *Pleurosigma* (Fig. 164) and *Gomphonema* (Fig. 186); but this band is merely a portion in which the silicified casing is thicker than it is elsewhere, forming a sort of rib that gives firmness to the valve, its expansions being solid *nodules* of the same substance.—These nodules were mistaken by Prof. Ehrenberg for *apertures;* and in this error he has been followed by Kützing. There cannot any longer, however, be a doubt as to their real nature.

276. The nature of the delicate and regular markings with which probably every Diatomaceous valve is beset, has been of late years a subject of much discussion among Microscopists; but on certain points there is now a general convergence of opinion.—There can be no longer any question as to the nature of the comparatively coarse areolation seen in the larger forms, such as *Isthmia* (Fig. 163), *Triceratium* (Fig. 164), and *Biddulphia* (Fig. 167); in all of which that structure can be distinctly seen under a low magnifying power and with ordinary light. In each of these instances, we see a number of symmetrically disposed *areolæ*, rounded, oval, or hexagonal, with intervening boundaries; and these have now been unmistakably proved to be *depressions*, lying in the interspaces of an elevated reticulation. The reticulation presents itself in clear *relief*, when viewed Binocularly with a sufficiently high power; and the depression of its interspaces becomes manifest when an *edge-*

view is obtained of a curved surface, such as that of a valve of *Isthmia.**—Both the depressed areolæ and the intervening network

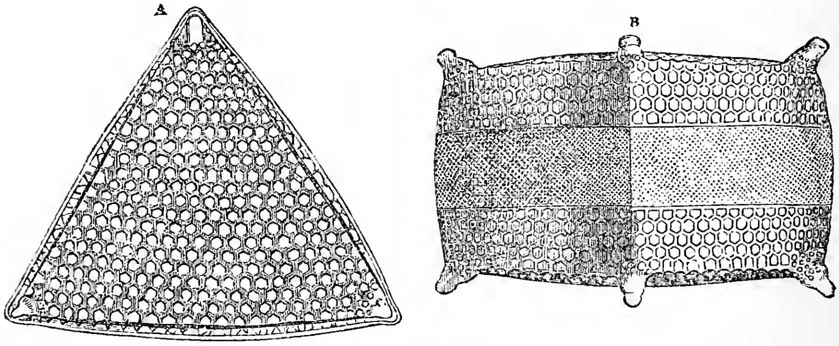
Fig. 163.



Portion of valve of *Isthmia nervosa*, highly magnified, as usually seen.

of Diatoms presenting this areolation, when examined with a sufficient magnifying power, show the 'beaded' aspect characteristically displayed in *Pleurosigma angulatum* (Fig 166); and this is

Fig. 164.



Triceratium favus:—A, side view; B, front view

also well seen in some species of *Actinocyclus* and *Coscinodiscus*, and in the beautiful *Heliopelta* (Plate I, Fig. 3).—The observations of Mr. Stephenson on *Coscinodiscus oculus Iridis* (§ 289), and of

* When specimens of Diatoms which exhibit this areolation are examined by the test of Focal adjustment (§ 152), it is found that if they are mounted in Canada balsam, the optical effects are reversed; the areolæ being made to look *bright* (like elevations) when the distance of the objective is increased, and *dark* when it is diminished. This, however, is readily explicable by the fact that the refractive power of the Balsam is greater than that of the Silicified valve; so that the predominant effect will be produced by the convexities formed in the medium by the concavities of the object. (See Schultze in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. iii., N.S., 1863, p. 131.)

Mr. Shadbolt on *Arachnoidiscus* (§ 291), leave no doubt that in those Diatoms the silicified valve is composed of two layers; and the same is probably the case in all those forms which present a surface-areolation. Appearances are seen, too, in other Diatoms, which seem to indicate that in them also the valve consists of two layers.*

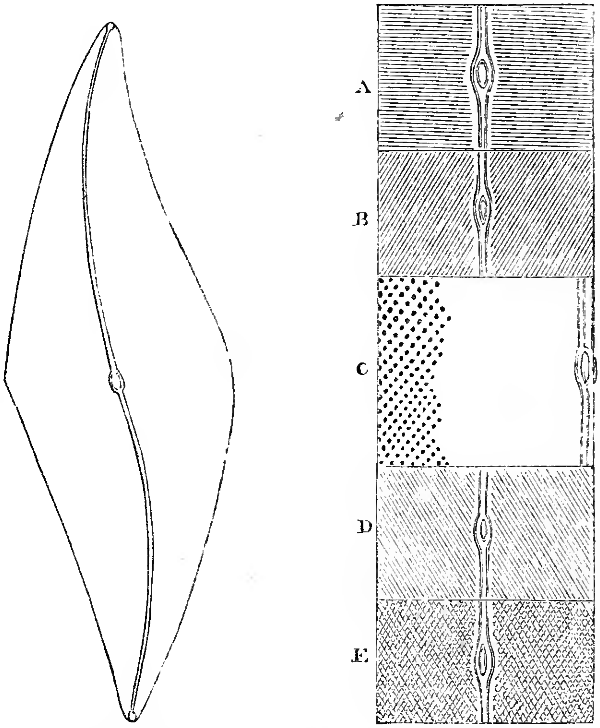
277. The 'beaded' aspect (Fig. 166, A), which is generally, if not universally, discernible in the silicified envelopes of *Diatoms*, when examined under a sufficiently high magnifying power, and with an illumination specially adapted to display them, is now usually regarded as indicating that the silicified envelope is composed of globular particles of silex, closely set together in regular rows.† And on this view of their nature, it is on the dimensions of their component spherules, and on the mode in which they are disposed, that those peculiar markings of certain Diatom-valves depend, which render them of special value as Test-objects (§161). Such valves have been commonly spoken of as marked by *striæ*, longitudinal, transverse, or oblique, as the case may be; but this term does not express the real nature of the markings (the apparent *lines* being resolvable by Objectives of sufficient magnifying power and angular aperture into *rows of dots*), and should only be used for the sake of concisely indicating the degree of their approximation. If we examine *Pleurosigma angulatum*, one of the easier tests, with an Objective of 1-4th inch focus (having an angular aperture of 90° and a magnifying power of 500 diameters), we shall see very much what is represented in Fig. 165, E; namely, a double series of somewhat interrupted lines, crossing each other at an angle of 60 degrees, so as to have between them imperfectly-defined lozenge-shaped spaces. When, however, the valve is examined with an Objective of higher power, having an angular aperture of 120° or more, and a magnifying power of 1,200 diameters, an appearance like that represented

* See Mr. C. Stodder (of Boston, U.S.), "On the Structure of the Valve of the *Diatomaceæ*," in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. iii., N.S. (1863), p. 214; also Ralfs, Op. cit., Vol. vi. (1858), p. 214; and Rylands, Op. cit., Vol. viii. (1860), p. 27.

† See Dr. Wallich's Papers on this subject in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. vi. (1858), p. 247; "Annals of Nat. Hist.," Vol. v. Ser. 4 (Feb. 1860), p. 122; and "Trans. of Microsc. Soc.," Vol. viii., N.S. (1860), p. 129. See also Norman in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," Vol. ii., N.S. (1862), p. 212.—Mr. Wenham, who at one time inclined to the opposite belief, stated (when Dr. Wallich's Paper was read before the Microscopical Society), as the result of observations made with an Objective of 1-50th inch focus and large aperture, that the valves are composed wholly of spherical particles of silex, possessing high refractive power; and he showed how all the various optical appearances presented by the different species could be reconciled with the supposition that their structure is universally the same.—Recourse has been had, with a certain measure of success, to the production of 'artificial Diatoms' by the deposit of silex from its fluoride; thin films being formed, which exhibit a 'beaded' structure, often arranged in very regular patterns. See the Memoir of Prof. Max Schultze, abstracted in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," N.S., Vol. iii. (1863), p. 120; and Mr. Slack's Paper in "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. iv. (1870), p. 181.

in Fig. 166, A) may be obtained, namely, a hexagonal areolation, in which the areolæ can be made to appear light, and the dividing

FIG. 165.

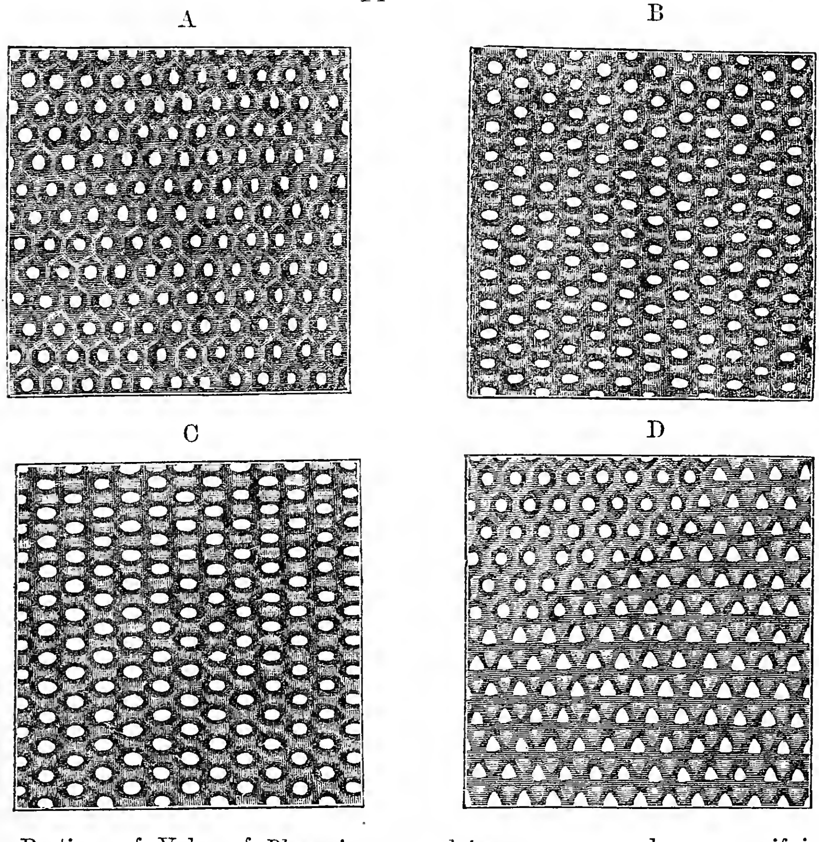


Outline of *Pleurosigma quadratum*, as seen under a power of 400 diameters:—at A, B, D, are shown the directions of the lines seen under a power of 1,300, the illuminating rays falling obliquely (in each case) in a direction at right angles to the lines; at E are shown two sets of lines, as seen when the oblique rays fall in the direction of the midrib; and at C is shown the appearance of the markings when illuminated with an Achromatic Condenser of large angular aperture, the spherules being *within* the focus, and the portion left blank showing the obliteration of the markings by moisture.

network dark, or *vice versâ,* according to the adjustment of the focus (Fig. 115). That the areolæ are here *elevations,* and not (like those of Triceratum) *depressions,* is indicated by the comparative results of the examination of fractured valves. For in *Triceratium* the fractures pass through the apparent depressions, and coincide with various optical indications in establishing their reality. Fractured valves of *P. angulatum* and allied species show that the weakest parts are *between* the bead-rows; and single beads may often be seen terminating a sharp angular portion. Further, when specimens of *Pleurosigma* mounted beneath glass have had their markings obscured by moisture, the obscurity is dissipated by the

application of a gentle heat, in a way that is readily explicable on the supposition that the markings are elevations, but seems unintelligible on the idea of their being depressions.*—Notwithstanding these considerations, however, it must be freely admitted that there is still considerable uncertainty respecting the real structure of the Diatom-

FIG. 166.



Portions of Valve of *Pleurosigma angulatum*, as seen under a magnifying power of 2,000 diameters, with central illumination; from a Photograph by Carl Günther in the possession of the Royal Microscopical Society.

A. Normal hexagonal areolation; areolæ bright circles, surrounded by dark hexagons.

B. In upper part, areolæ and their dark borders graduating from circular to elliptical; in lower part, dark borders coalescing laterally, so as to give the appearance of continuous vertical lineation.

C. Areolæ larger, brighter, and more elliptical; their dark borders coalescing laterally, so as to form very decided vertical lineation.

D. Transition from hexagonal to triangular areolation, with three series of dark lines, one horizontal and two oblique.

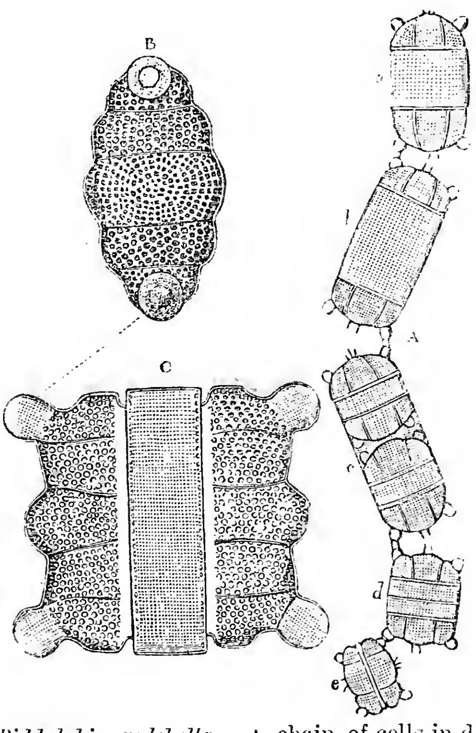
valve. For it cannot be positively asserted that the focal adjustment which gives the image represented in Fig. 166, A, is more

* See Mr. G. Hunt in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci." Vol. iii. (1855), p. 174.

correct than that which gives the equally distinct images B, C, D of other parts of the same valve, of which the last departs in the most marked manner from what is commonly regarded as the normal type. And now that it has been shown that these images are not formed dioptrically, but are resultants of the combination of numerous 'diffraction-spectra' (§ 157), it is impossible to entertain the same confidence as before that they truly *picture* the surface marking they are supposed to represent.—By Mr. Stephenson, who has made a special study of the effects of the immersion of Diatom-valves in very highly-refracting media, it is believed that the light spaces really represent apertures (§ 289). The question must be regarded, therefore, as still an open one.

278. Multiplication by Binary subdivision takes place among the *Diatomaceæ* on the same general plan as in the Desmidiaceæ, but with some modifications incident to the peculiarities of the structure of the former group.—The first stage consists in the elongation of the cell, and the formation of a 'hoop' adherent to each end-valve (§ 274), so that the two valves are separated by a band, which progressively increases in breadth by addition to the free edges of the hoops, as is well seen in Fig. 167 A. In the newly formed cell *e*, the two valves are in immediate apposition; in *d*, a band intervenes; in *a*, this band has become much wider; and in *b*, the increase has gone-on until the original form of the cell is completely changed. At the same time, the endochrome separates into two halves; the nucleus also subdivides in the manner formerly shown (Plate VIII., fig. 1, G. H, I); and the primordial utricle folds-in, first forming a mere constriction, then an hour-glass contraction, and finally a complete double partition, as in other instances (§ 252). From each of its adjacent surfaces a new siliceous valve

FIG. 167.



Biddulphia pulchella:—A, chain of cells in different states; *a*, full size; *b*, elongation preparatory to subdivision; *c*, formation of two new cells; *d*, *e*, young cells;—B, end-view;—C, side-view of a cell more highly magnified.

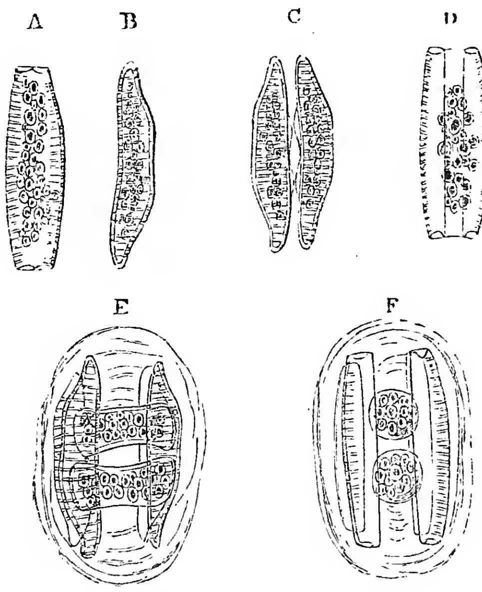
is formed, as shown at Fig. 167, A, C, just as a new cellulose-wall is generated in the subdivision of other cells; and this valve is usually the exact counterpart of the one to which it is opposed, and forms with it a complete cell, so that the original frustule is replaced by two frustules, each of which has one old and one new valve, just as in Desmidiaceæ (§ 264). Generally speaking, the new valves are a little smaller than their predecessors; so that after repeated subdivisions (as in chains of *Isthmia*), a diminution of diameter becomes obvious. But sometimes the new valves are a little larger than their predecessors; so that, in the filamentous species, there may be an increase sufficient to occasion a gradual widening of the filament, although not perceptible when two contiguous frustules are compared; whilst, in the free forms, frustules of different sizes may be met with, of which the larger are more numerous than the smaller, the increase in number having taken place in geometrical progression, whilst that of size was uniform. It is not always clear what becomes of the 'hoop.' In *Melosira* (Figs. 177, 178), and perhaps in the filamentous species generally, the 'hoops' appear to keep the new frustules united together for some time. This is at first the case also in *Biddulphia* and *Isthmia* (Fig. 181), in which the continued connection of the two frustules by its means give rise to an appearance of two complete frustules having been developed within the original (Fig. 167, A, *c*); subsequently, however, the two new frustules slip out of the hoop, which then becomes completely detached. The same thing happens with many other Diatoms, so that the 'hoops' are to be found in large numbers in the settlings of water in which these plants have long been growing. But in some other cases all trace of the hoop is lost; so that it may be questioned whether it has ever been properly silicified, and whether it does not become fused (as it were) into the gelatinous envelope.—During the healthy life of the Diatom, the process of self-division is continually being repeated; and a very rapid multiplication of frustules thus takes place, all of which (as in the cases already cited, §§ 229, 271), must be considered to be repetitions of one and the same individual form. Hence it may happen that myriads of frustules may be found in one locality, uniformly distinguished by some peculiarity of form, size, or marking; which may yet have had the same remote origin as another collection of frustules found in some different locality, and alike distinguished by some peculiarity of its own. For there is strong reason to believe that such differences spring-up among the progeny of any true *generative* act (§ 229); and that when that progeny is dispersed by currents into different localities, each will continue to multiply its own special type so long as the process of self-division goes on.

279. It is uncertain whether the Diatomaceæ also multiply by the breaking-up of their endochrome into segments, and by the liberation of these, either in the active condition of 'zoöspores,' or in the state of 'still' or 'resting' spores. Certain observations by

Focke,* however, taken in connection with the analogy of other Protophytes, and with the fact that the zygospore-frustules almost certainly thus multiply by gonidia (§ 280), seem to justify the conclusion that such a method of multiplication does obtain in this group. And it is not at all unlikely that very considerable differences in the size, form, and markings of the frustules, such as many consider sufficient to establish a diversity of species, have their origin in this mode of propagation. It seems probable that, so long as the vegetating processes are in full activity, multiplication takes place in preference by self-division; and that it is when deficiency of warmth, of moisture, or of some other condition, gives a check to these, that the formation of encysted 'gonidia,' having a greater power of resisting unfavourable influences, will take-place; whereby the species is maintained in a dormant state until the external conditions favour a renewal of active vegetation (§ 234).

280. Conjugation, so far as is at present known, takes place among

FIG. 168.



Conjugation of *Epithemia turgida*:—A, front view of single frustule; B, side view of the same; C, two frustules with their concave surfaces in close apposition; D, front view of one of the frustules, showing the separation of its valves along the suture; E, F, side and front views after the formation of the zygospores.

the ordinary Diatomaceæ almost exactly as among the Desmidiaceæ; except that it sometimes results in the production of two

* "Physiologisch. Studien," Heft ii., 1853.

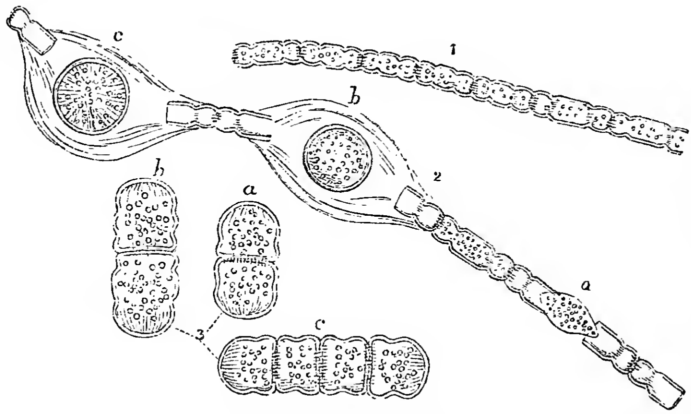
'zygospores,' instead of a single one. Thus in *Surirella* (Fig. 175), the valves of two free and adjacent frustules separate from each other at the sutures, and the two endochromes (probably included in their primordial utricles) are discharged; these coalesce to form a single mass, which becomes enclosed in a gelatinous envelope; and in due time this 'zygospore' shapes itself into a frustule resembling that of its parent, but of larger size. But in *Epithemia* (Fig. 168, A, B)—the first Diatom in which the conjugating process was observed by Mr. Thwaites*—the endochrome of each of the conjugating frustules (C, D) appears to divide at the time of its discharge into two halves; each half coalesces with half of the other endochrome; and thus *two* 'zygospores' (E, F) are formed, which, as in the preceding case, become invested with a gelatinous envelope, and gradually assume the form and markings of the parent-frustules, but grow to a very much larger size, the sporangial masses having obviously a power of self-increase up to the time when their envelopes are consolidated. It seems to be in this way that the normal size is recovered, after the progressive diminution which is incident to repeated binary multiplication (§ 278). Of the subsequent history of the 'zygospores,' much remains to be learned; and it may not be the same in all cases. Appearances have been seen which make it almost certain that the contents of each zygospore break-up into a brood of *gonidia*, and that it is from these that the new generation originates. These gonidia, if each be surrounded (as in many other cases) by a distinct cyst, may remain undeveloped for a considerable period; and they must augment considerably in size before they obtain the dimensions of the parent frustule.—It is in this stage of the process that the modifying influence of external agencies is most likely to exert its effects; and it may be easily conceived that (as in higher Plants and Animals) this influence may give rise to various diversities among the respective individuals of the same brood; which diversities, as we have seen, will be transmitted to all the repetitions of each that are produced by the self-dividing process. Hence a very considerable latitude is to be allowed to the limits of Species, when the different forms of Diatomaceæ are compared; and here, as in many other cases, a most important question arises as to what *are* those limits—a question which can only be answered by such a careful study of the entire life-history of every single type, as may advantageously occupy the attention of many a Microscopist who is at present devoting himself to the resolution of the markings on Diatom-valves, and to the multiplication of reputed species by the detection of minute differences.†

* See "Annals of Natural History," Ser. 1, Vol. xx. (1847), pp. 9, 343; and Ser. 2, Vol. i. (1848), p. 161.

† See on this subject a valuable Paper by Prof. W. Smith 'On the Determination of Species in the *Diatomaceæ*,' in the "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. iii. (1855), p. 130; a Memoir by Prof. W Gregory 'On Shape of Outline as a specific character of *Diatomaceæ*,' in "Trans. of Microsc. Soc.," 2nd Series,

281. This formation of what are termed 'auxospores'—as serving to augment the size of the cells which are to give origin to a new generation—takes place on a very different plan in some of those filamentous types, such as *Melosira* (Figs. 177, 178), in which a

FIG. 169.



Self-Conjugation (?) of *Melosira Italica* (*Aulacoseira crenalata*, Thwaites):—1, simple filament; 2, filament developing auxospores; *a*, *b*, *c*, successive stages in the formation of auxospores; 3, auxospore-frustules, in successive stages, *a*, *b*, *c*, of multiplication.

strange inequality presents itself in the diameters of the different cells of the same filaments, the larger ones being usually in various stages of binary subdivision, by which they multiply themselves longitudinally. According to the observations of Mr. Thwaites (*loc. cit.*), these also are the products of a kind of conjugation between the adjacent cells of the ordinary diameter; taking place before the completion of their separation. He describes the endochrome of particular frustules, after separating as if for the formation of a pair of new cells, as moving back from the extremities towards the centre, rapidly increasing in quantity, and aggregating into a zygospore (Fig. 169, 2, *a*, *b*, *c*): around this a new envelope is developed, which may or may not resemble that of the ordinary frustules, but which remains in continuity with them; and this zygospore soon undergoes binary sub-division (3, *a*, *b*, *c*), the cells of the new series thus developed presenting the character of those of the original filament (1), but greatly exceeding them in size. From what has been already stated (§ 278), it seems probable that a gradual reversion to the smaller form takes place in subsequent subdivisions; a further reduction being checked by a new formation of zygospores. Whether this formation partakes of the character of 'conjugation' (as supposed by Mr. Thwaites) is still doubtful;

Vol. iii. (1855), p. 10; and the Author's Presidential Address in the same volume, pp. 44–50.

some later observers regarding 'auxospores' as simply enlarged forms of single cells.

282. Most of the Diatoms which are not fixed by a stipes, possess some power of spontaneous movement; and this is especially seen in those whose frustules are of a long narrow form, such as that of the *Naviculæ* generally. The motion is of a peculiar kind, being usually a series of jerks, which carry forward the frustule in the direction of its length, and then carry it back through nearly the same path. Sometimes, however, the motion is smooth and equable; and this is especially the case with the curious *Bacillaria paradoxa* (Fig. 171), whose frustules slide over each other in one direction until they are all but detached, and then slide as far in the opposite direction, repeating this alternate movement at very regular intervals.* In either case the motion is obviously quite of a different nature from that of beings possessed of a power of self-direction. "An obstacle in the path," says Prof. W. Smith, "is not avoided, but pushed-aside; or, if it be sufficient to avert the onward course of the frustule, the latter is detained for a time equal to that which it would have occupied in its forward progression, and then retires from the impediment as if it had accomplished its full course." The character of the movement is obviously similar to that of those motile forms of Protophyta which have been already described; but it has not yet been definitely traced to any organ of impulsion; and the cause of it is still obscure. By Prof. W. Smith it is referred to forces operating within the frustule, and originating in the vital operations of growth, &c., which may cause the surrounding fluid to be drawn-in through one set of apertures, and expelled through the other.† "If," as he remarks, "the motion be produced by the exosmose taking-place alternatively at one and the other extremity, while endosmose is proceeding at the other, an alternating movement would be the result in frustules of a linear form; whilst in others of an elliptical or orbicular outline, in which foramina exist along the entire line of suture, the movements, if any, must be irregular or slowly lateral. Such is precisely the case. The backward and forward movements of the *Naviculæ* have been already described; in *Surirella* (Fig. 175) and *Campylodiscus* (Fig. 176), the motion never proceeds further than a languid roll from one side to the other; and in *Gomphonema* (Fig. 187), in which a foramen fulfilling the nutritive office is found at the larger extremity only, the movement (which is only seen when the frustule

* This curious phenomenon the Author has himself repeatedly had the opportunity of witnessing.

† It has been objected to this view, by the Authors of the "Micrographic Dictionary," that, if such were the case, the like movements would be frequently met with in other minute unicellular organisms. But there are no other such organisms in which the cell is almost entirely enclosed in an impermeable envelope, so that the imbibition and expulsion of fluid are limited to a small number of definite points, instead of being allowed to take place equally (as in other unicellular organisms) over the entire surface.—See Mereschkowski in "Journ. Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Ser 2, Vol. i. (1881), p. 102.

is separated from its stipes) is a hardly perceptible advance in intermitted jerks in the direction of the narrow end."

283. The principles upon which this interesting group should be classified, cannot be properly determined, until the history of the Generative process—of which nothing whatever is yet known in a large proportion of Diatoms, and very little in any of them—shall have been thoroughly followed-out. The observations of Focke* render it highly probable that many of the forms at present considered as distinct from each other, would prove to be but different states of the same, if their *whole* history were ascertained. On the other hand, it is by no means impossible that some which appear to be nearly related in the structure of their frustules and in their mode of growth, may prove to have quite different modes of reproduction. At present, therefore, *any* classification must be merely provisional; and in the notice now to be taken of some of the most interesting forms of the *Diatomaceæ*, the method of Prof. Kützing, which is based upon the characters of the individual frustules, is followed in preference to that of Prof. W. Smith, which was founded on the degree of connection remaining between the several frustules after self-division.†—In each Family the frustules may exist under four conditions, (*a*) free, the self-division being entire, so that the frustules separate as soon as the process has been completed; (*b*) stipitate, the frustules being implanted upon a common stem (Fig. 172), which keeps them in mutual connection after they have themselves undergone a complete self-division; (*c*) united in a filament, which will be continuous (Fig. 177) if the cohesion extend to the entire surfaces of the sides of the frustules, but may be a mere zigzag chain (Fig. 173) if the cohesion be limited to their angles; (*d*) aggregated into a frond (Fig. 188), which consists of numerous frustules more or less regularly enclosed in a gelatinous investment. It is not in every family, however, that these four conditions are at present known to exist; but they have been noticed in so many, that they may be fairly presumed to be capable of occurring in all.—Excluding the family *Actinisceæ* (of whose silicified skeletons we have examples in Fig. 191, *c*, *d*), which seem to have no adequate title to rank among Diatoms (their true alliance being apparently with the *Polycystina*), the entire group may be divided into two principal Sections; one (B) containing those

* According to this observer ("Ann. of Nat. Hist.," 2nd Ser., Vol. xv., 1855, p. 237) *Navicula bifrons* forms, by the spontaneous fission of its internal substance, spherical bodies which, like gemmules, give rise to *Surirella microcora*. These by conjugation produce *N. splendida*, which gives rise to *N. bifrons* by the same process. He is only able to speak positively, however, as to the production of *N. bifrons* from *N. splendida*; that of *Surirella microcora* from *N. bifrons*, and that of *N. splendida* from *Surirella microcora*, being matters of inference from the phenomena witnessed by him.

† The method of Kützing is the one followed, with some modification, by Mr. Ralfs in his revision of the group for the 4th Edition of Pritchard's "Infusoria:" and to his systematic arrangement the Author would refer such as desire more detailed information.

forms in which the valves possess a true central nodule and median longitudinal line (as *Pleurosigma*, Fig. 165, and *Gomphonema*, Fig. 186, A); and the other (A) including all those in which the valves are destitute of a central nodule (as *Surirella*, Fig. 175, A). Among the latter, however, we find some (*b*) in which there is an umbilicus or pseudo-nodule with radiating lines or cellules, whilst there are others (*a*) which have no central marking whatever.

284. Commencing with the last-named division (A), the first Family is that of *Eunotieæ*, of which we have already seen a characteristic example in *Epithemia turgida* (Fig. 168). The essential characters of this family consist in the more or less lunate form of the frustules in the lateral view (Fig. 168, B), and in the striæ being continuous across the valves without any interruption by a longitudinal line. In the genus *Eunotia* the frustules are free; in *Epithemia* they are very commonly adherent by the flat or concave surface of the connecting zone; and in *Himantidium* they are usually united into ribbon-like filaments.—In the Family *Meridieæ* we find a similar union of the transversely-striated individual frustules; but these are narrower at one end than at the other, so as to have a cuneate or wedge-like form; and are regularly disposed with their corresponding extremities always pointing in the same direction, so that the filament is curved instead of straight, as in the beautiful *Meridion circulare* (Fig. 170). Although this plant, when gathered and placed under the microscope, presents the appearance of circles overlying one another,

FIG. 170.

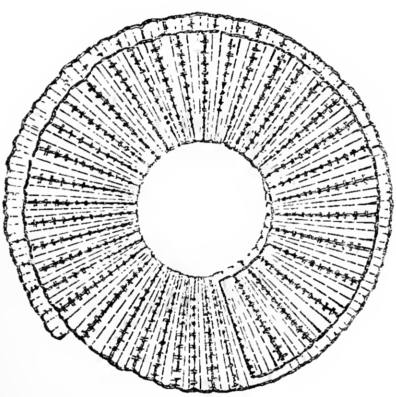


FIG. 171.

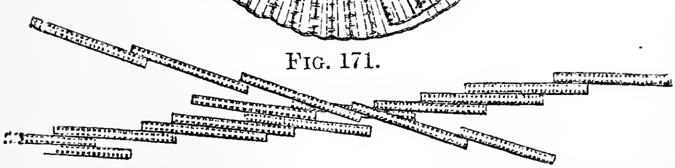
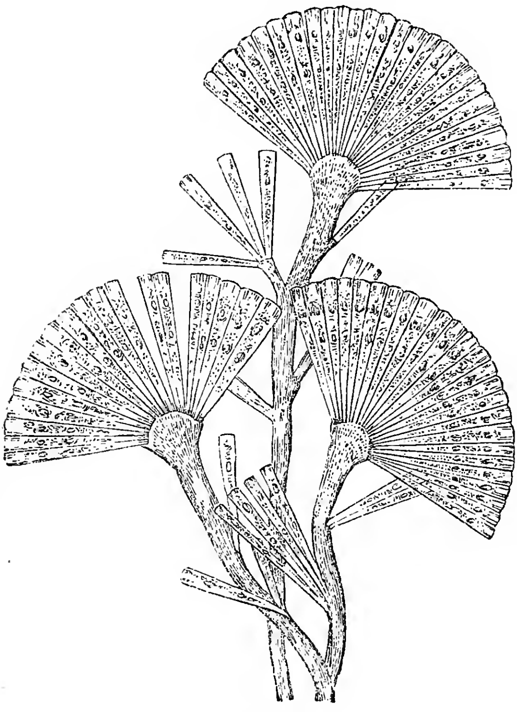


FIG. 170.—*Meridion circulare*. FIG. 171.—*Bacillaria paradoxa*.

it really grows in a helical (screw-like) form, making several continuous turns. This Diatom abounds in many localities in this

country; but there is none in which it presents itself in such rich luxuriance as in the mountain-brooks about West Point in the United States, the bottoms of which, according to Prof. Bailey, "are literally covered in the first warm days of spring with a ferruginous-coloured mucous matter, about a quarter of an inch thick, which, on examination by the microscope, proves to be filled with millions and millions of these exquisitely-beautiful siliceous bodies. Every submerged stone, twig, and spear of grass is enveloped by them; and the waving plume-like appearance of a filamentous body covered in this way is often very elegant." The frustules of *Meridion* are attached when young to a gelatinous cushion; but this disappears with the advance of age.—In the Family *Licmophoreæ* also the frustules are wedge-shaped; in some genera they have transverse markings, whilst in others these are deficient; but in most instances there are to be observed two longitudinal suture-like lines on each valve (which have received the special designation of *vittæ*) connecting the puncta at their two extremities. The newly-formed part of the stipes in the genus *Licmophora*, instead of itself becoming double with each act of self-division of the frustule, increases in breadth, while the frustules themselves remain coherent; so that a beautiful fan-like arrangement is produced (Fig. 172). A splitting-away of a few frustules seems occasionally to take place, from one side or the other, before the elongation of the stipes; so that the entire plant presents us with a more or less complete *flabella* or fan upon the summit of the branches, with imperfect flabellæ or single frustules irregularly scattered throughout the entire length of the footstalk. This beautiful plant is marine, and is parasitic upon Seaweeds and Zoophytes.

Fig. 172.



Licmophora flabellata.

285. In the next Family, that of *Fragillarieæ*, the frustules are of the same breadth at each end, so that, if they unite into a fila-

ment, they form a straight band. In some genera they are smooth, in others transversely striated, with a central nodule; when striæ are present, they run across the valves without interruption.—To this family belongs the genus *Diatoma*, which gives its name to the entire group; that name (which means cutting through) being suggested by the curious habit of the genus, in which the frustules after self-division separate from each other along their lines of junction, but remain connected at their angles, so as to form zigzag chains (Fig. 173). The valves of *Diatoma*, when turned sideways (*a*), are seen to be strongly marked by transverse striæ, which extend into the front view. The proportion between the length and the breadth of each valve is found to vary so considerably, that, if the extreme forms only were compared, there would seem adequate ground for regarding them as belonging to different species. The genus inhabits fresh water, preferring gently-running streams, in which it is sometimes very abundant.—The genus *Fragillaria* is nearly allied to *Diatoma*, the difference between them consisting chiefly in the mode of adhesion of the frustules, which in Fragillaria form long straight filaments with parallel sides: the filaments, however, as the name of the genus implies, very readily break-up into their component frustules, often separating at the slightest touch. Its various species are very common in pools and ditches.—This family is connected with the next by the genus *Nitzschia*, which is a somewhat aberrant form distinguished by the presence of a prominent keel on each valve, dividing it into two portions which are usually unequal, while the entire valve is sometimes curved, as in *N. sigmoidea*, which is sometimes used as a Test-object, but is not suitable for that purpose on account of the extreme variability of its striation.—Nearly allied to this is

Fig. 173. Fig. 174.

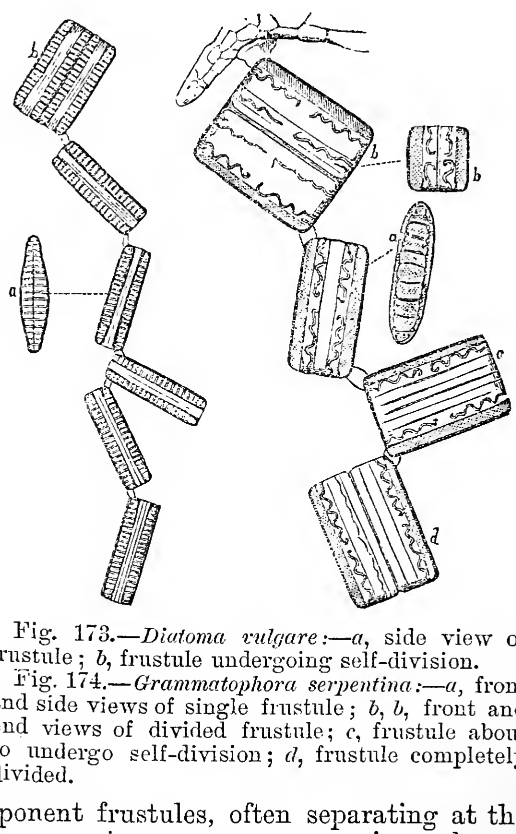


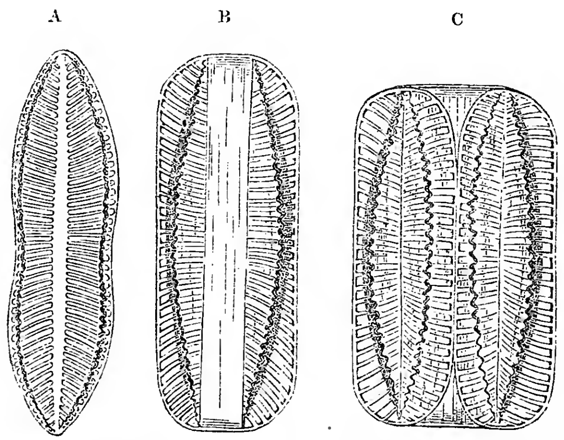
Fig. 173.—*Diatoma vulgare*:—*a*, side view of frustule; *b*, frustule undergoing self-division.

Fig. 174.—*Grammatophora serpentina*:—*a*, front and side views of single frustule; *b*, *b*, front and end views of divided frustule; *c*, frustule about to undergo self-division; *d*, frustule completely divided.

the genus *Bacillaria*, so named from the elongated staff-like form of its frustules; its valves have a longitudinal punctated keel, and their transverse striæ are interrupted in the median line. The principal species of this genus is the *B. paradoxa*, whose remarkable movement has been already described (§ 282). Owing to this displacement of the frustules, its filaments seldom present themselves with straight parallel sides, but nearly always in forms more or less oblique, such as those represented in Fig. 171. This curious object is an inhabitant of salt or of brackish water. Many of the species formerly ranked under this genus are now referred to the genus *Diatoma*. The Genera *Nitzschia* and *Bacillaria* are now associated by Mr. Ralfs,* with some other genera which agree with them in the bacillar or staff-like form of the frustules and in the presence of a longitudinal keel, in the Sub-family *Nitzschieæ*, which ranks as a section of the *Surirelleæ*.—Another Sub-family, *Synedreæ*, consists of the genus *Synedra* and its allies, in which the bacillar form is retained (Fig. 192, *l*), but the keel is wanting, and the valves are but little broader than the front of the frustule.

286. In the *Surirelleæ* proper, the frustules are no longer bacillar, and the breadth of the valves is usually (though not always) greater

FIG. 175.



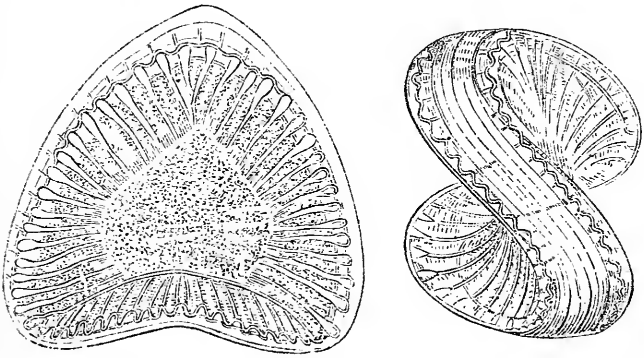
Surirella constricta:—A, side view; B, front view; C, binary subdivision.

than the front view. The distinctive character of the genus *Surirella*, in addition to the presence of the supposed 'canaliculi' (§ 275), is derived from the longitudinal line down the centre of each valve (A), and the prolongation of the margins into 'alæ.' Numerous species are known, which are mostly of a somewhat ovate form, some being broader and others narrower than *S. constricta*;

* See Pritchard's "Infusoria," 4th Ed. p. 940. The genus *Nitzschia* was in the first instance placed by Mr. Ralfs in the family *Fragillarieæ*, and the genus *Bacillaria* in the family *Surirelleæ*.

the greater part of them are inhabitants of fresh or brackish water, though some few are marine; and several occur in those Infusorial earths which seem to have been deposited at the bottoms of lakes, such as that of the Mourne mountains in Ireland (Fig. 192, *b*, *c*, *k*). —In the genus *Campylodiscus* (Fig. 176) the valves are so greatly increased in breadth as to present almost the form of disks (A), and at the same time have more or less of a peculiar twist or saddle-

A FIG. 176. B



Campylodiscus costatus:—A, front view; B, side view.

shaped curvature (B). It is in this genus that the supposed 'canaliculi' are most developed, and it is consequently here that they may be best studied; and of their being here really *costæ* or internally projecting ribs, no reasonable doubt can remain after examination of them under the Binocular microscope, especially with the 'black-ground' illumination. The form of the valves in most of the species is circular or nearly so; some are nearly flat, whilst in others the twist is greater than in the species here represented. Some of the species are marine, whilst others occur in fresh water; a very beautiful form, the *C. clypeus*, exists in such abundance in the Infusorial stratum discovered by Prof. Ehrenberg at Soos near Ezer in Bohemia, that the earth seems almost entirely composed of it.

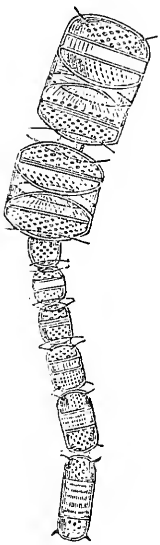
287. The next Family, *Striatelleæ*, forms a very distinct group, differentiated from every other by having longitudinal costæ on the connecting portions of the frustules; these costæ being formed by the inward projection of annular siliceous plates (which do not, however, reach to the centre), so as to form septa dividing the cavity of the cell into imperfectly-separated chambers. In some instances these annular septa are only formed during the production of the valves in the act of self-division, and on each repetition of such production, being thus always *definite* in number; whilst in other cases the formation of the septa is continued after the production of the valves, and is repeated an uncertain number of times before the recurrence of a new valve-production, so that the

annuli are *indefinite* in number. In the curious *Grammatophora serpentina* (Fig. 174) the septa have several undulations and incurved ends, so as to form serpentine curves, the number of which seems to vary with the length of the frustule. The lateral surfaces of the valves in *Grammatophora* are very finely striated: and some species, as *G. subtilissima* and *G. marina* are used as Test-objects (§ 161). The frustules in most of the genera of this family separate into zigzag chains, as in Diatoma; but in a few instances they cohere into a filament, and still more rarely they are furnished with a stipes.—The small Family *Terpsinöeæ* is separated by Mr. Ralfs from the Striatelleæ, with which it is nearly allied in general characters, because its septa (which in the latter are longitudinal and divide the central portions into chambers) are transverse and are confined to the lateral portions of the frustules, which appear in the front view as in *Biddulphieæ* (§ 292). The typical form of this family is the *Terpsinöe musica*, so named from the resemblance which the markings of its costæ bear to musical notes.

288. We next come to two Families in which the lateral surfaces of the frustules are *circular;* so that, according to the flatness or convexity of the valves and the breadth of the intervening hooped band, the frustules may have the form either of thin disks, short cylinders, bi-convex lenses, oblate spheroids, or even of spheres. Looking at the structure of the individual frustules, the line of demarcation between these two families, *Melosireæ* and *Coscinodisceæ*, is by no means distinct; the principal difference between them being that the valves of the latter are commonly cellulated, whilst those of the former are smooth. Another important difference, however, lies in this, that the frustules of the *Coscinodisceæ* are always free, whilst those of the *Melosireæ* remain coherent into filaments, which often so strongly resemble those of the simple *Confervaceæ* as to be readily distinguishable only by the effect of heat. Of these last the most important Genus is *Melosira* (Figs. 177, 178). Some of its species are marine, others fresh-water; one of the latter, the *M. ochracea*, seems to grow best in boggy pools containing a ferruginous impregnation; and it is stated by Prof. Ehrenberg to take up from the water, and to incorporate with its own substance, a considerable quantity of iron. The filaments of Melosira very commonly fall apart at the slightest touch: and in the Infusorial earths, in which some species abound, the frustules are always found detached (Fig. 192, *a a*, *d d*). The meaning of the remarkable difference in the sizes and forms of the frustules of the same filaments (Figs. 177, 178) has not yet been fully ascertained (§ 281). The sides of the valves are often marked with radiating striæ (Figs. 192, *d d*); and in some species they have toothed or serrated margins, by which the frustules lock-together. To this family belongs the genus *Hyalodiscus*, of which the *H. subtilis* was first brought into notice by the late Prof. Bailey as a Test-object, its disk being marked, like the

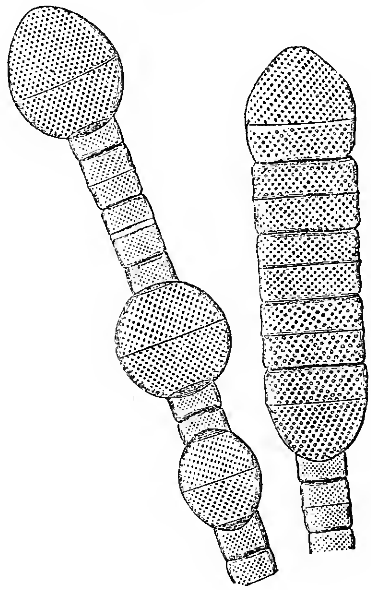
engine-turned back of a watch, with lines of exceeding delicacy, only visible by the highest magnifying powers and the most careful illumination.

Fig. 177.



Melosira subflexilis.

Fig. 178.

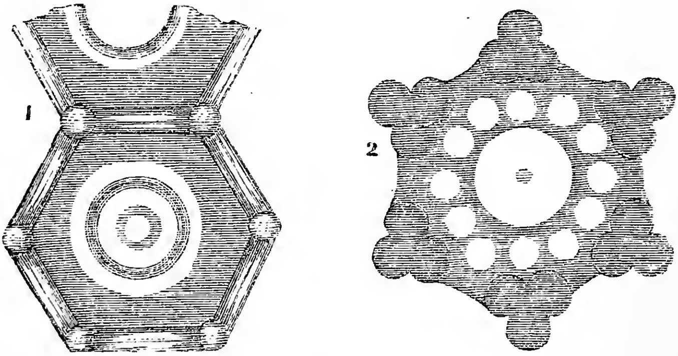


Melosira varians.

289. The family *Coscinodisceæ* includes a large proportion of the most beautiful of those discoidal Diatoms, of which the valves do not present any considerable convexity, and are connected by a narrow zone. The genus *Coscinodiscus*, which is easily distinguished from most of the genera of this family by not having its disk divided into compartments, is of great interest from the vast abundance of its valves in certain fossil deposits (Fig. 191, *a, a, a*), especially the Infusorial earth of Richmond in Virginia, of Bermuda, and of Oran, as also in Guano. Each frustule is of discoidal shape, being composed of two delicately undulating valves, united by a hoop; so that, if the frustules remain in adhesion, they would form a filament resembling that of Melosira (Fig. 178). The regularity of the hexagonal areolation shown by its valves renders them beautiful microscopic objects; in some species the areolæ are smallest near the centre, and gradually increase in size towards the margin; in others a few of the central areolæ are the largest, and the rest are of nearly uniform size; while in others, again, there are radiating lines formed by areolæ of a size different from the rest. Most of the species are either marine, or are inhabitants of brackish water; when living they are most commonly found adherent to Sea-weeds or Zoophytes; but when dead, the

valves fall as a sediment to the bottom of the water. In both these conditions, they were found by Prof J. Quekett in connection with Zoophytes which had been brought home from Melville Island by Sir E. Parry; and the species seemed to be identical with those of the Richmond earth.—The investigations of Mr. J. W. Stephenson,* on *Coscinodiscus oculus Iridis* show that the peculiar "eye-like" appearance in the centre of each of its hexagonal areolæ arises from the intermingling of the markings of two distinct layers, differing considerably in structure; the markings of the lower layer being partially seen through those of the upper. By fracturing these Diatoms, Mr. Stephenson has succeeded in separating portions of the two layers, so that each could be examined singly. He has also mounted them in bisulphide of carbon, the refractive power of which is very high; and also in a solution of phosphorus in bisulphide of carbon, which has a still higher refractive index. If we suppose a Diatom to be marked with *convex depressions*, they would act as concave lenses in air, which is less refractive than their own silex; but when such lenses are immersed in bisulphide of carbon, or in the phosphorus solution, they would be converted into *convex lenses* of the more refractive substance, and have their action in air reversed. Analogous but opposite changes must take place, when convex Diatom-lenses are viewed first in air, and then in the more refractive media. Applying these and other tests to *Coscinodiscus oculus Iridis*, Mr. Stephenson considers both layers to be composed of hexagons, represented in Fig. 179, from drawings by Mr. Stewart. The upper

FIG. 179



Structure of siliceous valve of *Coscinodiscus oculus Iridis*:—1. Hexagonal areola of inner or 'eye-spot' layer; 2. Areola of outer layer.

layer is much stronger and thicker than the lower one; and the framework of its hexagons more readily exhibits its beaded appearance. The lower layer is nearly transparent, and little conspicuous when seen in bisulphide of carbon, except, as shown in the figure, when the framework of the hexagons, and the rings in the midst of

* "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. x. (1873), p. 1.

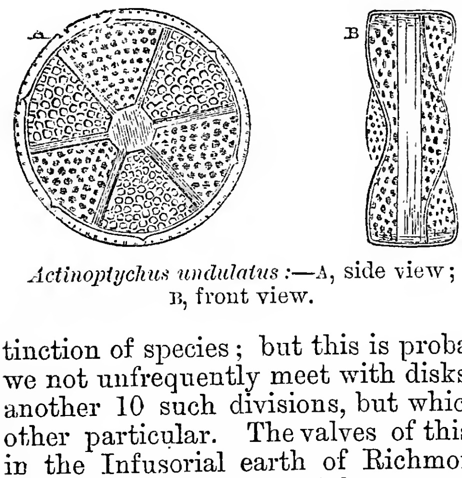
them, appear thickened and more refractive. In both layers the balance of observations tends to the belief that the hexagons have no floors, and are in fact perforated by foramina like those of minute Polycystina. The cells formed by the hexagons of the upper layer are of considerable depth; those of the lower layer are shallower. In both layers, fractured edges show the hexagon-frames to be the strongest parts; and in neither has Mr. Stephenson been able to detect any broken remnants of floors, which might be expected to be visible with high powers if they existed at all.—If further observations should confirm Mr. Stephenson's belief that *Coscinodisci* are perforated by numerous foramina, a similar structure will be sought-for in other Diatoms, and the views of naturalists as to the character of the group may be materially modified. At present the chief difference in minute structure that has been recognised, may be seen by comparing the apparently simple beading of *Pleurosigma* with the hexagonal formations in *Coscinodiscus*, &c.; but a far more important divergence will have to be considered, if some Diatom-valves have a multiplicity of foramina, and others either none, or only a few at certain spots. It is very desirable that living forms of *Coscinodisci* should be carefully examined; since, if they really have foramina, some minute organs may be protruded through them.

290. The genus *Actinocyclus** closely resembles the preceding in form, but differs in the markings of its valvular disks, which are minutely and densely punctated or cellulated, and are divided radially by single or double dotted lines, which, however, are not continuous but interrupted (Plate I., Fig. 1). The disks are generally iridescent; and, when mounted in balsam, they present various shades of brown, green, blue, purple, and red: blue or purple, however, being the most frequent. An immense number of species have been erected by Prof. Ehrenberg on minute differences presented by the rays as to number and distribution; but since scarcely two specimens can be found in which there is a perfect identity as to these particulars, it is evident that such minute differences between organisms otherwise similar are not of sufficient account to serve for the separation of species. This form is very common in guano from Ichaboe.—Allied to the preceding are the two genera *Asterolampra* and *Asteromphalus*, both of which have circular disks of which the marginal portion is minutely areolated, whilst the central area is smooth and perfectly hyaline in appearance, but is divided by lines into radial compartments which extend from the central umbilicus towards the periphery. The difference between them simply consists in this; that in *Asterolampra* all the compartments are similar and equidistant, and the rays equal (Plate I., Fig. 2); whilst in *Asteromphalus* two

* The Author concurs with Mr. Ralfs in thinking it preferable to limit the genus *Actinocyclus* to the forms originally included in it by Ehrenberg, and to restore the genus *Actinoptychus* of Ehrenberg, which had been improperly united with *Actinocyclus* by Profs. Kützing and W. Smith.

of the compartments are closer together than the rest, and the enclosed hyaline ray (which is distinguished as the median or basal ray) differs in form from the others, and is sometimes specially continuous with the umbilicus (Plate I., Fig. 4). The eccentricity thus produced in the other rays has been made the basis of another generic designation, *Spatangidium;* but it may be doubted whether this is founded on a valid distinction.* These beautiful disks are for the most part obtainable from guano, and from soundings in tropical and antarctic seas.—From these we pass on, to the genus *Actinoptychus* (Fig. 180), of which also the frustules are discoidal in form, but of which each valve, instead of being flat, has an undulating surface, as is seen in front view (B); giving to the side view (A) the appearance of being marked by radiating bands. Owing to this peculiarity of shape, the whole surface cannot be brought into focus at once except with a low power; and the difference of aspect which the different radial divisions present in Fig. 180, is simply due to the fact that one set is out of focus whilst the other is in it, since the appearances are reversed by merely altering the focal adjustment. The *number* of radial divisions has been considered a character of sufficient importance to serve for the distinction of species; but this is probably subject to variation; since we not unfrequently meet with disks, of which one has (say) 8 and another 10 such divisions, but which are precisely alike in every other particular. The valves of this genus also are very abundant in the Infusorial earth of Richmond, Bermuda, and Oran (Fig. 191, *b, b, b*); and many of the same species have been found recently in guano, and in the seas of various parts of the world. The frustules in their living state appear to be generally attached to Seaweeds or Zoophytes.

FIG. 180.

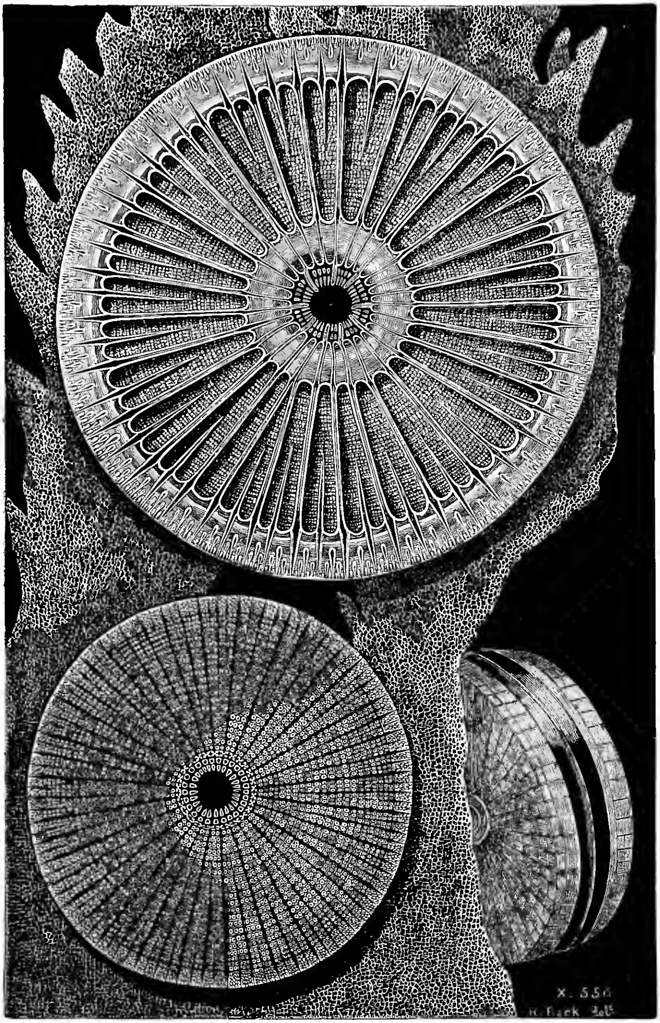


Actinoptychus undulatus:—A, side view; B, front view.

291. The Bermuda earth also contains the very beautiful form (Plate I., fig. 3), which, though scarcely separable from Actinoptychus except by its marginal spines, has received from Prof. Ehrenberg the distinctive appellation of *Heliopelta* (sun-shield). The object is represented as seen on its *internal* aspect by the Parabolic Illuminator (§ 105), which brings into view certain features that can scarcely be seen by ordinary transmitted light. Five of the radial divisions are seen to be marked-out into circular areolæ; but in the five which alternate with them, a minute beaded

* See Greville in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. vii. (1859), p. 158, and in "Transact. of Microsc. Soc.," Vol. viii. N.S. (1860), p. 102, and Vol. x. (1862), p. 41; also Wallich in the same Transactions, Vol. viii. (1860), p. 44.

PLATE XI.



ARACHNOIDISCUS JAPONICUS.

To face p. 351.

structure is observable. This may be shown by careful adjustment of the focus to exist over the whole interior of the valve, even on the divisions in which the circular areolation is here displayed; and it hence appears that this marking belongs to the *internal* layer* (§ 289), and that the circular areolation exists in the *outer* layer of the silicified lorica. In the alternating divisions whose surface is here displayed, the areolation of the outer layer, when brought into view by focussing down to it, is seen to be formed by equilateral triangles; it is not, however, nearly so well marked as the circular areolation of the first-mentioned divisions. The dark spots seen at the ends of the rays, like the dark centre, appear to be solid tubercles of silex not traversed by markings, as in many other Diatoms; most assuredly they are *not* orifices, as supposed by Prof. Ehrenberg. Of this type, again, specimens are found presenting 6, 8, 10, or 12 radial divisions, but in other respects exactly similar; on the other hand, two specimens agreeing in their number of divisions may exhibit minute differences of other kinds; in fact, it is rare to find two that are *precisely* alike. It seems probable, then, that we must allow a considerable latitude of variation in these forms, before attempting to separate any of them as distinct species.—Another very beautiful discoidal Diatom, which occurs in Guano, and is also found attached to Sea-weeds from different parts of the world (especially to a species employed by the Japanese in making soup), is the *Arachnoidiscus* (Plate XI.), so named from the resemblance which the beautiful markings on its disk cause it to bear to a Spider's web. According to Mr. Shadbolt,† who first carefully examined its structure, each valve consists of two layers; the outer one, a thin flexible horny membrane, indestructible by boiling in nitric acid; the inner one, siliceous. It is the former which has upon it the peculiar spider's web-like markings: whilst it is the latter that forms the supporting frame-work, which bears a very strong resemblance to that of a circular Gothic window. The two can occasionally be separated entire, by first boiling the disks for a considerable time in nitric acid, and then carefully washing them in distilled water. Even without such separation, however, the distinctness of the two layers can be made out by focussing for each separately under a 1-4th or 1-5th inch Objective; or by looking at a valve as an opaque object (either by the Parabolic Illuminator, or by the Lieberkühn, or by a side light) with a 4-10ths inch Objective, first from one side, and then from the other.‡—This family is connected with the succeeding by the small group of

* It is stated by Mr. Stodder ("Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. iii. N.S., 1863, p. 215), that not only has he seen, in broken specimens, the inner granulated plate projecting beyond the outer, but that he has found the inner plate altogether separated from the outer. The Author is indebted to this gentleman for pointing out that his Figure represents the *inner* surface of the valve.

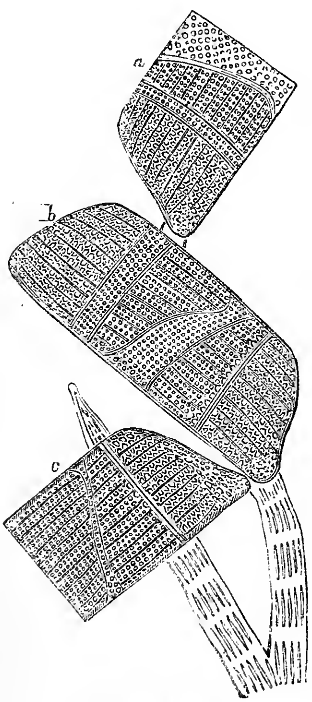
† "Transact. of Microsc. Society," First Series, Vol. iii., p. 49.

‡ These valves afford admirable objects for showing the 'conversion of relief' in Nachet's Stereo-Pseudoscopic Microscope (§ 58).

Eupodisceæ, the members of which agree with the *Coscinodisceæ* in the general character of their discoid frustules, and with the *Biddulphieæ* in having tubercular processes on their lateral surfaces. In the beautiful *Aulacodiscus* (Plate I., Fig. 5) these tubercles are situated near the margin, and are connected with bands radiating from the centre; the surface also is frequently inflated in a manner that reminds us of Actinoptychus. These forms are for the most part obtained from Guano.

292. The members of the next Family *Biddulphieæ* differ greatly in their general form from the preceding; being remarkable for the great development of the lateral valves, which, instead of being nearly flat or discoidal, so as only to present a thin edge in front view, are so convex or inflated as always to enter largely into the front view, causing the central zone to appear like a band between them. This band is very narrow when the new frustules are first produced by self-division (§ 278); but it increases gradually in breadth, until the new frustule is fully formed and is itself undergoing the same duplicative change. In *Biddulphia* (Fig. 167) the frustules have a quadrilateral form, and remain coherent by their alternate angles (which are elongated into toothlike projections), so as to form a zigzag chain. They are marked externally by ribbings which seem to be indicative of internal *costæ* partially subdividing the cavity. Nearly allied to this is the beautiful genus *Isthmia* (Fig. 181), in which the frustules have a trapezoidal form owing to the oblique prolongation of the valves; the lower angle of each frustule is coherent to the middle of the next one beneath, and from the basal frustule proceeds a stipes by which the filament is attached. Like the preceding, this genus is marine, and is found attached to the *Algæ* of our own shores. The areolated structure of its surface (Fig. 163) is very conspicuous both in the valves and in the connecting 'hoop;' and this hoop, being silicified, not only connects the two new frustules (as at *b*, Fig. 181), until they have separated from each other, but, after such separation, remains for a time round one of the frustules, so as to give it a truncated appearance (*a*, *c*).

FIG. 181.



Isthmia nervosa.

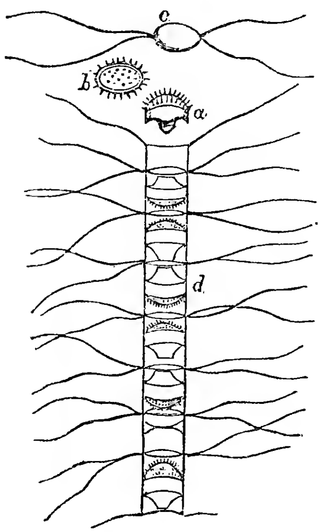
293. The Family *Anguliferæ*, distinguished by the angular form of its valves in their lateral aspect, is in many respects closely allied to the preceding; but in the comparative flattening of their

valves, its members more resemble the *Coscinodisceæ* and *Eupodisceæ*. Of this family we have a characteristic example in the genus *Triceratium*; of which striking form a considerable number of species are met with in the Bermuda and other Infusorial earths, while others are inhabitants of the existing ocean and of tidal rivers. The *T. favus* (Fig. 164), which is one of the largest and most regularly-marked of any of these, occurs in the mud of the Thames and in various other estuaries on our own coast; it has been found, also, on the surface of large sea-shells from various parts of the world, such as those of *Hippopus* and *Haliotis*, before they have been cleaned; and it presents itself likewise in the Infusorial earth of Petersburg (U.S.). The projections at the angles which are shown in that species, are prolonged in some other species into 'horns,' whilst in others, again, they are mere tubercular elevations. Although the *triangular* form of the frustule, when looked at sideways, is that which is characteristic of the genus, yet in some of the species there seems a tendency to produce *quadrangular* and even *pentagonal* forms; these being marked as *varieties* by their exact correspondence in sculpture, colour, &c., with the normal triangular forms.* This departure is extremely remarkable, since it breaks down what seems at first to be the most distinctive character of the genus; and its occurrence is an indication of the degree of latitude which we ought to allow in other cases. It is difficult, in fact, to distinguish the square forms of *Triceratium* from those included in the genus *Amphitetras*, which is chiefly characterized by the cubiform shape of its frustules. In the latter, the frustules cohere at their angles so as to form zigzag filaments, whilst in the former the frustules are usually free, though they have occasionally been found catenated.—Another group that seems allied to the *Biddulphieæ* is the curious assemblage of forms brought together in the Family *Chætocereæ*, some of the filamentous types of which seem also allied to the *Melosireæ*. The peculiar distinction of this group consists in the presence of tubular 'awns,' frequently proceeding from the connecting hoop, sometimes spinous and serrated, and often of great length (Fig. 182); by the interlacing of which the frustules are united into filaments, whose continuity, however, is easily broken. In the genus *Bacteriastrum* (Fig. 183) there are sometimes as many as twelve of these awns, radiating from each frustule like the spokes of a wheel, and in some instances regularly bifurcating. With this group is associated the genus *Rhizosolenia*, of which several species are distinguished by the extraordinary length of the frustule (which may be from 6 to 20 times its breadth), giving it the aspect of a filament (Fig. 184), by a transverse annulation that imparts to this filament a jointed appearance, and by the

* See Mr. Brightwell's excellent Memoirs 'On the genus *Triceratium*,' in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. i. (1853), p. 245, Vol. iv. (1856), p. 272, Vol. vi. (1858), p. 153; also Wallich in the same Journal, Vol. iv. (1858), p. 242; and Greville in "Transact. of Microsc. Soc.," N.S., Vol. ix. (1861), pp. 43, 69.

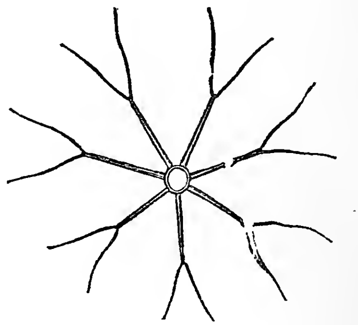
termination of the frustule at each end in a cone, from the apex of which a straight awn proceeds. It is not a little remarkable that the greater number of the examples of this curious family are

FIG. 182.



Chætoceros Wighamii:—a, front view, and *b*, side view of frustule; *c*, side view of connecting hoop and awns; *d*, entire filament.

FIG. 183.



Bacteriastrum furcatum.

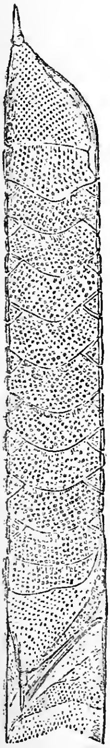
obtained from the stomachs of Ascidians, Salpæ, Holothuriæ, and other Marine animals.*

294. The second principal division (B) of the Diatomaceæ consists, it will be remembered, of those in which the frustules have a median longitudinal line and a central nodule. In the first of the Families which it includes, that of *Cocconeideæ*, the central nodule is obscure or altogether wanting on one of the valves, which is distinguished as the inferior. This family consists but of a single genus *Cocconeis*, which includes, however, a great number of species, some or other of them occurring in every part of the globe. Their form is usually that of ellipsoidal disks, with surfaces more or less exactly parallel, plane, or slightly curved; and they are very commonly found adherent to each other. The frustules in this genus are frequently invested by a membranous envelope which forms a border to them; but this seems to belong to the immature state, subsequently disappearing more or less completely.—Another Family in which there is a dissimilarity in the two lateral surfaces, is that of *Achnantheæ;* the frustules of which are remarkable for the bend they show in the direction of their length, often more conspicuously than in the example here

* See Brightwell in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. iv. (1856) p. 105; Vol. vi. (1858), p. 93; Wallich in "Trans. of Microsc. Soc.," N.S., Vol. viii. (1860), p. 48; and West in the same, p. 151.

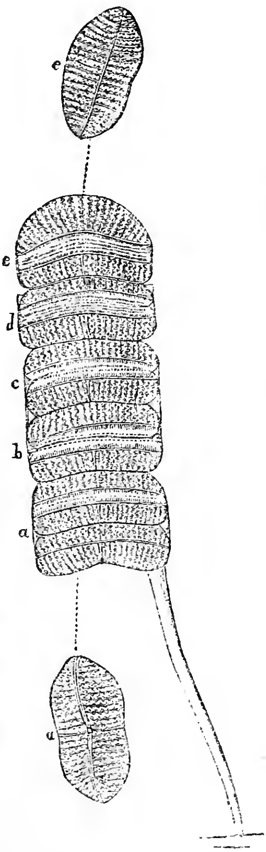
represented. This family contains free, adherent, and stipitate forms; one of the most common of the latter being the *Achnanthes*

FIG. 184.



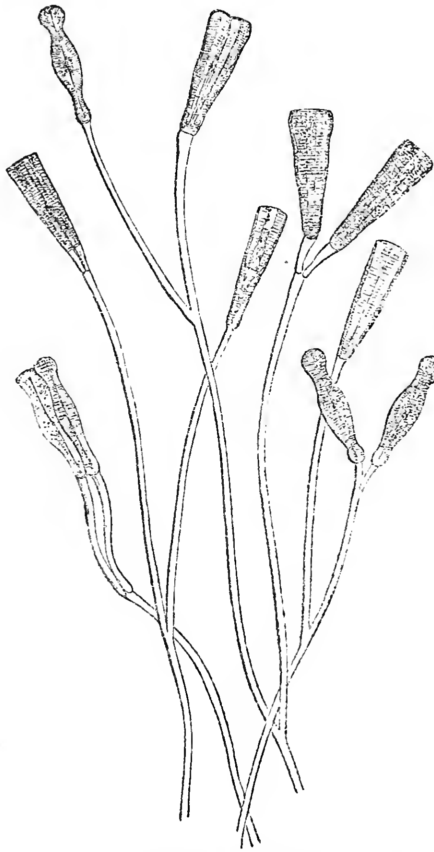
Rhizosolenia imbricata.

FIG. 185.



Achnanthes longipes:—*a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, successive frustules in different stages of self-division.

FIG. 186.



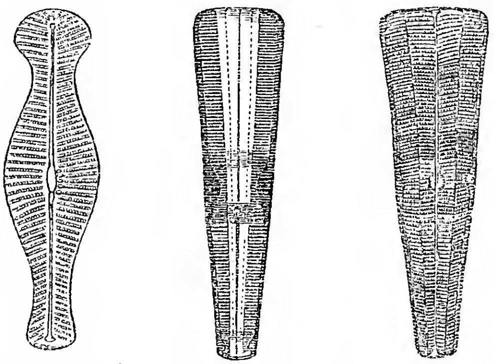
Gomphonema geminatum: its frustules connected by a dichotomous stipes.

longipes (Fig. 185), which is often found growing on Marine Algæ. The difference between the markings of the upper and lower valves is here distinctly seen; for while both are traversed by striæ, which are resolvable under a sufficient power into rows of dots, as well as by a longitudinal line which sometimes has a nodule at each end (as in Navicula), the lower valve (*a*) has also a transverse line, forming a *stauros* or cross, which is wanting in the upper valve (*e*). A persistence of the connecting membrane, so as to form an additional connection between the cells, may sometimes be observed in this genus; thus in Fig. 185, it not only holds together the two new frustules resulting from the subdivision of

the lowest cell, *a*, which are not yet completely separated the one from the other, but it may be observed to invest the two frustules *b* and *c*, which have not merely separated, but are themselves beginning to undergo binary subdivision; and it may also be perceived to invest the frustule *d*, from which the frustule *e*, being the terminal one, has more completely freed itself.—In the Family *Cymbelleæ*, on the other hand, both valves possess the longitudinal line with a nodule in the middle of its length; but the valves have the general form of those of the *Eunotieæ*, and the line is so much nearer one margin than the other, that the nodule is sometimes rather marginal than central, as we see in *Cocconema* (Fig. 192).—The *Gomphonemeæ*, like the *Meridieæ* and *Licmophoreæ*, have frustules which are cuneate or wedge-shaped in their front view (Figs. 186, 187), but are distinguished from those forms by the

Fig. 187.

A B C



Gomphonema geminatum, more highly magnified:—A, side view of frustule; B, front view; C, frustule in the act of self-division.

presence of the longitudinal line and central nodule. Although there are some free forms in this family, the greater part of them, included in the genus *Gomphonema*, have their frustules either affixed at their bases or attached to a stipes. This stipes seems to be formed by an exudation from the frustule, which is secreted only during the process of self-division: hence when this process has been completed, the extension of the single filament below the frustule ceases; but when it recommences, a sort of joint or articulation is formed, from which a new filament begins to sprout for each of the half-frustules; and when these separate, they carry apart the peduncles which support them, as far as their divergence can take place. It is in this manner that the dichotomous character is given to the entire stipes (Fig. 186). The species of Gomphonema are, with scarcely an exception, inhabitants of fresh water, and are among the commonest forms of Diatomaceæ.

295. Lastly, we come to the large Family *Naviculeæ*, the members of which are distinguished by the symmetry of their frustules

as well in the lateral as in the front view, and by the presence of a median longitudinal line and central nodule in both valves. In the genus *Navicula* and its allies, the frustules are free or simply adherent to each other; whilst in another large section they are included within a gelatinous envelope, or are enclosed in a definite tubular or gelatinous frond. Of the genus *Navicula* an immense number of species have been described, the grounds of separation being often extremely trivial. Those which have a lateral sigmoid curvature (Fig. 165) have been separated by Prof. W. Smith under the designation *Pleurosigma*, which is now generally adopted; but his separation of another set of species under the name *Pinnularia* (which had been previously applied by Ehrenberg to designate the striated species), on the ground that its striæ (costæ) are not resolvable into dots, was not considered valid by Mr. Ralfs, on the ground that in many of the more minute species it is impossible to distinguish with certainty between striæ and costæ. Mr. Slack has since given an account of the resolution of the so-called costæ of twelve species of *Pinnulariæ* into beaded structures.* The beautiful genus *Stauroneis*, which belongs to the same group, differs from all the preceding forms in having the central nodule of each valve dilated laterally into a band free from striæ, which forms a cross with the longitudinal band.

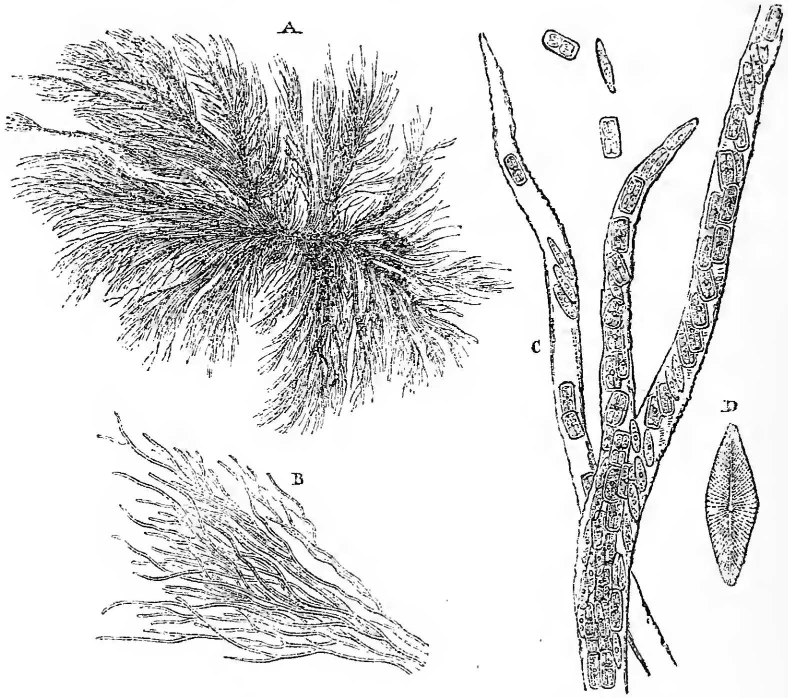
296. The multitudinous species of the genus *Navicula* are for the most part inhabitants of fresh water; and they constitute a large part of most of the so-called 'infusorial earths' which were deposited at the bottoms of lakes. Among the most remarkable of such deposits are the substances largely used in the arts for the polishing of metals, under the names of Tripoli and rotten-stone; these consist in great part of the frustules of Naviculæ and Pinnulariæ. The Polierschiefer or 'polishing slate' of Bilin in Bohemia, the powder of which is largely used in Germany for the same purpose, and which also furnishes the fine sand used for the most delicate castings in iron, occurs in a series of beds averaging fourteen feet in thickness; and these present appearances which indicate that they have been at some time exposed to a high temperature. The well-known 'Turkey stone,' so generally employed for the sharpening of edge-tools, seems to be essentially composed of a similar aggregation of frustules of Naviculæ, &c., which has been consolidated by heat.—The species of *Pleurosigma*, on the other hand, are for the most part either marine or are inhabitants of brackish water; and they comparatively seldom present themselves in a fossilized state. Of *Stauroneis*, some species inhabit fresh-water, while others are marine; and the former present themselves frequently in certain 'infusorial earths.'

297. Of the members of the Sub-family *Schizonemeæ*, consisting of those *Naviculeæ* in which the frustules are united by a gelatinous envelope, some are remarkable for the great external resemblance they bear to acknowledged Algæ. This is especially the

* "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. vi. (1871), p. 71.

case with the genus *Schizonema;* in which the gelatinous envelope forms a regular tubular frond, more or less branched, and

FIG. 188.



Schizonema Grevillii:—A, natural size; B, portion magnified five diameters; C, filament magnified 100 diameters; D, single frustule.

of nearly equal diameter throughout, within which the frustules lie either in single file or without any definite arrangement (Fig. 188); all these frustules having arisen from the self-division of one individual. In the genus *Mastogloia*, which is specially distinguished by having the annulus furnished with internal costæ projecting into the cavity of the frustule, each frustule is separately supported on a gelatinous cushion (Fig. 189, B), which may itself be either borne on a branching stipes (A), or may be aggregated with others into an indefinite mass (Fig. 190).—The careful study of these composite forms is a matter of great importance; since it enables us to bring into comparison with each other great numbers of frustules which have unquestionably a common descent, and which must therefore be accounted as of the same species; and thus to obtain an idea of the *range of variation* prevailing in this group, without a knowledge of which specific definition is altogether unsafe. Of the very strongly marked varieties which may occur within the limits of a single

species, we have an example in the valves C, D, E, F (Fig. 189), which would scarcely have been supposed to belong to the same

FIG. 189.

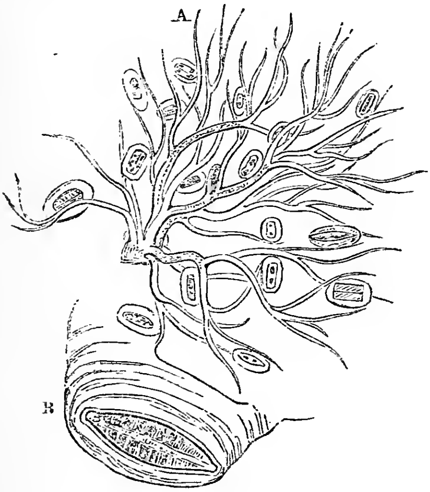
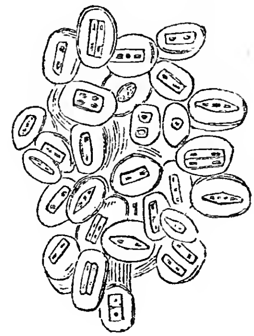


FIG. 190.



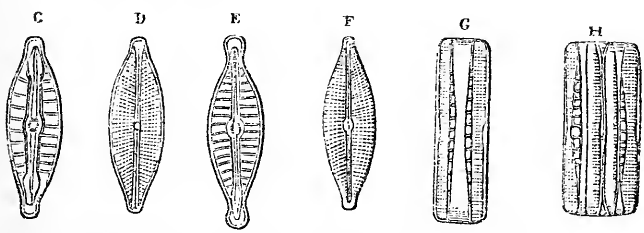


Fig. 189. *Mastogloia Smithii*:—A, entire stipes; B, frustule in its gelatinous envelope; C—F, different forms of frustule as seen in side view; G, front view; H, frustule undergoing subdivision.

Fig. 190. *Mastogloia lanceolata*.

specific type, did they not occur upon the same stipes. The careful study of these varieties in every instance in which any disposition to variation shows itself, so as to *reduce* the enormous number of species with which our systematic treatises are loaded, is a pursuit of far greater real value than the *multiplication* of species by the detection of such minute differences as may be presented by forms discovered in newly-explored localities; such differences, as already pointed out, being, probably, in a large proportion of cases, the result of the multiplication of some one form, which, under modifying influences that we do not yet understand, has departed from the ordinary type. The more faithfully and comprehensively this study is carried out in *any* department of Natural History, the more does it prove that the range of variation is far more extensive than had been previously imagined; and this is especially likely to be the case with such humble organisms as those we have

been considering, since they are obviously more influenced than those of higher types by the conditions under which they are developed, whilst, from the very wide Geographical range through which the same forms are diffused, they are subject to very great diversities of such conditions.

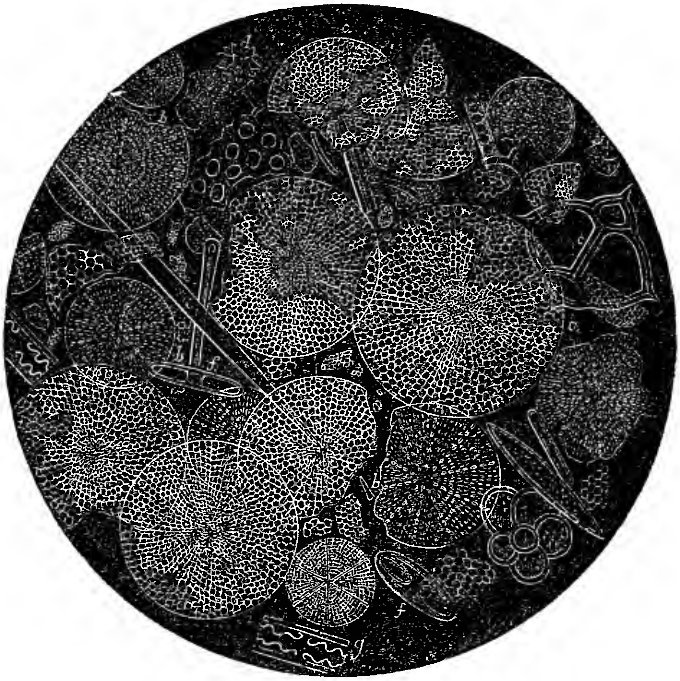
298. The general habits of this most interesting group cannot be better stated than in the words of Prof. W. Smith. "The Diatomaceæ inhabit the sea or fresh water; but the species peculiar to the one are never found in a living state in any other locality; though there are some which prefer a medium of a mixed nature, and are only to be met with in water more or less brackish. The latter are often found in great abundance and variety in districts occasionally subject to marine influences, such as marshes, in the neighbourhood of the sea, or the deltas of rivers, where, on the occurrence of high tides, the freshness of the water is affected by percolation from the adjoining stream, or more directly by the occasional overflow of its banks. Other favourite habitats of the Diatomaceæ are stones of mountain streams or waterfalls, and the shallow pools left by the retiring tide at the mouths of our larger rivers. They are not, however, confined to the localities I have mentioned—they are, in fact, most ubiquitous, and there is hardly a roadside-ditch, water-trough, or cistern, which will not reward a search, and furnish specimens of the tribe." Such is their abundance in some rivers and estuaries, that their multiplication is affirmed by Prof. Ehrenberg to have exercised an important influence in blocking-up harbours and diminishing the depth of channels! Of their extraordinary abundance in certain parts of the Ocean, the best evidence is afforded by the observations of Sir J. D. Hooker upon the Diatomaceæ of the southern seas; for within the Antarctic Circle they are rendered peculiarly conspicuous by becoming enclosed in the newly-formed ice, and by being washed-up in myriads by the sea on to the 'pack' and 'bergs,' everywhere staining the white ice and snow of a pale ochreous brown. A deposit of mud, chiefly consisting of the siliceous loricæ of Diatomaceæ, not less than 400 miles long and 120 miles broad, was found at a depth of between 200 and 400 feet, on the flanks of Victoria Land in 70° South latitude. Of the thickness of this deposit no conjecture could be formed; but that it must be continually increasing is evident, the silex of which it is in a great measure composed being indestructible. A fact of peculiar interest in connection with this deposit, is its extension over the submarine flanks of Mount Erebus, an active Volcano of 12,400 feet elevation; since a communication between the ocean-waters and the bowels of a volcano, such as there are other reasons for believing to be occasionally formed, would account for the presence of Diatomaceæ in volcanic ashes and pumice, which was discovered by Prof. Ehrenberg. It is remarked by Sir J. D. Hooker, that the universal presence of this invisible vegetation throughout the South Polar Ocean is a most important feature, since there is a marked deficiency in

this region of higher forms of vegetation; and were it not for them, there would neither be food for aquatic Animals, nor (if it were possible for these to maintain themselves by preying on one another) could the Ocean-waters be purified of the carbonic acid which animal respiration and decomposition would be continually imparting to them. It is interesting to observe that some species of marine Diatoms are found through every degree of latitude between Spitzbergen and Victoria Land, whilst others seem limited to particular regions. One of the most singular instances of the preservation of Diatomaceous forms, is their existence in Guano; into which they must have passed from the intestinal canals of the Birds of whose accumulated excrement that substance is composed; those birds having received them, it is probable, from Shellfish, to which these minute organisms serve as ordinary food (§ 300).

299. The indestructible nature of the silicified casings of *Diatomaceæ* has also served to perpetuate their presence in numerous localities from which their living forms have long since disappeared; for the accumulation of sediment formed by their successive production and death, even on the bed of the Ocean, or on the bottoms of fresh-water Lakes, gives-rise to deposits which may attain considerable thickness, and which, by subsequent changes of level, may come to form part of the dry land. Thus very extensive Siliceous strata, consisting almost entirely of marine *Diatomaceæ*, are found to alternate, in the neighbourhood of the Mediterranean, with Calcareous strata chiefly formed of *Foraminifera* (Chap. XII.); the whole series being the representative of the Chalk formation of Northern Europe, in which the silex that was probably deposited at first in this form has undergone conversion into *flint*, by agencies hereafter to be considered (Chaps. XII., XXI.). Of the Diatomaceous composition of these strata we have a characteristic example in Fig. 191, which represents the Fossil Diatomaceæ of Oran in Algeria. The so-called 'infusorial earth' of Richmond in Virginia, and that of Bermuda, also Marine deposits, are very celebrated among Microscopists for the number and beauty of the forms they have yielded; the former constitutes a stratum of 18 feet in thickness, underlying the whole city, and extending over an area whose limits are not known. Several deposits of more limited extent, and apparently of fresh-water origin, have been found in our own islands; as for instance at Dolgelly in North Wales, at South Mourne in Ireland (Fig. 192), and in the island of Mull in Scotland. Similar deposits in Sweden and Norway are known under the name of *berg-mehl* or mountain-flour; and in times of scarcity the inhabitants of those countries are accustomed to mix these substances with their dough in making bread. This has been supposed merely to have the effect of giving increased bulk to their loaves, so as to render the really nutritive portion more satisfying; but as the berg-mehl has been found to lose from a quarter to a third of its weight by exposure to a red-heat, there seems a strong probability

that it contains Organic matter enough to render it nutritious in itself. When thus occurring in strata of a fossil or sub-fossil

Fig. 191.



Fossil Diatomaceæ, &c., from Oran:—*a*, *a*, *a*, Coscinodiscus; *b*, *b*, *b*, Actinocylus; *c*, Dictyochya fibula; *d*, Lithasteriscus radiatus; *e*, Spongolithis acicularis; *f*, *f*, Grammatophora parallela (side view); *g*, *g*, Grammatophora angulosa (front view).

character, the Diatomaceous deposits are generally distinguishable as white or cream-coloured powders of extreme fineness.

300. For collecting fresh *Diatomaceæ*, those general methods are to be had recourse to which have been already described (§ 269). "Their living masses," says Prof. W. Smith, "present themselves as coloured fringes attached to larger plants, or forming a covering to stones or rocks in cushion-like tufts—or spread over their surface as delicate velvet—or depositing themselves as a filmy stratum on the mud, or intermixed with the scum of living or decayed vegetation floating on the surface of the water. Their colour is usually a yellowish-brown of a greater or less intensity, varying from a light chestnut, in individual specimens, to a shade almost approaching black in the aggregated masses. Their presence may often be detected without the aid of a microscope, by the absence, in many species, of the fibrous tenacity which distinguishes other plants: when removed from their natural position

they become distributed through the water, and are held in suspension by it, only subsiding after some little time has elapsed."

FIG. 192.

Fossil Diatomaceæ, &c., from Mourne Mountain, Ireland:—*a*, *a*, *a*, Gaillonella (Melosira) procera, and G. granulata; *d*, *d*, *d*, G. biseriata (side view); *b*, *b*, Surirella plicata; *c*, S. craticula; *k*, S. caledonica; *e*, Gomphonema gracile; *f*, Cocconema fusidium; *g*, Tabellaria vulgaris; *h*, Pinnularia dactylus; *i*, P. nobilis; *l*, Synedra ulna.

Notwithstanding every care, the collected specimens are liable to be mixed with much foreign matter: this may be partly got rid of by repeated washings in pure water, and by taking advantage, at the same time, of the different specific gravities of the Diatoms and of the intermixed substances, to secure their separation. Sand, being the heaviest, will subside first; fine particles of mud on the other hand, will float after the Diatoms have subsided. The tendency of living Diatoms to make their way towards the light, will afford much assistance in procuring the free forms in a tolerably clean state; for if the gathering which contains them be left undisturbed for a sufficient length of time in a shallow vessel exposed to the sunlight, they may be skimmed from the surface. Marine forms must be looked-for upon Sea-weeds, and in the fine mud or sand of soundings or dredgings; they are frequently found

also, in considerable numbers, in the stomachs of Holothuriæ, Ascidians, and Salpæ, in those of the oyster, scallop, whelk, and other testaceous Mollusks, in those of the crab and lobster, and other Crustacea, and even in those of the sole, turbot, and other Flat-fish. In fact the Diatom-collector will do well to examine the digestive cavity of *any* small aquatic animals that may fall in his way; rare and beautiful forms having been obtained from the interior of *Noctiluca* (Fig. 297). The separation of the Diatoms from the other contents of these stomachs must be accomplished by the same process as that by which they are obtained from Guano or the calcareous 'infusorial earths'; of this, the following are the most essential particulars:—The guano or earth is first to be washed several times in pure water, which should be well stirred, and the sediment then allowed to subside for some hours before the water is poured off, since, if it be decanted too soon, it may carry the lighter forms away with it. Some kinds of earth have so little impurity that one washing suffices; but in any case it is to be continued so long as the water remains coloured. The deposit is then to be treated, in a flask or test-tube, with Hydrochloric (muriatic) acid; and after the first effervescence is over, a gentle heat may be applied. As soon as the action has ceased, and time has been given for the sediment to subside, the acid should be poured off, and another portion added; and this should be repeated as often as any effect is produced. When hydrochloric acid ceases to act, strong Nitric acid should be substituted; and after the first effervescence is over, a continued heat of about 200° should be applied for some hours. When sufficient time has been given for subsidence, the acid may be poured off and the sediment treated with another portion; and this is to be repeated until no further action takes place. The sediment is then to be washed until all trace of the acid is removed; and, if there have been no admixture of siliceous sand in the earth or guano, this sediment will consist almost entirely of *Diatomaceæ*, with the addition, perhaps, of Sponge-spicules. The separation of siliceous sand, and the subdivision of the entire aggregate of Diatoms into the larger and the finer kinds, may be accomplished by stirring the sediment in a tall jar of water, and then, while it is still in motion, pouring off the supernatant fluid as soon as the coarser particles have subsided; this fluid should be set aside, and, as soon as a finer sediment has subsided, it should again be poured off; and this process may be repeated three or four times at increasing intervals, until no further sediment subsides after the lapse of half an hour. The first sediment will probably contain all the sandy particles, with, perhaps, some of the largest Diatoms, which may be picked out from among them; and the subsequent sediments will consist almost exclusively of Diatoms, the sizes of which will be so graduated, that the earliest sediments may be examined with the lower powers, the next with medium powers, while the latest will require the higher powers—a separation which is attended

with great convenience.* It sometimes happens that fossilized Diatoms are so strongly united to each other by Siliceous cement, as not to be separable by ordinary methods; in this case, small lumps of the deposit should be boiled for a short time in a weak Alkaline solution, which will act upon this cement more readily than on the siliceous frustules; and as soon as they are softened so as to crumble to mud, this must be immediately washed in a large quantity of water, and then treated in the usual way. If a very weak alkaline solution does not answer the purpose, a stronger one may then be tried. This method, devised by Prof. Bailey, has been practised by him with much success in various cases.†

301. The mode of mounting specimens of *Diatomaceæ* will depend upon the purpose which they are intended to serve. If they can be obtained quite fresh, and if it be desired that they should exhibit, as closely as possible the appearance presented by the living plants, they should be put-up in aqueous media (§ 206) within Cement-cells (§ 211); but if they are not thus mounted within a short time after they have been gathered, about a tenth-part of alcohol should be added to the water. If it be desired to exhibit the stipitate forms in their natural parasitism upon other aquatic plants, the entire mass may be mounted in Deane's Medium or in Glycerine jelly (§ 206 *h*), in a deeper cell; and such a preparation is a very beautiful object for the back-ground illumination. If, on the other hand, the minute structure of the siliceous envelopes is the feature to be brought into view, the fresh Diatoms must be boiled in nitric or hydrochloric acid, which must then be poured off (sufficient time being allowed for the deposit of the residue); and the sediment, after being washed, should be boiled in water with a small piece of soap, whereby the Diatoms will be cleansed from the flocculent matter which they often obstinately retain.‡ After a further washing in pure water, they are to be either mounted in Balsam in the ordinary manner (§ 210), or be set-up 'dry' on a very thin slide (§§ 165, 169). In order to obtain a satisfactory view of their markings, Objectives of very wide angular aperture are required, and all the refinements which have

* A somewhat more complicated method of applying the same principle is described by Mr. Okeden in the "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. iii. (1855), p. 158. The Author believes, however, that the method above described will answer every purpose.

† For other methods of cleaning and preparing Diatoms, see "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. vii. (1859), p. 167, and Vol. i. N.S. (1861), p. 143; and "Trans. of Microsc. Soc.," Vol. xi. N.S. (1863), p. 4.—A little book entitled "Practical Directions for collecting, preserving, transporting, preparing, and mounting Diatoms" (New York, 1877), containing Papers by Professors A. Mead Edwards, Christopher Johnson, and Hamilton L. Smith, will be found to contain much useful information.

‡ See Prof. H. L. Smith in "Amer. Journ. of Microscopy," Vol. v. (1880), p. 257.—It is important that the soap should be free from kaolin, silica, or any other insoluble matter.

recently been introduced into the methods of Illumination need to be put in practice. (Chaps. III. IV.)—It will often be convenient to mount certain particular forms of *Diatomaceæ* separately from the general aggregate; but on account of their minuteness, they cannot be selected and removed by the usual means. The larger forms, which may be readily distinguished under a Simple Microscope, may be taken-up by a camel-hair pencil which has been so trimmed as to leave two or three hairs projecting beyond the rest. But the smaller can only be dealt with by a single fine bristle or stout sable-hair, which may be inserted into the cleft-end of a slender wooden handle; and if the bristle or hair should be split at its extremity in a brush-like manner, it will be particularly useful. (Such split-hairs may always be found in a Shaving-brush which has been for some time in use; those should be selected which have their split portions so closely in contact, that they appear single until touched at their ends.) When the split extremity of such a hair touches the glass slide, its parts separate from each other to an amount proportionate to the pressure; and, on being brought up to the object, first pushed to the edge of the fluid on the slide, may generally be made to seize it. A very experienced American Diatomist, Prof. Hamilton Smith, strongly recommends a thread of glass drawn-out to capillary fineness and flexibility, by which (he says) the most delicate Diatom may be safely taken up, and deposited upon a slide damped by the breath.—For the selection and transference of Diatoms under the Compound Microscope, recourse may be had to some of the forms of 'mechanical finger' which have been recently devised by American Diatomists.*

* For a description of those of Prof. Hamilton Smith and Dr. Rezner, see "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. ii. (1879), p. 951; and that of Mr. Veeder Vol. iii. (1880), p. 700, of the same Journal.

CHAPTER VII.

PROTOPHYTIC AND OTHER FUNGI.—LICHENS.

302. In the lowest forms of the group of Fungi, we return to the simplest type of Vegetation—the single cell; and such forms, equally with the lowest *Algæ*, rank as *Protophytes*. Their essential difference from the Protophytic Algæ seems to lie in their incapacity for the formation of Chlorophyll and of carbon-compounds, under the influence of Light, out of the simple binary compounds —Water, Carbonic Acid, and Ammonia—supplied by the Inorganic world; and in their dependence (like Animals, § 220) upon those more complex combinations which the Organic world alone supplies. There seems, however, to be this general difference between the nutrition of Fungi and that of ordinary Animals: that the former not only live, but thrive best, in the midst of *decomposing* or *decomposable* Organic matter, apparently utilizing the products of such decomposition; whilst the latter directly convert into their own substance the nitrogenous compounds prepared for them by Plants. There are, however, cases in which this distinction, also, seems to fail; and in which it is impossible, in the present state of our knowledge, to draw a definite line of division between *Fungi* and *Protozoa* (§ 322).

303. Among the Protophytic *Fungi*, there are none of which the study is more practically important, than the group of *Schizomycetes;* consisting of a series of very minute organisms known as *Bacteria*, *Vibriones*, &c., which were formerly ranked by Ehrenberg and Dujardin among Animalcules. They are all aquatic in their habit, and are in that respect allied to *Algæ;* but they cannot live in pure water, thriving best in liquids that contain decomposing or decomposable organic matter; whilst many of them also grow and reproduce themselves in solutions in which ammonia-salts of the vegetable acids (acetates, tartrates, or citrates) are combined with purely inorganic ash-salts, so that they may be 'cultivated' in such liquids for the purposes of study.* Thus the *Schizomycetes* resemble ordinary Plants in forming Nitrogenous compounds out of ammonia, which Animals cannot do; while they differ from green Plants in their inability to form Carbon-compounds by the decomposition of carbonic acid, requiring for their support the carbo-hydrates or their derivatives.—They all consist of minute

* Cohn's solution is composed of 1 part of Potassium Phosphate, 1 part of Magnesium Sulphate, 2 parts of Ammonium Tartrate, and 0·1 part of Calcium Chloride, dissolved in 200 parts of distilled water.—See also p. 146 *note*.

cells, which multiply rapidly by subdivision; and most of them, at some stage of their existence, have the power of moving more or less quickly through the liquid they inhabit, by the action of *flagella*. Although usually colourless, or nearly so, they sometimes form reddish, bluish, or brownish colouring matters; and thus, when they multiply to a sufficient extent, make their presence apparent to the unaided eye, either as coloured films on the sides of the glass jars holding the solutions, or as (in the cases of blood-coloured milk and blue-green pus) imparting their colour to the whole liquid. Liquids in which any of these *Schizomycetes* are actively developing themselves, usually bear on their surface a gelatinous scum, which is termed by Prof. Cohn (who first drew attention to it) the *Zooglœa*. This scum, when examined microscopically, is found to contain *Schizomycetes*, sometimes of several different kinds, and in different stages of development, often mingled with true *Infusoria*, matted together into a mass; at the edges of which they present themselves in a more separated condition, and seem escaping to disperse themselves freely through the liquid beneath. By Prof. Cohn,* who has made a special study of this group, it is considered to include a large number of generic and specific types, whose distinctness is always preserved; but other observers, who have devoted themselves to the more prolonged and complete study (by 'cultivation') of a small number of forms, seem to have made it clear that there is—at least in certain types—a wide range of variation; so that when the entire life-history of any one type shall be completely known, a number of supposed species will be merged in it, either as *transitory phases* of its existence, or as *varieties* resulting from differences in the media in which they develope themselves.† There are, however, five well-marked types, of each of which it will be desirable to give a separate account; namely—1. *Micrococcus;* 2. *Bacterium;* 3. *Bacillus;* 4. *Vibrio;* and 5. *Spirillum.*

304. The *Micrococci* are darkish or coloured granules, so minute as not to be measurable with certainty, and destitute of any power of movement; which may occur either solitarily, or forming small groups or beaded chains, such as would be produced by cell-division; but which may also accumulate in irregular aggregations. The *Monas prodigiosa* of Ehrenberg, which is sometimes found imparting to the surface of mouldy bread a blood-red tinge (attributed by the superstitious to a miraculous exudation of blood), is regarded by Cohn as a Micrococcus. There is considerable doubt whether any of these Micrococci are independent organisms; as it is certain that some of them are nothing else than sporules of *Bacteria*

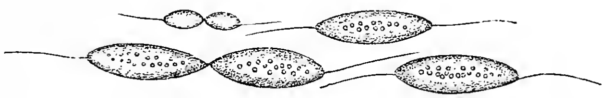
* "Beiträge zur Biologie der Pflanzen," Band i. Heft ii. (1872), and Heft iii. (1875); Band ii. Heft ii. (1870).

† See especially Prof. E. Ray Lankester's account of 'A Peach-coloured *Bacterium*,' in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Science," Vol. xiii. (1873), p. 408; and Mr. J. C. Ewart 'On the Life-history of *Bacillus anthracis*,' in Vol. xviii. (1878), p. 161, of the same Journal.

or *Bacilli* (Plate XII., figs. 1–3). But as some of them do not, under cultivation, develop themselves into any higher form, continuing to multiply as isolated cells by binary subdivision, they must for the present be ranked as distinct.*

305. *Bacteria* are minute oblong cells, which are usually seen attached in pairs end to end (Fig. 193, A, C), but not unfrequently present themselves singly (B, D), the pairs being produced by the

FIG. 193.



A, *Bacterium termo*, each cell furnished with a single flagellum. Magnified 4,000 diameters. B, C, D, *Bacterium lineola*, each cell when separated having a flagellum at either end. Magnified 3,000 diameters.

self-division of solitary cells. They are usually seen in 'vacillating' movement, produced by the action of their *flagella*, of which, in their paired state, each cell bears one at its free extremity, whilst the solitary cells bear a flagellum at each extremity. The formation of the second flagellum seems to take place by the drawing-out of a filament of protoplasm between two cells that are separating from each other (as in Fig. 196, *a*, *b*), the rupture of which gives a new flagellum to each. Two species of this type, differing considerably in size, have been especially studied. The cells of *Bacterium termo* (Fig. 193, A), which seem to be the 'ferment' of ordinary putrefactive change, have a diameter of about 1-20,000th of an inch, and are somewhat longer than they are broad. Their flagella are so minute as to be among the most 'difficult' of all Microscopic objects (p. 193); their diameter being estimated by Mr. Dallinger at no more than 1-200,000th of an inch.† Although this species does not ordinarily multiply in any other way than by transverse subdivision, yet, under 'cultivation' at a temperature of 86° Fahr., its cells have been seen to elongate themselves into motionless rods, resembling those of *Bacilli* (Plate XII.), whose endoplasm breaks up into separate particles that are set free as small, bright, almost spherical spores, which sometimes congregate so as to form a *zooglœa*-film. These germinate into short, slender rods, which are at first motionless, but soon undergo transverse fission, and then acquire flagella.‡—The *B. lineola*, which is the special 'ferment' that turns milk sour, occasioning the conversion of its sugar into lactic acid, has about three times the length and diameter of the preceding, and exhibits much stronger to-and-fro movements.

306. The special peculiarity of *Bacillus* consists in the extension

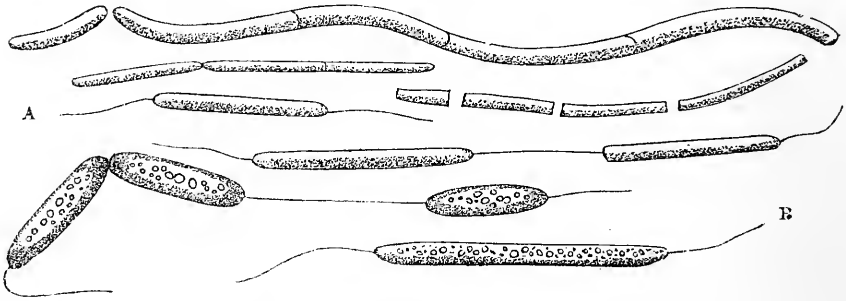
* See Ewart in "Proceedings of Royal Society" June 20, 1878.

† "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. i. (1878), p. 175.

‡ Ewart, *loc. cit.*

of its cells into straight rods, sometimes of considerable length, which break-up by transverse subdivision into separate cells, each of which has a flagellum at either end, though, when the cells are paired (like those of Bacteria), each carries a flagellum at its free end alone. The *B. subtilis* (*Vibrio subtilis* of Ehrenberg), found in stale boiled milk that is undergoing the butyric fermentation, is a slender supple thread (Fig. 194, A), whose cells average about 1-5,000th of an inch in length, moving in a 'pausing' manner,

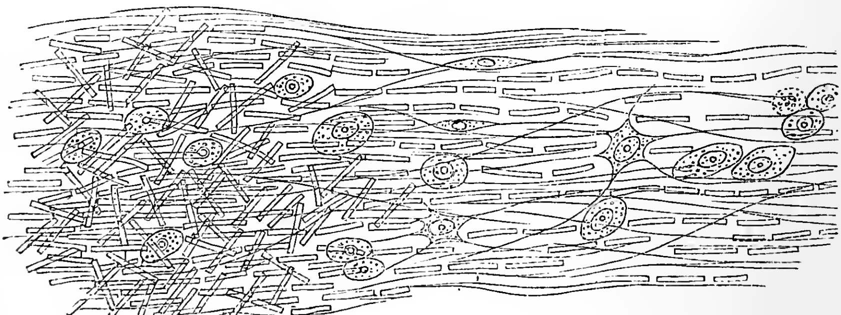
FIG. 194.



A, *Bacillus subtilis*; each cell, when separated, biflagellate. Magnified 4,000 diameters. B, *Bacillus ulna*, each cell biflagellate. Magnified 3,000 diameters.

"like a fish forcing its way through reeds." The *B. ulna* (Fig. 194, B), found by Cohn in a stale infusion of boiled egg, is distinguished from the preceding by the greater thickness of its filaments and by its rigidity. The *B. anthracis*, which is found in the blood and tissues of animals affected with carbuncle and splenic fever, usually presents itself in straight slender rods, of from 1-2,000th to 1-10,000th of an inch in length (Fig 195); these, so long as they are imbedded in living tissues, seem to multiply indefinitely by

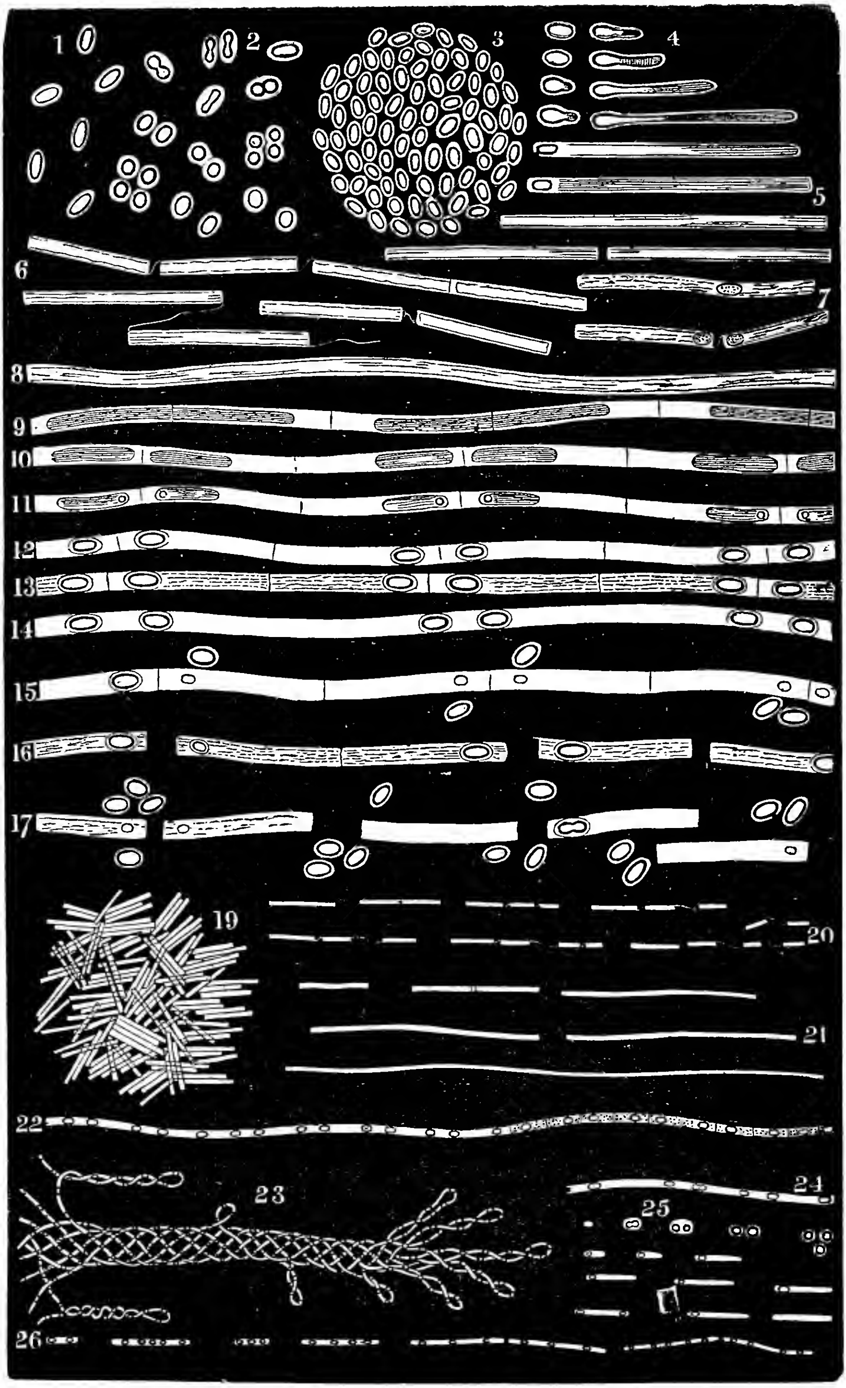
FIG. 195.



Matted Rods of *Bacillus anthracis*, extending in rows between connective tissue-fibres of subcutaneous tissue.

transverse division (Plate XII., 5, 6), thus continuing to produce short motile filaments, furnished with flagella, without extending them-

PLATE XII.



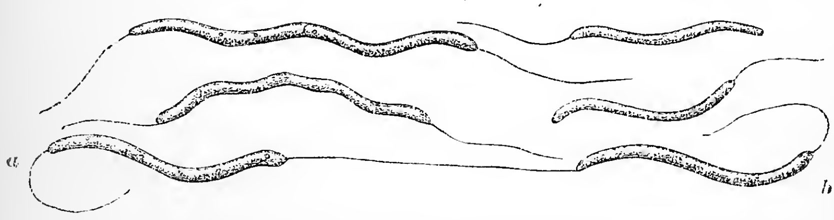
LIFE-HISTORY OF BACILLUS ANTHRACIS.

[*To face p.* 370.

selves into longer filaments, or giving origin to spores. When, however, these are 'cultivated' at about the temperature of 90°, they lengthen-out (after alternations of rest and motion) into very long filaments (22), whose endoplasm divides into numerous segments (9), which may again divide (10, 11), and then rapidly contract to form spores (12, 13). These spores, escaping by the disintegration of the filaments (14, 17), and presenting themselves (1) as Micrococcus-forms, may either multiply as round or oval cells by binary subdivision (2), sometimes aggregating into a zooglæa (3); or they may at once develop themselves (4, 5) into the straight rods characteristic of the type. The sporuliferous filaments (20, 21) are often of very much smaller diameter than the ordinary rods; and are disposed to break up and aggregate themselves either into an ordinary zooglæa (19), or into a double spiral rope-work (23).* It appears from Mr. Ewart's later observations† on a *Bacillus* from sea-water resembling *B. anthracis* in size and form, that by the continued subdivision and aggregation of the spores (or, possibly, by the emission of their contents), granular masses of considerable size are produced; the rupture of which by pressure diffuses over the field their component granules, every one of which seems capable, when placed in a drop of sea-water, of germinating into a rod. If, as seems probable, similar 'minimization' and multiplication of the reproductive germs takes place in *Bacteria* also (as it will be shown to do in the true *Monads* (§ 417), the idea of the universal diffusion of such germs through the atmosphere, which seems necessary to account for the phenomena of putrefaction (§ 310), should not be found difficult of acceptance.

307. The *Vibriones*, although very long known, have not been studied with the same completeness as other *Schizomycetes*. They

FIG. 196.



Four individuals of *Vibrio rugula*, each showing flagellum at one or both ends; two other individuals, *a* and *b*, separating from each other, and drawing out protoplasmic filament to form their second flagella. Magnified 2,000 diameters.

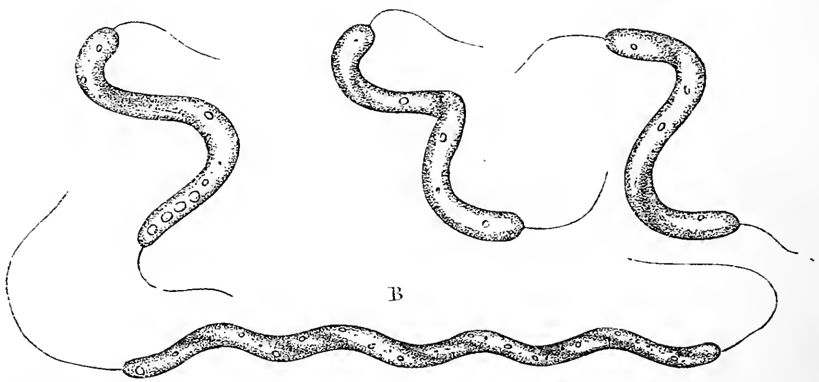
resemble Bacilli in the slenderness of their forms; but instead of being straight and rod-like, are flexible, with more or less of S-shaped curvature. They present themselves abundantly in infusions of decomposing organic matter, in combination with other Bacteria-forms, from which they are distinguishable by their

* See Ewart, *loc. cit.* † "Proceedings of Royal Society," June 20, 1878.

wavy serpentine movement. The length of one of the commonest species, *V. rugula* (Fig. 196), is usually from 1-1,200th to 1-2,500th of an inch.

308. *Spirilla*, which are the largest of the whole group, are characterized by the spiral coiling of their cells (Fig. 197), and by

Fig. 197.



A, *Spirillum undula*, showing flagellum at each end. Magnified 3,000 diameters. B, *Spirillum volutans*. Magnified 2,000 diameters.

their corkscrew-like movement; and are found not so much in newly-decomposing infusions of organic matter, as in stale liquids which have passed through the active stages of putrescence. Nothing has been certainly known, until recently, of their life-history; but the observations of Messrs. Geddes and Ewart* seem to render it clear that they pass through a series of stages closely corresponding to those of Bacillus. The 'zooglæa' film formed by the aggregation of *Spirilla* has a brownish tint; some of the organisms of which it is composed are at rest, and others in rapid movement. The resting *Spirilla* are sometimes nearly straight, with a slight curvature at one or both ends, the curve increasing until the characteristic spiral of the motile form is attained; and the change from the still to the motile state may take place very rapidly, often with a passage through a transition *Vibrio* stage. But *Spirillum*, like the forms already described, may lengthen-out into long filaments, which lose their characteristic twist and their motile powers; and their endoplasm breaks up into spores, which, after their escape from the filaments, form a distinct capsular investment, which holds them together in groups while multiplying by subdivision. Sometimes, again, a mere cellulose envelope is formed, in which the spores lie irregularly imbedded, continuing to multiply by subdivision, so as to form large irregular masses. The development of the spore into a filament commences by the putting-forth of a small curved prolongation, which gives it the shape of a *comma;* and as

* "Proceedings of Royal Society," June 20, 1878.

every possible gradation in size and form is seen between the smallest comma and the largest filament, there can be no reasonable doubt of the development of the former into the latter. Granular spheres are also seen, which may consist, like those of *Bacillus,* of minute particles emitted from the spores, and capable of development into a new generation of Spirilla.

309. Of the whole of this group it may be remarked that, so far as is yet known, they multiply either by transverse cell-division, or by the breaking-up of their endoplasm into spores, the production of which is entirely non-sexual. Nothing like 'conjugation,' or any other form of sexual Generation, has yet been witnessed in any of them; and until such shall have been discovered, no confidence can be felt that we know the entire life-history of any one type.*— It is a fact of great importance in the physiology of the *Schizomycetes*, that, in certain stages of their lives, they can resist both very high and very low temperatures without the loss of their vitality. In the active state of *Bacteria*, &c., they appear from the experiments of Dr. Eidam (which were conducted under the superintendence of Prof. Cohn) to be killed by continuous exposure to a temperature of 124° for three hours, or to 115° for thirteen or fourteen hours, although capable of sustaining a temperature of 120° for a short time without losing their vitality. But in the *Micrococcus*-stage, although killed by being *boiled* for a few minutes, they can sustain exposure to a *dry* heat of 230° Fahr., but are killed by being heated to 248°.† And this is probably the explanation of the fact, that Prof. Tyndall found that he could not sterilize an infusion of *old hay* (the Bacteria-germs contained in which may be supposed to have had peculiarly dry hard envelopes) without boiling it continuously for several hours; though repeated short boilings with intervals of cooling would effectually destroy their power of germinating.‡ Even severe cold does not destroy the vitality of *Bacteria* and *Bacilli* in their ordinary condition, although it suspends their activity; for *Bacteria* have been found to recover themselves completely after exposure to a temperature of 0° Fahr.; and the spores of *Bacillus anthracis* have recovered their germinal power after exposure for several hours to a temperature averaging 8° below the zero of Fahrenheit.

310. When these facts are allowed their due weight, no difficulty ought to be felt in admitting the action of *Bacteria*, &c., in producing decomposition, under conditions which might at first view be fairly supposed to preclude the possibility of their presence. This action is altogether analogous to that of the Yeast-plant

* As it seems unquestionable that among the higher Fungi 'conjugation' often takes place at a very early stage of growth, it seems a not improbable surmise that the 'granular spheres' observed by Mr. Ewart in *Bacillus* and *Spirillum*, which seem to correspond with the 'microplasts' observed by Prof. E. Ray Lankester in his *Bacterium rubescens,* may be a product of conjugation in the Micrococcus-stage of these organisms.

† "Beiträge zur Biologie der Pflanzen," Heft 3 (1875).

‡ "Philosophical Transactions," 1877, p. 183.

(§ 311) in producing saccharine fermentation; and the careful and exact experiments of Pasteur,* repeated and verified in a great variety of modes by Professors Lister, Tyndall, and others, seem to the writer to leave no reasonable doubt on these two points—(1) that putrefactive fermentation does not take place, even in liquids which are peculiarly disposed to pass into it, except in the presence of Bacteria-germs; and (2) that neither these germs, nor any others, arise in such liquids *de novo*, but that they are all conveyed into them by the air, when not otherwise introduced. Whether there are different species of *Bacterium, Bacillus*, &c., which (as maintained by some) excite distinct forms of disease respectively peculiar to them, in the bodies of animals into which they find their way, is a question which he thinks is scarcely yet ripe for decision. Strong evidence in its favour is afforded by the facts now accumulated in regard to the transmission of special forms of disease by inoculation, in some instances with *Bacillus* germs, and in others with very minute germinal particles termed *microzymes*, whose nature is still unknown. Thus 'splenic fever' is producible by the inoculation of *Bacillus anthracis*, and the typhoid fever of the pig by inoculation with another species of *Bacillus*;† the plants having been in both cases 'cultivated,' so as to be free from other contaminating matter. Again, it has been ascertained by careful microscopical examination of the fluid of the Vaccine vesicle, that it is charged with a multitude of minute granules not above 1-20,000th of an inch in diameter; and it has been

* The experiments which have always seemed to the Author most satisfactory, are those in which the careful *filtration* of the air (as by simply plugging the mouth of the tube or flask with cotton-wool), or its *purification* by the subsidence of the minute particles it ordinarily holds in suspension (as demonstrated by Prof. Tyndall's optical test), prevents any putrefactive change from taking place in organic liquids exposed to it. He would refer such as wish to study this important question, to the following Papers in particular:—Prof. Huxley's Presidential Address to the British Association in 1870, reprinted in his "Critiques and Addresses;" Prof. Lister on 'Bacteria and the Germ-theory,' in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. xiii., p. 380, on 'The Nature of Fermentation' in vol. xviii. of the same Journal, p. 177, and his Address to the British Medical Association at Cambridge, in 'Brit. Med. Journ.' 1880, p. 363; and Prof. Tyndall on 'The Optical Deportment of the Atmosphere in Relation to the Phenomena of Putrefaction and Infection,' in "Philos. Transact.," 1876, p. 27, and 'Further Researches' in "Philos. Transact.," 1877, p. 149; also, for an account of recent Pathological researches by Pasteur and others, 'Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.' vol. iii. (1880), pp. 1006-1020. The doctrines advanced on the other side in Dr. H. Charlton Bastian's "Beginnings of Life," do not, in his judgment, stand the test of rigid scrutiny.

† The dried blood of horses that had died in India of 'Loodiana fever,' having been sent to the Brown Institution, a crop of *Bacillus anthracis* was grown from it, which reproduced the disease in healthy animals.—The very important fact has been discovered at the same Institution, that the 'brewers' grains' largely used as food for cattle, afford a soil which is peculiarly favourable for the growth and development of the spore-filaments of *Bacillus*; and thus an obvious explanation was given of an epidemic of anthrax in a previously uninfected district, destroying a large number of animals, all of which had been fed with 'grains' obtained from a particular brewery.

further determined that these, rather than the fluid in which they are suspended, are the active agents in the production of a similar vesicle in the skin into which they are inserted. This vesicle must contain hundreds or thousands of 'microzymes' for every one originally introduced; and it is obvious that their multiplication has so strong an analogy to that of *Bacteria*, as to suggest the idea that it must take place by a like process of cell-development. Similar observations have been made upon Glanders, Sheep-pox, and Cattle plague; so that an animal suffering under either of these terrible diseases is a focus of infection to others, for precisely the same reason that a tub of fermenting beer is capable of propagating its fermentation to fresh wort.*—A most notable instance of such propagation is afforded by the spread of the disease termed 'pebrine' among the Silkworms of the south of France; the mortality caused by it being estimated to produce a money-loss of from three to four millions sterling annually, for several years following 1853, when it first broke out with violence. It has been shown by microscopic investigation, that in silkworms strongly affected with this disease, every tissue and organ in the body is swarming with minute cylindrical corpuscles about 1-6,000th of an inch long; and that these even pass into the undeveloped eggs of the female moth, so that the disease is hereditarily transmitted. And it has been further ascertained by the researches of Pasteur, that these corpuscles are the active agents in the production of the disease, which is engendered in healthy silkworms by their reception into their bodies; whilst, if due precautions be taken against their transmission, the malady may be completely exterminated.

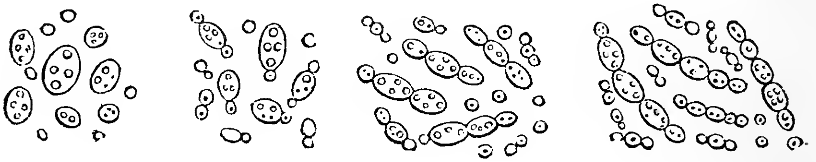
311. Nearly allied to the *Schizomycetes* in the simplicity of its character and in its 'zymotic' action, is the *Saccharomyces* (*Torula*) *cerevisiæ;* the presence of which in Yeast gives to it the power of exciting the alcoholic fermentation in saccharine liquids. When a small drop of yeast is placed under a magnifying power of 400 or 500 diameters, it is seen to contain a large number of globular or ovoid cells, averaging about 1-3,000th of an inch in diameter, for the most part isolated, but sometimes connected in short series; and each cell is filled with a nearly colourless 'endoplasm,' usually exhibiting one or more vacuoles, but never showing a nucleus. When placed in a fermentible fluid containing some form of nitrogenous matter in addition to sugar,† they vegetate, in the manner represented in Fig. 198. Each cell puts forth one or two projections, which seem to be young cells developed as buds or offsets

* See Prof. Burdon Sanderson 'On the Intimate Pathology of Contagion' in the Privy Council "Reports on the Public Health" for 1870.

† It appears from the researches of Pasteur, that although the presence of Albuminous matter (such as is contained in a saccharine wort, or in the juices of fruits) favours the growth and reproduction of Yeast, yet that it can live and multiply in a solution of pure Sugar, containing ammonium-tartrate with small quantities of Mineral salts; the decomposition of the ammonia-salt affording it the nitrogen it requires for the production of protoplasm, while the sugar and water supply the carbon, oxygen, and hydrogen.

from their predecessors; these, in the course of a short time, become complete cells, and again perform the same process; and in this manner the single cells of yeast develop themselves, in the course of a few hours, into rows of four, five, or six, which remain in continuity with each other whilst the plant is still growing, but which separate if the fermenting process be checked, and return to

Fig. 198.



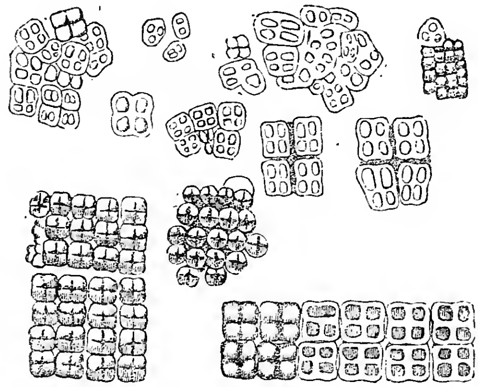
Torula cerevisiæ, or Yeast-plant, as developed during the process of fermentation :—*a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, successive stages of cell-multiplication.

the isolated condition of those which originally constituted the yeast. Thus it is that the quantity of yeast first introduced into the fermentible fluid, is multiplied six times or more during the changes in which it takes part. Under certain conditions not yet determined, the Yeast-cells multiply in another mode—namely, by the breaking-up of the endoplasm into segments, usually four in number, around each of which a new 'cell-wall' forms itself; and these *endogonidia* (which correspond with the 'zoöspores' of Algæ, save in having no motile power) being set free by the dissolution of the wall of the parent-cell, soon enlarge and comport themselves as ordinary Yeast-cells. No conjugation or other form of sexual action has yet been observed in *Torula;* and there are various reasons for surmising that we do not yet know its whole life-history. —Many other Fungi of like simplicity have the power to act as 'ferments:' thus in wine-making, the fermentation of the juices of the grapes or other fruit employed, is set going by the development of minute fungi whose germs have settled on their skins; these germs not being injured by desiccation, and being readily transported by the atmosphere in the dried-up state. There is reason to believe, moreover, that a similar 'zymotic' action may be excited by Fungi of a higher grade in the earlier stages of their growth; the alcoholic fermentation being set-up in a suitable liquid (such as an aqueous solution of cane-sugar, with a little fruit-juice) by sowing in it the sporules of any one of the ordinary 'moulds,' such as *Penicillium glaucum*, *Mucor*, or *Aspergillus*, provided the temperature be kept up to blood-heat; and this even though the solution has been previously heated to 284° Fahr., a temperature which must kill any germs it may itself contain.*

* See the observations of Mad. Lüders, in Schulze's "Archiv fur Mikroscopische Anatomie," Band. iii., abstracted in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," N.S., vol. xiii. (1868), p. 35.

312. The *Sarcina ventriculi* (Fig. 199) is another Protophyte which seems related both to *Algæ* and *Fungi;* corresponding with the former in its aquatic habit and mode of growth, and with the latter in requiring organic matter of some kind for its sustenance. This Plant is most frequently found in the matters vomited by persons suffering under disorder of the stomach, but has also been met with in other diseased parts of the body. It has been detected in the contents of the stomach, however, under circumstances which seem to indicate that it is not an uncommon tenant of that organ even in health, and that it may accumulate there to a considerable amount without producing any inconvenience. It seems probable, therefore, that its presence in disease is rather to be considered as favoured by the changed state of the fluids which the disease induces (either an acid or a fermentible state of the contents of the stomach having been generally found to exist in the cases in which the plant has been most abundant), than to be itself the occasion of the disease, as some have supposed. The *Sarcina* presents itself in the form of clusters of adherent cells arranged in squares, each square containing from 4 to 64, and the number of cells being obviously multiplied by duplicative subdivision in directions transverse to each other. In fact, its general mode of growth would indicate a near relation to *Gonium,* one of the *Volvocineæ,* which presents itself in similar quadripartite aggregations; but there can be little doubt that as no fructification has yet been seen in it, only its earlier and simpler condition is yet known to us; and its true place cannot be determined until its whole life-history shall have been followed out.

Fig. 199.

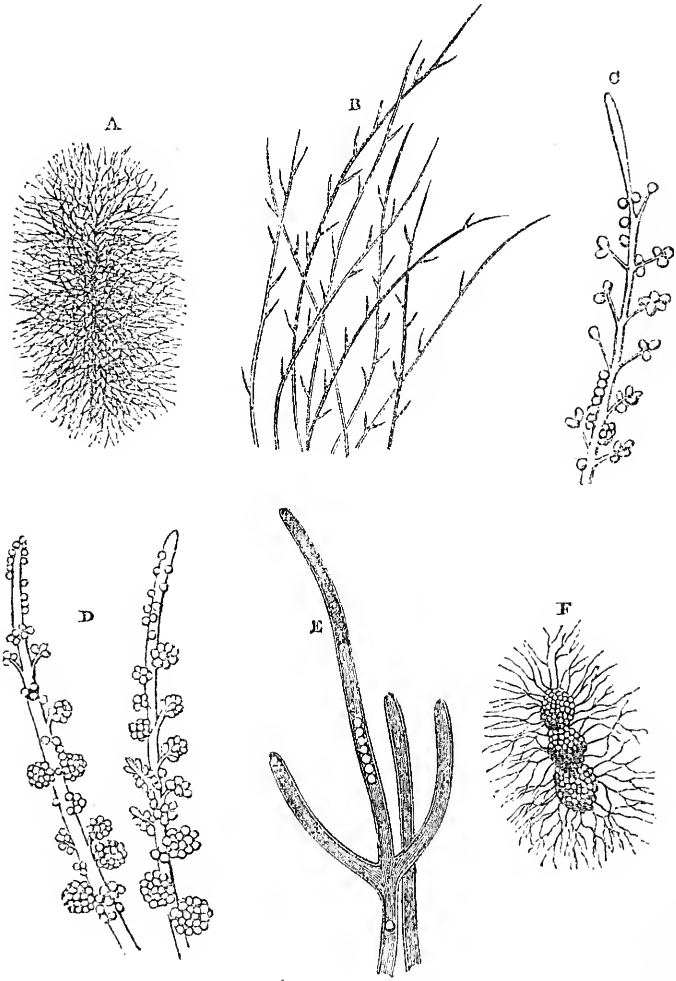


Sarcina ventriculi.

313. Another form of Fungous vegetation that developes itself within the living body, and which is of great economic importance as well as of scientific interest, is the *Botrytis bassiana* (Fig. 200), a kind of 'mould,' the growth of which is the real source of the disease termed *muscardine,* which formerly carried off Silkworms in large numbers, just when they were about to enter the chrysalis state, to the great injury of their breeders. The plant presents itself under a considerable variety of forms (A–F), all of which, however, are of extremely simple structure, consisting of elongated or rounded cells, connected in necklace-like filaments,

very nearly as in the ordinary 'bead-moulds.' The sporules of this fungus, floating in the air, enter the breathing-pores (Fig. 433)

Fig. 200.



Botrytis bassiana:—A, the fungus as it first appears at the orifices of the stigmata; B, tubular filaments bearing short branches, as seen two days afterwards; E, magnified view of the same; C, D, appearance of filaments on the fourth and sixth days; F, masses of mature spores falling off the branches, with filaments proceeding from them.

which open into the tracheal system of the Silkworm: they first develop themselves within the air-tubes, which are soon blocked up by their growth; and they then extend themselves through the fatty mass beneath the skin, occasioning the destruction of this

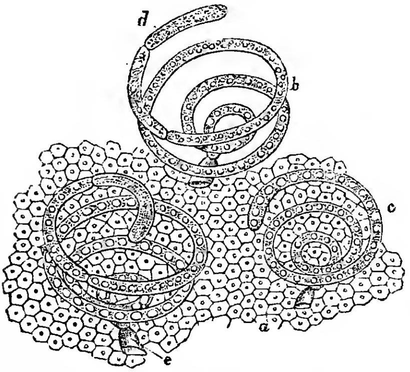
tissue, which is very important as a reservoir of nutriment to the animal when it is about to pass into its chrysalis condition. The disease invariably occasions the death of the worm which it attacks; but it seldom shows itself externally until afterwards, when it rapidly shoots-forth from beneath the skin, especially at the junction of the rings of the body. Although it spontaneously attacks only the larva, yet it may be communicated by inoculation to the chrysalis and the moth, as well as to the worm; and it has also been observed to attack other Lepidopterous Insects. A careful investigation of the circumstances which favour the development of this disease was made by Audouin, who first discovered its real nature; and he showed that its spread was favoured by the overcrowding of the worms in the breeding establishments, and particularly by the practice of throwing the bodies of such as died into a heap in the immediate neighbourhood of the living worms: for this heap speedily became covered with this kind of 'mould,' which found upon it a most congenial soil; and it kept up a continual supply of sporules, which, being diffused through the atmosphere of the neighbourhood, were drawn into the breathing pores of individuals previously healthy. The precautions obviously suggested by the knowledge of the nature of the disease, thus afforded by the Microscope, having been duly put in force, its extension was successfully kept down.

314. An example of the like kind is frequently presented in the destruction of the common House-fly by a minute fungus termed *Empusa musci*. In its fully developed condition, the spore-bearing filaments of this plant stand out from the body of the fly like the 'pile' of velvet; and the spores thrown off from these in all directions form a white circle round it, as it rests motionless on a window-pane. The filaments which show themselves externally are the fructification of the fungus which occupies the interior of the Fly's body; and this originates in minute corpuscles which find their way into the circulating fluid from without. A healthy fly shut up with a diseased one, takes the disease from it by the deposit of a sporule on some part of its surface; for this, beginning to germinate, sends out a process which finds its way into the interior, either through the breathing-pores, or between the rings of the body; and having reached the interior cavities, it gives off the minute corpuscles which constitute the earliest stage of the *Empusa*.—Again it is not at all uncommon in the West Indies, to see individuals of a species of *Polistes* (the representative of the Wasp of our own country) flying about with plants of their own length projecting from some part of their surface, the germs of which have been probably introduced (as in the preceding case) through the breathing-pores at their sides, and have taken root in their substance, so as to produce a luxuriant vegetation. In time, however, this fungous growth spreads through the body, and destroys the life of the insect; it then seems to grow more rapidly, the decomposing tissue of the dead body being still more

adapted than the living structure to afford it nutriment.—A similar growth of different species of the genus *Sphæria* takes place in the bodies of certain caterpillars, in New Zealand, Australia, and China; and being thus completely pervaded by a dense substance, which, when dried, has almost the solidity of wood, these caterpillars come to present the appearance of twigs, with long slender stalks that are formed by the growth of the fungus itself. The Chinese species is valued as a medicinal drug.

315. The stomachs and intestines of many Worms and Insects are infested with parasitic Fungi, which grow there with great luxuriance. In the accompanying illustrations (Figs. 201, 202) are shown some of the forms of the *Enterobryus*,* which has been found by Dr. Leidy† to be so constantly present in the stomach of certain species of *Iulus* (gally-worm), that it is extremely rare to meet with individuals whose stomachs do *not* contain it. The Enterobryus originally consists of a single long tubular cell, which sometimes grows in a spiral mode (Fig. 201), sometimes straight and tapering (Fig. 202, A). In its young state the cell contains a transparent protoplasm, with granules and globules of various sizes; but in its more advanced condition the tube of the filament is occupied by cells in various stages of development; these distend the terminal part of the cell (Fig. 202, B), and press so much against each other that their walls become flattened; whilst nearer the middle of the same filament (C) we find them retaining their rounded form, and merely lying in contact with each other; and at the base (D), they lie detached in the midst of the granular protoplasm. In *E. spiralis* the primary cells (Fig. 201, *b*, *c*), very commonly have secondary and even ternary cells (*d*) developed at their extremities; but this is rarely seen in *E. attenuatus* (Fig. 202). It may be considered as next to certain that the tubular filaments rupture, when the contained cells have arrived at maturity, and give them exit; and that

Fig. 201.



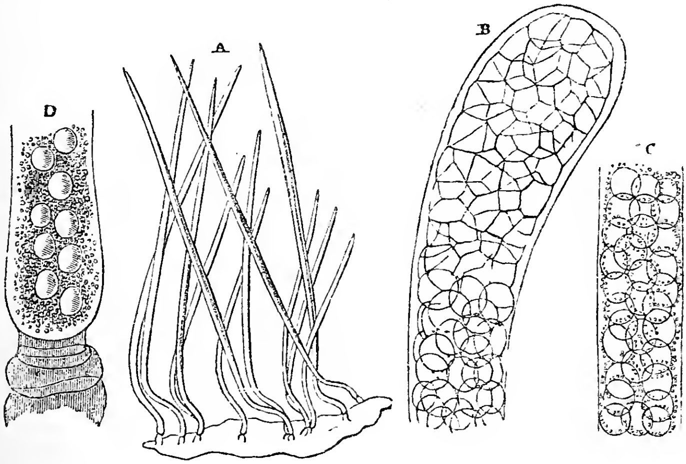
Growth of *Enterobryus spiralis* from mucous membrane of stomach of *Iulus*:—*a*, epithelial cells of mucous membrane; *b*, spiral filament of Enterobryus; *c*, primary cell; *d*, secondary cell.

* This plant, also, has much affinity to Algæ in its general type of structure, and is referred to that group by many botanists; but the conditions of its growth, as in the case of *Sarcina*, seem rather to indicate its affinity to the Fungi; and until its proper fructification shall have been made out, its true place in the scale must be considered as undetermined.

† "Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge," Vol. v.

these cells are developed, under favourable circumstances, into tubular filaments like those from which they sprang; but the process has not yet been thoroughly made out. This is obviously not the true Generation of the plant, but is analogous to the development of zoöspores in *Achlya* (§ 250).—It is not a little curious,

FIG. 202.



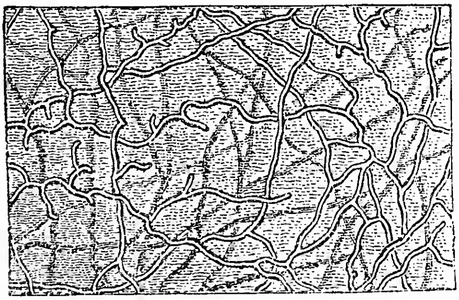
Structure of *Enterobryus*:—A, growth of *E. attenuatus*, from mucous membrane of stomach of *Passulus*; B, dilated extremity of primary cell of *E. elegans*, filled with secondary cells, which, near its termination, become mutually flattened by pressure; C, lower portion of the same filament, containing cells mingled with granules; D, base of the same filament, containing globules interspersed among granules.

moreover, that the Entozoa or parasitic Worms infesting the alimentary canal of these animals should be often clothed *externally* with an abundant growth of such plants: in one instance, Dr. Leidy found an *Ascaris* bearing twenty-three filaments of *Enterobryus*, "which appeared to cause no inconvenience to the animal, as it moved and wriggled about with all the ordinary activity of the species." The presence of this kind of vegetation seems to be related to the peculiar food of the animals in whose stomachs it is found; for Dr. Leidy could not discover traces of these or any other parasitic plants in the alimentary canal of the *carnivorous* Myriapods which he examined; whilst he met with a constant and most extraordinary profusion of vegetation in the stomach of a *herbivorous* Beetle, the *Passulus cornutus*, which lives like the Iuli, in stumps of old trees, and feeds as they do on decaying wood.

316. There are various diseased conditions of the Human skin and mucous membranes, in which there is a combination of fungoid Vegetation and morbid growth of the Animal tissues: this is the case, for example, with the *Tinea favosa*, a disease of the scalp, in which yellow crusts are formed that consist almost entirely

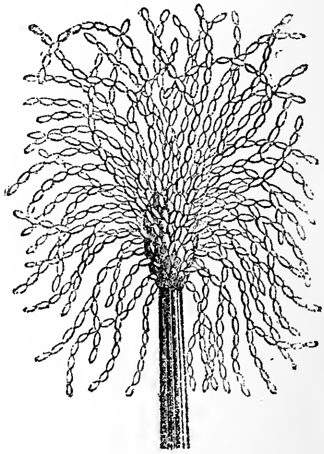
of the mycelium, receptacles, and sporules of a fungus; and the like is true also of those white patches (*Aphthæ*) on the lining membrane of the mouth of infants, which are known as *thrush*, and of the exudations of 'false membrane' in the disease termed *diphtheria*. In these and similar cases, two opinions are entertained as to the relation of the Fungi to the diseases in which they present themselves: some maintaining that their presence is the essential condition of these diseases, which originate in the introduction of the vegetable germs; and others considering their presence to be secondary to some morbid alteration of the parts wherein the fungi appear, which alteration favours their development. The first of these doctrines derives a strong support from the fact, that the diseases in question may be communicated to healthy individuals, through the introduction of the germs of the Fungi by inoculation; whilst the second is rather consistent with general analogy, and especially with what is known of the conditions under which the various kinds of fungoid 'blights' develope themselves in or upon growing Plants (§ 320).—It is not a little remarkable that even Corals, Shells, Fish-scales, and other hard tissues of Animals, are not unfrequently penetrated by fungous Vegetation,

Fig. 203.



Shell of *Anomia* penetrated by Parasitic Fungus.

Fig. 204.



Stysanus caput-medusæ.

which usually presents itself in the form of simple tubes more or less regularly disposed (Fig. 203), and closely resembling those of an ordinary *mycelium* (compare Fig. 207, *a*), but occasionally exhibits a distinct fructification that enables its true character to be recognized.*

* See Professor Kölliker 'On the Frequent Occurrence of Vegetable Parasites in the Hard Tissues of Animals,' in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. viii. (1860), p. 171.—Previously to the publication of his friend Prof. K.'s paper, the Author had himself arrived at a similar conclusion in regard to the parasitic nature of many of the tubular structures which had been originally regarded not merely by himself, but by Prof. Kölliker, as proper to the

317. There are scarcely any Microscopic objects more beautiful than some of those forms of 'mould' or 'mildew,' which are commonly found growing upon the surface of jams and other preserves; especially when they are viewed with a low magnifying power, by reflected light. For they present themselves as a forest of stems and branches, of extremely varied and elegant forms (Fig. 204), loaded with fruit of a singular delicacy of conformation, all glistening brightly on a dark ground. In removing a portion of the 'mould' from the surface whereon it grows, for the purpose of microscopic examination, it is desirable to disturb it no more than can be helped, in order that it may be seen as nearly as possible in its natural condition; and it is therefore preferable to take up a portion of the membrane-like substance whereon it usually rests, which is, in fact, a *mycelium* composed of interlacing filaments of the *vegetative* part of the plant, the stems and branches being its *reproductive* portion (§ 321).—The universality of the appearance of these simple forms of Fungi upon all spots favourable to their development, has given rise to the belief that they are spontaneously produced by decaying substances: but there is no occasion for this mode of accounting for it; since the extraordinary means adopted by Nature for the production and diffusion of the germs of these plants adequately suffice to explain the facts of the case. The number of sporules which any one Fungus may develope is almost incalculable; a single individual of the puff-ball tribe has been computed to send forth no fewer than ten millions. And their minuteness is such that they are scattered through the air in the condition of the finest possible dust; so that it is difficult to conceive of a place from which they should be excluded. This universal diffusion was clearly proved several years ago by an experiment made by Dr. Brittan, of Bristol; who caused air to be pumped for several hours together through an inverted siphon, the bend of which was immersed in a freezing mixture, so as to condense the aqueous vapour of the atmosphere. This water at last came to be tinged of a deep brown hue; and was found, when microscopically examined, to be charged with multitudes of sporules of Fungi. More recently, Prof. Tyndall has shown, by a peculiar application of electric light, that all ordinary air contains a multitude of excessively minute solid particles suspended in it; that these, being for the most part destructible by heat, are chiefly organic; and that they may be either strained off, so as to render the filtered air "optically pure," by passing it through cotton wool, or may be got rid of by allowing them time to subside in a closed chamber whose bottom is smeared with glycerine, so that they are held down when once they have settled on it.

318. This mode of explanation has received further confirmation

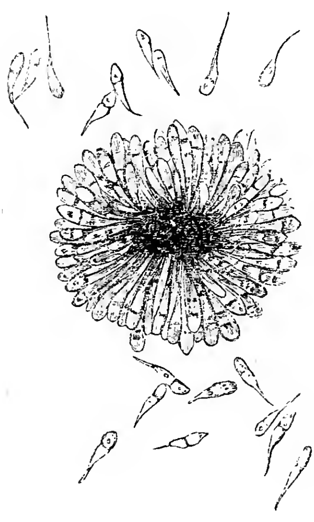
Shells in which they occur.—Prof. Duncan has recognized like parasitic growths, apparently allied to *Achlya*, § 250 (which is now ranked by many among Fungi), both in recent and Fossil Corals. See "Proceed. of Roy. Soc.," Vol. xxv. (1879), p. 238; and "Quart. Journ. Geolog. Soc." Vol. xxxii., p. 205.

from the facts recently ascertained, in regard to the great number of forms under which a single germ may develope itself. For it has been ascertained with regard to the Fungi generally, that different individuals of the same species may not only develope themselves in very dissimilar modes, but may even bear dissimilar types of fructification; and further, that even the same individual may put forth, at different periods of its life, those two kinds of fructification—the *Basidio-sporous*, in which spores are developed by outgrowth from free points (*basidia*), and the *Ascomycetous*, in which they are developed in the interior of cases (*thecæ* or *asci*, Fig. 205) —which had been previously considered as separately characterizing the two principal groups into which the Class was primarily divided. But the spores produced from the *ostensible* 'fructification' in this Class are all non-sexual or *gonidial* (§ 228). In a large proportion of it, nothing whatever is known of the true *Generative* process; and wherever it has been detected, it is performed in a manner that carries us back to the simplicity of the lower Algal types.—Thus the *mycelium* of the common *Mucor*, which forms the 'brown mould' of bread, preserves, &c., consists of a single cell, which first sends forth wide-spreading branches that extend over the surface on which it grows, and then develops a vertical pin-like stem, enlarging at its top a little globular 'head,' the cavity of which is cut off from that of the stem by a partition, so as to form a separate 'sporangial' cell, whose endoplasm breaks up into a number of 'micro-gonidia;' and every one of these, when set free by the bursting of the sporangium, can give origin to a new mycelium. But the Generative act is performed in the mycelium itself; two branches of which, coming into contact with each other at their free extremities, there form separate terminal cells, the fusion of which unites their two endoplasms into one (just as in the conjugation of *Mesocarpus*, § 235); and this, surrounding itself with a thick cell-wall, becomes an 'oöspore,' which may remain a long time in the dry state without germinating. It is by the formation of *gonidia*, that a 'mould' whose germ has fallen upon a fruitful soil rapidly extends itself over a large surface; whilst the carrying of the *oöspores* by currents of air forms the chief means of its transmission to a distance.—The *Penicillium*, or 'green mould,' on the other hand, sends-up from its mycelium a branching stem, the ramifications of which subdivide into a brush-like tuft of filaments, each of which bears at its extremity a succession of minute 'beads' termed *conidia*. These, detaching themselves and falling on a suitable soil, forthwith germinate into new mycelia; or, drying up, are disseminated by atmospheric currents, without loss of their vitality. Here, again, the Generative act is performed in the mycelium; but by a somewhat more complex apparatus than in Mucor. One of its branches elongates, and coils spirally upon itself into a corkscrew-like body, the *ascogonium*, which constitutes the female organ; whilst another branch acts as the male organ, the *pollinodium*, which extends itself over the spire, and communicates

to its endoplasm some fertilizing material from its own. The germ thus formed becomes enclosed in a mass of sterile tissue; and within this it developes itself into a cluster of *asci*, each containing numerous spores, whose liberation gives origin to a 'new generation.'

319. The 'entophytic' Fungi which infest some of the Vegetables most important to Man as furnishing his staple articles of food, constitute a group of special interest to the Microscopist; of which a few of the chief examples may here be noticed. The *mildew* which is often found attacking the straw of Wheat, shows itself externally in the form of circular clusters of pear-shaped *asci* or spore-cases (Fig. 205), each containing two compartments filled with sporules; these (known as the *Puccinia graminis*) arise from a filamentous tissue constituting its *mycelium*, the threads of which interweave themselves with the tissue of the straw; and they generally make their way to the surface through the 'stomata' or breathing-pores of its epidermis. The *rust*, which makes its appearance on the leaves and chaff-scales of Wheat, has a fructification that seems essentially distinct from that just described, consisting of oval spore-cases, which grow without any regularity of arrangement from the threads of the mycelium; and hence it has been considered to belong to a different genus and species, *Uredo rubigo*. But from the observations of Prof. Henslow, it seems certain that 'rust' is only an earlier form of 'mildew;' the one form being capable of development into the other, and the fructification characteristic of the two supposed genera having been evolved on one and the same individual.—It is another reputed species of *Uredo* (the *U. segetum*), which, when it attacks the flower of the wheat, reducing the ears to black masses of sooty powder, is known as *smut* or *dust-brand*. The corn-grains are entirely replaced by aggregations of spores; and these, being of extreme minuteness, are very easily and very extensively diffused. The *bunt* or *stinking rust* is another species of Uredo (the *U. fœtida*), which is chiefly distinguished by its disgusting odour.

Fig. 205.



Puccinia graminis, or Mildew.

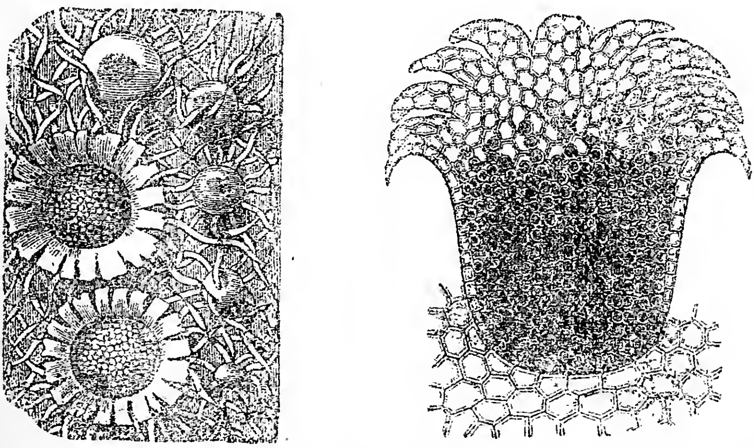
320. The prevalence of these Blights to any considerable extent seems generally traceable to some seasonal influences unfavourable to the healthy development of the cereal; but they often make their appearance in particular localities through careless cultivation,

or want of due precaution in the selection of seed. It may be considered as certain that an admixture of the spores of any of these Fungi with the corn-grains will endanger the plant raised from them; but it is equally certain that the fungi have little tendency to develope themselves in plants that are vegetating with perfect healthfulness. The wide prevalence of such blights in bad seasons is not difficult to account for, if it be true (as the observations of Mr. John Marshall several years since rendered probable) that there are really *very few* wheat-grains, near the points of which one or two sporules of Fungi may not be found, entangled among their minute hairs; and it may be fairly surmised that these germs remain dormant, unless an unfavourable season should favour their development by inducing an unhealthy condition of the wheat-plant.—The same general doctrine probably applies to the *Peronospora*, which has a large share in the production of the "Potato-disease;" and to the *Oïdium*, which has a like relation to the "Vine-disease" that was prevalent for some years through the south of Europe. There seems no doubt, that in the fully developed disease, the Fungus is always present; and that its growth and multiplication have a large share in the increase and extension of the disorder, just as the growth of the Yeast-plant excites and accelerates fermentation; while its reproduction enables this action to be indefinitely extended through its instrumentality. But just as the Yeast-plant will not vegetate save in a fermentible fluid—that is, in a solution which, in addition to sugar, contains some decomposable nitrogenous matter—so does it seem probable, on consideration of all the phenomena of the Potato- and Vine-diseases, that neither the *Peronospora* of the one nor the *Oïdium* of the other will vegetate in perfectly healthy plants; but that a disordered condition, induced either by forcing and therefore unnatural systems of cultivation, or by unfavourable seasons, or by a combination of both, is necessary as a 'predisposing' condition. This condition, in the case of the Potato-disease, is said by Prof. De Bary to consist in an undue thinness of the cuticle, accompanied by excessive humidity; whereby the sporules of the fungus will germinate on the surface of the plant, sending out processes which penetrate to its interior, though otherwise germinating only on cut surfaces.

321. In those lower forms of this Class which have been now described, there is not usually any complete separation between the Nutritive or vegetative, and the Reproductive portions of the fabric. But such a separation makes itself apparent in the higher; and this in a very curious mode. For the ostensible Fungi, known as Mushrooms, Toadstools, Puff-balls, &c., consist, in fact, of nothing else than the organs of *gonidial fructification* (Fig. 206), enclosing an enormous mass of non-sexual spores; while the *nutritive* apparatus of these plants is composed of an indefinite *mycelium*, which is a filamentous expansion (Fig. 207, *a*), composed of elongated branching cells interlacing amongst each other,

but having no intimate connexion; and this has such an indefiniteness of form, and varies so little in the different tribes of

A FIG. 206. B

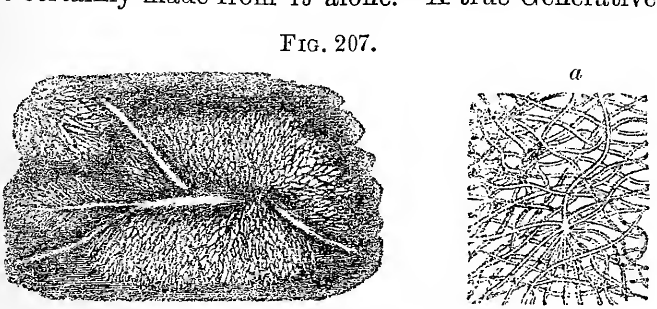


Æcidium tussilaginis:—A, portion of the plant magnified; B, section of one of the conceptacles with its spores.

Fungi, that no determination of species, genus, or even family, could be certainly made from it alone. A true Generative process

FIG. 207.

a



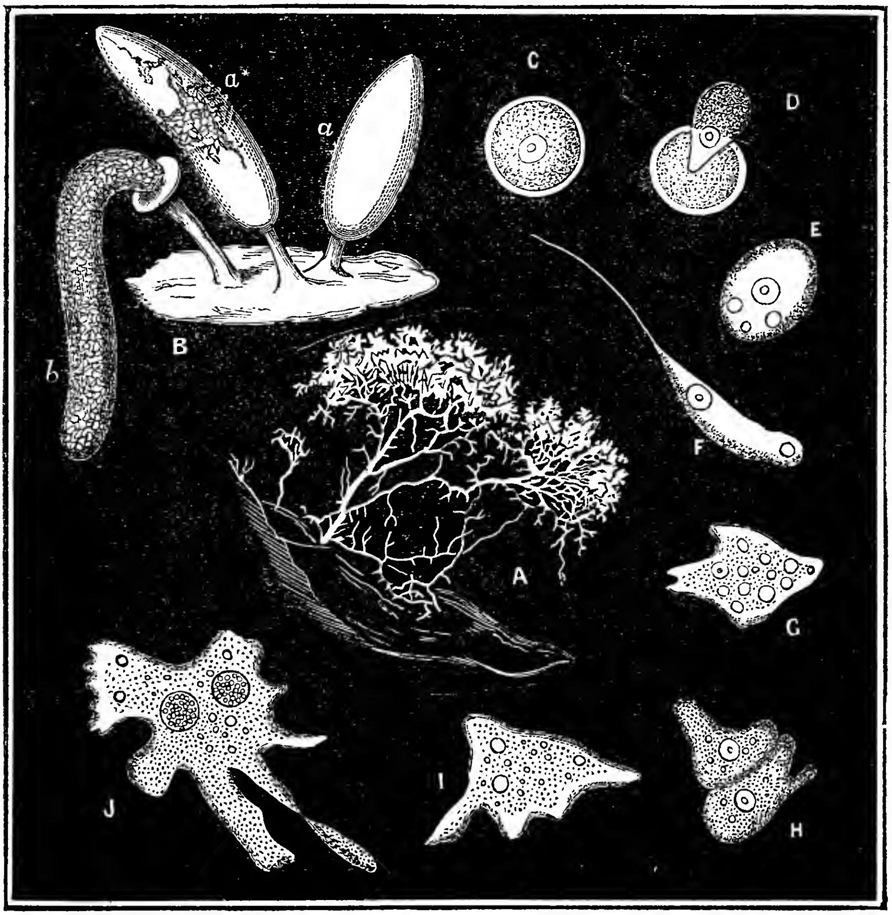
Clavaria crispula:—*a*, portion of the mycelium magnified.

has not hitherto been detected with certainty in these higher Fungi, although it has been supposed by some observers to be carried-on in the *mycelium*. And their Life-history needs now to be carefully re-studied, with all the assistance derivable from our increased knowledge of the simpler types of the group, and with the skill which can only be acquired by considerable practice in Microscopical investigation.—The subject, however, is one of such peculiar *speciality*, that it can not be advantageously pursued further in a Treatise like the present.

322. Many eminent Botanists still rank in the *Fungal* series of Protophytes a very peculiar group, the *Myxomycetes*, the members of which pass a large part of their lives in a state of what

can scarcely be otherwise described than as one of *Animal* existence. They grow parasitically upon decayed wood, bark, heaps of decaying leaves, tan-beds, &c.; spreading over damp surfaces as a *plasmodium*, or network of naked protoplasmic filaments (Fig. 208, A), of a soft creamy consistence, and usually of a yellowish colour.

FIG. 208.



Development of *Myxomycetes*:—A, plasmodium of *Didynium serpula*;—B, successive stages, *a*, *a'*, *b*, of sporosacs of *Arcyria flava*;—C, ripe spore of *Physarum album*; D, its contents escaping; E, F, G, the swarm-spore first becoming flagellated, and then amœboid; H, conjugation of two amœboids, which at I have fused together, and at J are beginning to put out extensions and ingest nutriment, of which two pellets are seen in its interior.

The filaments of this network exhibit active undulatory movements, which in the larger ones are visible under an ordinary lens, or even

to the naked eye, but which it requires microscopic power to discern in the smaller. With sufficiently high amplification, a constant movement of granules may be seen flowing along the threads, and streaming from branch to branch. Here and there offshoots of the protoplasm are projected, and again withdrawn, in the manner of the pseudopodia of an *Amœba;* while the whole organism may be occasionally seen to abandon the support over which it had grown, and to creep over neighbouring surfaces, thus far resembling in all respects a colossal ramified *amœba.* It is also curiously sensitive to light, and may sometimes be found to have retreated during the day to the dark side of the leaves or into the recesses of the tan over which it had been growing, and again to creep out on the approach of night.—After a time there arise from the surface of this *plasmodium* oval capsules or sporangia (B, *a*, *a'*, *b*), within which the reproductive bodies or 'spores' are developed, and which burst when mature to give them exit. Each 'spore' is a spherical cell (C) enclosed in a delicate membranous wall; and when it falls into water this wall undergoes rupture (D), and an Amœba-like body (E) escapes from it, consisting of a little mass of protoplasm, with a round central nucleus enclosing a nucleolus, and a contractile vesicle. This soon elongates (F), and becomes pointed at one end, whence a long *flagellum* is put forth, the lashing action of which gives motion to the body. After a time, the flagellum disappears, and the active movements of the spore cease; but it now begins to put forth and to withdraw finger-like pseudopodia, by means of which it creeps about like an *Amœba*, and feeds, like that Rhizopod, upon solid particles which it engulfs within its soft protoplasm. A 'conjugation' then takes place between two of these *Myxamœbæ* (H), their substance undergoing a complete fusion into one body (I), from which extensions are put forth (K), that constitute the beginning of a new plasmodium. This continues to grow by the ingestion and assimilation of the solid nutriment which it takes into its substance; and, by the ramification and inosculation of these extensions, a network is formed resembling that from which it originated, to bear sporangia in its turn, from which a new cycle will commence.

323. Under certain conditions not yet perfectly understood, the *Myxomycetes* have been observed to pass from the active into the 'resting' state; and this may occur both in the amœboid spores and in the plasmodium. The former return to the spherical form, and surround themselves with a firm envelope; and in this 'encysted' condition they may be dried-up so as to be carried about as dust, resuming their original activity when again placed in water. When the plasmodium is about to pass into the 'resting' state, it withdraws its finer branches, and expels such solid ingesta as may be included in it; and its motions then gradually cease. It then either breaks up into a multitude of polyhedral cells (?), which, however, remain connected in one body, that dries into a horny brittle mass termed 'sclerotium;' or separates into a number of

fragments of unequal size, which take a spherical form and become 'encysted' in a double envelope. Both these 'resting' forms may undergo desiccation without the loss of their vitality. When, after many months, the dry sclerotium is placed in water, it swells up, and its cells (?) again flow together into a protoplasmic mass, which soon resumes its former life as a *plasmodium*. So when the thick-walled cysts, after being long desiccated, are placed in water, their cysts rupture, and their protoplasmic bodies issue forth, to lead the life of *Amœbæ*, and to form fresh plasmodia, either by themselves, or by fusion with other like bodies.*

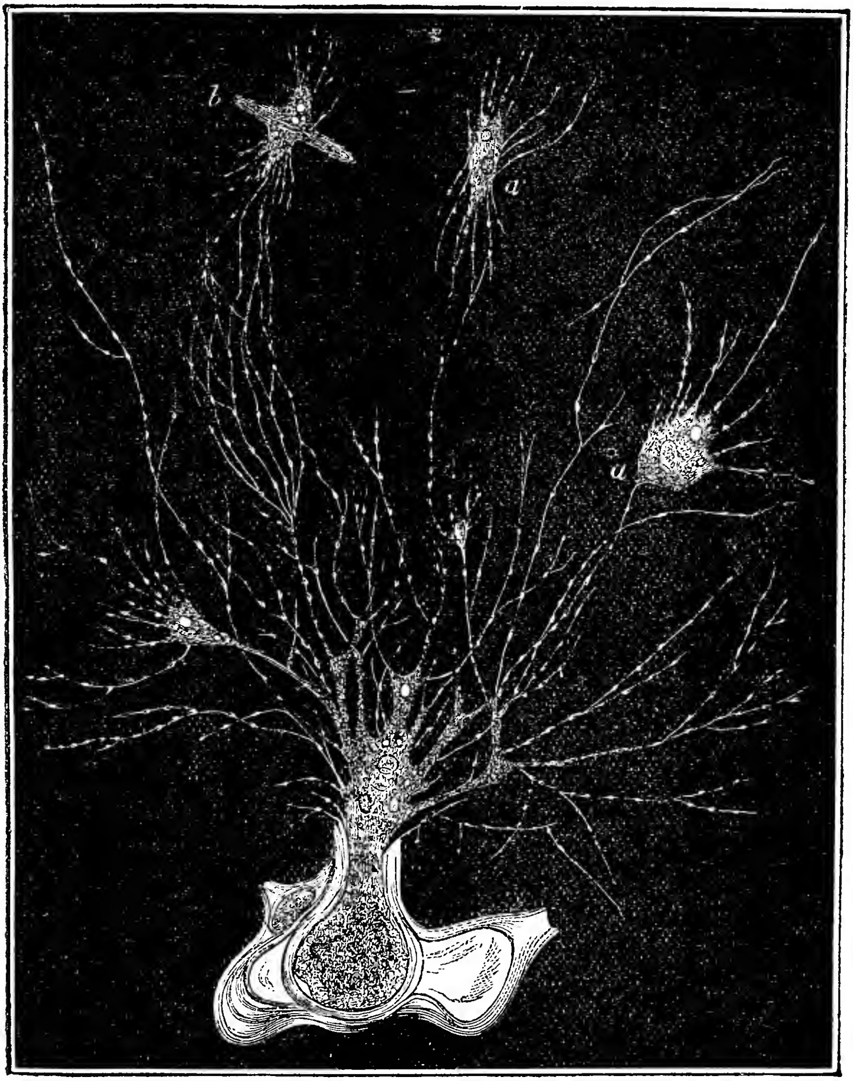
324. Another most interesting connecting link between the Vegetable and Animal kingdoms, is an organism discovered by Mr. W. Archer†—sometimes *within* the leaf-cells of *Sphagnum* (§ 329), and sometimes attached to the surface of its leaves—to which he has given the name of *Chlamidomyxis labyrinthuloides* (Fig. 209). In its early condition, whilst still inhabiting the Sphagnum-cells, this parasite resembles a large thick-walled Vegetable cell, with either green or red cell-contents; and is found to consist of a firm many-layered envelope which shows a distinctly-*cellulose* reaction, enclosing a colourless hyaline substance, through which a great multitude of granules are dispersed, some of them of a bright red, and others of a yellowish-green colour,—the numbers of the two bearing so constant an inverse proportion to each other, as to make it likely that the red are produced by a colour-change in the green. If this state alone were known to us, we should have no hesitation in regarding the organism as a *Vegetable cell*, the 'endoplasm' of which consists of protoplasm with chlorophyll-granules dispersed through it. But as it augments in size, it produces a bulging of the wall of the Sphagnum-cell, by the rupture of which it makes its way to the surface; and a new stage in its history then commences. Though the many-layered cellulose wall is so firm as to resist a considerable amount of external pressure, it bursts open from within, and the endoplasm then streams forth, carrying with it its imbedded granules. The protoplasmic trunk, almost directly that it leaves the cell-cavity, begins to subdivide into branches, from which others are put forth; and by this continued ramification and the inosculation of the offshoots, an extended network is formed, consisting of threads of extreme tenuity. In constant motion along these are seen minute fusiform particles

* The very peculiar history of the *Myxomycetes* (previously known as Myxogastric Fungi) was first investigated by De Bary, who was disposed to regard them as Animals ('Die Mycetozoen,' in "Zeitschr. f. w. Zool.," Bd. x., 1860). The subject was taken up by Cienkowski, the results of whose careful study of it will be found in his admirable Memoirs, 'Zur Entwickelungsgeschichte der Myxomyceten,' in Pringsheim's "Jahrbücher," Bd. iii. (1863), pp. 325, 400, and 'Ueber einige Rhizopoden und verwandte Organismen,' in "Archiv f. Mikr. Anat.," Bd. xii. (1876), p. 15; and he also is disposed to rank this group in the Animal kingdom. On the other hand, Prof. Sachs and other high Botanical authorities continue to rank it among Fungi.

† "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. xv. (1875), p. 107.

of a bluish-green colour, which are obviously identical with the round granules of the central mass, these changing their shape as

Fig. 209.



Chlamidomyxis labyrinthuloides:—showing the protoplasmic mass extending itself from the ruptured cellulose envelope, and forming a network whose threads are traversed by fusiform particles; *a*, *a*, isolated masses of protoplasm; *b*, a captured Navicula about to be drawn into the protoplasmic mass.

they go forth to wander along the filaments. Sometimes the pro-

toplasm accumulates in particular spots, forming 'islands' (*a*, *a*), each of which may become a centre of fresh radiation for hyaline threads. These accumulations frequently take place round Diatoms, Desmids, or other minute Vegetable organisms (*b*); which, being thus imbedded in the extensions of the protoplasmic body, are drawn towards it by their retraction, and at last engulfed within it. It would appear that the whole of the protruded endoplasm may be retracted into the original cell-cavity, and that this may be closed up again by the formation of a new layer of cellulose within the old; for the indigestible parts of various organisms, that must have been introduced in the manner just described, are often distinguishable through the walls of completely closed-in specimens. Mr. Archer has been unable to detect a 'nucleus,' either in the body of his *Chlamidomyxis*, or in any of its extensions; but 'contractile vacuoles,' executing pretty regular rhythmical movements are to be seen, not only in the body and primary stem (in which they are usually very numerous), but also in the branches, and not unfrequently in the 'islands' also. Thus in its extended condition this creature leads a life which is essentially *Animal*, corresponding in every particular with that of the 'reticularian' *Rhizopods* hereafter to be described (Chap. x.).—Nothing is yet known of its Reproduction. Mr. Archer has met with large individuals, the contents of whose many-layered cellulose wall had divided itself into a number of smaller orange-coloured spheres, of nearly equal size, each of which had its own cellulose wall; and it can scarcely be doubted that on the escape of these from the parent cyst, each would lead an independent life resembling that of its progenitor. It seems probable, moreover, that the outlying masses of the protoplasmic extension may detach themselves and live independently, each forming a cellulose envelope for itself.—But until 'conjugation' or some other kind of sexual union shall have been discovered in this curious organism, we cannot be said to know its whole life-history; and the peculiar interest which attaches to it renders the further study of it in the highest degree desirable. It may be hoped that the excellent observer by whom it has been brought to our knowledge, may ere long find himself able to supply the missing link.

325. Lichens.—The Microscopic study of this group has latterly acquired a new interest for the Botanist, from the remarkable discovery announced in its complete form by Schwendener in 1869* (and now accepted by the highest authorities), that instead of constituting a special type of Thallophytes, parallel to *Algæ* (with which they correspond in their *vegetative* characters) and *Fungi* (to which they are more allied in *fructification*), they are really to be regarded as *composite* structures, having an Algal base, on

* See his memorable work "Ueber die Algentypen der Flechtengonidien" (Basel, 1869), which is said by Prof. Sachs ("Text-book of Botany," p. 273) to have settled for the future the place of Lichens among the *Ascomycetes*; and Sir J. D. Hooker's Presidential Address to the Royal Society, 1878.

which Ascomycetous Fungi (§ 318) have sown themselves and live parasitically. As, however, they do not furnish objects of interest to the ordinary Microscopist (the peculiar density of their structure rendering a minute examination of it more than ordinarily difficult), nothing more than a general account of their curious organization will here be attempted.—The Algal 'thallus' of a Lichen belongs to the group of *Palmellaceæ* (§ 243) or its allies; and consists of cells termed *gonidia*—usually green, but sometimes red or bluish-green—interspersed among long cellular filaments. The proportion between these two components of the thallus varies in different examples of the type. Thus, in the simplest Wall-lichens, the Palmella-like 'primordial cell' gives origin, by the ordinary process of cell-division, to a single layer of cells, which spreads itself over the stony surface in a more or less circular form; and the 'thallus,' which increases in thickness by the formation of new layers upon its free surface, has no very defined limit, and, in consequence of the slight adhesion of its components, is said to be 'pulverulent.' But, in the more complex forms of Lichens, the thallus is mainly composed of long fibre-cells, which dip down into the superficial layers of the bark of the trees on which they grow, and form by their interweaving a hard crustaceous 'thallus' in which the *gonidia* are imbedded, sometimes irregularly, sometimes in definite layers, covered by an envelope of interlacing filaments. It is from this Algal portion of the structure, that the *soredia* of Lichens are formed; which are little projections of the surface, composed of single or aggregate *gonidia*, invested by fibre-cells, and falling, when dry, into a powder, of which every particle is a bud, capable of reproducing the plant from which it proceeded.

326. The *fructification* of Lichens, on the other hand, is really the production of their Fungal overgrowths, which are nourished by the Algal vegetation. The Lichen-forming Fungi, in fact, live upon their Algal hosts, like the Entophytic Fungi (such as the 'blights' of corn, § 219) which infest the higher forms of Vegetation; each of the former choosing its own Alga, just as the latter mostly attach themselves to particular victims. "The peculiarity in the parasitism of the Lichen-fungi lies in the fact that they are not attached to their host externally at any one particular spot, and do not penetrate into its cells, but weave themselves round them, and enclose them in their hyphal tissue." (Sachs, *loc. cit.*)—The formation of sexually produced 'spores' takes place in *asci* or 'spore-cases,' arranged vertically in the midst of straight elongated sterile cells termed *paraphyses*, so as to form a layer that lies either on the surface of cup-shaped receptacles termed *apothecia*, or is completely enclosed within *perithecia*. Each of the *asci* contains a definite number of spores (usually eight, but always a multiple of two), which are projected from the receptacles with some force; and their emission, which seems to be due to the different effects of moisture upon the several layers of the receptacle, is often kept up continuously for some time. The formation of these *asci*, as in the

case of the ordinary *Ascomycetes* (§ 318), is the result of a sexual union, which takes place between the male *spermatia* and the female *trichogyne*. These spermatia are produced within *spermogonia*, which resemble on a very minute scale the male receptacles of the *Fucaceæ* (§ 328); being budded off from the exterior of the cellular filaments that line those cavities, and, when mature, escaping in great numbers from their orifices. Having no power of spontaneous movement, they must probably be conveyed by the infiltration of rain-water to a *trichogyne* (resembling that of the *Ceramiaceæ*, § 330) which lies imbedded in the tissue beneath; and when they have imparted their fertilizing influence to the contents of the *ascogonium* at its base, these develope themselves into a spore-bearing *apothecium*,—the whole mass of spores which this contains being the product of the cell-division of the originally fertilized 'oöspore.'

CHAPTER VIII.

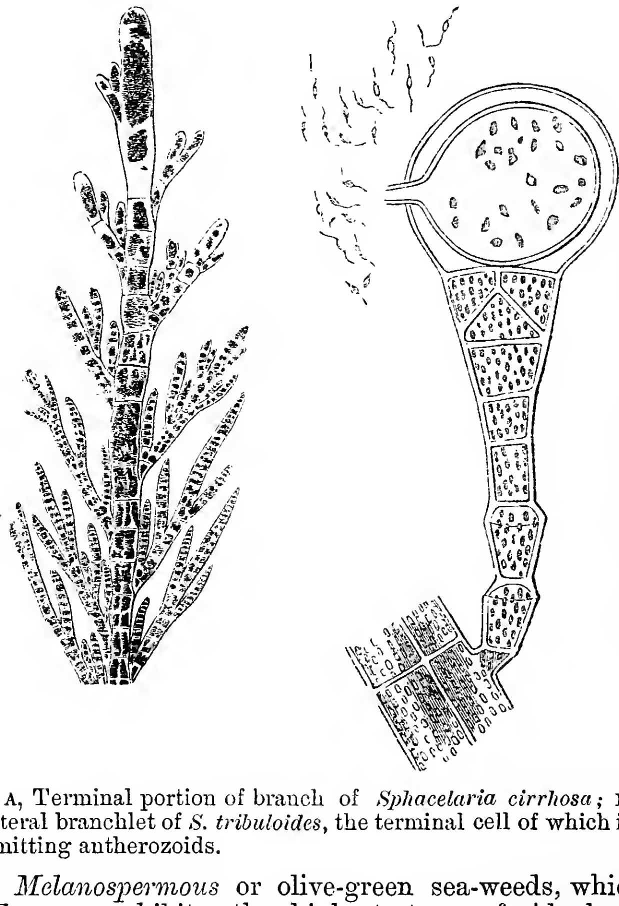
MICROSCOPIC STRUCTURE OF HIGHER CRYPTOGAMIA.

327. From the simple Protophytes, whose minuteness causes their entire fabrics to be fitting objects for Microscopic examination, we pass to those higher forms of Vegetable life, whose larger dimensions require that they should be analyzed (so to speak) by the examination of their separate parts. And in the present Chapter we shall bring under notice some of the principal points of interest to the Microscopist which are presented by the *Cryptogamic* series; commencing with those simpler Algæ which scarcely rank higher than some of the Protophytes already described, and ending with the Ferns and their allies, which closely abut upon the *Phanerogamia* or Flowering Plants. In ascending this series, we shall have to notice a *gradual differentiation* of organs; those set apart for Reproduction being in the first place separated from those appropriated to Nutrition; while the principal parts of the Nutritive apparatus, which are at first so blended into a uniform expansion or *thallus* that no real distinction exists between root, stem, and leaf, are progressively evolved on types more and more peculiar to each respectively, and have their functions more and more limited to themselves alone. Hence we find a 'differentiation,' not merely in the external form of organs, but also in their intimate structure; its degree bearing a close correspondence to the degree in which their functions are respectively *specialized* or limited to particular actions. But this takes place by very slow gradations; a change of external form often showing itself, before there is any decided differentiation either in structure or function. Thus in the simple *Ulvæ* (Fig. 144), whatever may be the extent of the thallus, every part has exactly the same structure, and performs the same actions, as every other part; living *for* and *by* itself alone. And though, when we pass to the higher Sea-weeds, such as the common *Fucus* and *Laminaria*, we observe a certain foreshadowing of the distinction between Root, Stem, and Leaf, this distinction is very imperfectly carried out; the root-like and stem-like portions serving for little else than the mechanical attachment of the leaf-like part of the plant, and each still absorbing and assimilating its own nutriment, so that no transmission of fluid takes place from one portion of the fabric to another. There is not yet any departure from the simple *cellular* type of structure; the only modification being that the several layers of cells, where many exist, are of different sizes and shapes, the texture being usually closer on the

exterior and looser within; and that the texture of the stem and roots is denser than that of the leaf-like expansions or *fronds*. The

Fig. 210.

A B



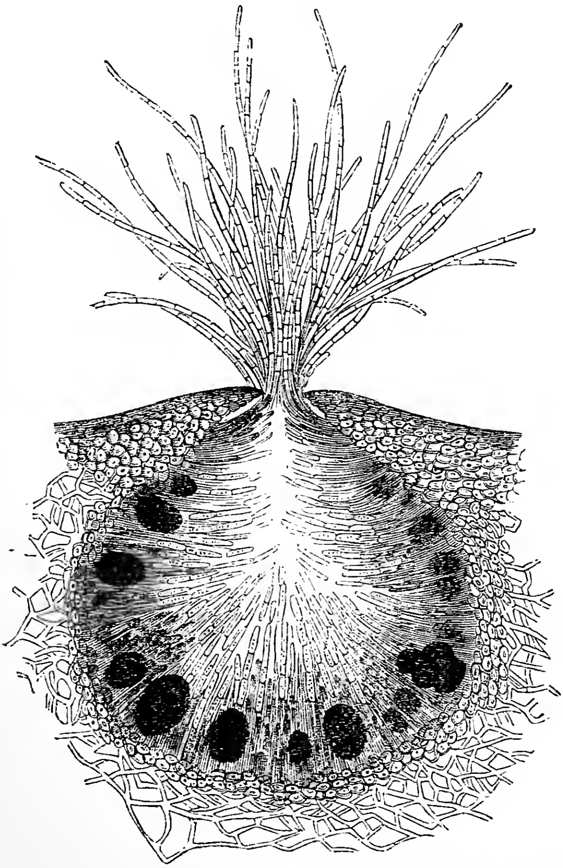
A, Terminal portion of branch of *Sphacelaria cirrhosa*; B, lateral branchlet of *S. tribuloides*, the terminal cell of which is emitting antherozoids.

group of *Melanospermous* or olive-green sea-weeds, which in the family *Fucaceæ* exhibits the highest type of Algal structure, presents us with the lowest in the family *Ectocarpaceæ;* which, notwithstanding, contains some of the most elegant fabrics that are anywhere to be found in the group, the full beauty of which can only be discerned by the Microscope. Such is the case, for example, with the *Sphacelaria*, a small and delicate sea-weed, which is very commonly found parasitic upon larger Algæ, either near low-water mark, or altogether submerged; its general form being remarkably characterized by a symmetry that extends also to the individual branches (Fig. 210, A), the ends of which, however, have a decayed look that seems to have suggested the name of the genus (from the Greek σφακελος, gangrene). This apparent decay really consists in the resolution of the endochrome of the terminal

cells into antherozoids, which, when mature, escape by an opening with a long tubular neck, which forms itself in the wall of the *sphacela*. The same happens with the terminal cells of the peculiar lateral branchlets, which are known as propagative buds; as is shown at B. The germ-cells have not been certainly recognised; but they are believed to be produced in what have been considered as propagative buds in other individuals.

328. In the *Fucaceæ*, the Generative apparatus is contained in the bulbose 'receptacles,' which are borne at the extremities of the fronds. In some species, as the *Fucus platycarpus*, the same receptacles contain both 'sperm-cells' and 'germ-cells;' in others, these

FIG. 211.

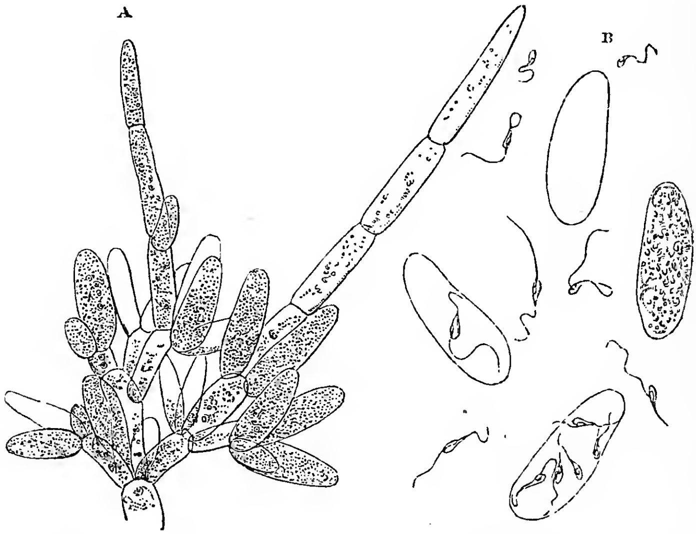


Vertical section of receptacle of *Fucus platycarpus*, lined with filaments, among which lie the antheridial cells, and the oögonia containing octospores.

two sexual elements are disposed in different receptacles on the same plant; whilst in the commonest of all, *F. vesiculosus* (bladder-

wrack), they are limited to different individuals. When a section is made through one of the flattened receptacles of *F. platycarpus*, its interior is seen to be a nearly globular cavity (Fig. 211), lined with filamentous cells, some of which are greatly elongated, so as to project through the pore by which the cavity opens on the surface. Among these are to be distinguished, towards the period of their maturity, certain filaments (Fig. 212, A), whose granular contents acquire an orange hue, and gradually shape themselves into oval bodies (B), each with an orange-coloured spot, and two long thread-like appendages, which, when discharged by the rupture of the containing cell, have for a time a rapid undulatory motion,

FIG. 212.



Antheridia and antherozoids of *Fucus platycarpus*:—A, branching articulated hairs, detached from the walls of the receptacle, bearing antheridia in different stages of development; B, antherozoids, some of them free, others still included in their antheridial cells.

whereby these 'antherozoids' are diffused through the surrounding liquid. Lying amidst the filamentous mass, near the walls of the cavity, are seen (Fig. 211) numerous dark pear-shaped bodies, which are the *oögonia*, or parent-cells of the 'germ-cells.' Each of these oögonia gives origin, by binary subdivision, to a cluster of eight germ-cells or oöspheres, which is thence known as an 'octospore;' and these are liberated from their envelopes before the act of fertilization takes place. This act consists in the swarming of the antherozoids over the surface of the oöspheres, to which they communicate a rotatory motion by the vibration of their own filaments. In the hermaphrodite Fuci it takes place within the receptacles, so that the oöspheres do not make their exit from the cavity until after they have been fecundated; but in the monœcious and

diœcious species, each kind of receptacle separately discharges its contents, which come into contact on their exterior. The antheridial cells are usually ejected entire, but soon rupture so as to give exit to their filaments; and the 'octospores' separate into their component oöspheres, which, meeting with antherozoids, are fecundated by them. The fertilized oöspores soon acquire a new and firmer envelope; and, under favourable circumstances, they speedily begin to develope themselves into new plants. The first change is the projection and narrowing of one end into a kind of footstalk, by which the oöspore attaches itself, its form passing from the globular to the pear-shaped; a partition is speedily observable in its interior, its single cell being subdivided into two; and by a continuation of a like process of duplication, first a filament and then a frondose expansion is produced, which gradually evolves itself into the likeness of the parent plant.

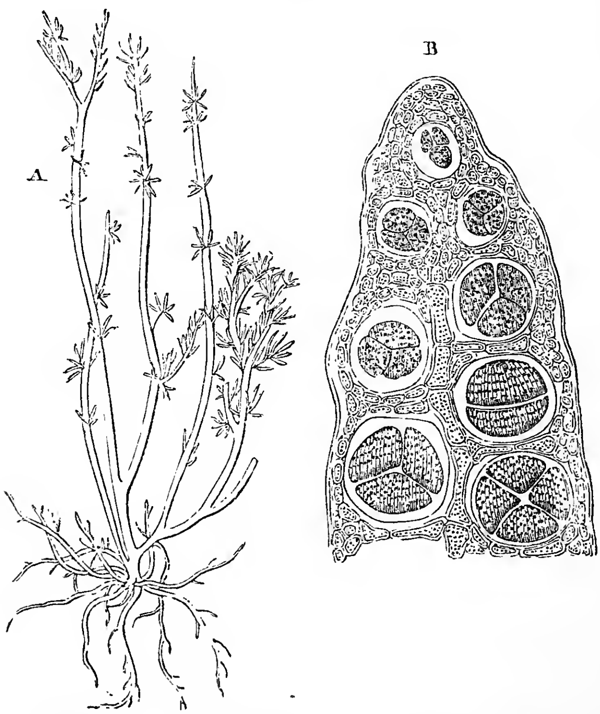
329. The whole of this process may be watched without difficulty, by obtaining specimens of *F. vesiculosus* at the period at which the fructification is shown to be mature by the recent discharge of the contents of the conceptacles in little gelatinous masses on their orifices; for if some of the spores which have been set free from the olive-green (female) receptacles be placed in a drop of sea-water in a very shallow cell, and a small quantity of the mass of antherozoids, set free from the orange-yellow (male) receptacles, be mingled with the fluid, they will speedily be observed, with the aid of a magnifying power of 200 or 250 diameters, to go through the actions just described; and the subsequent processes of germination may be watched by means of the 'growing-slide.'* The winter months, from December to March, are the most favourable for the observation of these phenomena; but where Fuci abound, some individuals will usually be found in fructification at almost any period of the year.—Even in the *Fucaceæ*, according to recent observations, a multiplication by 'zoöspores,' like that of *Ulvaceæ* (§ 245), also takes place; these bodies being produced within certain of the cells that form the superficial layer of the frond, and swimming about freely for a time after their emission, until they fix themselves and begin to grow. That they are to be considered as *gemmæ* (or buds), and not as generative products, appears certain from the fact that they will vegetate without the assistance of any other bodies; whereas the antherozoids of themselves never come to anything; while the octospores undergo no further changes, but decay away (as M. Thuret has experimentally ascertained) if not fecundated by the antherozoids.

330. Among the *Rhodospermeæ*, or red Sea-weeds, also, we find various simple but most beautiful forms, which connect this group with the more elevated Protophytes, especially with the family *Chætophoraceæ* (§ 256); such delicate feathery or leaf-like fronds belong for the most part to the family *Ceramiaceæ*, some members

* A shallow *cell* should be used, so as to keep the pressure of the thin glass from the minute bodies beneath, whose movements it will otherwise impede.

of which are found upon every part of our coasts, attached either to rocks or stones or to larger Algæ, and often themselves affording an attachment to Zoophytes and Polyzoa. They chiefly live in deeper water than the other sea-weeds; and their richest tints are only exhibited when they grow under the shade of projecting rocks, or of larger dark-coloured Algæ. Hence in growing them artificially in Aquaria, it is requisite to protect them from an excess of light; since otherwise they become unhealthy. Various species of the genera *Ceramium*, *Griffithsia*, *Callithamnion*, and *Ptilota*, are extremely beautiful objects for low powers, when mounted in glycerine jelly.—The only mode of propagation which was until recently known to exist in this group, is the production and liberation of 'tetraspores' (Fig. 213, B), formed by the binary

Fig. 213.

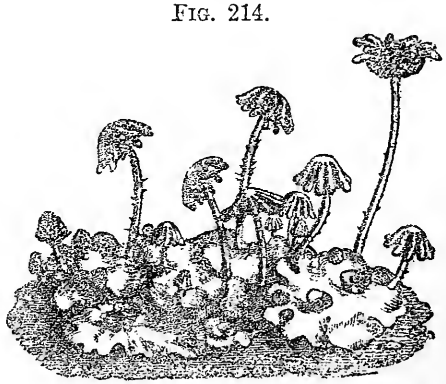


Arrangement of Tetraspores in *Carpocaulon mediterraneum*:—A, entire plant; B, longitudinal section of spore-bearing branch. (N.B. Where only three tetraspores are seen, it is merely because the fourth did not happen to be so placed as to be seen at the same view.)

subdivision of the endochromes of special cells, which sometimes form part of the general substance of the frond, but sometimes congregate in particular parts, or are restricted to special branches. If the second binary division takes place in the same direction as

the first, the spores forming the tetraspore are arranged in linear series; but if its direction is transverse to that of the first, the four spores cluster together. These, when separated by the rupture of their envelope, do not comport themselves as 'zoöspores,' but, being destitute of propulsive organs, are passively dispersed by the motion of the sea itself. Their production, however, taking place by simple cell-division, and not being the result of any form of sexual conjunction, the 'tetraspores' of the *Rhodospermeæ* must be regarded, like the 'zoöspores' of the *Ulvaceæ*, as *gonidia*, analogous rather to the *buds* than to the *seeds* of higher Plants.—It is now known that a true Generative process takes place in this group; but the sexual organs are not usually found on the plants which produce tetraspores; so that there would appear to be an alternation between the two modes of propagation. Antheridial cells are found, sometimes on the general surface of the frond, more commonly at the ends of branches, and occasionally in special conceptacles. Their contents, however, are not motile 'antherozoids,' but minute rounded particles having no power of spontaneous movement. Sometimes on the same individuals as the antheridia, and sometimes on different ones, are organs that curiously prefigure the pistil in flowering plants; each consisting of a projecting cluster of cells, from which arises a long cell-tube termed the *trichogyne*. Fertilization is effected by the attachment of one of the antheridial particles to the trichogyne, the walls of which are absorbed at that spot, so that the fertilizing material passes down its tube to the cluster of cells at its base; and 'oöspores' are thus formed either among these or in adjacent cells.—In the true *Corallines*, which are *Rhodosperms* whose tissue is consolidated by calcareous deposit, the tetraspores are developed within a *ceramidium*, which is an urn-shaped case, furnished with a pore at its summit, and containing a tuft of pear-shaped spores arising from the base of its cavity.

FIG. 214.



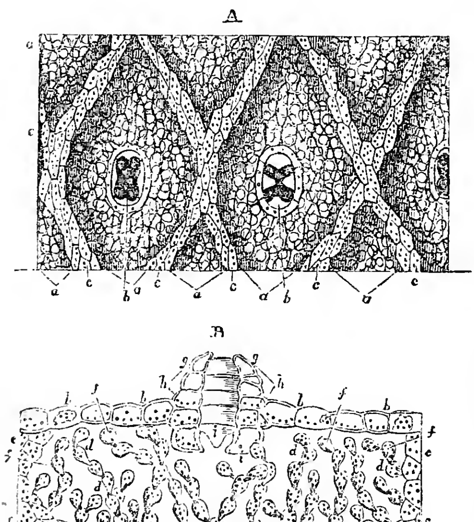
Frond of *Marchantia polymorpha*, with gemmiparous conceptacles, and lobed receptacles bearing Archegonia.

331. *Hepaticæ.* — Quitting now the Algal type, and entering the series of Terrestrial Cryptogams, we have first to notice the little group of *Hepaticæ* or Liverworts, which is intermediate between Lichens and ordinary Mosses; — agreeing rather with the Algal thallus of the former in its general mode of growth, whilst approaching the latter in its fructification. This group presents numerous objects of great interest to the Microscopist; and no species is richer in these

than the very common *Marchantia polymorpha*, which may often be found growing between the paving-stones of damp court-yards, but which particularly luxuriates in the neighbourhood of springs or waterfalls, where its lobed fronds are found covering extensive surfaces of moist rock or soil, adhering by the radical (root) filaments which arise from their lower surface. At the period of fructification these fronds send up stalks; which carry at their summits either round shield-like disks, or radiating bodies that bear some resemblance to a wheel without its tire (Fig. 214). The former carry the male organs, or *antheridia;* while the latter in the first instance bear the female organs, or *archegonia*, which afterwards give place to the *sporangia* or spore-cases.*

332. The green surface of the frond of *Marchantia* is seen under a low magnifying power to be divided into minute diamond-shaped spaces (Fig. 215, A, *a*, *a*) bounded by raised bands (*c*, *c*); every one of these spaces has in its centre a curious brownish-coloured body (*b*, *b*), with an opening in its middle, which allows a few small green cells to be seen through it. When a thin vertical section is made of the frond (B), it is seen that each of the lozenge shaped divisions of its surface corresponds with an air-chamber in its interior, which is bounded below by a floor (*a*, *a*) of closely-set cells, from whose under surface the radical filaments arise; at the sides by walls (*c*, *c*) of similar solid parenchyma, the projection of whose summits forms the raised bands on the surface; and above by an epidermis (*b*, *b*) formed of a single layer of cells; whilst its interior is occupied by a loosely arranged parenchyma, composed of branching rows of cells (*f*, *f*) that seem to spring from the floor,—these

FIG. 215.

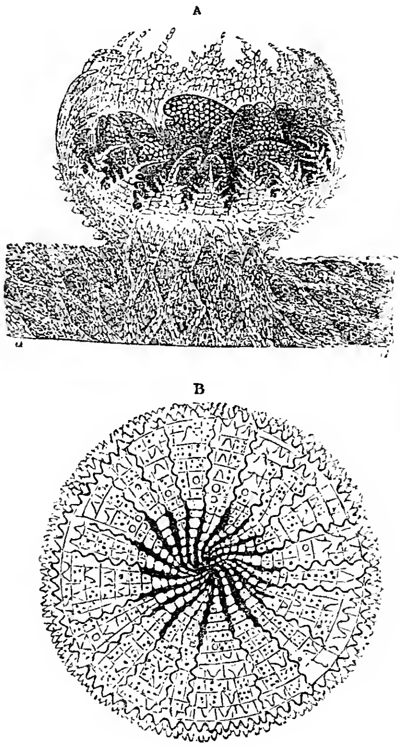


Structure of frond of *Marchantia polymorpha*:—A, portion seen from above; *a*,*a*, lozenge-shaped divisions; *b*,*b*, stomata in the centre of the lozenges; *c*, *c*, greenish bands separating the lozenges:—B, vertical section of the frond, showing *a*,*a*, the dense layer of cellular tissue forming the floor of the air-chamber, *d*, *d*; the epidermic layer, *b*, *b*, forming its roof; *c*, *c*, its walls; *f*, *f*, loose cells in its interior; *g*, stoma divided perpendicularly; *h*, rings of cells forming its wall; *i*, cells forming the obturator-ring.

* In some species, the same shields bear both sets of organs; and in *Marchantia androgyna* we find the upper surface of one half of the pelta developing antheridia, whilst the under-surface of the other half bears archegonia.

cells being what are seen from above, when the observer looks down through the central aperture just mentioned. If the vertical section should happen to traverse one of the peculiar bodies which occupies the centres of the divisions, it will bring into view a structure of remarkable complexity. Each of these *stomata* (as they are termed, from the Greek στεμα, mouth) forms a sort of shaft (*g*), composed of four or five rings (like the 'courses' of bricks in a chimney) placed one upon the other (*h*), every ring being made up of four or five cells; and the lowest of these rings (*i*) appears to regulate the aperture, by the contraction or expansion of the cells which compose it, and is hence termed the 'obturator-ring.' In this manner each of the air-chambers of the frond is brought into communication with the external atmosphere, the degree of that communication being regulated by the limitation of the aperture. We shall hereafter find (§ 383) that the leaves of the higher Plants contain intercellular spaces, which also communicate with the exterior by stomata; but that the structure of these organs is far less complex in them, than in this humble Liverwort.

FIG. 216.



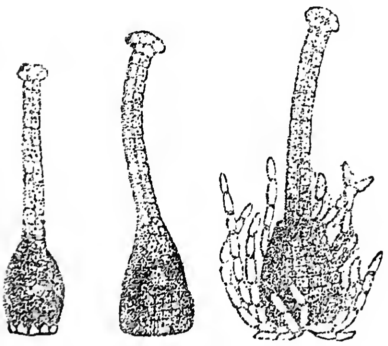
Gemmiparous Conceptacles of *Marchantia polymorpha*:—A, conceptacle fully expanded, rising from the surface of the frond, *a*, *a*, and containing gonidial disks already detached:—B, first appearance of conceptacle on the surface of the frond, showing the formation of its fringe by the splitting of the cuticle.

333. The frond of *Marchantia* usually bears upon its surface, as shown in Fig. 214, a number of little open basket-shaped *gemmiparous conceptacles* (Fig. 216), which may often be found in all stages of development, and are structures of singular beauty. They contain, when mature, a number of little green round or oblong discoidal *gemmæ*, each composed of two or more layers of cells; and their wall is surmounted by a glistening fringe of 'teeth,' whose edges are themselves regularly fringed with minute outgrowths. This fringe is at first formed by the splitting-up of the epidermis, as seen at B, at the time when the 'conceptacle' and its

contents are first making their way above the surface. The little disks which correspond with the *gonidia* of Lichens (§ 325), are at first evolved as single globular cells, supported upon other cells which form their footstalks; these single cells, undergoing duplicative subdivision, evolve themselves into the disks; and these disks, when mature, spontaneously detach themselves from their footstalks, and lie free within the cavity of the conceptacle. Most commonly they are at last washed out by rain, and are thus carried to different parts of the neighbouring soil, on which they grow very rapidly when well supplied with moisture; sometimes, however, they may be found growing whilst still contained within the conceptacles, forming natural grafts (so to speak) upon the stock from which they have been developed and detached; and many of the irregular lobes which the frond of the Marchantia puts forth, seem to have this origin.—The very curious observation was long ago made by Mirbel, who carefully watched the development of these *gemmæ*, that stomata are formed on the side which happens to be exposed to the light, and that root-fibres are put forth from the lower side; it being apparently a matter of indifference *which* side of the little disk is at first turned upwards, since each has the power of developing either stomata or root-fibres according to the influence it receives. After the tendency to the formation of these organs has once been given, however, by the sufficiently prolonged influence of light upon one side and of darkness and moisture on the other, any attempt to alter it is found to be vain; for if the surfaces of the young fronds be then inverted, a twisting growth soon restores them to their original aspect.

334. When the *Marchantia* vegetates in damp shady situations which are favourable to the nutritive processes, it does not readily produce the true Fructification, which is to be looked-for rather in plants growing in more exposed places. Each of the stalked peltate (shield-like) disks contains a number of flask-shaped cavities opening upon its upper surface, which are brought into view by a vertical section; and in each of these cavities is lodged an *antheridium*, composed of a mass of 'sperm-cells,' within which are developed 'antherozoids' like those of *Chara* (Fig. 154 H), and surmounted by a long neck that projects through the mouth of the flask-shaped cavity. The wheel-like receptacles (Fig. 214), on the other hand, bear on their under surface, at an early stage, concealed between membranes that connect the origins of the lobes with one

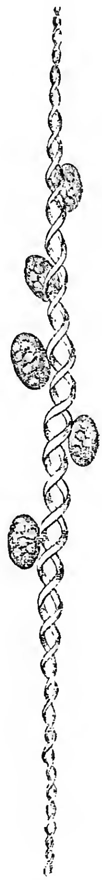
FIG. 217.



Archegonia of *Marchantia polymorpha*, in successive stages of development.

another, a set of *archegonia*, shaped like flasks with elongated necks (Fig. 217); each of these has in its interior an 'oösphere' or 'germ-cell,' to which a canal leads down from the extremity of the neck, and which is fertilized by the penetration of the antherozoids through this canal until they reach it. Instead, however, of at once evolving itself into a new plant resembling its parent, the fertilized oösphere or 'embryo-cell' developes itself into a mass of cells enclosed within a capsule, which is termed a *sporangium;* and thus the mature receptacle, in place of archegonia, bears capsules or sporangia, each of them filled with an aggregation of cells that constitute the immediate progeny of the original germ-cell. These cells, discharged by the bursting of the sporangium, are of two kinds: namely, *spores*, or gonidial cells, enclosed in firm yellow envelopes; and *elaters*, which are ovoidal cells, each containing a double spiral fibre coiled up in its interior. This fibre is so elastic, that, when the surrounding pressure is withdrawn by the bursting of the sporangium, the spires extend themselves (Fig. 218), tearing apart the cell-membrane; and they do this so suddenly as to jerk forth the spores which may be adherent to their coils, and thus to assist in their dispersion. The spores, when subjected to moisture, with a moderate amount of light and warmth, develope themselves into little collections of cells, which gradually assume the form of flattened fronds; and thus the species is very extensively multiplied, every one of the aggregate of spores which is the product of a single germ-cell, being capable of giving origin to an independent individual.

Fig. 218.

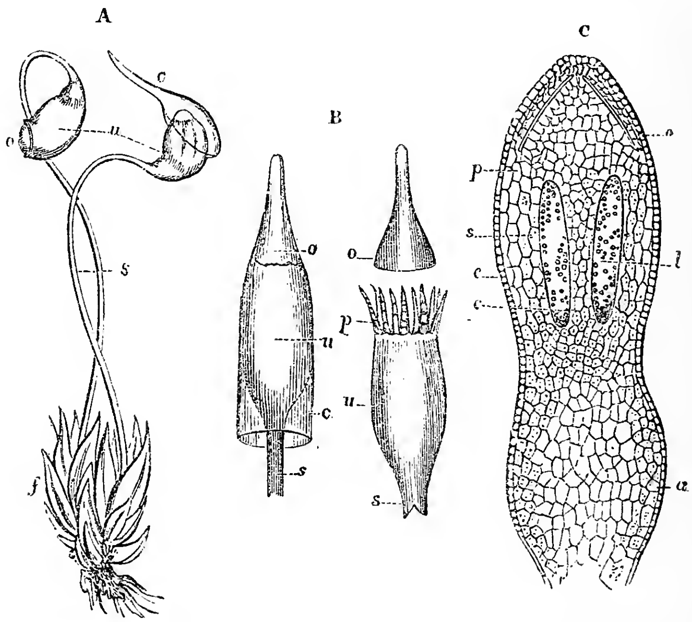


Elater and Spores of *Marchantia.*

335. *Musci.*—There is not one of the tribe of *Mosses* whose external organs do not serve as beautiful objects when viewed with low powers of the Microscope; while their more concealed wonders are admirably fitted for the detailed scrutiny of the practised observer. Mosses always possess a distinct axis of growth, commonly more or less erect, on which the minute and delicately-formed leaves are arranged with great regularity. The stem shows some indication of the separation of a *cortical* or bark-like portion from the *medullary* or pith-like, by the intervention of a circle of bundles of elongated cells, which seem to prefigure the woody portion of the stem of higher plants, and from which prolongations pass into the leaves, so as to afford them a sort of midrib. The leaf usually consists of either a single or a double layer of cells, having flattened sides by which they adhere one to another: they rarely present

any distinct epidermic layer; but such a layer, perforated by stomata of simple structure, is commonly found on the *setæ* or bristle-like footstalks bearing the fructification, and sometimes on the midribs of the leaves. The root-fibres of Mosses, like those of Marchantia, consist of long tubular cells of extreme transparence, within which the protoplasm may frequently be seen to circulate, as in the elongated cells of Chara; and according to Dr. Hicks,* it is not uncommon for portions of the protoplasmic substance to pass into an amœboid condition resembling that of the gonidia of

FIG. 219.

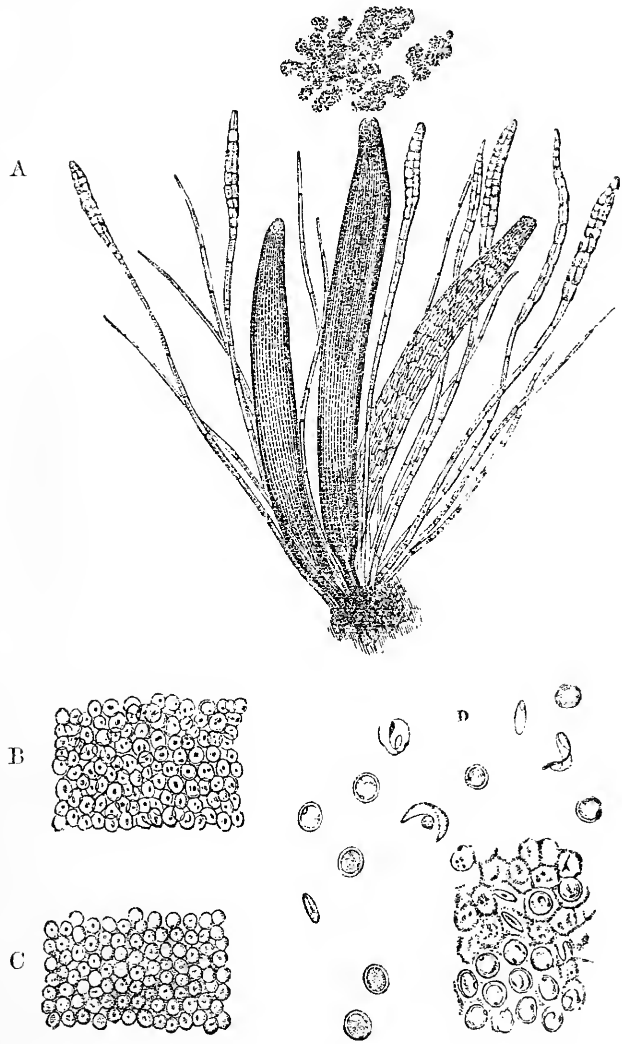


Structure of Mosses:—A, Plant of *Funaria hygrometrica*, showing *f* the leaves, *u* the urns supported upon the setæ or footstalks *s*, closed by the operculum *o*, and covered by the calyptra *c*:—B, Urns of *Encalyptra vulgaris*, one of them closed and covered with the calyptra, the other open; *u*, *u*, the urns; *o*, *o*, the opercula; *c*, calyptra; *p*, peristome; *s*, *s*, setæ:—C, longitudinal section of very young urn of *Splachnum*; *a*, solid tissue forming the lower part of the capsule; *c*, columella; *l*, loculus or space around it for the development of the spores; *e*, epidermic layer of cells, thickened at the top to form the operculum *o*; *p*, two intermediate layers, from which the peristome will be formed; *s*, inner layer of cells forming the wall of the loculus.

Volvox (§ 242). The protoplasm first detaches itself from contact with the cell-wall, and collects itself into ovoid masses of various sizes; these gradually change their colour to red or reddish-brown,

* "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Science," N.S., Vol. ii. (1862), p. 96.

FIG. 220.



Antheridia and Antherozoids of *Polytrichum commune:*—A, group of antheridia, mingled with hairs and sterile filaments (paraphyses): of the three antheridia, the central one is in the act of discharging its contents; that on the left is not yet mature; while that on the right has already emptied itself, so that the cellular structure of its walls becomes apparent;—B, cellular contents of an antheridium, previously to the development of the antherozoids;—C, the same, showing the first appearance of the antherozoids;—D, the same, mature and discharging the antherozoids.

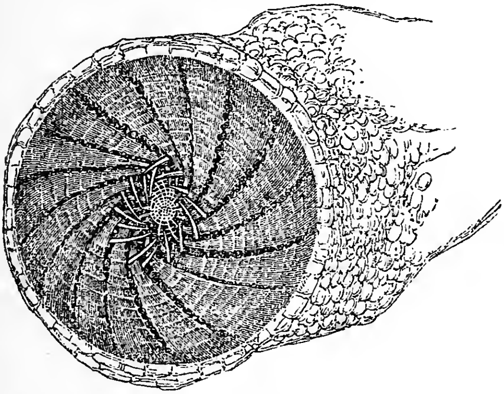
subsequently, however, becoming almost colourless; and they protrude and retract processes, exactly after the manner of *Amœbæ*, occasionally elongating themselves into an almost linear form, and travelling up and down in the interior of the tubular cells. This kind of movement was observed by Dr. Hicks to subside gradually, the masses of protoplasm then returning to their ovoid form; but their exterior subsequently became invested with minute cilia, by which they were kept in constant agitation within their containing cells. As to their subsequent history, we are at present entirely in the dark; and the verification and extension of Dr. Hicks's observations constitute an object well worthy of the attention of Microscopists.

336. What has commonly been regarded as the 'fructification' of Mosses—namely, the 'urn' or 'capsule' filled with sporules, which is borne at the top of a long footstalk that springs from the centre of a cluster of leaves (Fig. 219, A)—is not the real fructification, but its product; for Mosses, like Liverworts, possess both *antheridia* and *archegonia*, although they are by no means conspicuous. These organs are sometimes found in the same envelope (or *perigone*), sometimes on different parts of the same plant, sometimes only on different individuals; but in either case they are usually situated close to the axis, among the bases of the leaves.—The 'antheridia' are globular, oval, or elongated bodies (Fig. 220, A), composed of aggregations of cells, of which the exterior form a sort of capsule, whilst the interior are sperm-cells,' each of which, as it comes to maturity, developes within itself an 'antherozoid' (B, C, D); and the antherozoids, set free by the rupture of the cells within which they are formed, make their escape by a passage that opens for them at the summit of the antheridium. The antheridia are generally surrounded by a cluster of hair-like filaments, composed of cells joined together (Fig. 220, A), which are called *paraphyses;* these seem to be 'sterile' or undeveloped antheridia. The 'archegonia' bear a general resemblance to those of *Marchantia* (Fig. 214); and the fertilization of their contained 'oöspheres' or 'germ-cells' is accomplished in the manner already described. The fertilized 'embryo-cell' becomes gradually developed by cell-division into a conical body elevated upon a stalk; and this at length tears across the walls of the flask-shaped archegonium by a circular fissure, carrying the higher part upwards on its summit as a *calyptra* or 'hood' (Fig. 219, B, *c*), while the lower part remains to form a kind of collar round the base of the stalk.

337. The Urn or 'spore-capsule,' which is thus the immediate product of the generative act, is closed at its summit by an *operculum* or lid (Fig. 219 B, *o*, *o*), which falls off when the contents of the capsule are mature, so as to give them free exit; and the mouth thus laid open is surrounded by a beautiful toothed fringe, which is termed the *peristome*. This fringe, as seen in its original undisturbed position (Fig. 221), is a beautiful object for the Binocular Microscope; it is very 'hygometric,' executing, when breathed-on,

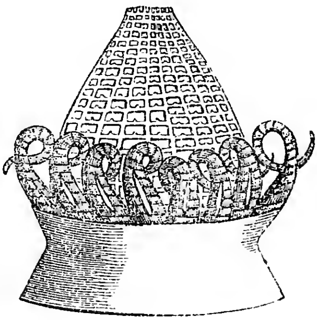
a curious movement, which is probably concerned in the dispersion of the spores. In Figs. 222–224, are shown three different forms

Fig. 221.



Mouth of capsule of *Funaria*, showing the Peristome *in situ*.

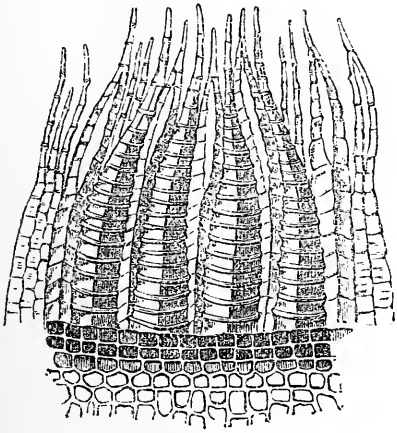
Fig. 222.



Double Peristome of *Fontinalis antipyretica*.

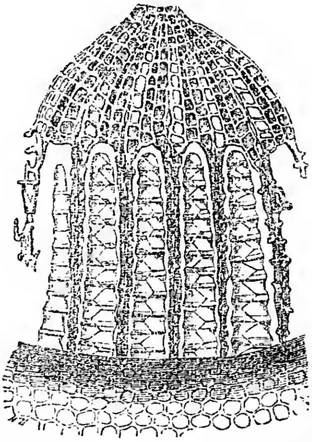
of peristome, spread out and detached, illustrating the varieties which it exhibits in different genera of Mosses;—varieties whose existence and readiness of recognition render them characters of extreme value to the systematic Botanist, whilst they furnish

Fig. 223.



Double Peristome of *Bryum intermedium*.

Fig. 224.



Double Peristome of *Cinclidium arcticum*.

objects of great interest and beauty for the Microscopist. The peristome seems always to be originally double, one layer springing from the outer, and the other from the inner, of two layers of cells which may be always distinguished in the immature capsule

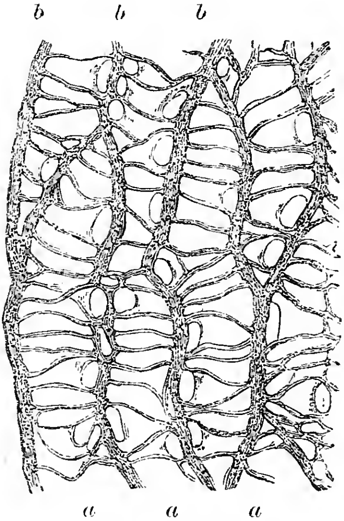
(Fig. 219, C, *p*); but one or other of these is frequently wanting at the time of maturity, and sometimes both are obliterated, so that there is no peristome at all. The number of the 'teeth' is always a multiple of 4, varying from 4 to 64: sometimes they are prolonged into straight or twisted hairs.—The *spores*, or gonidial cells, are contained in the upper part of the capsule, where they are clustered round a central pillar, which is termed the *columella*. In the young capsule the whole mass is nearly solid (Fig. 219, C), the space (*l*) in which the spores are developed being very small; but this gradually augments, the walls becoming more condensed; and at the time of maturity the interior of the capsule is almost entirely occupied by the spores. These are formed in groups of four, by the duplicative subdivision of the 'mother-cells' which first differentiate themselves from those forming the capsule itself. Thus the 'spore-capsule' in Liverworts and Mosses, being the immediate product of the act of fertilization (which constitutes the point of departure of each 'new generation'), is to be considered as the *progeny* of the plant that bears it; which, supplying the nutriment at whose expense it developes itself, acts as its 'nurse.'

338. The development of the spore into a new plant commences with the rupture of its firm, yellowish-brown outer coat, and the protrusion of its green cell-wall proper; from the projecting extremity of which new cells are put forth by a process of out-growth, which form a sort of Confervoid filament (as in Fig. 231, C). At certain points of this filament, its component cells multiply by subdivision, so as to form rounded clusters, from every one of which an independent plant may arise; so that several individuals may be evolved from a single spore. And as a numerous aggregate of spores is developed, as we have seen, from a single germ-cell, the rapid extension of the Mosses is thus secured, although no separate individual ever attains more than a very limited size.

339. The tribe of *Sphagnaceæ*, or 'Bog-Mosses,' is now separated by Muscologists from true Mosses, on account of the marked differences by which they are distinguished; the three groups, *Hepaticæ*, *Bryaceæ* (or ordinary Mosses), and *Sphagnaceæ*, being ranked as together forming the Muscal Alliance. The stem of the *Sphagnaceæ* is more distinctly differentiated than that of the *Bryaceæ* into the central or medullary, the outer or cortical, and the intermediate or woody portions; and a very rapid passage of fluid takes place through its elongated cells, especially in the medullary and cortical layers, so that if one of the plants be placed dry in a flask of water, with its capitulum of leaves bent downwards, the water will speedily drop from this until the flask is emptied. The leaf-cells of the *Sphagnaceæ* exhibit a very curious departure from the ordinary type: for instead of being small and polygonal, they are large and elongated (Fig. 225); they contain no chlorophyll, but have spiral fibres loosely coiled in their interior; and their membranous walls have large rounded apertures, by which their cavities

freely communicate with one another, as is sometimes curiously evidenced by the passage of Wheel-Animalcules that make their habitation in these chambers. Between these coarsely-spiral cells are some thick-walled narrow elongated cells, containing chlorophyll; these, which give to the leaf its firmness, do not, in the very young leaf (as Prof. Huxley first pointed out*) differ much in appearance from the others, the peculiarities of both being evolved by a gradual process of differentiation. The antheridia or male organs of *Sphagnaceæ* resemble those of Liverworts, rather than those of Mosses, in their form and arrangement; they are grouped in catkins at the tips of lateral branches, each of the imbricated perigonal leaves enclosing a single globose antheridium on a slender footstalk; and they are surrounded by very long branched paraphyses of cobweb-like tenuity. The female organs, or archegonia, which do not differ in structure from those of Mosses, are grouped together in a sheath of deep green leaves at the end of one of the short lateral branchlets at the side of the capitulum or summit-crown of leaves. The two sets of organs are always distributed on different branches, and in some instances on different plants. The 'capsule,' which is formed as the product of the impregnation of the germ-cell, is very uniform in all the species; being almost spherical, with a slightly convex lid, without beak or point, and showing no trace of a peristome; and the spores it contains are produced in groups of four (as in Mosses) around a hemispherical 'columella.' Besides the ordinary capsules, however, the *Sphagnaceæ* develope a smaller set of *sporogonia*, in which 'microspores' are formed by a further division of the mother-cells; the significance of these is unknown. The ordinary spores, when germinating, do not produce the branched confervoid filament of true Mosses; but, if growing on wet peat, evolve themselves into a lobed foliaceous 'prothallium,' resembling the frond of Liverworts; whilst, if they develope in water, a single long filament is formed, of which the lower end gives off root-fibres, while the upper enlarges into a nodule from

FIG. 225.



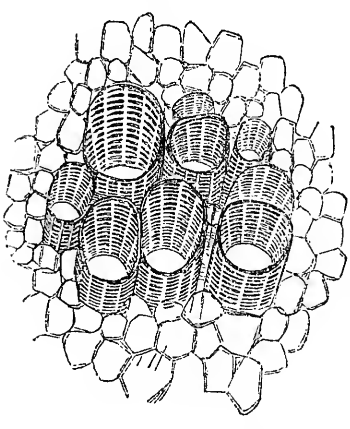
Portion of the leaf of *Sphagnum*; showing the large cells, *a*, *a*, *a*., with spiral fibres and communicating apertures; and the intervening bands, *b*, *b*, *b*, composed of small elongated cells.

* See his important Article on 'The Cell-Theory' in the "British and Foreign Medico-Chirurgical Review," Vol. xii. (Oct. 1853), pp. 306, 307.

which the young plant is evolved. In either case, the prothallium and its temporary roots wither away as soon as the young plant begins to branch.—From their extraordinary power of imbibing and holding water, the *Sphagnaceæ* are of great importance in the economy of Nature; clothing with vegetation many areas which would otherwise be sterile, and serving as reservoirs for storing up moisture for the use of higher forms of vegetation.*

340. *Filices.*—In the general structure of *Ferns* we find a much nearer approximation to Flowering plants; but this does not extend to their Reproductive apparatus, which is formed upon a type essentially the same as that of Mosses, though evolved at a very different period of life. As the tissues of which their fabrics are composed are essentially the same as those to be described in the next chapter, it will not be requisite here to dwell upon them. The Stem (where it exists) is for the most part made up of cellular parenchyma, which is separated into a cortical and a medullary portion by the interposition of a circular series of fibro-vascular bundles containing true Woody tissue and Ducts. These bundles form a kind of irregular network, from which prolongations are given off that pass into the leaf-stalks, and thence into the midrib and its lateral branches; and it is their peculiar arrangement in the leaf-stalks, which gives to the transverse section of these the figured marking commonly known as "King Charles in the oak." A thin section, especially if somewhat oblique (Fig. 226), displays extremely well the peculiar character of the ducts of the Fern; which are termed 'scalariform,' from the resemblance of the regular markings on their walls to the rungs of a ladder.

Fig. 226.



Oblique section of footstalk of *Fern-leaf*, showing bundle of Scalariform Ducts.

341. What is usually considered the *fructification* of the Ferns affords a most beautiful and readily-prepared class of opaque objects for the lower powers of the Microscope; nothing more being necessary than to lay a fragment of the frond that bears it upon the glass Stage-plate, or to hold it in the Stage-forceps, and to throw an adequate light upon it by the Side-condenser. It usually presents itself in the form of isolated spots on the under surface of the frond, termed *sori*, as in the common *Polypodium* (Fig. 227), and in the *Aspidium* (Fig. 229): but sometimes these

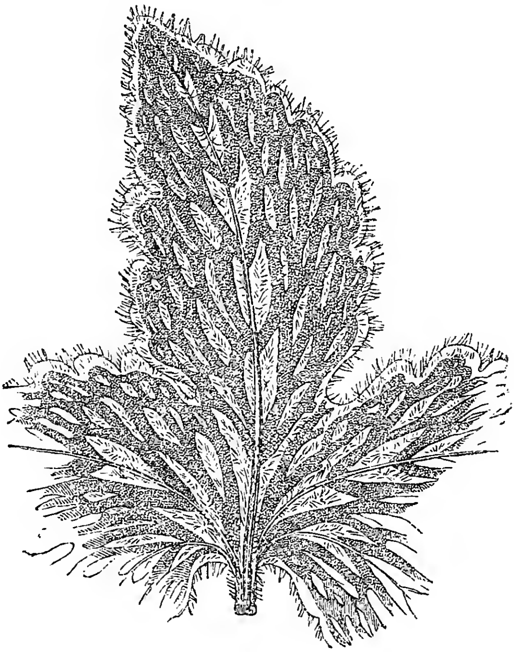
* See Dr. Braithwaite's Papers on the *Sphagnaceæ* in the "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. vi., *et seq.*

'sori' are elongated into bands, as in the common *Scolopendrum* (hart's-tongue); and these may coalesce with each other, so as

FIG. 227.

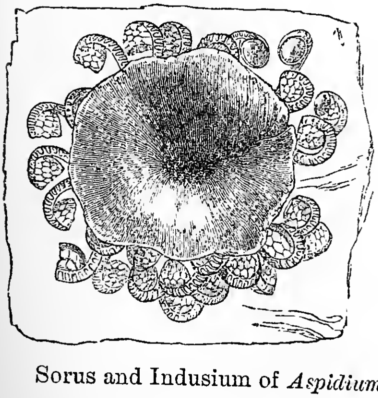
Leaflet of *Polypodium*, with Sori.

FIG. 228.



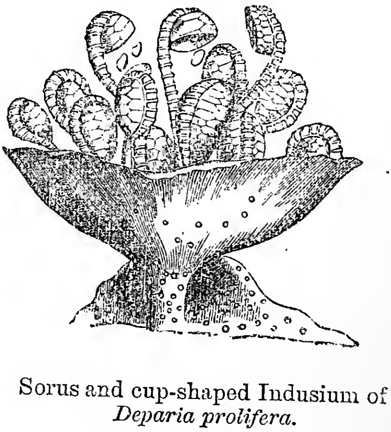
Portion of Frond of *Hæmionitis*, with Sori.

FIG. 229.



Sorus and Indusium of *Aspidium*.

FIG. 230.



Sorus and cup-shaped Indusium of *Deparia prolifera*.

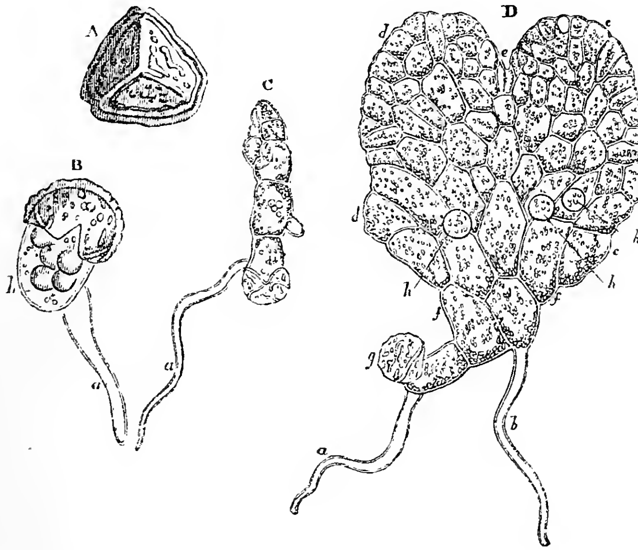
almost to cover the surface of the frond with a network, as in *Hæmionitis* (Fig. 228); or they may form merely a single band

along its borders, as in the common *Pteris* (brake-fern). The sori are sometimes 'naked' on the under surface of the fronds; but they are frequently covered with a delicate membrane termed the *indusium*, which may either form a sort of cap upon the summit of each sorus, as in *Aspidium* (Fig. 229), or a long fold, as in *Scolopendrum* and *Pteris;* or a sort of cup, as in *Deparia* (Fig. 230). Each of these sori, when sufficiently magnified, is found to be made up of a multitude of *thecæ* or spore-capsules (Figs. 229, 230), which are sometimes closely attached to the surface of the frond, but more commonly spring from it by a pedicle or footstalk. The wall of the theca is composed of flattened cells, applied to each other by their edges; but there is generally one row of these thicker and larger than the rest, which springs from the pedicle, and is continued over the summit of the capsule, so as to form a projecting ring, which is known as the *annulus* (Fig. 230). This ring has an elasticity superior to that of all the rest of the capsular wall, causing it to split across when mature, so that the contained spores may escape; and in many instances the two halves of the capsule are carried widely apart from each other, the fissure extending to such a depth as to separate them completely.—In *Osmunda* (the so-called 'flowering-fern') and *Ophioglossum* (adder's tongue), the thecæ have no annulus.—It will frequently happen that specimens of Fern-fructification gathered for the Microscope will be found to have all the capsules burst and the spores dispersed, whilst in others less advanced the capsules may all be closed; others, however, may often be met with in which some of the capsules are closed and others are open; and if these be watched with sufficient attention, the rupture of some of the thecæ and the dispersion of the spores may be observed to take place whilst the specimen is under observation in the field of the Microscope. In sori whose capsules have all burst, the annuli connecting their two halves are the most conspicuous objects, looking; when a strong light is thrown upon them, like strongly-banded worms of a bright brown hue. This is particularly the case in *Scolopendrum*, whose elongated sori are remarkably beautiful objects for the Microscope in all their stages; until quite mature, however, they need to be brought into view by turning back the two indusial folds that cover them. The commonest Ferns, indeed, which are found in almost every hedge, furnish objects of no less beauty than those yielded by the rarest exotics; and it is in every respect a most valuable training to the young, to teach them how much may be found to interest, when looked for with intelligent eyes, even in the most familiar, and therefore disregarded, specimens of Nature's handiwork.

342. The 'spores' (Fig. 231, A) set free by the bursting of the thecæ, usually have a somewhat angular form, and are invested by a yellowish or brownish outer coat, which is marked very much in the manner of pollen-grains (Fig. 277) with points, streaks, ridges, or reticulations. When placed upon a damp surface, and exposed

to a sufficiency of light and warmth, the spore begins to 'germinate;' the first indication of its vegetative activity being a slight enlargement, which is manifested in the rounding-off of its angles. This is followed by the putting-forth of a tubular prolongation (B, *a*) of the internal cell-wall through an aperture in the outer spore-coat; and moisture being absorbed through this, the cell becomes

FIG. 231.

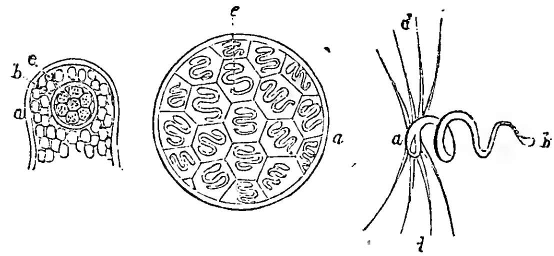


Development of Prothallium of *Pteris serrulata*:—A, Spore set free from the theca;—B, Spore beginning to germinate, putting forth the tubular prolongation *a*, from the principal cell *b*;—C, first-formed linear series of cells;—D, Prothallium taking the form of a leaf-like expansion; *a*, first, and *b*, second radical fibre; *c*, *d*, the two lobes, and *e*, the indentation between them; *f*, *f*, first-formed part of the prothallium; *g*, external coat of the original spore; *h*, *h*, antheridia.

so distended as to burst the external unyielding integument, and soon begins to elongate itself in a direction opposite to that of the root-fibre. A production of new cells by subdivision then takes place from its growing extremity: this at first proceeds in a single series, so as to form a kind of confervoid filament (C); but the multiplication of cells by subdivison soon takes place transversely as well as longitudinally, so that a flattened leaf-like expansion (D) is produced, so closely resembling that of a young *Marchantia* as to be readily mistaken for it. This expansion, which is termed the *prothallium*, varies in its configuration, in different species; but its essential structure always remains the same. From its under surface are developed not merely the root-fibres (*a*, *b*), which serve at the same time to fix it in the soil and to supply it with moisture,

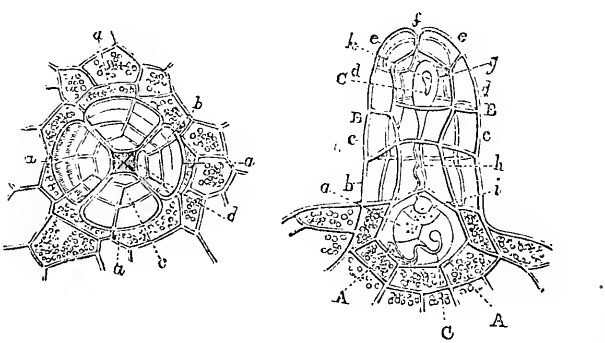
but also the *antheridia* and *archegonia* which constitute the true representatives of the essential parts of the Flower of higher Plants.

Fig. 232.



Development of the Antheridia and Antherozoids of *Pteris serrulata*:—A, projection of one of the cells of the prothallium, showing the antheridial cell *b*, with its sperm-cells *e*, within the cavity of the original cell *a*;—B, Antheridium completely developed; *a*, wall of antheridial cell; *e*, sperm-cells, each enclosing an antherozoid;—C, Antherozoid more highly magnified, showing its large extremity *a*, its small extremity *b*, and its cilia *d*, *d*.

Fig. 233.



Archegonium of *Pteris serrulata*:—A, as seen from above; *a*, *a*, *a*, cells surrounding the base of the cavity; *b*, *c*, *d*, successive layers of cells, the highest enclosing a quadrangular orifice:—B, side view, showing A, A, cavity containing the germ-cell, *a*; B, B, walls of the archegonium, made up of the four layers of cells, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, and having an opening, *f*, on the summit: C, C, antherozoids within the cavity; *g*, large extremity; *h*, thread-like portion; *i*, small extremity in contact with the germ-cell, and dilated.

Some of the former may be distinguished at an early period of the development of the prothallium (*h*, *h*); and at the time of its complete evolution these bodies are seen in considerable numbers,

especially about the origins of the root-fibres. Each has its origin in a peculiar protrusion that takes place from one of the cells of the prothallium (Fig. 232, A, *a*): this is at first entirely filled with chlorophyll-granules; but soon a peculiar free cell (*b*) is seen in its interior, filled with mucilage and colourless granules. This cell gradually becomes filled with another brood of young cells (*e*), and increases considerably in its dimensions, so as to fill the projection which encloses it: this part of the original cavity is now cut off from that of the cell of which it was an offshoot, and the antheridium henceforth ranks as a distinct and independent organ. Each of the sperm-cells (B, *e*) included within the antheridial cell, is seen, as it approaches maturity, to contain a spirally-coiled filament; and when set free by the bursting of the antheridium, the sperm-cells themselves burst, and give exit to their antherozoids (C), which execute rapid movements of rotation on their axes, partly dependent on the six long cilia with which they are furnished.

343. The *archegonia* are fewer in number, and are found upon a different part of the prothallium. Each of them originates in a single cell of its superficial layer, which undergoes subdivision by a horizontal partition. Of the two cells thus produced, the upper gives origin, by successive subdivisions, to the 'neck' of the archegonium, which, when fully developed (Fig. 233), is composed of twelve or more cells, built up in layers of four cells each, one upon another, so as to form a kind of chimney or shaft, having a central passage that leads down to a cavity at its base. The lower of the two first-formed cells becomes the 'central cell' of the archegonium; and this again undergoing horizontal subdivision, the lower half becomes the oösphere or germ-cell, whilst the upper extends itself into the 'neck,' and forms a canal filled with mucilaginous protoplasm, through which the antherozoids make their way to the oösphere lying at its bottom (Fig. 233 B, *a*). The oösphere, when fertilized by the penetration of the antherozoids, becomes the 'embryo-cell' of a new plant, the development of which speedily commences.*—In the aberrant group of *Ophioglosseæ* (Adders'

* The study of the development of the spores of Ferns, and of the act of fertilization and of its products, may be conveniently prosecuted as follows:—Let a frond of a Fern whose fructification is mature be laid upon a piece of fine paper, with its spore-bearing surface downwards; in the course of a day or two this paper will be found to be covered with a very fine brownish dust, which consists of the discharged spores. This must be carefully collected, and should be spread upon the surface of a smoothed fragment of porous sandstone, the stone being placed in a saucer, the bottom of which is covered with water; and a glass tumbler being inverted over it, the requisite supply of moisture is ensured, and the spores will germinate luxuriantly. Some of the prothallia soon advance beyond the rest; and at the time when the advanced ones have long ceased to produce antheridia, and bear abundance of archegonia, those which have remained behind in their growth are beginning to be covered with antheridia. If the crop be now kept with little moisture for several weeks, and then suddenly watered, a large number of antheridia and archegonia simultaneously open; and in a few hours afterwards, the surface of the larger prothallia will be found almost covered with moving antherozoids. Such prothallia

tongue ferns), the development of the prothallium takes place underground, in the form of a small roundish tuber, composed of parenchymatous tissue containing no chlorophyll, and producing antheridia and archegonia on its upper surface.

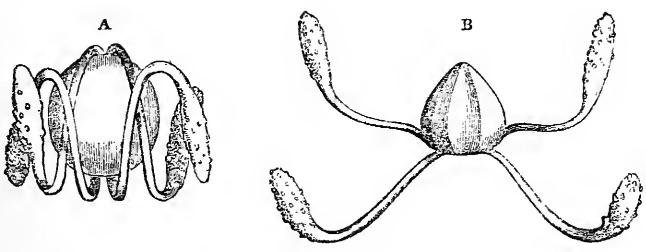
344. The early development of the Embryo-cell takes place according to the usual method of repeated binary subdivision, producing a homogeneous globular mass of cells. Soon, however, rudiments of special organs begin to make their appearance; the embryo grows at the expense of the nutriment prepared for it by the prothallium; and it bursts forth from the cavity of the archegonium, which organ in the meantime is becoming atrophied. In the very beginning of its development, the tendency is seen in the cells of one extremity to grow upward so as to evolve the stem and leaves, and in those of the other extremity to grow downward to form the root; and when these organs have been sufficiently developed to absorb and prepare the nutriment which the young Fern requires, the prothallium decays away. Thus, then, the 'spore' of the Fern must be considered as a generative *gonidium* or detached flower-bud, capable of developing itself into a prothallium that may be likened to a receptacle bearing the sexual apparatus. But this prothallium serves the further purpose of 'nursing' the embryoes originated by the generative act; which embryoes finally develope themselves,—not, as in Mosses, into mere spore-capsules,—but, as in Phanerogamia, into entire plants, complete in everything but the true generative organs, which evolve themselves from the detached spores.

345. The little group of *Equisetaceæ* (Horse-tails) which seem nearly allied to the Ferns in the type of their generative apparatus, though that of their vegetative portion is very different, affords certain objects of considerable interest to the Microscopist. The whole of their structure is penetrated to such an extraordinary degree by *silex*, that even when its organic portion has been destroyed by prolonged maceration in dilute nitric acid, a consistent skeleton still remains. This mineral, in fact, constitutes in some species not less than 13 per cent. of the whole solid matter, and 50 per cent. of the inorganic ash; and it especially abounds in the epidermis, which is used by cabinet-makers for smoothing the surface of wood. Some of the siliceous particles are distributed in two lines, parallel to the axis; others, however, are grouped into oval

as exhibit freshly-opened archegonia are now to be held by one lobe between the forefinger and thumb of the left hand, so that the upper surface of the prothallium lies upon the thumb; and the thinnest possible sections are then to be made with a thin narrow-bladed knife, perpendicularly to its surface. Of these sections, which, after much practice, may be made no more than 1-15th of a line in thickness, some will probably lay open the canals of the archegonia; and within these, when examined with a power of 200 or 300 diameters, antherozoids may be occasionally distinguished. The prothallium of the common *Osmunda regalis* will be found to afford peculiar facilities for observation of the development of the antheridia, which are produced at its margin. (See Rev. F. Howlett in "Intellectual Observer," Vol. vii. p. 32.)

forms, connected with each other, like the jewels of a necklace, by a chain of particles forming a sort of curvilinear quadrangle; and these (which are, in fact, the particles occupying the cells of the stomata) are arranged in pairs. Their form and arrangement are peculiarly well seen under Polarized light, for which the prepared epidermis is an extremely beautiful object; and it is asserted by Sir D. Brewster (whose authority upon this point has been generally followed), that each siliceous particle has a regular axis of double refraction. According to Prof. Bailey, however, the effect of this and similar objects (such as the epidermis of Grasses) upon Polarized light, is not produced by the silliceous particles, but by the organized tissues; since, when the latter have been entirely got rid of, the residual silex shows no doubly-refracting power.*—What is usually designated as the fructification of the Equisetaceæ forms a cone or spike at the extremity of certain of the stem-like branches (the real stem being a horizontal rhizoma); and consists of a cluster of shield-like disks, each of which carries a circle of *thecæ* or spore-capsules, that open by longitudinal slits to set free the spores. Each of these spores has, attached to it, two pairs of elastic filaments (Fig. 234), that are originally formed as spiral fibres on the interior of the wall of the primary cell within which it is generated, and are set free by its rupture; these are at first coiled up around the spore, in the manner represented at A, though more closely applied to the surface; but, on the liberation of the spore, they extend themselves in the manner shown at B,—the slightest application of moisture, however, serving to make them close together

Fig. 234.



Spores of *Equisetum*, with their Elastic Filaments.

(the assistance which they afford in the dispersion of the spores being no longer required) when the spores have alighted on a damp surface. If a number of these spores be spread out on a slip of glass under the field of view, and, whilst the observer watches them, a bystander breathes gently upon the glass, all the filaments will be instantaneously put in motion, thus presenting an extremely curious spectacle; and will almost as suddenly return to their previous condition when the effect of the moisture has passed off. If one

* See "Silliman's American Journal of Science," May, 1856.

of the *thecæ* which has opened, but has not discharged its spores, be mounted in a cell with a movable cover, this curious action may be exhibited over and over again. These spores, like those of Ferns, evolve themselves into a prothallium; and this developes antheridia and archegonia, the former at the extremities of the lobes, and the latter in the angles between them.

346. Nearly allied to Ferns, also, is a curious little group of small aquatic plants, the *Rhizocarpeæ* (or pepper-worts), which either float on the surface, or creep along shallow bottoms. These all agree in having two kinds of spores, produced in separate capsules: the larger, or 'megaspores,' giving origin to prothallia which produce archegonia only; and the smaller, or 'microspores,' undergoing progressive subdivision, usually without the formation of a distinct prothallium, each of the cells thus formed giving origin to an antherozoid. In this, as we shall presently see (§ 349), there is a distinct foreshadowing of the mode in which the generative process is performed in Flowering Plants; the 'microspore' obviously corresponding to the pollen-grain, while the 'megaspore' may be considered to represent the primitive cell of the ovule.

347. Another alliance of Ferns is to the *Lycopodiaceæ* (Club-mosses); a group which at the present time attains a great development in warm climates, and which, it would seem, constituted a large part of the arborescent vegetation of the Carboniferous epoch. —In the *Lycopodieæ* proper, the sporangia are all of one kind, and all the spores are of the same size; each, as in *Ophioglossum* (§ 343), giving origin to a subterraneous prothallium, that developes both antheridia and archegonia. The plant which originates from the fertilized 'germ-cell' of the archegonium, only attains in colder climates a Moss-like growth, with a creeping stem usually branching dichotomously, and imbricated leaves; but is distinguished from the true mosses, not only by its higher general organization (which is on a level with that of Ferns), but by the character of its fructification, which is a club-shaped 'spike,' bearing small imbricated leaves, in the axils of which lie the sporangia. The spores developed within these are remarkable for the large quantity of resinous matter they contain, giving them an inflammability that causes their being used in theatres to produce 'artificial lightning.'—But in the allied groups of *Selaginelleæ* and *Isoeteæ*, there are (as in the *Rhizocarpeæ*) two kinds of spores produced in separate sporangia; one set producing 'megaspores,' from which archegonia-bearing prothallia are developed; and the other producing 'microspores,' which, by repeated subdivision, give origin to antherozoids without the formation of prothallia. It is a very interesting indication of a tendency towards the Phanerogamic type of sexual generation, that the prothallium in this group is chiefly developed *within* the spore-case, forming a kind of 'endosperm' (§ 349), only the small part which projects from the ruptured apex of the spore producing one or more archegonia.—The arborescent *Lepidodendra* and *Sigillariæ* of the Coal-measures seem to have formed connecting

links between the *Vascular Cryptogams* and the *Phanerogams*, alike in the structure of their Stems, and in their Fructification. For the *Lepidostrobi* or cone-like 'fruit' of these trees, represent the club-shaped spikes of the *Lycopodiaceæ;* and seem to have borne 'megaspores' in the sporangia of its basal portion, and 'microspores' in those of its upper part. Some of the best seams of Coal appear to have been chiefly formed by the accumulation of these 'megaspores.'

---

348. Thus, in our ascent from the lower to the higher Cryptogams, we have seen a gradual change in the general plan of structure, bringing their superior types into a close approximation to the Flowering Plant, which is undoubtedly the highest form of vegetation. But we have everywhere encountered a mode of Generation, which, whilst essentially the same throughout the series, is no less essentially distinct from that of the Phanerogam; the fertilizing material of the 'sperm-cells' being embodied, as it were, in self-moving filaments, which find their way to the 'germ-cells' by their own independent movements; and the 'embryo-cell' being destitute of that store of prepared nutriment, which surrounds it in the true Seed, and supplies the material for its early development. In the lower Cryptogamia, we have seen that the fertilized oöspore is thrown at once upon the world (so to speak) to get its own living; but in Ferns and their allies, the 'embryo-cell' is nurtured for a while by the prothallium of the parent plant. While the true *reproduction of the species* is effected by the proper Generative act, the *multiplication of the individual* is accomplished by the production and dispersion of 'gonidial' spores; and this production, as we have seen, takes place at very different periods of existence in the several groups, dividing the life of each into two separate epochs, in which it presents itself under two very distinct phases that contrast remarkably with each other. Thus, the frond of the Marchantia evolved from the spore, and bearing the antheridia and archegonia, is that which seems naturally to constitute *the* Plant; but that which represents this phase in the Ferns is the minute Marchantia-like prothallium. In Ferns, on the other hand, the product into which the fertilized 'embryo-cell' evolves itself, is that which is commonly regarded as *the* Plant; and this is represented in the Liverworts and Mosses by the spore-capsule alone.*—We shall encounter a similar diversity (which has received the inappropriate designation of 'alternation of generations') in some of the lower forms of the Animal Kingdom.

* For more detailed information on the Structure and Classification of the Cryptogamia generally, the reader is referred to Prof. Sachs' "Text-book of Botany," (Bennett's translation), and to Prof. Hofmeister's large "Handbuch der Physiologischen Botanik."

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE MICROSCOPIC STRUCTURE OF PHANEROGAMIC PLANTS.

349. BETWEEN the two great divisions of the Vegetable kingdom which are known as *Cryptogamia* and *Phanerogamia*, the separation is by no means so abrupt as it formerly seemed to be. For, as has been already shown, though the Cryptogamia were formerly regarded as altogether non-sexual, a true Generative process, requiring the concurrence of male and female elements, is traceable throughout the series. And in the higher types of that series, we have seen a foreshadowing of those provisions for the nurture of the fertilized embryo, which constitute the distinctive characters of the Phanerogamia. On the other hand, although we are accustomed to speak of *Phanerogamia* as 'flowering-plants,' yet not only are the conspicuous parts of the flower often wanting, but in the important group of *Gymnosperms* (including the *Coniferæ* and *Cycadeæ*), the essential parts of the Generative apparatus are reduced to a condition of extreme simplicity, closely approximating to that of the higher Cryptogams. There are, however, certain fundamental differences between the modes in which the act of fertilization is performed in the two groups. For (1) whilst in all the higher Cryptogams, it is in the condition of free-moving 'antherozoids' that the contents of the sperm-cell find their way to the germ-cell, these are conveyed to it, throughout the Phanerogamic series, by an extension of the lining membrane of the sperm-cell or pollen-grain into a tube, which penetrates to the germ-cell contained in the interior of the body called the 'ovule.' Again (2), while the 'germ-cell' or oösphere in the higher Cryptogams is contained in a structure that originated in a spore detached from the parent-plant, it is not only formed and fertilized in all Phanerogams whilst still borne on the parent fabric, but continues for some time to draw from it the nutriment it requires for its development into the 'embryo.' And at the time of its detachment from the parent, the matured 'seed' contains, not merely an 'embryo' already advanced a considerable stage, but a store of nutriment to serve for its further development during germination. As there is nothing parallel to this among Cryptogams, it may be said that reproduction by *seeds*, not the possession of flowers, is the distinctive character of Phanerogams. The *ovules*, which when fertilized and matured become seeds, are developed from specially modified leaves, which remain open in Gymnosperms, but which, in all other Phanerogams, fold together so as to enclose the ovules within an

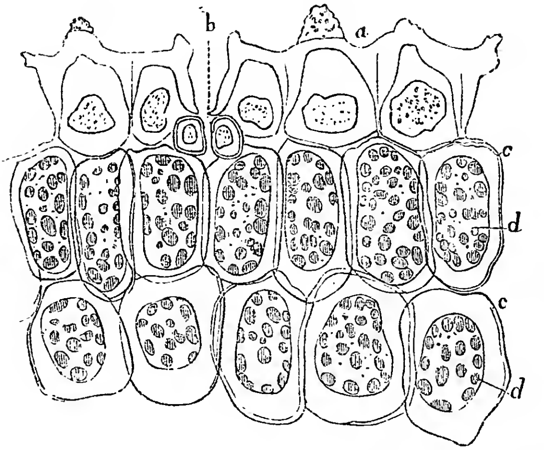
'ovary.' Each ovule consists of a 'nucleus' surrounded by 'integuments' which remain unclosed at its anterior end, leaving open a short canal termed the 'micropyle.' One cell of the nucleus undergoes great enlargement, and becomes the *embryo-sac*, whose cavity is filled, in the first instance, with a mucilaginous fluid containing protoplasm. At the end of the embryo-sac nearest the micropyle, a germ-cell or 'oösphere' is developed; in Phanerogams generally by free cell-formation (§ 226), but in Gymnosperms indirectly as the product of the formation of a 'corpusculum,' which represents the archegonium of Selaginella (§ 347). By a further process of free cell-formation, the remainder of the embryo-sac comes to be filled with cells, constituting what is termed the 'endosperm;' and this serves, like the prothallium of Ferns, to imbibe and prepare nutriment which is afterwards appropriated by the embryo. In many seeds (as those of the *Leguminosæ*) the whole nutritive material of the endosperm has been absorbed into the 'cotyledons' (or seed-lobes) of the embryo, by the time that the seed is fully matured and independent of the parent; but in other cases it remains as a 'separate albumen.' In either case it is taken into the substance of the Embryo during its germination.

350. *Elementary Tissues.*—No marked change shows itself in general organization, as we pass from the Cryptogamic to the Phanerogamic Series of Plants. For a large proportion of the fabric of even the most elaborately formed Tree (including the parts most actively concerned in living action) is made up of components of the very same kind with those which constitute the entire organisms of the simplest Cryptogams. For although the Stems, Branches, and Roots of trees and shrubs are principally composed of *woody* tissue, such as we do not meet with in any but the highest Cryptogamia, yet the special office of this is to afford mechanical support: when it is once formed, it takes no further share in the vital economy, than to serve for the conveyance of fluid from the roots upwards through the stem and branches, to the leaves; and even in these organs, not only the pith and the bark, with the 'medullary rays,' which serve to connect them, but that 'cambium-layer' intervening between the bark and the wood (§ 372), in which the periodical formation of the new layers both of bark and wood takes place, are composed of *Cellular* substance. This tissue is found, in fact, wherever *growth* is taking place; as, for example, in the 'spongioles' or growing-points of the root-fibres, in the leaf-buds and leaves, and in the flower-buds and sexual parts of the flower: it is only when these organs attain an advanced stage of development, that *woody* structure is found in them,—its function, (as in the stem) being merely to give support to their softer textures; and the small proportion of their substance which it forms, being at once seen in those beautiful 'skeletons,' which, by a little skill and perseverance, may be made of leaves, flowers, and certain fruits. All the softer and more pulpy tissue of these organs is composed of *cells*, more or less compactly aggregated together, and

having forms that approximate more or less closely to the globular or ovoidal, which may be considered as their original type.

351. As a general rule, the rounded shape is preserved only when the cells are but loosely aggregated, as in the parenchymatous (or pulpy) substance of leaves (Fig. 235), and it is then only that the distinctness of their walls become evident. When the tissue becomes more solid, the sides of the vesicles are pressed against each

Fig. 235.



Section of Leaf of *Agave*, treated with dilute nitric acid, showing the primordial utricle contracted in the interior of the cells:—*a*, Epidermic cells; *b*, boundary-cells of the stoma; *c*, cells of parenchyma; *d*, their primordial utricles.

other, so as to flatten them and to bring them into close apposition; and they then adhere to one another in such a manner, that the partitions appear, except when carefully examined, to be single instead of double as they really are. Frequently it happens that the pressure is exerted more in one direction than in another, so that the form presented by the outline of the cell varies according to the direction in which the section is made. This is well shown in the pith of the young shoots of Elder, Lilac, or other rapidly growing trees; the cells of which, when cut transversely, generally exhibit circular outlines; whilst, when the section is made vertically, their borders are straight, so as to make them appear like cubes or elongated prisms, as in Fig. 235. A very good example of such a cellular parenchyma is to be found in the substance known as *Rice-paper;* which is made by cutting the herbaceous stem of a Chinese plant termed *Aralia papyrifera** vertically round and round with a long sharp knife, so that its tissues may be (as it were) unrolled in a sheet. The shape of its cells when thus prepared, is irregularly

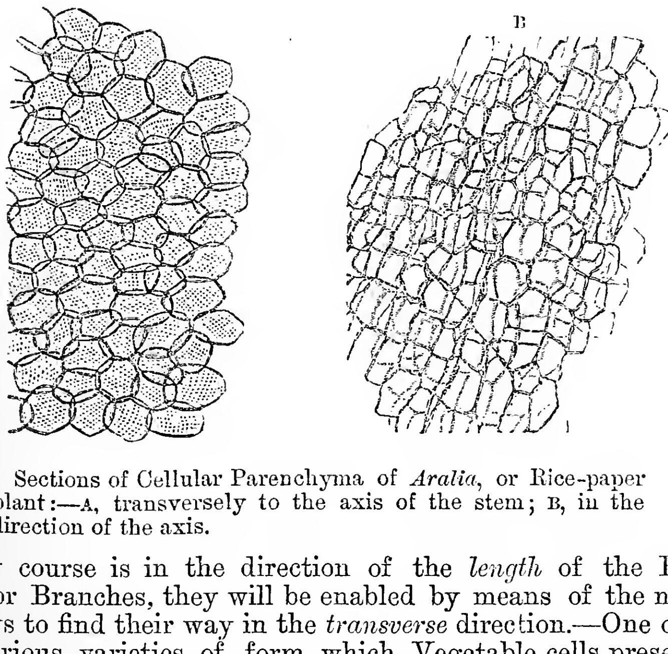
* The *Æschynomene*, which is sometimes named as the source of this article, is an Indian plant employed for a similar purpose.

prismatic, as shown in Fig. 236, B; but if the stem be cut transversely, their outlines are seen to be circular or nearly so (A). When, as often happens, the cells have a very elongated form, this elongation is in the direction of their growth, which is that, of course, wherein there is least resistance. Hence their greatest length is nearly always in the direction of the axis; but there is one remarkable exception,—that, namely, which is afforded by the 'medullary rays' of Exogenous stems (§ 370), whose cells are greatly elongated in the horizontal direction (Fig. 259, *a*), *their* growth being from the centre of the stem towards its circumference. It is obvious that fluids will be more readily transmitted in the direction of greatest elongation, being that in which they will have to pass through the least number of partitions; and whilst their

FIG. 236.

A

B

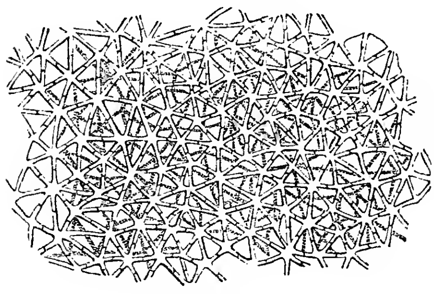


Sections of Cellular Parenchyma of *Aralia*, or Rice-paper plant:—A, transversely to the axis of the stem; B, in the direction of the axis.

ordinary course is in the direction of the *length* of the Roots, Stems, or Branches, they will be enabled by means of the medullary rays to find their way in the *transverse* direction.—One of the most curious varieties of form which Vegetable cells present, is the *stellate* cell, represented in Fig. 237, forming the spongy parenchymatous substance in the stems of many aquatic plants, of the *Rush* for example, which are furnished with air-spaces. In other instances, these air-spaces are large cavities which are altogether left void of tissue: such is the case in the *Nuphar lutea* (yellow water-lily), the footstalks of whose leaves contain large air-chambers, the walls of which are built up of very regular cubical cells, whilst some curiously-formed large stellate cells project into the cavity which they bound (Fig. 238).—The dimensions of the component vesicles of Cellular tissue are extremely variable; for although

their diameter is very commonly between 1-300th and 1-500th of an inch, they occasionally measure as much as 1-30th of an inch across, whilst in other instances they are not more than 1-300th.

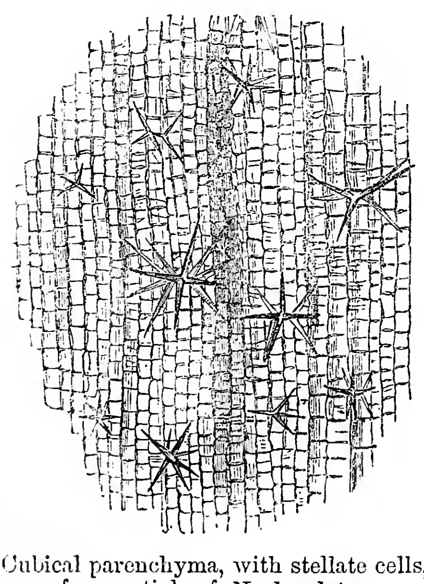
FIG. 237.



Section of Cellular parenchyma of *Rush*.

352. The component cells of Cellular tissue are usually held together by an intercellular substance, which may be considered analogous to the 'gelatinous' layer that intervenes between the cells of the Algæ (§ 229). This, in an early stage of their development, is often very abundant, occupying more space than the cells themselves, as is seen in Fig. 239, A; and the cell-cavities are not separated from it by the interposition of a distinct membrane. As the cells enlarge and increase by duplicative sub-division (B), the intervening substance diminishes in relative amount; and as the cells advance towards their mature condition (C), it merely shows itself as a thin layer between them. There are many forms of fully developed cellular parenchyma, in which, in consequence of the loose aggregation of their component cells, these may be readily isolated, so as to be prepared for separate examination without the use of re-agents which alter their condition: this is the case with the pulp of ripe fruits, such as the Strawberry or Currant (the Snowberry is a particularly favourable subject for this kind of examination), and with the parenchyma of many fleshy leaves, such as those of the Carnation (*Dianthus caryophyllus*) or the London Pride (*Saxifraga crassifolia*). Such cells usually contain evident *nuclei*, which are turned brownish-yellow by iodine, whilst their membrane is only turned pale-yellow; and in this way the nucleus may be brought into view, when, as often happens, it is not previously distinguishable. If a drop of the iodized solution of chloride of zinc be subsequently added, the cell-membrane becomes of a beautiful blue

FIG. 238.

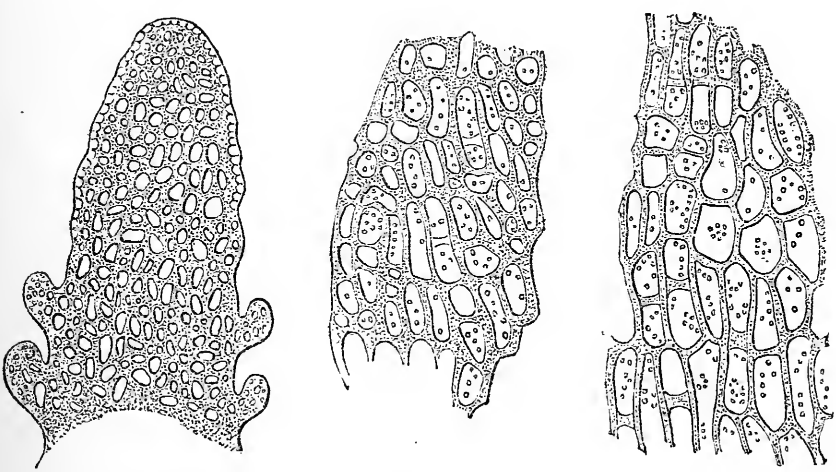


Cubical parenchyma, with stellate cells, from petiole of *Nuphar lutea*.

colour, whilst the nucleus and the granular protoplasm that surrounds it retain their brownish-yellow tint. The use of dilute nitric or sulphuric acid, of alcohol, of syrup, or of several other reagents, serves to bring into view the *primordial utricle* (§ 223); its contents being made to coagulate and shrink, so that it detaches itself from the cellulose wall with which it is ordinarily in contact, and shrivels up within its cavity, as shown in Fig. 235. It would be a mistake, however, to regard this as a distinct membrane; for it is nothing else than the peripheral layer of protoplasm, naturally somewhat more dense than that which it includes, but deriving its special consistence from the operations of reagents.

FIG. 239.

A B C



Successive stages of Cell-formation in the development of the Leaves of *Anacharis alsinastrum*:—A, growing point of the branch, consisting of a protoplasmic mass with young cells, the projections at its base being the rudiments of leaves; B, portion of one of these incipient leaves in a more advanced condition; C, the same in a still later stage of development.

353. It is probable that all Cells, at some stage or other of their growth, exhibit, in a greater or less degree of intensity, that curious movement of *cyclosis*, which has been already described as occurring in the *Characeæ* (§ 258), and which consists in the steady flow of one or of several currents of protoplasm over the inner wall of the cell; this being rendered apparent by the movement of the particles which the current carries along with it. The best examples of it are found among submerged plants, in the cells of which it continues for a much longer period than it usually does elsewhere; and among these are two, the *Vallisneria spiralis* and the *Anacharis alsinastrum*, which are peculiarly fitted for the exhibition of this interesting phenomenon.—The *Vallisneria* is an

aquatic plant that grows abundantly in the rivers of the south of Europe, but is not a native of this country; it may, however, be readily grown in a tall glass jar having at the bottom a couple of inches of mould, which, after the roots have been inserted into it, should be closely pressed down, the jar being then filled with water, of which a portion should be occasionally changed.* The jar should be freely exposed to light, and should be kept in as warm but equable a temperature as possible. The long grass-like leaves of this plant are too thick to allow the transmission of sufficient light through them for the purpose of this observation; and it is requisite to make a thin slice or shaving with a sharp knife. If this be taken from the surface, so that the section chiefly consists of the superficial layer of cells, these will be found to be small, and the particles of chlorophyll, though in great abundance, will rarely be seen in motion. This layer should therefore be sliced off (or, perhaps still better, scraped away) so as to bring into view the deeper layer, which consists of larger cells, some of them greatly elongated, with particles of chlorophyll in smaller number, but carried along in active rotation by the current of protoplasm; and it will often be noticed that the directions of the rotation in contiguous cells are opposite. If the movement (as is generally the case) be checked by the shock of the operation, it will be revived again by gentle warmth; and it may continue under favourable circumstances, in the separated fragment, for a period of weeks, or even of months. Hence, when it is desired to exhibit the phenomenon, the preferable method is to prepare the sections a little time before they are likely to be wanted, and to carry them in a small vial of water in the waistcoat pocket, so that they may receive the gentle and continuous warmth of the body. In summer, when the plant is in its most vigorous state of growth, the section may be taken from any one of the leaves; but in winter, it is preferable to select those which are a little yellow. An Objective of 1-4th inch focus will serve for the observation of this interesting phenomenon, and very little more can be seen with a 1-8th inch; but the 1-25th inch constructed by Messrs. Powell and Lealand enables the borders of the protoplasmic current, which carries along the particles of chlorophyll, to be distinctly defined; and this beautiful phenomenon may be most luxuriously watched under their patent Binocular (§ 81).

354. The *Anacharis alsinastrum* is a water-weed, which, having been accidentally introduced into this country several years ago, has since spread itself with such rapidity through our canals and rivers, as in many instances seriously to impede their navigation.

* Mr. Quekett found it the most convenient method of changing the water in the jars in which Chara, Vallisneria, &c., are growing, to place them occasionally under a water-tap, and allow a very gentle stream to fall into them for some hours; for by the prolonged overflow thus occasioned, all the impure water, with the Conferva that is apt to grow on the sides of the vessel, may be readily got rid of.

It does not require to root itself in the bottom, but floats in any part of the water it inhabits; and it is so tenacious of life, that even small fragments are sufficient for the origination of new plants. The leaves have no distinct cuticle, but are for the most part composed of two layers of cells, and these are elongated and colourless in the centre, forming a kind of midrib; towards the margins of the leaves, however, there is but a single layer. Hence no preparation whatever is required for the exhibition of this interesting phenomenon; all that is necessary being to take a leaf from the stem (one of the older yellowish leaves being preferable), and to place it with a drop of water, either in the Aquatic-box, or on a slip of glass beneath a thin-glass cover. A higher magnifying power is required, however, than that which suffices for the examination of the cyclosis in Chara or in Vallisneria; the 1-8th inch Object-glass being here preferable to the 1-4th, and the assistance of the Achromatic Condenser being desirable. With this amplification, the phenomenon may be best studied in the single layer of marginal cells; although, when a lower power is used, it is most evident in the elongated cells forming the central portion of the leaf. The number of chlorophyll-granules in each cell varies from three or four to upwards of fifty; they are somewhat irregular in shape, some being nearly circular flattened discs, whilst others are oval; and they are usually from 1-3000th to 1-5000th of an inch in diameter. When the rotation is active, the greater number of these granules travel round the margin of the cells, a few, however, remaining fixed in the centre: their rate of movement, though only 1-40th of an inch per minute, being sufficient to carry them several times round the cell within that period. As in the case of the Vallisneria, the motion may frequently be observed to take place in opposite directions in contiguous cells. The thickness of the layer of protoplasm in which the granules are carried round, is estimated by Mr. Wenham at no more than 1-20,000th of an inch. When high powers and careful illumination are employed, delicate ripples may be seen in the protoplasmic currents.*

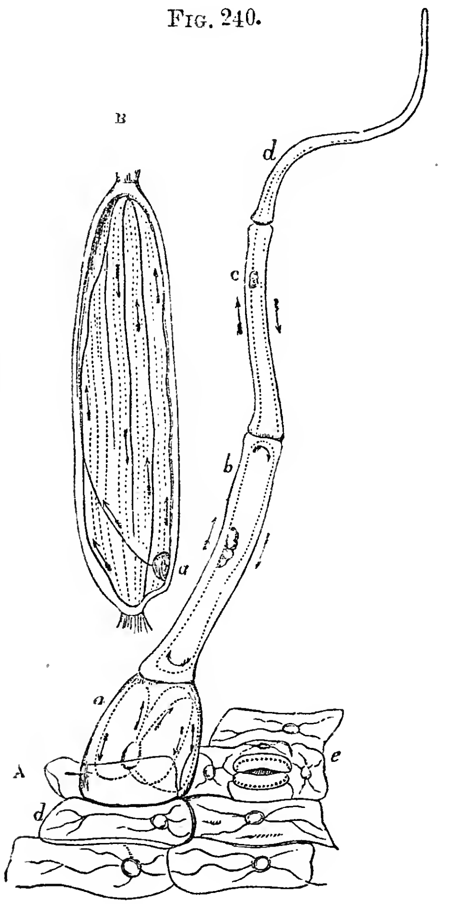
355. *Cyclosis*, however, is by no means restricted to submerged plants; for, it has been witnessed by numerous observers in so great a variety of other species, that it may fairly be presumed to be universal. It is especially observable in the *hairs* of the Epidermic surface; and according to Mr. Wenham,† who has given much attention to this subject, "the difficulty is to find the exceptions, for hairs taken alike from the loftiest Elm of the forest to the humblest weed that we trample beneath our feet, plainly exhibit this circulation." Such hairs are furnished by various parts of

* "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. iii. (1855), p. 277.

† 'On the Sap-Circulation in Plants,' in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. iv. (1856), p. 44.—It is unfortunate that Mr. Wenham should have used the term 'circulation' to designate this phenomenon, which has nothing in common with that movement of nutritive fluid through tubes or channels, to which the term is properly applicable.

plants; and what is chiefly necessary is, that the part from which the hair is gathered should be in a state of vigorous growth. The hairs should be detached by tearing-off with a pair of fine-pointed forceps, the portion of the cuticle from which they spring; care being taken not to grasp the hair itself, whereby such an injury would be done to it as to check the movement within it. The hair should then be placed with a drop of water under thin glass; and it will generally be found advantageous to use a 1-8th inch Objective, with an Achromatic Condenser having a series of diaphragms. The nature of the movement in the hairs of different species is far from being uniform. In some instances, the currents pass in single lines along the entire length of the cells, as in the hairs from the filaments of the *Tradescantia virginica*, or Virginian Spiderwort (Fig. 240, A); in others there are several such currents which retain their distinctness, as in the jointed hairs of the calyx of the same plant (B); in others, again, the streams coalesce into a network, the reticulations of which change their position at short intervals, as in the hairs of *Glaucium luteum;* whilst there are cases in which the current flows in a sluggish uniformly-moving sheet or layer.

Fig. 240.



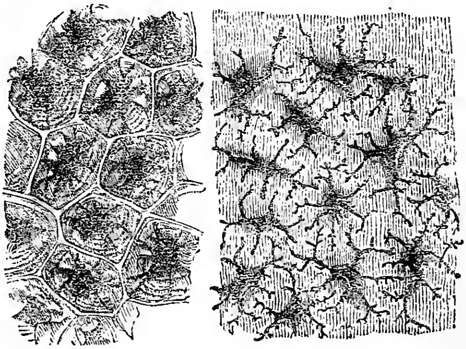
Rotation of fluid in Hairs of *Tradescantia Virginica:*—A, portion of cuticle with hair attached; *a*, *b*, *c*, successive cells of the hair; *d*, cells of the cuticles; *e*, Stoma:—B, joints of a beaded hair, showing several currents; *a*, Nucleus.

Where several distinct currents exist in one cell, they are all found to have one common point of departure and return, namely, the *nucleus* (B, *a*); from which it seems fairly to be inferred that this body is the centre of the vital activity of the cell.—Mr. Wenham states that in all cases in which the cyclosis is seen in the hairs of a plant, the cells of the cuticle also display it, provided that their walls are not so opaque or so strongly marked as to prevent the

movement from being distinguished. The cuticle may be most readily torn off from the stalk or the midrib of the leaf; and must then be examined as speedily as possible, since it loses its vitality when thus detached, much sooner than do the hairs. Even when no obvious movement of particles is to be seen, the existence of a cyclosis may be concluded from the peculiar arrangement of the molecules of the protoplasm, which are remarkable for their high refractive power, and which when arranged in a 'moving-train,' appear as bright lines across the cell; and these lines, on being carefully watched, are seen to alter their relative positions.—The leaf of the common *Plantago* (Plantain or Dock) furnishes an excellent example of cyclosis; the movement being distinguishable at the same time both in the cells and in the hairs of the cuticle torn from its stalk or midrib. It is a curious circumstance that when a plant which exhibits the cyclosis is kept in a cold dark place for one or two days, not only is the movement suspended, but the moving particles collect together in little heaps, which are broken-up again by the separate motion of their particles, when the stimulus of light and warmth occasions a renewal of the activity. It is well to collect the specimens about midday, that being the time when the rotation is most active, and the movement is usually quickened by artificial warmth, which, indeed, is a necessary condition in some instances to its being seen at all. The most convenient method of applying this warmth, while the object is on the stage of the Microscope, is to blow a stream of air upon the thin-glass cover, through a glass or metal tube previously heated in a spirit-lamp.

356. The walls of the cells of plants are frequently thickened by internal deposits, which may present very different appearances according to the manner in which they are arranged. In its simplest condition, such a deposit forms a thin uniform layer over the whole internal surface of the cellulose-wall, scarcely detracting at all from its transparence, and chiefly distinguishable by the 'dotted' appearance which the membrane then presents (Fig. 236, A). These dots, however, are not pores, as their aspect might naturally suggest, but are merely points at which the deposit is wanting, so that the original cell-wall there remains unthickened. A more complete consolidation of Cellular tissue is effected by deposits of *sclerogen* (a substance which, when separated from the

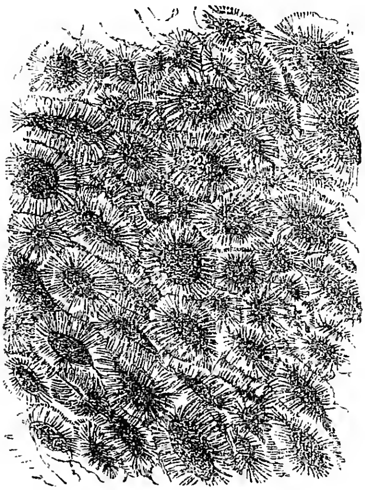
FIG. 241.



Tissue of the Testa or Seed-coat of a *Star-Anise*:—A, as seen in section; B, as seen on the surface.

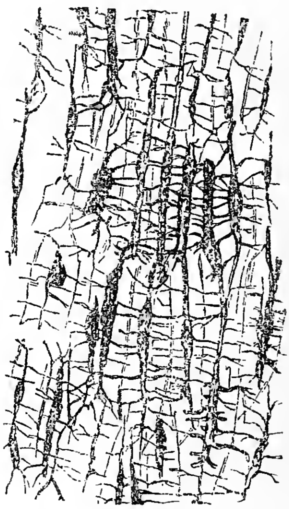
resinous and other matters that are commonly associated with it, is found to be allied in chemical composition to cellulose) in successive layers, one within another (Fig. 241, A), which present themselves as concentric rings when the cells containing them are cut through; and these layers are sometimes so thick and numerous as almost to obliterate the original cavity of the cell. By a continuance of the same arrangement as that which shows itself in the single layer of the dotted cell—each deposit being deficient

FIG. 242.



Section of *Cherry-stone*, cutting the cells transversely.

FIG. 243.



Section of *Coquilla-nut*, in the direction of the long diameters of the cells.

at certain points, and these points corresponding with each other in the successive layers—a series of passages is left, by which the cavity of the cell is extended at some points to its membranous wall; and it commonly happens that the points at which the deposit is wanting on the walls of the contiguous cells, are coincident, so that the membranous partition is the only obstacle to the communication between their cavities (Figs. 241–243). It is of such tissue that the 'stones' of stone-fruit, the gritty substance which surrounds the seeds and forms little hard points in the fleshy substance of the Pear, the shell of the Cocoa-nut, and the albumen of the seed of *Phytelephas* (known as 'vegetable ivory'), are made up; and we see the use of this very curious arrangement, in permitting the cells, even after they have attained a considerable degree of consolidation, still to remain permeable to the fluid required for the nutrition of the parts which such tissue encloses and protects.

357. The deposit sometimes assumes, however, the form of definite *fibres*, which lie coiled-up in the interior of cells, so as to

form a single, a double, or even a triple or quadruple spire (Fig. 244). Such *spiral cells* are found most abundantly in the leaves of certain Orchideous plants, immediately beneath the cuticle, where they are brought into view by vertical sections; and they may be obtained in an isolated state by macerating the leaf and peeling off the cuticle so as to expose the layer beneath, which is then easily separated into its components. In an Orchideous plant, named *Saccolabium guttatum*, the spiral cells are unusually long, and have spires winding in opposite directions; so that, by their mutual intersection, a series of diamond - shaped markings is produced. Spiral cells are often found upon the surface of the *testa* or outer coat of seeds: and in the *Collomia grandiflora*, the *Salvia verbenaca* (Wild Clary), and some other plants, the membrane of these cells is so weak, and the elasticity of their fibres so great, that, when the membrane is softened by the action of water, the fibres suddenly uncoil and elongate themselves (Fig. 245), springing out, as it were, from the surface of the seed, to which they give a peculiar flocculent appearance. This very curious phenomenon, which is not unfrequently spoken of by persons ignorant of its true nature as the 'germination' of the seed, may be best observed in the following manner:—A very thin transverse slice of the seed should first be cut, and laid upon the lower glass of the Aquatic box; the cover should then be pressed down, and the box placed upon the stage, so that the Microscope may be exactly focussed to the object, the power employed being the 1-inch, 2-3rds inch, or the ½-inch. The cover of the aquatic-box being then removed, a small drop of water should be placed on that part of its internal surface with which the slice of the seed had been in contact; and the cover being replaced, the object should be immediately looked at. It is important that the slice of the seed should be very thin, for two reasons; first, that the view of the spires may not be confused by their

Fig. 244.

Spiral cells of leaf of *Oncidium*.

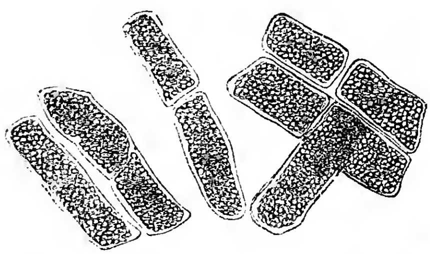
Fig. 245.

Spiral fibres of Seed-coat of *Collomia*.

aggregation in too great numbers; and second, that the drop of water should be held in its place by capillary attraction, instead of running down and leaving the object, as it will do if the glasses be too widely separated.

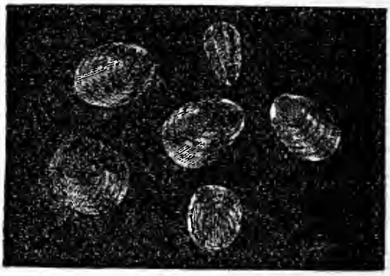
358. In some part or other of most Plants, we meet with cells containing granules of *starch*, which specially abound in the tubers of the Potato, and in the seeds of Cereals and Legumes. Starch grains are originally formed in the interior of Chlorophyll-corpuscles; but as they increase in size, the chlorophyll thins itself out as a mere covering film, and at last disappears altogether. So long as the starch-grains remain embedded in the protoplasm-layer, they continue to grow; but when they accumulate so as to occupy the cell-cavity, their growth stops. They are sometimes minute and very numerous, and so closely packed as to fill the cell-cavity (Fig. 246); in other instances they are of much larger dimensions, so that only a small number of them can be included in any one cell; while in other cases, again, they are both few and minute, so

FIG. 246.



Cells of *Pæony*, filled with Starch.

FIG. 247.



Granules of *Starch*, as seen under Polarized Light.

that they form but a small proportion of the cell-contents. Their nature is at once detected by the addition of a solution of Iodine, which gives them a beautiful blue colour. Each granule, when highly magnified, exhibits a peculiar spot, termed the *hilum;* round which are seen a set of circular lines, that are for the most part concentric (or nearly so) with it. When viewed by Polarized light, each grain exhibits a dark cross, the point of intersection being at the hilum (Fig. 247); and when a Selenite-plate is interposed, the cross becomes beautifully coloured. Opinions have been very much divided regarding the internal structure of the starch-grain; but the doctrine of Nageli,* that it is composed of successive layers which increase by 'intus-susception,' is the one now generally adopted. These layers differ in their proportion of water; the outermost layer, which is the most solid, having within it a watery layer;

* See his Papers in "Sitzungsberichte der Kön. Bayer. Akad. der Wissenschaften," 1862 and 1883; and Sachs' "Handbook of Botany" (Bennett's Translation), pp. 56–62.

this, again, being succeeded by a firm layer, which is followed by a watery layer; and so on,—the proportion of water increasing towards the centre in both kinds of layers, and attaining its maximum in the innermost part of the grain where the formation of new layers takes place, causing the distension of the older ones. —Although the dimensions of the Starch-grains produced by any one species of plant are by no means constant, yet there is a certain average for each, from which none of them depart very widely: and by reference to this average, the starch-grains of different plants that yield this product in abundance may be microscopically distinguished from one another, a circumstance of considerable importance in commerce. The largest starch-grains in common use are those of the plant (a species of *Canna*) known as *Tous les mois;* the average diameter of those of the *Potato* is about the same as the diameter of the smallest of the Tous les mois; and the size of the ordinary starch-grains of *Wheat* and of *Sago* is about the same as that of the smallest grains of Potato-starch; whilst the granules of *Rice*-starch are so very minute as to be at once distinguishable from any of the preceding.

359. Deposits of Mineral matter in a crystalline condition, known as *raphides*, are not unfrequently found in vegetable cells; where they are at once brought into view by the use of Polarized light. Their designation (derived from ῥαφις, a needle) is very appropriate to one of the most common states in which these bodies present themselves, that, namely, of bundles of needle-like crystals, lying side-by-side in the cavity of the cells; such bundles are well seen in the cells lying immediately beneath the cuticle of the bulb of the medicinal Squill. It does not apply, however, to other forms which are scarcely less abundant; thus, instead of bundles of minute needles, single large crystals, octohedral or prismatic, are frequently met with; and the prismatic crystals are often aggregated in beautiful stellate groups. One of the most common materials of raphides is Oxalate of Lime, which is generally found in the stellate form; and no plant yields these stellate raphides so abundantly as the common *Rhubarb*, the best specimens of the dry medicinal root containing as much as 35 per cent. of them. In the cuticle of the bulb of the *Onion* the same material occurs under the octohedral or the prismatic form. In other instances, the Calcareous base is combined with Tartaric, Citric, or Malic acid; and the acicular raphides are said to consist usually of Phosphate of Lime. Some Raphides are as long as 1-40th of an inch, while others measure no more than 1-100th. They occur in all parts of plants,—the Wood, Pith, Bark, Root, Leaves, Stipules, Sepals, Petals, Fruit, and even in the Pollen. They are always situated in cells, and not, as some have stated, in intercellular passages; the cell-membrane, however, is often so much thinned away as to be scarcely distinguishable. Certain plants of the *Cactus* tribe, when aged, have their tissues so loaded with raphides as to become quite brittle; so that when some large specimens of

C. senilis, said to be a thousand years old, were sent to Kew Gardens from South America, some years since, it was found necessary for their preservation during transport to pack them in cotton, like jewellery. Raphides are probably to be considered as non-essential results of the Vegetative processes; being for the most part produced by the union of organic acids generated in the plant, with mineral bases imbibed by it from the soil. The late Mr. E. Quekett succeeded in artificially producing raphides within the cells of Rice-paper (§ 351), by first filling these with Lime-water by means of the air-pump, and then placing the paper in weak solutions of Phosphoric and Oxalic acids. The artificial raphides of Phosphate of Lime were rhombohedral; while those of Oxalate of Lime were stellate, exactly resembling the natural raphides of the Rhubarb.*

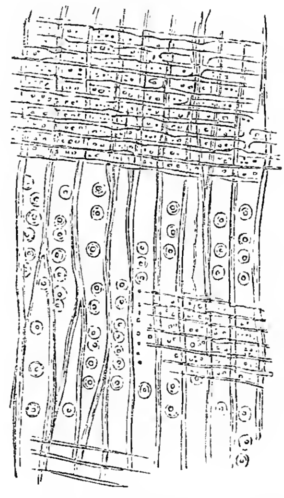
360. A large proportion of the denser parts of the fabric of the higher Plants is made-up of the substance which is known as *ligneous tissue* or *woody fibre*. This, however, can only be regarded as a very simple variety of cellular tissue; for it is composed of peculiarly-elongated cells (Fig. 259), usually pointed at their two extremities so as to become spindle-shaped, whose walls have a special tendency to undergo consolidation by the internal deposit of sclerogen. It is obvious that a tissue consisting of elongated cells, adherent together by their entire length, and strengthened by internal deposit, must possess much greater tenacity than any tissue in which the cells depart but little from the primitive spherical form; and we accordingly find Woody fibre present wherever it is requisite that the fabric should possess not merely density, but the power of resistance to tension. In the higher classes of the Vegetable Kingdom it constitutes the chief part of the stem and branches, where these have a firm and durable character; and even in more temporary structures, such as the herbaceous stems of annual Plants, and the leaves and flowers of almost every tribe, this tissue forms a more or less important constituent, being especially found in the neighbourhood of the spiral vessels and ducts, to which it affords protection and support. Hence the bundles of fasciculi composed of these elements, which form the 'veins' of leaves, and which give 'stringiness' to various esculent vegetable substances, are commonly known under the name of *fibro-vascular* tissue. In their young and unconsolidated state, the ligneous cells seem to conduct fluids with great facility in the

* The materials of the above paragraph are derived from the excellent section on this subject in Prof. Quekett's "Lectures on Histology." Besides the Vegetable structures therein named as affording good illustrations of different kinds of Raphides, may be mentioned the parenchyma of the leaf of *Agave, Aloe, Cycas, Encephalartos*, &c.; the cuticle of the bulb of the *Hyacinth, Tulip*, and *Garlic* (and probably of other bulbs); the bark of the *Apple, Cascarilla, Cinchona, Lime, Locust*, and many other trees; the pith of *Eleagnus*, and the testa of the seeds of *Anagallis* and the *Elm*.—The Raphides characteristic of the different Natural Orders of Plants were carefully studied by Mr. Gulliver; who gave an account of them in successive Papers in "Ann. Nat. Hist.," 1861 *et seq.*

direction of their length; and in the *Coniferous* tribe, whose stems and branches are destitute of ducts, they afford the sole channel for the ascent of the sap. But after their walls have become thickened by internal deposit, they are no longer subservient to this function: nor, indeed, do they then appear to fulfil any other purpose in the Vegetable economy than that of affording mechanical support. It is this which constitutes the difference between the *alburnum* or 'sap-wood,' and the *duramen* or 'heartwood,' of Exogenous stems (§ 369).

361. A peculiar set of markings seen on the Woody fibres of the *Coniferæ*, and of some other tribes, is represented in Fig. 248; in each of these spots the inner circle appears to mark a deficiency of the lining deposit, as in the pitted cells of other plants: whilst the *outer* circle indicates the boundary of a lenticular cavity which intervenes between the adjacent cells at this point. There are varieties in this arrangement so characteristic of different tribes, that it is sometimes possible to determine, by the microscopic inspection of a minute fragment, even of a Fossil wood, the tribe to which it belonged. The woody fibre thus marked is often designated as *glandular*.

FIG. 248.



Section of *Coniferous Wood* in the direction of the Fibres, showing their 'glandular' dots:—*a a a*, Medullary Rays crossing the fibres.

362. All the more perfect forms of Phanerogamia contain, in some part of their fabric, the peculiar structures which are known as *spiral vessels.** These have the elongated shape of woody fibres; but the internal deposit, as in the spiral cells (§ 357), takes the form of a spiral fibre winding from end to end, remaining distinct from the cell-wall, and retaining its elasticity; this fibre may be single, double, or even quadruple,—this last character presenting itself in the very large elongated fibre-cells of the *Nepenthes* (Chinese Pitcher-plant). Such cells are especially found in the delicate membrane (medullary sheath) surrounding the pith of Exogens, and in the midst of the woody bundles occurring in the stem of Endogens; thence they proceed in each case to the leaf-stalks, through which they are distributed to the leaves. By careful dissection under the Microscope, they may be separated entire;

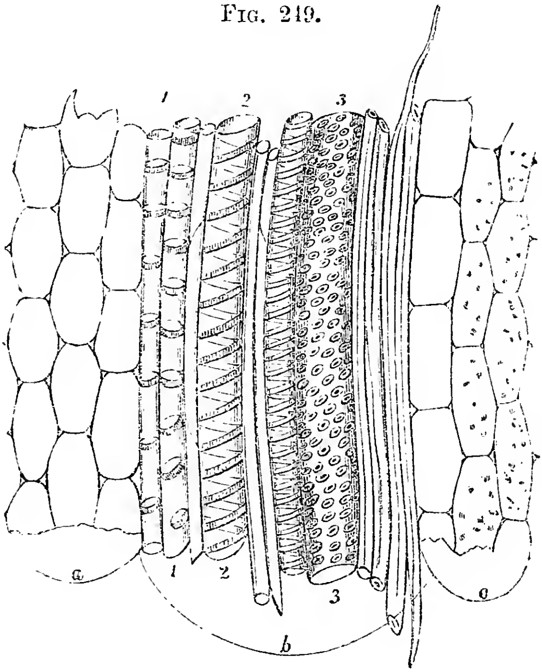
* So long, however, as they retain their original cellular character, and do not coalesce with each other, these fusiform spiral cells cannot be regarded as having any more claim to the designation of *vessels*, than have the elongated cells of the ligneous tissue.

but their structure may be more easily displayed by cutting *round*, but not *through*, the leaf-stalk of the Strawberry, Geranium, &c., and then drawing the parts asunder. The membrane composing the tubes of the vessels will thus be broken across; but the fibres within, being elastic, will be drawn-out and unrolled. Spiral vessels are sometimes found to convey *liquid*, whilst in other cases they contain *air* only; the conditions of this difference are not yet certainly known.

363. Although fluid generally finds its way with tolerable facility through the various forms of cellular tissue, especially in the direction of the greatest length of their cells, a more direct means of connection between distant parts is required for its active transmission. This is afforded by *ducts*, which consist merely of cells laid end-to-end, the partitions between them being more or less obliterated. The origin of these Ducts in cells is occasionally very evident, both in the contraction of their calibre at regular intervals, and in the persistence of remains of their partitions (Fig. 263, *b*, *b*); but in most cases it can only be ascertained by studying the history of their development, neither of these indications being traceable. The component cells appear to have been sometimes simply membranous, but more commonly to have been of the fibrous type (§ 357). Some of the ducts formed from the latter (Fig. 249, 2) are so like continuous spiral vessels as to be scarcely distinguishable from them, save in the want of elasticity in their spiral fibre, which causes it to break when the attempt is made to draw it out. This rupture would seem to have taken place, in some instances, from the natural elongation of the cells by growth; the fibre being broken-up into rings, which lie sometimes close together, but more commonly at considerable intervals; such a duct is said to be *annular* (Fig. 249, 1). Intermediate forms between the spiral and annular ducts, which show the derivation of the latter from the former, are very frequently to be met-with. The spires are sometimes broken-up still more completely, and the fragments of the fibre extend in various directions, so as to meet and form an irregular network lining the duct, which is then said to be *reticulated*. The continuance of the deposit, however, gradually contracts the meshes, leaving the walls of the duct marked only by pores like those of porous cells (§ 356); and such canals, designated as *pitted* ducts, are especially met with in parts of most solid structure and least rapid growth (Fig. 249, 3). The 'scalariform' ducts of Ferns (§ 340) are for the most part of the spiral type; but spiral ducts are frequently to be met with also in the rapidly growing leaf-stalks of Flowering-plants, such as the Rhubarb. Not unfrequently, however, we find all forms of ducts in the same bundle, as seen in Fig. 249. The size of these ducts is occasionally so great as to enable their openings to be distinguished by the unaided eye; they are usually largest in stems whose size is small in proportion to the surface of leaves which they support, such as the common Cane, or

the Vine; and, generally speaking, they are larger in woods of dense texture, such as Oak or Mahogany, than in those of which the fibres, remaining unconsolidated, can serve for the conveyance of fluid. They are entirely absent in the *Coniferæ*.

FIG. 249.



Longitudinal section of stem of *Italian Reed*:—*a* Cells of the Pith; *b*, Fibro-vascular bundle, containing 1, Annular duct; 2, Spiral duct; 3, Pitted duct, with Woody fibre; *c*, Cells of the integument.

354. The Vegetable tissues whose principal forms have been now described, but among which an immense variety of detail is found, may be either studied as they present themselves in thin *sections* of the various parts of the plant under examination, or in the isolated conditions in which they are obtained by *dissection*.—The former process is the most easy, and yields a large amount of information; but still it cannot be considered that the characters of any tissue have been properly determined, until it has been dissected-out. Sections of some of the hardest Vegetable substances, such as 'vegetable ivory,' the 'stones' of fruit, the 'shell' of the Cocoa-nut, &c. (§ 356), can scarcely be obtained except by slicing and grinding (§ 192); and these may be mounted either in Canada balsam or in Glycerine jelly. In cases, however, in which the tissues are of only moderate firmness, the section may be most readily and effectually made with the 'Microtome' (§ 184); and

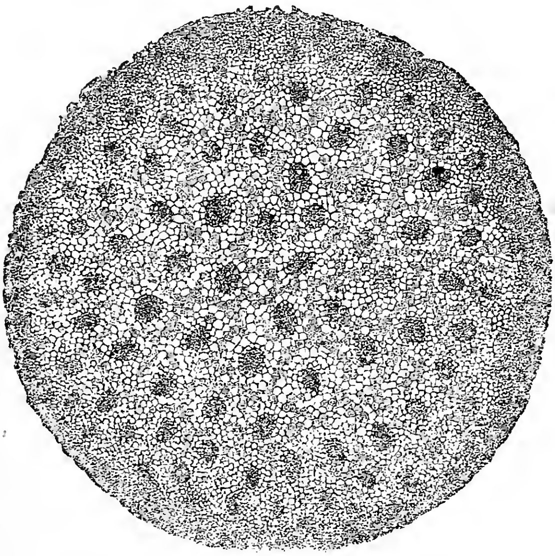
there are few parts of the Vegetable fabric which may not be advantageously examined by this means, any very soft or thin portions being placed in it between two pieces of cork, elder-pith, or carrot. In certain cases, however, in which even this compression would be injurious, the sections must be made with a sharp knife, the substance being laid on the nail or a slip of glass.—In dissecting the Vegetable Tissues, scarcely any other instrument will be found really necessary, than a pair of needles (in handles), one of them ground to a cutting edge. The adhesion between the component cells, fibres, &c., is often sufficiently weakened by a few hours' maceration to allow of their readily coming apart, when they are torn-asunder by the needle-points beneath the simple lens of a Dissecting-microscope. But if this should not prove to be the case, it is desirable to employ some other method for the sake of facilitating their isolation. None is so effectual as the boiling of a thin slice of the substance under examination, either in dilute nitric acid, or in a mixture of nitric acid and chlorate of potass. This last method (which was devised by Schultz) is the most rapid and effectual, requiring only a few minutes for its performance; but as oxygen is liberated with such freedom as to give an almost explosive character to the mixture, it should be put in practice with extreme caution. After being thus treated, the tissue should be boiled in alcohol, and then in water; and it will then be found very easy to tear-apart the individual cells, ducts, &c., of which it may be composed. These may be preserved by mounting in weak spirit.

365. *Stem and Root.*—It is in the stems and roots that we find the greatest variety of tissues in combination, and the most regular plans of structure; and sections of these viewed under a low magnifying power are objects of peculiar beauty, independently of the scientific information which they afford. The Axis (under which term is included the stem with its branches, and the root with its ramifications) always has for the basis of its structure a dense cellular parenchyma; though this, in the advanced stage of development, may constitute but a small portion of it. In the midst of the parenchyma we generally find 'fibro-vascular' bundles, consisting of woody fibre, with ducts of various kinds, and (very commonly) spiral vessels. It is in the mode of arrangement of these bundles, that the fundamental difference exists between the stems which are commonly designated as *endogenous* (growing from within), and those which are more correctly termed *exogenous* (growing on the outside): for in the former the bundles are dispersed thoughout the whole diameter of the axis without any peculiar plan, the intervals between them being filled-up by cellular parenchyma; whilst in the latter they are arranged side by side in such a manner as to form a hollow cylinder of *wood*, which includes within it the porfion of the cellular substance known as *pith*, whilst it is itself enclosed in an envelope of the same substance that forms the *bark*. These two plans of Axis-formation

respectively characteristic of those two great groups into which Phanerogams are subdivided—namely, the *Monocotyledons* and the *Dicotyledons*—will now be more particularly described.

366. When a transverse section (Fig. 250) of a *monocotyledonous* Stem is examined microscopically, it is found to exhibit a number of fibro-vascular bundles, disposed without any regularity in the midst of the mass of cellular tissue, which forms (as it were) the matrix or basis of the fabric. Each bundle contains two, three, or more large ducts, which are at once distinguished by the size of their openings; and these are surrounded by woody fibre and spiral vessels, the transverse diameter of which is so extremely small, that

FIG. 250.

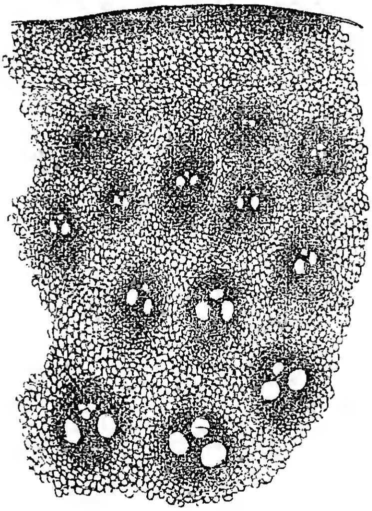


Transverse Section of Stem of young *Palm*.

the portion of the bundles which they form is at once distinguished in transverse section by the *closeness* of its texture (Fig. 251). The bundles are least numerous in the centre of the stem, and become gradually more approximated towards its circumference; but it frequently happens that the portion of the area in which they are most compactly arranged is not absolutely at its exterior, this portion being itself surrounded by an investment composed of cellular tissue only; and sometimes we find the central portion, also, completely destitute of fibro-vascular bundles; so that a sort of indication of the distinction between Pith, Wood, and Bark is here presented. This distinction, however, is very imperfect; for we do not find either the central or the peripheral portions ever separable, like pith and bark, from the intermediate woody layer.

In its young state, the centre of the stem is always filled-up with cells; but these not unfrequently disappear after a time, except at the *nodes*, leaving the stem hollow, as we see in the whole tribe of Grasses. When a vertical section is made of a woody stem (as that of a Palm) of sufficient length to trace the whole extent of the fibro-vascular bundles, it is found that whilst they pass at their upper extremity into the leaves, they pass at the lower end towards the surface of the stem, and assist, by their interlacement with the outer bundles, in forming that extremely tough investment which the lower ends of these stems present. New fibro-vascular bundles are being continually formed in the upper part of the stem, in continuity with the leaves which are successively put forth at its summit; but while these take part in the elongation of the stem, they contribute but little to the increase of its diameter. For those which are most recently formed only pass into the centre of the stem during the higher part of their course, and usually make their way again to its exterior at no great distance below; and when once formed, they receive no further additions. It was from the idea formerly entertained that these successively-formed bundles descend in the interior of the stem through its entire length until they reach the roots, and that the stem is thus continually receiving additions to its interior, that the term *endogenous* was given to this type of stem-structure; but from the fact just stated regarding the course of the fibro-vascular bundles, it is obvious that such a doctrine cannot be any longer admitted.

Fig. 251.



Portion of Transverse Section of Stem of *Wanghie Cane*.

367. In the Stems of *dicotyledonous* Phanerogams, on the other hand, we find a method of arrangement of the several parts, which must be regarded as the highest form of the development of the axis, being that in which the greatest *differentiation* exists. A distinct division is always seen in a transverse section (Fig. 252) between three concentric areæ,—the *pith*, the *wood*, and the *bark*; the first (*a*) being central, the last (*b*) peripheral, and these having the wood interposed between them, its circle being made up of wedge-shaped bundles (*d*, *d*), kept apart by the bands (*c*, *c*), that pass between the pith and the bark.—The *pith* (Fig. 253, *a*) is almost invariably composed of cellular tissue only, which usually presents (in transverse section) a hexagonal areolation. When

newly formed it has a greenish hue, and its cells are filled with fluid; but it gradually dries-up and loses its colour; and not unfrequently its component cells are torn apart by the rapid growth of their envelope, so that irregular cavities are found in it; or, if the stem should increase with extreme rapidity, it becomes hollow, the pith being reduced to fragments, which are found adhering to its interior wall. The pith is immediately surrounded by a delicate membrane consisting almost entirely of spiral vessels, which is termed the *medullary sheath.*

FIG. 252.

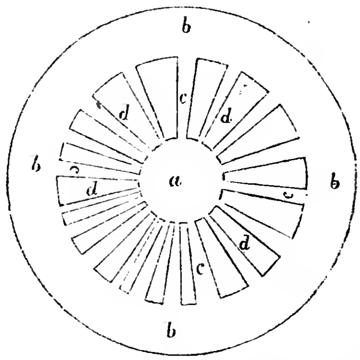
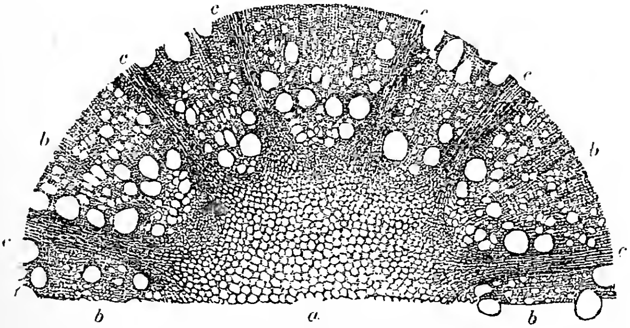


Diagram of the first formation of an Exogenous Stem;—*a*, Pith; *b b*, Bark; *c c*, plates of cellular tissue (Medullar Rays) left between the Woody Bundles *d d*.

368. The *woody* portion of the stem (Fig. 253, *b*, *b*), is made up of woody fibres, usually with the addition of ducts of various kinds; these, however, are absent in one large group, the *Coniferæ* or Fir tribe with its allies (Figs. 258-260), in which the woody fibres are of unusually large diameter, and have the peculiar markings already described (§ 361). In any stem or branch of more than one year's growth, the woody structure presents a more or less distinct

FIG. 253.

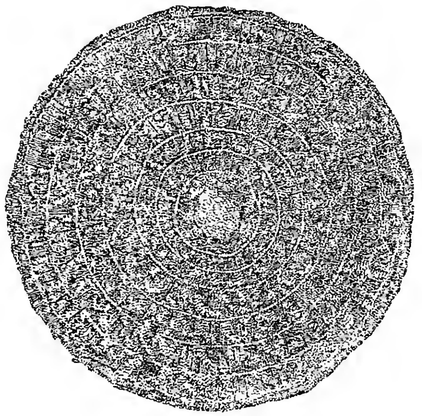


Transverse Section of Stem of *Clematis*:—*a*. pith, *b*, *b*, *b*, woody bundles; *c*, *c*, *c*, medullary rays.

appearance of division into concentric rings, the number of which varies with the age of the tree (Fig. 254). The composition of the several rings, which are the sections of so many cylindrical layers, is uniformly the same, however different their thickness; but the arrangement of the two principal elements—namely, the woody fibre and the ducts—varies in different species: the ducts being sometimes almost uniformly diffused through the whole

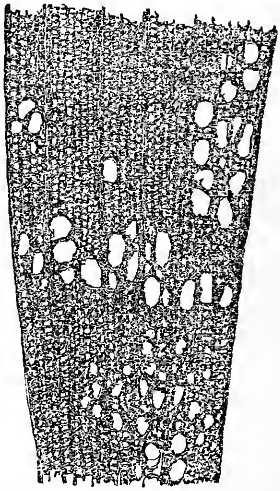
layer, but in other instances being confined to its inner part; while in other cases, again, they are dispersed with a certain regular irregularity (if such an expression may be allowed), so as to give a curiously-figured appearance to the transverse section (Figs. 254, 255). The general fact, however, is, that the ducts predominate

FIG. 254.



Transverse Section of Stem of *Rhamnus* (Buckthorn), showing concentric layers of Wood.

FIG. 255.



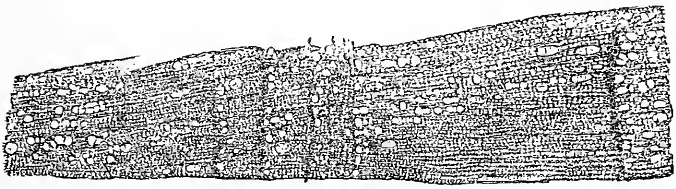
Portion of the same, more highly magnified.

towards the inner side of the ring (which is the part of it first formed), and that the outer portion of each layer is almost exclusively composed of woody tissue: such an arrangement is shown in Fig. 253. This alternation of ducts and woody fibre frequently serves to mark the succession of layers, when, as it is not uncommon, there is no very distinct line of separation between them.

369. The number of layers is usually considered to correspond with that of the *years* during which the stem or branch has been growing; and this is, no doubt, generally true in regard to the trees of temperate climates, which thus ordinarily increase by 'annual layers.' There can be no doubt, however, that such is not the universal rule; and that we should be more correct in stating that each layer indicates an *epoch of vegetation;* which, in temperate climates, is usually (but not invariably) a year, but which is commonly much less in the case of trees flourishing in tropical regions. Thus among the latter it is very common to find the leaves regularly shed and replaced *twice* or even *thrice* in a year, or *five* times in two years; and for every crop of leaves there will be a corresponding layer of wood. It sometimes happens, even in temperate climates, that trees shed their leaves prematurely in consequence of continued drought, and that, if rain then follow, a fresh crop of leaves appears in the same season; and it cannot be doubted that in such a year there would be *two* rings of wood produced,

which would probably not together exceed the ordinary *single* layer in thickness. That such a division may even occur as a consequence of an interruption to the processes of vegetation produced by seasonal changes,—as by heat and drought in a tree that flourishes best in a cold damp atmosphere, or by a fall of temperature in a tree that requires heat,—would appear from the frequency with which a *double* or even a *multiple* succession of rings is found in transverse sections of wood to occupy the place of a *single* one. Thus in a section of Hazel stem (in the Author's possession), of which a portion is represented in Fig. 256, between two layers of

FIG. 256.



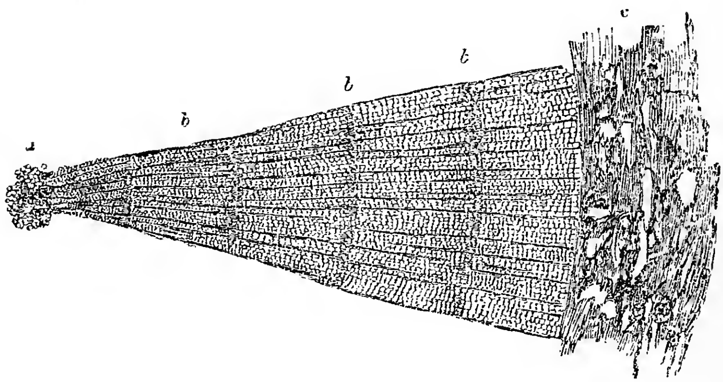
Portion of Transverse Section of Stem of *Hazel*, showing, in the portion *a*, *b*, *c*, six narrow layers of Wood.

the ordinary thickness there intervenes a band whose breadth is altogether less than that of either of them, and which is yet composed of no fewer than six layers, four of them (*c*) being very narrow, and each of the other two (*a*, *b*) being about as wide as these four together.—The inner layers of wood, being not only the oldest, but the most solidified by matters deposited within their component cells and vessels, are spoken of collectively under the designation *duramen* or 'heart-wood.' On the other hand, it is through the cells and ducts of the outer and newer layers that the sap rises from the roots towards the leaves; and these are consequently designated as *alburnum* or 'sap-wood.' The line of demarcation between the two is sometimes very distinct, as in Lignum-vitæ and Cocos wood; and as a new layer is added every year to the exterior of the alburnum, an additional layer of the innermost part of the alburnum is every year consolidated by internal deposit, and is thus added to the exterior of the duramen. More generally, however, this consolidation is gradually effected, and the alburnum and duramen are not separated by any abrupt line of division.

370. The *medullary rays* which cross the successive rings of wood connecting the cellular substance of the pith with that of the bark, and dividing each ring of wood into wedge-shaped segments, are thin plates of cellular tissue (Fig. 253, *c*, *c*), not usually extending to any great depth in the vertical direction. It is not often, however, that their character can be so clearly seen in a transverse section as in the diagram just referred to; for they are usually compressed so closely as to appear darker than the wedges

of woody tissue between which they intervene (Figs. 255, 257); and their real nature is best understood by a comparison of *longitudinal*

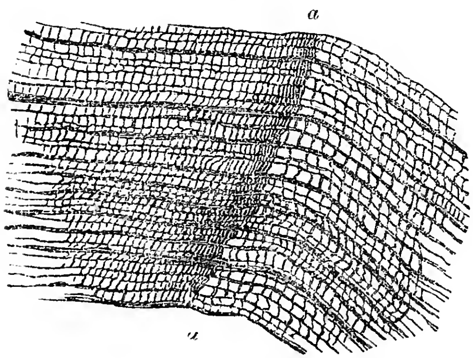
Fig. 257.



Portion of Transverse Section of the Stem of *Cedar*;—*a*, pith, *b*, *b*, *b*, woody layers; *c*, bark.

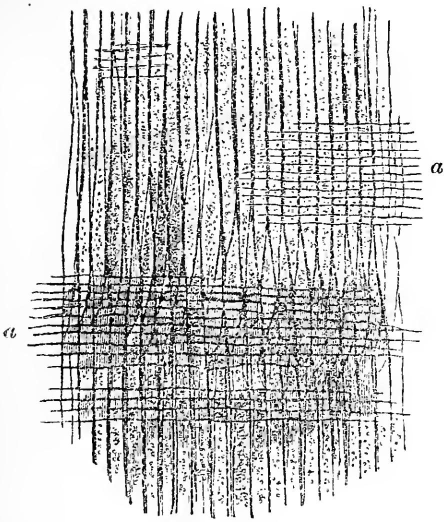
sections made in two different directions,—namely *radial* and *tangential*,—with the transverse. Three such sections of a fossil Coniferous wood in the Author's possession are shown in Figs. 258–260. The stem was of such large size, that, in so small a part of the area of its transverse section as is represented in Fig. 258, the medullary rays seem to run parallel to each other, instead of radiating from a common centre. They are very narrow; but are so closely set together, that only two or three rows of woody fibres (no ducts being here present) intervene between any pair of them. In the longitudinal section taken in a radial direction (Fig. 259), and consequently passing in the same course with the medullary rays, these are seen as thin plates (*a*, *a*, *a*) made-up of superposed cells very much elongated, and crossing in a horizontal direction the woody fibres which lie parallel to one another vertically. And in the tangential section (Fig. 260), which passes a direction at right angles to that of the medullary rays, and therefore cuts them across, we see that each of the plates thus formed has a very

Fig. 258.



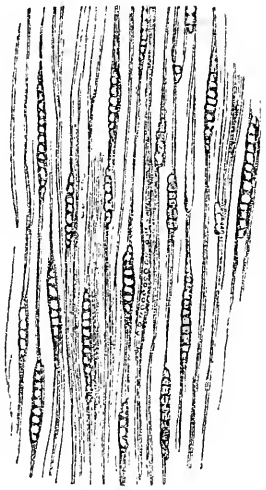
Portion of Transverse Section of large Stem of *Coniferous Wood* (fossil), showing part of two annual layers, divided at *a*, *a*, and traversed by very thin but numerous Medullary Rays.

FIG. 259.



Portion of Vertical Section of the same wood, taken in a radial direction, showing the glandular Woody fibres, without Ducts, crossed by the Medullary Rays, *a*, *a*.

FIG. 260.

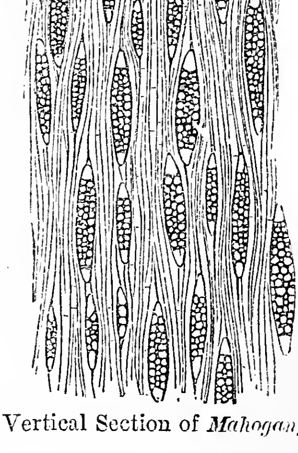


Portion of Vertical Section of the same wood, taken in a tangential direction, so as to cut across the Medullary Rays.

limited depth from above downwards, and is composed of no more than one thickness of horizontal cells.—A section of the stem of *Mahogany* taken in the same direction as the last (Fig. 261), gives a very good view of the cut ends of the medullary rays, as they pass between the woody fibres; and they are seen to be here of somewhat greater thickness, being composed of two or three rows of cells, arranged side by side.

371. In another fossil wood, whose transverse section is shown in Fig. 262, and its tangential section in Fig. 263, the medullary rays are seen to occupy a much larger part of the substance of the stem: being shown in the transverse section as broad bands (*a a*, *a a*) intervening between the closely-set woody fibres, among which some large ducts are scattered; whilst in the tangential, they are observed to be not only deeper than the preceding from above downwards, but also to have a much greater

FIG. 261.



Vertical Section of *Mahogany*.

Fig. 262.

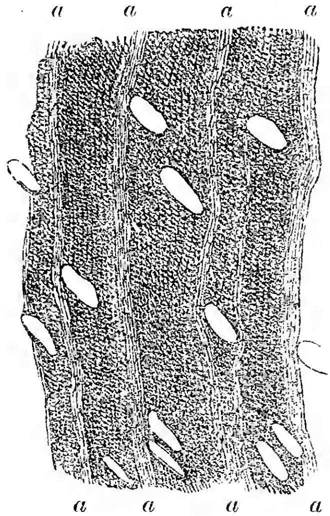


Fig. 263.

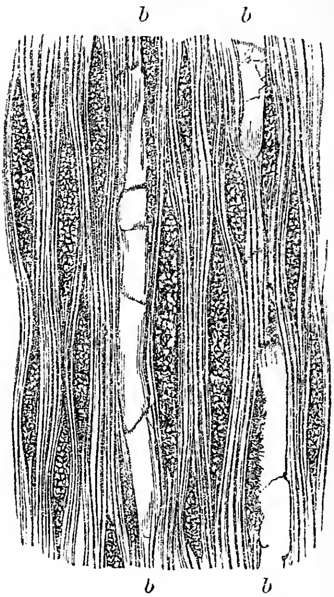


Fig. 262.—Transverse section of a Fossil Wood; showing the Medullary Rays, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, running nearly parallel to each other, and the openings of large Ducts in the midst of the woody fibres.

Fig. 263. Vertical (tangential) section of the same wood; showing the Woody fibres separated by the Medullary Rays, and by the large Ducts, *b b*, *b b*.

Fig. 264.

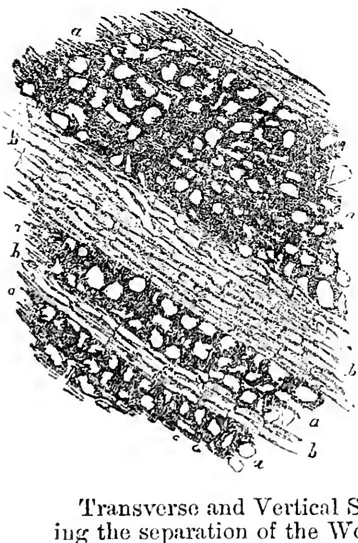
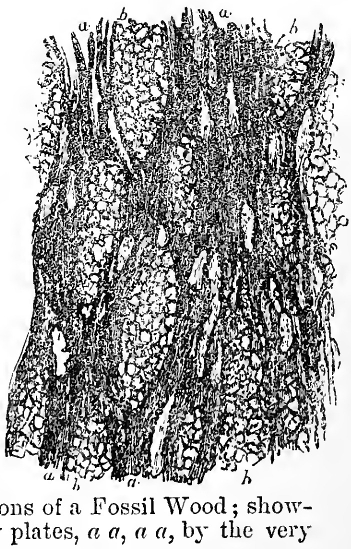


Fig. 265.



Transverse and Vertical Sections of a Fossil Wood; showing the separation of the Woody plates, *a a*, *a a*, by the very large Medullary Rays, *b b*, *b b*.

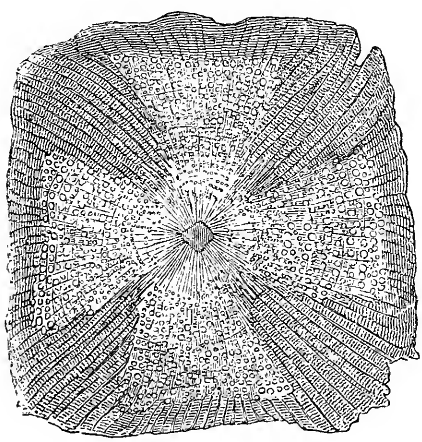
thickness. This section also gives an excellent view of the ducts *b b, b b,* which are here plainly seen to be formed by the coalescence of large cylindrical cells, lying end-to-end.—In another fossil wood in the Author's possession, the medullary Rays constitute a still larger proportion of the stem; for in the transverse section (Fig. 261), they are seen as very broad bands (*b, b*), alternating with plates of woody structure (*a, a*), whose thickness is often less than their own; whilst in the tangential section (Fig. 265) the cut extremities of the medullary rays occupy a very large part of the area, having apparently determined the sinuous course of the woody fibres; instead of looking (as in Fig. 260) as if they had forced their way between the woody fibres, which there hold a nearly straight and parallel course on either side of them.—The medullary rays maintain a connection between the external and the internal parts of the cellular basis of the stem, which have been separated by the interposition of the wood.

372. The *bark* may be usually found to consist of three principal layers; the external, or *epiphlœum,* also termed the *suberous,* (or corky) layer; the middle, or *mesophlœum,* also termed the *cellular envelope;* and the internal, or *endophlœum,* which is more commonly known as the *liber.* The two outer layers are entirely cellular; and are chiefly distinguished by the form, size, and direction of their cells. The *epiphlœum* is generally composed of one or more layers of colourless or brownish cells, which usually present a cubical or tabular form, and are arranged with their long diameters in the horizontal direction; it is this which, when developed to an unusual thickness, forms *cork,* a substance which is by no means the product of one kind of tree exclusively, but exists in greater or less abundance in the bark of every exogenous stem. The *mesophlœum* consists of cells, usually of green colour, prismatic in their form, and disposed with their long diameters parallel to the axis; it is more loosely arranged than the preceding, and contains intercellular passages, which often form a network of canals that have been termed laticiferous vessels; and, although usually less developed than the suberous layers, it sometimes constitutes the chief thickness of the bark. The *liber* or 'inner bark,' on the other hand, usually contains woody fibre in addition to the cellular tissue and laticiferous canals of the preceding; and thus approaches more nearly in its character to the woody layers, with which it is in close proximity on its inner surface. The 'liber' may generally be found to be made up of a succession of thin layers, equalling in number those of the wood, the innermost being the last formed; but no such succession can be distinctly traced either in the cellular envelope or in the suberous layer, although it is certain that they too augment in thickness by additions to their interior, whilst their external portions are frequently thrown-off in the form of thickish plates, or detach themselves in smaller and thinner laminæ.—The bark is always separated from the wood by the *cambium-layer,* which is the part wherein all new growth takes place: this seems to

consist of mucilaginous semi-fluid matter; but it is really made-up of cells of a very delicate texture, which gradually undergo transformation, whereby they are for the most part converted into woody fibres, ducts, spiral vessels, &c. These materials are so arranged as to agument the fibro-vascular bundles of the wood on their external surface, thus forming a new layer of 'alburnum,' which *encloses* all those that preceded it; whilst they also form a new layer of 'liber,' on the *interior* of all those which preceded it: they also extend the medullary rays, which still maintain a continuous connection between the pith and the bark; and a portion remains unconverted, so as always to keep apart the liber and the alburnum. —This type of stem-structure is termed *exogenous;* a designation which applies very correctly to the mode of increase of the woody layers, although (as just shown) the liber is formed upon a truly endogenous plan.

373. Numerous departures from the normal type are found in particular tribes of Dicotyledons. Thus in some the wood is not marked by concentric circles, their growth not being interrupted by any seasonal change. In other cases, again, each woody zone is separated from the next by the interposition of a thick layer of cellular substance. Sometimes wood is formed in the bark (as in *Calycanthus*), so that several woody columns are produced, which are quite independent of the principal woody axis, but cluster around it. Occasionally the woody stem is divided into distinct segments by the peculiar thickness of certain of the medullary rays; and in the stem of which Fig. 266 represents a transverse section, these cellular plates form four large segments, disposed in the manner of a Maltese cross, and alternating with the four woody segments, which they equal in size.

Fig. 266.

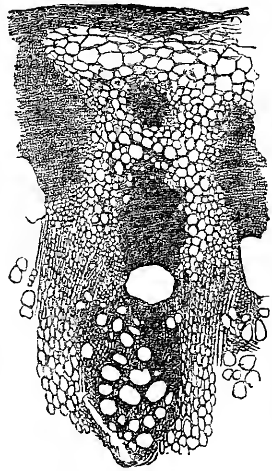


Transverse section of the stem of a climbing-plant (*Aristolochia?*) from New Zealand.

374. The Exogenous stem, like the (so-called) Endogenous, consists, in its first-developed state, of cellular tissue only; but after the leaves have been actively performing their functions for a short time, we find a circle of fibro-vascular bundles, as represented in Fig. 252, interposed between the central (or medullary) and the peripheral (or cortical) portions of the cellular matrix; these fibro-vascular bundles being themselves separated from each other by plates of cellular tissue, which still remain to connect the central

and the peripheral portions of that matrix. This first stage in the formation of the Exogenous axis, in which its principal parts—the pith, wood, bark, and medullary rays—are marked-out, is seen even in the stems of herbaceous Plants, which are destined to die down at the end of the season (Fig. 267); and sections of these, which are very easily prepared, are most interesting Microscopic objects. In such stems, the difference between the Endogenous and the Exogenous types is manifested in little else than the disposition of the fibro-vascular layers; which are scattered through nearly the whole of the cellular matrix (although more abundant towards its exterior) in the former case; but are limited to a circle within the peripheral portion of the cellular tissue in the latter. It is in the further development which takes place during succeeding years in the woody stems of perennial Exogens, that those characters are displayed, which separate them most completely from the Ferns and their allies, whose stems contain a cylindrical layer of fibro-vascular bundles, as well as from (so-called) Endogens. For whilst the fibro-vascular layers of the latter, when once formed, undergo no further increase, those of Exogenous stems are progressively augmented on their outer side by the metamorphosis of the cambium-layer; so that each of the bundles which once lay as a mere series of parallel cords beneath the cellular investment of a first-year's stem, may become in time the small end of a wedge-shaped mass of wood, extending continuously from the centre to the exterior of a trunk of several feet in diameter, and becoming progressively thicker as it passes upwards. The fibro-vascular bundles of Exogens are therefore spoken of as 'indefinite;' whilst those of Endogens and Acrogens (Ferns, &c.) are said to be 'definite' or 'closed.'

Fig. 267.



Portion of transverse section of *Arctium* (Burdock), showing one of the Fibro-vascular bundles that lies beneath the cellular integument.

375. The structure of the *roots* of Endogens and Exogens is essentially the same in plan with that of their respective Stems. Generally speaking, however, the roots of Exogens have no pith, although they have medullary rays; and the succession of distinct rings is less apparent in them, than it is in the stems from which they diverge. In the delicate radical filaments which proceed from the larger root-fibres, a central bundle of vessels will be seen, enveloped in a sheath of cellular substance; and this investment also covers-in the end of the fibril, which is usually somewhat dilated, and composed of peculiarly succulent tissue, forming what is termed the *spongiole*. The structure of the radical filaments may be well

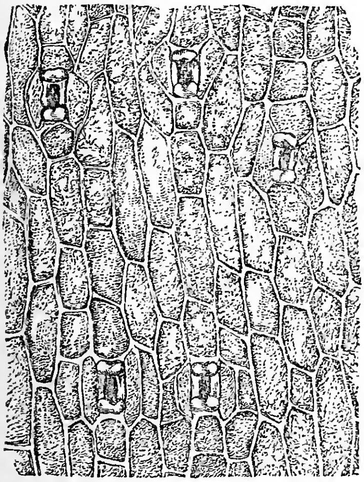
studied in the common *Duckweed*, every floating leaf of which has a single fibril hanging down from its lower surface.

376. The structure of Stems and Roots cannot be thoroughly examined in any other way, than by making sections in different directions with the Microtome. The general instructions already given (§ 184) leave little to be added respecting this special class of objects; the chief points to be attended to being the preparation of the Stems, &c., for slicing, the sharpness of the knife and the dexterity with which it is handled, and the method of mounting the sections when made. The wood, if green, should first be soaked in strong alcohol for a few days, to get rid of the resinous matter; and it should then be macerated in water for some days longer, for the removal of its gum, before being submitted to the cutting-process. If the wood be dry, it should first be softened by soaking for a sufficient length of time in water, and then treated with spirit, and afterwards with water, like green wood. Some woods are so little affected even by prolonged maceration, that boiling in water is necessary to bring them to the degree of softness requisite for making sections. No wood that has once been dry, however, yields such good sections as that which is cut fresh. When a piece, of the appropriate length, has been placed in the grasp of the Section-instrument (wedges of deal or other soft wood being forced-in with it, if necessary for its firm fixation), a few thick slices should first be taken, to reduce its surface to an exact level; the surface should then be wetted with spirit, the Micrometer-screw moved through a small part of a revolution, and the slice taken off with the razor, the motion given to which should partake both of *drawing* and *pushing*. A little practice will soon enable the operator to discover, in each case, *how thin* he may venture to cut his sections without a breach of continuity; and the Micrometer-screw should be turned so as to give the required elevation. If the surface of the wood has been sufficiently wetted, the section will not curl-up in cutting, but will adhere to the surface of the razor, from which it is best detached by dipping the razor in water so as to float away the slice of wood, a camel-hair pencil being used to push it off, if necessary. All the sections that may be found sufficiently thin and perfect, should be put aside in a bottle of weak spirit until they be mounted. For the minute examination of their structure, they may be mounted either in weak spirit or in glycerine jelly. Where a mere general view only is needed, dry-mounting answers the purpose sufficiently well; and there are many stems, such as the *Clematis*, of which transverse sections rather thicker than ordinary make very beautiful *opaque* objects, when mounted dry on a black ground. Canada Balsam should not be had recourse to, except in the case of very opaque sections, as it usually makes the structure too transparent. Transverse sections, however, when slightly charred by heating between two plates of glass until they turn brown, may be mounted with advantage in Canada balsam, and are then very showy specimens for the Gas-Microscope. The

number of beautiful and interesting objects which may be thus obtained from even the commonest Trees, Shrubs, and herbaceous Plants, at the cost of a very small amount of trouble, can scarcely be conceived save by those who have specially attended to these wonderful structures. And a careful study of sections made in different parts of the stem, especially in the neighbourhood of the 'growing point,' will reveal to the eye of the Physiologist some of the most important phenomena of Vegetation. The judicious use of the *staining process* (§§ 200–203) not only improves the appearance of such sections, but adds greatly to their scientific value.—*Fossil Woods*, when well preserved, are generally *silicified*, and can only be cut and polished by a lapidary's wheel. Should the Microscopist be fortunate enough to meet with a portion of a *calcified* stem in which the organic structure is preserved, he should proceed with it after the manner of other hard substances which need to be reduced by grinding (§§ 192–194).

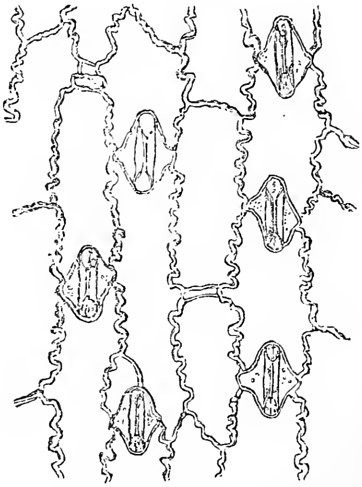
377. *Epidermis and Leaves.*—On all the softer parts of the higher plants, save such as grow under water, we find a surface-layer, differing in its texture from the parenchyma beneath, and constituting a distinct membrane, known as the *Epidermis*.* This

Fig. 268.



Epiderm of Leaf of *Yucca*.

Fig. 269.



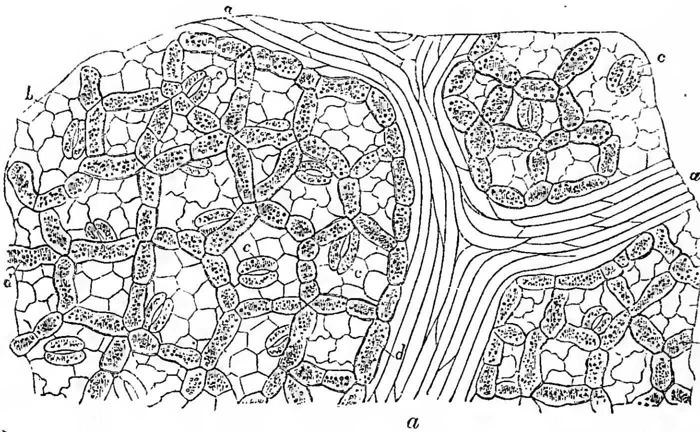
Epiderm of Leaf of *Indian Corn* (Zea Mais).

membrane is composed of cells, the walls of which are flattened above and below, whilst they adhere closely to each other laterally, so as

* This term, borrowed from Animal structure, is singularly inappropriate in Botany; since it properly designates a layer lying *upon* the *derm* or true skin: and the Writer would have therefore preferred to retain the old term 'Cuticle,' were it not that this is now applied by the highest authorities to the thin pellicle covering the Epiderm (§ 381).

to form a continuous stratum (Figs. 272, 274, *a, a*). Their shape is different in almost every tribe of plants; thus in the epiderm of the *Yucca* (Fig. 268), *Indian Corn* (Fig. 269), *Iris* (Fig. 273), and

FIG. 270.



Portion of Epiderm of inferior surface of Leaf of *Apple*, with layer of parenchyma in immediate contact with it:—*a, a*, elongated cells overlying the veins of the leaf; *b, b*, ordinary epiderm cells, overlying the parenchyma; *c, c*, stomata; *d, d*, green cells of the parenchyma, forming a very open network near the lower surface of the leaf.

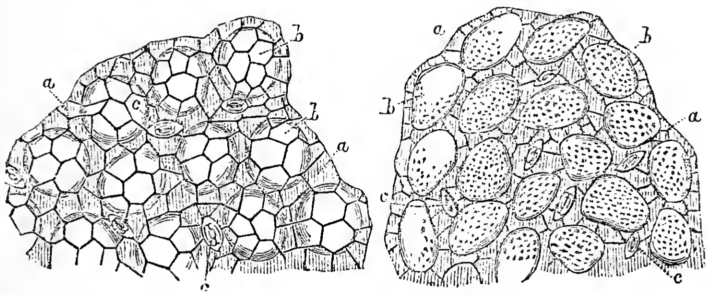
most other Monocotyledons, the cells are elongated, and present an approach to a rectangular contour; their margins being straight in the Yucca and Iris, but minutely sinuous or crenated in the Indian Corn. In most Dicotyledons, on the other hand, the cells of the epiderm depart less from the form of circular disks; but their margins usually exhibit large irregular sinuosities, so that they seem to fit together like the pieces of a dissected map, as is seen in the epiderm of the *Apple* (Fig. 270, *b,b*). Even here, however, the cells of that portion of the epiderm (*a, a*) which overlies the 'veins' of the leaf, have an elongated form, approaching that of the wood-cells of which these veins are chiefly composed; and it seems likely, therefore, that the elongation of the ordinary epiderm-cells of Monocotyledons has reference to that parallel arrangement of the veins which their leaves almost constantly exhibit.

378. The cells of the epiderm are colourless, or nearly so, having no chlorophyll in their interior; and their walls are generally thickened by secondary deposit, especially on the side nearest the atmosphere. This deposit is of a waxy nature, and consequently renders the membrane very impermeable to fluids, so as to protect the soft tissue of the leaf from drying up. In most European plants the epiderm contains but a single row of cells, which, moreover, are usually thin-sided; whilst in the generality of tropical species, there exist two, three, or even four layers of thick-sided cells

this last number being seen in the *Oleander*, the epiderm of which, when separated, has an almost leathery firmness. This difference in conformation is obviously adapted to the conditions of growth under which these plants respectively exist; since the epiderm of a plant indigenous to temperate climates, would not afford a sufficient protection to the interior structure against the rays of a tropical sun; whilst the less powerful heat of this country would scarcely overcome the resistance presented by the dense and non-conducting tegument of a species formed to exist in tropical climates.

FIG. 271.

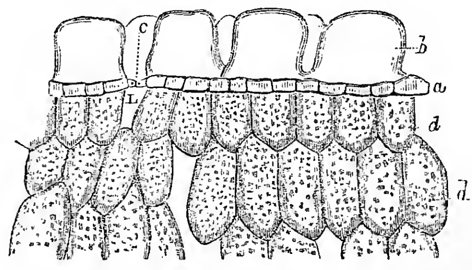
A B



Portion of Epiderm of upper surface of Leaf of *Rochea falcata*, as seen at A from its inner side, and at B from its outer side:—*a*, *a*, small cells forming inner layer; *b*, *b*, large prominent cells of outer layer; *c*, *c*, stomata disposed between the latter.

379. A very curious modification of the epiderm is presented by the *Rochea falcata*, which has the surface of its ordinary epiderm (Figs. 271, 272, *a*, *a*) nearly covered with a layer of large prominent isolated cells, *b*, *b*. A somewhat similar structure is found in the *Mesembryanthemum crystallinum*, commonly known as the Ice-plant; a designation it owes to the peculiar appearance of its surface, which looks as if it were covered with frozen dew-drops. In other instances, the epiderm is partially invested by a layer of *scales*, which are nothing else than flattened cells, often having a very peculiar form; whilst in numerous cases, again, we find the surface beset with *hairs*, which occasionally consist of single elongated cells, but are more commonly made up of a

FIG. 272.



Portion of Vertical Section of leaf of *Rochea*, showing the small cells, *a*, *a*, of the inner layer of Epidermis; the large cells, *b*, *b*, of the outer layer; *c*, one of the stomata; *d*, *d*, cells of the parenchyma; L, cavity between the parenchymatous cells, into which the stoma opens.

linear series, attached end to end, as in Fig. 240. Sometimes these hairs bear little glandular bodies at their extremities, by the secretion of which a peculiar viscidity is given to the surface of the leaf, as in the Sundew (*Drosera*); in other instances, the hair has a glandular body at its base, with whose secretion it is moistened, so that when this secretion is of an irritating quality, as in the *Nettle,* it constitutes a 'sting.' A great variety of such organs may be found, by a microscopic examination of the surface of the leaves of plants having any kind of superficial investment to the epiderm. Many connecting links present themselves between hairs and scales, such as the stellate hairs of the *Deutzia scabra,* which a good deal resemble those within the air-chambers of the Yellow Waterlily (Fig. 238).

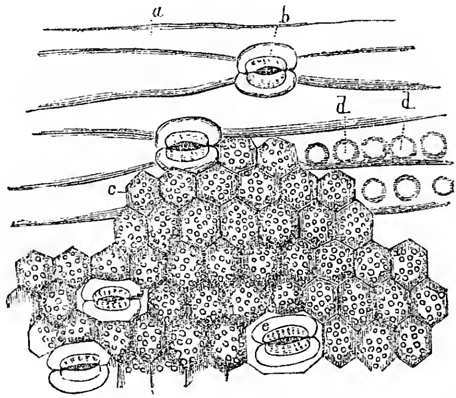
380. The Epidermis in many plants, especially those belonging to the *Grass* tribe, has its cell-walls impregnated with *silex,* like that of the Equisetum (§ 345); so that when the organic matter seems to have been got rid-of by heat or by acids, the forms of the cuticle-cells, hairs, stomata, &c., are still marked-out in silex, and (unless the dissipation of the organic matter has been most perfectly accomplished) are most beautifully displayed by Polarized light. Such silicified epiderms are found in the husks of the grains yielded by these plants: and there is none in which a larger proportion of mineral matter exists, than that of *Rice,* which contains some curious elongated cells with toothed margins. The hairs with which the *paleæ* (chaff-scales) of most Grasses are furnished, are strengthened by the like siliceous deposit; and in the *Festuca pratensis,* one of the common meadow-grasses, the paleæ are also beset with longitudinal rows of little cup-like bodies formed of silica. The epiderm and scaly hairs of *Deutzia scabra* also contain a large quantity of silex; and are remarkably beautiful objects for the Polariscope.

381. Externally to the epidermis there usually exists a very delicate transparent 'cuticle,' showing no decided traces of organization, though occasionally somewhat granular in appearance, and marked by lines that seem to be impressions of the junctions of the cells with which it was in contact. When detached by maceration, it not only comes off from the surface of the epiderm, but also from that of the hairs, &c., which this may bear. This membrane is obviously formed by the agency of the epidermic cells; and it seems to consist of the external layers of their thickened cellulose walls, which have coalesced with each other, and have separated themselves from the subjacent layers.

382. In nearly all plants which possess a distinct epidermis, this is perforated by the minute openings termed *stomata* (Figs. 270–272, *c, c*); which are bordered by cells of a peculiar form, distinct from those of the epidermis, and more resembling in character those of the tissue beneath. These boundary-cells are usually somewhat kidney-shaped, and lie in pairs (Fig. 273, *b, b*), with an oval opening between them; but by an alteration in their form, the opening may

be contracted or nearly closed. In the epiderm of *Yucca*, however, the opening is bounded by two pairs of cells, and is somewhat quadrangular (Fig. 268); and a like doubling of the boundary-cells, with a narrower slit between them, is seen in the epiderm of the *Indian corn* (Fig. 269). In the stomata of no Phanerogam, however, do we meet with any conformation at all to be compared in complexity with that which has been described in the humble *Marchantia* (§332).—Stomata are usually found most abundantly (and sometimes exclusively) in the epiderm of the *lower* surfaces of leaves, where they open into the air-chambers that are left in the parenchyma which lies next the inferior epiderm; in leaves which float on the surface of water, however, they are found in the epiderm of the upper surface only; whilst in leaves that habitually live entirely submerged, as there is no distinct epiderm, so there are no stomata. In the erect leaves of Grasses, the Iris tribe, &c., they are found equally (or nearly so) on both surfaces. As a general fact, they are least numerous in *succulent* plants, whose moisture, obtained in a scanty supply, is destined to be retained in the system; whilst they abound most in those which exhale fluid most readily, and therefore absorb it most quickly. It has been estimated that no fewer than 160,000 are contained in every square inch of the under surface of the leaves of *Hydrangea* and of several other plants; the greatest number seeming always to be present where the upper surface of the leaves is entirely destitute of these organs. In *Iris germanica*, each surface has nearly 12,000 stomata in every square inch; and in *Yucca*, each surface has 40,000.—In *Oleander*, *Banksia*, and some other plants, the stomata do not open directly upon the lower surface of the epiderm, but lie in the deepest part of little pits or depressions, which are excavated in it and lined with hairs; the mouths of these pits, with the hairs that line them, are well brought into view by taking a thin slice from the surface of the epiderm with a sharp knife; but the form of the cavities and the position of the stomata can only be well made-out in vertical sections of the leaves.

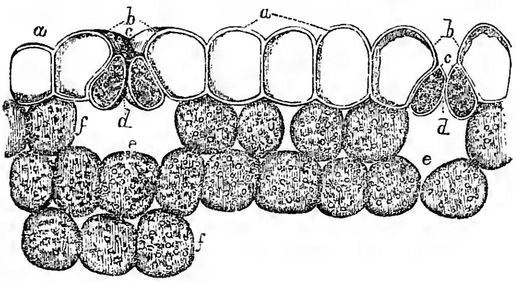
Fig. 273.



Portion of Epidermis of Leaf of *Iris germanica*, torn from its surface, and carrying away with it a portion of the parenchymatous layer in immediate contact with it:—*a*, *a*, elongated cells of the cuticle; *b*, *b*, cells of the stomata; *c*, *c*, cells of the parenchyma; *d*, *d*, impressions on the epidermic cells formed by their contact; *e*, *e*, cavities in the parenchyma, corresponding to the stomata.

383. The internal structure of *leaves* is best brought into view by making vertical sections, that shall traverse the two layers of epiderm and the intermediate cellular parenchyma; portions of such sections are shown in Figs. 272, 274, and 275. In close apposition with the cells of the upper epiderm (Fig. 274, *a*, *a*), which may or may not be perforated with stomata (*c*,*c*, *d*,*d*) we find a layer of soft thin-walled cells, containing a large quantity of chlorophyll; these generally press so closely one against another, that their sides become mutually flattened, and no spaces are left, save where there is a definite air-chamber into which the stoma opens (Fig. 274, *e*); and the compactness of this superficial layer is well seen, when, as often happens, it adheres so closely to the epiderm, as to be carried away with this when it is torn off (Fig. 273, *c*, c). Beneath this first layer of leaf-cells, there are usually several others rather less compactly arranged; and the tissue gradually becomes more and more lax, its cells not being in close apposition, and large intercellular passages being left amongst them, until we reach the lower epiderm, which the parenchyma only touches at certain points, its lowest layer forming a set of network (Fig. 270, *d*, *d*) with large interspaces, into which the stomata open. It is to this arrangement that the darker shade of green almost invariably presented by the superior surfaces of leaves is principally due; the colour of the component cells of the parenchyma not being deeper in one part of the leaf than in another.—In those plants, however, whose leaves are erect instead of being horizontal, so that their two surfaces are equally exposed to light, the parenchyma is arranged on both sides in the same manner, and their epiderms are furnished with an equal number of stomata. This is the case, for example, with the leaves of the common garden *Iris* (Fig. 275); in which, moreover, we find a central portion (*d*, *d*) formed by thick-walled colourless tissue, very different either from ordinary leaf-cells or from woody fibre. The explanation of its presence is to be found in the peculiar conformation of the leaves; for if we pull one of them from its origin, we shall find that what appears to be the flat expanded blade really exposes but half its surface; the

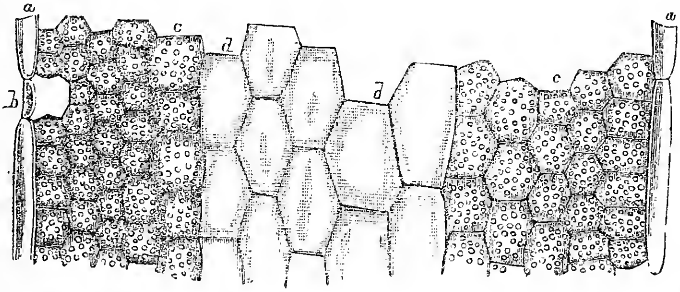
Fig. 274.



Vertical section of Epidermis and of portion of subjacent parenchyma, of Leaf of *Iris germanica*, taken in a transverse direction:—*a*, *a*, cells of epiderm; *b*, *b*, cells at the sides of the stomata; *c*, *c*, small green cells placed within these; *d*, *d*, openings of the stomata; *e*, *e*, cavities in the parenchyma into which the stomata open; *f*, *f*, cells of the parenchyma.

blade being doubled together longitudinally, so that what may be considered its under surface is entirely concealed. The two halves are adherent together at their upper part, but at their lower they

FIG. 275.



Portion of vertical longitudinal section of Leaf of *Iris*, extending from one of its flattened sides to the other:—*a*, *a*, elongated cells of Epiderm; *b*, *b*, stomata cut through longitudinally; *c*, *c*, green cells of parenchyma; *d*, *d*, colourless tissue, occupying interior of leaf.

are commonly separated by a new leaf which comes-up between them; and it is from this arrangement, which resembles the position of the legs of a man on horseback, that the leaves of the Iris tribe are said to be *equitant*. Now by tracing the middle layer of colourless cells, *d*, *d*, down to that lower portion of the leaf where its two halves diverge from one another, we find that it there becomes continuous with the epiderm, to the cells of which (Fig. 275, *a*) these bear a strong resemblance in every respect save the greater proportion of their breadth to their length.—Another interesting variety in leaf-structure is presented by the *Water-Lily* and other Plants whose leaves float on the surface; for here the usual arrangement is entirely reversed, the closely-set layers of green leaf-cells being found in contact with the lower surface, whilst all the upper part of the leaf is occupied by a loose spongy parenchyma, containing a very large number of air-spaces that give buoyancy to the leaf; and these spaces communicate with the external air through the numerous stomata, which, contrary to the general rule (§ 382), are here found in the upper epiderm alone.*

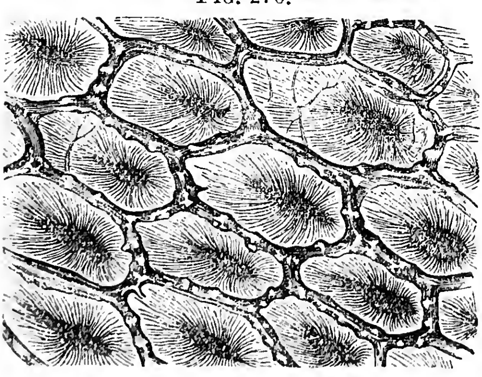
384. The examination of the foregoing structures is attended with very little difficulty. Many epiderms may be torn off, by the exercise of a little dexterity, from the surfaces of the leaves they invest, without any preparation: this is especially the case with Monocotyledons generally, the veins of whose leaves run parallel, and with such Dicotyledons as have very little woody structure in their leaves; in those, on the other hand, whose leaves are

* See the classical Memoir by Ad. Brongniart on the Structure of Leaves, in "Ann. des Sci. Nat.," Tom. xxi. (1830), pp. 420-458.

furnished with reticulated veins to which the epiderm adheres (as is the case in by far the larger proportion), this can only be detached by first macerating the leaf for a few days in water; and if their texture should be particularly firm, the addition of a few drops of nitric acid to the water will render their cuticles more easily separable. Epiderms may be advantageously mounted either in weak spirit, or in glycerine-jelly.—Very good sections of most leaves may be made by a sharp knife, handled by a careful manipulator; but it is generally preferable to use the Microtome, placing the leaf between two pieces either of very soft cork or of elder-pith or carrot, or imbedding it in paraffine (§ 189). In order to study the structure of leaves with the fulness that is needed for scientific research, numerous sections should be made in different directions; and slices taken parallel to the surfaces, at different distances from them, should also be examined. There is no known medium in which such sections can be preserved altogether without change; but some one of the methods formerly described (§ 206) will generally be found to answer sufficiently well.

385. *Flowers.*—Many small flowers, when looked-at entire with a low magnifying power, are very striking Microscopic objects; and the interest of the young in such observations can scarcely be better excited, than by directing their attention to the new view they thus acquire of the 'composite' nature of the humble down-trodden *Daisy*, or to the beauty of the minute blossoms of many of those *Umbelliferous* Plants which are commonly regarded only as rank weeds. The Scientific Microscopist, however, looks more to the organization of the separate parts of the flower; and among these he finds abundant sources of gratification, not merely to his love of knowledge, but also to his taste for the beautiful. The general structure of the *sepals* and *petals*, which constitute the 'perianth' or floral envelope, closely corresponds with that of leaves; the chief difference lying in the peculiar change of hue which the chlorophyll almost invariably undergoes in the latter class of organs, and very frequently in the former also. There are some petals, however, whose cells exhibit very interesting peculiarities, either of form or marking, in addition to their distinctive coloration;* such are those of the *Geranium* (Pelargonium), of

Fig. 276.



Cells from Petal of Geranium (*Pelargonium.*)

* See especially Mr. Tuffen West 'On some Conditions of the Cell-Wall in the Petals of Flowers,' in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. vii. (1859), p. 22.

which a small portion is represented in Fig. 276. The different portions of this petal—when it has been dried after stripping it of its epiderm, immersed for an hour or two in oil of turpentine, and then mounted in Canada balsam—exhibit a most beautiful variety of vivid coloration, which is seen to exist chiefly in the thickened partitions of the cells; whilst the surface of each cell presents a very curious opaque spot with numerous diverging prolongations. This method of preparation, however, does not give a true idea of the structure of the cells; for each of them has a peculiar mammillary protuberance, the base of which is surrounded by hairs; and this it is which gives the velvety appearance to the surface of the petal, and which, when altered by drying and compression, occasions the peculiar spots represented in Fig. 276. Their real character may be brought into view by Dr. Inman's method; which consists in drying the petal (when stripped of its epiderm) on a slip of glass, to which it adheres, and then placing on it a little Canada balsam diluted with Turpentine, which is to be boiled for an instant over the spirit-lamp, after which it is to be covered with a thin glass. The boiling 'blisters' it, but does not remove the colour; and on examination many of the cells will be found showing the mammilla very distinctly, with a score of hairs surrounding its base, each of these slightly curved, and pointing towards the apex of the mammilla.—The petal of the common Scarlet Pimpernel (*Anagallis arvensis*), that of the common Chickweed (*Stellaria media*), together with many others of a small and delicate character, are also very beautiful microscopic objects; and the two just named are peculiarly favourable subjects for the examination of the spiral vessels in their natural position. For the 'veins' which traverse these petals are entirely made-up of spiral vessels, none of which individually attain any great length; but one follows or takes the place of another, the conical commencement of each somewhat overlapping the like termination of its predecessor; and where the 'veins' seem to branch, this does not happen by the bifurcation of a spiral vessel, but by the 'splicing-on' (so to speak) of one to the side of another, or of two new vessels diverging from one another to the end of that which formed the principal vein.

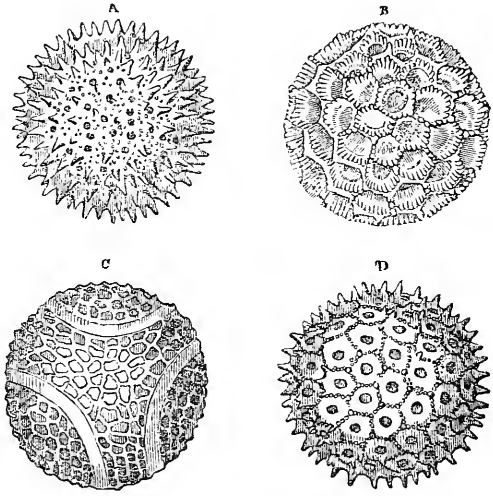
386. The *anthers* and *pollen-grains*, also, present numerous objects of great interest, both to the scientific Botanist and to the amateur Microscopist. In the first place, they afford a good opportunity of studying that form of 'free' cell-development which seems peculiar to the parts concerned in the reproductive process, and which consists in the development of a new cell-wall round an isolated mass of protoplasm forming part of the contents of a 'parent-cell;' so that the new cell lies free within its cavity, instead of being formed by its subdivision, as in the ordinary method of multiplication (§ 226).—If the anther be examined by thin sections at an early stage of its development within the young flower-bud, it will be found to be made-up of ordinary cellular parenchyma

in which no peculiarity anywhere shows itself: but a gradual 'differentiation' speedily takes-place, consisting in the development of a set of very large cells in two vertical rows, which occupy the place of the *loculi* or 'pollen-chambers' that afterwards present themselves; and these cells give origin to the pollen-grains, whilst the ordinary parenchyma remains to form the walls of the pollen-chambers. The pollen-grains are formed within 'mother-cells,' the endoplasm of each breaking up into four segments. These become invested by a double envelope, a firm *extine*, and a thin *intine;* and they are set free, when mature, by the bursting of the pollen-chambers. It is not a little curious that the layer of cells which lines the pollen-chambers should exhibit, in a considerable proportion of plants, a strong resemblance in structure, though not in form, to the elaters of *Marchantia* (Fig. 218). For they have in their interior a fibrous deposit; which sometimes forms a continuous spiral (like that in Fig. 244), as in Narcissus and Hyoscyamus; but it is often broken-up, as it were, into rings, as in the Iris and Hyacinth; in many instances forms an irregular network, as in the Violet and Saxifrage; in other cases, again, forms a set of interrupted arches, the fibres being deficient on one side, as in the Yellow Water-lily, Bryony, Primrose, &c.; whilst a very peculiar stellate aspect is often given to these cells, by the convergence of the interrupted fibres towards one point of the cell-wall, as in the Cactus, Geranium, Madder, and many other well-known plants. Various intermediate modifications exist; and the particular form presented often varies in different parts of the wall of one and the same anther. It seems probable that, as in Hepaticæ, the elasticity of these spiral cells may have some share in the opening of the pollen-chambers and in the dispersion of the pollen-grains.

387. The form of the pollen-grains seems to depend in part upon the mode of division of the cavity of the parent-cell into quarters; generally speaking it approaches the spheroidal, but it is sometimes elliptical, and sometimes tetrahedral. It varies more, however, when the pollen is dry, than when it is moist; for the effect of the imbibition of fluid, which usually takes-place when the pollen is placed in contact with it, is to soften-down angularities, and to bring the cell nearer to the typical sphere. The extine or outer coat of the pollen-grain often exhibits very curious markings, which seem due to an increased thickening at some points and a thinning-away at others. Sometimes these markings give to the surface-layer so close a resemblance to a stratum of cells (Fig. 277, B, C, D), that only a very careful examination can detect the difference. The roughening of the surface by spines or knobby protuberances, as shown at A, is a very common feature; and this seems to enable the pollen-grains more readily to hold to the surface whereon they may be cast. Besides these and other inequalities of the surface, most pollen-grains have what appear to be pores or slits in their extine (varying in number in different species), through which the intine protrudes itself as a tube, when the bulk of its contents has

been increased by imbibition; it seems probable, however, that the extine is not absolutely deficient at these points, but is only thinned-away. Sometimes the pores are covered by little disk-like pieces or lids, which fall-off when the pollen-tube is protruded. This action takes place naturally when the pollen-grains fall upon the surface of the stigma, which is moistened with a viscid secretion; and the pollen-tubes, at first mere protrusions of the inner coat of their cell, insinuating themselves between the loosely-packed cells of the stigma, grow downwards through the style, sometimes even to the length of several inches, until they reach the ovarium. The first change — namely, the protrusion of the inner membrane through the pores of the exterior — may be made to take-place artificially by moistening the pollen with water, thin syrup, or dilute acids (different kinds of pollen-grains requiring different modes of treatment); but the subsequent extension by growth will only take place under the natural conditions. By treating some pollen-grains, as those of *Lilium Japonicum*, *L. rubrum*, or *L. auratum*, with the viscid liquid abundantly secreted by the stigma, not only may the extrusion and lengthening of the pollen-tubes be watched, but the grains with their extruded tubes may be preserved almost unchanged by mounting in this liquid.

FIG. 277.



Pollen-grains of,—A, *Althæa rosea;* B, *Cobæa scandens;* C, *Passiflora cærulea;* D, *Ipomæa purpurea.*

388. The darker kinds of pollen may be generally rendered transparent by mounting in Canada balsam; or, if it be desired to avoid the use of heat, in the Benzole solution of Canada balsam (§ 205), setting aside the slide for a time in a warm place. For the less opaque pollens, the Dammar solution (§ 168, *d*) is preferable. The more delicate pollens, however, become too transparent in either of these media: and it is consequently preferable to mount them either dry or (if they will bear it without rupturing) in fluid. The most interesting forms are found, for the most part, in plants of the orders *Amarantaceæ*, *Cichoraceæ*, *Cucurbitaceæ*, *Malvaceæ*, and *Passifloreæ;* others are furnished also by *Convolvulus*, *Campanula*, *Œnothera*, *Pelargonium* (Geranium), *Polygonum*, *Sedum*, and many other plants. It is frequently preferable to lay-down the entire

anther, with its adherent pollen-grains (where these are of a kind that hold to it), as an opaque object; this may be done with great advantage in the case of the common Mallow (*Malva sylvestris*) or of the Hollyhock (*Althæa rosea*); the anthers being picked soon after they have opened, whilst a large proportion of their pollen is yet undischarged; and being laid down as flat as possible, before they have begun to wither, between two pieces of smooth blotting-paper, then subjected to moderate pressure, and finally mounted upon a black surface. They are then, when properly illuminated, most beautiful objects for objectives of 2-3rds, 1, 1½, or 2 in. focus, especially with the Binocular Microscope.*

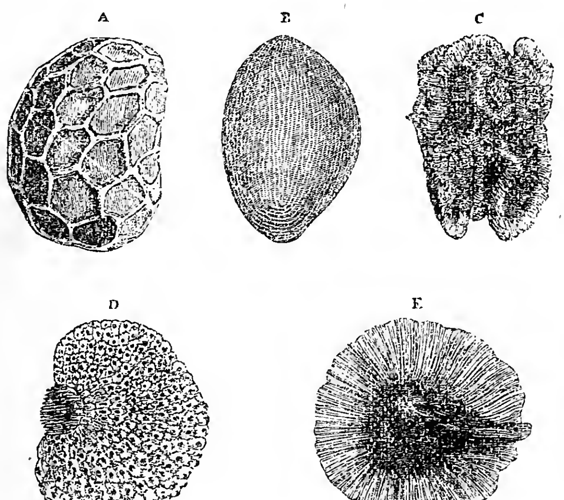
389. The structure and development of the *ovules* that are produced within the ovarium at the base of the pistil, and the operation in which their fertilization essentially consists, are subjects of investigation which have a peculiar interest for scientific Botanists, but which, in consequence of the special difficulties that attend the inquiry, are not commonly regarded as within the province of ordinary Microscopists.—Some general instructions, however, may prove useful to such as would like to inform themselves as to the mode in which the generative function is performed in Phanerogams. In tracing the origin and early history of the ovule, very thin sections should be made through the flower-bud, both vertically and transversely; but when the ovule is large and distinct enough to be separately examined, it should be placed on the thumb-nail of the left hand, and very thin sections made with a sharp razor; the ovule should not be allowed to dry-up, and the section should be removed from the blade of the razor by a wetted camel-hair pencil. The tracing-downwards the pollen-tubes through the tissue of the style, may be accomplished by sections (which, however, will seldom follow one tube continuously for any great part of its length), or, in some instances, by careful dissection with needles. Plants of the *Orchis* tribe are the most favourable subjects for this kind of investigation; which is best carried-on by artificially applying the pollen to the stigma of several flowers, and then examining one or more of the styles daily. "If the style of flower of an *Epipactis* (says Schacht), to which the pollen has been applied about eight days previously, be examined in the manner above mentioned, the observer will be surprised at the extraordinary number of pollen-tubes, and he will easily be able to trace them in large strings, even as far as the ovules. *Viola tricolor* (Heartsease) and *Ribes nigrum* and *rubrum* (Black and Red Currant) are also good plants for the purpose; in the case of the former plant,

* It sometimes happens that when the pollen of Pines or Firs is set free, large quantities of it are carried by the wind to a great distance from the woods and plantations in which it has been produced, and are deposited as a fine yellow dust, so strongly resembling Sulphur as to be easily mistaken for it. This (supposed) general diffusion of sulphur (such as occurred in the neighbourhood of Windsor in 1879) has frightened ignorant rustics into the belief that the 'end of the world' was at hand. Its true nature is at once revealed by placing a few grains of it under the Microscope.

withered flowers may be taken, and branched pollen-tubes will not unfrequently be met with." The entrance of the pollen-tube into the micropyle may be most easily observed in *Orchideous* plants and in *Euphrasia;* it being only necessary to tear-open with a needle the ovary of a flower which is just withering, and to detach from the placenta the ovules, almost every one of which will be found to have a pollen-tube sticking in its micropyle. These ovules, however, are too small to allow of sections being made, whereby the origin of the embryo may be discerned; and for this purpose, *Œnothera* (Evening Primrose) has been had recourse to by Hoffmeister, whilst Schacht recommends *Lathræa squamaria, Pedicularis palustris,* and particularly *Pedicularis sylvatica.*

390. We have now, in the last place, to notice the chief points of interest to the Microscopist which are furnished by mature *seeds.* Many of the smaller kinds of these bodies are very curious, and some are very beautiful objects, when looked-at in their natural state under a low magnifying power. Thus the seed of the *Poppy* (Fig. 278, A) presents a regular reticulation upon its

Fig. 278.



Seeds, as seen under a low magnifying power:—A, *Poppy* B, *Amaranthus* (Prince's feather); C, *Antirrhinum majus* (Snapdragon); D, *Caryophyllum* (Clove-pink); E, *Bignonia.*

surface, pits for the most part hexagonal being left between projecting walls; that of *Caryophyllum* (D) is regularly covered with curiously-jagged divisions, every one of which has a small bright black hemispherical knob in its middle; that of *Amaranthus hypochondriacus* has its surface traced with extremely delicate markings (B); that of *Antirrhinum* is strangely irregular in shape

(C), and looks almost like a piece of furnace-slag; and that of many *Bignoniaceæ* is remarkable for the beautiful radiated structure of the translucent membrane which surrounds it (E). This structure is extremely well seen in the seed of the *Eccremocarpus scaber*, a half-hardy climbing plant now common in our gardens; and when its membranous 'wing' is examined under a sufficient magnifying power, it is found to be formed by an extraordinary elongation of the cells of the seed-coat at the margin of the seed, the side-walls of which cells (those, namely, which lie in contact with one another) are thickened so as to form radiating ribs for the support of the wing, whilst the front and back walls (which constitute its membranous surface) retain their original transparence, being marked only with an indication of spiral deposit in their interior. In the seed of *Dictyoloma Peruviana*, besides the principal 'wing' prolonged from the edge of the seed-coat, there is a series of successively smaller wings, whose margins form concentric rings over either surface of the seed; and all these wings are formed of radiating fibres only, composed, as in the preceding case, of the thickened walls of adjacent cells; the intervening membrane, originally formed by the front and back walls of these cells, having disappeared, apparently in consequence of being unsupported by any secondary deposit.* Several other seeds, as those of *Sphenogyne speciosa* and *Lophospermum erubescens*, possess wing-like appendages; but the most remarkable development of these organs is said by Mr. Quekett to exist in a seed of *Calosanthes Indica*, an East Indian plant, in which the wing extends more than an inch on either side of the seed.—Some seeds are distinguished by a peculiarity of form, which, although readily discernible by the naked eye, becomes much more striking when they are viewed under a very low magnifying power: this is the case, for example, with the seeds of the *Carrot*, whose long radiating processes make it bear, under the Microscope, no trifling resemblance to some kinds of star-fish; and with those of *Cyanthus minor*, which bear about the same degree of resemblance to shaving-brushes. In addition to the preceding, the following may be mentioned as seeds easily to be obtained, and as worth mounting for opaque objects:—*Anagallis, Anethum graveolens, Begonia, Carum carui, Coreopsis tinctoria, Datura, Delphinium, Digitalis, Elatine, Erica, Gentiana, Gesnera, Hyoscyamus, Hypericum, Lepidium, Limnocharis, Linaria, Lychnis, Mesembryanthemum, Nicotiana, Origamme onites, Orobanche, Petunia, Reseda, Saxifraga, Scrophularia, Sedum, Sempervivum, Silene, Stellaria, Symphytum asperrimum,* and *Verbena.* The following may be mounted as transparent objects in Canada balsam:—*Drosera, Hydrangea, Monotropa, Orchis, Parnassia, Pyrola, Saxifraga.*† The seeds of Umbelliferous plants generally are remarkable for the peculiar

* See H. B. Brady in "Transactions of Microsc. Society," N.S., Vol. ix. (1861), p 65.

† These lists have been chiefly derived from the "Micrographic Dictionary."

vittæ, or receptacles for essential oil, which are found in their coats. Various points of interest respecting the structure of the *testæ* or envelopes of seeds,—such as the fibre-cells of *Cobæa* and *Collomia*, the stellate cells of the *Star-Anise*, and the densely-consolidated tissue of the 'shells' of the *Coquilla-nut, Cocoa-nut*, &c.,—having been already noticed, we cannot here stop to do more than advert to the peculiarity of the constitution of the husk of the *Corn-grains*. In these, as in other Grasses, the ovary itself continues to envelope the seed, giving a covering to it that surrounds its own testa, and closely adheres to it. The 'bran' detached in grinding consists not only of these two coats, but also (as the Microscope reveals) of an outer layer of the grain itself, formed of hexagonal cells disposed with great regularity. As these are filled with *gluten*, the removal of this layer takes away one of the most nutritious parts of the grain; and it is most desirable, therefore, that only the two outer indigestible coats should be detached by the 'decorticating' process devised for the purpose. The hexagonal cell-layer is so little altered by a high temperature, as still to be readily distinguishable when the grain has been ground after roasting,—thus enabling the Microscopist to detect even a small admixture of roasted Corn with Coffee or Chicory, without the least difficulty.*

* In a case in which the Author was called-upon to make such an investigation, he found as many as *thirty* distinctly-recognizable fragments of this cellular envelope, in *a single grain* of a mixture consisting of Chicory with only 5 per cent. of roasted Corn.

CHAPTER X.

MICROSCOPIC FORMS OF ANIMAL LIFE:—PROTOZOA.

391. Passing-on, now, to the Animal Kingdom, we begin by directing our attention of those minute and simple forms, which correspond in the Animal series with the *Protophyta* in the Vegetable (Chap. vi.); and this is the more desirable, since the formation of a distinct group to which the name of Protozoa (first proposed by Siebold) may be appropriately given, is one of the most interesting results of Microscopic inquiry. This group, which must be placed at the very base of the Animal scale, beneath the great Sub-Kingdoms marked-out by Cuvier, is characterized by the extreme simplicity that prevails in the structure of the beings composing it: the lowest of them being single protoplasmic particles or 'jelly-specks;' whilst even among the highest, however numerous their units may be, these are (as among *Protophytes*, § 227) mere repetitions of one another, each capable of maintaining an independent existence. In this there is a very curious and significant parallelism to the earliest embryonic stage of higher Animals. For the fertilized germ of any one of these first shapes itself as a single cell; and then, by repeated binary subdivisions, develops itself into a *morula* or 'mulberry-mass' of cells (Fig. 403), corresponding to the 'multicellular' organisms met with among the higher Protozoa (Fig. 350). There is, so far, in neither case, any sign of that 'differentiation' of organs which is characteristic of the higher Animals; but whilst, in the Protozoon, each cell is not merely similar to its fellows, but is independent of them, the *morula*, in such as go on to a higher stage, becomes the subject of a series of developmental changes, tending to the production of a single whole, whose parts are mutually-dependent. The first of these changes is its conversion into a *gastrula* or primitive stomach, whose wall is formed of a double membrane,—the outer lamella, or *ectoderm*, being derived directly from the external cell-layer of the morula, whilst the inner, or *endoderm*, is formed by the 'invagination' of that layer into the space left void by the dissolution of the central cells of the 'morula.'* This *gastrula-stage*, as we shall see hereafter (§ 513), remains permanent in the great group of *Cœlenterata;* though the endoderm and ectoderm are separated from each other in its higher forms by

* It has not yet been certainly ascertained that the endoderm is formed by invagination in all cases; but as several of the supposed exceptions have disappeared under the light of fuller investigation, it seems probable that the remainder will be found conformable to the general rule.

the development of generative and other organs between them. But in all Classes above the Cœlenterates, the primitive stomach has only a transitory existence, being superseded by the permanent structures that have their origin in its walls.—Thus the whole Animal Kingdom may be divided, in the first place, into the PROTOZOA, which are either single cells, or aggregates of similar cells corresponding to the *morula*-stage of higher types; and the METAZOA, in which the morula takes-on the condition of an individualized organism, the life of every part of which contributes to the general life of the whole.

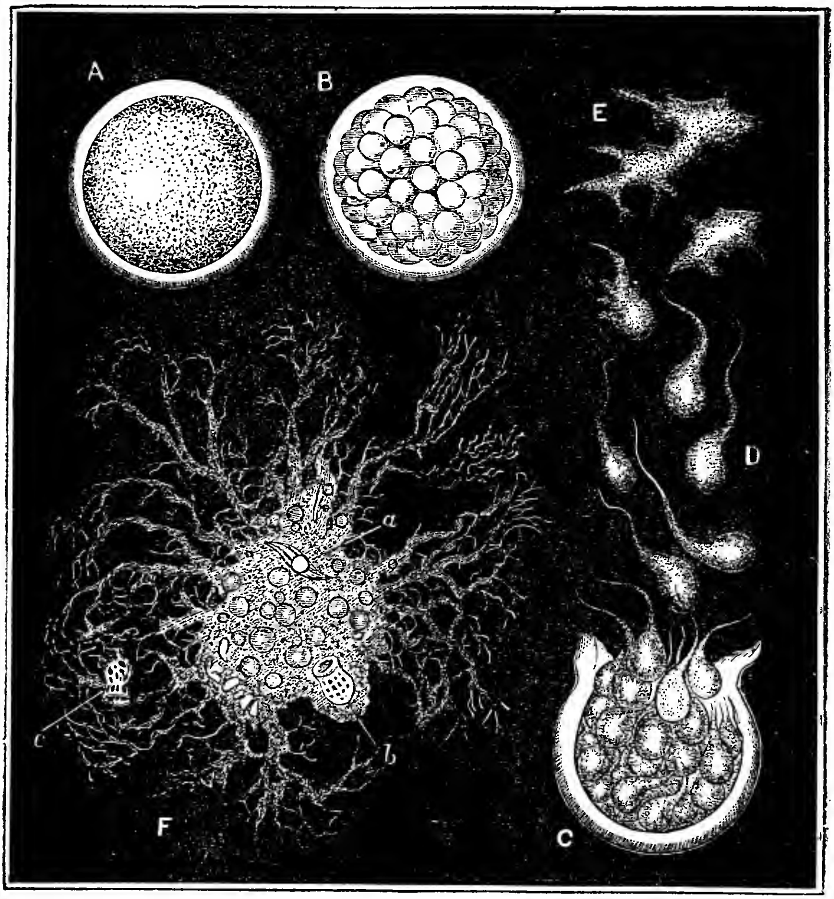
392. The lowest of the *Protozoa*, however, like the simplest Protophytes, do not even attain the rank of a true *cell*,—understanding by that designation a definite protoplasmic unit, limited by a cell-wall, and containing a 'nucleus.' For they consist of particles of protoplasm, termed ('cytodes' or 'plastids') of indefinite extent, which have neither cell-wall nor nucleus, but which yet take-in and digest food, convert it into the material of their own bodies, cast out the indigestible portions, and reproduce their kind, with the regularity and completeness that we have been accustomed to regard as characteristic of higher Animals. Between some of these *Monerozoa* (as they have been designated by Prof. Haeckel, who first drew attention to them) and the *Myxomycetes* (§ 222) or the *Chlamidomyxis* (§ 324) already described, no definite line of division can be drawn; the only justification for the separation here adopted being that the affinities of the former seem to be rather with the lowest forms of Vegetation, whilst the whole life-history of the types now to be described, and the connected gradation by which they pass into undoubted Rhizopods, leave no doubt of *their* claim to a place in the Animal Kingdom.

MONEROZOA.

393. A characteristic example of this lowest Protozoic type is presented by the *Protomyxa aurantiaca* (Fig. 279), a marine 'Moner' of an orange-red colour, found by Professor Haeckel upon dead shells of *Spirula* near the Canary Islands. In its active state it has the stellar form shown at F; its arborescent extensions dividing and inosculating so as to form a constantly changing network of protoplasmic threads, along which stream in all directions orange-red granules obviously belonging to the body itself, together with foreign organisms (*b*, *c*)—such as marine Diatoms, Radiolarians, and Infusoria,—which, having been entrapped in the pseudopodial network, are carried by the protoplasmic stream into the central mass, where the nutrient matter of their bodies is extracted, the hard skeletons being cast out. Neither nucleus nor contractile vesicle is to be discerned; but numerous floating and inconstant vacuoles (*a*) are dispersed through the substance of the body.—After a time, the currents become slower; the ramified extensions are gradually drawn inwards; and, after ejecting any indigestible particles it may still include, the body takes the form of an orange-

red sphere, round which a cyst soon forms itself, as shown at A. After a period of quiescence, the protoplasmic substance retreats from the interior of the cyst, and breaks up into a number of small spheres (B), which, at first inactive, soon begin to move within the cyst, and change their shape to that of a pear with the small end drawn out to a point. The cyst then bursts, and the red pear-

FIG. 279.



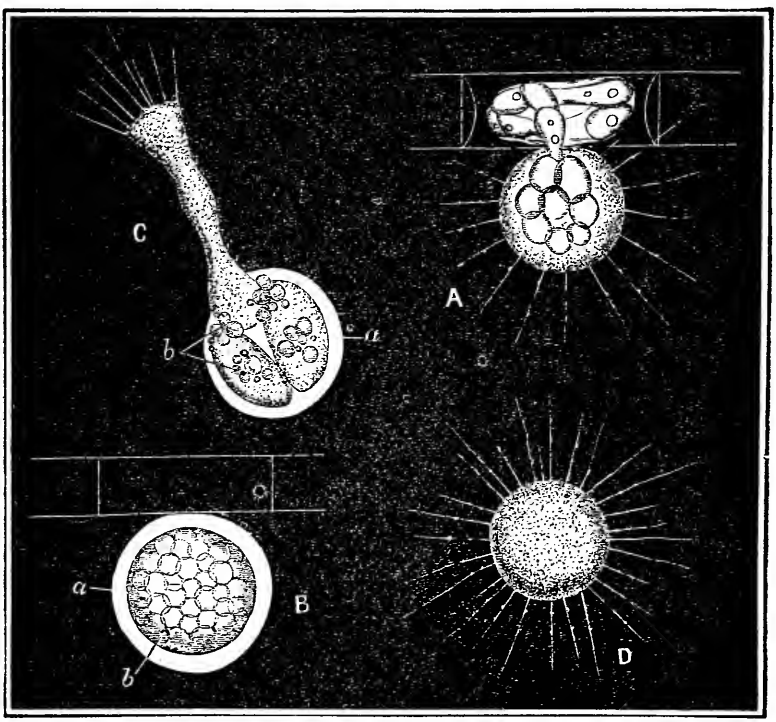
Protomyxa aurantiaca:—A, encysted statospore; B, incipient formation of swarm-spores, shown at C escaping from the cyst, at D swimming freely by their flagellate appendages, and at E creeping in the amœboid condition; F, fully-developed reticulate organism, showing numerous vacuoles, *a*, and captured prey, *b*, *c*.

shaped bodies issue forth into the water (C), moving freely about by the vibrations of *flagella* formed by the drawing-out of their small ends,—just as do the flagellated zoöspores of Protophytes (§ 231). These bodies, being without trace of either nucleus, contractile vesicle, or cell-wall, are to be accounted as particles of simple

homogeneous protoplasm, to which the designation *plastidules* has been appropriately given. After about a day the motions cease; the flagella are drawn in, and the plastidules take the form and lead the life of *Amœbæ* (§ 403), putting forth inconstant pseudopodial processes, and engulfing nutrient particles in their substance (D). Two of more of these amœbiform bodies unite to form a 'plasmodium (as in the *Myxomycetes*, § 222); its pseudopodial extensions send out branches which inosculate to form a network; and the body grows, by the ingestion of nutriment, to the size of the original.—In this cycle of change there seems no intervention of a generative act, the coalescence of the amœbiform plastidules having none of the characters of a true 'conjugation.' But it is by no means improbable that after a long course of multiplication by successive subdivisions, a sexual act of some kind may intervene.

394. Another very interesting 'moneric' type is, the *Vampyrella*; of which one form (Fig. 280, B) has long been known in its encysted condition as a minute brick-red sphere attached to the filaments of

FIG. 280.



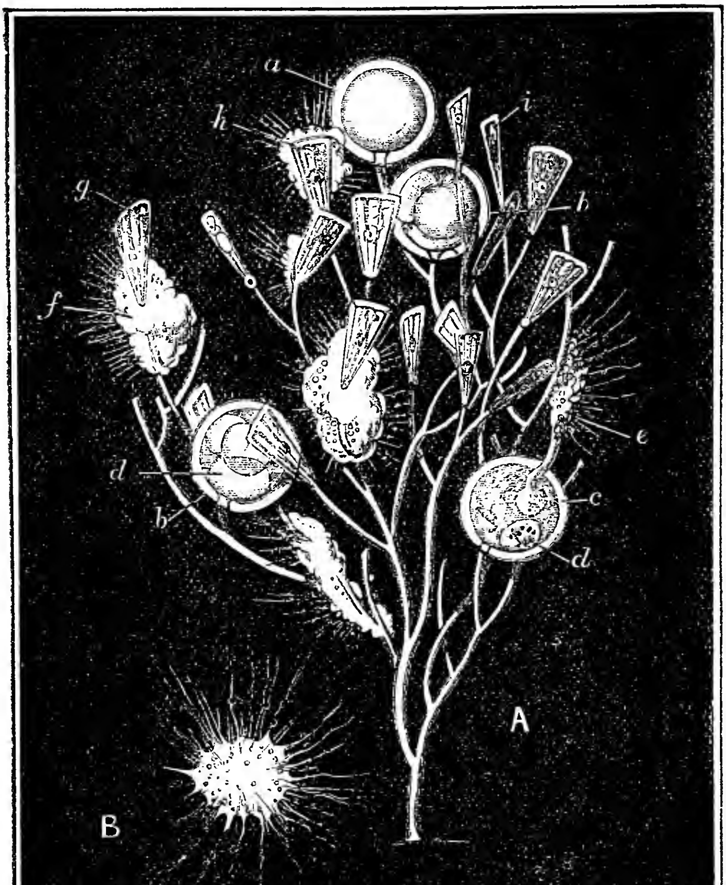
Vampyrella spirogyræ, as seen at A sucking-out contents of *Spirogyra*-cell; at B in encysted condition, the cyst *a* enclosing granular protoplasm *b*; at C, division of contents of cyst into tetraspores, of which one is escaping in the amœboid condition, to develop itself into the adult form shown at D.

the Conjugate *Spirogyra;* whilst another (Fig. 281, *a*, *a*) similarly attaches itself to the branches of *Gomphonema* (§ 294). The walls of the cysts are composed of two membranes; of which the interior gives the characteristic reaction of cellulose, whilst the softer external layer is nitrogenous. After remaining some time in the quiescent condition, the encysted protoplasm breaks up into two or four 'tetraspores' (Fig. 281, *b*, *d*); these escape by openings in the cyst (Fig. 280, C); and soon take the spherical form, emitting very slender pseudopodial filaments (Figs. 280, D, 281, B) like those of an *Actinophrys*, but possessing neither nucleus nor contractile vesicle. In this condition they show great activity; moving about in search of the special nutriment they require, drawing themselves out in strings and fine filaments which tear asunder and again unite to send off branches and form fine fan-like expansions, and these occasionally contracting again into minute spheres. When the *V. spirogyræ* is watched in water containing some filaments of *Spirogyra*, it may be seen to wander until it meets one of these filaments, to which, if it be healthy and loaded with chlorophyll, it attaches itself. It soon begins to perforate the wall of the filament; and when the interior of this has been reached, its endoplasm, carrying with it the chlorophyll-granules it includes, passes slowly into the body of the *Vampyrella*. In this manner, cell after cell is emptied of its contents; and the plunderer, satiated with food, resumes its quiescent spherical form to digest it. The chlorophyll granules which it has ingested become diffused through the body, but gradually cease to be distinguishable, the protoplasmic mass assuming a brick-red colour. The first layer it exudes to form its cyst is the outer or nitrogenous investment, within which the cellulose layer is afterwards formed.—The *V. gomphonematis* in like manner creeps over the stems and branches of the *Gomphonema* (Fig. 281, *e*), adapting itself to the form of its support; and as soon as it has reached one of the terminal siliceous cells of the Diatom, it extends itself over it so as completely to envelop the cell in a thin layer of protoplasm. From the surface of this, a number of fine pseudopodia radiate into the surrounding water (*f*); whilst another portion of the protoplasm finds its way between the two siliceous valves into the interior, and appropriates its contents. The valves, when emptied, break off from their support, and are cast out of the body of the *Vampyrella*, which soon proceeds to another *Gomphonema*-cell and plunders it in the same manner. After thus ingesting the nutriment furnished by several cells, and acquiring its full size, it passes, like *V. spyrogyræ*, into the encysted condition, to recommence—after a period of quiescence—the same cycle of change.

395. Intermediate between the foregoing and the 'reticularian' Rhizopods to be presently described, is another simple Protozoön discovered in ponds in Germany by M.M. Claparède and Lachmann, and named by them *Lieberkühnia Wageneri*.* The whole substance

* "Etudes sur les Infusoires et les Rhizopodes;" Geneva, 1850-1861. The

FIG. 281.



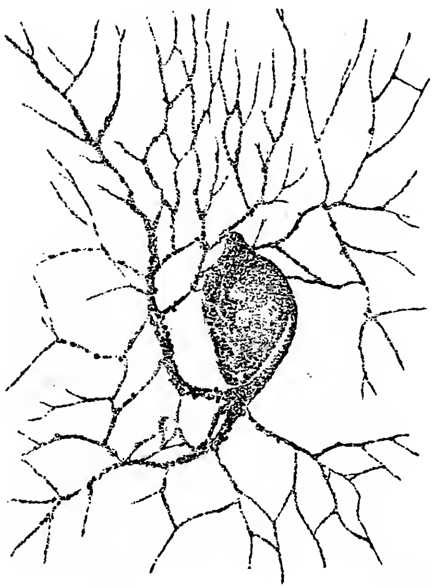
Vampyrella gomphonematis :—A, colony of *Gomphonema* attacked by *Vampyrellæ*; *a*, encysted state; *b*, *b*, cysts with contents breaking-up into tetraspores, *d*, *d*, seen escaping at *e*; at *f* is shown a *Vampyrella* sucking-out contents of *Gomphonema*-cells, the emptied frustules of which, *g*, *h*, are cast forth :—B, isolated *Vampyrella*, creeping about by its extended pseudopodia.

---

beautiful figure of *Lieberkühnia*, given by M. Claparède, has been reproduced by the Author in Plate 1 of his "Introduction to the Study of the Foraminifera.— A Rhizopod of the same type has been discovered by Mr. Siddall (of Chester) in *Sea*-water from the North and South Coasts of Wales, which he regards as specially identical with *L. Wageneri* ("Quart. Microsc. Journ." N.S., Vol. xx., p. 144), but which the Author (who has great confidence in the accuracy of the excellent observers by whom the latter was described) must regard as differentiated from it (1) by the existence of a pellucid flexible investment (foreshadow-

of the body of this animal and its pseudopodial extensions (Fig. 282) is composed of a homogeneous, semifluid, granular protoplasm; the particles of which, when the animal is in a state of activity, are continually performing a circulatory movement, which may be likened to the rotation of the particles in the protoplasmic network within the cell of a *Tradescantia* (§ 355). It is a marked peculiarity of the pseudopodial extension of this type, that it does not take place by radiation from all parts of the body indifferently; but that it proceeds entirely from a sort of trunk that soon divides into branches, which, again, speedily multiply by further subdivision, until at last a multitude of finer and yet finer threads are spun-out, by whose continual inosculations a complicated network is produced, which may be likened to an animated Spider's web.

FIG. 282.



Lieberkühnia Wageneri.

The entire absence of anything like a membranous envelope is clearly evidenced by the readiness with which the subdivision and the coalescence of the pseudopodia alike take place. Any small alimentary particles that may come into contact with the glutinous surface of the pseudopodia, are retained in adhesion by it, and speedily partake of the general movement going-on in their substance. This movement takes place in two principal directions; from the body towards the extremities of the pseudopodia, and from these extremities back to the body again. In the larger branches a double current may be seen, two streams passing at the same time in opposite directions; but in the finest filaments the current is single, and a granule may be seen to move in one of them to its very extremity, and then to return, perhaps meeting and carrying back with it a granule that was seen advancing in the opposite direction. Even in the broader processes, granules are sometimes observed to come to a stand, to oscillate for a time,

ing the 'test' of Gromia), having a definite orifice bordered by four infolded lips, through which the sarcodic trunk issues forth; and (2) by the presence of a number of highly refractive, short, rod-like spicules, set at various angles on the external surface.

and then to take a retrograde course, as if they had been entangled in the opposing current,—just as is often to be seen in *Chara*. When a granule arrives at a point where a filament bifurcates, it is often arrested for a time, until drawn into one or the other current; and when carried across one of the bridge-like connections into a different band, it not unfrequently meets a current proceeding in the opposite direction, and is thus carried back to the body without having proceeded very far from it. The pseudopodial network along which this 'cyclosis' takes place, is continually undergoing changes in its own arrangement; new filaments being put forth in different directions, sometimes from its margin, sometimes from the midst of its ramifications, whilst others are retracted. Not unfrequently it happens that to a spot where two or more filaments have met, there is an afflux of the protoplasmic substance that causes it to accumulate there as a sort of secondary centre, from which a new radiation of filamentous processes takes place. Occasionally the pseudopodia are entirely retracted, and all activity ceases; so that the body presents the appearance of an inert lump. But if watched sufficiently long, its activity is resumed; so that it may be presumed to have been previously satiated with food, which is undergoing digestion during its stationary period. No encysting process has been noticed in *Lieberkühnia*; and the manner in which this type reproduces itself is at present entirely unknown. As the marine type of it occurs on our own coasts, the fresh-water type may very likely be found in our ponds; and either may be recommended as a most worthy object of careful study.

Rhizopoda.

396. We now arrive at the group of *Rhizopods*, or 'root-footed' animals, first established by Dujardin for the reception of the *Amœba* (§ 403) and its allies, which had been included by Prof. Ehrenberg among his Infusory Animalcules, but which Dujardin separated from them as being mere particles of *sarcode* (protoplasm), having neither the definite body-wall nor the special mouth of the true *Infusoria*, but putting forth extensions of their sarcodic substance, which he termed *pseudopodia* (or false feet), serving alike as instruments of locomotion, and as prehensile organs for obtaining food. According to Dujardin's definition of this group, the *Monerozoa* already described would be included in it; but it seems on various grounds desirable to limit the term *Rhizopoda* to those Protozoa in which the presence of a *nucleus*, the differentiation of an *ectosarc* (or firmer superficial layer of protoplasm) from the semi-fluid *endosarc*, together with the more definite form and restricted size, indicate a distinct approach to the condition of true cells.—Many different schemes for the classification of the Rhizopods have been proposed; but none of them can be regarded as entirely satisfactory, our knowledge of the Reproductive processes, and of other important parts of the life-history of these creatures, being

still extremely imperfect. And as some parts of the scheme proposed by the Author twenty years ago,* based on the characters of the pseudopodial extensions, have been accepted by more recent systematists, he thinks it best still to adhere to it, as seeming to him to be on the whole most natural.

I. In the First division, *Reticularia*, the pseudopodia freely ramify and inosculate, so as to form a network, exactly as in *Lieberkühnia*; from which they are distinguished by the possession of a nucleus, and by the investment of their sarcodic bodies in a firm envelope. This is most commonly either a *calcareous* shell of very definite shape, or a *test* built up of sand-grains or other minute particles more or less firmly united by a calcareous cement exuded from the sarcodic body. These testaceous forms, which are exclusively marine, constitute the group of *Foraminifera*; whose special interest to the Microscopist entitles it to separate consideration (Chap. XII.). And it is only for convenience, that two *Reticularia* which inhabit fresh water also, and the envelopes of whose bodies are usually membranous, are here separated from the Foraminifera (to which they properly belong) for description as types of the group. The *Reticularia* have little locomotive power, and only seem to exercise it to find a suitable situation for their attachment; the capture of their food being effected by their pseudopodial network.

II. The Second division, *Heliozoa*,† consists of the Rhizopods whose pseudopodia extend themselves as straight radiating rods, having little or no tendency to subdivide or ramify, though they are still sufficiently soft and homogeneous (at least in the lower types, § 399), to coalesce when they come into contact with each other. These have usually (probably always) a contractile vesicle as well as a nucleus; and the higher forms of them are characterized by the enclosure of peculiar yellow corpuscles (whose import is unknown) in the substance of their endosarc. By far the larger number of this group also have skeletons of Mineral matter, which are always *siliceous*; and these are sometimes perforated casings of great regularity of form, as in the marine *Polycystina*; sometimes internal frameworks of marvellous symmetry, as in the marine *Radiolaria*. These two groups, also, will be reserved for special notice (Chap. XII.); the simple *Heliozoa* which are among the commonest inhabitants of fresh water, furnishing the best illustrations of the essential characters of the type. They seem for the most part to have but little locomotive power, capturing their prey by their extended pseudopodia.

III. The Third group, *Lobosa*, contains the Rhizopods which most

* "Natural History Review," 1861, p. 456; and "Introduction to the Study of the Foraminifera" (1862), Chap. II.

† To this group the Author formerly extended the name *Radiolaria* given by Müller to one section of it; but he now thinks it preferable to employ the general term *Heliozoa* given to it by Hertwig and Lesser, restricting the term *Radiolaria* to the group to which it was originally applied.

nearly approach the condition of true Cells, in the differentiation of their almost membranous ectosarc and their almost liquid endosarc, and in the non-coalescence of their pseudopodial extensions, which, instead of being either thread-like or rod-like, are *lobate*, that is, irregular projections of the body, including both ectosarc and endosarc, which are continually undergoing change both in form and number. The *Lobosa* are comparatively active in their habits, moving freely about in search of food, which is still received into the substance of their bodies through any part of their surface,—unless this is enclosed in envelopes, such as are formed by many of them, either by exudation from the surface of their bodies of some material (probably chitinous) which hardens into a membrane, or by aggregating and uniting grains of sand or other small solid particles, which they build up into 'tests.' A large proportion of them are inhabitants of fresh water, and some are even found in damp earth.

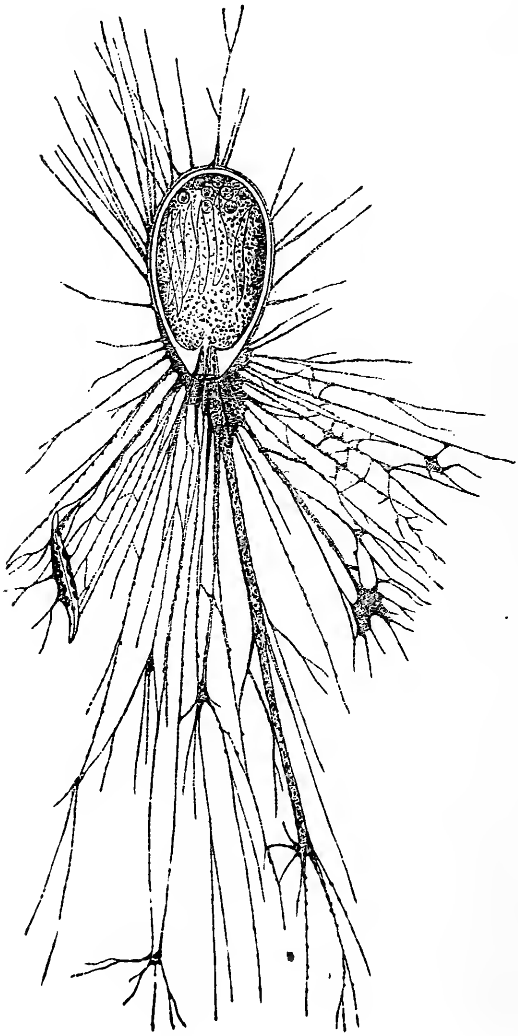
397. *Reticularia.*—This type is very characteristically represented by the genus *Gromia* (Fig. 283); some of whose species are marine, and are found, like ordinary *Foraminifera*, among tufts of Corallines, Algæ, &c.; whilst others inhabit fresh water, adhering to Confervæ and other Plants of running streams. It was in this type, that the presence of a nucleus, formerly supposed to be wanting in Reticularia generally, was first established by Dr. Wallich. The sarcode-body of this animal is encased in an egg-shaped, brownish-yellow, chitinous envelope, which may attain a diameter of from 1-12th to 1-10th of an inch, looking to the naked eye so like the egg of a Zoophyte or the seed of an aquatic Plant, that its real nature would not be suspected as long as it remains quiescent. The 'test' has a single round orifice, from which, when the animal is in a state of activity, the sarcodic substance streams forth, speedily giving off ramifying extensions, which, by further ramification and inosculation, form a network like that of Lieberkühnia. But the sarcode also extends itself so as to form a continuous layer over the whole exterior of the 'test;' and from any part of this layer fresh pseudopodia may be given off. By the alternate extension and contraction of these, minute Protophytes and Protozoa are entrapped and drawn into the interior of the test, where their nutritive material is extracted and assimilated; and if the 'test' (as happens in some species) be sufficiently transparent, the indigestible hard parts (such as the siliceous valves of Diatoms, shown in Fig. 383) may be distinguished in the midst of the sarcodic substance. By the same agency, the *Gromia* sometimes creeps up the sides of a glass vessel. In the intervals of quiescence, on the other hand, the whole sarcodic body, except a film that serves for the attachment of the test, is withdrawn into its interior.

398. Another example of the Reticularian group is afforded by the curious little *Microgromia socialis* (Fig. 284), first discovered by Mr. Archer, and further investigated with great care by Hertwig;* which

* 'Ueber *Microgromia*;' in "Archiv für Mikr. Anat.," Bd. x., Supplement.

has the curious habit of uniting with neighbouring individuals, by the fusion of the pseudopodia, into a common 'colony;' the individuals sometimes remaining at a distance from one another as at A, but sometimes aggregating themselves into compact masses as at B. The nearly globular thin calcareous shell is prolonged into a short

Fig. 283.

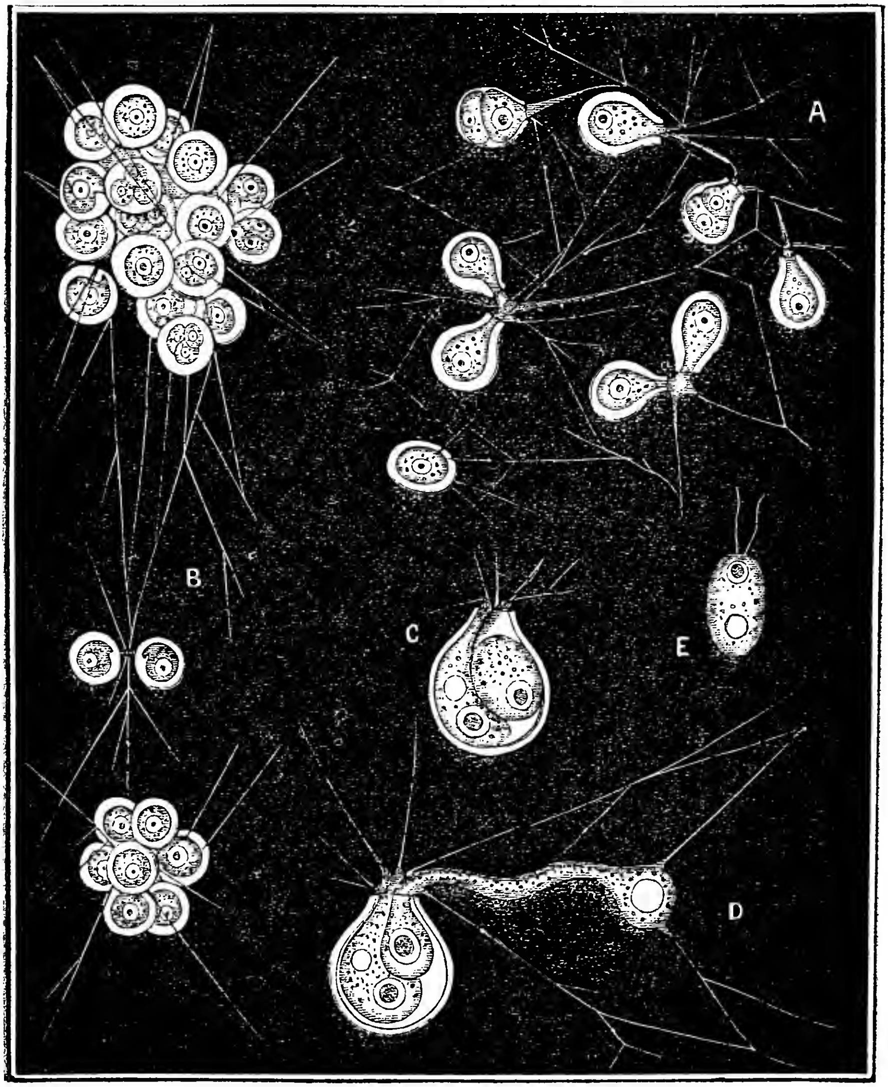


Gromia oviformis, with its pseudopodia extended.

neck having a circular orifice, from which the sarcode-body extends itself, giving off very slender pseudopodia which radiate in all

directions. A distinct nucleus can be seen in the deepest part of the cavity; while a contractile vesicle lies imbedded in the sarcodic substance nearer the mouth. Multiplication by duplicative subdivision

FIG. 284.



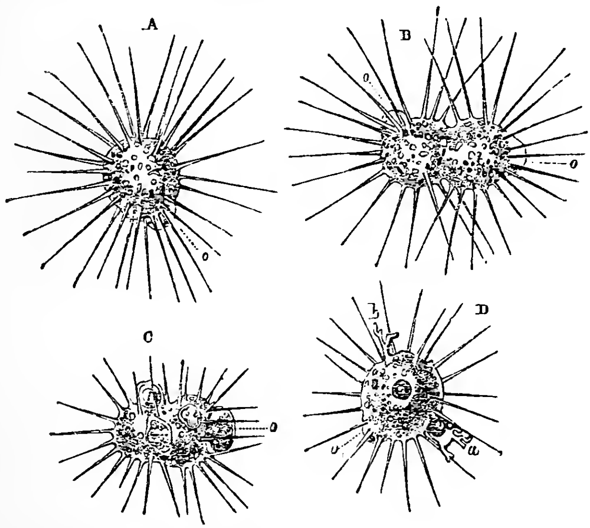
Microgromia socialis:—A, colony of individuals in extended state, some of them undergoing transverse fission; B, colony of individuals (some of them separated from the principal mass) in compact state; C, D, formation and escape of swarm-spore, seen free at E.

has been distinctly observed in this type; but with a peculiar departure from the usual method. A transverse constriction divides the body into two halves—as shown in two individuals of colony A,—each half possessing its own nucleus and contractile vesicle; the posterior segment, which at first lies free at the bottom of the cell, then presses forwards towards its orifice, as shown at C, and finally, by amœboid movements, escapes from it, sometimes stretching itself out like a worm (as seen at D), sometimes contracting itself into a globe, and sometimes spreading itself out irregularly over the pseudopodia of the colony. But it finally gathers itself together and takes an oval form; and either develops a pair of flagella, and forsakes the colony as a free swimming *Monad* (§ 416), or assumes the form of an *Actinophrys*, moving about by three or four pointed pseudopodia,—probably in each case coming after a time to rest, excreting a shell, and laying the foundation of a new colony. There is reason to think that a multiplication by longitudinal fission also takes place, in which the escaping segment and the one left behind in the old shell remain attached by their pseudopodia, and the former develops a new shell without undergoing any change of condition.

399. *Heliozoa.*—The *Actinophrys sol*, sometimes termed the 'sun-animalcule' (Fig. 285), is one of the commonest examples of this group; being often met-with in lakes, ponds, and streams, amongst Confervæ and other aquatic plants, as a whitish-grey spherical particle distinguishable by the naked eye, from which (when it is brought under a sufficient magnifying power) a number of very pellucid, slender, pointed rods are seen to radiate. The central portion of the body is composed of homogeneous sarcode, enclosing a distinct nucleus with a large nucleolus (as in Fig. 287, N); but the peripheral part has a 'vesicular' aspect, as in the type next to be described (Fig. 286). This appearance is due to the number of 'vacuoles' filled with a watery fluid, which are included in the sarcodic substance, and which may be artificially made either to coalesce into larger ones, or to subdivide into smaller. A 'contractile vesicle,' pulsating rhythmically with considerable regularity, is always to be distinguished, either in the midst of the sarcode-body, or (more commonly) at or near its surface; and it sometimes projects considerably from this, in the form of a flattened sacculus with a delicate membranous wall, as shown at *o*. The cavity of this sacculus is not closed externally, but communicates with the surrounding medium; not, however, by any distinct and permanent orifice, the membraniform wall giving way when the vesicle contracts, and then closing-over again. This alternating action seems to serve a respiratory purpose, the water thus taken-in and expelled being distributed through a system of channels and vacuoles excavated in the substance of the body; some of the vacuoles which are nearest the surface being observed to undergo distension when the vesicle contracts, and to empty themselves gradually as it re-fills. The body of this animal is nearly motionless, but it is supplied with

nourishment by the instrumentality of its pseudopodia; its food being derived not merely from Vegetable particles, but from various

FIG. 285.



Actinophrys sol, in different states :—A, in its ordinary sun-like form, with a prominent contractile vesicle *o*; B, in the act of division or of conjugation, with two contractile vesicles *o*, *o*; C, in the act of feeding; D, in the act of discharging fæcal (?) matters, *a* and *b*.

small Animals, some of them (as the young of Entomostraca) possessing great activity as well as a comparatively high organization. When one of these happens to come into contact with one of the pseudopodia (which have firm axis-filaments clothed with a granular sarcode), this usually retains it by adhesion; but the mode in which the particle thus taken captive is introduced into the body, differs according to circumstances. If the prey is large and vigorous enough to struggle to escape from its entanglement, it may usually be observed that the neighbouring pseudopodia bend over and apply themselves to it, so as to assist in holding it captive, and that it is slowly drawn by their joint retraction towards the body of its captor. Any small particle not capable of offering active resistance, on the other hand, may be seen after a little time to glide towards the central body along the edge of the pseudopodium, without any visible movement of the latter, much in the same manner as in Gromia. When in either of these modes the food has been brought to the surface of the body, this sends over it on either side a prolongation of its own sarcode-substance; and thus a marked prominence is formed (Fig. 285, C), which gradually subsides as the food is drawn more completely into the interior. The struggles of the larger Animals, and the ciliary action of

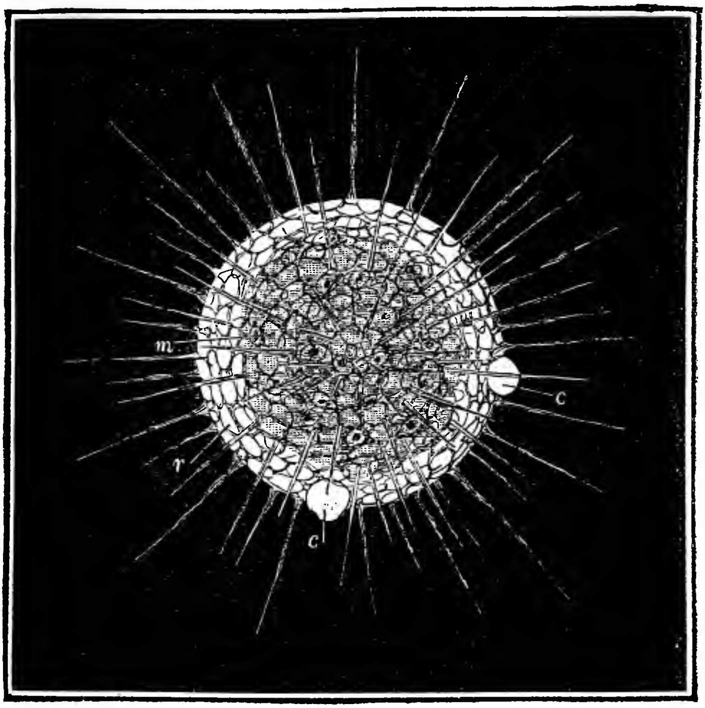
Infusoria and *Rotifera*, may sometimes be observed to continue even after they have been thus received into the body; but these movements at last cease, and the process of digestion begins. The alimentary substance is received into one of the vacuoles of the endosarc (Fig. 287, F), where it lies in the first instance surrounded by liquid; and its nutritive portion is gradually converted into an undistinguishable gelatinous mass, which becomes incorporated with the material of the sarcode-body, as may be seen by the general diffusion of any colouring particles it may contain. Several vacuoles may be thus occupied at one time by alimentary particles; frequently four to eight are thus distinguishable, and occasionally ten or twelve; Ehrenberg, in one instance, counted as many as sixteen, which he described as multiple stomachs. Whilst the digestive process, which usually occupies some hours, is going on, a kind of slow circulation takes place in the entire mass of the endosarc with its included vacuoles. If, as often happens, the body taken-in as food possesses some hard indigestible portion (as the shell of an Entomostracan or Rotifer), this, after the digestion of the soft parts, is gradually pushed towards the surface, and is thence extruded by a process exactly the converse of that by which it was drawn in. If the particle be large, it usually escapes at once by an opening which (like the mouth) extemporizes itself for the occasion (D); but if small, it sometimes glides along a pseudopodium from its base to its point, and escapes from its extremity.

400. The ordinary mode of Reproduction in *Actinophrys* seems to be by binary subdivision: its spherical body showing an annular constriction, which gradually deepens so as to separate its two halves by a sort of hour-glass contraction; and the connecting band becoming more and more slender, until the two halves are completely separated. This process of fission, which may be completed within half an hour from its commencement, seems to take place first in the contractile vesicle; for each segment very early shows itself to be provided with its own (B, *o*, *o*,), and the two vesicles are commonly removed to a considerable distance from one another. The segments thus divided are not always equal, and sometimes their difference in size is very considerable. A junction of two individuals, on the other hand, has been seen to take place in *Actinophrys*, and has been supposed to correspond to the 'conjugation' of Protophytes; it is very doubtful, however, whether this junction really involves a complete fusion of the substance of the bodies which take part in it; and there is not sufficient evidence that it has any true generative character. Certain it is that such a junction or 'zygosis' may take place, not between two only, but between several individuals at once, their number being recognized by that of their contractile vesicles; and that, after remaining thus united for several hours, they may separate again without having undergone any discoverable change.

401. Under the generic name *Actinophrys* was formerly ranked the larger but less common Heliozoon now distinguished as *Actino-*

sphærium Eichornii (Fig. 286); one important difference consisting in the structure of the radiating pseudopodia, each of which has

FIG. 286.

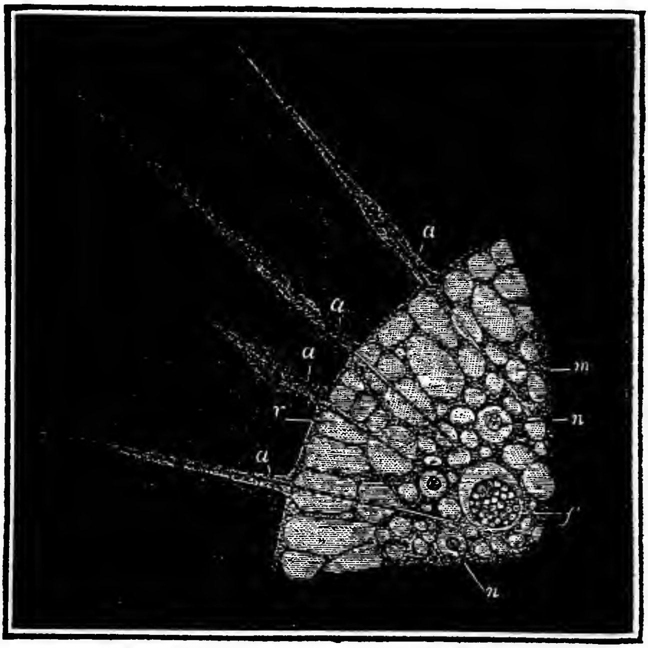


Actinosphærium Eichornii:—*m*, endosarc; *r*, ectosarc; *c*, *c*, contractile vacuoles.

here a firm axis-filament or 'spine,' which, passing through the superficial zone, rests on the surface of the central sphere, as shown at *a a*, Fig. 287. This axis is clothed with a layer of soft sarcode derived from the superficial or cortical zone of the body. Several nuclei (*n*, *n*) are usually to be seen embedded in the protoplasmic mass.—The general life-history of this type corresponds with that of the preceding; but its mode of reproduction presents some marked peculiarities. The binary segmentation is preceded by a withdrawal of the pseudopodia, even their clearly-defined axis becoming indistinct and finally disappearing; the body becomes enveloped by a clear gelatinous exudation, which forms a kind of cyst; and within this the process of binary subdivision is repeatedly performed, until the original single mass is replaced by a sort of *morula* (§ 391), each spherule of which shows the distinction between the central and cortical regions, the former including a single nucleus, whilst the latter is strengthened by siliceous deposit into

a firm investment. After remaining in this state during the winter, the young *Actinosphæriæ* come forth in the spring without this

FIG. 287.



Marginal portion of *Actinosphærium Eichornii*, as seen in optical section under a higher magnifying power:—*m*, endosarc; *r*, ectosarc; *a*, *a*, *a*, pseudopodia; *n*, *n*, nuclei with nucleoli; *f*, ingested food-mass.

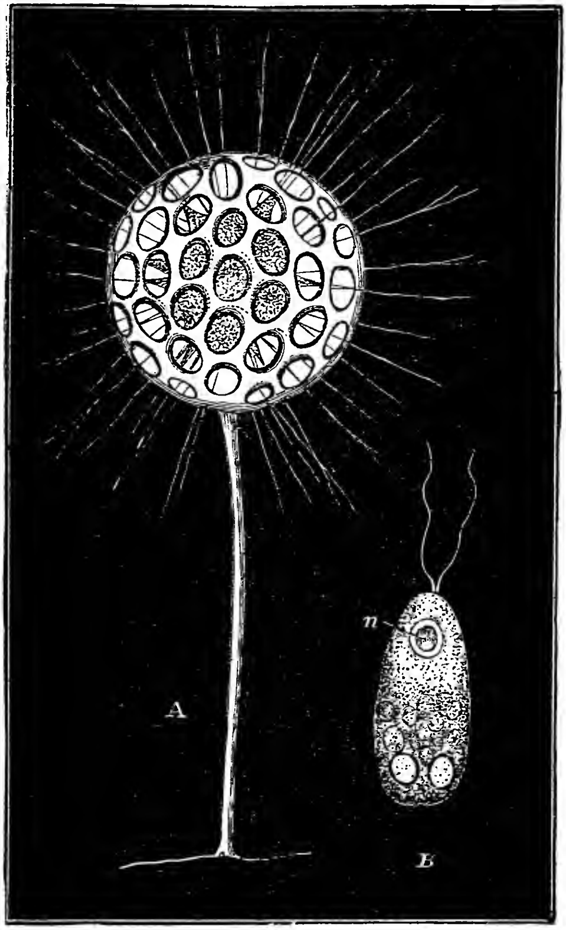
siliceous investment; and gradually grow into the likeness of their parent.

402. A large number of new and curious fresh-water forms of this type have been recently brought under notice; of which the *Clathrulina elegans* (Fig. 288) may be specially mentioned as presenting an obvious transition to the *Polycystine* type (§ 504). This has been found in various parts of the Continent, and also (by Mr. Archer*) in Wales and Ireland; occurring chiefly in dark ponds shaded by trees and containing decaying leaves. Its soft sarcode body is encased by a siliceous capsule of spherical form, regularly perforated with oval apertures, and supported on a long silicified peduncle. The body itself, and the pseudopodia which it puts forth through the apertures of the capsule, seem closely to correspond with those of *Actinophrys*.—Reproduction here takes place not only by binary fission, but by the formation of 'swarm spores.' In the first mode, one of the two segments remains in possession of the

* See his Memoir on Fresh-water Radiolaria in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," N.S., Vol. ix. (1869), p. 250.

siliceous capsule, whilst the other finds its way out through one of the apertures, lives for some hours in a free condition as an Actinophrys, and ultimately produces the capsule and stem characteristic of its type. In the second mode, numerous small rounded sarcode-masses, each possessing a nucleus, are produced within the capsule, in what manner cannot be clearly made-out; and every

FIG. 288.



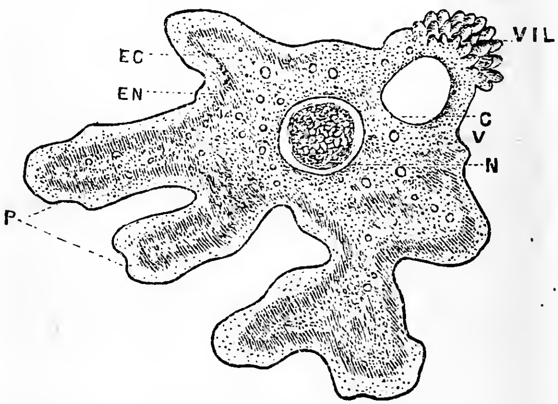
Clathrulina elegans:—A, complete organism; B, swarm-spore, showing nucleus, *n*, and two contractile vesicles near its opposite end.

one of these is enveloped in a firm envelope, set round with short spines, probably siliceous. These cysts remain for months within the common capsule; and when the time arrives for their further development, the sarcode-corpuscles slip out of their cysts, and escape through the orifices of the capsule as flagellated Monads of oval form (Fig. 288, B,) each having a nucleus, *n*, near the base of

the flagella, and two contractile vesicles near its opposite end. After-swarming for some hours in this condition, they change to the free *Actinophrys* form, and finally acquire the siliceous capsule and stem of the Clathrulina.

403. *Lobosa.*—No example of the Rhizopod type is more common in streams and ponds, vegetable infusions, &c., than the *Ambœa* (Fig. 289); a creature which cannot be described by its form, for this is as changeable as that of the fabled Proteus, but may yet be definitely characterized by peculiarities that separate it from the two groups already described. The distinction between 'ectosarc' and 'endosarc' is here clearly marked, so that the body approaches much more closely in its characters to an ordinary 'cell' composed of cell-wall and cell-contents. It is through the 'endosarc' alone, EN, that those coloured and granular particles are dif-

Fig. 289.



Diagrammatic representation of *Amœba proteus*;—EC, ectosarc; EN, endosarc; CV, contractile vesicle: N, nucleus; P, pseudopodia; VIL, villous tuft.

fused, on which the hue and opacity of the body depend; its central portion seems to have an almost watery consistence, the granular particles being seen to move quite freely upon one another with every change in the shape of the body; but its superficial portion is more viscid, and graduates insensibly into the firmer substance of the 'ectosarc.' The ectosarc, EC, which is perfectly pellucid, forms an almost membranous investment to the endosarc; still it is not possessed of such tenacity as to oppose a solution of its continuity at any point, for the introduction of alimentary particles, or for the extrusion of effete matter; and thus there is no evidence, in *Amœba* and its immediate allies, of the existence of any more definite orifice, either oral or anal, than exists in other Rhizopods. The more advanced differentiation of the ectosarc from the endosarc of *Amœba*, is made evident by the effects of re-agents. If an *Amœba radiosa* be treated with a dilute alkaline solution, the granular and molecular endosarc shrinks together and retreats towards

the centre, leaving the radiating extensions of the ectosarc in the condition of cæcal tubes, of which the walls are not soluble at the ordinary temperature, either in acetic or mineral acids, or in dilute alkaline solutions; thus agreeing with the envelope noticed by Cohn as possessed by *Paramecium* and other ciliated *Infusoria*, and with the containing membrane of ordinary animal cells. A 'nucleus,' N, is always distinctly visible in *Amœba*, adherent to the inner portion of the ectosarc, and projecting from this into the cavity occupied by the endosarc; when most perfectly seen, it presents the aspect of a clear flattened vesicle surrounding a solid and usually spherical nucleolus; it is readily soluble in alkalies, and first expands and then dissolves when treated with acetic or sulphuric acid of moderate strength; but when treated with dilute acid it is rendered darker and more distinct, in consequence of the precipitation of a finely granular substance in the clear vesicular space that surrounds the nucleolus. A 'contractile vesicle,' C V, seems also to be uniformly present, though it does not usually make itself so conspicuous by its external prominence as it does in *Actinophrys*; and the neighbouring part of the body is often prolonged into a set of villous processes VIL, the presence of which has been thought by some to mark a specific distinction, but which seems too variable and transitory to be so regarded.

404. The pseudopodia, which are not so much appendages, as lobate extensions of the body itself, are few in number, short, broad, and rounded; and their outlines present a sharpness which indicates that the substance of which their exterior is composed possesses considerable tenacity. No movement of granules can be seen to take place along the surface of the pseudopodia; and when two of these organs come into contact, they scarcely show any disposition even to mutual cohesion, still less to fusion of their substance. Sometimes the protrusion seems to be formed by the ectosarc alone, but more commonly the endosarc also extends into it, and an active current of granules may be seen to pass from what was previously the centre of the body into the protruded portion, when the latter is undergoing rapid elongation; whilst a like current may set towards the centre of the body from some other protrusion which is being withdrawn into it. It is in this manner that an *Amœba* moves from place to place; a protrusion like the finger of a glove being first formed, into which the substance of the body itself is gradually transferred; and another protrusion being put forth, either in the same or in some different direction, so soon as this transference has been accomplished, or even before it is complete. The kind of progression thus executed by an *Amœba* is described by most observers as a 'rolling' movement, this being certainly the aspect which it commonly seems to present; but it is maintained by MM. Claparède and Lachmann that the appearance of rolling is an optical illusion, for that the nucleus and contractile vesicle always maintain the same position relatively to the rest of the body, and that 'creeping' would be a truer description of their mode of progression. It is in

the course of this movement from place to place, that the *Amœba* encounters particles which are fitted to afford it nourishment; and it appears to receive such particles into its interior through any part of the ectosarc, whether of the body itself or of any of its lobose expansions; insoluble particles which resist the digestive process being got rid of in the like primitive fashion.

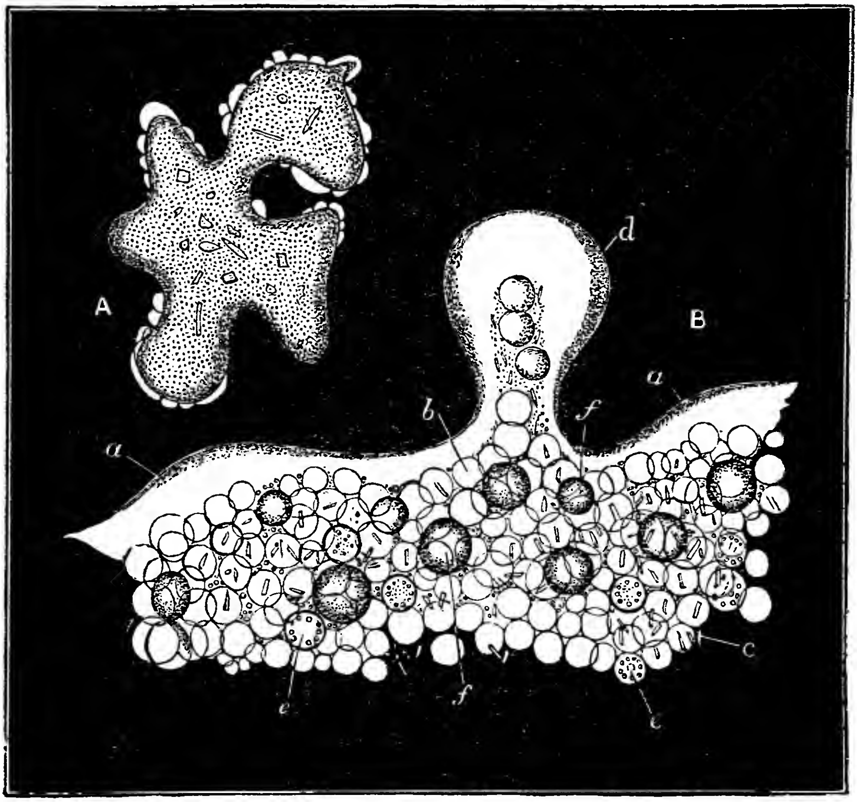
405. It may often be seen that portions of the sarcode-body of an *Amœba*, detached from the rest, can maintain an independent existence; and it is probable that such separation of fragments is an ordinary mode of increase in this group. When a pseudopodial lobe has been put-forth to a considerable length, and has become enlarged and fixed at its extremity, the subsequent contraction of the connecting portion, instead of either drawing the body towards the fixed point, or retracting the lobe into the body, causes the connecting band to thin-away until it separates; and the detached portion speedily shoots out pseudopodial processes of its own, and comports itself in all respects as an independent Amœba. Multiplication also takes place by regular binary subdivision. And an issue of 'swarm-spores,' which swim about for a time like Infusoria, has been witnessed by a competent observer.* In the *A. terricola* discovered by Greef in earth and dry sand, this process is seen to commence in the nucleus, which breaks-up into rounded corpuscles that diffuse themselves through the substance of the endosarc. The creature then ceases to take-in food; its motions become less active, and its functions seem to be entirely confined to the nurture of the germs, which finally make their way out, and soon attain the size and aspect of their parent.—No sexual act has been certainly recognized as part of the life-history of *Amœba;* the union of two or more individuals, which may be occasionally witnessed, having more the character of the 'zygosis' of Actinophrys (§ 400).

406. A sarcodic organism discovered by Greef, and named by him *Pelomyxa palustris* (Fig. 290), which spreads over the bottom of stagnant ponds in the condition of slimy masses of indefinite form, exhibits a further advance upon the Amœban type. The substance of its body exhibits a very clear differentiation between the homogeneous hyaline ectosarc (B, *a*, *d*), and the contained endosarc, which contains such a multitude of spherical vacuoles, *b*, as to have a 'vesicular' or frothy aspect. When it feeds upon the decomposing vegetable matter at the bottom of the pools it inhabits, its body acquires a blackish hue; but in other situations it may be colourless. Besides the vacuoles, there are seen in the endosarc a great number of nucleus-like bodies, *e*, *e*, and also many hyaline globular brilliant bodies, *f*, *f*, which are regarded by Greef as germs or swarm-spores, developed from nucleoli set free within the general cavity of the body by the bursting of the nuclei. This creature, during the active period of its life, moves like an Amœba, either by general undulations of its surface, or by special pseudopodial

* Prof. A. M Edwards (U.S.) in "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. viii. (1872), p. 29.

extensions, *d.* After a time, however, its movements cease, and it looks as if dead; but by the giving-way of its ectosarc, a multitude of

Fig. 290.



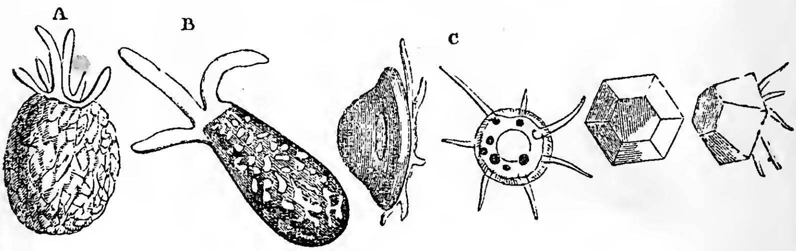
Pelomyxa palustris:—A, as it appears when in amœboid motion:—B, portion more highly magnified; showing *a*, *a*, the hyaline ectosarc; *b*, one of the vacuoles of the endosarc; *c*, rod-like bodies scattered through the endosarc; *d*, protruded extension of ectosarc, with endosarc passing into it; *e*, *e*, nuclei; *f*, *f*, globular hyaline bodies.

minute amœbiform bodies break forth, each having its nucleus and contractile vesicle. These at first live as *Amœbæ*, but afterwards pass into a resting state, assuming a spherical or oval-shape, and then put-forth flagella, by which they swim actively for a time,—probably then settling-down to develope themselves into the parental form.

407. The Amœban like the Actinophryan type shows itself in the testaceous as well as in the naked form; the commonest examples of this being known under the names *Arcella* and *Difflugia*. The body of the former is enclosed in a 'test' composed of a horny membrane, apparently resembling in constitution the *chitine* which

gives solidity to the integuments of Insects; it is usually discoidal (Fig. 291, C, D) with one face flat and the other arched, the aperture being in the centre of the flat side; and its surface is often marked with a minute and regular pattern. The test of *Difflugia* on the other hand, is more or less pitcher-shaped (A, B), and is chiefly made up of minute particles of gravel, shell, &c., cemented together. In each of these genera, the sarcode-body remenble that of *Amœba* in every essential particular; the contrast being very marked between its large, distinct, lobose extensions, and the ramifying and inosculating pseudopodia of *Gromia* (Fig. 283). In each case a

FIG. 291.



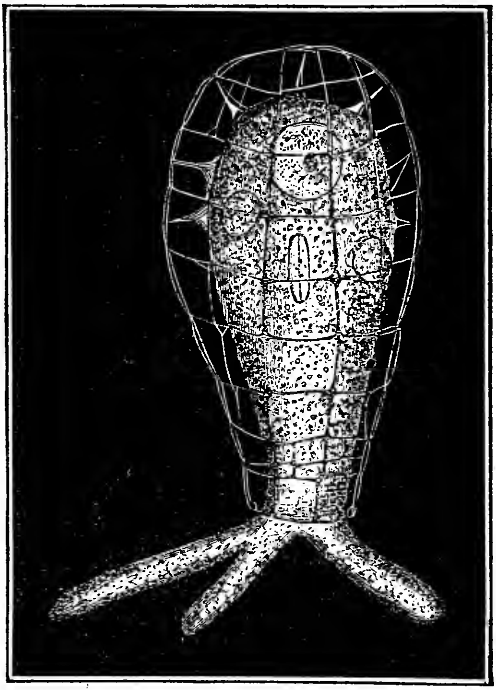
Testaceous forms of *Amœban* Rhizopods:—A, *Difflugia proteiformis*; B, *Difflugia oblonga*; C, *Arcella acuminata*; D, *Arcella dentata.*

detached portion of the sarcodic body will put forth pseudopodia of its own type; and the separation of a bud or gemmule put forth from the mouth of the test seems to be an ordinary mode of propagation among the Amœbans thus enclosed. In *Arcella* it has been observed that the pseudopodia of two or more individuals unite by bridges of protoplasm, and afterwards separate; but it seems doubtful whether this is a true generative 'conjugation,' or a mere 'zygosis.' It has been observed by Bütschli, however, that after the separation of three individuals which had been thus united, the sarcodic body of one of them had withdrawn itself for a considerable space from the wall of the test, and that in the liquid which filled the interval a number of Vibrio-like bodies (spermatozoids ?) swarmed; while numerous disk-shaped masses of protoplasm lay on the surface of the body. After some time these showed lively amœboid movements, creeping about between the body of the parent and the wall of the test, and ultimately escaping through its orifice. Each of them contained a nucleus and contractile vesicle, and moved by means of blunt pseudopodia; and it seems probable that they were embryoes which would in time form the characteristic *Arcella*-test.

408. Many testaceous *Amœbans* have been recently discovered, which form tests of remarkable regularity and sometimes of singular beauty; and it is difficult to determine, in many cases,

whether the minute plates of which they are composed have been formed by exudation from their own bodies, or have been picked up from the surface over which the animals crawl.* There can be no doubt of this kind, however, in regard to the *Quadrula symmetrica* represented in Fig. 292; whose sarcode-body is encased in a pear-shaped test of glassy transparence, made up of a great

Fig. 292.



Quadrula symmetrica, with extended pseudopodia.

number of square plates which touch each other by their edges. The sarcode-body does not usually fill the test; the intervening space being occupied by a clear liquid, and traversed by bands of protoplasm. In the posterior part of the body is seen a large clear spherical nucleus, with a distinct dark nucleolus; and in front of this are contractile vesicles, usually two in number.

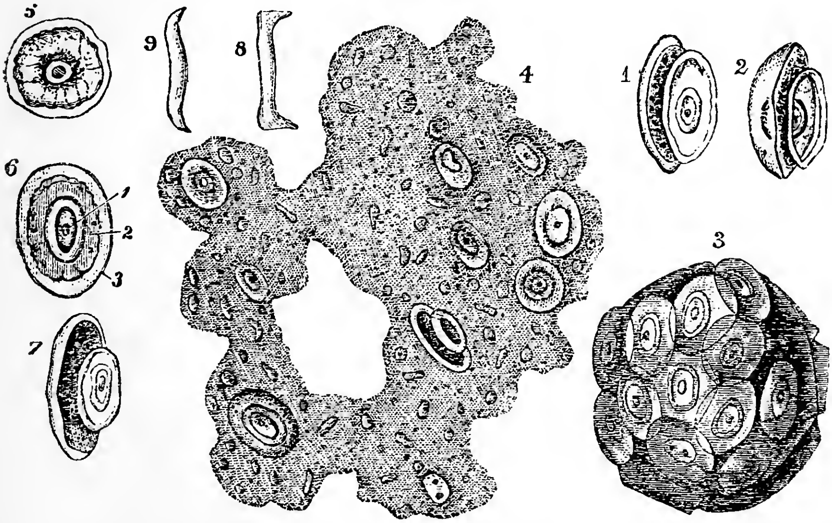
409. *Coccoliths and Coccospheres.*—This would seem the most appropriate place for the description of certain peculiar little bodies found very extensively diffused over the deep-sea bottom, especially abounding in the Globigerina-mud (§ 480), which may be

* See especially the recent admirable work of Prof. Leidy on the Freshwater Rhizopods of the United States (1880).—It is to be regretted that its able Author's time and opportunities did not permit him to follow-out the life-histories of the many interesting forms which he has described and figured.

considered as Chalk in process of formation. It was in the specimens of this mud brought up by the 'Cyclops' soundings in 1857, that Prof. Huxley first found the *Coccoliths* (Fig. 293, 1, 2) which Dr. Wallich in 1860 found aggregated in the spherical masses which he designated as 'coccospheres' (3). Regarding the gelatinous matrix in which they were imbedded as a new type of the *Monerozoa* described by Haeckel, having the condition of an indefinitely extended *plasmodium*, Prof. Huxley proposed to designate it by the name *Bathybius*, indicative of its habitat in the depths of the sea; and this idea was accepted by Haeckel, whose representation of a living specimen of *Bathybius*, with imbedded coccoliths, is given in Fig. 293, 4. The observations made in the 'Challenger' Expedition, however, have not confirmed this view; the supposed *Bathybius* being a gelatinous precipitate, consisting of sulphate of lime, slowly deposited in water to which strong spirit has been added. Whatever be their nature, Coccoliths and Coccospheres are bodies of great interest; since their occurrence in Chalk and in very early Limestones (§ 699) is an additional link in the evidence of the similarity of the conditions under which they were formed, to those at present prevailing on the sea-bed of the Atlantic and other oceans.—Two distinct types are recognizable among the Coccoliths, which Prof. Huxley has designated respectively *discoliths* and *cyatholiths*. The former are round or oval disks, having a thick strongly-refracting rim and a thinner internal portion, the greater part of which is occupied by a slightly-opaque, cloud-like patch lying round a central corpuscle (Fig. 293, 5). In general, the 'discoliths' are slightly convex on one side, slightly concave on the other, and the rim is raised into a prominent ridge on the more convex side; so that when viewed edgewise, they present the appearances shown in figs. 8, 9. Their length is ordinarily between 1-4000th and 1-5000th of an inch; but it ranges from 1-2700th to 1-11,000th. The largest are commonly free; but the smallest are generally found imbedded among heaps of granular particles, of which some are probably discoliths in an early stage of development.—The 'cyatholiths,' also, when full grown, have an oval contour; though they are often circular when immature. They are convex on one face, and flat or concave on the other; and when left to themselves, they lie on one or other of these two faces. In either of these aspects, they seem to be composed of two concentric zones (fig. 6, 2, 3) surrounding an oval thick-walled central corpuscle (1), in the centre of which is a clear space sometimes divided into two. The zone (2) immediately surrounding the central corpuscle is usually more or less distinctly granular, and sometimes has an almost bead-like margin. The narrower outer zone (3) is generally clear, transparent, and structureless; but sometimes shows radiating striæ. When viewed sideways or obliquely, however, the 'cyatholiths' are found to have a form somewhat resembling that of a shirt-stud (figs. 1, 2, 7). Each consists of a lower plate, shaped like a deep saucer or watch-glass; of a smaller upper plate,

which is sometimes flat, sometimes more or less concavo-convex; of the oval, thick-walled, flattened corpuscle, which connects these

FIG. 293.



Coccoliths and Coccospheres:—1, 2, 7, Cyatholiths seen obliquely;—3, Coccosphere, with imbedded cyatholiths;—4, Coccoliths imbedded in supposed protoplasmic expansion;—5, Discolith seen in front view;—6, Cyatholith seen in front view, showing (1) central corpuscle, (2) granular zone, (3) transparent outer zone;—8, 9, Discoliths seen edgeways.

two plates together at their centres; and of an intermediate granular substance, which more or less completely fills up the interval between the two plates. The length of these cyatholiths ranges from about 1-1600th to 1-8000th of an inch, those of 1-3000th of an inch and under being always circular.—It appears from the action of dilute acids upon the Coccoliths, that they must mainly consist of calcareous matter, as they readily dissolve, leaving scarcely a trace behind. When the cyatholiths are treated with very weak acetic acid, the central corpuscle rapidly loses its strongly refracting character; and there remains an extremely delicate, finely-granular membranous framework. When treated with iodine, they are stained, but not very strongly; the intermediate substance being the most affected. Both discoliths and cyatholiths are completely destroyed by strong hot solutions of caustic potass or soda.—The Coccospheres (fig. 3) are made up by the aggregation of bodies resembling 'cyatholiths' of the largest size in all but the absence of the granular zone; they sometimes attain a diameter of 1-760th of an inch.—What is their relation to the Coccoliths, and under what conditions these bodies are formed, are questions whereon no positive judgment can be at present given. (See § 710.)

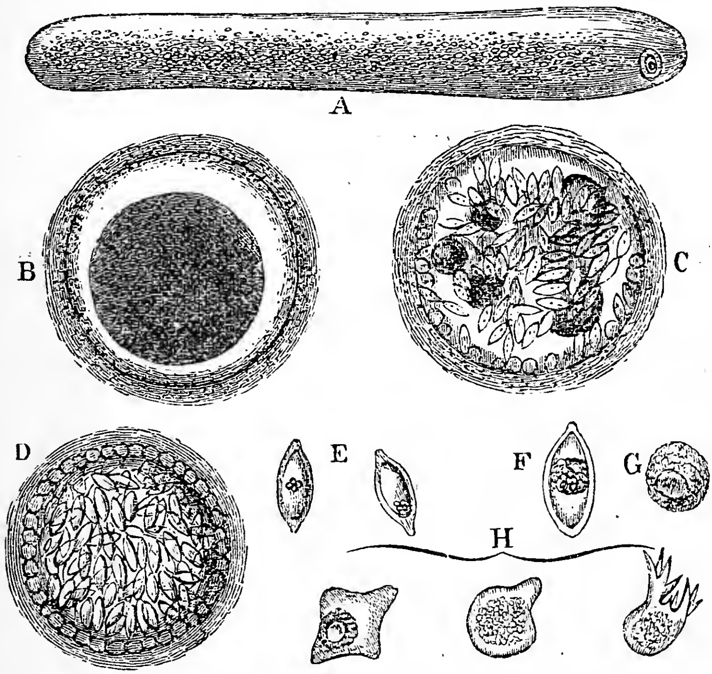
GREGARINIDA.

410. A very curious animal parasite is often to be met with in the intestinal canal of Earthworms, Insects, &c,, and sometimes in that of higher animals, the simplicity of whose structure requires that it should be ranked among the Protozoa. Each individual *Gregarina* (Fig. 294, A) essentially consists of a large single cell, usually more or less ovate in form, and sometimes attaining the extraordinary length of *two-thirds of an inch*.* A sort of beak or proboscis frequently projects from one extremity; and in some instances this is furnished with a circular row of hooklets, closely resembling that which is seen on the head of Tænia. There is here a much more complete differentiation between the cell-membrane and its contents, than exists either in *Actinophrys* or in *Amœba*; and in this respect we must look upon *Gregarina* as representing a decided advance in organization. Being nourished upon the juices already prepared for it by the digestive operations of the animal which it infests, it has no need of any such apparatus for the introduction of solid particles into the interior of its body, as is provided in the 'pseudopodia' of the Rhizopods and in the oral cilia of the Infusoria. Within the cavity of the cell, whose contents are usually milk-white and minutely granular, there is generally seen a pellucid nucleus; and when, as often happens, the cell undergoes duplicative subdivision, the process commences in a constriction and cleavage of this nucleus. The membrane and its contents, except the nucleus, are soluble in acetic acid. Cilia have been detected both upon the outer and the inner surface; but these would seem destined, not so much to give motion to the body, as to renew the stratum of fluid in contact with it; for such change of place as the animal does exhibit, is effected by the contractions and extensions of the body generally, as in Amœba (§ 403). An 'encysting process,' very much resembling that of the lower Protophytes, is occasionally observed to take place in *Gregarinæ*, and seems to be preparatory to their multiplication. Whatever the original form of the body may be, it becomes globular, ceases to move, and becomes invested by a structureless 'cyst,' within which the substance of the body undergoes a singular change. The nucleus disappears; and the sarcodic mass breaks up into a series of globular particles, which gradually resolve themselves (as shown at B, C) into forms very like those of *Naviculæ*. These 'pseudo-navicellæ' are set-free, in time, by the bursting of the capsule that encloses them; and they develop themselves into a new generation of Gregarinæ, first passing through an Amœba-like stage.—A sort of 'conjugation' has been seen to take place between two individuals, whose bodies, coming into contact with each other by corresponding points, first become more globular in shape, and are then encysted by the

* See Prof. Ed. Van Beneden on *Gregarina gigantea*, in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," N.S., Vol. x. (1870), p. 51, and Vol. xi., p. 242.

formation of a capsule around them both; the partition-walls between their cavities disappear; and the substance of the two

Fig. 294.



Gregarina of the Earthworm:—A, in its ordinary aspect; B, in its encysted condition; C, D, showing division of its contents into pseudo-navicellæ; E, F, free pseudo-navicellæ; G, H, free amœboids produced from them.

bodies becomes completely fused together. But as the product of this 'zygosis' is the same as that of the ordinary encysting process, there seems no sufficient reason for regarding it, like the 'conjugation' of Protophytes, as a true Generative act.

Prof. Haeckel's Memoirs on *Monera* and the *Gastræa Theory* will be found in the successive Nos. of the "Jenaische Zeitschrift," beginning with 1868; and in a collected form, in the two parts of his "Biologischen Studien." The first of his Memoirs on *Monera* is translated in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci., N.S., Vol. ix. (1869); and the first of his Papers on the *Gastræa Theory* in Vol. xiv (1874) of the same Journal. See also the valuable series of papers on the *Freshwater Rhizopods* by Mr. Wm. Archer, in the current series of the "Quart. Journ. Micros. Sci.;" the important Memoirs of Hertwig and Lesser in the "Archiv für Mikr. Anat." (especially the Suppl. Heft to Bd. x, 1874), and the Presidential Addresses of Prof. Allman to the Linnaean Society for 1876 and 1877 (in Nos. 69 and 71 of its Journal) on "Recent Researches on some of the more simple Sarcode-Organisms," of which the Author has freely availed himself.

CHAPTER XI.

ANIMALCULES.—INFUSORIA AND ROTIFERA.

411. Nothing can be more vague or scientifically inappropriate than the title Animalcules; since it only expresses the small dimensions of the beings to which it is applied, and does not indicate any of their characteristic peculiarities. In the infancy of Microscopic knowledge, it was natural to associate together all those creatures which could only be discerned at all under a high magnifying power, and whose internal structure could not be clearly made out with the instruments then in use; and thus the most heterogeneous assemblage of Plants, Zoophytes, minute Crustaceans, larvæ of Worms, Mollusks, &c., came to be aggregated with the true Animalcules under this head. The Class was being gradually limited by the removal of all such forms as could be referred to others; but still very little was known of the real nature of those that remained in it, until the study was taken up by Prof. Ehrenberg, with the advantage of instruments which had derived new and vastly improved capabilities from the application of the principle of Achromatism. One of the first and most important results of his study, and that which has most firmly maintained its ground, notwithstanding the overthrow of Prof. Ehrenberg's doctrines on other points, was the separation of the entire assemblage into two distinct groups, having scarcely any feature in common except their minute size; one being of very *low*, and the other of comparatively *high* organization. On the lower group he conferred the designation of *Polygastrica* (many-stomached), in consequence of having been led to form an idea of their organization which the united voice of the most trustworthy observers now pronounces to be erroneous; and as the retention of this term must tend to perpetuate the error, it is well to fall back on the name *Infusoria*, or Infusory Animalcules, which simply expresses their almost universal prevalence in infusions of organic matter. To the higher group, Prof. Ehrenberg's name *Rotifera* or *Rotatoria* is on the whole very appropriate, as significant of that peculiar arrangement of their cilia upon the anterior parts of their bodies, which, in some of their most common forms, gives the appearance (when the cilia are in action) of wheels in revolution; the group, however, includes many members in which the ciliated lobes are so formed as not to bear the least resemblance to wheels. In their

general organization, these 'Wheel-animalcules' must certainly be considered as members of the *Articulated* division of the Animal Kingdom; and they seem to constitute a Class in that lower portion of it, to which the designation *Worms* is now commonly given. —Notwithstanding the wide zoological separation between these two kinds of Animalcules, it seems most suitable to the plan of the present work to treat of them in connection with one another; since the Microscopist continually finds them associated together, and studies them under similar conditions.

Section I.—Infusoria.

412. This term, as now limited by the separation of the *Rhizopoda* on the one hand, and of the *Rotifera* on the other, is applied to a far smaller range of forms than was included by Prof. Ehrenberg under the name of 'polygastric' animalcules. For a large section of these, including the *Desmidiaceæ*, *Diatomaceæ*, *Volvocineæ*, and many other Protophytes, have been transferred, by general (though not universal) consent, to the Vegetable kingdom. And it is not impossible that many of the reputed *Infusoria* may be but larval forms of higher organisms, instead of being themselves complete animals. Still an extensive group remains, of which no other account can at present be given, than that the beings of which it is composed go through the whole of their lives, so far as we are acquainted with them, in a grade of existence which is essentially Protozoic (§ 391); each individual apparently consisting of but *a single cell*, though its parts are often so highly differentiated, as to represent (only, however, by way of *analogy*) the 'organs' of the higher animals after which they are usually named.

413. Among the *ciliate* Infusoria, which form not only by far the largest, but also the most characteristic division of the group, there is probably none which has not a *mouth*, or permanent orifice for the introduction of food, which is driven towards it by ciliary currents; while a distinct *anal* orifice, for the ejection of the indigestible residue, is also generally present. The mouth is often furnished with a *dental* armature; and leads to an *œsophageal canal*, down which the food passes into the digestive cavity. This cavity is still occupied, however, as in Rhizopods (§ 403), by the *endosarc* of the cell; but instead of lying in mere vacuoles formed in the midst of this, the food-particles are usually aggregated, during their passage down the œsophagus, into minute pellets, each of which receives a special investment of firm protoplasm, constituting it a *digestive vesicle* (Fig. 299); and these go through a sort of circulation within the cell-cavity.

414. The 'contractile vesicles,' again, attain a much higher development in this group, and are sometimes in connection with a network of canals channelled-out in the 'ectosarc;' while their rhythmical action resembles that of the *circulatory* and *respiratory* apparatuses of higher animals. There is ample evidence, also, of the presence of a specially contractile modification of the protoplasmic substance,

having the action (though not the structure) of *muscular* fibre; and the manner in which the movements of the active free-swimming Infusoria are directed, so as to avoid obstacles and find-out passages, seems to indicate that another portion of their protoplasmic substance must have to a certain degree the special endowments which characterize the *nervous* systems of higher animals.—Altogether, it may be said that in the Ciliate Infusoria *the Life of the Single Cell finds its highest expression.**

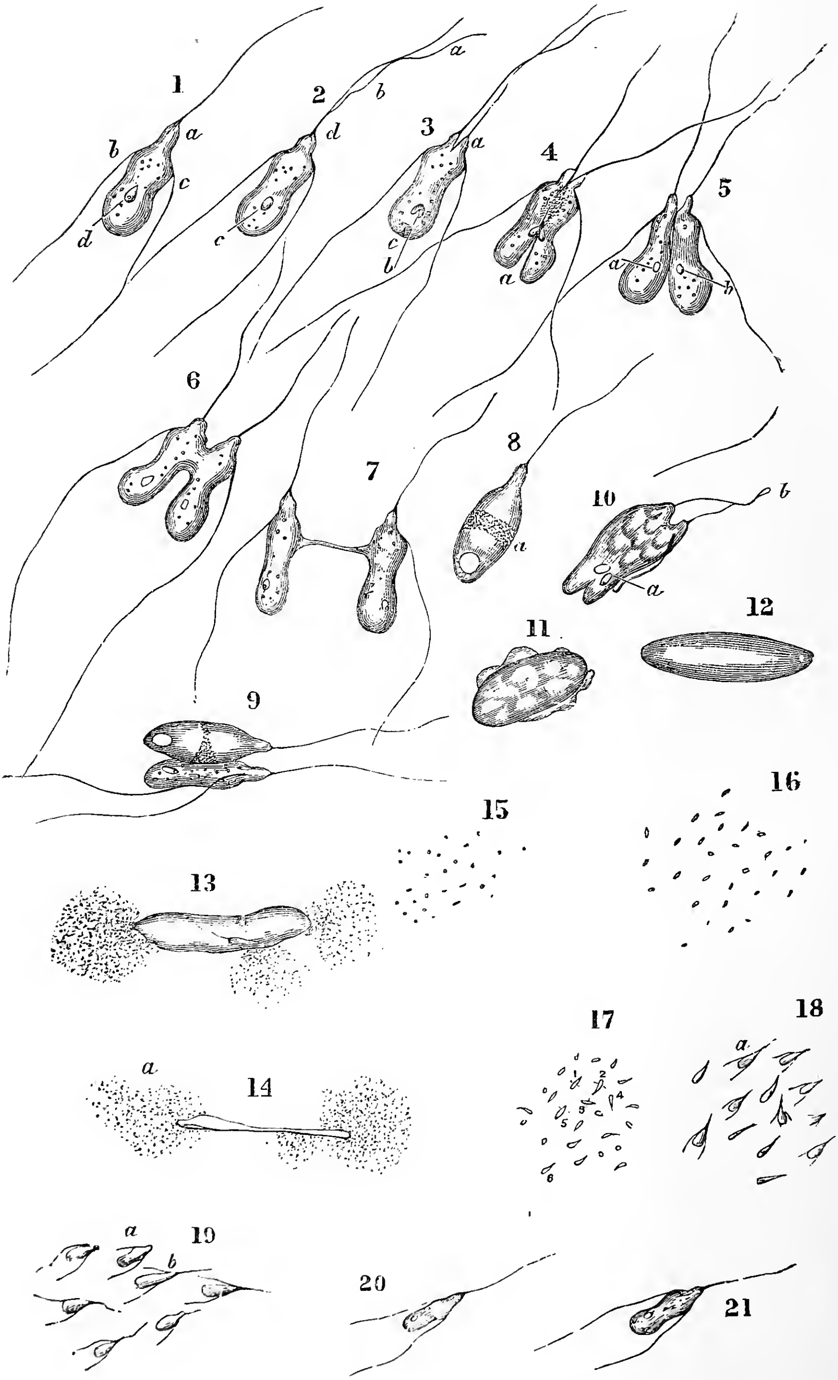
415. Before proceeding to the description of the *ciliate* Infusoria, however, it will be of advantage to notice two smaller groups—the *flagellate*, and the *suctorial*—which, on account of the peculiarities of their structure and actions, are now ranked as distinct, and of whose 'unicellular' character there can be no reasonable doubt, since they are for the most part 'closed' cells, scarcely distinguishable morphologically from those of Protophytes.

416. Flagellata.—Our knowledge of this tribe has been greatly augmented in recent years, not only by the discovery of a great variety of new forms, but still more by the careful study of the life history of several among them. The *Monads*, properly so called,† which are the smallest animals at present known, are its simplest representatives; but it also includes organisms of much greater complexity; and some of its composite forms have a very remarkable relation to Sponges (§ 508). The *Monas lens*, long familiar to Microscopists as occurring in stagnant waters and infusions of decomposing organic matter, is a spheroidal particle of protoplasm, from 1-2000th to 1-5200th of an inch in diameter, enclosed in a delicate hyaline investment or 'ectosarc,' and moving freely through the water by the lashing action of its slender *flagellum*, whose length is from three to five times the diameter of the body. Within the body may be seen a variable number of vacuoles; and these are occasionally occupied by particles distinguishable by their colour, which have been introduced as food. These seem to enter the body, not by any definite mouth (or permanent opening in the ectosarc), but through an aperture that forms itself in some part of the oral region near

* The doctrine of the unicellular nature of the *Infusoria* has been a subject of keen controversy among Zoologists, from the time when it was first definitely put forward by Von Siebold ("Lehrbuch der vergleich. Anat.," Berlin, 1845) in opposition to the then paramount doctrine of Ehrenberg as to the complexity of their organization, which had as yet been called in question only by Dujardin ("Hist. Nat. des Infusoires," Paris, 1841). Of late, however, there has been a decided convergence of opinion in the direction above indicated; which has been brought about in great degree by the contrast between the *Protozoic* simplicity of the reproductive and developmental processes in Infusoria, and the complexity of the like processes as seen in even the lowest of the *Metazoa* (§ 391), which has been specially and forcibly insisted on by Haeckel ("Zur Morphologie der Infusorien," Jenaische Zeitschr., Bd. vii. 1873).—An excellent summary of the whole discussion was given by Prof. Allman, in his Presidential Address to the Linnæan Society in 1875.

† The Family *Monadina* of Ehrenberg and Dujardin consists of an aggregate of forms now known to be of very dissimilar nature, many of them belonging to the Vegetable Kingdom.

PLATE XIII.



LIFE-HISTORY OF FLAGELLATE INFUSORIUM.

[*To face p.* 499.

the base of the flagellum. In the smallest *Monadinæ*, neither nucleus nor contractile vesicle is distinguishable; but in larger forms a nucleus can be clearly seen.—The life-history of several simple *Monadinæ* presenting themselves in infusions of decaying animal matter (a cod's head being found the most productive material), has been studied with admirable perseverance and thoroughness by Messrs. Dallinger and Drysdale, of whose important observations a general summary will now be given.*

417. The Monad-form most recently and completely studied by Mr. Dallinger—with all the advantages derived from trained experience, and under objectives of the highest quality and greatest magnifying power—is the *Dallingeria Drysdali* (Kent) represented in Plate XIII. Its normal shape, as seen in fig. 1, is a long oval, slightly constricted in the middle, and having a kind of pointed neck (*a*), from which proceeds a flagellum about half as long again as the body. From the shoulder-like projections behind this (*b*, *c*) arise two other long and fine flagella, which are directed backwards. The sarcode body is clear, and apparently structureless, with minute vacuoles distributed through it; and in its hinder part a nucleus (*d*) is distinguishable. The extreme length of the body is seldom more than the 1-4,000th of an inch, and is often less. This Monad swims with great rapidity; its movements, which are graceful and varied, being produced by the action of the flagella, which can not only impel it in any direction, but can suddenly reverse its course or check it altogether. But besides this free-swimming movement, a very curious 'springing' action is performed by this Monad when the decomposing organic matter of the infusion is breaking up, the process of disintegration being apparently assisted by it. The two posterior flagella anchor themselves and coil into a spiral, and the body then darts forwards and upwards, until the anchored flagella straighten out again, when the body falls forward to its horizontal position, to be again drawn back by the spiral coiling of the anchored flagella.—This Monad multiplies by longitudinal fission; the first stage of which is the splitting of the anterior flagellum into two (fig. 2, *a*, *b*), and a movement of the nucleus (*c*) towards the centre. In the course of *from thirty to sixty seconds* the fission extends down the neck (fig. 3, *a*); a line of division is also seen at the posterior end (*c*), and the nucleus (*b*) shows an incipient cleavage. In a few seconds the cleavage-line runs through the whole length of the body, the separation being widest posteriorly (fig. 4, *a*); and in from one to four minutes the cleavage becomes almost complete (fig. 5), the posterior part of the body, with the two halves (*a* and *b*) of the original nucleus, being now quite disconnected, though the anterior parts are still held together by a transverse band of sarcode, as seen in fig. 6. This soon narrows and elongates, as shown in fig. 7; and at last it

* See their successive Papers in the "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. x. (1873), pp. 53, 245; Vol. xi. (1874), pp. 7, 69, 97; Vol. xii. (1874), p. 261; and Vol. xiii. (1875), p. 185;—and "Proceed. Roy. Soc.," Vol. xxvii. (1878), p. 332.

gives way, setting the two bodies entirely free. The whole process of fission, from first to last, is completed in from four to seven minutes; and being repeated at intervals of a few minutes, this mode of multiplication produces a rapid increase in the number of the Monads.

418. Such fission does not, however, continue indefinitely; for certain individuals undergo a peculiar change, which shows itself first in the absorption of the two lateral flagella and the great development of the nucleus, and afterwards in the formation of a transverse granular band across the middle of the body (fig. 8, *a*). One of these altered forms, swimming into a group in the 'springing' state, within a few seconds firmly attaches itself to one of them, which at once unanchors itself, and the two swim freely and vigorously about, as shown in fig. 9, generally for from thirty-five to forty-five minutes. Gradually, however, a 'fusion' of the two bodies and of their respective nuclei takes place, the two trailing flagella of the 'springing' form being drawn-in (fig. 10); and in a short time longer the two anterior flagella also disappear, and all trace of the separate bodies is lost, the nuclei vanish, and the resultant is an irregular amœboid mass (fig. 11), which gradually acquires the smooth, distended, and 'still' condition represented in fig. 12. This is a cyst filled with reproductive particles of such extraordinary minuteness, that, when emitted from the ends of the cyst (fig. 13) after the lapse of four or five hours, they can only be distinguished under an amplification of 5,000 diameters, with perfect central illumination through an aperture in the diaphragm of from 1-80th to the 1-100th of an inch in diameter. Yet these particles, when continuously watched, are soon observed to enlarge and to undergo elongation (figs. 15-17); and within two hours after their emission from the sac, the anterior flagellum, and afterwards the two lateral flagella (fig. 18) can be distinguished. Slight movements then commence; the neck-like protrusion shows itself (fig. 19, *a*, *b*), and in about half an hour more the regular swimming action begins. About four hours after the escape of its germ from the sac, the Monad acquires its characteristic form (fig. 20), though still only one-half the length of its parent; but this it attains (passing through the stage shown in fig. 21) in another hour, and the process of multiplication by fission, as already described, commences very soon afterwards.—There can be no reasonable doubt that the 'conjugation' of two individuals, followed by the transformation of their fused bodies into a sac filled with reproductive germs, is to be regarded (as in Protophytes) in the light of a true *generative* process; and it is interesting to observe the indication of sexual distinction here marked by the different states of the two conjugating individuals.—There is every reason to believe that *the entire life-cycle* of this Monad has thus been elucidated; and it will now be sufficient to notice the principal diversities observed by Messrs. Dallinger and Drysdale in the life-cycles of the other Monadine forms which they have studied.

419. Their simple *uniflagellate* Monad (*Monas Dallingeri*, Kent), having an ovate form with a long diameter never exceeding 1-4000th of an inch, and advancing slowly with a straight, uniform motion like that of *Monas termo*, differs from the preceding in its mode of multiplication; for this takes place, not by duplicative fission, but by the breaking-up of the sarcodic substance (as in the production of 'swarm spores' by Protophytes) into from thirty to sixty segments, which, at first lying closely packed together, make their escape as free-swimming Monads, each provided with its *flagellum*. Conjugation, in this type, occurs between the ordinary forms and certain individuals distinguished by their somewhat larger size, and by the granular aspect of their sarcode towards the flagellate end; and there is reason to think that the latter have never undergone the segmentation by which the former have been multiplied. The smaller are absorbed, as it were, into the larger; and the latter passes after a time into the encysted state, corresponding in its subsequent history with the preceding type.—The *bi-flagellate* or 'acorn' Monad of the same observers (identified by Kent with the *Polytoma uvella* of Ehrenberg) presents some remarkable peculiarities in its mode of reproduction. Its binary fission extends only to the protoplasmic substance of its body, leaving its envelope entire; and by a repetition of the process, as many as 16 segments, each attaining the likeness of the parent, are seen thus enclosed, their flagella protruding through the general investment. This compound state being supposed by Ehrenberg to be the normal one, he named it accordingly. But the parent-cyst soon bursts, and sets free the contained 'macro-spores,' which swim about freely, and soon attain the size of the parent. Again, the posterior part of the body of certain individuals shows an accumulation of granular protoplasm, giving to that region a roughened acorn-cup-like aspect; the bursting of the projection, while the creature is actively swimming through the water, sets free a multitude of shapeless granular fragments, within each of which a minute bacterium-like corpuscle is developed; and this, on its release, acquires in a few hours the size and form of the original monad. This process seems analogous to the development of 'micro-spores' among Protophytes, by the direct breaking-up of the protoplasm. It is, like the previous process, non-sexual or *gonidial;* the true generative process consisting here, as in the preceding cases, in the 'conjugation' of two individuals, with the usual results.

420. A *Cercomonas* (*C. typicus*, Kent), characterized by the possession of a flagellum at each end, was found to multiply, during eight days (and nights) of continuous observation, by *transverse* duplicative subdivision alone. But certain individuals then exhibited a remarkable change, becoming amœboid and less active; and when two of these came into contact, they underwent a complete fusion, the product of which was a globular cyst, with a very definite investment, filled with reproductive germs.—The 'springing Monad' of the same observers (*Heteromita rostrata*, Kent) is of a

long ovate form, with an average length of about 1-3000th of an inch. From its narrower extremity a sort of beak arises, from which proceeds a fine flagellum about half as long again as the body; and at a little distance behind this, another and longer flagellum arises, with which the Monad anchors itself to the covering-glass, constantly springing backwards and forwards by its recurrent coil and uncoil. A nucleus shows itself near the rounded posterior end of the body. This Monad multiplies by *longitudinal* fission, commencing at the beaked end, and completed in six or seven minutes; and the process may be repeated continuously for many days. Among enormous numbers, there are a few distinguishable from the others by a slight excess of size, and by the power to swim freely; these become 'still'—for a time amœboid—then round; a small cone of sarcode pushes out, dividing and increasing into another pair of flagella; the disk splits, each part becomes possessed of a nuclear body, and two well-formed free-swimming Monads are set free. These conjugate with individuals of the ordinary form which have just undergone fission, the nuclei of the two approximating to each other; a complete fusion of sarcode and nuclei takes place; the body, at first motile, comes to rest, assumes a triangular form, and loses its flagella; it then becomes clear and distended, and emits its contained reproductive granules at the angles.—The 'hooked Monad' (*Heteromita uncinata*, Kent) is another bi-flagellate form, usually ovate with one end pointed, and from 1-3000th to 1-4000th of an inch in length; being distinguished from the preceding by the peculiar character of its flagella, of which the one that projects forward is not more than half the length of the body, and is permanently hooked, while the other, whose length is about twice that of the body, is directed backwards, flowing in graceful curves. Its motion consists of a succession of springs or jerks rapidly following each other, which seems produced by the action of the hooked flagellum. Multiplication takes place by *transverse* fission, and continues uninterruptedly for several days. A difference then becomes perceptible between larger and smaller individuals; the former being further distinguished by the presence of what seems to be a contractile vesicle in the anterior part of the body. Conjugation occurs between one of the larger and one of the smaller forms, the latter being, as it were, absorbed into the body of the larger; and the resulting product is a spherical cyst, which soon begins to exhibit a cleavage-process in its interior. This continues until the whole of its sarcodic substance is subdivided into minute oval particles, which are set free by the rupture of the cyst, and of which each is usually furnished with a single flagellum, by whose lashing movement it swims freely. These germs speedily attain the size and form of the parent, and then begin to multiply by transverse fission—thus completing the 'genetic' cycle.

421. The 'calycine Monad' of the same observers (*Tetramitus rostratus*, Perty), has a length of from 1-900th to 1-1000th of an

inch, and a compressed body tapering backwards to a point. Its four flagella (which constitute its generic distinction) arise nearly together from the flattened front of the body; and its swimming movement is a graceful gliding. Near the base of the flagella is a pair of contractile vesicles; and further behind is a large nucleus. Multiplication takes place by longitudinal fission, which is preceded by a change to a semi-amœboid state. This gives place to a more regular pear-like form, the four flagella issuing from the large end; and the fission commences at their base, two pairs being separated by the cleavage-plane. The nucleus also undergoes cleavage, and its two halves are carried apart by the backward extension of the cleavage. The two half-bodies at last remain connected only by their hinder prolongations, which speedily give way, and set them free. Each, however, has, as yet, only two flagella; but these speedily fix themselves by their free extremities, undergo a rapid vibratory movement, and in the course of about two minutes split themselves from end to end. A still more complete change into the amœboid condition, in which the creature not only moves, but also feeds, like an *Amœba* (devouring all the living and dead Bacteria in its neighbourhood), occurs previously to 'conjugation;' and this takes place between two of the amœboid forms, which begin to blend into one another almost immediately upon coming into contact. The conjugated bodies, however, swim freely about for a time, the two sets of flagella apparently acting in concert. But by the end of about eighteen hours, the fusion of the bodies and nuclei is complete, the flagella are retracted, and a spherical distended sac is then formed, which, in a few hours more, without any violent splitting or breaking up, sets free innumerable masses of reproductive particles. These, under a magnifying power of 2,500 diameters, can be just recognized as oval granules, which rapidly develope themselves into the likeness of their parents, and in their turn multiply by duplicative fission,—thus completing the 'genetic' cycle.

422. One of the most important researches thus ably prosecuted by Messrs. Dallinger and Drysdale, has reference to the Temperatures respectively endurable by the adult or developed forms of these Monads, and by their reproductive germs. A large number of experiments upon the several forms now described, indubitably led to the conclusion that all the *adult* forms, as well as all those which had reached a stage of development in which they can be distinguished from the reproductive granules, are utterly destroyed by a temperature of 150° Fahr. But, on the other hand, the reproductive granules emitted from the cysts that originate in 'conjugation,' were found capable of sustaining a *fluid* heat of 220°, and a dry heat of about 30° more,—those of the Cercomonad surviving exposure to a *dry* heat of 300° Fahr. This is a fact of the highest interest in its bearing on the question of 'spontaneous generation,' or Abiogenesis; since it shows (1) that germs capable of surviving desiccation may be everywhere diffused through the air, and may,

on account of their extreme minuteness (as they certainly do not exceed 1-200,000th of an inch in diameter), altogether escape the most careful scrutiny and the most thorough cleansing processes; while (2) their extraordinary power of resisting heat will prevent these germs from being killed, either by boiling, or by dry-heating up to even 300° Fahr.*

423. The structural resemblance of these simple Flagellate Infusoria to the 'monads' of *Volvox* and its allies (§ 237), is so close that no other than physiological reasons can be assigned for separating them. Whilst the *Volvocineæ* grow and multiply under conditions which seem to justify our regarding them as members of the Vegetable Kingdom (§ 220), the 'flagellated' agree with the 'ciliated' *Infusoria* in ordinarily drawing their nutriment from organic compounds; and it seems clear that, although unpossessed of a mouth, they can introduce solid food-particles into the interior of their bodies. It is, however, not a little remarkable that (according to the statement of Messrs. Dallinger and Drysdale†) these Flagellata —like *Bacteria* and other forms referred to the group of Fungi— can be cultivated in Cohn's 'nutritive fluid' (§ 303, *note*), which consists only of tartrate of ammonia and mineral salts, without any albuminous matter.

424. A large series of more complex forms of Flagellate Infusoria has been recently brought to our knowledge by the researches of the late Prof. James-Clark (U.S.),‡ followed by those of Stein and Saville Kent. In some of these, a sort of collar-like extension of what appears to be the sarcodic ectosarc, proceeds from the anterior extremity of the body (Fig. 295, *cl*), forming a kind of funnel, from the bottom of which the flagellum arises; and by its vibrations a current is produced within the funnel, which brings down food-particles to the 'oral disk' that surrounds its origin, where the ectosarc seems softer than that which envelopes the rest of the body. Towards the base of the collar, a nucleus (*n*) is seen; while, near the posterior termination of the body, is a single or double contractile vesicle *cv*. The body is attached by a pedicle proceeding from its posterior extremity, which also seems to be a prolongation of the ectosarc.—These Animalcules multiply by longitudinal fission; and this, in some cases (as in the genus *Monosiga*) proceeds to the extent of a complete separation of the two bodies, which henceforth, as in the ordinary *Monadina*, live quite independently of each other. But in other forms, as *Codosiga*, the fission does not extend through the pedicel; and the twin bodies being thus held together at their bases, and themselves undergoing

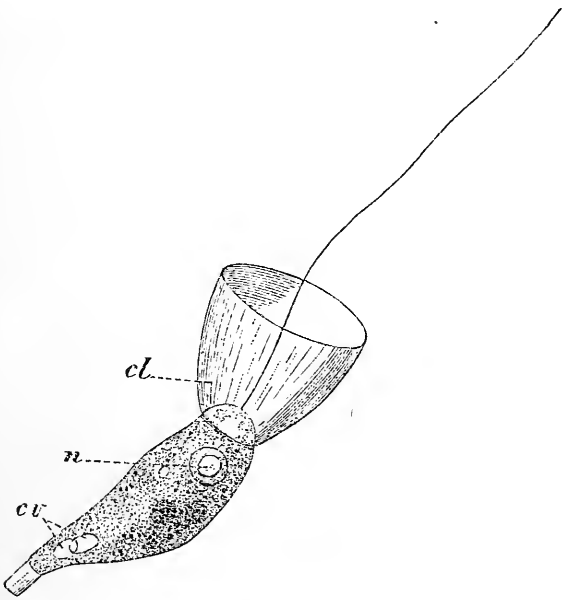
* Descriptions of the special apparatus used by Messrs. Dallinger and Drysdale in their researches will be found in "Monthly Micr. Journ.," Vol. xi. (1874), p. 97; ibid. Vol. xv. (1876), p. 165; and "Proceed. Roy. Soc.," Vol. xxvii. (1878), p. 343.

† "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. xiii. (1875), p. 190.

‡ See his Memoirs in "Ann. Nat. Hist." Ser. 3, Vol. xviii. (1866); ibid. Ser. 4, Vol. i. (1868); Vol. vii. (1871); and Vol. ix. (1872).

duplicative fission, clusters are produced which spring from common pedicels (Fig. 296). And by the extension of the division down the pedicels themselves, composite arborescent fabrics, like those of Zoophytes, are produced.

FIG. 295.



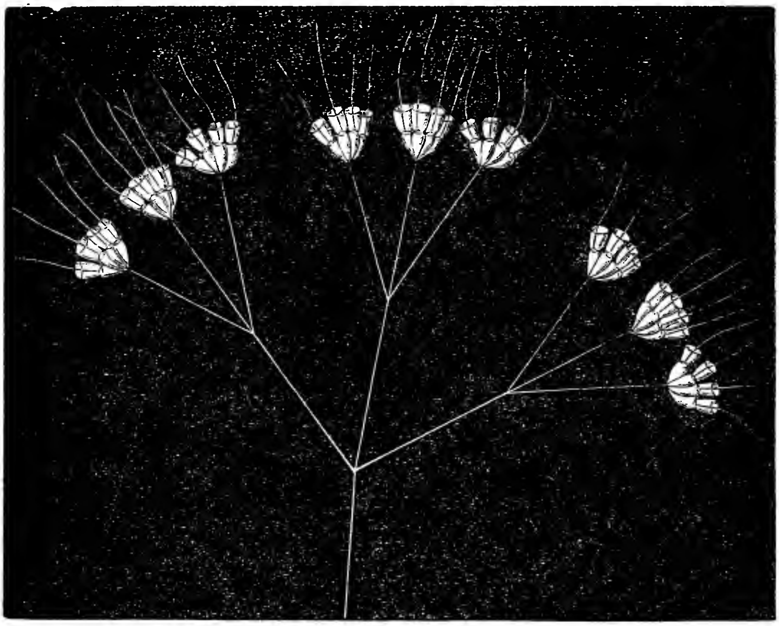
Single zooid of *Codosiga umbellata*:—*c l*, collar; *n*, nucleus; *c v*, double contractile vesicle.

425. In another group, a structureless and very transparent horny calyx, closely resembling in miniature the polype-cell of a *Campanularia* (Plate xx.), forms itself round the body of the Monad, which can retract itself into the bottom of it. And in the genus *Salpingœca* both calyx and collar are present. In some forms of this group, multiplication seems to take place, not by fission, but by gemmation; and, as among Hydroid Polypes, the *gemmæ* may either detach themselves and live independently, or may remain in connection with their parent-stocks, forming composite fabrics, in some of which the calyces follow one another in linear series, whilst in others they take on a ramifying arrangement. While some of these composite organisms are sedentary, others, as *Dinobryon*, are free-swimming.

426. Two solitary Flagellate forms, *Anthophysa* and *Anisonema*, may be specially noticed as presenting several interesting points of resemblance to the peculiar type next to be described; the most noticeable being the presence of a distinct mouth, and the possession of two different motor organs—one a comparatively stout and stiff bristle of uniform diameter throughout, which moves by occasional

jerks; and the other a very delicate tapering flagellum, which is constant vibratory motion. If, as appears from the recent observations of Bütschli, the well-known *Astasia*—of which one species has a blood-red colour, and sometimes multiplies to such an

FIG. 296.



Codosiga umbellata:—colony-stock, springing from single pedicel tripartitely branched.

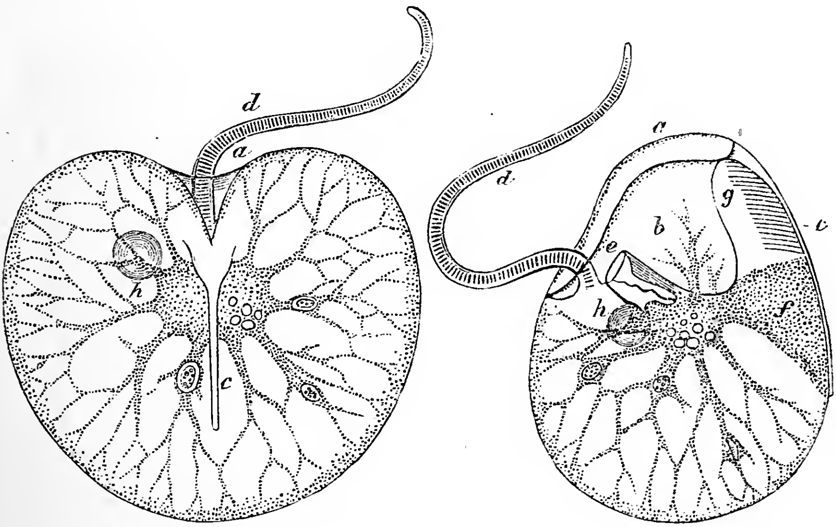
extent as to tinge with it the water of the ponds it inhabits—has a true mouth for the reception of its food, it must be regarded as an Animal, and separated from the *Euglena* (with which it has been generally associated), the latter being pretty certainly a Plant belonging to the same group as *Volvox*.*

427. There can be no longer any doubt that the well-known *Noctiluca miliaris*—to which is attributable the *diffused* luminosity that frequently presents itself in British seas—is to be regarded as a gigantic type of the 'unicellular' *Flagellata*. This animal, which is of spheroidal form, and has an average diameter of about 160th of an inch, is just large enough to be discerned by the naked eye when the water in which it may be swimming is contained in a glass jar held up to the light; and its tail-like appendage, whose length about equals its own diameter, and which serves as an instrument of locomotion, may be discerned with a hand-magnifier. The form of

* See the Memoir by Prof. Bütschli, in "Zeitschrift f. Wissensch. Zool.," Bd. xxx.; of which an abridgment (with Plate) is given in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," Vol. xix. (1879), p. 63.

Noctiluca is nearly that of a sphere, so compressed that while on one aspect (Fig. 297, A) its outline, when projected on a plane, is nearly

FIG. 297.



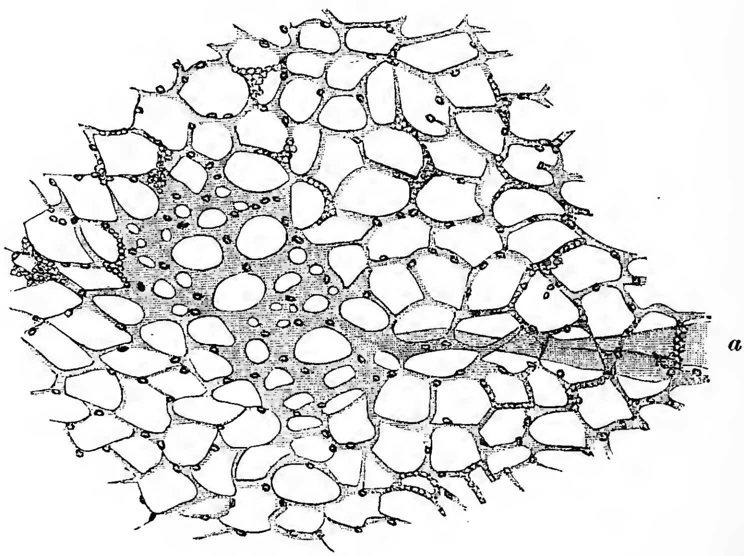
Noctiluca miliaris, as seen at A on the aboral side, and at B on a plane at right angles to it:—*a*, entrance to atrium; *b*, atrium; *c*, superficial ridge; *d*, tentacle; *e*, mouth leading to œsophagus, within which are seen the flagellum springing from its base, and the tooth-like process projecting into it from above; *f*, broad process from the central protoplasmic mass, proceeding to superficial ridge; *g*, duplicature of wall; *h*, nucleus.—Magnified about 90 diameters.

circular, it is irregularly oval in the aspect (B) at right angles to this. Along one side of this body is a meridional grove, resembling that of a peach; and this leads at one end into a deep depression of the surface, *a*, termed the *atrium*, from the shallower commencement of which the *tentacle*, *d*,* originates, whilst it deepens down at the base of the tentacle to the mouth, *e*. Along the opposite meridian there extends a slightly elevated ridge, *c*, which commences with the appearance of a bifurcation at the end of the atrium farthest from the tentacle; this is of firmer consistence than the rest of the body, and has somewhat the appearance

* The organ here termed 'tentacle' is commonly designated *flagellum;* while what is here termed the *flagellum* is spoken of by most of those who have recognized it, as a *cilium*. The Author agrees with M. Robin in considering the former organ, which has a remarkable resemblance to a single fibrilla of striated muscle (§ 678), as one peculiar to *Noctiluca;* and the latter as the true homologue of the flagellum of the ordinary Flagellata.—It is curious that several observers have been unable to discover the so-called cilium, which was first noticed by Krohn. Prof. Huxley sought for it in at least fifty individuals without success; and out of the great number which he afterwards examined, did not get a clear view of it in more than half-a-dozen.

of a rod imbedded in its walls. The mouth opens into a short œsophagus, which leads directly down to the great central protoplasmic mass; on the side of this canal farthest from the tentacle, is a firm ridge that forms a tooth-like projection into its cavity; whilst from its floor there arises a long *flagellum*, which vibrates freely in its interior. The central protoplasmic mass sends off in all directions branching prolongations of its substance, whose ramifications inosculate; these become thinner and thinner as they approach the periphery; and their ultimate filaments, coming into contact with the delicate membranous body-wall, extend themselves over its interior, forming a protoplasmic network of extreme tenuity (Fig. 298). Besides these branching prolongations, there is sent off from the

FIG. 298.



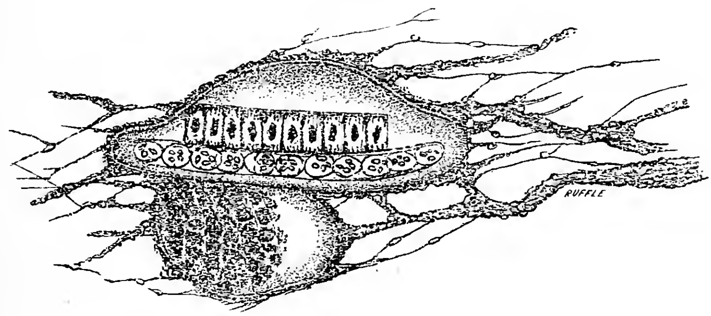
Portion of superficial protoplasmic reticulation, formed by ramification of an extension *a* of central mass.—Magnified 1000 diameters.

central protoplasmic mass a broad, thin, irregularly quadrangular extension (Fig. 297 B. *f*), which extends to the superficial rod-like ridge, and seems to coalesce with it; its lower free edge has a thickened border; whilst its upper edge becomes continuous with a plate-like striated structure, *g*, which seems to be formed by a peculiar duplicature of the body-wall. At one side of the protoplasmic mass is seen a spherical vesicle, *h*, of about 3-2000ths of an inch in diameter, having clear colourless contents, among which transparent oval corpuscles may usually be detected. This, from the changes it undergoes in connection with the reproductive process, must be regarded as a *nucleus*.

428. The particles of food drawn into the mouth (probably by

the vibrations of the flagellum) seem to be received into the protoplasmic mass at the bottom of the œsophagus by extensions of its substance, which envelope them in filmy envelopes that maintain themselves as distinct from the surrounding protoplasm, and thus constitute extemporized digestive vesicles. These vesicles soon find their way into the radiating extensions of the central mass (as shown in Fig. 297 A, B), and are ensheathed by the protoplasmic substance which goes-on to form the peripheral network (Fig. 299). Their number and position are alike variable; sometimes only one

FIG. 299.



Pair of Digestive Vesicles of *Noctiluca*, lying in course of extension of central protoplasmic mass *a*, to form peripheral reticulation *b*, and containing remains of Algæ.—Magnified 480 diameters.

or two are to be distinguished; more commonly from four to eight can be seen; and even twelve or more are occasionally discernible. The place of each in the body is constantly being changed by the contractions of the protoplasmic substance; these in the first place carrying it from the centre towards the periphery of the body, and then carrying it back to the central mass, into whose substance it seems to be fused as soon as it has discharged any indigestible material it may have contained, which is got rid of through the mouth. Every part of the protoplasmic reticulation is in a state of incessant change, which serves to distribute the nutrient material that finds its way into it through the walls of the digestive vesicles; but no regular *cyclosis* (like that of plants) can be observed in it. Besides the 'digestive vesicles,' vacuoles filled with clear fluid may be distinguished, alike in the central protoplasmic mass, and in its extensions, as is shown in the centre of Fig. 297. There is no contractile vesicle.

429. The peculiar 'tentacle' of *Noctiluca* is a flattened whip-like filament, gradually tapering from its base to its extremity; the two flattened faces being directed respectively towards and away from the oral aperture. When either of its flattened faces is examined, it shows an alternation of light and dark spaces, in every respect resembling those of striated muscular fibre, except that the clear

spaces are not subdivided. But when looked-at in profile, it is seen that between the striated band and the aboral surface is a layer of granular protoplasm. The tentacle slowly bends over towards the mouth about five times in a minute, and straightens itself still more slowly; the middle portion rising first, while the point approaches the base, so as to form a sort of loop, which presently straightens. It seems probable that the contraction of the substance forming the dark bands, produces the bending of the filament; whilst, when this relaxes, the filament is straightened again by the elasticity of the granular layer.*

430. The extreme transparence of *Noctiluca* renders it a particularly favourable subject for the study of the phenomena of phosphorescence. When the surface of the sea is rendered luminous by the general diffusion of *Noctilucæ*, they may be obtained by the tow-net in unlimited quantities; and when transferred into a jar of sea-water, they soon rise to the surface, where they form a thick stratum. The slightest agitation of the jar in the dark causes an instant emission of their light, which is of a beautiful greenish tint, and is vivid enough to be perceptible by ordinary lamp-light. This luminosity is but of an instant's duration, and a short rest is required for its renewal. A brilliant, but short-lived display of luminosity, to be followed by its total cessation, may be produced by electric or chemical stimulation. Professor Allman found the addition of a drop of alcohol to the water containing specimens of *Noctiluca*, on the stage of the microscope, produce a luminosity strong enough to be visible under a half-inch objective, lasting with full intensity for several seconds, and then gradually disappearing. He was thus able to satisfy himself that the special seat of the phosphorescence is the peripheral protoplasmic reticulation which lines the external structureless membrane.

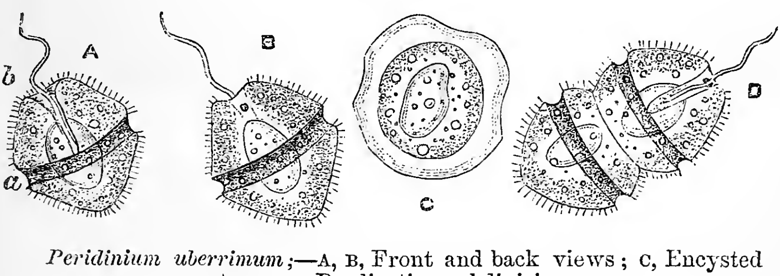
431. The reproduction in this interesting type is effected in various ways. According to Cienkowsky, even a small portion of the protoplasm of a mutilated *Noctiluca* will (as among Rhizopods) reproduce the entire animal. Multiplication by fission or binary sub-division, beginning in the enlargement, constriction, and separation of the two halves of the nucleus, has been frequently observed. Another form of non-sexual reproduction, which seems parallel to the 'swarming' of many Protophytes, commences by a kind of encysting process. The tentacle and flagellum disappear, and the mouth gradually narrows, and at last closes up; the meridional groove also disappears, so that the animal becomes a closed hollow sphere. The nucleus elongates, and becomes transversely constricted, and its two halves separate, each remaining connected with a portion of the protoplasmic network. This duplicative sub-division is repeated over and over again, until as many as 512 'gemmules' are

* According to Robin, the 'tentacle' of *Noctiluca* is derived conjointly from the cell-wall and from its contained protoplasm; being thus differentiated alike from the 'flagellum,' which he regards as an extension of the *latter* alone, and from a 'cilium,' which is an extension of the *former*.

formed, each consisting of a nuclear particle enveloped by a protoplasmic layer, and each having its flagellum. The entire aggregate forms a disk-like mass projecting from the surface of the sphere; and this mass sometimes detaches itself as a whole, subsequently breaking up into individuals; whilst, more commonly, the gemmules detach themselves one by one, the separation beginning at the margin of the disk, and proceeding towards its centre.—The gemmules are at first closed monadiform spheres, each having a nucleus, contractile vesicle, and flagellum; the mouth is subsequently formed, and the tentacle and permanent flagellum afterwards make their appearance.—A process of 'conjugation' has also been observed, alike in ordinary *Noctilucæ* and in their closed or encysted forms, which seems to be sexual in its nature. Two individuals, applying their oral surfaces to each other, adhere closely together, and their nuclei become connected by a bridge of protoplasmic substance. The tentacles are thrown off, the two bodies gradually coalesce, and the two nuclei fuse into one. The whole process occupies about five or six hours, but its results have not been followed out.*

432. Intermediate between the proper *flagellate*, and the true *ciliate* Infusoria, is the small group of *Cilio-flagellata*, in which, while the body is furnished with rows of cilia, a flagellum is also present. Although this group does not contain any great diversity of forms, yet it is specially worthy of notice, on account of the occasional appearance of some of them in extraordinary multitudes. This is the case, for example, with the *Peridinium* observed by Prof. Allman, in 1854, to be imparting a brown colour to the water of some of the large ponds in Phœnix Park, Dublin; this colour being sometimes uniformly diffused, and sometimes showing itself more deeply in dense clouds, varying in extent from a few square yards to upwards of a hundred. The animal (Fig. 300, A, B)

FIG. 300.



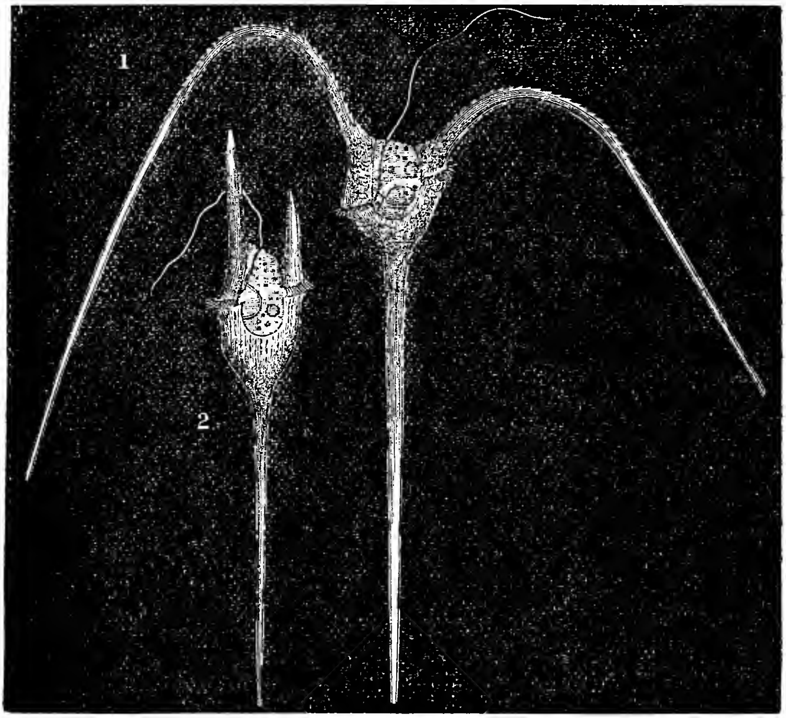
Peridinium uberrimum;—A, B, Front and back views; C, Encysted stage; D, Duplicative subdivision.

---

* *Noctiluca* has been the subject of numerous Memoirs, of which the following are the most recent: Cienkowski, "Arch. f. Micr. Anat.," Bd. vii. (1871), p. 131, and. Bd. ix. (1873), p. 47; Allman, "Quart. Journ. Micr. Sci.," N.S., Vol. xii. (1872), p, 327; Robin, "Journ. de l'Anat. et de Physiol.," Tom. xiv. (1878), p. 586; and Vignal, "Arch. de Physiol.," Ser. 2, Tom. v. (1878), p. 415.

has a form approaching the spherical, with a diameter of from 1-1000th to 1-5000th of an inch; and is partially divided into two hemispheres, by a deep equatorial furrow, *a*, whilst the flagellum-bearing hemisphere, A, has a deep meridional groove on one side, *b*, extending from the equatorial groove to the pole; the flagellum taking its origin from the bottom of this vertical groove, near its junction with the equatorial. The cilia, in this form, do not seem to be disposed in special bands, but are distributed over the general surface of the body; but in several other *Peridinians* (Fig. 301),

FIG. 301.



1, *Ceratium tripos;* 2, *Ceratium furca.*

whose bodies are partially invested by a firm *lorica*, the cilia are arranged in special zones. It is questionable whether any definite mouth exists in this type; but it seems certain that alimentary particles are received into the interior of the body, becoming enclosed in 'digestive vesicles.' A 'contractile vesicle' has been rarely observed; but a large nucleus, sometimes oval, and sometimes horseshoe-shaped, seems always present.—The *Peridinia* multiply by transverse fission (Fig. 300, D), which commences in the subdivision of the nucleus, and then shows itself externally in a constriction of the ungrooved hemisphere, parallel to the equatorial furrow. They pass into a quiescent condition, subsiding towards the

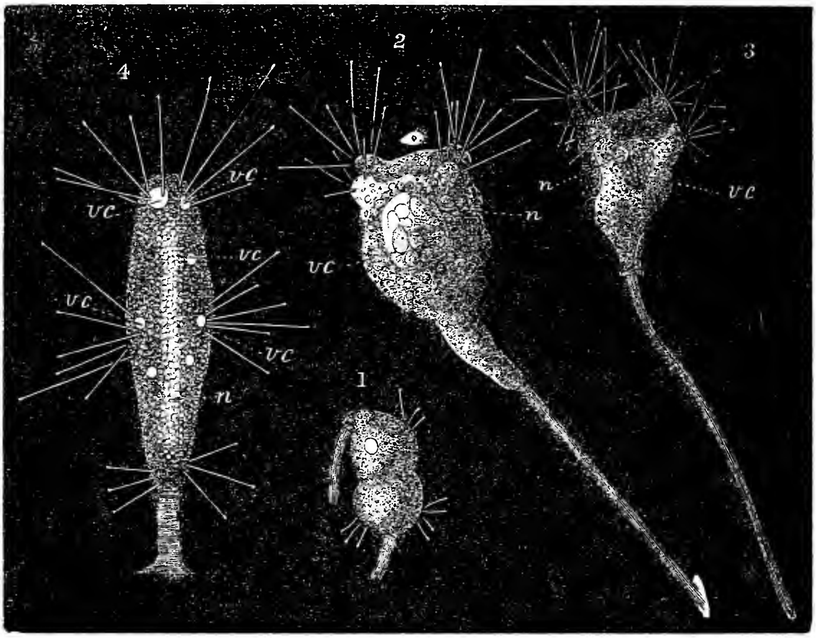
bottom of the water; and the loricated forms appear to throw off their envelopes. But whether these changes are preparatory to any process of conjugation, is not known.—Some of the *Peridinia* are found in sea-water; but the most remarkable marine forms of the cilio-flagellate group belong to the genus *Ceratium* (Fig. 301), in which the cuirass extends itself into long horny appendages. In the *Ceratium tripos* (1), there are three of these appendages; two of them curved, proceeding from the anterior portion of the cuirass, and the third, which is straight or nearly so, from its posterior portion. They are all more or less jagged or spinous. In *Ceratium furca* (2), the two anterior horns are prolonged straight forwards, one of them being always longer than the other; whilst the posterior is prolonged straight backwards. The anterior and posterior halves of the cuirass are separated by a ciliated furrow, from one point of which the flagellum arises; and at the origin of this is a deep depression, into which the flagellum may be completely and suddenly withdrawn. Whether this is, or is not, a true mouth leading into the cell-cavity, has not yet been ascertained.—The Author has found the *Ceratium tripos* extremely abundant in Lamlash Bay, Arran; where it constitutes a principal article of the food of the *Comatulæ* that inhabit its bottom.*

433. *Suctoria.*—The *suctorial* Infusoria constitute a well-marked group,—all belonging to one family, *Acinetina*,—the nature of which has been until recently much misunderstood, chiefly on account of the parasitism of their habit. Like the typical *Monadina*, they are closed cells, each having its nucleus and contractile vesicle; but instead of freely swimming through the water, they attach themselves by flexible peduncles, sometimes to the stems of *Vorticellinæ*, but also to filamentous Algæ, stems of Zoophytes, or the bodies of larger animals. Their nutriment is obtained through delicate tubular extensions of the ectosarc, which act as suctorial tentacles (Fig. 302); the free extremity of each being dilated into a little knob, which flattens out into a button-like disk when it is applied to a food-particle. Free-swimming Infusoria are captured by these organs, of which several quickly bend over towards the one which was at first touched, so as firmly to secure the prey; and when several have thus attached themselves, the movements of the imprisoned animal become feebler, and at last cease altogether, its body being drawn nearer to that of its captor. Instead, however, of being received into its interior like the prey of *Actinophrys* (§ 399), the captured Animalcule remains on the outside; but yields up its soft substance to the suctorial power of its victor. As soon as the sucking disk has worked its way through the envelope of the body to which it has attached itself, a very rapid stream, indicated by the granules it carries, sets along the tube, and pours itself into the interior of the Acineta-body. Solid particles are not received through these suctorial tentacles, so that the *Acinetina* cannot be

* See Allman in "Quart. Micr. Journ.," Vol. iii. (1855), p. 24; and H. James-Clark in "Ann. Nat. Hist.," Ser. 3, Vol. xviii. (1866), p. 429.

fed with indigo or carmine; but, so far as can be ascertained by observation of what goes on within their bodies, there is a general

Fig. 302.



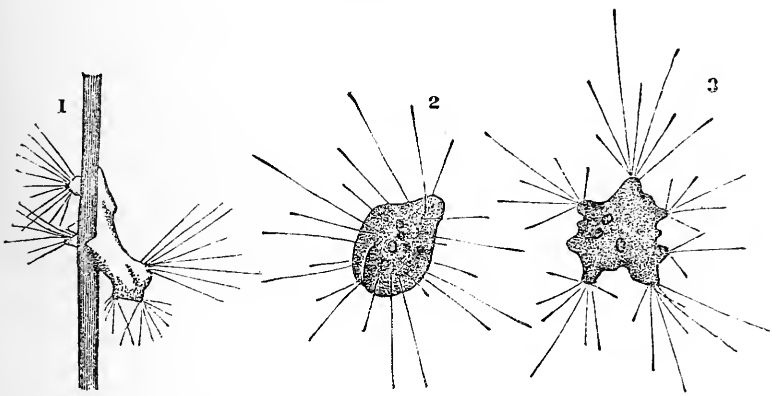
Suctorial Infusoria:—1, Conjugation of *Podophrya quadripartita*; 2, Formation of embryos by enlargement and subdivision of the nucleus; 3, Ordinary form of the same; 4, *Podophrya elongata*.

protoplasmic *cyclosis*, without the formation of any special 'digestive vesicles.'—The ordinary forms of this group are ranked under the two genera *Acineta* and *Podophrya*; which are chiefly distinguished by the presence of a firm envelope or *lorica* in the former, while the body of the latter is naked. In one curious form, the *Ophiodendron*, the suckers are borne in a brush-like expansion on a long retractile proboscis-like organ. And the rare *Dendrosoma*, whose size is comparatively gigantic, forms by continuous gemmation an arborescent 'colony,' of which the individual members remain in intimate connection with one another.

434. Multiplication in this group seems occasionally to take place by longitudinal fission; but this is rare in the adult state. Sometimes external *gemmæ* are developed by a sort of pinching-off of a part of the free end of the body, which includes a portion of the nucleus; the tentacula of this bud disappear, but its surface becomes clothed with cilia; and, after a short time, it detaches itself and swims away—comporting itself subsequently like the internal embryos, whose production seems the more ordinary method of propagation in this type. These

originate in the breaking-up of the nucleus into several segments, each of which encloses itself in a protoplasmic envelope; and this becomes clothed with cilia, by the vibrations of which the embryos are put in motion within the body of the parent (Fig. 302, 2), from which they afterwards escape by its rupture. In this condition (*a*) they swim about freely, and seem identical with what has been described by Ehrenberg as a distinct generic form, *Megatricha.* And according to the recent observations of Mr. Badcock,* these *Megatricha*-forms multiply freely by self-division. After a short time, however, they settle down upon filamentous Algæ or other supports, lose their cilia, put forth suctorial tentacles (which seem to shoot out suddenly in the first instance, but are afterwards slowly retracted and protruded with a kind of spiral movement), and assume a variety of amœbiform shapes (Fig. 303, 1, 2, 3), some of them corresponding to that of the genus *Trichophrya.* In this stage

FIG. 303.



Immature forms of *Podophrya quadripartita*:—1, Amœboid state (*Trichophrya* of Claparède and Lachmann); 2, The same more advanced; 3, Incipient division into lobes.

they become quiescent at the approach of winter, the suctorial tentacles and the contractile vesicles disappearing; they do not, however, seem to acquire any special envelope, remaining as clear, motionless, protoplasmic particles. But with the return of warmth their development recommences, a footstalk is formed, and they gradually assume the characteristic form of *Podophrya quadripartita.*—A regular 'conjugation' has been observed in this type, the body of one individual bending down so as to apply its free surface to the corresponding part of another, with which it becomes fused (Fig. 302, 1); but whether this always precedes the production of internal embryos, or is any way preparatory to propagation, has not yet been ascertained.†

* "Journn. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. iii. (1880), p. 563.

† The *Acinetina* were described both by Ehrenberg and Dujardin; but the

435. *Ciliata.*—As it is in this tribe of Animalcules that the action of the organs termed *Cilia* has the most important connection with the vital functions, it seems desirable here to introduce a more particular notice of them. They are always found in connection with *cells*, of whose protoplasmic substance they may be considered as extensions, endowed in a special degree with its characteristic contractility. The form of the filaments is usually a little flattened, tapering gradually from the base to the point. Their size is extremely variable; the largest that have been observed being about 1-500th of an inch in length, and the smallest about 1-13,000th. When in motion, each filament appears to bend from its root to its point, returning again to its original state, like the stalks of corn when depressed by the wind; and when a number are affected in succession with this motion, the appearance of progressive waves following one another is produced, as when a corn-field is agitated by successive gusts. When the ciliary action is in full activity, however, little can be distinguished save the whirl of particles in the surrounding fluid; but the *back*-stroke may often be perceived, when the *forward*-stroke is made too quickly to be seen; and the real direction of the movement is then opposite to the apparent. In this back-stroke, when made slowly enough, a sort of 'feathering' action may be observed; the thin edge being made to cleave the liquid, which has been struck by the broad surface in the opposite direction. It is only when the rate of movement has considerably slackened, that the shape and size of the cilia, and the manner in which their stroke is made, can be clearly seen. Their action has been observed to continue for many hours, or even days, after the death of the body at large.—As *cilia* are not confined to Animalcules and Zoophytes, but give motion to the zoospores of many Protophytes (§ 248), and also clothe the free internal surfaces of the respiratory and other passages in all the higher Animals, including Man (our own experience thus assuring us that their action takes place, not only without any exercise of *will*, but even without *consciousness*), it is clear that to regard Animalcules as possessing a 'voluntary' control over the action of their Cilia, is altogether unscientific.

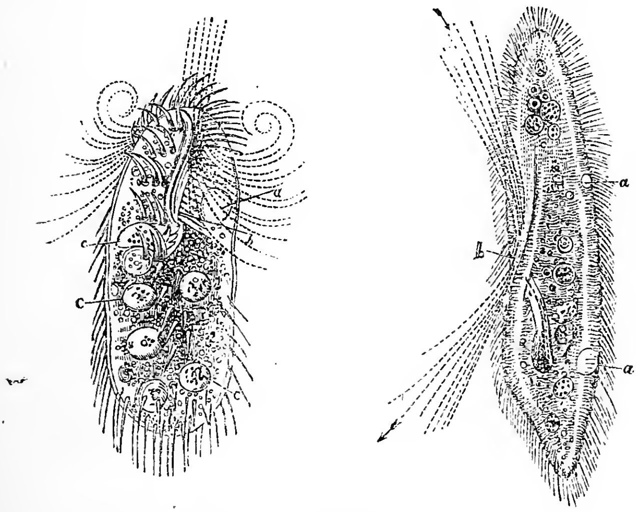
436. In the Ciliated Infusoria, the differentiation of the sarcodic substance into 'ectosarc' or cell-wall, and 'endosarc' or cell-contents, becomes very complete; the ectosarc possessing a membranous firmness which prevents it from readily yielding to pres-

first full account of their peculiar organization was given by Stein in his "Organismus der Infusionsthierchen." Misled, however, by their parasitic habits, Stein originally supposed them not to be independent types, but to be merely transitional stages in the development of *Vorticellinæ* and other Ciliate Infusoria. This doctrine he has long since abandoned; but it is not a little singular that the young of several true *Ciliata* come forth provided with suctorial tentacles as well as with cilia, losing the former as they approximate with advancing growth towards the parental type. Much information as to this group will also be found in the beautiful "Etudes sur les Infusoires et les Rhizopodes" of MM. Claparède and Lachmann, Geneva, 1858-61.

sure, and having a definite internal limit, instead of graduating insensibly (as in Rhizopods) into the protoplasmic layer which lines it. A 'nucleus' seems always present; being sometimes

Fig. 304.

A B

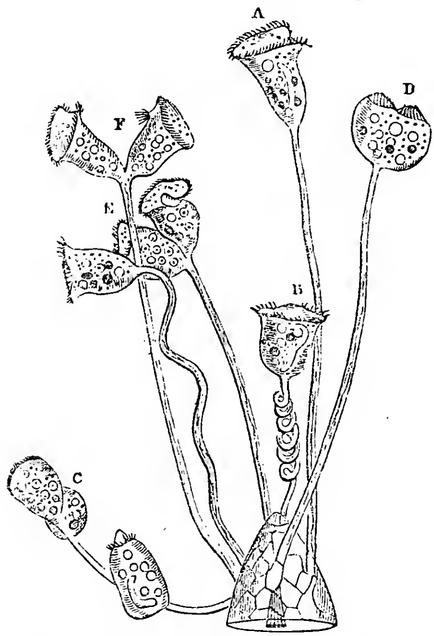


A, *Kerona silurus:*—*a*, contractile vesicle; *b*, mouth; *c*, *c*, Animalcules swallowed by the Kerona, after having themselves ingested particles of indigo. B, *Paramecium caudatum:*—*a*, *a*, contractile vesicles; *b*, mouth.

'parietal' (or adherent to the interior of the ectosarc), in other cases lying in the midst of the endosarc. In many *Ciliata* a distinct 'cuticle' or exudation-layer may be recognized on the surface of the ectosarc; and this cuticle, which is studded with regularly arranged markings like those of Diatomaceæ, seems to be the representative of the carapace of *Arcella*, &c. (Fig. 291), as of the cellulose coat of Protophytes. It is sometimes hardened, so as to form a 'shield' that protects the body on one side only, or a 'lorica' that completely invests it; and there are other cases in which it is so prolonged and doubled upon itself, as to form a sheath resembling the 'cell' of a Zoophyte, within which the body of the Animalcule lies loosely, being attached only by a stalk at the bottom of the case, and being able either to project itself from the outlet or to retract itself into the interior. In a curious group lately described by Haeckel, consisting of Infusoria that spend their lives in the open sea, the body is enclosed in a siliceous lattice-work shell, usually bell-shaped or helmet-shaped, which bears so strong a resemblance to the shells of many Radiolaria as to be easily mistaken for them. The form of the body is usually much more definite than that of the naked Rhizopods; each species having its characteristic shape, which

is only departed from, for the most part, when the Animalcule is subjected to pressure from without, or when its cavity has been distended by the ingestion of any substance above the ordinary size. The *cilia* and other mobile appendages of the body are extensions of the outer layer of the 'ectosarc' proper; and this layer, which retains a high degree of vital activity, is sometimes designated the 'cilia-layer.' Beneath this is a layer in which (or in certain bands of which) regular, parallel, fine striæ may be distinguished; and as this striation is also distinguishable in the eminently contractile footstalk of *Vorticella* (Fig. 305, B), there seems good reason to regard it as indicating a special modification of protoplasmic substance, which resembles muscle in its endowments. Hence this is termed the 'myophan-layer.' Beneath this, in certain species of Infusoria, there is found a thin stratum of condensed protoplasm, including minute 'trichocysts,' which resemble in miniature the 'thread-cells' of Zoophytes (§ 528); and this, where it exists, is known as the 'trichocyst-layer.'

Fig. 305.



Group of *Vorticella nebulifera*, showing A, the ordinary form; B, the same with the stalk contracted; C, the same with the bell closed; D, E, F, successive stages of fissiparous multiplication.

437. The vibration of ciliary filaments,—which are either disposed along the entire margin of the body, as well as around the oral aperture (Fig. 305, A, B), or are limited to some one part of it, which is always in the immediate vicinity of the mouth (Fig. 304),—supplies the means in this group of *Infusoria*, both for progression through the water, and for drawing alimentary particles into the interior of their bodies. In some, their vibration is constant, whilst in others it is only occasional. The modes of movement which Infusory Animalcules execute by means of these instruments, are extremely varied and remarkable. Some propel themselves directly forwards, with a velocity which appears, when thus highly magnified, like that of an arrow, so that the eye can scarcely follow them; whilst others drag their bodies slowly along like a leech. Some attach themselves by one of their long filaments to a fixed point, and revolve

around it with great rapidity; whilst others move by undulations, leaps, or successive gyrations: in short, there is scarcely any kind of animal movement which they do not exhibit. But there are cases in which the locomotive filaments have a bristle-like firmness, and, instead of keeping themselves in rapid vibration, are moved (like the spines of Echini) by the contraction of the integument from which they arise, in such a manner that the Animalcule crawls by their means over a solid surface, as we see especially in *Trichoda lynceus* (Fig. 308, P, Q).—In *Chilodon* and *Nassula*, again, the mouth is provided with a circlet of plications or folds, looking like bristles, which, when imperfectly seen, received the designation of 'teeth;' their function, however, is rather that of laying hold of alimentary particles by their expansion and subsequent drawing-together (somewhat after the fashion of the tentacula of Zoophytes), than of reducing them by any kind of masticatory process.—The curious contraction of the foot-stalk of the *Vorticella* (Fig. 305), again, is a movement of a different nature, being due to the contractility of the tissue that occupies the interior of the tubular pedicle. This stalk serves to attach the bell-shaped body of the Animalcule to some fixed object, such as a leaf or stem of duck-weed; and when the animal is in search of food, with its cilia in active vibration, the stalk is fully extended. If, however, the Animalcule should have drawn to its mouth any particles too large to be received within it, or should be touched by any other that happens to be swimming near it, or should be 'jarred' by a smart tap on the stage of the Microscope, the stalk suddenly contracts into a spiral, from which it shortly afterwards extends itself again into its previous condition. The central cord, to whose contractility this action is due, has been described as muscular, though not possessing the characteristic structure of either kind of muscular fibre; it possesses, however, the special irritability of muscle, being instantly called into contraction (according to the observations of Kühne) by electrical excitation. The only special 'impressionable' organs* for the direction of their actions, with the possession of which Infusoria can be credited, are the delicate bristle-like bodies which project in some of them from the neighbourhood of the mouth, and in *Stentor* from various parts of the surface. The red spots seen in many *Infusoria*, which have been designated as eyes by Prof. Ehrenberg from their supposed correspondence with the eye-spots of *Rotifera* (§ 447), really bear a much greater resemblance to the red spots which are so frequently seen among Protophytes (§ 230).

438. The interior of the body does not always seem to consist of a simple undivided cavity occupied by soft sarcode; for the tegumentary layer appears in many instances to send prolongations across it in different directions, so as to divide it into chambers

* The term 'organs of sense' implies a *consciousness* of impressions, with which it is difficult to conceive that unicellular Infusoria can be endowed. The component cells of the Human body do their work without themselves knowing it.

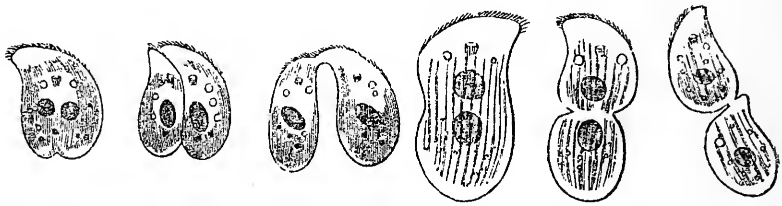
of irregular shape, freely communicating with each other, which may be occupied either by sarcode, or by particles introduced from without. The alimentary particles which can be distinguished in the interior of the transparent bodies of Infusoria, are usually Protophytes of various kinds, either entire or in a fragmentary state. The Diatomaceæ seem to be the ordinary food of many; and the insolubility of their *loricæ* enables the observer to recognize them unmistakably. Sometimes entire Infusoria are observed within the bodies of others not much exceeding them in size (Fig. 308, B); but this is only when they have been recently swallowed, since the prey speedily undergoes digestion. It would seem as if these creatures do not feed by any means indiscriminately, since particular kinds of them are attracted by particular kinds of aliment; the crushed bodies and eggs of Entomostraca, for example, are so voraciously consumed by the *Coleps*, that its body is sometimes quite altered in shape by the distension. This circumstance, however, by no means proves that such creatures possess a sense of taste and a power of determinate selection; for many instances might be cited, in which actions of the like apparently-conscious nature are performed without any such guidance.—The ordinary process of feeding, as well as the nature and direction of the ciliary currents, may be best studied by diffusing through the water containing the Animalcules a few particles of indigo or carmine. These may be seen to be carried by the ciliary vortex into the mouth, and their passage may be traced for a little distance down a short (usually ciliated) œsophagus. There they commonly become aggregated together, so as to form a little pellet of nearly globular form; and this, when it has attained the size of the hollow within which it is moulded, seems to receive an investment of firm sarcodic substance, resembling the 'digestive vesicles' of *Noctiluca* (§ 428), and to be then projected into the softer endosarc of the interior of the cell, its place in the œsophagus being occupied by other particles subsequently ingested. (This 'moulding,' however, is by no means universal; the aggregations of coloured particles in the bodies of Infusoria being often destitute of any regularity of form.) A succession of such pellets being thus introduced into the cell-cavity, a kind of circulation is seen to take place in its interior; those that first entered making their way out after a time (first yielding up their nutritive materials), generally by a distinct anal orifice, but sometimes by the mouth. When the pellets are thus moving round the body of the Animalcule, two of them sometimes appear to become fused together, so that they obviously cannot have been separated by any firm membranous investment. When the Animalcule has not taken food for some time, 'vacuoles,' or clear spaces, extremely variable both in size and number, filled only with a very transparent fluid, are often seen in its sarcode; and their fluid sometimes shows a tinge of colour, which seems to be due to the solution of some of the vegetable chlorophyll upon which the Animalcule may have fed last.

439. Contractile Vesicles (Fig. 304, *a*, *a*), usually about the size of the 'vacuoles,' are found, either singly or to the number of from two to sixteen, in the bodies of most ciliated Animalcules; and may be seen to execute rhythmical movements of contraction and dilatation at tolerably regular intervals; being so completely obliterated, when emptied of their contents, as to be quite undistinguishable, and coming into view again as they are refilled. These vesicles do not change their position in the individual, and they are pretty constant, both as to size and place, in different individuals of the same species; hence they are obviously quite different in character from the 'vacuoles.' In *Paramecium* there are always to be observed two globular vesicles (Fig. 304, B, *a*, *a*), each of them surrounded by several elongated cavities, arranged in a radiating manner, so as to give to the whole somewhat of a star-like aspect (Plate XIV., fig. 1, *v*, *v*); and the liquid contents are seen to be propelled from the former into the latter, and *vice versâ*. Further, in *Stentor*, a complicated network of canals, apparently in connexion with the contractile vesicles, has been detected in the substance of the 'ectosarc;' and traces of this may be observed in other Infusoria. In some of the larger Animalcules, it may be distinctly seen that the contractile vesicles have *permanent* valvular orifices opening outwards, and that an expulsion of fluid from the body into the water around it is effected by their contraction. Hence it appears likely that their function is of a respiratory nature; and that they serve, like the gill-openings of Fishes, for the expulsion of water which has been taken-in by the mouth, and which has traversed the interior of the body. (See § 399.)

440. Of the Reproduction of the Ciliated Infusoria, our knowledge is still very imperfect; for although various modes of multiplication have been observed among them, it still remains doubtful whether any process takes place, that can be regarded—like the conjugation of the *Monadina* (§ 418)—as analogous to the sexual Generation of higher organisms. Binary subdivision would seem to be universal among them; and has in many instances been observed (as elsewhere) to commence in the nucleus. The division takes place in some species longitudinally, that is in the direction of the greatest length of the body (Fig. 305, D, E, F), in other species transversely (Fig. 308, C, D), whilst in some, as in *Chilodon cucullulus* (Fig. 306), it has been supposed to occur in either direction indifferently. But it may be questioned whether, in this latter case, one set of the apparent 'fissions' is not really 'conjugation' of two individuals.—This duplication is performed with such rapidity, under favourable circumstances, that, according to the calculation of Prof. Ehrenberg, no fewer than 268 *millions* might be produced in a month by the repeated subdivisions of a single *Paramecium*. When this fission occurs in *Vorticella* (Fig. 305), it extends down the stalk, which thus becomes double for a greater or less part of its length; and thus a whole bunch of these Animalcules may spring (by a repetition of the same process) from one base. In

some members of the same family, arborescent structures are produced resembling that of *Codosiga*, Fig. 296), by the like process

FIG. 306.



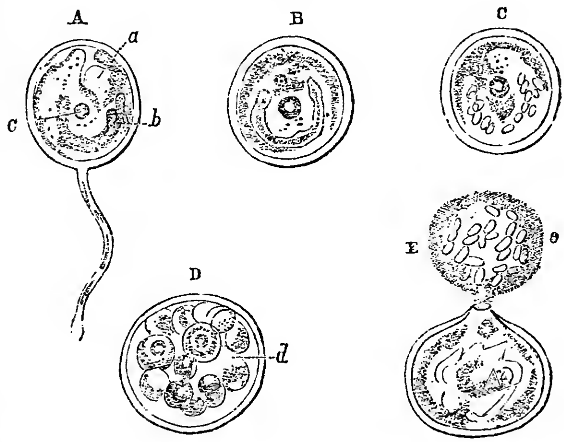
Fissiparous multiplication of *Chilodon cucullulus*:—A, B, C, successive stages of longitudinal fission (?); D, E, F, successive stages of transverse fission.

of continuous subdivision.—Another curious result of this mode of multiplication presents itself in the family *Ophrydina;* masses of individuals, which separately resemble certain *Vorticellina*, being found imbedded in a gelatinous substance of a greenish colour, sometimes adherent, and sometimes free. These masses, which may attain the diameter of four or five inches, present such a strong general resemblance to a mass of *Nostoc* (§ 247), or even of Frogs' spawn, as to have been mistaken for such; but they simply result from the fact, that the multitude of individuals produced by a repetition of the process of self-division, remain connected with each other for a time by a gelatinous exudation from the surface of their bodies, instead of at once becoming completely isolated. From a comparison of the dimensions of the individual *Ophrydia*, each of which is about 1-120th of an inch in length, with those of the composite masses, some estimate may be formed of the number included in the latter; for a cubic inch would contain nearly *eight millions* of them, if closely packed; and many times that number must exist in the larger masses, even making allowance for the fact that the bodies of the Animalcules are separated from each other by their gelatinous cushion, and that the masses have their central portions occupied by water only. Hence we have, in such clusters, a distinct proof of the extraordinary extent to which multiplication by duplicative subdivision may proceed, without the interposition of any other operation. These Animalcules, however, free themselves at times from their gelatinous bed, and have been observed to undergo an 'encysting process' corresponding with that of the *Vorticellina*.

441. Many, perhaps all, ciliated Infusoria at certain times undergo an *encysting process*, resembling the passage of Protophytes into the 'still' condition (§ 231), and apparently serving, like it, as a provision for their preservation under circumstances which do not permit the continuance of their ordinary vital activity. Previously to the

formation of the cyst, the movements of the animalcule diminish in vigour, and gradually cease altogether; its form becomes more

Fig. 307.



Encysting process in *Vorticella microstoma*:—A, full-grown individual in its encysted state; *a*, retracted oval circlet of cilia; *b*, nucleus; *c*, contractile vesicle;—B, a cyst separated from its stalk;—C, the same more advanced, the nucleus broken-up into spore-like globules;—D, the same more developed, the original body of the Vorticella, *d*, having become sacculated, and containing many clear spaces;—at E, one of the sacculations having burst through the enveloping cyst, a gelatinous mass, *e*, containing the gemmules, is discharged.

rounded; its oral aperture closes; and its cilia or other filamentous prolongations are either lost or retracted, as is well seen in *Vorticella* (Fig. 307, A). A new wreath of cilia, however, is developed near the base, and in this condition the animal detaches itself from its stem, and swims freely for a short time, soon passing, however, into the 'still' condition. The surface of the body then exudes a gelatinous excretion that hardens around it so as to form a complete coffin-like case, within which little of the original structure of the animal can be distinguished. Even after the completion of the cyst, however, the contained animalcule may often be observed to move freely within it, and may sometimes be caused to come forth from its prison by the mere application of warmth and moisture. In the simplest form of the 'encysting process,' indeed, the animalcule seems to remain altogether quiescent through the whole period of its torpidity; so that, however long may be the duration of its imprisonment, it emerges without any essential change in its form or condition. But in other cases, this process seems to be subservient either to multiplication or to metamorphosis. For in *Vorticella*, the substance of the encysted body (B) appears to break up (C, D) into eight or nine segments, which, when

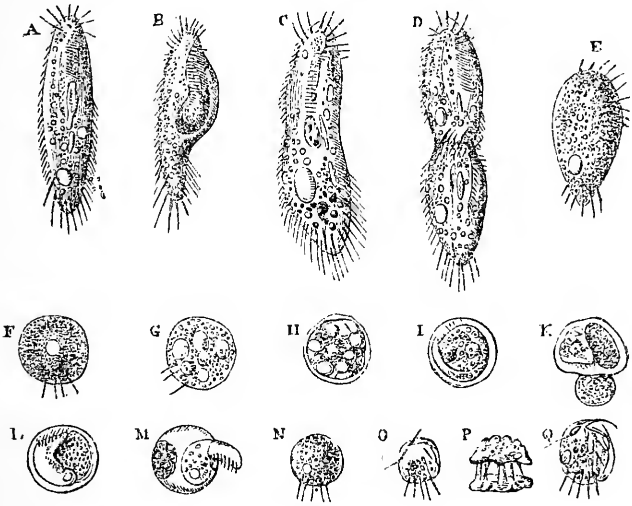
set free by the bursting of the cyst, come forth as spontaneously moving spherules. Each of these soon increases in size, developes a ciliary wreath within which a mouth makes its appearance, and gradually assumes the form of the *Trichodina grandinella* of Ehrenberg. It then developes a posterior wreath of cilia, and multiplies by transverse fission; each half fixes itself by the end on which the mouth is situated, a short stem becomes developed, and the cilia-wreath disappears. A new mouth and cilia-wreath then form at the free extremity; and the growth of the stem completes the development into the true Vorticellan form.*—In *Trichoda lynceus*, again, the 'encysting process' appears subservient to a like kind of metamorphosis; the form which emerges from the cyst differing in many respects from that of the animalcule which became encysted. According to M. Jules Haime, by whom this history was very carefully studied,† the form to be considered as the larval one, is that shown in Fig. 308, A–E, which has been described by Prof. Ehrenberg under the name of *Oxytricha*. This possesses a long, narrow, flattened body, furnished with cilia along the greater part of both margins, and having also at its two extremities a set of larger and stronger hair-like filaments; and its mouth, which is an oblique slit on the right-hand side of its fore-part, has a fringe of minute cilia on each lip. Through this mouth large particles are not unfrequently swallowed, which are seen lying in the midst of the endosarc without any surrounding vesicle; and sometimes even an Animalcule of the same species, but in a different stage of its life, is seen in the interior of one of these voracious little devourers (B). In this phase of its existence, the *Trichoda* undergoes multiplication by transverse fission, after the ordinary mode (C, D); and it is usually one of the short-bodied 'doubles' (E) thus produced, that passes into the next phase. This phase consists in the assumption of the globular form, and the almost entire loss of the locomotive appendages (F); in the escape of successive portions of the granular sarcode, so that 'vacuoles' make their appearance (G); and in the formation of a gelatinous envelope or cyst, which, at first soft, afterwards acquires increased firmness (H). After remaining for some time in this condition, the contents of the cyst become clearly separated from their envelope; and a space appears on one side, in which ciliary movement can be distinguished (I). This space gradually extends all round, and a further discharge of granular matter takes place from the cyst, by which its form becomes altered (K); and the distinction between the newly-formed body to which the cilia belong, and the effete residue of the old, becomes more and more apparent (L). The former increases in size, whilst the latter diminishes; and at last the former makes its escape through an aperture in the wall of the cyst, a part of the latter

* Everts, "Untersuchungen an *Vorticella nebulifera*," quoted by Prof. Allman, *loc. cit.*

† "Annales des Sci. Nat.," Ser. 3, Tom. xix. (1853), p. 109.

still remaining within its cavity (M). The body thus discharged (N) does not differ much in appearance from that of the Oxytricha

Fig. 308.



Metamorphoses of *Trichoda lynceus*:—A, larva (*Oxytricha*); B, a similar larva, after swallowing the animalcule represented at M; C, a very large individual on the point of undergoing fission; D, another in which the process has advanced further; E, one of the products of such fission; F, the same body become spherical and motionless; G, aspect of this sphere fifteen days afterwards; H, later condition of the same, showing the formation of the cyst; I, incipient separation between living substance and exuvial matter; K, partial discharge of the latter, with flattening of the sphere; L, more distinct formation of the confined animal; M, its escape from the cyst; N, its appearance some days afterwards; O, more advanced stage of the same; P, Q, perfect *Aspidiscæ*, one as seen sideways, moving on its bristles, the other as seen from below (magnified twice as much as the preceding figures).

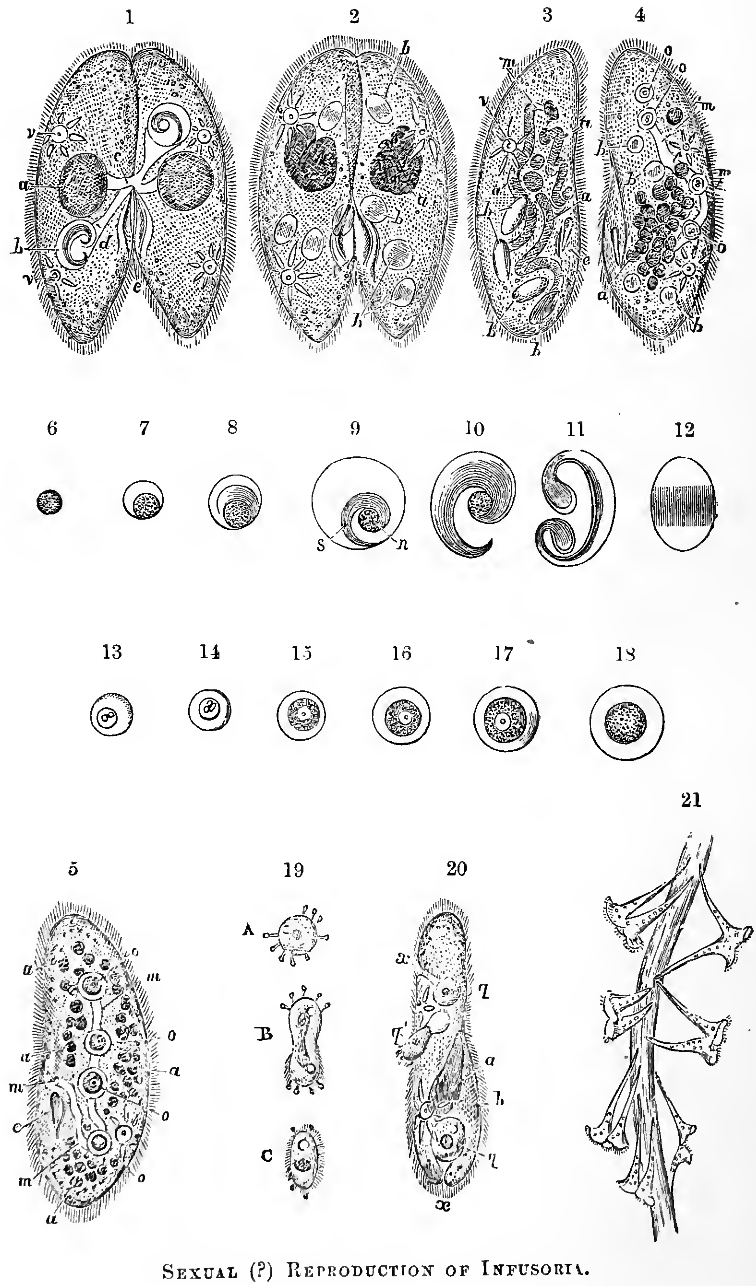
before its encystment (F), though of only about two-thirds its diameter; but it soon developes itself (O, P, Q) into an Animalcule very different from that in which it originated. First it becomes still smaller, by the discharge of a portion of its substance; numerous very stiff bristle-like organs are developed, on which the Animalcule creeps, as by legs, over solid surfaces; the external integument becomes more consolidated on its upper surface, so as to become a kind of carapace; and a mouth is formed by the opening of a slit on one side, in front of which is a single hair-like flagellum, which turns round and round with great rapidity, so as to describe a sort of an inverted cone, whereby a current is brought towards the mouth. This latter form had been described by Prof. Ehrenberg under the name of *Aspidisca*. It is very much

smaller than the larva; the difference being, in fact, twice as great as that which exists between A and P, Q (Fig. 308), since the last two figures are drawn under a magnifying power double that employed for the preceding. How the *Aspidisca*-form in its turn gives origin to the *Oxytricha*-form, has not yet been made out.—A similar 'encysting process' has been observed to take place among several other forms of ciliated Infusoria; so that, considering the strong general resemblance in kind and degree of organization which prevails throughout the group, it does not seem unlikely that it may occur at some stage of the life of nearly all these Animalcules. And it is not improbably in the 'encysted' condition that their dispersion chiefly takes place, since they have been found to endure desiccation in this state, although in their ordinary condition of activity they cannot be dried-up without loss of life. When this circumstance is taken into account, in conjunction with the extraordinary rapidity of multiplication of these Animalcules, there seems no difficulty in accounting for the universality of their diffusion. It may be stated as a general fact, that wherever decaying Organic matter exists in a liquid state, and is exposed to air and warmth, it speedily becomes peopled with some or other of these minute inhabitants: and it may be fairly presumed that, as in the case of the Fungi, the dried cysts or germs of Infusoria are everywhere floating about in the air, ready to develope themselves wherever the appropriate conditions are presented; while all our knowledge of their history seems further to justify the belief, that (in some instances, at least) the same germs may develope themselves into a succession of forms so different, as to have been regarded as distinct specific or even generic types.

442. A very important advance was supposed to have been made in this direction, by the asserted discovery of M. Balbiani* that a true process of *sexual generation* occurs among Infusoria; his observations having led him to the conclusion that male and female organs are combined in each individual of the numerous genera he has examined, but that the congress of two individuals is necessary for the impregnation of the ova, those of each being fertilized by the spermatozoa of the other. He regards the 'nucleus' as an *ovarium* or aggregation of germs, whilst the 'nucleolus' is really a *testis* or aggregation of spermatozoids. The particular form and position which these organs present, and the nature of the changes which they undergo, vary in the several types of Infusoria; but as we have in the common *Paramecium aurelia* an example, which, although exceptional in some particulars, affords peculiar facilities for the observation of the process, and has been most completely studied by M. Balbiani, it is here selected for illustration.—This Animalcule, as is well known, multiplies itself with great rapidity

* See his "Recherches sur les Phénomènes Sexuels des Infusoires," in Dr. Brown-Séquard's "Journal de la Physiologie," for 1861. An abstract of these researches is contained in the "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," for July and October, 1862.

PLATE XIV.



SEXUAL (?) REPRODUCTION OF INFUSORIA.

[To face p. 527.

(under favourable circumstances) by duplicative subdivision, which always takes place in the *transverse* direction; and the condition represented in Plate XIV., figs. 1, 2, is not, as has been usually supposed, another form of the same process, but is really the sexual congress of two individuals previously distinct. When the period arrives at which the *Paramecia* are to propagate in this manner, they are seen assembling upon certain parts of the vessel, either towards the bottom or on the walls; and they are soon found coupled in pairs, closely adherent to each other, with their similar extremities turned in the same direction, and their two mouths closely applied to one another, but still continuing to move freely in the liquid, turning constantly round upon their axes. This conjugation lasts for five or six days, during which period very important changes take place in the condition of the reproductive organs. In order to distinguish these, the Animalcules should be slightly flattened by compression, and treated with acetic acid, which brings the reproductive apparatus into more distinct view, as shown in figs. 1–5. In fig. 1 each individual contains an ovarium *a*, which is shown to present in the first instance a smooth surface; and from this there proceeds an excretory canal or oviduct *c*, that opens externally at about the middle of the length of the body into the buccal fissure *e*. Each individual also contains a seminal capsule *b*, in which is seen lying a bundle of spermatozoids curved upon itself, and which communicates by an elongated neck with the orifice of the excretory canal. The successive stages by which the seminal capsule arrives at this condition, from that of a simple cell, whose granular contents resolve themselves (as it were) into a bundle of filaments, are shown in figs. 6–10. In fig. 2 the surface of the ovary, *a*, is seen to present a lobulated appearance, which is occasioned by the commencement of its resolution into separate ova; while the seminal capsule is found to have undergone division into two or four secondary capsules, *b*, *b*, each of which contains a bundle of spermatozoa now straightened out. This division takes place by the elongation of the capsule into the form represented in fig. 11, and by the narrowing of the central portion whilst the extremities enlarge; the further multiplication being effected by the repetition of the same process of elongation and fission. In fig. 3, which represents one of the individuals still in conjugation, the four seminal capsules, *b*, *b*, are represented as thus elongated in preparation for another subdivision; whilst the ovary, *a*, *a*, has begun as it were to unroll itself, and to break-up into fragments which are connected by the tube, *m*. It is in this condition that the object of the conjugation appears to be effected, by the passage of the seminal capsules of each individual, previously to their complete maturation, into the body of the other. In fig. 4 is shown the condition of a *Paramecium* ten hours after the conclusion of the conjugation; the ovary has here completely broken-up into separate granular masses, of which some, *a*, *a*, remain unchanged, whilst others, *o*, *o*, *o*, *o*,

either two, four, or eight in number, are converted into ovules that appear to be fertilized by the escape of the spermatozoa from the seminal capsules, these being now seen in process of withering. Finally, in fig. 5, which represents a *Paramecium* three days after the completion of the conjugation, are seen four complete ova, *o, o, o, o,* within the connecting tube, *m, m*; whilst the seminal capsules have now altogether disappeared. In figs. 13-18 are seen the successive stages of the development of the ovule, which seems at first (fig. 13) to consist of a germ-cell having within it a secondary cell containing minute granules, which is to become the 'vitelline vesicle.' This secondary cell augments in size, and becomes more and more opaque from the increase of its granular contents (figs. 14, 15, 16), forming the 'vitellus' or yolk; in the midst of which is seen the clear 'germinal vesicle,' which shows on its wall, as the ovule approaches maturity, the 'germinal spot' (fig. 17). The germinal vesicle is subsequently concealed (fig. 18) by the increase in the quantity and opacity of the vitelline granules. The fertilized ova seem to be expelled by the gradual shortening of the tube that contains them; and this shortening also brings together the scattered fragments of the granular substance of the original ovarium, so as to form a mass resembling that shown in fig. 1, *a*, by the evolution of which, after the same fashion, another brood of ova may be produced.

443. Now there can be no doubt as to the occurrence of 'conjugation' among Ciliated Infusoria; and this not only in the free-swimming, but also in the attached forms, as *Stentor* (Plate XIV., fig. 21). In *Vorticella*, according to several recent observers, what has been regarded as *gemmiparous* multiplication—the putting-forth of a bud from the base of the body—is really the conjugation of a small individual in the free-swimming stage with a fully-developed fixed individual, with whose body its own becomes fused. But it is doubtful whether such conjugation has any reference to the encysting process. According to Bütschli and Engelmann, the conjugating process results in the breaking-up of the nucleus and (so-called) nucleolus of the conjugating individuals; these individuals separate again, and after the expulsion of the broken-up nuclear structures, the characteristic nucleus and nucleolus are re-formed. The same excellent observers adduce strong grounds for distrusting Balbiani's assignment of sexual characters to the nucleus and nucleolus. For although a striation may be observed on the surface of the latter, no one has witnessed its subdivision into spermatozoidal filaments. And if embryos are really produced at the expense of the nucleus, what Balbiani described as sexual *ova* are really non-sexual *gemmules*, each consisting (like the zoospore of Protophytes) of a segment of the nucleus surrounded by an envelope of protoplasm.—There is still much uncertainty in regard to the embryonic forms of Ciliate Infusoria; some eminent observers asserting that the 'gemmule' in the first instance, besides forming a cilia-wreath, puts forth

suctorial appendages (Plate XIV., fig. 19, A, B, C), by means of which it imbibes nourishment until the formation of its mouth permits it to obtain its supplies in the ordinary way; whilst others maintain these acinetiform bodies to be parasites, which even imbed themselves in the substance of the Infusoria they infest.*

444. It is obvious that no Classification of Infusoria can be of any permanent value, until it shall have been ascertained by the study of their entire life-history, what are to be accounted really distinct forms. And the differences between them, consisting chiefly in the shape of their bodies, the disposition of their cilia, the possession of other locomotive appendages, the position of the mouth, the presence of a distinct anal orifice, and the like, are matters of such trivial importance as compared with those leading features of their structure and physiology on which we have been dwelling, that it does not seem desirable to attempt in this place to give any detailed account of them. The life-history of the *ciliate Infusoria* is a subject pre-eminently worthy of the attention of Microscopists, who can scarcely be better employed than in tracing out the sequence of its phenomena, with the same care and assiduity as have been displayed by Messrs. Dallinger and Drysdale in the study of the *Monadina*.—"In pursuing our researches," say these excellent observers, "we have become practically convinced of what we have theoretically assumed—the absolute necessity for prolonged and patient observation of the same forms. Two observers, independently of each other, examining the same Monad, if their inquiries were not sufficiently prolonged, might, with the utmost truthfulness of interpretation, assert opposite modes of development. Competent optical means, careful interpretation, close observation, and *time*, are alone capable of solving the problem."

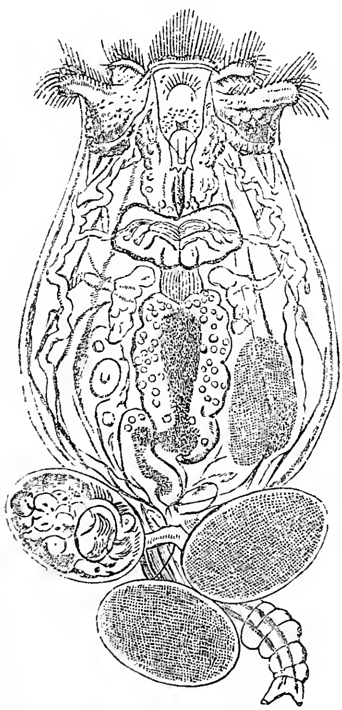
SECTION II.—ROTIFERA, OR WHEEL-ANIMALCULES.

445. We now come to that higher group of Animalcules, which, in point of complexity of organization, is as far removed from the preceding, as Mosses are from the simplest Protophytes; the only point of real resemblance between the two groups, in fact, being the minuteness of size which is common to both, and which was long the obstacle to the recognition of the comparatively elevated character of the *Rotifera*, as it still is to the precise determination of certain points of their structure. Some of the Wheel-Animalcules are inhabitants of salt water only; but by far the larger proportion are found in collections of fresh water, and rather in such as are free from actively decomposing matter, than in those which contain organic substances in a putrescent state.

* There can be no doubt that Stein was wrong in his original doctrine that the fully-developed *Acinetina* are only transition-stages in the development of *Vorticellina* and other Ciliated Infusoria. But the balance of evidence seems to the writer to be in favour of his later statement, that the bodies figured in Pl. XIV. fig. 19, are really Infusorian embryos, and not parasitic Acinetæ.

Hence when they present themselves in Vegetable infusions, it is usually after that offensive condition which is favourable to the development of many of the Infusoria has passed-away; and they are consequently to be looked-for after the disappearance of many successions (it may be) of Animalcules of inferior organization. Rotifera are more abundantly developed in liquids which have been long and freely exposed to the open air, than in such as have been kept under shelter; certain kinds, for example, are to be met with in the little pools left after rain in the hollows of the lead with which the tops of houses are partly covered; and they are occasionally found in enormous numbers in cisterns which are not beneath roofs or otherwise covered over.* They are not, however, absolutely confined to collections of liquid: for there are a few species which can maintain their existence in damp earth; the common *Rotifer* is occasionally found in the interior of the leaf-cells of *Sphagnum* (§ 339); and at least two species of *Notommata* also are known to be parasitic, the one in the large cells of *Vaucheria* (§ 219), and another in the sphere of *Volvox* (§ 236).—The Wheel-like organs from which the class derives its designation, are most characteristically seen in the common *Rotifer* (Fig. 310), where they consist of two disk-like lobes or projections of the body, whose margins are fringed with long cilia; and it is the uninterrupted succession of strokes given by these cilia, each row of which nearly returns (as it were) into itself, that gives rise by an optical illusion to the notion of 'wheels.' This arrangement, however, is by no means universal; in fact, it obtains in only a small proportion of the group; and by far the more general plan is that seen in Fig. 309, in which the cilia form one continuous line across the body, being disposed upon the sinuous edges of certain lobes or projections which are borne upon its anterior portion. Some of the chief departures from this plan will be noticed hereafter (§ 453).

Fig. 309.



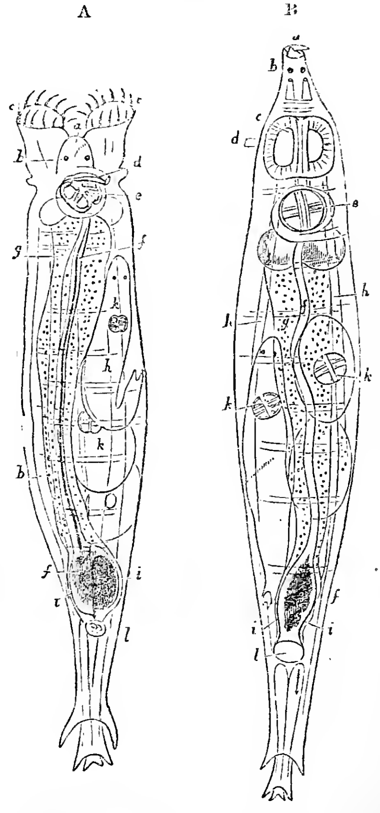
Brachionus pala.

446. The great transparence of the Rotifera permits their general structure to be easily recognized. They have usually an elongated

* See a remarkable instance of this in p. 277 *note*.

form, similar on the two sides; but this rarely exhibits any traces of segmental division. The body is covered with a double envelope, both layers of which are extremely thin and flexible in some species, whilst in others the outer one seems to possess a horny consistence. In the former case the whole integument is drawn together in a wrinkled manner when the body is shortened; in some of the latter the sheath has the form of a polype-cell, and the body lies loosely in it, the inner layer of the integument being separated from the outer by a considerable space (Fig. 312); whilst in others the envelope or *lorica* is tightly fitted to the body, and strongly resembles the horny casing of an Insect or the shell of a Crab, except that it is not jointed, and does not extend over the head and tail, which can be projected from the openings at its extremities, or completely drawn within it for protection (Fig. 313). In those Rotifera in which the flexibility of the body is not interfered with by the consolidation of the external integument, we usually find it capable of great variation in shape, the elongated form being occasionally exchanged for an almost globular one, as is seen especially when the animals are suffering from deficiency of water; whilst by alternating movements of contraction and extension, they can make their way over solid surfaces, after the manner of a Worm or a Leech, with considerable activity,—some even of the loricated species being rendered capable of this kind of progression by the contractility of the head and tail. All these, too, can swim readily through the water by the action of their cilia; and there are some species which are limited to the latter mode of progression. The greater number have an organ of attachment at the posterior extremity of the body, which is usually prolonged into a tail, by which they can affix themselves to any solid object; and this is their ordinary position, when

FIG. 310.



Rotifer vulgaris, as seen at A with the wheels drawn-in, and at B with the wheels expanded:—*a*, mouth; *b*, eye-spots; *c*, wheels; *d*, calcar (antenna?); *e*, jaws and teeth; *f*, alimentary canal; *g*, glandular (?) mass enclosing it; *h*, longitudinal muscles; *i*, *i*, tubes of water-vascular system; *k*, young animal; *l*, cloaca.

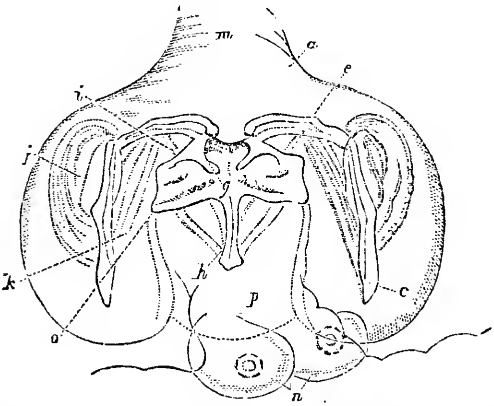
keeping their 'wheels' in action for a supply of food or of water; they have no difficulty, however, in letting-go their hold and moving through the water in search of a new attachment, and may therefore be considered as perfectly free. The sessile species, in their adult stage, on the other hand, remain attached by the posterior extremity to the spot on which they have at first fixed themselves; and their cilia are consequently employed for no other purpose than that of creating currents in the surrounding water.

447. In considering the internal structure of Rotifera, we shall take as its type the arrangement which it presents in the *Rotifer vulgaris* (Fig. 310); and specify the principal variations exhibited elsewhere. The body of this animal, when fully extended, possesses greater length in proportion to its diameter than that of most others of its class; and the tail is composed of three joints or segments, which are capable of being drawn-up, one within another, like the sliding tubes of a telescope, each having a pair of prongs or points at its extremity. Within the external integument of the body are seen a set of longitudinal muscular bands (*h*), which serve to draw the two extremities towards each other; and these are crossed by a set of transverse annular bands, which also are probably muscular, and serve to diminish the diameter of the body, and thus to increase its length. Between the wheels is a prominence bearing two red spots (*b*), and having the mouth (*a*) at its extremity; these red spots differ altogether from those common in Infusoria and Protophyta, each having a minute highly-refracting spherical lens set in red pigment, and being clearly a rudimentary eye; and the prominence that bears them may be considered, therefore, as a true head, notwithstanding that it is not clearly distinguishable from the body. This head also bears upon its under surface a projecting spur-like organ (*d*), which was thought by Prof. Ehrenberg to be a siphon for the admission of water to the cavity of the body for the purpose of respiration; this, however, is certainly not the case, the 'spur' being imperforate at its extremity; and there seems much more probability in the idea of Dujardin, that it represents the *antennæ* or *palpi* of higher Articulata, the single organ being replaced in many Rotifera by a pair, of which each is furnished at its extremity with a brush-like tuft of hairs that can be retracted into the tube. The œsophagus, which is narrow in the *Rotifer*, but is dilated into a crop in *Stephanoceros* (Fig. 312) and in some other genera, leads to the masticating apparatus (Fig. 310, *e*), which in these animals is placed far behind the mouth, and in close proximity to the stomach.—The Masticating apparatus has been made the subject of attentive study by Mr. P. H. Gosse; who has given an elaborate account of the various types of form which it presents in the several subdivisions of the group.* The following description of one of the more complicated will serve our present purpose. The various movable parts are included in a muscular bulb, termed the *mastax* (Fig. 311, *a*), which intervenes between the buccal funnel (*m*)

* "Philosophical Transactions," 1856, p. 419.

and the œsophagus (p). The mastax includes a pair of organs, which, from the resemblance of their action to that of hammers working on an anvil, may be called *mallei*, and a third, still more complex, termed the *incus*. Each malleus consists of two principal parts placed nearly at right angles to each other, the *manubrium* (c),

FIG. 311.



Masticating Apparatus of *Euchlanis deflexa*:—a, Mastax; c, manubrium, and e, uncus, of Malleus; g, rami, and h, fulcrum, of Incus; i, muscle connecting ramus and uncus; j, muscle passing from malleus to mastax; k, muscle connecting uncus and manubrium; m, buccal funnel; n, salivary glands; p, œsophagus.

and the *uncus* (e); these are articulated to one another by a sort of hinge-joint. The former, as its name imports, serves the purpose in some degree of a handle; and it is the latter which is the instrument for crushing and dividing the food. This is done by means of the finger-like processes with which it is furnished at the edge where it meets its fellow; these being five or six in number, set parallel to each other like the teeth of a comb. The incus also consists of distinct articulated portions, namely two stout *rami* (a) resting on what seems a slender footstalk (h) termed the *fulcrum;* when viewed laterally, however, the fulcrum is seen to be a thin plate, having the rami so jointed to one edge of it that they can open and close like a pair of shears. The uncus of each malleus falls into the concavity of its respective ramus, and is connected with it by a stout triangular muscle (i), which is seen passing from the hollow of the ramus to the under surface of the uncus. It is difficult to say with certainty what is the substance of which these firm structures are composed; it is not affected by solution of potass, but is instantly dissolved without effervescence by the mineral acids and by acetic acid. Besides the muscles already described, a thick band (j) embraces the upper and outer angle of the articulation of the malleus; and is inserted in the adjacent wall of the mastax;

and a semi-crescentic band (k) is inserted by its broad end into the inferior and basal part of the uncus, and by its slender end into the middle of the inner side of the manubrium; the former of these may be considered as an extensor, and the latter as a flexor, of the malleus. By these and other muscles which cannot be so clearly distinguished, the two unci are made to approach and recede by a perpendicular motion on the hinge-joint, so that their opposing faces come into contact, and their teeth bruise-down the particles of food; but at the same time they are carried apart and approximated laterally by the movement of the free extremities of the manubria. The rami of the incus also open and shut with the working of the mallei: and by the conjoint action of the whole, the food is effectually comminuted in its passage downwards.*

448. The Alimentary Canal, which lies loose in the 'general cavity of the body,' is sometimes a simple tube, passing without enlargement or constriction from the masticating apparatus to the anal orifice at the posterior part of the body; whilst in other instances there is a marked distinction between the stomach and intestinal tube, the former being a large globular dilatation immediately below the jaws, whilst the latter is cylindrical and comparatively small. The alimentary canal of *Rotifer* (Fig. 310) most resembles the first of these types, but presents a dilatation (l) close to the anal orifice, which may be considered as a cloaca: that of *Brachionus* (Fig. 309) is rather formed upon the second. Connected with the alimentary canal are various glandular appendages, more or less developed; sometimes clustering round its walls as a mass of separate follicles, which seems to be the condition of the glandular investment (g) of the alimentary canal in *Rotifer;* in other cases having the form of cæcal tubuli. Some of these open into the stomach close to the termination of the œsophagus, and have been supposed to be salivary or pancreatic in their character, whilst others, which discharge their secretion into the intestinal tube, have been regarded, and probably with correctness, as the rudiment of a liver.—In the genus *Asplanchna* (Gosse), there is a wide departure from the ordinary *Rotifer* type; as the species belonging to it have neither intestine nor anus. The stomach consists of a large bag at the end of the gullet, about which, when the animals are quiet, the ovary is bent in a horseshoe form. The indigestible matters are ejected through the mouth. The curious absence of any digestive apparatus in the males of this group, will be presently noticed (§ 450).†

449. There does not appear to be any special Circulating apparatus in these animals; but the fluid which is contained in the perivisceral cavity is probably to be regarded as nutritive in its character;

* See also the description of the mastax of *Melicerta ringens* and *Conochilus* by Mr. Bedwell in "Journ. of Roy. Micr. Soc.," Vol. i. (1878), p. 176.

† See Brightwell in "Ann. Nat. Hist.," Ser. 2, Vol. ii. (1848), p. 153; Dalrymple in "Philos. Transact.," 1849, p. 339; and Gosse in "Ann. Nat. Hist.," Ser. 2, Vols. iii. (1848), p. 518; vi. (1850), p. 18; and viii. (1851), p. 198.

and its aeration is provided-for by a peculiar apparatus, which seems to be a rudimentary form of the 'water-vascular system,' that attains a high development in the class of Worms. On either side of the body there is usually to be observed a long flexuous tube (Fig. 309), which extends from a contractile vessel common to both and opening into the cloaca (Fig. 310, *i, i*), towards the anterior region of the body, where it frequently subdivides into branches, one of which may arch-over towards its opposite side, and inosculate with a corresponding branch from its tube. Attached to each of these tubes are a number of peculiar organs (usually from two to eight on each side), in which a trembling movement is seen, very like that of a flickering flame; these appear to be pear-shaped sacs, attached by hollow stalks to the main tube, and each having a flagelliform cilium in its interior, that is attached by one extremity to the interior of the sac, and vibrates with a quick undulatory motion in its cavity; and there can be little doubt that their function is to keep-up a constant movement in the contents of the aquiferous tubes, whereby fresh water may be continually introduced from without for the aeration of the fluids of the body.* The Nervous system is represented by only a single ganglionic body (sometimes bilobed, however), which lies at one side of the œsophagus, in near proximity to the eye-spots, the spur-like organ, and the ciliated pit, and has also, in some Rotifers, an auditory vesicle attached to it. No nerve-trunks proceeding to the muscular bands have as yet been certainly distinguished.

450. The Reproduction of the Rotifera has not yet been completely elucidated. Although they were affirmed by Prof. Ehrenberg to be hermaphrodite, yet the existence of distinct sexes has been detected in so many genera (for the most part by Mr. Gosse†), that it may fairly be presumed to be the general fact. The male is inferior in size to the female; and sometimes differs so much in organization, that it would not be recognized as belonging to the same species, if the copulative act had not been witnessed. In all the cases yet known, as in the *Asplanchna* of which the separate male was the first discovered, there is an absolute and universal atrophy of the digestive system; neither mastax, jaws, œsophagus, stomach, nor intestines being discoverable in any male; no other organs, in fact, being fully developed, than those of generation. The male would appear, therefore, quite unfit to obtain aliment for itself; and its existence is probably a very brief one, being continued only so long as the store of nutriment supplied by the egg remains unexhausted. In the remarkable six-limbed Rotifer discovered by Dr. Hudson,‡ and named by him *Pedalion mira*,

* See Prof. Huxley's account of these organs, in his description of *Lacinularia socialis*, "Transact. of Microsc. Soc.," N.S., Vol. i. (1853), p 1.

† "Philosophical Transactions," 1857, p. 313. See also Dr. Hudson in "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. xiii. (1875), p. 45.

‡ "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. viii. (1872), p. 209; and "Quart. Journ. Micr. Sci.," Vol. xii. (1872), p. 333.

the virgin female was found to lay female eggs during the greater part of the year, while male eggs, which are not found in the same individuals, "are half the size of the female ones, and are carried in clusters of often a score at a time." The males are very small in comparison with the females, and are very short-lived, sometimes dying within an hour. In *Rotifer*, however, as in a large proportion of the group, no males have yet been discovered, probably because they are produced only at certain times. The female organ consists of a single ovarian sac, which frequently occupies a large part of the cavity of the body, and opens at its lower end by a narrow orifice into the cloaca.—Although the number of eggs in these animals is so small, yet the rapidity with which the whole process of their development and maturation is accomplished, renders the multiplication of the race very rapid. The egg of the *Hydatina* is extruded from the cloaca within a few hours after the first rudiment of it is visible; and within twelve hours more the shell bursts, and the young animal comes forth. Three or four eggs being deposited at once, it was calculated by Prof. Ehrenberg that nearly *seventeen millions* may be produced within twenty-four days from a single individual. In *Rotifer* and several other genera, the development of the embryo takes-place whilst the egg is yet retained within the body of the parent (Fig. 310, *k*), and the young are extruded alive; whilst in some other instances the eggs, after their extrusion, remain attached to the posterior extremity of the body (Fig. 309), until the young are set free. The transparence of the egg-membrane, and also of the tissues, of the parent Rotifer, allows the process of development to be watched, even when the egg is retained within the body; and it is curious to observe, at a very early period, not merely the red eye-spot of the embryo, but also a distinct ciliary movement. In general it would seem that whether the rupture of the egg-membrane takes-place before or after the egg has left the body, the germinal mass within it is developed at once into the form of the young animal, which usually resembles that of its parent; no preliminary metamorphosis being gone through, nor any parts developed which are not to be permanent. In *Floscularia ornata*, however, the young leave the eggs in the shape of little maggots, from one end of which a tuft of cilia soon appears. The form changes in a few hours, the ciliated end becoming lobed, and the body rounded. The foot is developed later.*—In the curious *Notommata Werneckii*, which is found parasitic in the reproductive capsules of *Vaucheria* (§ 249), the young animal has the general organization of the free-swimming Rotifers, and leads a similarly active life; but when its eggs are becoming mature, it finds its way into one of these capsules and there undergoes a remarkable deformation, its characteristic organs disappearing, and its body becoming a large egg-sac, which seems to be nourished by absorption.†

* See Mr. Slack's "Marvels of Pond Life," 2nd Edit., p. 54.

† See Balbiani in "Journ. Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. ii. (1879), p. 530.

451. Even in those species which usually hatch their eggs within their bodies, a different set of Ova is occasionally developed, which are furnished with a thick glutinous investment; these, which are extruded entire, and are laid one upon another, so as at last to form masses of considerable size in proportion to the bulk of the animals, seem not to be destined to come so early to maturity, but very probably remain dormant during the whole winter season, so as to produce a new brood in the spring. These 'winter-eggs' are inferred by Prof. Huxley, from the history of their development, to be really *gemmæ* produced by a non-sexual operation; while the bodies ordinarily known as ova, he considers to be true generative products. Prof. Cohn, however, states that he has ascertained, by direct experiment upon those species in which the sexes are distinct, that the bodies commonly termed 'ova' (Figs. 309, 310) are really *internal gemmæ*, since they are reproduced, through many successions, without any sexual process, just like the external gemmæ of *Hydra* (§ 515), or the internal gemmæ of *Entomostraca* (§ 609) and *Aphides* (§ 643); whilst the 'winter-eggs' are only produced as the result of a true generative act.* By M. Balbiani, however, it is affirmed (*loc. cit.*) that the 'winter-eggs,' like the ordinary eggs, are produced non-sexually; so that it would seem as if the intervention of the true generative act is only occasionally required for the continued propagation of these interesting creatures.

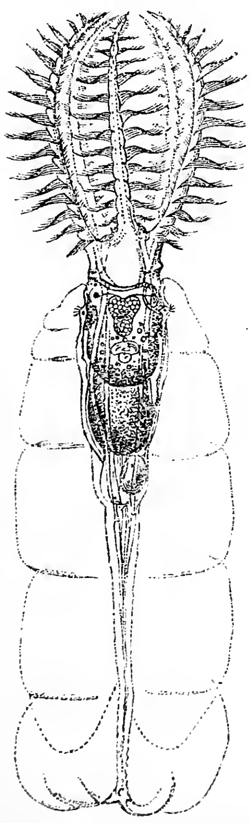
452. Certain Rotifera, among them the common Wheel-Animalcule, are remarkable for their tenacity of life, even when reduced to such a state of dryness that they will break in pieces when touched with the point of a needle (as the Author has himself ascertained); for they can be kept in this condition for any length of time, and will yet revive very speedily upon being moistened. Taking advantage of this fact, some Microscopists are in the habit of keeping by them stocks of desiccated Rotifers, which can be distributed in the condition of dry dusty powder. The desiccating process has been carried yet farther with the tribe of *Tardigrada* (§ 453, IV.); individuals of which have been kept in a vacuum for thirty days, with sulphuric acid and chloride of calcium, and yet have not lost their capability of revivification. These facts, taken in connection with the extraordinary rate of increase mentioned in the preceding paragraph, remove all difficulty in accounting for the extent of the diffusion of these animals, and for their occurrence in incalculable numbers in situations where, a few days previously, none were known to exist. For their entire bodies may be wafted in a dry state by the atmosphere from place to place; and their return to a state of active life, after a desiccation of unlimited duration, may take place whenever they meet with the requisite conditions—moisture, warmth, and food. It is probable that the

* See his Memoir, 'Ueber die Fortpflanzung der Räderthiere,' in "Siebold and Kölliker's Zeitschrift," 1855.

Ova are capable of sustaining treatment even more severe than the fully developed Animals can bear; and that the race is frequently continued by them when the latter have perished.—It is not requisite to suppose, however, that in any of the foregoing cases the desiccation is *complete;* for it appears that Wheel-Animalcules, in drying, exude a glutinous matter that forms a sort of impervious casing, which may keep-in the remaining fluid.* When acted on by heat as well as by drought, Rotifers and Tardigrades lose their vitality; yet the former have survived a gradual heating up to 200° Fahr.

453. The principles on which the various forms that belong to this Class should be systematically arranged, have not yet been satisfactorily determined. By Prof. Ehrenberg, the disposition of the ciliated lobes or wheel-organs, and the enclosure or non-enclosure of the body in a *lorica* or case, were taken as the basis of his classification; but as his ideas on both these points are inconsistent with the actual facts of organization, the arrangement founded upon them cannot be received. Another division of the class has been propounded by M. Dujardin, which is based on the several modes of life of the most characteristic forms. And in a third, more recently put forth by Prof. Leydig, the general configuration of the body, with the presence, absence, and conformation of the foot (or tail) are made to furnish the characters of the subordinate groups. Either of the two latter is certainly more *natural* than the first, as bringing together for the most part the forms which most agree in general organization, and separating those which differ; and we shall adopt that of M. Dujardin as most suitable to our present purpose.

FIG. 312.



Stephanoceros Eichornii.

I. The first group includes those that habitually live attached by the foot, which is prolonged into a pedicle; and it includes two families, the *Flosculariens* and the *Melicertians*, the members of which are commonly found attached to the stems and leaves of aquatic plants, by a long pedicle or foot-stalk, bearing a somewhat bell-shaped body. In one of the most beautiful species, the *Stephanoceros Eichornii* (Fig. 312), this body has five long tentacles, beset with tufts of cilia, whilst the body is enclosed in a gelatinous

* See Davis in "Monthly Microsc. Journ." Vol. ix. (1863), p. 207; also Slack, at p. 241 of same volume.

cylindrical cell. At first sight, the tentacles of this Rotifer may seem to resemble those of the *Polyzoa;* but, if they are carefully illuminated, the filaments which beset them will be found to be much larger, to be arranged differently, and to exhibit only an occasional motion, not at all resembling the regular rhythmical vibrations of the cilia of Polyzoa.* In fact, they seem rather to deserve the designation of *setæ* (bristles); for "their action is spasmodic, it creates no vortex, and it is only by actual contact with these *setæ* that floating particles are whipped within the area enclosed by the lobes, where by the same whipping action they are twitched from point to point irregularly downwards, until they come within the range of a vortex that is due, not to any action of the *setæ*, but to a range of minute cilia in the funnel."† A careful comparison of *Stephanoceros* with other forms, shows that its tentacles are only extensions of the ciliated lobes which are common to all the members of these families; and the cylindrical 'cell' which envelopes the body is formed by a gelatinous secretion from its surface, thrown-off in rings, the indications of which often remain as a series of constrictions. In respect of the length of the filaments projecting from its lobes, and the breadth of these expansions, *Floscularia* is still more aberrant.—The body of *Melicerta* is protected by a most curious cylindrical tube, composed of little rounded pellets agglutinated together; this is obviously an artificial construction, and the process by which it is built may be watched by any Microscopist who is fortunate enough to capture it.‡ Beneath a projection on its head, there is observed a small disk-like organ, in which, when the 'wheels' are at work, a movement is seen very much resembling that of a revolving ventilator. Towards this disk the greater proportion of the solid particles that may be drawn from the surrounding liquid into the vortex of the wheel-organs, are driven by their ciliary movement, a small part only being taken into the alimentary canal; and there they accumulate until the aggregation (probably cemented by a glutinous secretion furnished by the organ itself) acquires the size and form of one of the globular pellets of the case; the time ordinarily required being about three minutes. The head of the animal then bends itself down, the pellet-disk is applied to the edge of the tube, the newly-formed pellet is attached there, and, the head being lifted into its former position, the formation of a new pellet at once

* In ordinary drawings, the filaments of the *Stephanoceros* are represented as short bristles; this is an error arising from bad instruments or defective illumination. It requires considerable skill to show these filaments, or those of the *Floscularia*, in their true length; but the beauty of the objects is greatly increased when this is accomplished.

† See Mr. C. Cubitt's 'Observations on the Economy of Stephanoceros,' in "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. iii., (1870), p. 242.

‡ See Gosse 'On the architectural instincts of *Melicerta ringens*,' in "Trans. of Microsc. Soc.," Vol. iii. (1852), p. 58; also Bedwell in "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. xvi. (1877), p. 214; and Hudson in "Journ. Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. ii. (1879), p. 1.

commences.—Another curious example of this family is presented by the *Conochilus volvox;* which is found in spherical clusters composed of a considerable number of individuals adherent by their tails, their bodies being arranged in a radiating manner, and the intervals between them being filled up by a gelatinous substance. There is not, however, any such organic connection between them as exists in the *Ophrydium* (§ 440); and the uniting substance seems to be nothing else than the clear slimy secretion which probably all *Rotifera* exude from the surface of their bodies. It is into this that the eggs are extruded; and as they are hatched in it, the young produced from them remain to form part of the cluster; but, as its numbers increase, the cluster breaks up into two or more, which in their turn enlarge and then subdivide, so that a pond to whose bottom the 'winter eggs' of the year before have subsided, becomes alive with them in the early summer of the following year.*—The *Lacinularia socialis,* in like manner, forms transparent gelatinous-looking globular clusters, about 1-5th of an inch in diameter, which attach themselves to the leaves of aquatic plants.

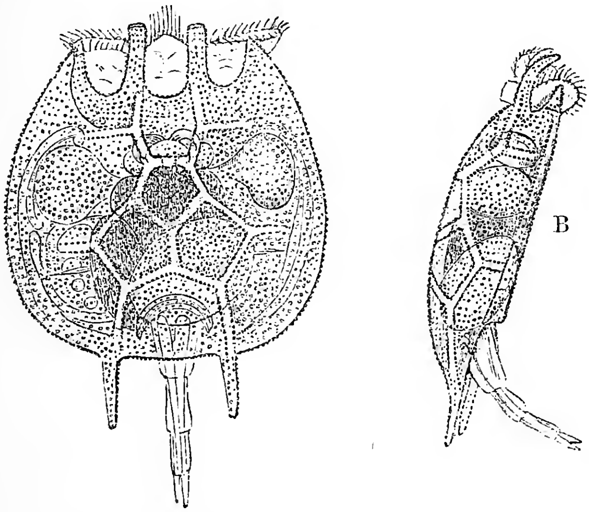
II. The next of M. Dujardin's primary groups (ranged by him however, as the third) consists of the ordinary *Rotifer* and its allies, which pass their lives in a state of alternation between the conditions of those attached by a pedicle, of those which habitually swim freely through the water, and of those which creep or crawl over hard surfaces.—As these have already been fully described, it is not requisite to dwell longer upon them.

III. The next group consists of those Rotifera which seldom or never attach themselves by the foot, but habitually swim freely through the water; and putting aside the peculiar aberrant form *Albertia,* which has only been found as a parasite in the intestines of Worms, it may be divided into two families, the *Brachionians* and the *Furcularians.* The former are for the most part distinguished by the short, broad, and flattened form of the body (Figs. 309, 313); which is, moreover, enclosed in a sort of cuirass, formed by the consolidation of the external integument. This cuirass is often very beautifully marked on its surface, and may be prolonged into extensions of various forms, which are sometimes of very considerable length. The latter (corresponding almost exactly with the *Hydatineæ* of Prof. Ehrenberg) derive their name from the bifurcation of the foot into a sort of two-bladed forceps; their bodies are ovoidal or cylindrical, and are enclosed in a flexible integument, which is often seen to wrinkle itself into longitudinal and transverse folds at equidistant lines. To this family belongs the *Hydatina senta,* one of the largest of the Rotifera, which was employed by Prof. Ehrenberg as the chief subject of his examination of the internal structure of this group; as does also the *Asplanchna,* the curious condition of whose digestive apparatus has been already noticed (§ 448).

* See Davis in "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. xvi. (1876), p. 1.

IV. The fourth of M. Dujardin's primary orders consists of the very curious tribe, first carefully investigated by M. Doyère, to

FIG. 313.



Noteus quadricornis; A, dorsal view; B, side view.

which the name of *Tardigrada* has been given, on account of the slowness of their creeping movement. It seems now clear, however, that they have no near relationship to the true Rotifera; corresponding to them only in their minute size and simple structure. They are found in the same localities with the Rotifers, and, like them, can be revivified after desiccation (§ 452): but they have a vermiform body, divided transversely into five segments, of which one constitutes the head, whilst each of the others bears a pair of little fleshy protuberances, furnished with four curved hooks, and much resembling the pro-legs of a caterpillar. The head is entirely unpossessed of ciliated lobes; and the mouth, situated at the end of a sort of beak furnished with two longitudinal stylets, leads, through a muscular pharynx, into a wide alimentary canal, which gradually narrows to the anus. There are no special organs of circulation or respiration, but the nervous system is much more developed than in the Rotifera; a cerebral mass, bearing two eyes, giving origin to two longitudinal cords, on which are seated pairs of ganglia in connection with the members, as in Articulated animals generally. Their nearest affinities seem with the lowest forms of the *Arachnida*.

454. Notwithstanding that all the best-informed Zoologists are now agreed in ranking the true *Rotifera* among *Articulated* animals, yet there is still a considerable discordance of opinion as to the precise part of that series in which they should stand. Prof.

Leydig, who has devoted much attention to the study of the class, regards them as most allied to the *Crustacea*, and terms them 'Cilio-crustaceans; and the curious Entomostracan-looking *Pedalion* of Dr. Hudson might seem a link with that group.* Prof. Huxley, on the other hand, has argued that they are more connected with the *Annelida*, through the resemblance which they bear to the early larval forms of that class (§ 595); while in their single bilobed nerve-ganglion and water-vascular system, they seem allied to *Planaria* (§ 593).†

* See Prof. E. Ray Lankester's 'Remarks on *Pedalion*,' in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," Vol. xii. (1878), p. 338.

† The following Treatises and Memoirs (in addition to those already referred to) contain valuable information in regard to the life-history of Animalcules and their principal forms:—Ehrenberg, "Die Infusionsthierchen," Berlin, 1838; Dujardin, "Histoire Naturelle des Zoophytes Infusoires," Paris, 1841; Pritchard, "History of Infusoria," 4th Ed., London, 1861 (a comprehensive repertory of information); Stein, "Der Organismus des Infusionsthiere," Leipzig, Erste Abtheilung, 1859, Zweite Abtheilung, 1867, Dritte Abtheilung, Hälfte I, 1878; Saville Kent's "Manual of the Infusoria," 1880–1; and Prof. Bütschli's *Protozoa* (1880, 1881) in the new edition of "Bronn's Thier-reichs."—For the RHIZOPODA and INFUSORIA specially, see Claparéde and Lachmann, "Études sur les Infusoires et les Rhizopodes," Geneva, 1858–1861; Cohn, in "Siebold and Kölliker's Zeitschrift," 1851-4, and 1857; Lieberkühn, in "Müller's Archiv," 1856, and "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," 2nd Ser., Vol. xviii., 1856; Engellmann, "Zur Naturgeschichte der Infusions Thiere" (1862); and Prof. Butschli's "Studien über die Conjugation der Infusorien," &c., 1876.—For the ROTIFERA specially, see Leydig, in "Siebold and Kölliker's Zeitschrift," Bd. vi., 1854; Gosse on *Melicerta ringens*, in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. i. (1853), p. 1; Huxley on *Lacinularia socialis* in "Transact. of Microsc. Soc.," Ser. 2, Vol. i. (1853), p. 1; and Cohn, in "Siebold and Kölliker's Zeitschrift," Bde. vii., ix. (1856, 1858). Mr. Slack's "Marvels of Pond Life" (2nd Edit., London, 1871) contains many interesting observations on the habits of Infusoria and Rotifera.

CHAPTER XII.

FORAMINIFERA AND RADIOLARIA.

455. Returning now to the lowest or *Rhizopod* type of Animal life (Chap. x), we have to direct our attention to two very remarkable series of forms, almost exclusively Marine, under which that type manifests itself; all of them distinguished by *skeletons* so consolidated by Mineral deposit, as to retain their form and intimate structure long after the Animals to which they belonged have ceased to live, even for those undefined periods in which they have been imbedded as Fossils in strata of various geological ages. In the first of these groups, the *Foraminifera*, the skeleton usually consists of a *calcareous* many-chambered Shell, which closely invests the sarcode-body, and which, in a large proportion of the group, is perforated with numerous minute apertures; this shell, however, is sometimes replaced by a 'test,' formed of minute grains of sand cemented together; and there are a few cases (§ 397) in which the animal has no other protection than a membranous envelope.—In the second group, the *Radiolaria*, the skeleton is always *siliceous;* and may be either composed of disconnected spicules, or may consist of a symmetrical open framework, or may have the form of a shell perforated by numerous apertures, which more or less completely encloses the body.—The *Foraminifera* probably take, and always have taken, the largest share of any Animal group in the maintenance of the solid calcareous portion of the Earth's crust; by separating from its solution in Ocean-water the Carbonate of Lime continually brought down by rivers from the land. The *Radiolaria* do the same, though in far less measure, for the Silex. And both extract from Sea-water the Organic matter universally diffused through it, converting it into a form that serves for the nutrition of higher Marine animals.

Section I.—Foraminifera.

456. The animals of this group belong to that *Reticularian* form of the Rhizopod type (§ 397), in which,—with a differentiation between the containing and the contained sarcodic substance which is involved in the formation of a definite investment,—a distinct *nucleus* (sometimes single, in other cases multiple) is probably always present.*

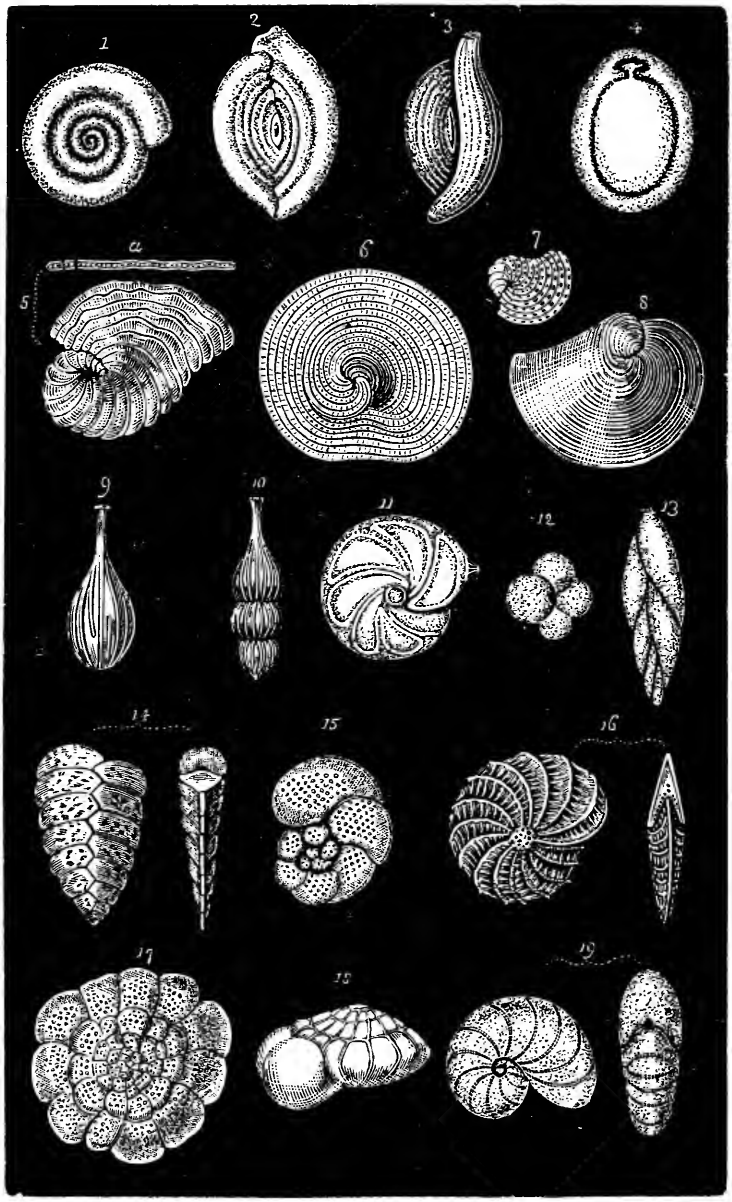
* The *absence* of a nucleus was long supposed to be a characteristic of the animal of the *Foraminifera*; and its presence in *Gromia* (first detected by Dr.

The Shells of Foraminifera are, for the most part, *polythalamous* or many-chambered (Plate xv.); often so strongly resembling those of *Nautilus, Spirula*, and other Cephalopod Mollusks, that it is not surprising that the older Naturalists, to whom the structure of these animals was entirely unknown, ranked them under that Class. But independently of the entire difference in the character of the animal bodies by which the two kinds of shells are formed, there is a most important distinction between them in regard to the relation of the animal to the shell. For whilst, in the chambered shells of the *Nautilus* and other Cephalopods, the animal is a single individual tenanting only the last formed chamber, and withdrawing itself from each chamber in succession, as it adds to this another and larger one, the animal of a nautiloid Foraminifer has a *composite* body, consisting of a number (sometimes very large) of 'segments,' each repeating the rest, which continues to increase by *gemmation* or budding from the last-formed segment. And thus each of the chambers, however numerous they may be, is not only formed, but continues to be occupied, by its own segment; which is connected with the segments of earlier and later formation by a continuous 'stolon' (or creeping stem), that passes through apertures in the *septa* or partitions dividing the chambers.—From what we know of the semi-fluid condition of the sarcode-body in the Reticularian type (§ 397), there can be little doubt that there is an incessant circulatory change in the actual substance of each segment; so that the material taken-in as food by the segments nearest the surface or margin, is speedily diffused through the entire mass. The relation between these 'polythalamous' forms, therefore, and the *monothalamous* or single-chambered,—of which we have already had an example in *Gromia* (§ 397), and of which others will be presently described,—is simply that whereas any buds produced by the latter detach themselves to form separate individuals, those put forth by the former remain in continuity with the parent stock and with each other, so as to form a 'composite' Animal and a 'polythalamous' Shell.

457. According to the plan on which the gemmation takes place, will be the configuration of the shelly structure produced by the segmented body. Thus, if the bud should be put forth from the aperture of a *Lagena* (Plate xv., fig. 9) in the direction of the axis of its body, and a second shell should be formed around this bud in continuity with the first, and this process should be successionally repeated, a straight rod-like shell would be produced (fig. 10), whose multiple chambers communicate with each other by the openings that originally constituted their mouths; the mouth of the last-formed chamber being the only aperture through which

Wallich) was regarded as differentiating that type from the Foraminifera proper. But the researches of Hertwig and Lesser having established its presence in several true Foraminifera, and the Author's own observations on other forms having confirmed theirs, its general presence may be fairly assumed, until contradicted by more extended observation.

PLATE XV.



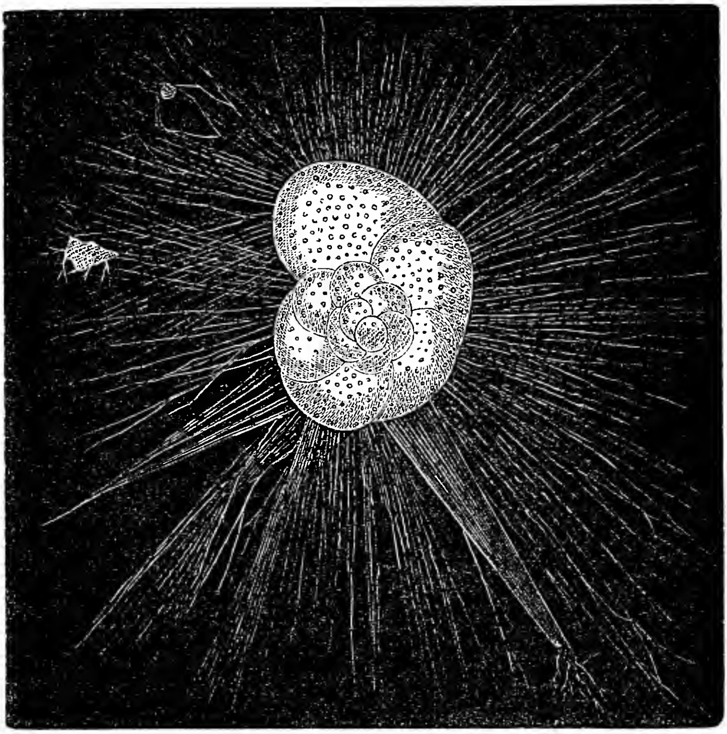
VARIOUS FORMS OF FORAMINIFERA.

[To face p. 511.

the sarcode-body, thus composed of a number of segments connected by a peduncle or 'stolon' of the same material, could now project itself or draw-in its food. The successive segments may be all of the same size, or nearly so, in which case the entire rod will approach the cylindrical form, or will resemble a line of beads; but it often happens that each segment is somewhat larger than the preceding (fig. 11), so that the composite shell has a conical form, the apex of the cone being the original segment, and its base the one last formed.—The method of growth now described is common to a large number of Foraminifera, chiefly belonging to the genus *Nodosarina;* but even in that genus we have every gradation between the *rectilineal* (fig. 10), and the *spiral* mode of growth (fig. 11); whilst in the genus *Peneroplis* (fig. 5) it is not at all uncommon for shells which commence in a spiral to exchange this in a more advanced stage for the rectilineal. When the successive segments are added in a spiral direction, the character of the spire will depend in great degree upon the enlargement or non-enlargement of the successively-formed chambers; for sometimes it opens out very rapidly, every whorl being considerably broader than that which it surrounds, in consequence of the great excess of the size of each segment over that of its predecessor, as in *Peneroplis;* but more commonly there is so little difference between the successive segments, after the spire has made two or three turns, that the breadth of each whorl scarcely exceeds that of its predecessor, as is well seen in the section of the *Rotalia* represented in Fig. 330. An intermediate condition is presented by such a *Rotalia* as is shown in Fig. 314, which may be taken as a characteristic type of a very large and important group of Foraminifera, whose general features will be presently described. Again, a spiral may be either 'nautiloid' or 'turbinoid:' the former designation being applied to that form in which the successive convolutions all lie in one plane (as they do in the Nautilus), so that the shell is 'equilateral' or similar on its two sides; whilst the latter is used to mark that form in which the spire passes obliquely round an axis, so that the shell becomes 'inequilateral,' having a more or less conical form, like that of a Snail or a Periwinkle, the first-formed chamber being at the apex. Of the former we have characteristic examples in *Polystomella* (Plate xv., fig. 16) and *Nonionina* (fig. 19); whilst of the latter we find a typical representation in *Rotalia Beccarii* (fig. 18). Further, we find among the shells whose increase takes place upon the spiral plan, a very marked difference as to the degree in which the earlier convolutions are invested and concealed by the latter. In the great *Rotaline* group, whose characteristic form is a turbinoid spiral, all the convolutions are usually visible, at least on one side (figs. 15, 17, 18); but among the *Nautiloid* tribes it more frequently happens that the last-formed whorl encloses the preceding to such an extent that they are scarcely, or not at all, visible externally, as is the case in *Cristellaria* (fig. 11), *Polystomella* (fig. 16), and *Nonionina* (fig. 19).—The turbinoid spire may coil so rapidly round an

elongated axis, that the number of chambers in each turn is very small; thus in *Globigerina* (fig. 12) there are usually only four;

Fig. 314.



Rotalia ornata, with its pseudopodia extended.

and in *Valvulina* the regular number is only three. Thus we are led to the *biserial* arrangement of the chambers which is characteristic of the *Textularian* group (fig. 14); in which we find the chambers arranged in two rows, each chamber communicating with that above and that below it on the opposite side, without any direct communication with the chamber of its own side, as will be understood by reference to Fig. 328, A, which shows a 'cast' of the sarcode body of the animal. On the other hand, we find in the nautiloid spire a tendency to pass (by a curious transitional form to be presently described, § 464) into the *cyclical* mode of growth; in which the original segment, instead of budding-forth on one side only, developes *gemmæ* all round, so that a ring of small chambers (or chamberlets) is formed around the primordial chamber, and this in its turn surrounds itself after the like fashion with another ring; and by successive repetitions of the same process the shell comes to have the form of a disk made up of a great number of concentric rings, as we see in *Orbitolites* (Fig. 316) and in *Cycloclypeus* (Plate XVI., fig. 1).

458. These and other differences in the *plan of growth* were made by M. D'Orbigny the foundation of his Classification of this group, which, though at one time generally accepted, has now been abandoned by most of those who have occupied themselves in the study of the Foraminifera. For it has come to be generally admitted that 'plan of growth' is a character of very subordinate importance among the Foraminifera, so that any classification which is primarily based upon it must necessarily be altogether unnatural; those characters being of primary importance which have an immediate and direct relation to the Physiological condition of the Animal, and are thus indicative of the real affinities of the several groups which they serve to distinguish. The most important of these characters will now be noticed.*

459. Two very distinct types of Shell-structure prevail among ordinary Foraminifera—namely, the *porcellanous*, and the *hyaline* or *vitreous*. The shell of the former, when viewed by reflected light, presents an opaque-white aspect which bears a strong resemblance to porcelain; but when thin natural or artificial laminæ of it are viewed by transmitted light, the opacity gives place to a rich brown or amber colour, which in a few instances is tinged with crimson. No structure of any description can be detected in this kind of shell-substance, which is apparently homogeneous throughout. Although the shells of this 'porcellanous' type often present the appearance of being perforated with foramina, yet this appearance is illusory, being due to a mere 'pitting' of the external surface, which, though often very deep, never extends through the whole thickness of the shell. Some kind of inequality of that surface, indeed, is extremely common in the shells of the 'porcellanous' Foraminifera; one of the most frequent forms of it being a regular alternation of ridges and furrows, such as is occasionally seen in *Miliola* (Plate xv., fig. 3), but which is an almost constant characteristic of *Peneroplis* (fig. 5). But no difference of texture accompanies either this or any other kind of inequality of surface; the raised and depressed portions being alike homogeneous.—In the shells of the *vitreous* or *hyaline* type, on the other hand, the proper shell-substance has an almost glassy transparence, which is shown by it alike in thin natural lamellæ, and in artificially-prepared specimens of such as are thicker and older. It is usually colourless, even when (as in the case with many *Rotalinæ*) the substance of the animal is deeply coloured; but in certain aberrant Rotalines the shell is commonly, like the animal body, of a rich crimson hue. All the shells of this type are beset more or less closely with *tubular perforations*, which pass directly, and (in general) without any subdivision, from one surface to the other. These tubuli are in some instances sufficiently coarse for their orifices to be

* This subject will be found amply discussed in the Author's "Introduction to the Study of the Foraminifera," published by the Ray Society; to which work he would refer such of his readers as may desire more detailed information in regard to it.

distinguished with a low magnifying power, as 'punctations' on the surface of the shell, as is shown in Fig. 314; whilst in other cases they are so minute as only to be discernible in thin sections seen by transmitted light under a higher magnifying power, as is shown in Figs. 335, 336. When they are very numerous and closely set, the shell derives from their presence that kind of opacity which is characteristic of all minutely-tubular textures, whose tubuli are occupied either by air or by any substance having a refractive power different from that of the intertubular substance, however perfect may be the transparence of the latter. The straightness, parallelism, and isolation of these tubuli are well seen in vertical sections of the thick shells of the largest examples of the group, such as *Nummulina* (Fig. 335). It often happens, however, that certain parts of the shell are left unchannelled by these tubuli; and such are readily distinguished, even under a low magnifying power, by the readiness with which they allow transmitted light to pass through them, and by the peculiar vitreous lustre they exhibit when light is thrown obliquely on their surface. In shells formed upon this type, we frequently find that the surface presents either bands or spots which are so distinguished; the non-tubular *bands* usually marking the position of the septa, and being sometimes raised into ridges, though in other instances they are either level or somewhat depressed; whilst the non-tubular *spots* may occur on any part of the surface, and are most commonly raised into tubercles, which sometimes attain a size and number that give a very distinctive aspect to the shells that bear them.

460. Between the comparatively *coarse* perforations which are common in the *Rotaline* type, and the *minute* tubuli which are characteristic of the *Nummuline*, there is such a continuous gradation as indicates that their mode of formation, and probably their uses, are essentially the same. In the former, it has been demonstrated by actual observation that they allow the passage of pseudopodial extensions of the sarcode-body through every part of the external wall of the chambers occupied by it (Fig. 314); and there is nothing to oppose the idea that they answer the same purpose in the latter, since, minute as they are, their diameter is not too small to enable them to be traversed by the finest of the threads into which the branching pseudopodia of Foraminifera are known to subdivide themselves. Moreover, the close approximation of the tubuli in the most finely-perforated Nummulines, makes their collective area fully equal to that of the larger but more scattered pores of the most coarsely-perforated Rotalines. Hence it is obvious that the *tubulation* or *non-tubulation* of Foraminiferal shells is the key to a very important Physiological difference between the Animal inhabitants of the two kinds respectively; for whilst every segment of the sarcode-body in the former case gives off pseudopodia, which pass at once into the surrounding medium, and contribute by their action to the nutrition of the segment from which they proceed, these pseudopodia are limited

in the latter case to the *final* segment, issuing-forth only through the aperture of the last chamber, so that all the nutrient material which they draw-in must be first received into the last segment, and be transmitted thence from one segment to another until it reaches the earliest. With this difference in the physiological condition of the Animal of these two types, is usually associated a further very important difference in the conformation of the Shell—viz., that whilst the aperture of communication between the chambers, and between the last chamber and the exterior, is usually very small in the 'vitreous' shells, serving merely to give passage to a slender *stolon* or thread of sarcode from which the succeeding segment may be budded-off, it is much wider in the 'porcellanous' shells, so as to give passage to a 'stolon' that may not only bud-off new segments, but may serve as the medium for transmitting nutrient material from the outer to the inner chambers.

461. Between the highest types of the *Porcellanous* and the *Vitreous* series respectively, which frequently bear a close resemblance to each other in *form*, there are certain other well-marked differences in *structure*, which clearly indicate their essential dissimilarity. Thus, for example, if we compare *Orbitolites* (Fig. 316) with *Cycloclypeus* (Plate XVI., fig. 1), we recognize the same plan of growth in each, the chamberlets being arranged in concentric rings around the primordial chamber; and to a superficial observer there would appear little difference between them. But a minuter examination shows that not only is the texture of the shell 'porcellanous' and non-tubular in *Orbitolites*, whilst it is 'vitreous' and minutely tubular in *Cycloclypeus*; but that the partitions between the chamberlets are *single* in the former, whilst they are *double* in the latter, each segment of the sarcode-body having its own proper shelly investment. Moreover, between these double partitions an additional deposit of calcareous substance is very commonly found, constituting what may be termed the *intermediate skeleton*; and this is traversed by a peculiar system of inosculating *canals*, which pass around the chamberlets in interspaces left between the two laminæ of their partitions, and which seem to convey through its substance extensions of the sarcode-body whose segments occupy the chamberlets. We occasionally find this 'intermediate skeleton' extending itself into peculiar *outgrowths*, which have no direct relation to the chambered shell; of this we have a very curious example in *Calcarina* (Plate XVI., fig. 3); and it is in these that we find the 'canal-system' attaining its greatest development. Its most regular distribution, however, is seen in *Polystomella* and in *Operculina*; and an account of it will be given in the description of those types.

462. Porcellanea.—Commencing, now, with the *Porcellanous* series, we shall briefly notice some of its most important forms, which are so related to each other as to constitute but the one family

Miliolida. Its simplest type is presented by the *Cornuspira* (Plate xv., fig. 1) of our own coasts, found attached to Sea-weeds and Zoöphytes; this is a minute spiral shell, of which the interior forms a continuous tube not divided into chambers; the latter portion of the spire is often very much flattened-out, as in *Peneroplis* (fig 5), so that the form of the mouth is changed from a circle to a long narrow slit.—Among the commonest of the Foraminifera, and abounding near the shores of almost every sea, are some forms of the *Milioline* type, so named from the resemblance of some of their minute fossilized forms (of which enormous beds of limestone in the neighbourhood of Paris are almost entirely composed) to millet-seeds. The peculiar mode of growth by which these are characterized, will be best understood by examining in the first instance the form which has been designated as *Spiroloculina* (Plate xv., fig. 2). This shell is a spiral, elongated in the direction of one of its diameters, and having in each turn a contraction at either end of that diameter, which partially divides each convolution into two chambers; the separation between the consecutive chambers is made more complete by a peculiar projection from the inner side of the cavity, known as the 'tongue' or 'valve,' which may be considered as an imperfect septum; of this a characteristic example is shown in the upper part of fig. 4. Now it is a very general habit in the Milioline type, for the chambers of the later convolutions to extend themselves over those of the earlier, so as to conceal them more or less completely; and this they very commonly do somewhat unequally, so that more of the earlier chambers are visible on one side than on the other. *Miliolæ* thus modified (fig. 3) have received the names of *Quinqueloculina* and *Triloculina* according to the number of chambers visible externally; but the extreme inconstancy which is found to mark such distinctions, when the comparison of specimens has been sufficiently extended, entirely destroys their value as differential characters. Sometimes the earlier convolutions are so completely concealed by the later, that only the two chambers of the last turn are visible externally; and in this type, which has been designated *Biloculina*, there is often such an increase in the breadth of the chambers as altogether changes the usual proportions of the shell, which has almost the shape of an egg when so placed that either the last or the penultimate chamber faces the observer (Plate xv., fig. 4). It is very common in Milioline shells for the external surface to present a 'pitting,' more or less deep, a ridge-and-furrow arrangement (fig. 3), or a honeycomb division; and these diversities have been used for the characterization of species. Not only, however, may every intermediate gradation be met-with between the most strongly marked forms, but it is not at all uncommon to find the surface smooth on some parts, whilst other parts of the surface in the same shell are deeply pitted or strongly ribbed or honeycombed; so that here again the inconstancy of these differences deprives them of all value as distinctive characters.

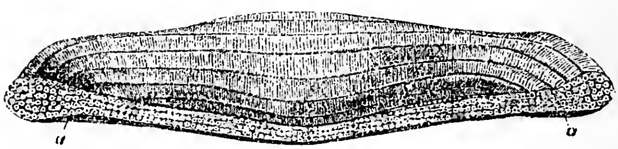
463. Reverting again to the primitive type presented in the simple spiral of *Cornuspira*, we find the most complete development of it in *Peneroplis* (Plate xv., fig. 5), a very beautiful form, which, although very rare on our own coasts, is one of the commonest of all Foraminifera in the shore-sands and shallow water dredgings of the warmer regions of every part of the globe. This is a nautiloid shell, of which the spire flattens itself out as it advances in growth; it is marked externally by a series of transverse bands, which indicate the position of the internal septa that divide the cavity into chambers; and these chambers communicate with each other by numerous minute pores traversing each of the septa, and giving passage to threads of sarcode that connect the segments of the body. At *a* is shown the 'septal plane' closing-in the last-formed chamber, with its single row of pores through which the pseudopodial filaments extend themselves into the surrounding medium. The surface of the shell, which has a peculiarly 'porcellanous' aspect, is marked by closely-set *striæ* that cross the spaces between the successive septal bands; these markings, however, do not indicate internal divisions, and are due to a surface-furrowing of the shelly walls of the chambers. This type passes into two very curious modifications; one having a spire which, instead of flattening itself out, remains turgid like that of a *Nautilus*, having only a single aperture, which sends out fissured extensions that subdivide like the branches of a tree, suggesting the name of *Dendritina*; the other having its spire continued in a rectilineal direction, so that the shell takes the form of a crosier, this being distinguished by the name of *Spirolina*. A careful examination of intermediate forms, however, has made it evident that these modifications, though ranked as of generic value by M. D'Orbigny, are merely *varietal;* a continuous gradation being found to exist from the elongated septal plane of Peneroplis, with its single row of isolated pores, to the arrow-shaped, oval, or even circular septal plane of Dendritina, with all its pores fused together (so to speak) into one dendritic aperture; and a like gradation being presented between the ordinary and the 'spiroline' forms, into which both *Peneroplis* and *Dendritina* tend to elongate themselves.

464. From the ordinary nautiloid multilocular spiral, we now pass to a more complex and highly-developed form, which is restricted to tropical regions, but is there very abundant—that, namely, which has received the designation *Orbiculina* (Plate xv., figs. 6, 7, 8). The relation of this to the preceding will be best understood by an examination of its earlier stage of growth, represented in fig. 7; for here we see that the shell resembles that of Peneroplis in its general form, but that its principal chambers are divided by 'secondary septa' passing at right angles to the primary, into 'chamberlets' occupied by sub-segments of the sarcode-body. Each of these secondary septa is perforated by an aperture, so that a continuous gallery is formed, through which (as in Fig. 316) there passes a stolon that unites together all the sub-segments of each

row. The chamberlets of successive rows alternate with one another in position; and the pores of the principal septa are so disposed, that each chamberlet of any row normally communicates with two chamberlets in each of the adjacent rows. The later turns of the spire very commonly grow completely over the earlier, and thus the central portion or 'umbilicus' comes to be protuberant, whilst the growing edge is thin. The spire also opens-out at its growing margin, which tends to encircle the first-formed portion, and thus gives rise to the peculiar shape represented in fig. 8, which is the common *aduncal* type of this organism. But sometimes, even at an early age, the growing margin extends so far round on each side, that its two extremities meet on the opposite side of the original spire, which is thus completely enclosed by it; and its subsequent growth is no longer *spiral* but *cyclical*, a succession of *concentric rings* being added, one around the other, as shown in fig. 6. This change is extremely curious, as demonstrating the intimate relationship between the *spiral* and the *cyclical* plans of growth, which at first sight appear essentially distinct. In all but the youngest examples of *Orbiculina*, the septal plane presents more than a single row of pores, the number of rows increasing in the thickest specimens to six or eight. This increase is associated with a change in the form of the sub-segments of sarcode from little blocks to columns, and with a greater complexity in the general arrangement, such as will be more fully described hereafter in *Orbitolites* (§ 466). The largest existing examples of this type are far surpassed in size by those which make up a considerable part of a Tertiary Limestone on the Malabar coast of India, whose diameter reaches 7 or 8 lines.

465. A very curious modification of the same general plan is shown in *Alveolina*, a genus of which the largest existing forms (Fig. 315) are commonly about one-third of an inch long, while far

FIG. 315.



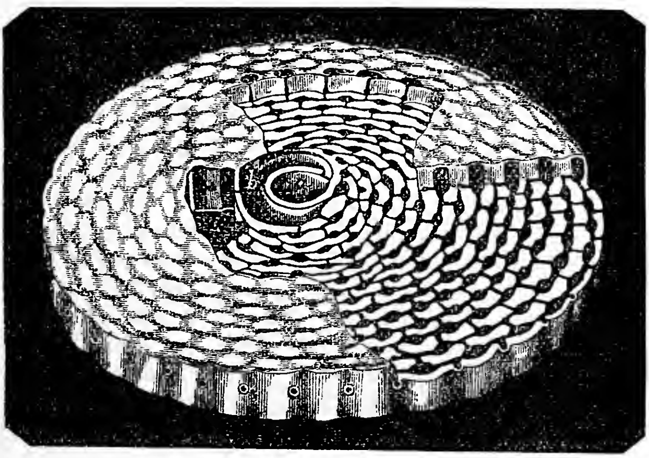
Alveolina Quoii:—*a*, *a*, septal plane, showing multiple pores.

larger specimens are found in the Tertiary Limestones of Scinde. Here the spire turns round a very elongated axis, so that the shell has almost the form of a cylinder drawn to a point at each extremity. Its surface shows a series of longitudinal lines which mark the principal septa; and the bands that intervene between these are marked transversely by lines which show the subdivision of the principal chambers into 'chamberlets.' The chamberlets of each row are connected with each other, as in the preceding type,

by a continuous gallery; and they communicate with those of the next row by a series of multiple pores in the principal septa, such as constitute the external orifices of the last-formed series, seen on its septal plane at *a*, *a*.

466. The highest developement of that cyclical plan of growth which we have seen to be sometimes taken-on by Orbiculina, is found in *Orbitolites;* a type which, long known as a very abundant fossil in the earlier Tertiaries of the Paris basin, has lately proved to be scarcely less abundant in certain parts of the existing Ocean. The largest recent specimens of it, sometimes attaining the size of a shilling, have hitherto been obtained only from the coast of New Holland, the Fijian reefs, and various other parts of the Polynesian Archipelago; but disks of comparatively minute size and simpler organization are to be found in almost all Foraminiferal sands and dredgings from the shores of the warmer regions of the globe, being especially abundant in those of some of the Philippine Islands, of the Red Sea, of the Mediterranean, and especially of the Ægean. When such disks are subjected to microscopic examination, they are found (if uninjured by abrasion) to present the structure represented in Fig. 316; where we see on the surface (by

FIG. 316.



Simple disk of *Orbitolites complanatus*, laid open to show its interior structure:—*a*, central chamber; *b*, circumambient chamber, surrounded by concentric zones of chamberlets connected with each other by annular and radiating passages.

incident light) a number of rounded elevations, arranged in concentric zones around a sort of nucleus (which has been laid-open in the figure to show its internal structure); whilst at the margin we observe a row of rounded projections, with a single aperture or pore in each of the intervening depressions. In very thin disks, the structure may often be brought into view by mounting them in Canada balsam and transmitting light through them; but in

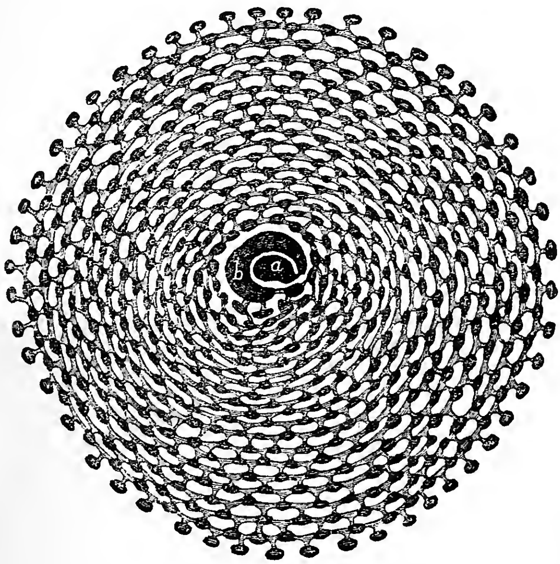
those which are too opaque to be thus seen-through, it is sufficient to rub-down one of the surfaces upon a stone, and then to mount the specimen in balsam. Each of the superficial elevations will then be found to be the roof or cover of an ovate cavity or 'chamberlet,' which communicates by means of a lateral passage with the chamberlet on either side of it in the same ring; so that each circular zone of chamberlets might be described as a continuous annular passage, dilated into cavities at intervals. On the other hand, each zone communicates with the zones that are internal and external to it, by means of passages in a radiating direction; these passages run, however, not from the chamberlets of the inner zone to those of the outer, but from the connecting passages of the former to the chamberlets of the latter; so that the chamberlets of each zone *alternate* in position with those of the zones internal and external to it. The radial passages from the outermost annulus make their way at once to the margin, where they terminate, forming the 'pores' which (as already mentioned) are to be seen on its exterior. The central nucleus, when rendered sufficiently transparent by the means just adverted-to, is found to consist of a 'primordial chamber' (*a*), usually somewhat pear-shaped, that communicates by a narrow passage with a much larger 'circumambient chamber' (*b*), which nearly surrounds it, and which sends off a variable number of radiating passages towards the chamberlets of the first zone, which forms a complete ring around the circumambient chamber.*

467. The idea of the nature of the living occupant of these cavities which might be suggested by the foregoing account of their arrangement, is fully borne-out by the results of the examination of the sarcode-body, which may be obtained by the maceration in dilute acid (so as to remove the shelly investment) of specimens of *Orbitolite* that have been gathered fresh and preserved in spirit. For this body is found to be composed (Fig. 317) of a multitude of segments of sarcode, presenting not the least trace of higher organization in any part, and connected together by 'stolons' of the like substance. The 'primordial' pear-shaped segment, *a*, is seen to have budded-off its 'circumambient' segment, *b*, by a narrow footstalk or stolon; and this circumambient segment, after passing almost entirely round the primordial has budded-off three stolons, which swell into new sub-segments from which the first ring is formed. Scarcely any two specimens are precisely alike as to the mode in

* Although the above may be considered the *typical* form of the Orbitolite, yet, in a very large proportion of specimens, the first few zones are not complete circles, the early growth having taken place from one side only; and there is a very beautiful variety in which this one-sidedness of increase imparts a distinctly *spiral* character to the early growth, which soon, however, gives place to the *cyclical*.—In the *Orbitolites tenuissimus* (Fig. 318) brought up from depths of 1500 fathoms or more, the 'nucleus' is formed by three or four turns of a spiral closely resembling that of a *Cornuspira* (§ 462), with an interruption at every half-turn as in *Spiroloculina*; the growth afterwards becoming purely concentric.

which the first ring originates from the 'circumambient segment;' for sometimes a score or more of radial passages extend themselves

FIG. 317.



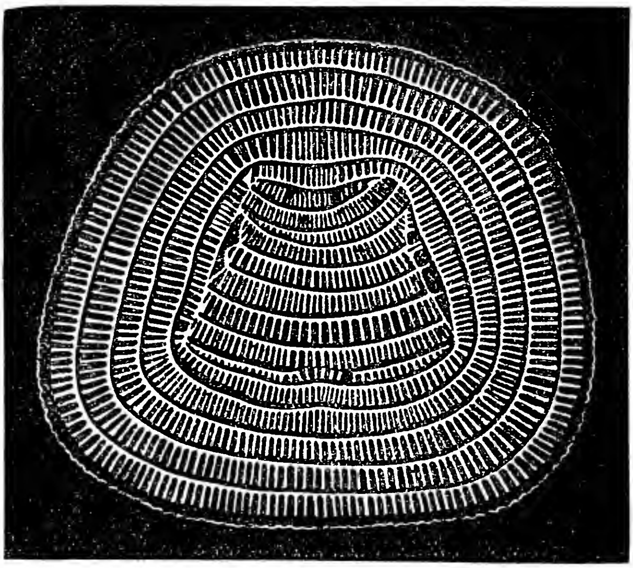
Composite Animal of Simple type of *Orbitolites complanatus*:—*a*, central mass of sarcode; *b*, circumambient segment, giving off peduncles, in which originate the concentric zones of sub-segments connected by annular bands.

from every part of the margin of the latter (and this, as corresponding with the plan of growth afterwards followed, is probably the *typical* arrangement); whilst in other cases (as in the example before us) the number of these primary offsets is extremely small. Each zone is seen to consist of an assemblage of ovate sub-segments, whose height (which could not be shown in the figure) corresponds with the thickness of the disk; these sub-segments, which are all exactly similar and equal to one another, are connected by annular stolons; and each zone is connected with that on its exterior by radial extensions of those stolons passing-off between the sub-segments.

468. The radial extensions of the outermost zone issue-forth as pseudopodia from the marginal pores, searching-for and drawing-in alimentary materials in the manner formerly described (§ 397); the whole of the soft body, which has no communication whatever with the exterior save through these marginal pores, being nourished by the transmission of the products of digestion from zone to zone, through similar bands of protoplasmic substance. In all cases in which the growth of the disk takes place with normal

regularity, it is probable that a complete circular zone is added at once. Thus we find this simple type of organization giving origin to fabrics of by no means microscopic dimensions, in which, however, there is no other differentiation of parts than that concerned in the formation of the shell; every segment and every stolon (with the exception of the two forming the 'nucleus') being, so far as can be ascertained, a precise repetition of every other, and the segments of the nucleus differing from the rest in nothing else than their form. The equality of the endowments of the segments is shown by the fact—of which accident has repeatedly furnished proof—that a small portion of a disk, entirely separated from the remainder, will not only continue to live, but will so increase as to form a new disk (Fig. 318); the want of the 'nucleus' not appearing

FIG. 318.



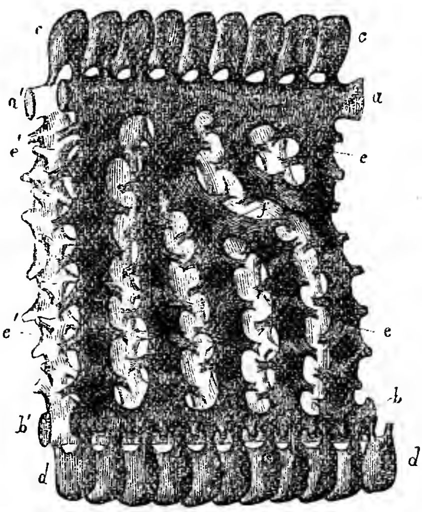
Disk of *Orbitolites tenuissimus*, formed round fragment of previous disk.

to be of the slightest consequence, from the time that active life is established in the outer zones.

469. One of the most curious features in the history of this type is its capacity for developing itself into a form which, whilst fundamentally the same as that previously described is very much more complex. In all the larger specimens of *Orbitolite*, we observe that the marginal pores, instead of constituting but a single row, form many rows one above another; and besides this, the chamberlets of the two surfaces, instead of being rounded or ovate in form, are usually oblong and straight-sided, their long diameters lying in a

radial direction, like those of the cyclical type of *Orbiculina* (Plate xv., fig. 6). When a vertical section is made through such a disk, it is found that these oblong chambers constitute two *superficial* layers, between which are interposed *columnar* chambers of a rounded form; and these last are connected together by a complex series of passages, the arrangement of which will be best understood from the examination of a part of the sarcode-body that occupies them (Fig. 319). For the oblong superficial chambers are occupied by sub-segments of sarcode, *c c*, *d d*, lying side by side, so as to form part of an annulus, but each of them disconnected from its neighbours, and communicating only by a double footstalk with the two annular 'stolons,' *a a′*, *b b′* which obviously correspond with the single stolon of 'simple' type (Fig. 317). These indirectly connect together not merely all the superficial chamberlets of each zone, but also the columnar sub-segments of the intermediate layer; for these columns (*e e*, *e′ e′*) terminate above and below in the annular stolons, sometimes passing directly from one to the other, but sometimes going out of their direct course to coalesce with another column. The columns of the successive zones (two sets of which are shown in the figure) communicate with each other by threads of sarcode, in such a manner that (as in the simple type) each column is thus brought into connection with two columns of the zone next interior, to which it alternates in position. Similar threads, passing off from the outermost zone, through the multiple ranges of marginal pores, would doubtless act as pseudopodia.

FIG. 319.



Portion of Animal of Complex type of *Orbitolites complanatus*:—*a a′*, *b b′*, the upper and lower rings of two concentric zones; *c c*, the upper layer of superficial sub-segments, and *d d*, the lower layer, connected with the annular bands of both zones; *e e* and *e′ e′*, vertical sub-segments of the two zones.

470. Now this plan of growth is so different from that previously described, that there would at first seem ample ground for separating the *simple* and the *complex* types as distinct species. But the test furnished by the examination of *a large number of specimens*, which ought never to be passed-by when it can possibly be

appealed to, furnishes these very singular results:—1st. That the two forms must be considered as specifically identical; since there is not only a gradational passage from one to the other, but they are often combined in the same individual, the *inner* and first-formed portion of a large disk frequently presenting the simple type, whilst the *outer* and later-formed part has developed itself upon the complex:—2nd. That although the last-mentioned circumstance would naturally suggest that the change from the one plan to another may be simply a feature of advancing age, yet this cannot be the case; since, although the complex sometimes evolves itself even from the very first (the 'nucleus,' though resembling that of the simple form, sending out two or more tiers of radiating threads), more frequently the simple prevails for an indefinite number of zones, and then changes itself in the course of a few zones into the complex.—No department of Natural History could furnish more striking instances than are afforded by the different forms presented by the Foraminiferal types now described, of the wide *range of variation* that may occur within the limits of one and the same species; and the Microscopist needs to be specially put on his guard as to this point, in respect to the lower types of Animal as to those of Vegetable life, since the determination of form seems to be far less precise among such than it is in the higher types.

471. In what manner the reproduction of *Orbitolites* is accomplished, we can as yet do little more than guess; but from appearances sometimes presented by the sarcode-body, it seems reasonable to infer that *gemmules*, corresponding with the zoöspores of Protophytes (§ 244), are occasionally formed by the breaking-up of the sarcode into globular masses; and that these, escaping through the marginal pores, are sent forth to develope themselves into new fabrics. Of the mode wherein that sexual operation is performed, however, in which alone true Generation consists, nothing whatever is known.

472. Arenacea.—In certain forms of the preceding family, and especially in the genus *Miliola*, we not unfrequently find the shells encrusted with particles of sand, which are imbedded in the proper shell-substance. This incrustation, however, must be looked on as (so to speak) accidental; since we find shells that are in every other respect of the same type, altogether free from it. A similar accidental incrustation presents itself among certain 'vitreous' and perforate shells; but there, too, it is on usually a basis of true shell, and the sandy incrustation is often entirely absent. There is, however, a group of Foraminifera in which the true shell is constantly and entirely *replaced* by a sandy envelope, which is distinguished as a 'test;' the arenaceous particles being held together only by a cement exuded by the animal. It is not a little curious that the forms of these arenaceous 'tests' should represent those of many different types among both the 'porcellanous' and the 'vitreous' series; whilst yet they graduate into one another in such a manner, as to indicate that all the members of this

'arenaceous' group are closely related to each other, so as to form a series of their own. And it is further remarkable, that while the Deep-sea dredgings recently carried down to depths of from 1,000 to 2,500 fathoms, have brought up few forms of either 'porcellanous' or 'vitreous' Foraminifera that were not previously known, they have added greatly to our knowledge of the 'arenaceous' types, the number and variety of which far exceed all previous conception. These have not yet been systematically described; but the following notice of a few of the more remarkable, will give some idea of the interest attaching to this portion of the new *Fauna* which has been brought to light by Deep-sea exploration.

473. In the midst of the sandy mud which formed the bottom where the warm area of the 'Globigerina-mud' (§ 480) abutted on that over which a glacial stream flowed, there were found a number of little pellets, varying in size from a large pin's head to that of a large pea, formed of an aggregation of sand-grains, minute Foraminifers, &c., held together by a tenacious protoplasmic substance. On tearing these open, the whole interior was found to have the same composition; and no trace of any structural arrangement could be discovered in their mass. Hence they might be supposed to be mere accidental agglomerations, were it not for their conformity to the 'monerozoic' type previously described (§ 393); for just as a simple 'moner,' by a differentiation of its homogeneous sarcode, becomes an *Amœba*, so would one of these uniform blendings of sand and sarcode, by a separation of its two components,—the sand forming the investing 'test,' and the sarcode occupying its interior,—become the arenaceous *Astrozhiza*. This type, which abounds on the sea-bed in certain localities, presents remarkable variations of form; being sometimes globular, sometimes stellate, sometimes cervicorn. But the same general arrangement prevails throughout; the cavity being occupied by a dark-green sarcode, whilst the 'test' is composed of loosely aggregated sand-grains not held together by any recognizable cement, and has *no definite orifice*, so that the pseudopodia must issue from interstices between the sand-grains, which spaces are probably occupied during life with living protoplasm, that continues to hold together the sand-grains after death. These are by no means microscopic forms; the 'stellate' varieties ranging to 0·3 or even 0·4 inch in diameter, and the 'cervicorn' to nearly 0·5 inch in length.*

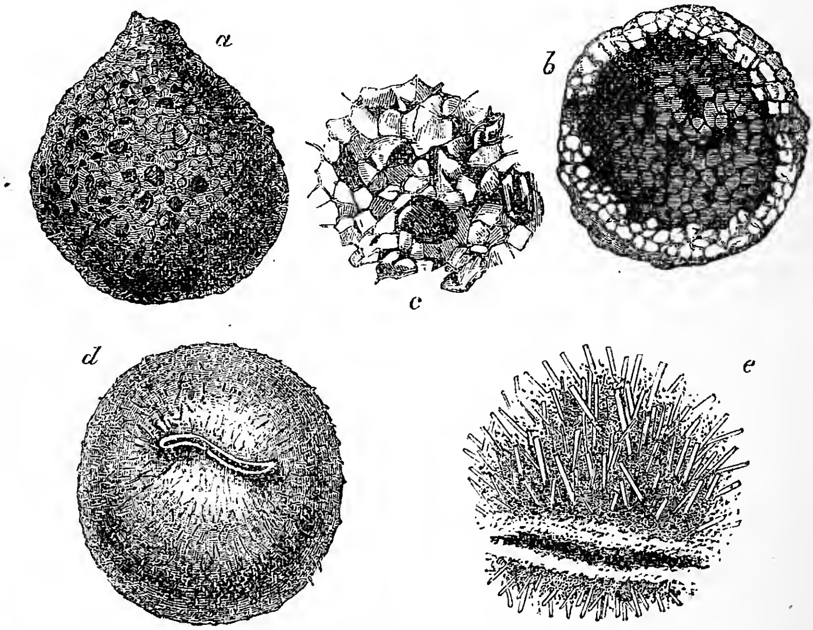
474. The purely *Arenaceous* Foraminifera are ranged by Mr. H. B. Brady† (by whom they have been specially studied) under two Families: the first of which, *Astrorhizida*, includes with the preceding a number of coarse sandy forms, usually of considerable size, and essentially monothalamous, though sometimes imperfectly chambered by constrictions at intervals. Some of the more interesting examples

* See the description and figures of this type given by the Author in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," Vol. xvi. (1876), p. 221.

† See his "Notes" in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Soc.," N.S. Vol. xix. (1879), p. 20; and Vol. xxi. (1881), p 31.

of this family will now be noticed; beginning with the *Saccamina* (Sars), which is a remarkably regular type, composed of coarse sand-grains firmly cemented together in a globular form, so as to form a wall nearly smooth on the outer, though rough on the inner surface, with a projecting neck surrounding a circular mouth (Fig. 319,* *a*, *b*, *c*). This type, which occurs in extraordinary abundance in certain localities (as the entrance of the Christiania-fjord), is of peculiar interest from the fact that it has been discovered in a fossil state by Mr. H. B. Brady, in a clay seam between two layers of Carboniferous Limestone. Its size is that of very minute seeds. —In striking contrast to the preceding is another single-chambered type, distinguished by the whiteness of its 'test,' to which the Author has given the name of *Pilulina*, from its resemblance to a homœopathic 'globule' (Fig. 319,* *d*, *e*). The form of this is a very regular

Fig. 319 *

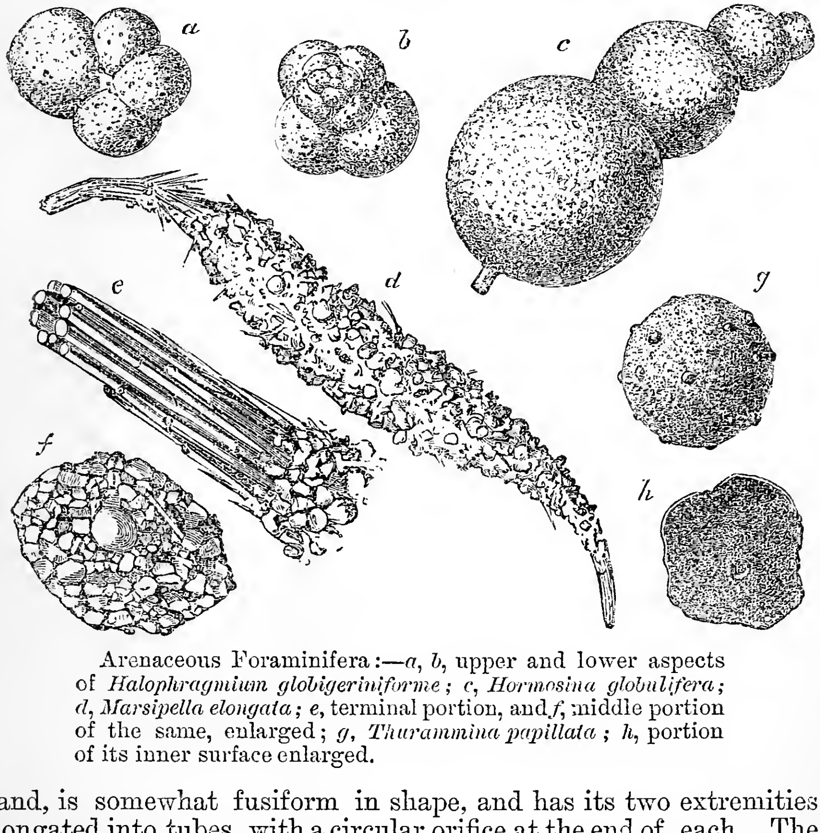


Arenaceous Foraminifera:—*a*, *Saccamina spherica*; *b*, the same laid open; *c*, portion of the test enlarged to show its component sand-grains:—*d*, *Pilulina Jeffreysii*; *e*, portion of the test enlarged, showing the arrangement of the sponge-spicules.

sphere; and its orifice, instead of being circular and surrounded by a neck, is a slit or fissure with slightly raised lips, and having a somewhat S-shaped curvature. It is by the structure of its 'test,' however, that it is especially distinguished; for this is composed of the finest ends of sponge-spicules, very regularly 'laid' so as to form a kind of felt, through the substance of which very fine sand-

grains are dispersed. This 'felt' is somewhat flexible, and its components do not seem to be united by any kind of cement, as it is not affected by being boiled in strong nitric acid; its tenacity, therefore, seems entirely due to the wonderful manner in which the separate siliceous fibres are 'laid.'—It is not a little curious that these two forms should present themselves in the same dredging; and that there should be no perceptible difference in the character of their sarcode-bodies, which, as in the preceding case, have a dark-green hue.—The *Marsipella elongata* (Fig. 320, *d*), on the other

FIG. 320.



Arenaceous Foraminifera :—*a*, *b*, upper and lower aspects of *Halophragmium globigeriniforme*; *c*, *Hormosina globulifera*; *d*, *Marsipella elongata*; *e*, terminal portion, and *f*, middle portion of the same, enlarged; *g*, *Thurammina papillata*; *h*, portion of its inner surface enlarged.

hand, is somewhat fusiform in shape, and has its two extremities elongated into tubes, with a circular orifice at the end of each. The materials of the 'tests' differ remarkably according to the nature of the bottom whereon they live. When they come up with 'Globigerina mud,' in which sponge-spicules abound, whilst sand-grains are scarce, they are almost entirely made up of the former, which are 'laid' in a sort of lattice-work, the interspaces of which are filled up by fine sand-grains; but when they are brought up from a bottom on which sand predominates, the larger part of the 'test' is made up of sand-grains and minute Foraminifera, with here and there

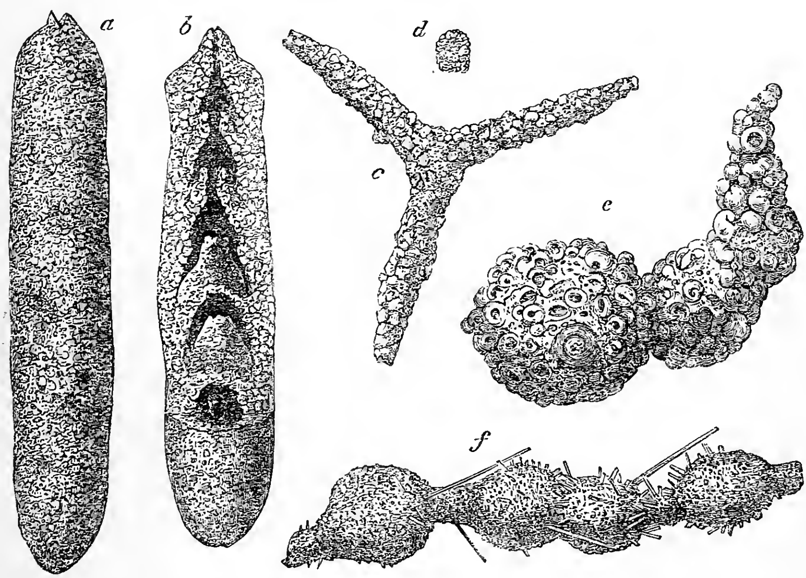
a sponge-spicule (Fig. 320, *d, f*). In each case, however, the tubular extensions (one of which sometimes forms a sort of proboscis, *e*, nearly equalling the body itself in length) are entirely made up of sponge-spicules laid side by side with extraordinary regularity. —The genus *Rhabdammina* (Sars) resembles Saccamina in the structure of its 'test,' which is composed of sand-grains very firmly cemented together; but the grains are of smaller size, and they are so disposed as to present a smooth surface internally, though the exterior is rough. What is most remarkable about this, is the geometrical regularity of its form, which is typically *triradiate* (Fig. 321, *c*), the rays diverging at equal angles from the central cavity, and each being a tube (*d*) with an orifice at its extremity. Not unfrequently, however, it is *quadri-radiate*, the rays diverging at right angles; and occasionally a fifth ray presents itself, its radiation, however, being on a different plane. The three rays are normally of equal length; but one of them is sometimes shorter than the other two; and when this is the case, the angle between the long rays increases at the expense of the other two, so that the long rays lie more nearly in a straight line. Sometimes the place of the third ray is indicated only by a little knob; and then the two long rays have very nearly the same direction. We are thus led to forms in which there is no vestige of a third ray, but merely a single straight tube, with an orifice at each end; and the length of this, which often exceeds half an inch, taken in connection with the abundance in which it presents itself in dredgings in which the triradiate forms are rare, seems to preclude the idea that these long single rods are broken rays of the latter.—It is undoubtedly in this group that we are to place the genus *Haliphysema*; which, from constructing its 'test' entirely of sponge-spicules, and even including these in its pseudopodial expansions, has been ranked as a Sponge, although observation of it in its living state leaves no doubt whatever of its Rhizopodal character.*

475. *Lituolida.*—The type of this family, which is named after it, is a large, sandy, many-chambered fossil form occurring in the Chalk, to which the name *Lituola* was given by Lamarck, from its resemblance in shape to a crozier. A great variety of recent forms, mostly obtained by deep-sea dredging, are now included in it; as bearing a more or less close resemblance to it and to each other in their chambered structure, and in the arrangement of the sand-grains of which their tests are formed.—These grains are, for the most part, finer than those of which the tests of the preceding family are constructed, and are set (so to speak) more artistically; and a considerable quantity of a cement exuded by the animal is employed in uniting them. This is often mixed up with sandy particles of extreme fineness, to form a sort of 'plaster' with which the exterior of the test is smoothed off, so as to present quite a

* See Saville Kent in "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," Ser. 5, Vol. ii. (1878); Prof. R. Lankester in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," Vol. xix. (1878), p. 476; and Prof. Möbius's "Foraminifera von Mauritius."

polished surface.—It is remarkable that the cement contains a considerable quantity of oxide of iron, which imparts a ferruginous hue to the 'tests' in which it is largely employed. The forms of the *Lituoline* 'tests' often simulate in a very curious way those of the simpler types of the *Vitreous* series. Thus, the long, spirally coiled undivided sandy tube of *Ammodiscus* is the isomorph of *Spirillina* (§ 479). In the genus *Halophragmium* (Fig. 320 *a*, *b*), we have a singular imitation of the *Globigerine* type; and in *Thurammina papillata* (Fig. 320, *g*) a not less remarkable imitation of the *Orbuline.* This last is specially noteworthy for the admirable manner in which its component sand-grains are set together; these being small and very uniform in size; and being disposed in such a manner as to present a smooth surface both inside and out (Fig. 320, *h*), whilst there are at intervals nipple-shaped protuberances, in every one of which there is a rounded orifice. A like perfection of finish is seen in the test of *Hormosina globulifera* (Fig. 320, *c*), which is composed of a succession of globular chambers rapidly

FIG. 321.



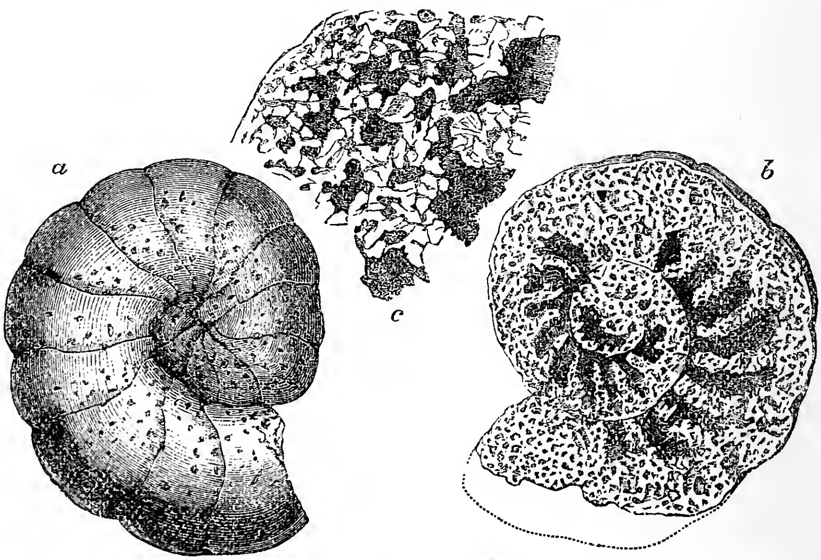
Arenaceous Foraminifera:—*a*, *b*, Exterior and sectional views of *Reophax rudis*; *c*, *Rhabdammina abyssorum*; *d*, cross section of one of its arms; *e*, *Reophax scorpiurus*; *f*, *Hormosina Carpenteri.*

increasing in size, each having a narrow tubular neck with a rounded orifice, which is received into the next segment. In other species of the same genus, there is a nearer approach to the ordinary nodosarine type, their tests being sometimes constructed with the regularity characteristic of the shells of the true *Nodosaria* (Plate xv.,

fig. 10); whilst in other cases the chambers are less regularly disposed (Fig. 321, *f*), having rather the character of bead-like enlargements of a tube, whilst their walls show a less exact selection of material, sponge-spicules being worked-in with the sand-grains, so as to give them a hirsute aspect. A greater rudeness of structure shows itself in the nodosarine forms of the genus *Reophax;* in which not only are the sand-grains of the test very coarse, but small Foraminifera are often worked-up with them (Fig. 321, *e*). A straight, many-chambered form of the same genus (Fig. 321, *a*, *b*) is remarkable for the peculiar finish of the neck of each segment; for whilst the test generally is composed of sand-grains as loosely aggregated as those of which the test of *Astrorhiza* is made up, the grains that form the neck are firmly united by ferruginous cement, forming a very smooth wall to the tubular orifice.

476. The highest development of the 'Arenaceous' type at the present time is found in the forms that imitate the very regular *nautiloid* shells, both of the 'porcellanous' and the 'vitreous' series; and the most remarkable of these is the *Cyclammina cancellata* (Fig. 322), which has been brought up in considerable abundance

Fig. 322.



Cyclammina cancellata:—showing at *a*, its external aspect; *b*, its internal structure; *c*, a portion of its outer wall more highly magnified, showing the sand-grains of which it is built up, and the passages excavated in its substance.

from depths ranging downwards to 1,900 fathoms, the largest examples being found within 700 fathoms. The test (Fig. 322, *a*) is composed of aggregated sand-grains firmly cemented together and smoothed over externally with 'plaster,' in which large glistening

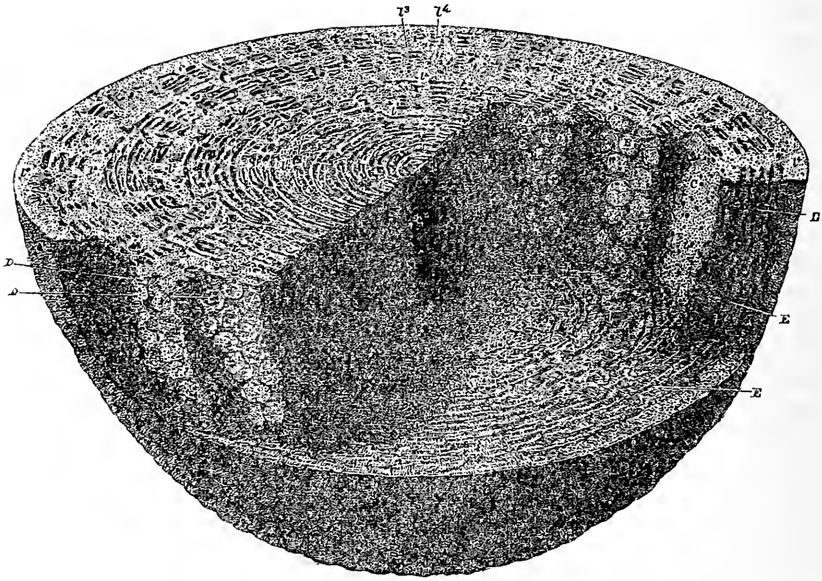
sand-grains are sometimes set at regular intervals, as if for ornament. On laying open the spire, it is found to be very regularly divided into chambers by partitions formed of cemented sand-grains (*b*); a communication between these chambers being left by a fissure at the inner margin of the spire, as in *Operculina* (Plate XVI., fig. 2). One of the most curious features in the structure of this type, is the extension of the cavity of each chamber into passages excavated in its thick external wall; each passage being surrounded by a very regular arrangement of sand-grains, as shown at *c*. It not unfrequently happens that the outer layer of the test is worn-away, and the ends of the passages then show themselves as pores upon its surface; this appearance, however, is abnormal, the passages simply running from the chamber-cavity into the thickness of its wall, and having (so long as this is complete) no external opening. This 'labyrinthic' structure is of great interest, from its relation not only to the similar structure of the large Fossil examples of the same type, but also to that which is presented in other gigantic Fossil arenaceous forms to be presently described.

477. Although some of the Nautiloid *Lituolæ* are among the largest of existing Foraminifera, having a diameter of 0·3 inch, they are mere dwarfs in comparison with two gigantic Fossil forms, whose structure has been elucidated by Mr. H. B. Brady and the Author.* Geologists who have worked over the Greensand of Cambridgeshire have long been familiar with solid spherical bodies which there present themselves not unfrequently, varying in size from that of a pistol-bullet to that of a small cricket-ball; and whilst some regarded them as Mineral concretions, others were led by certain appearances presented by their surfaces, to suppose them to be fossilized Sponges. A specimen having been fortunately discovered, however, in which the original structure had remained unconsolidated by mineral infiltration, it was submitted by Prof. Morris to the Author, who was at once led by his examination of it to recognize it as a member of the Arenaceous group of Foraminifera, to which he gave the designation *Parkeria*, in compliment to his valued friend and coadjutor, Mr. W. K. Parker. A section of the sphere taken through its centre (Fig. 323) presents an aspect very much resembling that of an Orbitolite (§ 466), a series of chamberlets being concentrically arranged round a 'nucleus;' and as the same appearance is presented, whatever be the direction of the section, it becomes apparent that these chamberlets, instead of being arranged in successive *rings* on a single plane, so as to form a disk, are grouped in concentric *spheres*, each completely investing that which preceded it in date of formation. The outer wall of each chamberlet is itself penetrated by extensions of the cavity into its substance, as in the *Cyclammina* last described; and these passages are separated by partitions very regularly built up of

* See their 'Description of *Parkeria* and *Loftusia*,' in "Philosophical Transactions," 1869, p. 721.

sand-grains, which also close-in their extremities, as is shown in Fig. 324. The concentric spheres are occasionally separated by

FIG. 323.



General view of the internal structure of *Parkeria*:—In the horizontal section, l^1, l^2, l^3, l^4, mark the four thick layers; in the vertical sections, A marks the internal surface of a layer separated by concentric fracture; B, the appearance presented by a similar fracture passing through the radiating processes; C, the result of a tangential section passing through the cancellated substance of a lamella; D, the appearance presented by the external surface of a lamella separated by a concentric fracture which has passed through the radial processes; E, the aspect of a section taken in a radial direction, so as to cross the solid lamellæ and their intervening spaces; c^1, c^2, c^3, c^4, successive chambers of nucleus.

walls of more than ordinary thickness; and such a wall is seen in Fig. 323 to close-in the last formed series of chamberlets. But these walls have the same 'labyrinthic' structure as the thinner ones; and an examination of numerous specimens shows that they are not formed at any regular intervals. The 'nucleus' is always composed of a single series of chambers arranged end to end, sometimes in a straight line, as in Fig. 323, c^1, c^2, c^3, c^4, sometimes forming a spiral, and in one instance returning upon itself. But the outermost chamber enlarges, and extends itself over the whole 'nucleus,' very much as the 'circumambient' chamber of the Orbitolite extends itself round the primordial chamber (§ 466); and radial prolongations given off from this in every direction form the first investing sphere, round which the entire series of concentric

spheres are successively formed. Of the sand of which this remarkable fabric is constructed, about 60 per cent. consists of phosphate of lime, and nearly the whole remainder of carbonate of lime. — Another large Fossil arenaceous type, constructed upon the same general plan, but growing spirally round an elongated axis after the manner of *Alveolina* (Fig. 315), and attaining a length of three inches, has been described by Mr. H. B. Brady (*loc. cit.*), under the name *Loftusia*, after its discoverer, the late Mr. W. K. Loftus, who brought it from the Turko-Persian frontier, where he found it imbedded in "a blue marly limestone" probably of early Tertiary age.

FIG. 324.

Portion of one of the lamellæ of *Parkeria*, showing the sand-grains of which it is built up, and the passages extending into its substance.

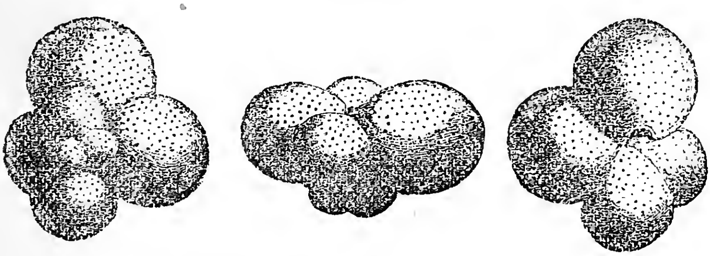
478. There is nothing, it seems to the Author, more wonderful in Nature, than the building-up of these elaborate and symmetrical structures by mere 'jelly-specks,' presenting no trace whatever of that definite 'organization' which we are accustomed to regard as necessary to the manifestations of Conscious Life. Suppose a Human mason to be put down by the side of a pile of stones of various shapes and sizes, and to be told to build a dome of these, smooth on both surfaces, without using more than the least possible quantity of a very tenacious but very costly cement in holding the stones together. If he accomplished this well, he would receive credit for great intelligence and skill. Yet this is exactly what these little 'jelly-specks' do on a most minute scale; the 'tests' they construct, when highly magnified, bearing comparison with the most skilful masonry of Man. From *the same sandy bottom*, one species picks up the *coarser* quartz-grains, unites them together with a ferruginous cement secreted from its own substance, and thus constructs a flask-shaped 'test' having a short neck and a single large orifice. Another picks up the *finer* grains, and puts them together with the same cement into perfectly spherical 'tests' of the most extraordinary finish, perforated with numerous small pores, disposed at pretty regular intervals. Another selects the *minutest* sand-grains and the terminal portions of sponge-spicules, and works these up together—apparently with no cement at all, but by the mere 'laying' of the spicules—into perfect white spheres, like homœopathic globules, each having a single fissured orifice. And another, which makes a straight many-chambered 'test,' the conical mouth of each chamber

projecting into the cavity of the next, while forming the walls of its chambers of ordinary sand-grains rather loosely held together, shapes the conical mouths of the successive chambers by firmly cementing to each other the quartz-grains which border it.—To give these actions the vague designation 'instinctive,' does not in the least help us to account for them; since what we want is, to discover the *mechanism* by which they are worked-out; and it is most difficult to conceive how so artificial a selection can be made by creatures so simple.

479. Vitrea.—Returning now to the Foraminifera which form true *shells* by the calcification of the superficial layer of their sarcode-bodies, we shall take a similar general survey of the *vitreous* series, whose shells are perforated by multitudes of minute foramina (Fig. 314). Thus, *Spirillina* has a minute, spirally convoluted, undivided tube, resembling that of Cornuspira (Plate xv., fig. 1), but having its wall somewhat coarsely perforated by numerous apertures for the emission of pseudopodia. The 'monothalamous' forms of this growth mostly belong to the Family *Lagenida;* which also contains a series of transition-forms leading up gradationally to the 'polythamous' Nautiloid type. In *Lagena* (Plate xv., fig. 9) the mouth is narrowed and prolonged into a tubular neck, giving to the shell the form of a microscopic flask; this neck terminates in an everted lip, which is marked with radiating furrows.—A mouth of this kind is a distinctive character of a large group of many-chambered shells, of which each single chamber bears a more or less close resemblance to the simple Lagena, and of which, like it, the external surface generally presents some kind of ornamentation, which may have the form either of longitudinal ribs or of pointed tubercles. Thus the shell of *Nodosaria* (fig. 10) is obviously made up of a succession of lageniform chambers, the neck of each being received into the cavity of that which succeeds it; whilst in *Cristellaria* (fig. 11) we have a similar succession of chambers, presenting the characteristic radiate aperture, and often longitudinally ribbed, disposed in a nautiloid spiral. Between *Nodosaria* and *Cristellaria,* moreover, there is such a gradational series of connecting forms, as shows that no essential difference exists between these two types, which must be combined into one genus, *Nodosarina;* and it is a fact of no little interest, that these varietal forms, of which many are to be met-with on our own shores, but which are more abundant on those of the Mediterranean and especially of the Adriatic, can be traced backwards in Geological time even as far as the New Red Sandstone period.—In another genus, *Polymorphina,* we find the shell to be made up of lageniform chambers arranged in a double series, alternating with each other on the two sides of a rectilinear axis (fig. 13); here, again, the forms of the individual chambers, and the mode in which they are set one upon another, vary in such a manner as to give rise to very marked differences in the general configuration of the shell, which are indicated by the name it bears.

480. *Globigerinida.*—Returning once again to the simple 'monothalamous' condition, we have in *Orbulina*—a minute spherical shell that presents itself in greater or less abundance in Deep-sea dredgings from almost every region of the globe—a globular chamber with porous walls, and a simple circular aperture that is frequently replaced by a number of large pores scattered throughout the wall of the sphere. It is maintained by some that *Orbulina* is really a detached generative segment of *Globigerina,* with which it is generally found associated.—The shell of *Globigerina* consists of an assemblage of nearly spherical chambers (Fig. 325), having

FIG. 325.

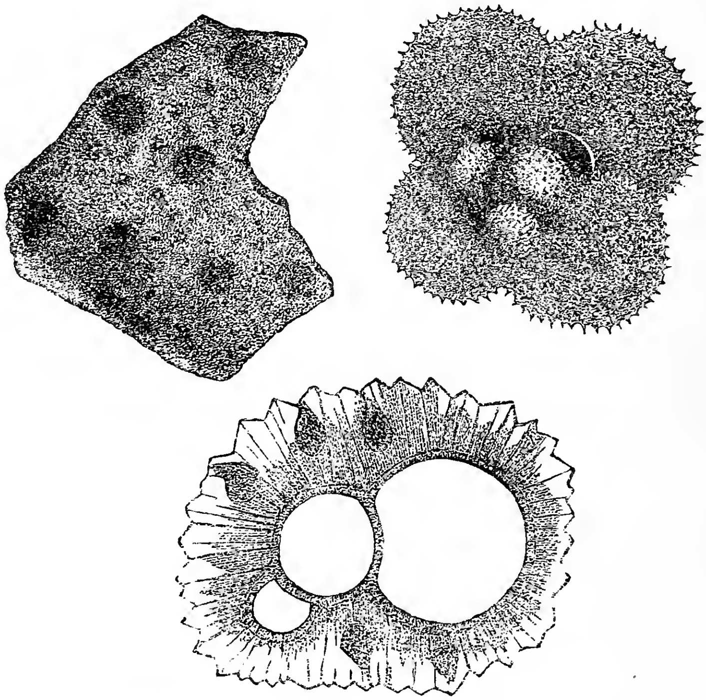


Globigerina bulloides, as seen in three positions.

coarsely porous walls, and cohering externally into a more or less regular turbinoid spire, each turn of which consists of four chambers progressively increasing in size. These chambers, whose total number seldom exceeds sixteen, do not communicate directly with each other, but open separately into a common 'vestibule' which occupies the centre of the under side of the spire.—This type has recently attracted great attention, from the extraordinary abundance in which it occurs at great depths over large areas of the Ocean-bottom. Thus its minute shells have been found to constitute no less than 97 per cent. of the 'ooze' brought up from depths of from 1260 to 2000 fathoms in the middle of the northern parts of the Atlantic Ocean. The surface-layer of this ooze, the thickness of which is entirely unknown, consists of Globigerinæ whose chambers are occupied by the sarcodic-bodies of the animals, and which may therefore be presumed to be living on the bottom; whilst its deeper layers are almost entirely composed of dead and disintegrating shells of the same type. The younger shells, consisting of from eight to twelve chambers, are thin and smooth; but the older shells are thicker, their surface is raised into ridges that form a hexagonal areolation round the pores (Fig. 326, A); and this thickening is shown by examination of thin sections of the shell (B) to be produced by an exogenous deposit around the original chamber-wall (corresponding with the 'intermediate skeleton' of the more complex types), which sometimes contains little flask-shaped cavities filled with sarcode—as was first pointed-out by Dr. Wallich. But the sweeping of the upper waters of the Ocean by the 'tow-net'

(§ 217), which was systematically carried-on during the voyage of the 'Challenger,' brought into prominence the fact that these

Fig. 326.

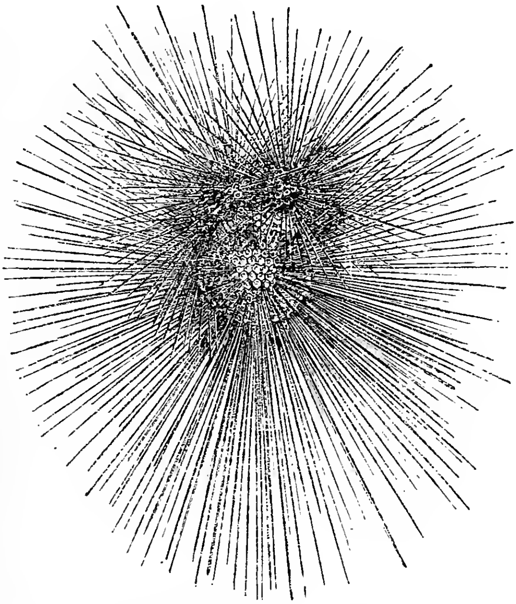


Globigerina, from Atlantic ooze showing thickening of shell by exogenous deposit :—A, entire shell, showing Areolated ridges of surface ; B, portion of shell more highly magnified, showing orifices of tubuli and large cavities filled with sarcode ; C, section of shell showing exogenous deposit upon original chamber-wall, which is raised into ridges with tubuli between them, and includes sarcodic cavities.

waters in all but the coldest seas are inhabited by *floating* Globigerinæ, whose shells are beset with multitudes of delicate calcareous spines, which extend themselves radially from the angles at which the ridges meet, to a length equal to four or five times the diameter of the shell (Fig. 327). Among the bases of these spines, the sarcodic substance of the body exudes through the pores of the shell, forming a flocculent fringe around it ; and this extends itself on each of the spines, creeping up one side to its extremity, and passing down the other, with the peculiar flowing movement already described. (§ 395). The whole of this sarcodic extension is at once retracted if the cell which holds the Globigerina receives a sudden shock, or a drop of any irritating fluid is added to the water it contains.—It is maintained by Sir Wyville Thomson that the bottom-deposit is

formed by the continual 'raining-down' of the Globigerinæ of the upper waters, which (he affirms) only *live* at or near the surface,

Fig. 327.



Globigerina, as captured by tow-net, floating at or near surface.

and which, when they die, lose their spines and subside. But it has been shown by the careful comparison made by Mr. H. B. Brady between the surface-gatherings and the bottom-deposits of the same areas, that the two are often so marked, as to forbid the idea that the latter are solely derived from the former.* For not only are there several specific types found in each, which do not present themselves in the other, but, as a rule, the shells of the types common to both are larger and thicker in the latter than they are in the former. This evidence strongly supports the conclusion originally drawn by the Author from his own examination of the Globigerina-ooze, that the shells forming its surface-layer must *live on the bottom*, being incapable of floating in consequence of their weight; and that if they have passed the earlier part of their lives in the upper waters, they drop down as soon as the calcareous deposit continually exuding from the body of each animal, instead of being employed in the formation of new chambers, is applied to the thickening of those previously formed.—That many types of Foraminifera *pass their whole lives* at depths of at least 2000 fathoms, is proved, in regard to those forming Calcareous shells, by their attachment to stones, corals, &c.; and in the case of the Arenaceous types, by the

* "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," Vol. xix. (1879), p. 295.

fact that they can only procure *on the bottom* the sand of which their 'tests' are made up.

481. A very remarkable type has recently been discovered, adherent to shells and corals brought from tropical seas, to which the name *Carpenteria* has been given; this may be regarded as a highly developed form of Globigerina, its first-formed portion having all the essential characters of that genus. It grows attached by the apex of its spire; and its later chambers increase rapidly in size, and are piled on the earlier in such a manner as to form a depressed cone with an irregular spreading base. The essential character of Globigerina—the separate orifice of each of its chambers—is here retained with a curious modification; for the central vestibule, into which they all open, forms a sort of vent whose orifice is at the apex of the cone, and is sometimes prolonged into a tube that proceeds from it; and the external wall of this cone is so marked-out by septal bands, that it comes to bear a strong resemblance to a minute *Balanus* (acorn-shell), for which this type was at first mistaken. The principal chambers are partly divided into chamberlets by incomplete partitions, as we shall find them to be in *Eozoön* (§ 494). The presence of sponge-spicules in large quantity in the chambers of many of the best-preserved examples of this type, was for some time a source of perplexity; but this is now explained by the interesting observations made by Prof. Möbius* on a large branching and spreading form of *Carpenteria*, which he recently met-with on a reef near Mauritius, and to which he has given the name of *C. rhaphidodendron*. For the pseudopodia of this Rhizopod have the habit, like those of *Haliphysema* (§ 474), of taking into themselves sponge-spicules, which they draw into the chambers, so that they become incorporated with the sarcode-body.

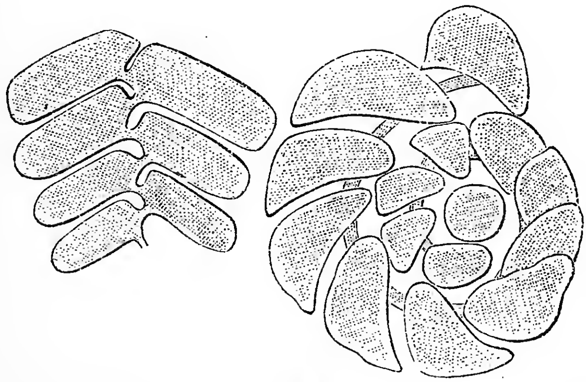
482. A less aberrant modification of the Globigerine type, however, is presented in the two great series which may be designated (after the leading forms of each) as the *Textularian* and the *Rotalian*. For notwithstanding the marked difference in their respective plans of growth, the characters of the individual chambers are the same; their walls being coarsely-porous, and their apertures being oval, semi-oval, or crescent-shaped, sometimes merely fissured. In *Textularia* (Plate xv., fig. 14) the chambers are arranged biserially along a straight axis, the position of those on the two sides of it being alternate, and each chamber opening into those above and below it on the opposite side by a narrow fissure; as is well shown in such 'internal casts' (Fig 328, A) as exhibit the forms and connections of the segments of sarcode by which the chambers were occupied during life. In the genus *Bulimina* the chambers are so arranged as to form a spire like that of a Bulimus, and the aperture is a curved fissure whose direction is nearly transverse to that of the fissure of Textularia; but in this, as in the preceding type, there is an extraordinary variety in the

* See his "Foraminifera von Mauritius," Plates v., vi.

disposition of the chambers. In both, moreover, the shell is often covered by a sandy incrustation, so that its perforations are completely hidden, and can only be made visible by the removal of the

Fig. 328.

A B



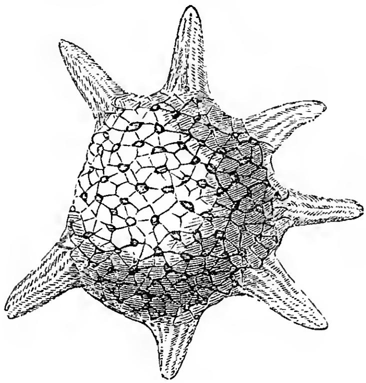
Internal siliceous Casts, representing the forms of the segments of the animals, of A, *Textularia*, B, *Rotalia*.

adherent crust. And so many cases are now known, in which the shell of *Textularinæ* is entirely replaced by a sandy test, that some Systematists prefer to range this group among the *Arenacea*.

483. In the *Rotalian* series, the chambers are disposed in a turbinoid spire, opening one into another by an aperture situated on the lower and inner side of the spire, as shown in Plate xv., fig. 18; the forms and connections of the segments of their sarcode-bodies being shown in such 'internal casts' as are represented in Fig. 328, B. One of the lowest and simplest forms of this type is that very common one now distinguished as *Discorbina*, of which a characteristic example is represented in Plate xv., fig. 15. The early form of *Planorbulina* is a rotaline spire, very much resembling that of Discorbina; but this afterwards gives place to a cyclical plan of growth (fig. 17); and in those most developed forms of this type which occur in warmer seas, the earlier chambers are completely overgrown by the latter, which are often piled-up in an irregular 'acervuline' manner, spreading over the surfaces of shells, or clustering round the stems of zoöphytes.—In the genus *Tinoporus* there is a more regular growth of this kind, the chambers being piled successively on the two sides of the original median plane, and those of adjacent piles communicating with each other obliquely (like those of Textularia) by large apertures, whilst they communicate with those directly above and below by the ordinary pores of the shell. The simple or smooth form of this genus presents great diversities of shape, with great constancy, in its internal structure; being sometimes spherical, sometimes resembling a minute sugar-loaf, and sometimes being irregularly

flattened-out. A peculiar form of this type (Fig. 329), in which the walls of the piles are thickened at their meeting-angles into solid columns that appear on the surface as tubercles, and are sometimes prolonged into spinous outgrowths that radiate from the central mass, is of very common occurrence in shore-sands and shallow-water dredgings on some parts of the Australian coast and among the Polynesian islands.—To the simple form of this genus we are probably to refer a large part of the fossils of the Cretaceous and early Tertiary period, that have been described under the name *Orbitolina*, some of which attain a very large size. Globular *Orbitolinæ*, which appear to have been artificially perforated and strung as beads, are not unfrequently found associated with the "flint-implements" of gravel-beds.—Another very curious modification of the Rotaline type is presented by *Polytrema*, which so much resembles a Zoöphyte as to have been taken for a minute Millepore; but which is made up of an aggregation of 'globigerine' chambers communicating with each other like those of Tinoporus, and differs from that genus in nothing else than its erect and usually branching manner of growth, and the freer communication between its chambers. This, again, is of special interest in relation to *Eozoön;* showing that an indefinite zoöphytic mode of growth is perfectly compatible with truly Foraminiferal structure.

Fig. 329.

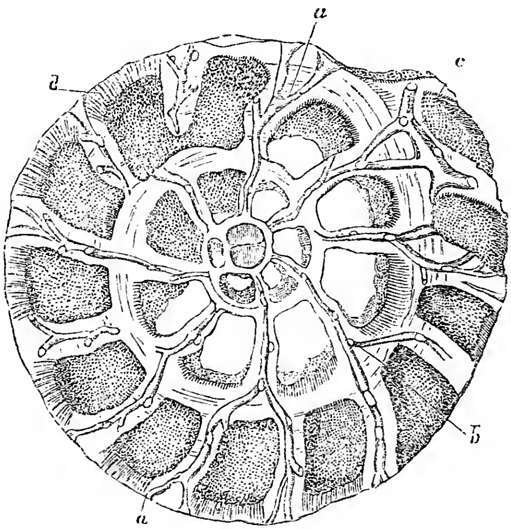


Tinoporus baculatus.

484. In *Rotalia*, properly so called, we find a marked advance towards the highest type of Foraminiferal structure; the partitions that divide the chambers being composed of two laminæ, and spaces being left between them which give passage to a system of canals, whose general distribution is shown in Fig. 330. The proper walls of the chambers, moreover, are thickened by an extraneous deposit or 'intermediate skeleton,' which sometimes forms radiating outgrowths; but this peculiarity of conformation is carried much further in the genus *Calcarina*, which has been so designated from its resemblance to a spur-rowel (Plate XVI., fig, 3). The solid club-shaped appendages with which this shell is provided, entirely belong to the 'intermediate skeleton' *b*, which is quite independent of the chambered structure *a;* and this is nourished by a set of canals containing prolongations of the sarcode-body, which not only furrow the surface of these appendages, but are seen to traverse their interior when this is laid open by section, as shown at *c*. In no other recent Foraminifer does the 'canal system' attain a like

development; and its distribution in this minute shell, which has been made out by careful microscopic study, affords a valuable clue to its meaning in the gigantic fossil organism *Eozoön Canadense* (§ 494). The resemblance which *Calcarina* bears to the radiate forms of *Tinoporus* (Fig. 329), which are often found with them in the same dredgings, is frequently extremely striking; and in their early growth the two can scarcely be distinguished, since both commence in a 'rotaline' spire with radiating appendages; but whilst the successive chambers of Calcarina continue to be added on the same plane, those of Tinoporus are heaped-up in less regular piles.

Fig. 330.

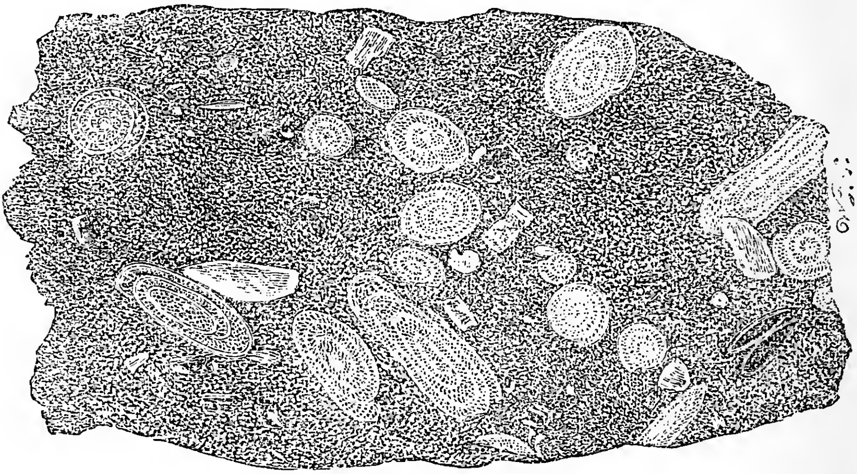


Section of *Rotalia Schroetteriana* near its base and parallel to it:—showing, *a*, *a*, the radiating interseptal canals; *b*, their internal bifurcations; *c*, a transverse branch; *d*, tubular wall of the chambers.

485. Certain beds of Carboniferous Limestone in Russia are entirely made-up, like the more modern Nummulitic Limestone (§ 489), of an aggregation of the remains of a peculiar type of Foraminifera, to which the name *Fusulina* (indicative of its fusiform or spindle-shape) has been given (Fig. 331). In general aspect and plan of growth it so much resembles *Alveolina*, that its relationship to that type would scarcely be questioned by the superficial observer. But when its mouth is examined, it is found to consist of a single slit in the middle of the lip; and the interior, instead of being minutely divided into chamberlets, is found to consist of a regular series of simple chambers; while from each of these proceeds a pair of elongated extensions, which correspond to the 'alar prolongations' of other spirally-growing Foraminifera (§ 486), but which, instead of wrapping round the preceding whorls, are prolonged in the direction of the axis of the spire, those of each whorl projecting beyond those of the preceding, so that the shell is elongated with every increase in its diameter. Thus it appears that in its general plan of growth, *Fusulina* bears much the same relation to a symmetrical Rotaline or Nummuline shell, that *Alveolina* bears to *Orbiculina;* and this view of its affinities is fully confirmed by the Author's microscopic examination of the structure of its shell. For although the Fusulina-limestone of Russia has

undergone a degree of metamorphism, which so far obscures the tubularity of its component shells, as to prevent him from confidently affirming it, yet the appearances he could distinguish were

FIG. 331.



Section of *Fusulina*-Limestone.

decidedly in its favour. And having since received specimens from the Upper Coal Measures of Iowa, U.S., which are in a much more perfect state of preservation, he is able to state with certainty, not only that *Fusulina* is tubular, but that its tubulation is of the large coarse nature that marks its affinity rather to the *Rotaline* than to the *Nummuline* series.—This type is of peculiar interest, as having long been regarded as the oldest form of Foraminifera which was known to have occurred in sufficient abundance to form Rocks by the aggregation of its individuals. It will be presently shown, however, that in point both of antiquity and of importance, it is far surpassed by another (§ 493).

486. *Nummulinida.*—All the most elaborately constructed, and the greater part of the largest, of the 'vitreous' Foraminifera belong to the group of which the well-known *Nummulite* may be taken as the representative. Various plans of growth prevail in the family; but its distinguishing characters consist in the completeness of the wall that surrounds each segment of the body (the septa being double instead of single as elsewhere), the density and fine porosity of the shell-substance, and the presence of an 'intermediate skeleton,' with a 'canal-system' for its nutrition. It is true that these characters are also exhibited in the highest of the Rotaline series (§ 484), whilst they are deficient in the genus *Amphistegina*, which connects the Nummuline series with the Rotaline; but the occurrence of such modifications in their border-forms is common to other truly Natural groups. With the

exception of Amphistegina, all the genera of this family are symmetrical in form; the spire being nautiloid in such as follow that plan of growth, whilst in those which follow the cyclical plan there is a constant equality on the two sides of the median plane: but in Amphistegina there is a reversion to the rotalian type in the turbinoid form of its spire, as in the characters already specified, although its general conformity to the Nummuline type is such as to leave no reasonable doubt as to its title to be placed in this family. Notwithstanding the want of symmetry of its spire, it accords with *Operculina* and *Nummulina* in having its chambers extended by 'alar prolongations' over each surface of the previous whorl; but on the under side these prolongations are almost entirely cut off from the principal chambers, and are so displaced as apparently to alternate with them in position; so that M. D'Orbigny, supposing them to constitute a distinct series of chambers, described its plan of growth as a biserial spiral, and made this the character of a separate Order.*

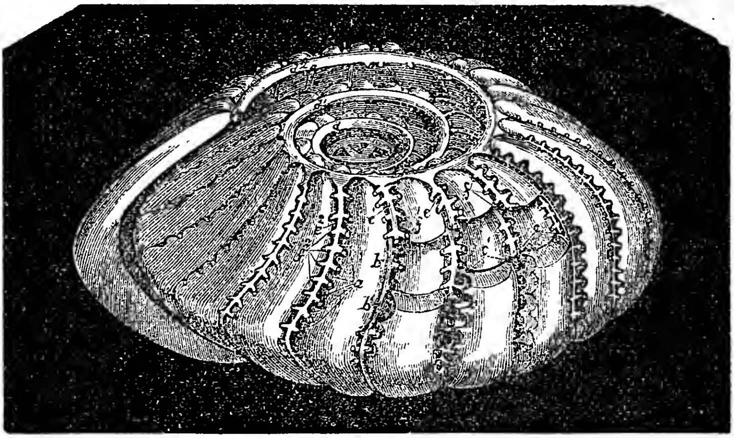
487. The existing *Nummulinida* are almost entirely restricted to tropical climates; but a beautiful little form, the *Polystomella crispa* (Plate xv., fig. 16), the representative of a genus that presents the most regular and complete development of the 'canal system' anywhere to be met with, is common on our own coasts. The peculiar surface-marking shown in the figure consists in a strongly marked ridge-and-furrow plication of the shelly wall of each segment along its posterior margin; the furrows being sometimes so deep as to resemble fissures opening into the cavity of the chamber beneath. No such openings, however, exist; the only communication which the sarcode-body of any segment has with the exterior, being either through the fine tubuli of its shelly walls, or through the row of pores that are seen in front view along the inner margin of the septal plane, collectively representing a fissured aperture divided by minute bridges of shell. The meaning of the plication of the shelly wall comes to be understood, when we examine the conformation of the segments of the sarcode-body, which may be seen in the common *Polystomella crispa* by dissolving away the shell of fresh specimens by the action of dilute acid, but which may be better studied in such internal casts (Fig. 332) of the sarcode-body and canal-system of the large *P. craticulata* of the Australian coast, as may sometimes be obtained by the same means from dead shells which have undergone infiltration with ferruginous silicates.† Here we see that the segments of the sarcode-body are

* For an account of this curious modification of the Nummuline plan of growth, the real nature of which was first elucidated by Messrs. Parker and Rupert Jones, see the Author's 'Introduction to the Study of the Foraminifera' (published by the Ray Society).

† It was by Prof. Ehrenberg that the existence of such 'casts' in the Green Sands of various Geological periods (from the Silurian to the Tertiary) was first pointed out, in his Memoir 'Ueber der Grünsand und seine Einläuterung des organischen Lebens,' in "Abhandlungen der Königl. Akad. der Wissen-

smooth along their anterior edge b, b^1, but that along their posterior edge, a, they are prolonged backwards into a set of 'retral

Fig. 332.



Internal Cast of *Polystomella craticulata*:—a, retral processes, proceeding from the posterior margin of one of the segments; b, b^1, smooth anterior margin of the same segment; c, c^1, stolons connecting successive segments, and uniting themselves with the diverging branches of the meridional canals; d, d^1, d^2, three turns of one of the spiral canals; e, e^1, e^2, three of the meridional canals; f, f^1, f^2, their diverging branches.

processes;' and these processes lie under the ridges of the shell, whilst the shelly wall dips down into the spaces between them, so as to form the furrows seen on the surface. The connections of the segments by stolons, c, c^1, passing through the pores at the inner margin of each septum, are also admirably displayed in such 'casts.' But what they serve most beautifully to demonstrate is the canal-system, of which the distribution is here most remarkably complete and symmetrical. At d, d^1, d^2, are seen three turns of a spiral canal which passes along one end of all the segments of the like number of convolutions, whilst a corresponding canal is found on the side which in the figure is undermost; these two spires are connected by a set of meridional canals, e, e^1, e^2, which pass down between the two layers of the septa that divide the segments; whilst from each of these there passes-off towards the

schaften," Berlin, 1855. It was soon afterwards shown by the late Prof. Bailey (" Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," Vol. v., 1857, p. 83.) that the like infiltration occasionally takes place in recent Foraminifera, enabling similar 'casts' to be obtained from them by the solution of their shells in dilute acid; the Author, as well as Messrs. Parker and Rupert Jones, soon afterwards obtained most beautiful and complete internal casts from recent Foraminifera brought from various localities; and a large collection of green sands yielding similar casts was made in the 'Challenger.'

surface a set of pairs of diverging branches, f, f^1, f^2, which open upon the surface along the two sides of each septal band, the external openings of those on its anterior margin being in the furrows between the retral processes of the next segment. These canals appear to be occupied in the living state by prolongations of the sarcode-body; and the diverging branches of those of each convolution unite themselves, when this is enclosed by another convolution, with the stolon-processes connecting the successive segments of the latter, as seen at c^1. There can be little doubt that this remarkable development of the canal-system has reference to the unusual amount of shell-substance which is deposited as an 'intermediate skeleton' upon the layer that forms the proper walls of the chambers, and which fills-up with a solid 'boss' what would otherwise be the depression at the umbilicus of the spire. The substance of this 'boss' is traversed by a set of straight canals, which pass directly from the spiral canal beneath, towards the external surface, where they open in little pits, as is shown in Pl. xv., fig. 16; the umbilical boss in *P. crispa*, however, being much smaller in proportion than it is in *P. craticulata*.—There is a group of Foraminifera to which the term *Nonionina* is properly applicable, that is probably to be considered as a sub-genus of Polystomella; agreeing with it in its general conformation, and especially in the distribution of its canal-system; but differing in its aperture, which is here a single fissure at the inner edge of the septal plane (Plate xv., fig. 19), and in the absence of the 'retral processes' of the segments of the sarcode-body, the external walls of the chambers being smooth. This form constitutes a transition to the ordinary Nummuline type, of which Polystomella is a more aberrant modification.

488. The Nummuline type is most characteristically represented at the present time by the genus *Operculina;* which is so intimately united to the true *Nummulite* by intermediate forms, that it is not easy to separate the two, notwithstanding that their typical examples are widely dissimilar. The former genus (Plate xvi., fig. 2) is represented on our own coast by very small and feeble forms; but it attains a much higher development in Tropical seas, where its diameter sometimes reaches 1-4th of an inch. The shell is a flattened nautiloid spire, the breadth of whose earlier convolutions increases in a regular progression, but of which the last convolution (in full-grown specimens) usually flattens itself out like that of Peneroplis, so as to be very much broader than the preceding. The external walls of the chambers, arching over the spaces between the septa, are seen at *b, b*; and these are bounded at the outer edge of each convolution by a peculiar band *a*, termed the 'marginal cord.' This cord, instead of being perforated by minute tubuli like those which pass from the inner to the outer surface of the chamber-walls without division or inosculation (Fig. 335), is traversed by a system of comparatively large inosculating passages seen in cross section at a'; and these form part of the canal-system to be

presently described. The principal cavities of the chambers are seen at *c*, *c*; while the 'alar prolongations' of those cavities over the surface of the preceding whorl are shown at *c'*, *c'*. The chambers are separated by the septa, *d*, *d*, *d*, formed of two laminæ of shell, one belonging to each chamber, and having spaces between them in which lie the 'interseptal canals,' whose general distribution is seen in the septa marked *e*, *e*, and whose smaller branches are seen irregularly divided in the septa *d'*, *d'*, whilst in the septum *d''* one of the principal trunks is laid open through its whole length. At the approach of each septum to the marginal cord of the preceding, is seen the narrow fissure which constitutes the principal aperture of communication between the chambers; in most of the septa, however, there are also some isolated pores (to which the lines point that radiate from *e*, *e*) varying both in number and position. The interseptal canals of each septum take their departure at its inner extremity from a pair of spiral canals, of which one passes along each side of the marginal cord; and they communicate at their outer extremity with the canal-system of the 'marginal cord,' as shown in Fig. 337. The external walls of the chambers are composed of the same finely-tubular shell-substance that forms them in the Nummulite; but, as in that genus, not only are the septa themselves composed of vitreous non-tubular substance, but that which lies over them, continuing them to the surface of the shell, has the same character; showing itself externally in the form sometimes of continuous ridges, sometimes of rows of tubercles, which mark the position of the septa beneath. These non-tubular plates or columns are often traversed by branches of the canal-system, as seen at *g*, *g*. Similar columns of non-tubular substance, of which the summits show themselves as tubercles on the surface, are not unfrequently seen between the septal bands, giving a variation to the surface-marking, which, taken in conjunction with variations in general conformation, might be fairly held sufficient to characterize distinct species, were it not that on *a comparison of a great number of specimens*, these variations are found to be so gradational, that no distinct line of demarcation can be drawn between the individuals which present them.

489. The Genus *Nummulina*, of which the fossil forms are commonly known as *Nummulites*, though represented at the present time by small and comparatively infrequent examples, was formerly developed to a vast extent; the Nummulitic Limestone chiefly made-up by the aggregation of its remains (the material of which the Pyramids are built) forming a band, often 1,800 miles in breadth and frequently of enormous thickness, that may be traced from the Atlantic shores of Europe and Africa, through Western Asia to Northern India and China, and likewise over vast areas of North America (Fig. 333). The diameter of a large proportion of fossil Nummulites ranges between half an inch and an inch; but there are some whose diameter does not exceed 1-16th of an inch, whilst others attain the gigantic diameter of $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches. Their

PLATE XVI.

FIG. 1.

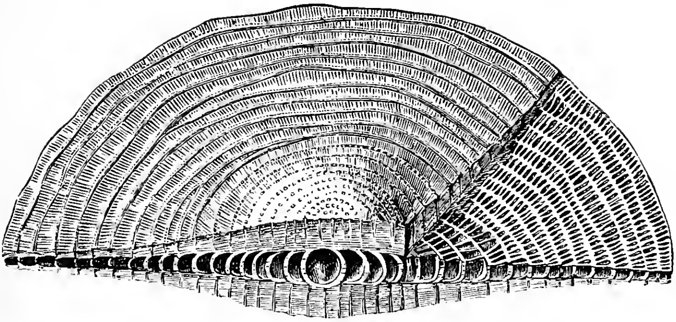


FIG. 2.

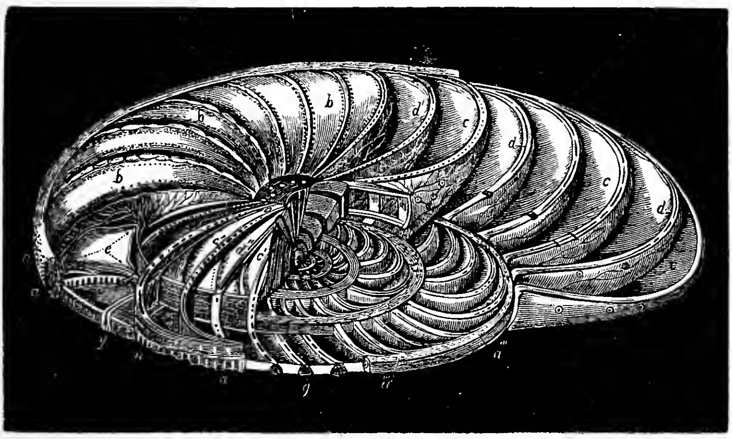
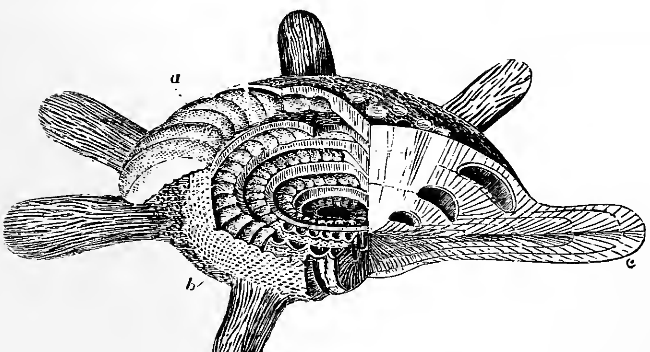


FIG. 3

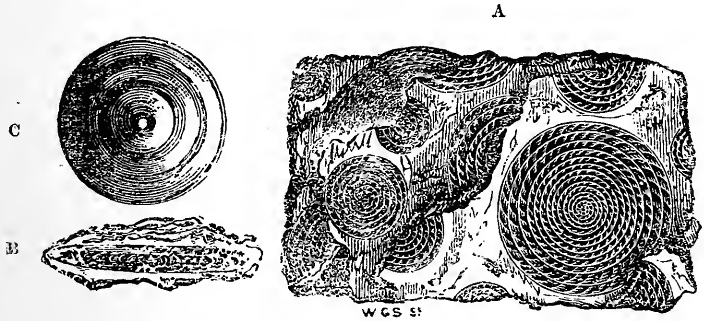


VARIOUS FORMS OF FORAMINIFERA.

[To face p 580.

typical form is that of a double-convex lens; but sometimes it much more nearly approaches the globular shape, whilst in other cases it is very much flattened; and great differences exist in this

FIG. 333.

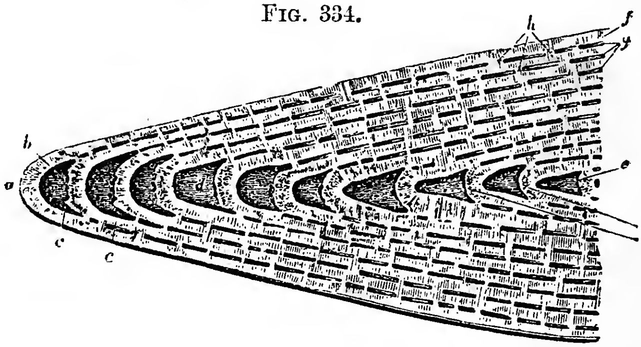


A, piece of *Nummulitic Limestone* from Pyrenees, showing Nummulites laid open by fracture through median plane; B, vertical section of *Nummulite*; C, *Orbitoides.*

respect among individuals of what must be accounted one and the same species. Although there are some Nummulites which closely approximate *Operculinæ* in their mode of growth, yet the typical forms of this genus present certain well-marked distinctive peculiarities. Each convolution is so completely invested by that which succeeds it, and the external wall or spiral lamina of the new convolution is so completely separated from that of the convolution it encloses by the 'alar prolongations' of its own chambers (the peculiar arrangement of which will be presently described), that the spire is scarcely if at all visible on the external surface. It is brought into view, however, by splitting the Nummulite through the median plane, which may often be accomplished simply by striking it on one edge with a hammer, the opposite edge being placed on a firm support; or, if this method should not succeed, by heating it in the flame of a spirit-lamp, and then throwing it into cold water or striking it edgeways. Nummulites usually show many more turns, and a more gradual rate of increase in the breadth of the spire, than Foraminifera generally; this will be apparent from an examination of the vertical section shown in Fig. 334, which is taken from one of the commonest and most characteristic fossil examples of the genus, and which shows no fewer than ten convolutions in a fragment that does not nearly extend to the centre of the spire. This section also shows the complete enclosure of the older convolutions by the newer, and the interposition of the alar prolongations of the chambers between the successive layers of the spiral lamina. These prolongations are variously arranged in different examples of the genus: thus in some, as *N. distans*, they keep their own separate course, all tending radially towards the centre; in others, as

N. lævigata, their partitions inosculate with each other, so as to divide the space intervening between each layer and the next into an irregular network, presenting in vertical section the appearance shown in Fig. 334; whilst in *N. garansensis* they are broken up

FIG. 334.

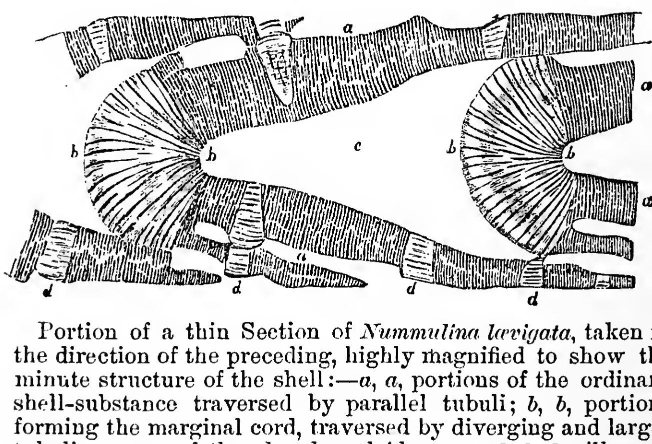


Vertical Section of portion of *Nummulina lævigata*:—*a*, margin of external whorl; *b*, one of the outer row of chambers; *c*, *c*, whorl invested by *a*; *d*, one of the chambers of the fourth whorl from the margin; *e*, *e'*, marginal portions of the enclosed whorls; *f*, investing portions of outer whorl; *g*, *g*, spaces left between the investing portion of successive whorls; *h*, *h*, sections of the partitions dividing these.

into a number of chamberlets, having little or no direct communication with each other.

490. Notwithstanding that the inner chambers are thus so deeply

FIG. 335.

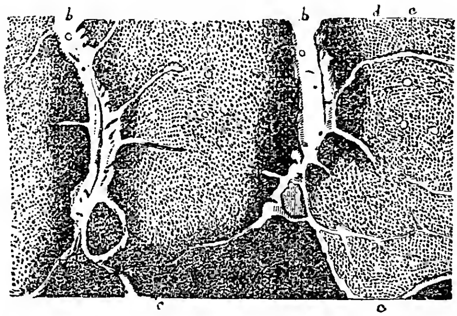


Portion of a thin Section of *Nummulina lævigata*, taken in the direction of the preceding, highly magnified to show the minute structure of the shell:—*a*, *a*, portions of the ordinary shell-substance traversed by parallel tubuli; *b*, *b*, portions forming the marginal cord, traversed by diverging and larger tubuli; *c*, one of the chambers laid open; *d*, *d*, *d*, pillars of solid substance not perforated by tubuli.

buried in the mass of investing whorls, yet there is evidence that the segments of sarcode which they contained were not cut off

from communication with the exterior, but that they may have retained their vitality to the last. The shell itself is almost everywhere minutely porous, being penetrated by parallel tubuli which pass directly from one surface to the other. These tubes are shown, as divided lengthways by a vertical section, in Fig. 335, *a, a*; whilst the appearance they present when cut across in a horizontal section is shown in Fig. 336, the transparent shell-substance *a, a, a,* being closely dotted with minute punctations which mark their orifices. In that portion of the shell, however, which forms the margin of each whorl (Fig. 335, *b, b*), the tubes are larger, and diverge from each other at greater intervals; and it is shown by horizontal sections that they communicate freely with each other laterally, so as to form a network such as is seen at *b, b*, Fig. 337. At certain other points, *d, d, d* (Fig. 335), the shell-substance is not perforated by tubes, but is peculiarly dense in its texture, forming solid pillars which seem to strengthen the other parts; and in Nummulites whose surfaces have been much exposed to attrition, it commonly happens that the pillars of the superficial layer, being harder than the ordinary shell-substance, and being consequently less worn down, are left as prominences, the presence of which has often been accounted (but erroneously) as a specific character. The successive chambers of the same whorl communicate with each other by a passage left between the inner edge of the partition that separates them, and the 'marginal cord' of the preceding whorl; this passage is sometimes a single large broad aperture, but is more commonly formed by the more or less complete coalescence of several separate perforations, as is seen in Fig. 334, *b*. There is also, as in Operculina, a variable number of isolated pores in most of the septa, forming a secondary means of communication between the chambers.—The Canal-system of *Nummulina* seems to be distributed upon essentially the same plan as in *Operculina;* its passages, however, are usually more or less obscured by fossilizing material. A careful examination will generally disclose traces of them in the middle of the partitions that divide the chambers (Fig. 336, *b, b*), while from

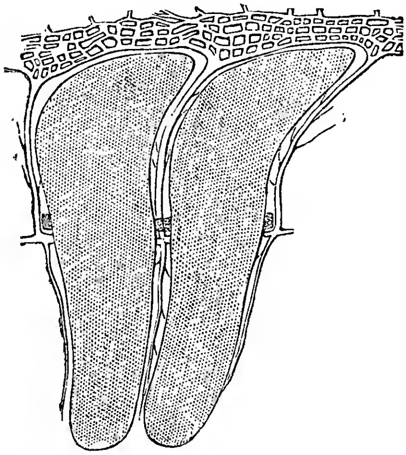
Fig. 336.



Portion of Horizontal Section of *Nummulite*, showing the structure of the walls and of the septa of the chambers:—*a, a, a*, portion of the wall covering three chambers, the punctations of which are the orifices of tubuli; *b, b*, septa between these chambers, containing canals which send out lateral branches, *c, c*, entering the chambers by larger orifices, one of which is seen at *d*.

these may be seen to proceed the lateral branches (*c*, *c*), which, after burrowing (so to speak) in the walls of the chambers, enter them by large orifices (*d*). These 'interseptal' canals, and their communication with the inosculating system of passages excavated in the marginal cord, are extremely well seen in the 'internal cast' represented in Fig. 337.

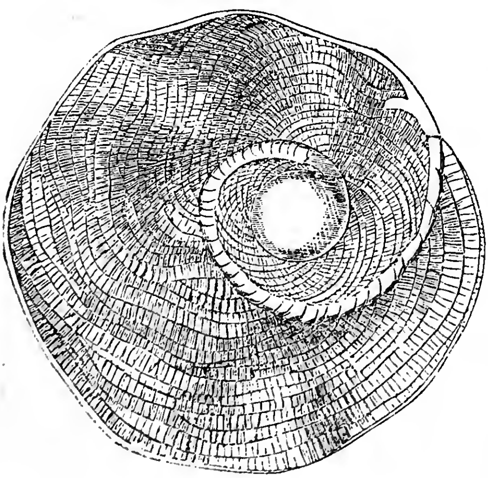
Fig. 337.



Internal cast of two of the chambers, *a*, *a*, of *Nummulina striata*, with the network of Canals, *b*, *b*, in the marginal cord, communicating with canals passing between the chambers.

491. A very interesting modification of the Nummuline type is presented in the genus *Heterostegina* (Fig. 338), which bears a very strong resemblance to *Orbiculina* in its plan of growth, whilst in every other respect it is essentially different. If the principal chambers of an *Operculina* were divided into chamberlets by secondary partitions in a direction transverse to that of the principal septa, it would be converted into a *Heterostegina;* just as a *Peneroplis* would be converted by the like subdivision into an *Orbiculina* (§ 464). Moreover, we see in Heterostegina, as in Orbiculina, a great tendency to the opening-out of the spire with the advance of age; so that the apertural margin extends round a large part of the shell, which thus tends to become discoidal. And it is not a little curious that we have in this series another form, *Cycloclypeus*, which bears exactly the same relation to Heterostegina, that Orbitolites does to Orbiculina; in being constructed upon the *cyclical* plan from the commencement, its chamberlets being arranged in rings around a central chamber (Plate xvi., fig. 1). This remarkable genus, at present only known by specimens dredged up

Fig. 338.

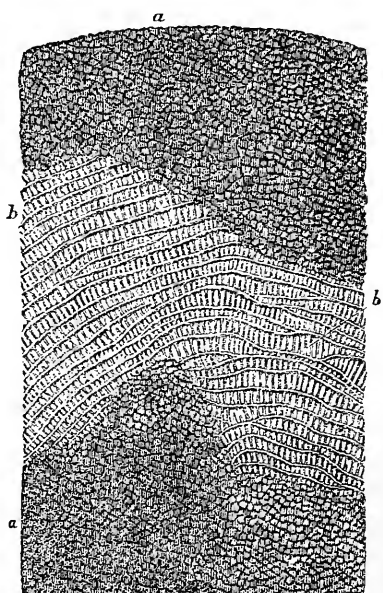


Heterostegina.

from considerable depths off the coast of Borneo, is the largest of existing Foraminifera; some specimens of its disks in the British Museum having a diameter of $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches. Notwithstanding the difference of its plan of growth, it so precisely accords with the Nummuline type in every character which essentially distinguishes the genus, that there cannot be a doubt of the intimacy of their relationship. It will be seen from the examination of that portion of the figure which shows *Cycloclypeus* in vertical section, that the solid layers of shell by which the chambered portion is enclosed are so much thicker, and consist of so many more lamellæ, in the central portion of the disk, than they do nearer its edge, that new lamellæ must be progressively added to the surfaces of the disk, concurrently with the addition of new rings of chamberlets to its margin. These lamellæ, however, are closely applied one to the other, without any intervening spaces; and they are all traversed by columns of non-tubular substance, which spring from the septal bands, and gradually increase in diameter with their approach to the surface, from which they project in the central portion of the disk as glistening tubercles.

492. The Nummulitic Limestone of certain localities (as the South-west of France, North-eastern India, &c.) contains a vast abundance of discoidal bodies termed *Orbitoides* (Fig. 333, c), which are so similar to Nummulites as to have been taken for them, but which bear a much closer resemblance to Cycloclypeus. These are only known in the fossil state; and their structure can only be ascertained by the examination of sections thin enough to be translucent. When one of these disks (which vary in size, in different species, from that of a fourpenny-piece to that of half-a-crown) is rubbed-down so as to display its internal organization, two different kinds of structure are usually seen in it: one being composed of chamberlets of very definite form, quadrangular in some species, circular in others, arranged with a general but not constant regularity in concentric circles (Figs. 339, 340, *b*, *b*); the other, less transparent, being formed of minuter chamberlets which have no

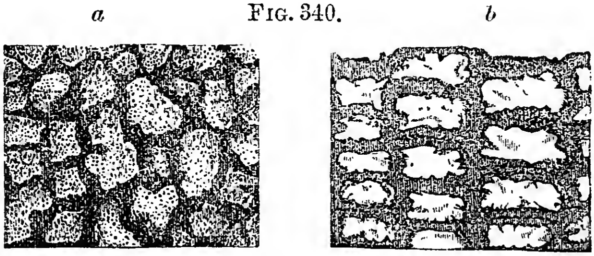
Fig. 339.



Section of *Orbitoides Fortisii*, parallel to the surface; traversing at *a*, *a*, the superficial layer, and at *b*, *b*, the median layer.

such constancy of form, but which might almost be taken for the pieces of a dissected map (*a*, *a*). In the upper and lower walls of these

Fig. 340.



Portions of the Section of *Orbitoides Fortisii* shown in Fig. 339, more highly magnified;—*a*, superficial layer; *b*, median layer.

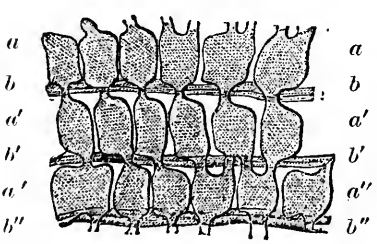
last, minute punctuations may be observed, which seem to be the orifices of connecting tubes whereby they are perforated. The relations of these two kinds of structure to each other are made evident by the examination of a vertical section (Fig. 341): which

Fig. 341.

Vertical Section of *Orbitoides Fortisii*, showing the large central chamber at *a*, and the median layer surrounding it, covered above and below by the superficial layers.

shows that the portion *b*, Figs. 339, 340, forms the median plane, its concentric circles of chamberlets being arranged round a large central chamber, as in *Cycloclypeus*; whilst the chamberlets of the portion *a* are irregularly superposed one upon the other, so as to form several layers which are most numerous towards the centre of the disk, and thin-away gradually towards its margin. The disposition and connections of the chamberlets of the median layer in *Orbitoides* seem to correspond very closely with those which have been already described as prevailing in *Cycloclypeus*; the most satisfactory indications to this effect being furnished by the siliceous 'internal casts' to be met with in certain Green Sands, which afford

Fig. 342.

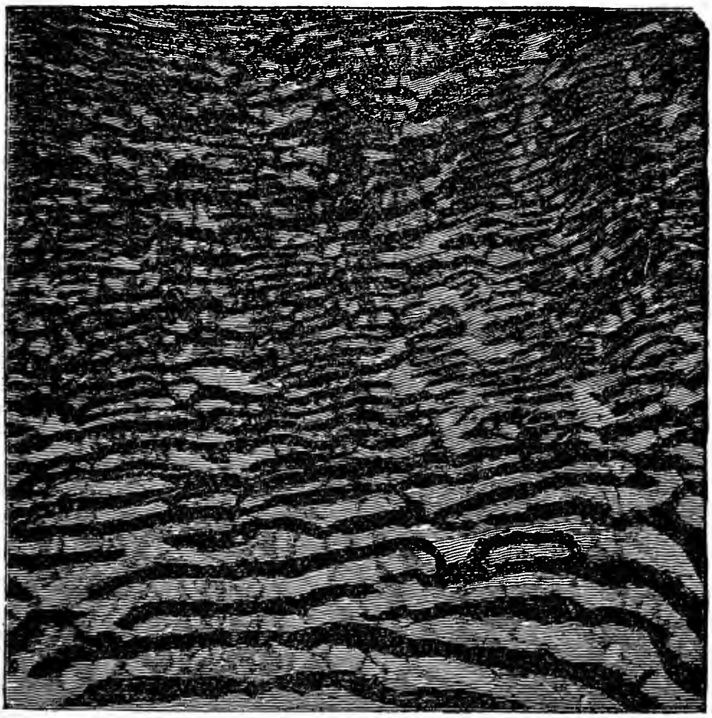


Internal Cast of portion of median plane of *Orbitoides Fortisii*, showing at *a a*, *a' a'*, *a'' a''*, six chambers of each of three zones, with their mutual communications; and at *b b*, *b' b'*, *b'' b''*, portions of three annular canals.

a model of the sarcode-body of the animal. In such a fragment (Fig. 342) we recognize the chamberlets of three successive zones, a, a', a'', each of which seems normally to communicate by one or two passages with the chamberlets of the zone internal and external to its own; whilst between the chamberlets of the same zone there seems to be no direct connection. They are brought into relation, however, by means of annular canals, which seem to represent the spiral canals of the Nummulite, and of which the 'internal casts' are seen at $b\ b$, $b'\ b'$, $b''\ b''$.

493. A most remarkable Fossil, referable to the Foraminiferal type, has been recently discovered in strata much older than the very earliest that were previously known to contain Organic remains; and the determination of its real character may be regarded as one of the most interesting results of Microscopic

FIG. 343.



Vertical Section of *Eozoön Canadense*, showing alternation of Calcareous (light) and Serpentinous (dark) lamellæ.

research. This fossil, which has received the name *Eozoön Canadense* (Fig. 343), is found in beds of Serpentine Limestone that

occur near the base of the *Laurentian* formation* of Canada, which has its parallel in Europe in the 'fundamental gneiss' of Bohemia and Bavaria, and in the very earliest stratified rocks of Scandinavia and Scotland. These, beds are found in many parts to contain masses of considerable size, but usually of indeterminate form, disposed after the manner of an ancient Coral Reef, and consisting of alternating layers—frequently numbering from 50 to 100—of Carbonate of Lime and Serpentine (silicate of magnesia). The regularity of this alternation, and the fact that it presents itself also between other Calcareous and Siliceous minerals, having led to a suspicion that it had its origin in Organic structure, thin sections of well-preserved specimens were submitted to microscopic examination by Dr. Dawson of Montreal, who at once recognized its Foraminiferal nature:† the *calcareous* layers presenting the characteristic appearances of true *shell*, so disposed as to form an irregularly chambered structure, and frequently traversed by systems of ramifying canals corresponding to those of *Calcarina* (§ 484); whilst the *serpentinous* or other siliceous layers were regarded by him as having been formed by the infiltration of silicates in solution into the cavities originally occupied by the sarcode-body of the animal,—a process of whose occurrence at various Geological periods, and also at the present time, abundant evidence has already been adduced. Having himself taken up the investigation (at the instance of Sir William Logan), the Author was not only able to confirm Dr. Dawson's conclusions, but to adduce new and important evidence in support of them.‡ Although this determination has been called in question, on the ground that some resemblance to the supposed organic structure of Eozoön is presented by bodies of purely Mineral origin,§ yet, as it has been accepted not only by most of those whose knowledge of Foraminiferal structure gives weight to their judgment, (among whom the late Prof. Max Schulze may be specially named), but also by Geologists who have

* This *Laurentian formation* was first identified as a regular series of stratified rocks, underlying the equivalents not merely of the Silurian, but also of the Upper and Lower Cambrian systems of this country, by Sir William Logan, the former able Director of the Geological Survey of Canada.

† This recognition was due, as Dr. Dawson has explicitly stated in his original Memoir ("Quarterly Journal of the Geological Society," Vol. xxi., p. 54), to his acquaintance not merely with the Author's previous researches on the minute structure of the *Foraminifera*, but with the special characters presented by thin sections of *Calcarina* which had been transmitted to him by the Author. Dr. D. has given an excellent account of the Geological and Mineralogical relations of *Eozoön*, as well of its Organic structure, in a small book entitled "The Dawn of Life."

‡ For a fuller account of the results of the Author's own Study of *Eozoön*, and of the basis on which the above reconstruction is founded, see his Papers, in "Quart. Journ. of Geol. Soc.," Vol. xxi., p. 59, and Vol. xxii., p. 219, and in the "Intellectual Observer," Vol. vii. (1865), p. 278; and his 'Further Researches,' in "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," June, 1874.

§ See the Memoirs of Profs. King and Rowney, in "Quart. Journ. of Geol. Soc.," Vol. xxii., p. 185; and "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," May, 1874.

PLATE XVII.

FIG. 1.

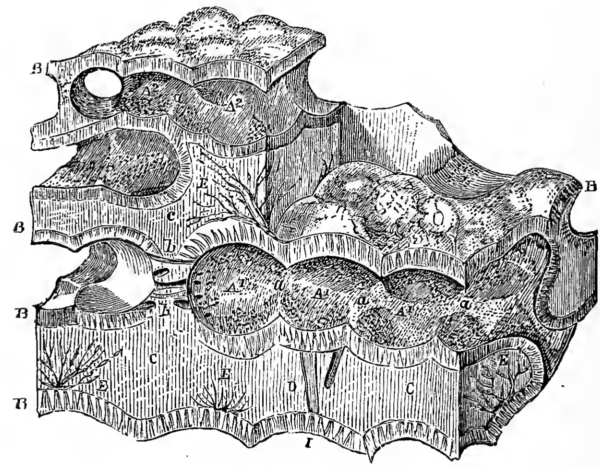
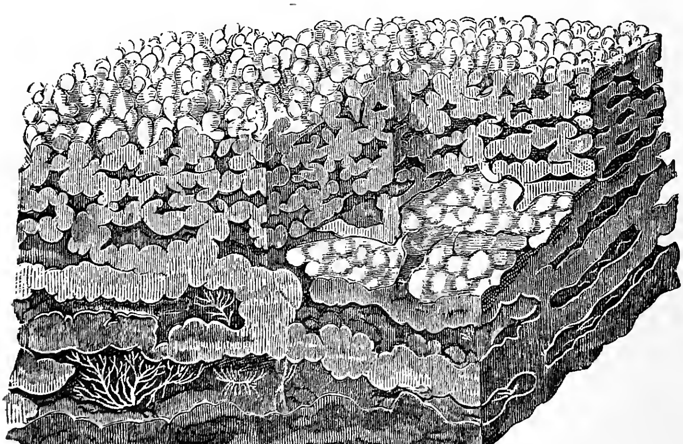


FIG. 2.



STRUCTURE OF EOZOÖN CANADENSE.

[To face p 589.

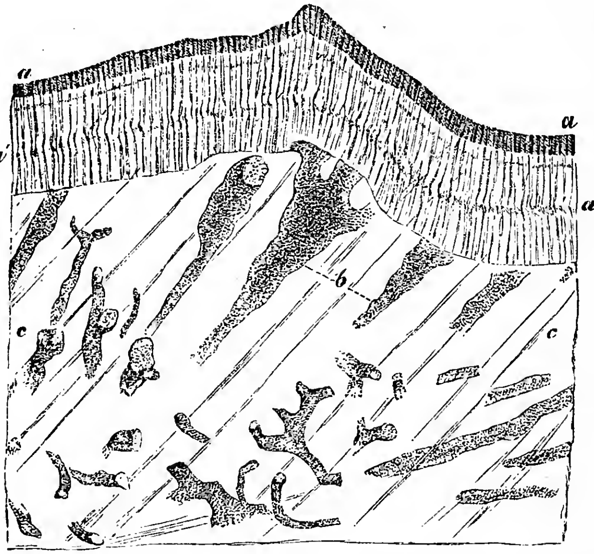
specially studied the Micro-mineralogical structure of the older Metamorphic rocks,* the Author feels justified in here describing *Eozoön* as he believes it to have existed when it originally extended itself as an animal growth over vast areas of the sea-bottom in the Laurentian epoch.

494. Whilst essentially belonging to the *Nummuline* group, in virtue of the fine tubulation of the shelly layers forming the 'proper wall' of its chambers, *Eozoön* is related to various types of recent Foraminifera in its other characters. For in its indeterminate zoöphytic mode of growth, it agrees with *Polytrema* (§ 483); in the incomplete separation of its chambers, it has its parallel in *Carpenteria* (§ 481); whilst in the high development of its 'intermediate skeleton' and of the 'canal-system' by which this is formed and nourished, it finds its nearest representative in *Calcarina* (§ 484). Its calcareous layers were so superposed, one upon another, as to include between them a succession of 'storeys' of *chambers* (Plate XVII., fig, 1, A^1, A^1, A^2, A^2); the chambers of each 'storey' usually opening one into another, as at *a*, *a*, like apartments *en suite;* but being occasionally divided by complete *septa*, as at *b*, *b*. These septa are traversed by passages of communication between the chambers which they separate; resembling those which, in existing types, are occupied by *stolons* connecting together the segments of the sarcode-body. Each layer of shell consists of two finely-tubulated or 'nummuline' lamellæ, B, B, which form the boundaries of the chambers beneath and above, serving (so to speak) as the *ceiling* of the former, and as the *floor* of the latter; and of an intervening deposit of homogeneous shell-substance C, C, which constitutes the 'intermediate skeleton.' The tubuli of this 'nummuline layer (Fig. 344) are usually filled-up (as in the Nummulites of the 'nummulitic limestone') by mineral infiltration, so as in transparent sections to present a fibrous appearance; but it fortunately happens that through their having in some cases escaped infiltration, the tubulation is as distinct as it is even in recent Nummuline shells (Fig. 344), bearing a singular resemblance in its occasional waviness to that of the Crab's claw (§ 613). The thickness of this interposed layer varies considerably in different parts of the same mass; being in general greatest near its base, and progressively diminishing towards its upper surface. The 'intermediate skeleton' is occasionally traversed by large passages (D), which seem to establish a connection between the successive layers

* Among these the Author is permitted to mention Prof. Geikie, of Edinburgh, who has thus studied the older rocks of Scotland, and Prof. Bonney, of Cambridge and London, who has made a like study of the Cornish and other Serpentines. By both these eminent authorities he is assured that they have met with no purely Mineral structure in the least resembling *Eozoön*, either in its regular alternation of Calcareous and Serpentinous lamellæ, or in the dendritic extensions of the latter into the former; and while they accept as entirely satisfactory the doctrine of its Organic origin maintained by the Author, they find themselves unable to conceive of any Inorganic agency by which such a structure could have been produced.

of chambers; and it is penetrated by arborescent systems of canals (E, E), which are often distributed both so extensively and so

Fig. 344.



Vertical Section of a portion of one of the Calcareous lamellæ of *Eozoön* Canadense:—*a a*, Nummuline layer, perforated by parallel tubuli, which show a flexure along the line *a' a'*; beneath this is seen the intermediate skeleton, *c*, *c*, traversed by the large canals, *b*, *b*, and by oblique cleavage planes, which extend also into the nummuline layer.

minutely through its substance, as to leave very little of it without a branch. These canals take their origin, not directly from the chambers, but from irregular *lacunæ* or interspaces between the outside of the proper chamber-walls and the 'intermediate skeleton,' exactly as in *Calcarina* (§ 484); the extensions of the sarcode body which occupied them having apparently been formed by the coalescence of the pseudopodial filaments that passed through the tubulated lamellæ.

495. In the fossilized condition in which *Eozoön* is most commonly found, not only the cavities of the chambers, but the canal-systems to their smallest ramifications, are filled-up by the siliceous infiltration which has taken the place of the original sarcode-body, as in the cases already cited (§ 487 *note*); and thus when a piece of this fossil is subjected to the action of dilute acid, by which its calcareous portion is dissolved-away, we obtain an *internal cast* of its chambers and canal-system (Plate XVII., fig. 2), which, though altogether dissimilar in *arrangement*, is essentially analogous in *character* to the 'internal casts' represented in Figs. 328, 332. This cast presents us, therefore, with a *model* in hard Serpentine of the soft sarcode-body which originally occupied the chambers, and

extended itself into the ramifying canals, of the calcareous shell; and, like that of *Polystomella* (§ 487), it affords an even more satisfactory elucidation of the relations of these parts, than we could have gained from the study of the living organism. We see that each of the layers of serpentine, forming the lower part of such a specimen, is made up of a number of coherent segments, which have only undergone a partial separation; these appear to have extended themselves horizontally without any definite limit; but have here and there developed new segments in a vertical direction, so as to give origin to new layers. In the spaces between these successive layers, which were originally occupied by the calcareous shell, we see the 'internal casts' of the branching canal-system; which give us the exact models of the extensions of the sarcode-body that originally passed into them.—But this is not all. In specimens in which the nummuline layer constituting the 'proper wall' of the chambers was originally well preserved, and in which the decalcifying process has been carefully managed (so as not, by too rapid an evolution of carbonic acid gas, to disturb the arrangement of the serpentinous residuum), that layer is represented by a thin white film covering the exposed surfaces of the segments; the superficial aspect of which, as well as its sectional view, are shown in fig. 2. And when this layer is examined with a sufficient magnifying power, it is found to consist of extremely minute needle-like fibres of Serpentine, which sometimes stand upright, parallel, and almost in contact with each other, like the fibres of asbestos (so that the film which they form has been termed the 'asbestiform layer'), but which are frequently grouped in converging brush-like bundles, so as to be very close to each other in certain spots at the surface of the film, whilst widely separated in others. Now these fibres, which are less than 1-10,000th of an inch in diameter, are the 'internal casts' of the tubuli of the Nummuline layer (a precise parallel to them being presented in the 'internal cast' of a *recent* Amphistegina in the Author's possession); and their arrangement presents all the varieties which have been mentioned (§ 488) as existing in the shells of *Operculina*.—Thus these delicate and beautiful siliceous fibres represent those *pseudopodial* threads of sarcode, which originally traversed the minutely-tubular walls of the chambers; and *a precise model* of the most ancient animal of which we have any knowledge, notwithstanding the extreme softness and tenuity of its substance, is thus presented to us, with a completeness that is scarcely even approached in any later fossil.

496. In the upper part of the 'decalcified' specimen shown in Plate XVII., fig. 2, it is to be observed that the segments are confusedly heaped together, instead of being regularly arranged in layers; the *lamellated* mode of growth having given place to the *acervuline*. This change is by no means uncommon among Foraminifera; an irregular piling-together of the chambers being frequently met-with in the later growth of types, whose earlier

increase takes place upon some much more definite plan. After what fashion the *earliest* development of *Eozoön* took place, we have at present no knowledge whatever; but in a *young* specimen which has been recently discovered, it is obvious that each successive 'storey' of chambers was limited by the closing-in of the shelly layer at its edges, so as to give to the entire fabric a definite form closely resembling that of a straightened *Peneroplis* (Plate xv., fig. 5). Thus it is obvious that the chief peculiarity of *Eozoön* lay in its capacity for *indefinite extension;* so that the product of a single germ might attain a size comparable to that of a massive Coral.—Now this, it will be observed, is simply due to the fact that its increase by gemmation takes place *continuously;* the new segments successively budded-off remaining in connection with the original stock, instead of detaching themselves from it as in Foraminifera generally. Thus the little *Globigerina* forms a shell of which the number of chambers does not usually seem to increase beyond *sixteen*, any additional segments detaching themselves so as to form separate shells; but by the repetition of this multiplication, the sea-bottom of large areas of the Atlantic Ocean at the present time has come to be covered with accumulations of *Globigerinæ*, which, if fossilized, would form beds of Limestone not less massive than those which have had their origin in the growth of *Eozoön*.—The difference between the two modes of increase may be compared to the difference between a Plant and a Tree. For in the Plant the individual organism never attains any considerable size, its extension by gemmation being limited; though the aggregation of individuals produced by the detachment of its buds (as in a Potato field) may give rise to a mass of vegetation as great as that formed in the largest Tree by the continuous putting forth of new buds.

497. It has been hitherto only in the Laurentian Serpentine-Limestone of Canada, that *Eozoön* has presented itself in such a state of preservation as fully to justify the assumption of its Organic nature. But from the greater or less resemblance which is presented to this by Serpentine-Limestones occurring in various localities, among strata that seem the Geological equivalents of the Canadian Laurentians, it seems a justifiable conclusion that this type was very generally diffused in the earlier ages of the Earth's history; and that it had a large (and probably the chief) share in the production of the most ancient Calcareous strata, separating Carbonate of Lime from its solution in Ocean-water, in the same manner as do the Polypes by whose growth Coral-reefs and islands are being upraised at the present time.

An elaborate work, "Der Bau des Eozoön Canadense" (1878) has been recently published by Prof. Möbius of Kiel, in which the structure of *Eozoön* is compared with that of various types of Foraminifera, and, as it differs from that of every one of them, is affirmed not to be Organic at all, but purely Mineral. Upon this the Author would remark, that if the validity of this mode of reasoning be admitted, *any* Fossil whose structure

does not correspond with that of some existing type, is to be similarly rejected. Thus, the *Stromatopora* of Silurian and Devonian rocks, which some Palæontologists regard as a Coral, others as Polyzoary, others as a Calcareous Sponge, and others as Foraminifer, would not be a fossil at all, because it differs from every known living form. Yet the suggestion that it is of Mineral origin would be scouted as absurd by every Palæontologist. Again, it is urged by Prof. Möbius that as the supposed canal-system of *Eozoön* has not the constancy and regularity of distribution which it presents in existing Foraminifera, it must be accounted a Mineral infiltration. To this the Author would reply:—(1) That a prolonged and careful study of this 'canal-system,' in a great variety of modes, with an amount of material at his disposal many times greater than Prof. Möbius could command, has satisfied him that in well-preserved specimens the canal-system, so far from being vague and indefinite, has a very regular plan of distribution;—(2) That this plan does not differ more from the arrangements characteristic of the several types of existing *Foraminifera*, than these differ from each other, its *general* conformity to them being such as to satisfy Prof. Max Schultze (one of the ablest Foraminiferalists of his time) of its Foraminiferal character;—and (3) That not only does the distribution of the canal-system of *Eozoön* differ in certain essential features from every form of Mineral infiltration hitherto brought to light, but that *canal-systems in no respect differing from each other in distribution are occupied by different minerals,*—a fact which seems conclusively to point to their *pre-existence* in the Calcareous layers, and the *subsequent* penetration of these minerals into the passages previously occupied by sarcode,—precisely as has happened in those 'internal casts' of existing *Foraminifera* (§ 497) which Prof. Möbius altogether ignores.

The argument for the Foraminiferal nature of *Eozoön* is essentially a *cumulative* one, resting on a number of *independent probabilities*, no one of which, taken separately, has the cogency of a *proof;* yet the accordance of them all with that hypothesis has an almost demonstrative value, no other hypothesis accounting at once for the whole assemblage of facts.—As it is the Author's intention to set forth this in the best and completest form he can devise, at the earliest possible period, he would beg for *a suspension of judgment* on the part of those who have credited Prof. Möbius with having completely settled the question; the small amount of evidence contained in his Memoir bearing no comparison to that of an opposite bearing of which the Author is in possession.

498. *Collection and Selection of Foraminifera.*—Many of the Foraminifera attach themselves in the living state to Sea-weeds, Zoöphytes, &c.; and they should, therefore, be carefully looked-for on such bodies, especially when it is desired to observe their internal organization and their habits of life. They are often to be collected in much larger numbers, however, from the sand or mud dredged-up from the sea-bottom, or even from that taken from between the tide-marks. In a paper containing some valuable hints on this subject,* Mr. Legg mentions that, in walking over the Small-Mouth Sand, which is situated on the north-side of Portland Bay, he observed the sand to be distinctly marked with white ridges, many yards in length, running parallel with the edge of

* "Transactions of Microscopical Society," 2nd Series, Vol. ii. (1854), p. 19.

the water; and upon examining portions of these, he found Foraminifera in considerable abundance. One of the most fertile sources of supply that our own coasts afford, is the *ooze* of the Oyster-beds, in which large numbers of living specimens will be found; the variety of specific forms, however, is usually not very great. In separating these bodies from the particles of sand, mud, &c., with which they are mixed, various methods may be adopted, in order to shorten the tedious labour of picking them out, one by one, under the Simple Microscope; and the choice to be made among these will mainly depend upon the condition of the Foraminifera, the importance (or otherwise) of obtaining them alive, and the nature of the substances with which they are mingled.—Thus, if it be desired to obtain *living* specimens from the oyster-ooze, for the examination of their soft parts, or for preservation in an Aquarium, much time will be saved by stirring the mud (which should be taken from the surface only of the deposit) in a jar with water, and then allowing it to stand for a few moments; for the finer particles will remain diffused through the liquid, while the coarser will subside; and as the Foraminifera (in the present case) will be among the *heavier*, they will be found at the bottom of the vessel with comparatively little extraneous matter, after this operation has been repeated two or three times. It would always be well to examine the first deposit let fall by the water that has been poured-away; as this may contain the smaller and lighter forms of Foraminifera.—But supposing that it be only desired to obtain the *dead* shells from a mass of sand brought-up by the dredge, a very different method should be adopted. The whole mass should be exposed for some hours to the heat of an oven, and be turned-over several times, until it is found to have been thoroughly dried throughout; and then, after being allowed to cool, it should be stirred in a large vessel of water. The chambers of their shells being now occupied by air alone (for the bodies of such as were alive will have shrunk-up almost to nothing), the Foraminifera will be the *lightest* portion of the mass; and they will be found floating on the water, while the particles of sand, &c., subside. Another method, devised by Mr. Legg, consists in taking advantage of the relative sizes of different kinds of Foraminifera and of the substances that accompany them. This, which is especially applicable to the sand and rubbish obtainable from Sponges (which may be got in large quantity from the sponge-merchants), consists in sifting the whole aggregate through successive sieves of wire-gauze, commencing with one of 10 wires to the inch, which will separate large extraneous particles, and proceeding to those of 20, 40, 70, and 100 wires to the inch, each (especially that of 70) retaining a much larger proportion of Foraminiferal shells than of the accompanying particles; so that a large portion of the extraneous matter being thus got rid of, the final selection becomes comparatively easy.—Certain forms of Foraminifera are found attached to Shells, especially bivalves (such as the *Chamaceæ*) with foliated surfaces; and a careful examination of those of

tropical seas, when brought home 'in the rough,' is almost sure to yield most valuable results.—The final selection of specimens for mounting should always be made under some appropriate form of Single Microscope (§§ 43–48); a fine camel-hair pencil, with the point wetted between the lips, being the instrument which may be most conveniently and safely employed, even for the most delicate specimens. In mounting Foraminifera as Microscopic objects, the method to be adopted must entirely depend upon whether they are to be viewed by *transmitted* or by *reflected* light. In the former case they should be mounted in Canada balsam (§ 210); the various precautions to prevent the retention of air-bubbles, which have been already described, being carefully observed. In the latter no plan is so simple, easy, and effectual, as the attaching them with a little gum to wooden slides (Fig. 124). They should be fixed in various positions, so as to present all the different aspects of the shell, particular care being taken that its mouth is clearly displayed; and this may often be most readily managed by attaching the specimens *sideways* to the wall of the circular depression of the slide. Or the specimens may be attached to disks fitted for being held in Morris's Disk-holder (Fig. 95); whilst for the examination of specimens in every variety of position, Mr. R. Beck's Disk-holder (Fig. 94) will be found extremely convenient. Where, as will often happen, the several individuals differ considerably from one another, special care should be taken to arrange them in *series* illustrative of their range of variation and of the mutual connections of even the most diverse forms.—For the display of the internal structure of Foraminifera, it will often be necessary to make extremely thin sections, in the manner already described (§§ 192–194); and much time will be saved by attaching a number of specimens to the glass slide at once, and by grinding them down together (§ 192, *note*). For the preparation of sections, however, of the extreme thinness that is often required, those which have been thus reduced should be transferred to separate slides, and finished-off each one by itself.

Radiolaria.

499. It has been shown that one series of forms belonging to the *Rhizopod* type is characterized by the *radiating* arrangement of their rod-like *pseudopodia* (§ 399), suggesting the designation *Heliozoa* or 'sun-animalcules;' and that even among those fresh-water forms that do not depart widely from the common *Actinophrys* (Fig. 285), there are some whose bodies are enclosed in a complete siliceous skeleton. Now just as the Reticularian type of Rhizopod life culminates in the marine calcareous-shelled *Foraminifera*, so does the Heliozoic type seem to culminate in the marine *Radiolaria;* which, living for the most part near the surface of the ocean, form *siliceous* skeletons (often of marvellous symmetry and beauty), that fall to the bottom on the death of the animals that produced them, and may remain unchanged, like those of the Diatoms, through

unlimited periods of time. Some of these skeletons, mingled with those of Diatoms, had been detected by Prof. Ehrenberg in the

FIG. 345.

Fossil *Radiolaria* from Barbadoes:—*a*, Podocyrtis mitra; *b*, Rhabdolithus sceptrum; *c*, Lychnocanium falciferum; *d*, Eucyrtidium tubulus; *e*, Flustrella concentrica; *f*, Lychnocanium lucerna; *g*, Eucyrtidium elegans; *h*, Dictyospyris clathrus; *i*, Eucyrtidium Mongolfieri; *k*, Stephanolithis spinescens; *l*, S. nodosa; *m*, Lithocyclia ocellus; *n*, Cephalolithis sylvina; *o*, Podocyrtis cothurnata; *p*, Rhabdolithus pipa.

midst of various deposits of Foraminiferal origin, such as the Calcareous Tertiaries of Sicily and Greece, and of Oran in Africa; and he established for them the group of *Polycystina*, to which he was able also to refer a beautiful series of forms making-up nearly the whole of a siliceous sandstone prevailing through an extensive district in the island of Barbadoes (Fig. 345). Nothing, however, was known of the nature of the animals that formed them, until they were discovered and studied in the living state by Prof. J. Müller;* who established the group of *Radiolaria*, including

* 'Ueber die *Thalassicollen*, *Polycystinen*, und *Acanthometren* des Mittelmeeres,' in "Abhandlungen der Königl. Akad. der Wissensch. zu Berlin," 1858, and separately published; also 'Ueber die im Hafen von Messina beobachteten *Polycystinen*,' in the "Monatsberichte" of the Berlin Academy for 1855, pp. 671-676.

PLATE XVIII.

Fig. 1.

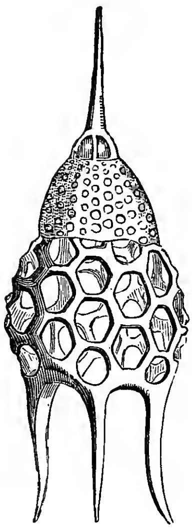


Fig. 2.

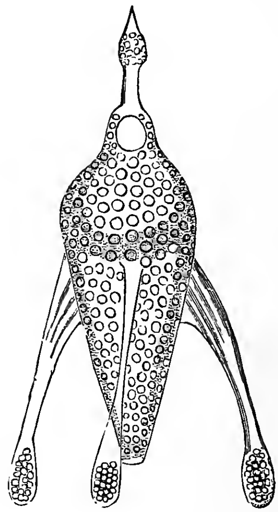


Fig. 3.

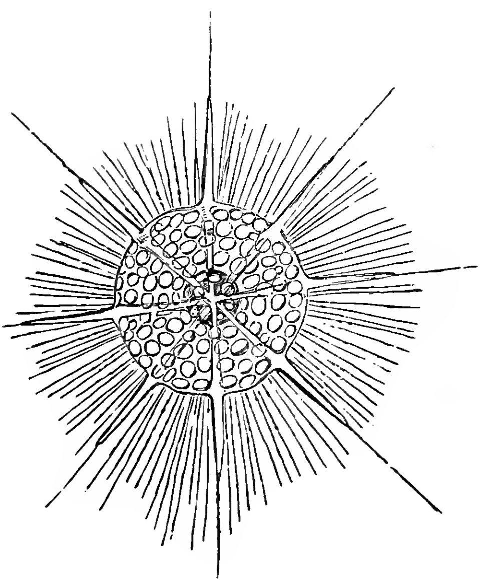
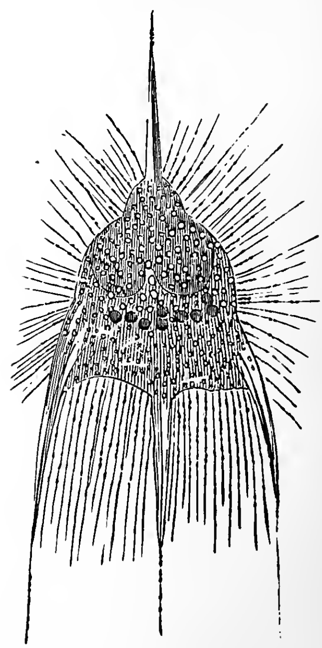


Fig. 4.



Various Forms of Radiolaria.

[*To face p.* 597.

therein, with the *Polycystina* of Ehrenberg, the *Acanthometrina* (§ 505) first recognized by himself, and the *Thalassicolla* (§ 506) which had been discovered by Prof. Huxley. Not long afterwards appeared the magnificent and 'epoch-making' work of Prof. Haeckel;* and since that time much has been added by various observers to our knowledge of this group, which still remains, however, very imperfect. For the following general account of its characters, the Author is indebted to the valuable summary of "Recent Researches in regard to the Radiolaria" lately given by Prof. Mivart.†

500. Each individual Radiolarian consists of two portions of coloured or colourless sarcode: one portion nucleated and central; the other portion peripheral, and almost always containing certain yellow corpuscles. These two portions are separated by a chitinous membrane called the *capsule;* but this is so porous as to allow of their free communication with each other. The yellow corpuscles seem to be true 'cells;' having a regular membranous wall, with protoplasmic contents (including starch-granules), and distinct nuclei; and multiplying themselves by subdivision. But there is considerable doubt whether they are really parts of the animal body, as they have been found in vigorous life when the rest of the animal is dead and decaying; and they are regarded by Cienkowski as parasites. The *pseudopodia* radiate in all directions (Plate XVIII., figs. 3, 4) from the deeper portion of the extra-capsular sarcode; they have generally much persistency of direction, and very little flexibility; in some species (but not ordinarily) they branch and anastomose; while in others they are enclosed in hollow rods that form part of the siliceous skeleton, and issue forth from the extremities of these. A flow of granules takes place along them; and the mode in which they obtain food-particles (consisting of Diatoms and other minute Algæ, marine Infusoria, &c.), and draw them into the sarcode-bodies of the Radiolarians, appears to correspond entirely with their action in *Actinophrys* and other Heliozoa (§ 399).

501. In most *Radiolaria,* skeletal structures are developed in the sarcode-body, either inside or outside the capsule, or in both positions; sometimes in the form of investing networks having more or less of a *spheroidal* form (Plate XIX., figs. 1, 2), or of *radiating* spines (fig. 3), or of combinations of these (figs. 4, 5). But in many cases the skeleton consists only of a few scattered spicules; and this is especially the case in certain large composite forms or 'colonies' (Fig. 350) which may consist of as many as a thousand zooids, aggregated together in various forms, discoidal, cylindrical, spheroidal, chain-like, or even necklace-like. The 'colonies' seem to be produced, like the multiple segments of the bodies of Foraminifera (§ 456), by the non-sexual multiplication of a primordial zooid; but whether this multiplication takes place by fission, or by the budding-off of portions of the sarcode-body, has not yet been clearly

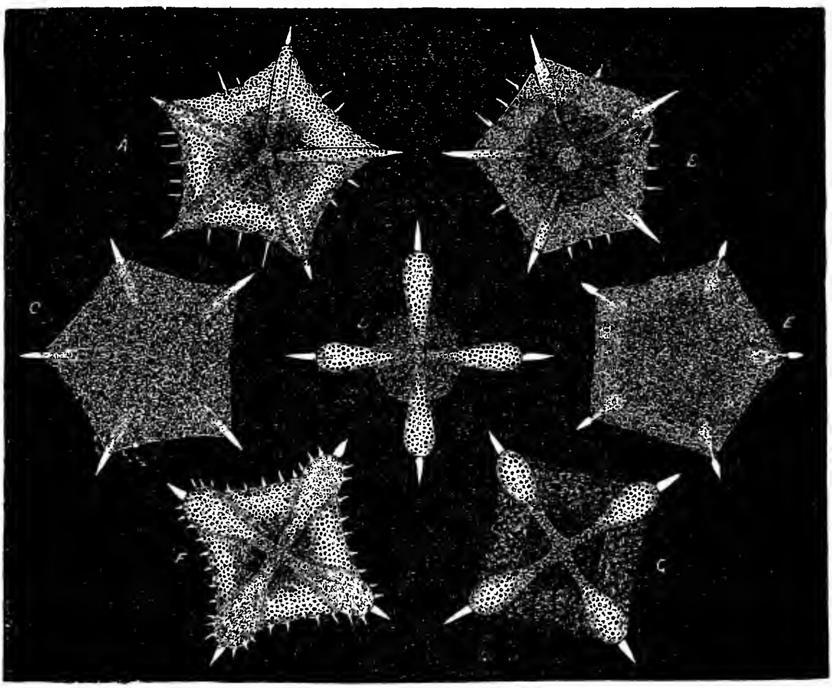
* "Die *Radiolarien* (Rhizopoda Radiaria)," Berlin, 1862.

† "Journal of the Linnæan Society," Vol. XIV. (Zool.), p. 136.

made-out. The emission of flagellated zoöspores, very similar to those of *Clathrulina* (Fig. 288), has been observed in many Radiolarians; but of the mode in which they are produced, and of their subsequent history, very little is at present known.—Until the structure and life-history of the animals of this very interesting type shall have been more fully elucidated, no satisfactory classification of them can be framed; and nothing more will be here attempted than to indicate some of the principal forms under which the Radiolarian type presents itself.

502. *Discida.*—Among the beautiful siliceous structures which are met with in the Radiolarian sandstone of Barbadoes (Fig. 345) there is none more interesting than the skeleton of *Astromma* (Fig. 346); in which we have a remarkable example of the *range of*

FIG. 346.

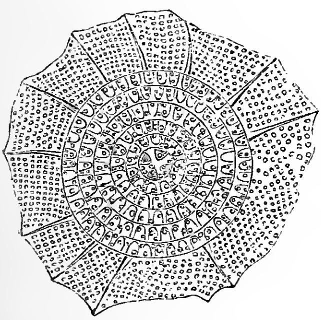


Varietal modifications of *Astromma.*

variation that is compatible with conformity to a general plan of structure. As in other forms of Haeckel's group of *Discida*, there is in this skeleton a combination of radial and of circumferential parts; the former consisting of solid spoke-like rods, whilst the latter is composed of a siliceous network more or less completely filling up the spaces between the rays. The radial part of the skeleton predominates in the beautiful 4-rayed example represented at D, having the form of a Maltese cross; whilst in F and G it still shows itself

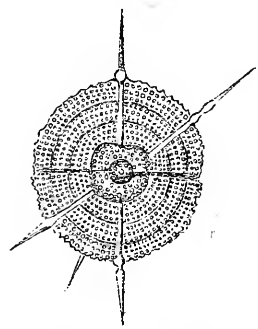
very conspicuously, though the spaces between the rays are in great part filled up by the circumferential network. In the 5-rayed specimens A and B, on the other hand, the radial portion is much less developed, whilst the circumferential becomes more discoidal. And in C and E, while the circumferential network forms a pentagonal disk, the radial portion is represented only by solid projections at its angles. The transition between the extreme forms is found to be so gradual when a number of specimens are compared, that no lines of specific distinction can be drawn between them ; and the difference in the *number* of rays is probably of no more account in these low forms of Animal life, than it is in the discoidal Diatoms (§ 290).—Other discoidal forms, showing a like combination of radial and circumferential parts, are represented in Figs. 347 and 348, and also in Fig. 345, *c*, *m*.

FIG. 347.



Perichlamydium prætextum.

FIG. 348.



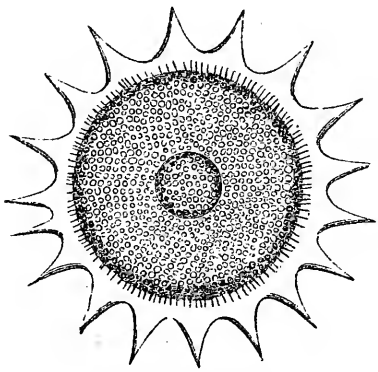
Stylodyctya gracilis.

503. *Entosphærida.*—In this group the siliceous shell is spheroidal, and is formed *within* the capsule ; and it is not traversed by radii, although prolongations of the shell often extend themselves radially outwards, as in *Cladococcus* (Plate XIX., fig. 5). Sometimes the central sphere is enclosed in two, three, or even more concentric spheres connected by radii, as in the beautiful *Actinomma* (Plate XIX., fig. 2); reminding us of the wonderful concentric spheres carved in ivory by the Chinese.—One of the most common examples of this group is the *Haliomma Humboldtii* (Fig. 349), in which the shell is double.

504. *Polycystina.*—This name, which originally included the preceding group, is now restricted to those which have the shell formed *outside* the capsule. This shell may, as in the preceding, be a simple sphere composed of an open siliceous network, as in *Ethmosphæra* (Plate XIX., fig. 1) ; or it may consist of two or three concentric spheres connected by radii ; or, again, it may put forth radial outgrowths, which sometimes extend themselves to several times the diameter of the shell, and ramify more or less minutely,

as in *Arachnosphæra* (Plate XIX., fig. 4). But more frequently the shell opens-out at one pole into a form more or less bell-like, as in *Podocyrtis* (Plate XVIII., fig. 1, and Fig. 345, *a, o*), *Rhopalocanium* (Plate XVIII., fig. 2), and *Pterocanium* (Plate XVIII., fig. 4); or it may be elongated into a somewhat cylindrical form, one pole remaining closed, while the other is more or less contracted, as in *Eucyrtidium* (Fig. 345, *d, g, i*).—The transition between these forms again, proves to be as gradational, when many specimens are compared,* as it is among *Foraminifera* (§ 488).

FIG. 349.



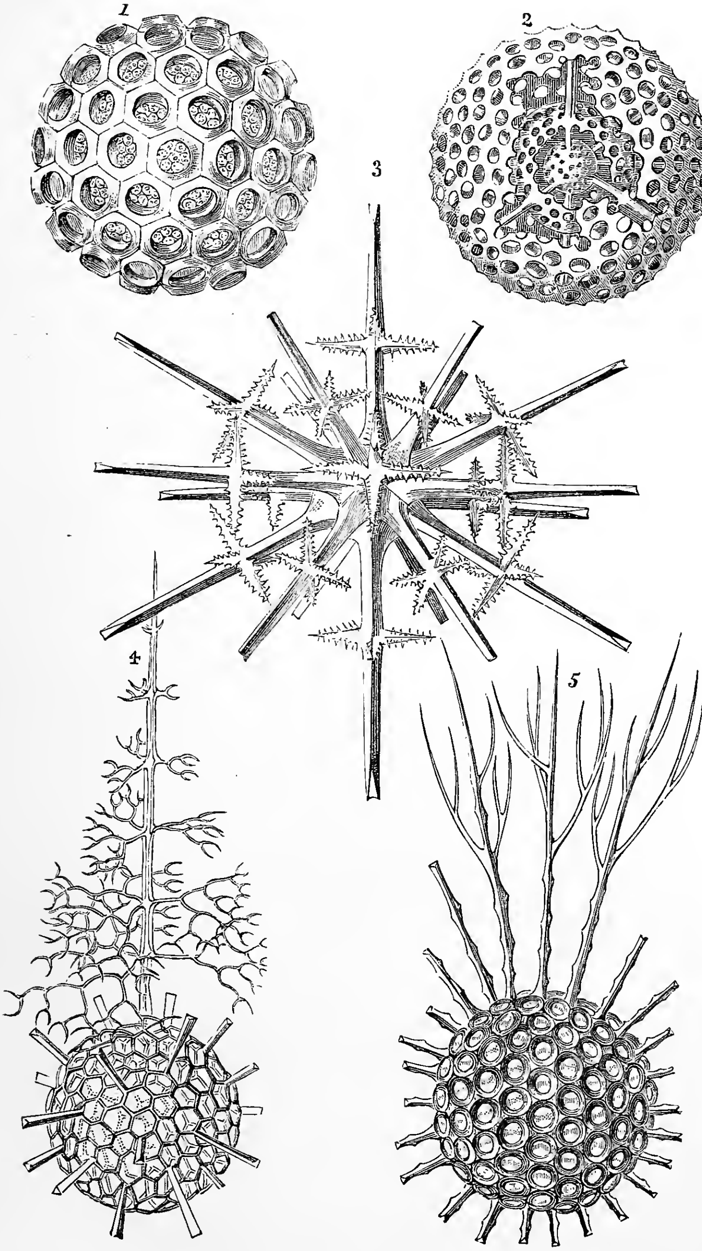
Haliomma Humboldtii.

505. *Acanthometrina.*—In this group the animal is not enclosed within a shell, but is furnished with a very regular skeleton composed of elongated spines, which radiate in all directions from a common centre (Plate XIX., fig. 3). The soft sarcode-body is spherical in form, and occupies the spaces left between the bases of these spines, which are sometimes partly enclosed (as in the species represented) by transverse projections. The 'capsule' is pierced by the pseudopodia, whose convergence may be traced from without inwards, after passing through it; and it is itself enveloped in a layer of less tenacious protoplasm, resembling that of which the pseudopodia are composed. One species, the *Acanthometra echinoides*, which presents itself to the naked eye as a crimson-red point, the diameter of the central part of its body being about 6-1000ths of an inch, is very common on some parts of the coast of Norway, especially during the prevalence of westerly winds; and the Author has himself met with it abundantly near Shetland, in the floating brown masses termed *madre* by the fishermen (who believe them to furnish food to the herring), which consist mainly of this Acanthometra mingled with Entomostraca.

506. *Collozoa.*—To this group belong these remarkable composite forms, which, exhibiting the characteristic Radiolarian type in their individual zooids, are aggregated into masses in which the skeleton is represented only by scattered spicules, as in *Sphærozoum* (Fig. 350) and *Thalassicolla.*—These 'sea-jellies,' which so abound in the seas of warm latitudes as to be among the commonest objects collected by the Tow-net, are small gelatinous rounded bodies, of very variable size and shape, but usually either globular or discoidal. Externally they are invested by a layer of

* The general Plan of structure of the *Polycystina*, and the signification of their immense variety of forms, were ably discussed by Dr. Wallich, in the "Trans. of the Microsc. Soc.," N.S., Vol. xiii. (1865), p. 75.

PLATE XIX.

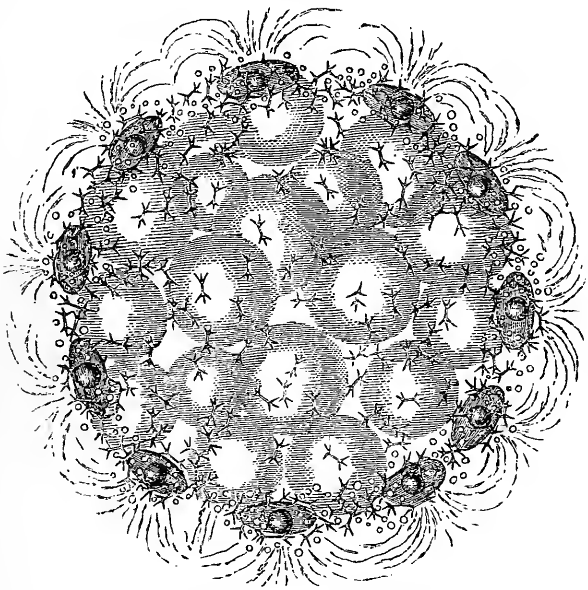


VARIOUS FORMS OF RADIOLARIA.

[To face p. 600.

condensed sarcode, which sends forth pseudopodial extensions that commonly stand out like rays, but sometimes inosculate with each

Fig. 350.



Sphærozoum ovodimare.

other so as to form network. Towards the inner surface of this coat are scattered a great number of oval bodies resembling cells, having a tolerably distinct membraniform wall and a conspicuous round central nucleus. Each of these bodies appears to be without any direct connection with the rest; but it serves as a centre round which a number of minute yellowish-green vesicles are disposed. Each of these groups is protected by a siliceous skeleton, which sometimes consists of separate spicules (as in Fig. 350), but which may be a thin perforated sphere, like that of certain Polycystina, sometimes extending itself into radial prolongations. The internal portion of each mass is composed of an aggregation of large vesicle-like bodies, imbedded in a softer sarcodic substance.*

507. From the researches made during the 'Challenger' expedition, it appears that the *Radiolaria* are very widely diffused through the waters of the ocean, some forms being more abundant

* See Prof. Huxley (to whom we owe our first knowledge of these forms) in "Ann. Nat. Hist.," Ser. 2, Vol. viii. (1851), p. 433; also Prof. Müller, of Berlin, in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," Vol. iv. (1856), p. 72, and in his Treatise "Ueber die Thalassicollen, Polycystinen, und Acanthometren des Mittelmeeres;" and the magnificent work of Prof. Haeckel, "Die Radiolarien."—Great additions to our knowledge of this group may be expected from the collections made in the 'Challenger' expedition.

in tropical and others in temperate seas; and that they live not only at or near the surface, but also at considerable depths. Their siliceous skeletons accumulate in some localities (in which the calcareous remains of Foraminifera are wanting) to such an extent as to form a 'Radiolarian ooze;' and it is obvious that the elevation of such a deposit into dry land would form a bed of siliceous sandstone resembling the well-known Barbadoes rock, which is said to attain a thickness of 1100 feet, or a similar rock of yet greater thickness in the Nicobar islands.—Few Microscopic objects are more beautiful than an assemblage of the most remarkable forms of the Barbadian *Polycystina* (Fig. 345), especially when seen brightly illuminated upon a black ground; since (for the reason formerly explained, § 103) their solid forms then become much more apparent than they are when these objects are examined by light transmitted through them. And when they are mounted in Canada-balsam, the Black-ground illumination, either by the Webster-condenser (§ 100), the Spot-lens (104), or the Paraboloid (§ 105), is much to be preferred for the purpose of display, although minute details of structure can be better made out when they are viewed as transparent objects with higher powers. Many of the more solid forms, when exposed to a high temperature on a slip of platinum foil, undergo a change in aspect which renders them peculiarly beautiful as opaque objects; their glassy transparence giving place to an enamel-like opacity. They may then be mounted on a black ground, and illuminated either with a Side-condenser, or with the Parabolic Speculum (§ 114).—No class of objects is more suitable than these to the Binocular Microscope; its stereoscopic projection causing them to be presented to the mind's eye in complete relief, so as to bring-out with the most marvellous and beautiful effect all their delicate sculpture.*

* For a fuller description of the Fossil forms of this group, see Prof. Ehrenberg's Memoirs in the "Monatsberichte" of the Berlin Academy for 1846, 1847, and 1850; also his 'Microgeologie,' 1854; and "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," Vol. xx. (1847).—The best method of separating the *Polycystina* from the Barbadoes sandstone is described by Mr. Furlong in the "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," N. S., Vol. i. (1861), p. 64.

CHAPTER XIII.

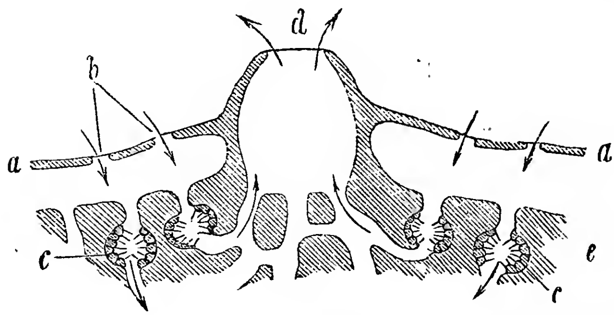
SPONGES AND ZOOPHYTES.

I. SPONGES.

508. THE determination of the real character of the animals of this Class has been entirely effected by the Microscopic examination of their minute structure; for until this came to be properly understood, not only was the general nature of these organisms entirely misapprehended, but they were regarded by many naturalists as having no certain claim to a place in the Animal Kingdom. It may now be unhesitatingly affirmed that a Sponge is essentially an aggregate of Protozoic units, of which some correspond in every particular to the collared *Flagellata* (Fig. 295), whilst others resemble *Amœbæ* (Fig. 289),—the two conditions being probably only different stages of the same life-history. These units are held together by a continuous sarcode-body, which clothes the skeletal framework that represents our usual idea of a Sponge. In the simpler forms of sponges, however, this framework is altogether absent; in others it is represented only by calcareous or siliceous 'spicules,' which are dispersed through the sarcodic substance (Fig. 352, B); in others, again, the skeleton is a keratose (horny) network, which may be entirely destitute (as in our ordinary Sponge) of any mineral support, but which is often strengthened by calcareous or siliceous spicules (Fig. 352, A); whilst in what may be regarded as the highest types of the group, the siliceous component of the skeleton increases, and the keratose diminishes, until the skeleton consists of a beautiful siliceous network resembling spun-glass (§ 511). But whatever may be the condition of the *skeleton*, that of the body that clothes it remains essentially the same; and the peculiarity that chiefly distinguishes the Sponge-colony from the plant-like colonies of the Flagellate Infusoria (Fig. 296), is that whilst the latter extend themselves *outwards* by repeated ramification, sending their zooid-bearing branches to meet the water they inhabit, the surface of the former extends itself *inwards*, forming a system of passages and cavities lined by these and the amœboid zooids, through which a current of water is drawn-in to meet them by the action of the flagella. The minute pores (Fig. 351, *b*, *b*) with which the surface *a*, *a*, of the living Sponge is beset, lead to incurrent passages that open into chambers lying beneath it (*c*, *c*); and it is especially on the walls of these 'ampullaceous sacs,' that the *flagellate* zooids present themselves. The water drawn-in by their

agency is driven outwards through a system of excurrent canals, which, uniting into larger trunks, proceed to the *oscula* or pro-

FIG. 351.



Diagrammatic section of *Spongilla* :—*a*, *a*, superficial layer; *b*, inhalant apertures; *c*, *c*, flagellated chambers; *d*, exhalant oscule; *e*, deeper substance of the sponge.

jecting vents, *d*,—from each of which, during the active life of the Sponge, a stream of water, carrying out excrementitious matter, is continually issuing. The in-current brings into the chambers both food-material and oxygen; and from the manner in which coloured particles experimentally diffused through the water wherein a Sponge is living, are received into its sarcodic substance, it seems clear that the nutrition of the entire fabric is the resultant of the feeding action of the separate amœboid and flagellate units, each of which takes-in, after its kind, the food-particles brought by the current of water, and imparts the product of its digestion of them to the general sarcodic mass.*

509. The continuous sarcode-substance or 'cyloblastema' that clothes the skeleton of the Sponge and constitutes its living body, includes great numbers of 'cytodes' (§ 392), in various stages of development; which, like isolated *Amœbœ*, are constantly undergoing changes in form and position. Their long slender pseudopodia, radiating towards those of their neighbours, often unite together to form a complex network; and it seems to be by their agency, that the continual contractions and expansions of the oscula are produced, which are very characteristic of the living Sponge.

* This view of the nature and living action of *Sponges*, originally suggested by Dujardin, was definitely put forth by the late Prof. H. James-Clark, as the result of an admirable series of researches on Sponges and Flagellate Infusoria, in the Transactions of the Boston Society of Natural History for 1868, reproduced in the "Ann. Nat. Hist." for the same year. See also his Memoir on *Spongilla* in "Amer. Journ. Sci.," 1871, pp. 426-436; reproduced in 'Monthly Microsc. Journ.' Vol. vii. (1872), p. 104.—His observations have been since fully confirmed by Messrs. Carter and Saville Kent; who have published a succession of Papers in the "Annals of Natural History," the general conclusions of which are embodied in Chap. v. of Mr. S. Kent's "Manual of the Infusoria."

It would thus seem, indeed, as if they combined in themselves the functions of nerve and muscle-elements, which are differentiated in the higher forms of animal life. Any one of these amœboids, again, detached from the mass, may lay the foundation of a new 'colony.' In the aggregate mass produced by its continuous segmentation, certain globular clusters are distinguishable, each having a cavity in its interior; and the amœboids that form the wall of this cavity become metamorphosed into collared flagellate zooids whose flagella project into it. Thus is formed one of the characteristic 'ampullaceous sacs;' which, at first closed, afterwards communicates with the exterior, on the one hand, by an incurrent passage, and on the other with the excurrent canal-system leading to the oscula.—Besides this reproduction by 'micro-spores,' there is another form of non-sexual reproduction by 'macro-spores;' which are clusters of amœboids encysted in firm capsules, frequently strengthened on their exterior by a layer of spicules of very peculiar form. These 'seed-like bodies,' which answer to the encysted states of many Protophytes, are met with in the substance of the sponge, chiefly in winter ; and after being set free through the oscula, they give exit to their contained amœboids, each of which may found a new colony.—A true process of sexual generation, moreover, is said to take place in Sponges; certain of the amœboids, like certain cells of *Volvox* (§ 240), becoming 'sperm-cells,' and developing spermatozoa by the metamorphosis of their nuclei; while others become 'germ-cells,' developing themselves by segmentation (when fertilized) into the bodies known as 'ciliated gemmules,' which are set free from the walls of the canals, swim forth from the vents, and for a time move actively through the water. According to Prof. Haeckel, the fertilized germ-cells are to be regarded as true *ova*, and the products of their segmentation as *morulæ*, which, by invagination (§ 391), become *gastrulæ;* and he argues that the whole system of canals and ampullaceous sacs is really, like the system of canals in the Sponge-like *Alcyonium* (§ 529), an extension of the primitive gastric cavity; the *oscula* of Sponges being the undeveloped representatives of the *polypes* of the Zoöphyte.—As it is doubtful, however, whether the supposed Sponge-spermatozoa are anything else than ordinary flagellated monads, and as the development of the supposed ovum by no means conforms to the ordinary *gastræa* type, the question whether Sponges are strictly *Protozoa*, or are to be regarded as constituting the lowest form of the *Metazoic* type, must be considered (in the Author's opinion) as still an open one.*

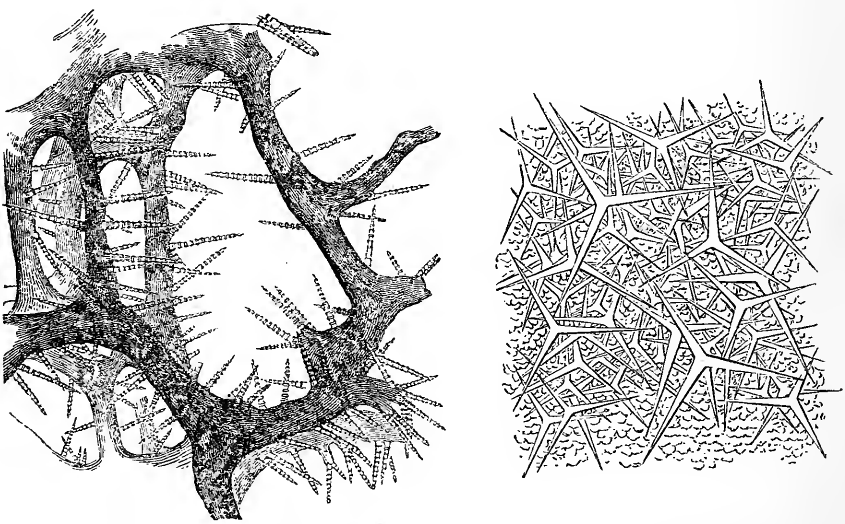
510. The arrangement of the keratose reticulation in the Sponges with which we are most familiar, may be best made out by cutting hin slices of a piece of Sponge submitted to firm compression,

* See Chap. v. of Mr. Saville Kent's "Manual of the Infusoria," and Chap. v. of Mr. Balfour's "Comparative Embryology," as well as Prof. Haeckel's important work on the Calcareous Sponges.

and viewing these slices, mounted upon a dark ground, with a low magnifying power, under incident light. Such sections, thus illuminated, are not merely striking objects, but serve to show, very characteristically, the general disposition of the larger canals and of the smaller pores with which they communicate. In the ordinary Sponge, the fibrous skeleton is almost entirely destitute of spicules; the absence of which, in fact, is one important condition of that flexibility and compressibility on which its uses depend. When spicules exist in connection with such a skeleton, they are usually either altogether imbedded in the fibres, or are implanted into them at their bases, as shown in Fig. 352, A. But smaller and

Fig. 352.

A B

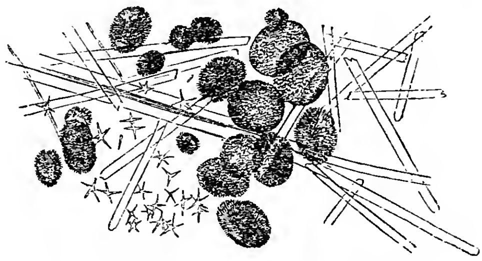


A. Portion of *Halichondria* (?) from Madagascar, with siliceous spicules projecting from the keratose network.
B. Triradiate spicules of *Grantia compressa*, lying in the midst of its cytoblastema.

simpler Sponges, such as *Grantia*, have no horny skeleton; and their spicules are imbedded in the general substance of the body (Fig. 352, B).—Sponge-spicules are much more frequently Siliceous than Calcareous; and the variety of forms presented by the siliceous spicules is much greater than that which we find in the comparatively small division in which they are composed of carbonate of lime. The long needle-like spicules (Fig. 353), which are extremely abundant in several Sponges, lying close together in bundles, are sometimes straight, sometimes slightly curved; they are sometimes pointed at both ends, sometimes at one only; one or both ends may be furnished with a head like that of a pin, or may carry three or more diverging points which sometimes curve back so as

to form hooks (Fig. 488, H). When the spicules project from the horny framework, they are usually somewhat conical in form, and their surface is often beset with little spines, arranged at regular intervals, giving them a jointed appearance (Fig. 352, A). Sponge-spicules frequently occur, however, under forms very different from the preceding; some being short and many-branched, and the branches being themselves very commonly stunted into mere tubercles (some examples of which type are presented in Fig. 488, A, C); whilst others are stellate, having a central body with conical spines projecting from it in all directions (as at D of the same figure). Great varieties present themselves in the stellate form, according to the relative predominance of the body and of the rays: in those represented in Fig. 353, the rays, though very numerous, are extremely short; in other instances the rays are much longer, and scarcely any central nucleus can be said to exist. The varieties in the form of Sponge-spicules are, in fact, almost endless; and a single Sponge often presents two or more (as shown in Fig. 353), the *stellate* spicules usually occurring either in the interspaces between the elongated kinds, or in the external crust.* The spicules of Sponges cannot be considered, like the *raphides* of Plants (§ 359), simply as deposits of Mineral matter in a crystalline state; for the forms of many of them are such as no mere crystallization can produce; they generally (at least in the earlier stage of their formation) possess internal cavities, which contain organic matter; and the calcareous spicules, whose mineral matter can be readily dissolved away by an acid, are found to have a distinct animal basis. Hence it seems probable that each spicule was originally a segment of sarcode, which has undergone either calcification or silification; and by the self-shaping power of which, the form of the spicule is mainly determined.

Fig. 353.



Siliceous Spicules of *Pachymatisma*.

511. There is an extremely interesting group of Sponges, in which the horny skeleton is entirely replaced by a *siliceous* framework of great firmness and of singular beauty of construction.

* A minute account of the various forms of spicules contained in Sponges is given by Mr. Bowerbank in his First Memoir 'On the Anatomy and Physiology of the Spongiadæ,' in "Philos. Transact.," 1858, pp. 279-332; and in his "Monograph of the British Spongiadæ" published by the Ray Society.—The Calcareous Sponges have been made by Prof. Haeckel the subject of an elaborate Monograph, "Die Kalkschwämme," Berlin, 1872.

This framework may be regarded as fundamentally consisting of an arrangement of *six-rayed* spicules, the extensions of which come to be, as it were, soldered to one another; and hence the group is distinguished as *hexiradiate*. Of this type the beautiful *Euplectella* of the Manilla Seas—which was for a long time one of the greatest of zoological rarities, but which now, under the name of 'Venus's flower-basket,' is a common ornament of our drawing-rooms—is one of the most characteristic examples. Another example is presented by the *Holtenia Carpenteri*, of which four specimens, dredged up from a depth of 530 fathoms between the Faroe Islands and the North of Scotland, were among the most valuable of the 'treasures of the deep' obtained during the first Deep-sea Exploration (1868), carried on by Sir Wyville Thomson and the Author. This is a turnip-shaped body, with a cavity in its interior, the circular mouth of which is surrounded with a fringe of elongated siliceous spicules; whilst from its base there hangs a sort of beard of siliceous threads, that extend themselves, sometimes to a length of several feet, into the Atlantic mud (§ 480) on which these bodies are found. The framework is much more massive than that of *Euplectella*, but it is not so exclusively mineral; for if it be boiled in nitric acid it is resolved into separate spicules, these being not soldered together by siliceous continuity, but held together by animal matter. Besides the regular hexiradiate spicules, there is a remarkable variety of other forms, which have been fully described and figured by Sir Wyville Thomson.* One of the greatest features of interest in this *Holtenia*, is its singular resemblance to the *Ventriculites* of the Cretaceous formation (§ 699). Subsequent investigations have shown that it is very widely diffused, and that it is only one of several Deep-sea forms, including several of singularly beautiful structure, which are the existing representatives of the old Ventriculite type. One of these was previously known, from being occasionally cast-up on the shore of Barbadoes after a storm. This *Dictyocalyx pumiceus* has the shape of a mushroom, the diameter of its disk sometimes ranging to a foot. A small portion of its reticulated skeleton is a singularly beautiful object, when viewed with incident light under a low magnifying power.

512. With the exception of the genus *Spongilla*, all known Sponges are marine; but they differ very much in habit of growth. For whilst some can only be obtained by dredging at considerable depths, others live near the surface, whilst others attach themselves to the surfaces of rocks, shells, &c., between the tide-marks. The various species of *Grantia*, in which, of all the marine Sponges, the flagellate zooids can most readily be observed, belong to this last category. They have a peculiarly simple structure, each being a sort of bag whose wall is so thin that no system of canals is required; the water absorbed by the outer surface passing

* See his elaborate Memoir in "Philos. Transact.," 1870; and his "Depths of the Sea" (1872), p. 71.

directly towards the inner, and being expelled by the mouth of the bag. The flagella may be plainly distinguished with a 1-8th inch objective on some of the cells of the gelatinous substance scraped from the interior of the bag; or they may be seen *in situ*, by making very thin transverse sections of the substance of the sponge. It is by such sections alone that the internal structure of Sponges, and the relation of their spicular and horny skeletons to their fleshy substance, can be demonstrated. They are best made by the imbedding process (§§ 189, 190).—In order to obtain the *spicules* in an isolated condition, the animal matter must be got-rid-of, either by incineration, or by chemical reagents. The latter method is preferable, as it is difficult to free the mineral residue from carbonaceous particles by heat alone. If (as is commonly the case) the spicules are *siliceous*, the Sponge may be treated with strong nitric or nitro-muriatic acid, until its animal substance is dissolved away; if, on the other hand, they be *calcareous*, a strong solution of potass may be employed instead of the acid. The operation is more rapidly accomplished by the aid of heat; but if the saving of time be not of importance, it is preferable on several accounts to dispense with it. The spicules, when obtained in a separate state, should be mounted in Canada balsam.—Sponge-tissue may often be distinctly recognized in sections of Agate, Chalcedony, and other siliceous concretions, as will be more fully stated hereafter (§ 699).

Zoophytes.

513. Under the general designation *Zoophytes* it will be still convenient to group those animals which form composite skeletons or 'polyparies' of a more or less plant-like character; associating with them the *Acalephs*, which are now known to be the 'sexual zooids' of Polypes (§ 518); but excluding the *Polyzoa* (Chap. xv.) on account of their truly Molluscoid structure, notwithstanding their Zoophytic forms and habits of life. The animals belonging to this group may be considered as formed upon the primitive *gastrula* type (§ 391): their gastric cavity (though sometimes extending itself almost indefinitely) being lined by the original *endoderm*, and their surface being covered by the original *ectoderm*; and these two lamellæ not being separated by the interposition of any body-cavity or *cœlom*. It is a fact of great interest, that although the product of the development of a *morula* is here a distinctly individualized Polype, in which several mutually dependent parts make up a single organic whole, yet that these parts still retain much of their independent Protozoic life; which is manifested in two very remarkable modes. In the first place, the digestive sac is observed to be lined by a layer of amœboid cells, which send out pseudopodial prolongations into its cavity, by whose agency (it may be pretty certainly affirmed) the nutrient material is

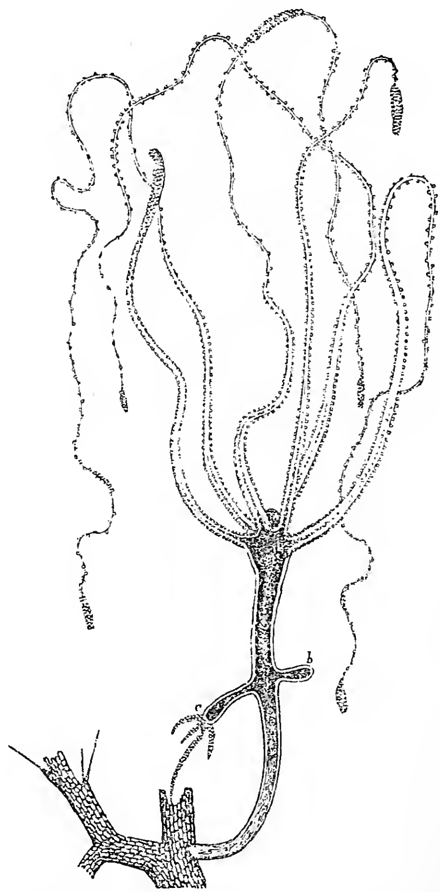
first introduced into the body-substance. This was first noticed by Prof. Allman in the beautiful Hydroid polype *Myriothela*;* the like has been since shown by Mr. Jeffery Parker to be true of the ordinary *Hydra*;† and Prof. E. Ray Lankester has made the same observation upon the curious little Medusa lately found in a *fresh-water* tank.‡ (It may be mentioned in this connexion, that Metschnikoff has seen the cells which line the alimentary canal of the lower Planarian worms gorging themselves with coloured food-particles, exactly in the manner of *Amœbæ*).—The second 'survival' of Protozoic independence is shown in the extraordinary power possessed by *Hydra*, *Actinia*, &c., to reproduce the entire organism from a mere fragment (§ 515).—This great division includes the two principal groups, the Hydrozoa and the Actinozoa; the former comprehending the *Polypes*, and the latter the *Anemonies*. In the Hydrozoa there is no separation between the digestive cavity and the external body-wall; and the reproductive organs are external. In the Actinozoa the wall of the digestive sac is separated from the external body-wall by an intervening space, which communicates with it, and must be regarded as an extension of it; and this is subdivided into chambers by a series of vertical partitions, to which the reproductive organs are attached.—As most of the Hydrozoa or Hydroid Polypes are essentially Microscopic animals, they need to be described with some minuteness; whilst in regard to the Actinozoa those points only will be dwelt-on, which are of special interest to the Microscopist.

514. Hydrozoa.—The type of this group is the *Hydra* or fresh-water polype, a very common inhabitant of pools and ditches, where it is most commonly to be found attached to the leaves or stems of aquatic plants, floating pieces of stick, &c. Two species are common in this country, the *H. viridis* or green Polype, and the *H. vulgaris*, which is usually orange-brown, but sometimes yellowish or red (its colour being liable to some variation according to the nature of the food on which it has been subsisting); a third less common species, the *H. fusca*, is distinguished from both the preceding by the length of its tentacles, which in the former are scarcely as long as the body, whilst in the latter they are, when fully extended, many times longer (Fig. 354). The body of the Hydra consists of a simple bag or sac, which may be regarded as a stomach, and is capable of varying its shape and dimensions in a very remarkable degree; sometimes extending itself in a straight line so as to form a long narrow cylinder, at other times being seen (when empty) as a minute contracted globe, whilst, if distended with food, it may present the form of an inverted flask or bottle, or even of a button. At the upper end of this sac is a central opening, the mouth; and this is surrounded by a circle of tentacles or 'arms,' usually from six to ten in number, which are arranged with great

* "Philos. Transact.," 1875, p. 552.
† "Proceed. of Roy. Soc.," Vol. xxx. (1880), p. 61.
‡ "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," N.S., Vol. xx. (1880), p. 371.

regularity around the orifice. The body is prolonged at its lower end into a narrow base, which is furnished with a suctorial disk; and the Hydra usually attaches itself by this, while it allows its tendril-like tentacles to float freely in the water. The wall of the body is composed of cells imbedded in sarcode-substance; and between its two layers there is a space chiefly occupied by undifferentiated sarcode, having many 'vacuoles' or 'lacunæ' (which often seem to communicate with one another) excavated in its substance. The arms are made-up of the same materials as the body: but their surface is beset with little wart-like prominences, which, when carefully examined, are found to be composed of clusters of 'thread-cells,' having a single large cell with a long spiculum in the centre of each. The structure of these thread-cells or 'urticating organs' will be described hereafter (§ 528); at present it will be enough to point-out that this apparatus, repeated many times on each tentacle, is doubtless intended to give to the organ a great prehensile power; the minute filaments forming a rough surface adapted to prevent the object from readily slipping out of the grasp of the arm, whilst the central spicule or 'dart' is projected into its substance, probably conveying into it a poisonous fluid secreted by a vesicle at its base. The latter inference is founded upon the oft-repeated observation, that if the living prey seized by the tentacles have a body destitute of hard integument, as is the case with the minute aquatic Worms which constitute a large part of its aliment, this speedily dies, even though, instead of being swallowed, it escapes from their grasp; whilst, on the other hand, minute

FIG. 354.



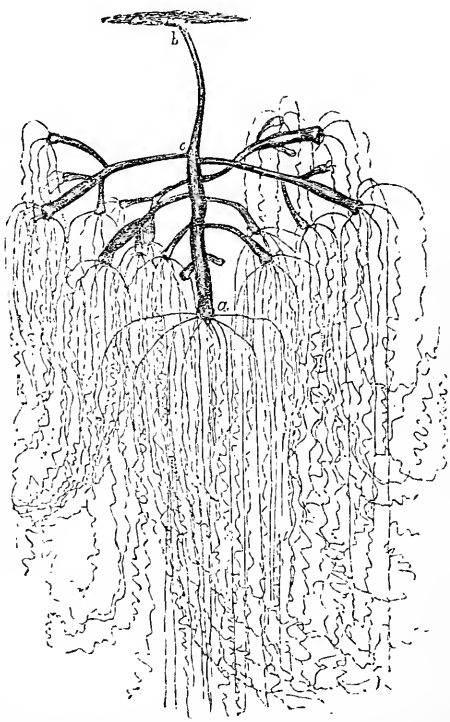
Hydra fusca, with a young bud at *b*, and a more advanced bud at *c*.

Entomostraca, Insects, and other animals with hard envelopes, may escape without injury, even after having been detained for some time in the polype's embrace. The contractility of the tentacles (the interior of which is traversed by a canal that communicates with the cavity of the stomach) is very remarkable, especially in the *Hydra fusca;* whose arms, when extended in search of prey, are not less than seven or eight inches in length; whilst they are sometimes so contracted, when the stomach is filled with food, as to appear only like little tubercles around its entrance. By means of these instruments the Hydra is enabled to draw its support from animals whose activity, as compared with its own slight powers of locomotion, might have been supposed to remove them altogether from its reach; for when, in its movements through the water, a minute Worm or a Water-flea happens to touch one of the tentacles of the Polype, spread-out as these are in readiness for prey, it is immediately seized by this, other arms are soon coiled around it, and the unfortunate victim is speedily conveyed to the stomach, within which it may frequently be seen to continue moving for some little time. Soon, however, its struggles cease, and its outline is obscured by a turbid film, which gradually thickens, so that at last its form is wholly lost. The soft parts are soon completely dissolved, and the harder indigestible portions are rejected through the mouth. A second orifice has been observed at the lower extremity of the stomach; but this would not seem to be properly regarded as anal, since it is not used for the discharge of such exuviæ; it is probably rather to be considered as representing, in the Hydra, the entrance to that ramifying cavity, which, in the *Compound Hydrozoa,* brings into mutual connexion the lower extremities of the stomachs of all the individual polypes (Plate xx).

515. The ordinary mode of reproduction in this animal is by a 'gemmation' resembling that of Plants. Little bud-like processes (Fig. 354, *b, c*) developed from its external surface gradually come to resemble the parent in character, and to possess a digestive sac, mouth, and tentacles; for a long time, however, their cavity is connected with that of the parent, but at last the communication is cut-off by the closure of the canal of the foot-stalk, and the young polype quits its attachment and goes in quest of its own maintenance. A second generation of buds is sometimes observed on the young polype before quitting its parent; and as many as *nineteen* young *Hydræ* in different stages of development have been seen thus connected with a single original stock (Fig. 355). This process takes place most rapidly under the influence of warmth and abundant food; it is usually suspended in winter, but may be made to continue by keeping the polypes in a warm situation and well supplied with food. Another very curious endowment seems to depend on the same condition—the extraordinary power which one portion possesses of reproducing the rest. Into whatever number of parts a *Hydra* may be divided, each may retain its vitality, and give

origin to a new and entire fabric; so that *thirty* or *forty* individuals may be formed by the section of one.—The *Hydra* also propagates itself, however, by a truly sexual process; the fecundating apparatus, or vesicle producing 'sperm-cells,' and the ovum (containing the 'germ-cell,' imbedded in a store of nutriment adapted for its early development) being both evolved in the substance of the walls of the stomach—the male apparatus forming a conical projection just beneath the arms, while the female ovary, or portion of the body-substance in which the ovum is generated, has the form of a knob protruding from the middle of its length. It would appear that sometimes one individual Hydra developes only the male cysts or sperm-cells, while another developes only the female cysts or ovisacs; but the general rule seems to be that the same individual forms both organs. The fertilization of the ova, however, cannot take-place until after the rupture of the spermatic cyst and of the ovisac, by which the contents of both are set entirely free from the body of the parent.—The autumn is the chief time for the development of the sexual organs; but they also present themselves in the earlier part of the year, chiefly between April and July. According to Ecker, the eggs of *H. viridis* produced early in the season, run their course in the summer of the same year; while those produced in the autumn, pass the winter without change. When the ovum is nearly ripe for fecundation, the ovary bursts its ectodermal covering, and remains attached by a kind of pedicle. It seems to be at this stage that the act of fecundation occurs; a very strong elastic shell or capsule then forms round the ovum, the surface of which is in some cases studded with spine-like points, in others tuberculated, the divisions between the tubercles being polygonal. The ovum finally drops from its pedicle, and attaches itself by means of a mucous secretion, till the hatching of

Fig. 355.



Hydra fusca in gemmation; *a*, mouth; *b*, base; *c*, origin of one of the buds.

the young Hydra, which comes forth provided with four rudimentary tentacles like buds.—The Hydra possesses the power of free locomotion, being able to remove from the spot to which it has attached itself, to any other that may be more suitable to its wants; its changes of place, however, seem rather to be performed under the influence of *light*, towards which the Hydra seeks to move itself, than with reference to the search after food.*

516. The *Compound Hydroids* may be likened to a *Hydra* whose gemmæ, instead of becoming detached, remain permanently connected with the parent; and as these in their turn may develope gemmæ from their own bodies, a structure of more or less arborescent character, termed a *polypary*, may be produced. The form which this will present, and the relation of the component polypes to each other, will depend upon the mode in which the gemmation takes-place: in all instances, however, the entire cluster is produced by continuous growth from a single individual; and the stomachs of the several polypes are united by tubes, which proceed from the base of each, along the stalk and branches, to communicate with the cavity of the central stem. Whatever may be the form taken by the stem and branches constituting the polypary of a Hydroid colony, they will be found to be, or to contain, fleshy tubes having two distinct layers; the inner (endoderm) having nutritive functions; the outer (ectoderm) usually secreting a hard cortical layer, and thus giving rise to fabrics of various forms. Between these a muscular coat is sometimes noticed. The fleshy tube, whether single or compound, is called a *cœnosarc;* and through it the nutrient matter circulates. The 'zooids,' or individual members of the colony, are of two kinds: one, the *polypite*, or *alimentary* zooid, resembling the Hydra in essential structure, and more or less in aspect; the other, the *gonozooid*, or *sexual* zooid, developed at certain seasons only, in buds of particular shape.

517. The simplest division of the Hydroida is that adopted by Mr. Hincks,† who groups them under the sub-order *Athecata* and *Thecata*, the latter being again divided into the *Thecaphora* and the *Gymnochroa*. In the first, neither the 'polypites' nor the sexual zooids bear true protective cases; in the second, the polypites are lodged in cells, or, as Mr. Hincks prefers to call them, *calycles*, many of which resemble exquisitely formed crystal cups, variously ornamented, and sometimes furnished with lids or opercula; in the third, which contains the Hydras, there is no polypary, and the reproductive zooids (gonozooids) are always fixed and developed in the body-walls. According to Mr. Hincks, the two sexes are sometimes borne on the same colony, but more commonly the zoophyte

* A very full account of the structure and development of *Hydra* has recently been published by Kleinenberg; of whose admirable Monograph a summary is given by Prof. Allman, with valuable remarks of his own, in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," N.S., Vol. xiv. (1874), p. 1. See also the important Paper by Mr. Jeffery Parker already cited.

† "History of British Hydroid Zoophytes," 1868.

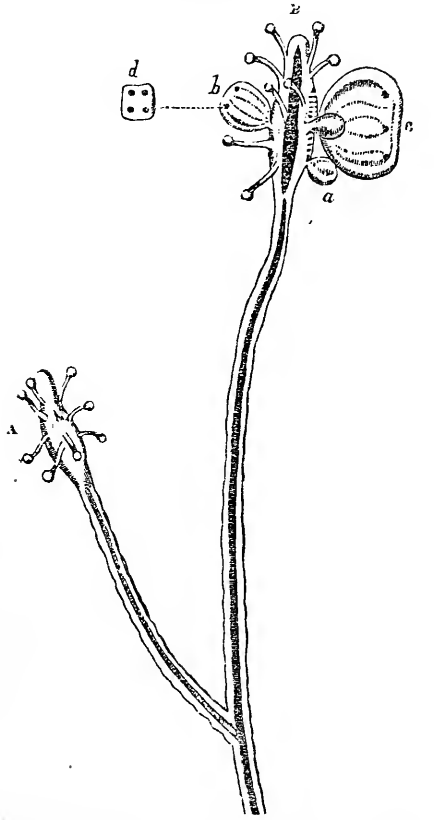
is diœcious. The cases, however, are much less rare than has been supposed, in which both male and female are mingled on the same shoots. The sexual zooids either remain attached, and discharge their contents at maturity, or become free and enter upon an independent existence. The free forms nearly always take the shape of *Medusæ* (jelly-fish), swimming by rhythmical contractions of their bell or umbrella. The digestive cavity is in the handle (manubrium) of the bell; and the generative elements (sperm-cells or ova) are developed either between the membranes of the manubrium, or in special sacs in the canals radiating from it. The ova, when fertilized by the spermatozoa, undergo 'segmentation' according to the ordinary type (§ 581), the whole yolk-mass subdividing successively into 2, 4. 8, 16, 32 or more parts, until a 'mulberry mass' is formed; this then begins to elongate itself, its surface being at first smooth, and showing a transparent margin, but afterwards becoming clothed with cilia, by whose agency these little *planulæ*, closely resembling ciliated Infusoria, first move about within the capsule, and then swim forth freely when liberated by the opening of its mouth. At this period the embryo can be made out to consist of an outer and an inner layer of cells, with a hollow interior; after some little time the cilia disappear, and one extremity becomes expanded into a kind of disk by which it attaches itself to some fixed object; a mouth is formed, and tentacles sprout forth around it; and the body increases in length and thickness, so as gradually to acquire the likeness of one of the parent polypes, after which the 'polypary' characteristic of the genus is gradually evolved by the successive development of polype-buds from the first-formed polype and its subsequent offsets.—The Medusæ of these polypes (Fig. 358) belong to the division called 'naked-eyed,' on account of the (supposed) eye-spots usually seen surrounding the margin of the bell at the base of the tentacles.

518. A characteristic example of this production of Medusa-like 'gonozooids' is presented by the form termed *Syncoryne Sarsii* (Fig. 356) belonging to the sub-order *Athecata*. At A is shown the alimentary zooid, or polypite, with its tentacles, and at B the successive stages *a*, *b*, *c*, of the sexual zooids, or medusa-buds. When sufficiently developed, the medusa swims away, and as it grows to maturity enlarges its manubrium, so that it hangs below the bell. The medusæ of the genus *Syncoryne* (as now restricted) have the form named *Sarsia* in honour of the Swedish naturalist Sars. Their normal character is that of free swimmers; but Agassiz ascertained that in some cases, towards the end of the breeding season, the sexual zooids remain fixed, and mature their products while attached to the zoophyte.* This condition of the sexual zooids is very common amongst the Hydroida; and various intermediate stages may be traced in different genera, between the

* Hincks, *op. cit.*, p. 49.

mode in which the gonozooids are produced in the common Hydra, as already described, and that of Syncoryne. In *Tubularia* the gonozooids, though permanently attached, are furnished with swimming bells, having four tubercles representing marginal tentacles. A common and interesting species *Tubularia indivisa* receives its specific name from the infrequency with which branches are given-off from the stems, these for the most part standing erect and parallel, like the stalks of corn, upon the base to which they are attached. This beautiful Zoophyte, which sometimes grows between the tide-marks, but is more abundantly obtained by dredging in deep water, often attains a size which renders it scarcely a microscopic object; its stems being sometimes no less than a foot in height and a line in diameter. Several curious phenomena, however, are brought into view by Microscopic examination. The Polype-stomach is connected with the cavity of the stem by a circular opening, which is surrounded by a sphincter; and an alternate movement of dilatation and contraction takes-place in it, fluid being apparently forced - up from below, and then expelled again, after which the sphincter closes in preparation for a recurrence of the operation; this, as observed by Mr. Lister, being repeated at intervals of eighty seconds.

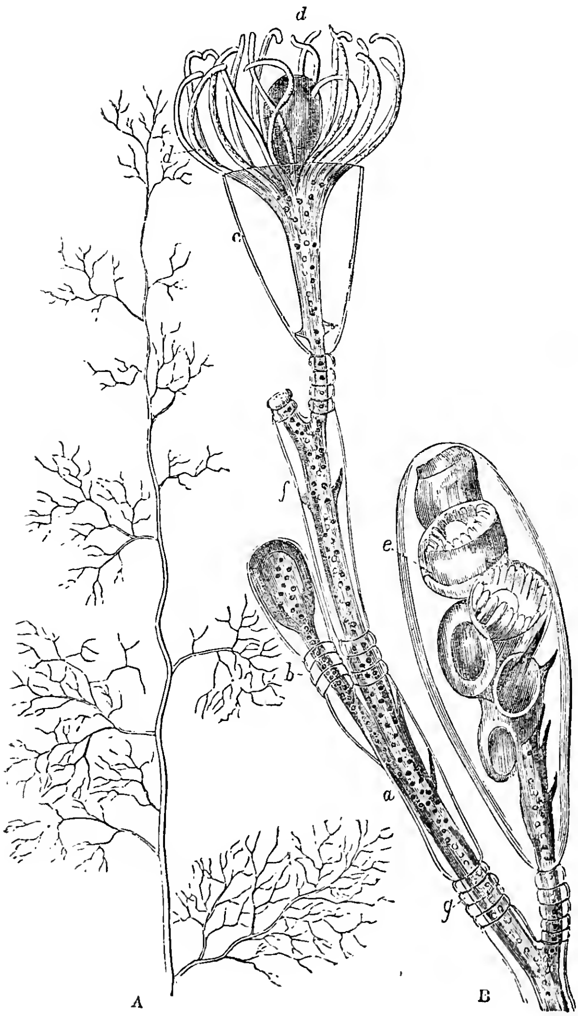
Fig. 356.



Development of Medusa-buds in *Syncoryne Sarsii*:—A, an ordinary polype, with its club-shaped body covered with tentacles:—B, a polype putting forth Medusoid gemmæ; *a*, a very young bud; *b*, a bud more advanced, the quadrangular form of which, with the four nuclei whence the cirrhi afterwards spring, is shown at *d*; *c*, a bud still more advanced.

Besides the foregoing movement, a regular flow of fluid, carrying with it solid particles of various sizes, may be observed along the whole length of the stem, passing in a somewhat spiral direction.—It is worthy of mention here, that when a Tubularia is kept in confinement, the polype-heads almost always drop-off after a few days, but are soon renewed again by a new growth from the

PLATE XX.



CAMPANULARIA GELATINOSA.

[*To face p.* 617.

stem beneath; and this exuviation and regeneration may take place many times in the same individual.*

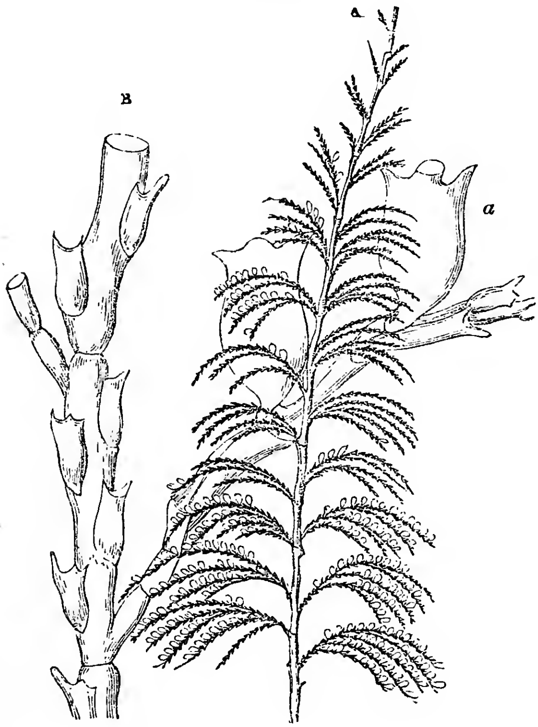
519. It is in the Families *Campanularida* and *Sertularida* (whose polyparies are commonly known as 'corallines'), that the horny branching fabric attains its completest development; not only affording an investment to the stem, but forming cups or cells for the protection of the polypites, as well as capsules for the reproductive gonozooids. Both these families thus belong to the Sub-order *Thecata*. In the *Campanularida* the polype-cells are campanulate or bell-shaped, and are borne at the extremities of ringed stalks (Plate xx., *c*); in the *Sertularida*, on the other hand, the polype-cells lie along the stem and branches, attached either to one side only, or to both sides (Fig. 357). In both, the general structure of the individual polypes (Plate xx., *d*) closely corresponds with that of the *Hydra;* and the mode in which they obtain their food is essentially the same. Of the products of digestion, however, a portion finds its way down into the tubular stem, for the nourishment of the general fabric; and very much the same kind of circulatory movement can be seen in *Campanularia* as in Tubularia, the circulation being most vigorous in the neighbourhood of growing parts. It is from the 'cœnosarc' (*f*) contained in the stem and branches, that new polype-buds (*b*) are evolved; these carry before them (so to speak) a portion of the horny integument, which at first completely invests the bud; but as the latter acquires the organization of a polype, the case thins away at its most prominent part, and an opening is formed through which the young polype protrudes itself.

520. The origin of the reproductive capsules or 'gonothecæ' (*e*) is exactly similar; but their destination is very different. Within them are evolved, by a budding process, the generative organs of the Zoophyte; and these in the *Campanularida* may either develope themselves into the form of independent Medusoids, which completely detach themselves from the stock that bore them, make their way out of the capsule, and swim-forth freely, to mature their sexual products (some developing sperm-cells, and others ova), and give origin to a new generation of polypes; or, in cases in which the Medusoid structure is less distinctly pronounced, may not completely detach themselves, but (like the flower-buds of a Plant) expand one after another at the mouth of the capsule, withering and dropping-off after they have matured their generative products. In the *Sertularida*, on the other hand, the Medusan conformation is wanting, as the gonozooids are always fixed; the reproductive cells (Fig. 357, *a*), which were shown by Prof. Edward Forbes to be really metamorphosed branches, developing in their interior certain bodies which were formerly supposed to be ova, but which are now known to be 'medusoids' reduced to their most rudimentary condition. Within these are developed,—in separate

* The British *Tubularida* form the subject of a most complete and beautiful Monograph by Prof. Allman, published by the Ray Society.

gonothecæ, sometimes perhaps on distinct polyparies,—spermatozoa and ova; and the latter are fertilized by the entrance of the former whilst still contained within their capsules. The fertilized ova, whether produced in free or in attached medusoids, develope themselves in the first instance into ciliated 'gemmules,' which soon evolve themselves into true polypes, from every one of which a new composite polypary may spring.

Fig. 357.



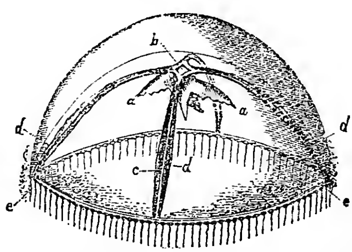
Sertularia cupressina:—A, natural size; B, portion magnified.

521. There are few parts of our coast which will not supply some or other of the beautiful and interesting forms of Zoophytic life which have been thus briefly noticed, without any more trouble in searching for them than that of examining the surfaces of rocks, stones, sea-weeds, and dead shells between the tide-marks. Many of them habitually live in that situation; and others are frequently cast-up by the waves from the deeper waters, especially after a storm. Many kinds, however, can only be obtained by means of the dredge. For observing them during their living state, no means is so convenient as the Zoophyte-trough (§ 124).—In mounting Compound Hydrozoa, as well as Polyzoa, it will be found of great advantage to place the specimens alive in the cells they are permanently to occupy, and to then add Osmic acid drop by drop to the sea-water; this has the effect of causing the protrusion of the animals, and of rendering their tentacles rigid. The liquid may be withdrawn, and replaced by Goadby's solution, Deane's Gelatine, Glycerine jelly, weak Spirit, diluted Glycerine, a mixture of Spirit and Glycerine with sea-water, or any other menstruum, by means of the Syringe; and it is well to mount specimens in several different menstrua, marking the nature and strength of each, as some forms are better preserved by one and some by

another.* The size of the cell must of course be proportioned to that of the object; and if it be desired to mount such a specimen as may serve for a characteristic illustration of the mode of growth of the species it represents, the large shallow cells, whose walls are made by cementing four strips of glass to the plate that forms the bottom (§ 174), will generally be found preferable.—The horny polyparies of the *Sertularida*, when mounted in Canada balsam, are beautiful objects for the Polariscope; but in order to prepare them successfully, some nicety of management is required. The following are the outlines of the method recommended by Dr. Golding Bird, who very successfully practised it:—The specimens selected, which should not exceed two inches in length, are first to be submitted, while immersed in water of 120°, to the vacuum of an air-pump. The ebullition which will take-place within the cavities, will have the effect of freeing the polyparies from dead polypes and other animal matter; and this cleansing process should be repeated several times. The specimens are then to be dried, by first draining them for a few seconds on bibulous paper, and then by submitting them to the vacuum of an air-pump, within a thick earthenware ointment-pot fitted with a cover, which has been previously heated to about 200°; by this means the specimens are very quickly and completely dried, the water being evaporated so quickly that the cells and tubes hardly collapse or wrinkle. The specimens are then placed in camphine, and again subjected to the exhausting process, for the displacement of the air by that liquid; and when they have been thoroughly saturated, they should be mounted in Canada balsam in the usual mode. When thus prepared, they become very beautiful transparent objects for low magnifying powers; and they present a gorgeous display of colours when examined by Polarized light, with the interposition of a plate of Selenite, the effect being much enhanced by the use of Black-ground illumination.

522. No result of Microscopic research was more unexpected than the discovery of the close relationship subsisting between the Hydroid *Zoophytes* and the Medusoid *Acalephæ* (or 'jelly-fish'). We now know that the small free-swimming Medusoids belonging to the 'naked-eyed' group, of which *Thaumantias* (Fig. 358) may be taken as a representative, are really to be considered as the detached sexual apparatus of the Zoophytes

FIG. 358.



Thaumantias pilosella, one of the 'naked-eyed' Medusæ:—*a a*, oral tentacles; *b*, stomach; *c*, gastro-vascular canals, having the ovaries, *d d*, on either side, and terminating in the marginal canal, *e e*.

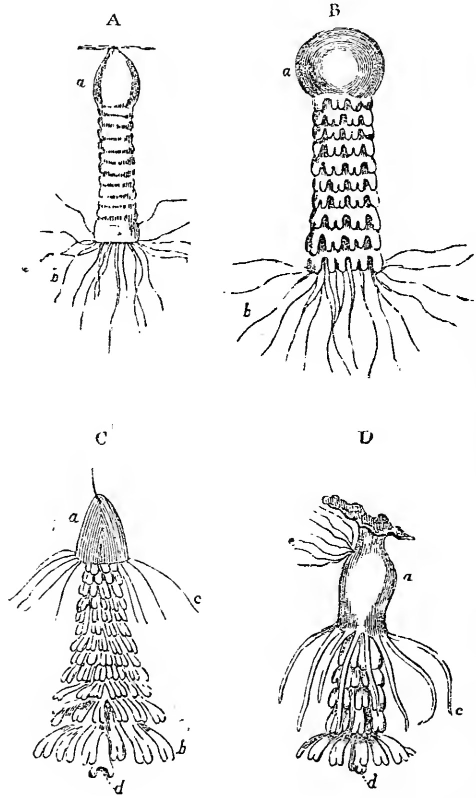
* See Mr. J. W. Morris in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," N.S., Vol. ii. (1862), p. 116.

from which they have been budded-off, endowed with independent organs of nutrition and locomotion, whereby they become capable of maintaining their own existence and of developing their sexual products. The general conformation of these organs will be understood from the accompanying figure. Many of this group are very beautiful objects for Microscopic examination, being small enough to be viewed entire in the Zoophyte-trough. There are few parts of the coast on which they may not be found, especially on a calm warm day, by skimming the surface of the sea with the Tow-net (§ 217); and they are capable of being stained and preserved in cells, after being hardened by osmic acid.

523. The history of the large and highly-developed *Medusæ* or Acalephæ which are commonly known as 'jelly-fish,' is essentially similar; for their progeny have been ascertained to develope themselves in the first instance under the Polype-form, and to lead a life which in all essential respects is zoophytic; their development into Medusæ taking-place only in the closing phase of their existence, and then rather by gemmation from the original polype, than by a metamorphosis of its own fabric. The huge *Rhizostoma* found commonly swimming round our coasts, and the beautiful *Chrysaora* remarkable for its long 'furbelows' which act as organs of prehension, are Oceanic Acalephs developed from very small polypites, which fix themselves by a basal cup or disk. The embryo emerges from the cavity of its parent, within which the first stages of its development have taken place, in the condition of a ciliated 'gemmule,' of rather oblong form, very closely resembling an Infusory Animalcule, but destitute of a mouth. One end soon contracts and attaches itself, however, so as to form a foot; the other enlarges and opens to form a mouth, four tubercles sprouting around it, which grow into tentacles; whilst the central cells melt-down to form the cavity of the stomach. Thus a Hydra-like polype is formed, which soon acquires many additional tentacles; and this, according to the observations of Sir J. G. Dalyell on the *Hydra tuba*, which is the polype-stage of the *Chrysaora*, leads in every important particular the life of a Hydra; propagates like it by repeated gemmation, so that whole colonies are formed as offsets from a single stock; and can be multiplied like it by artificial division, each segment developing itself into a perfect Hydra. There seems to be no definite limit to its continuance in this state, or to its power of giving origin to new polype-buds; but when the time comes for the development of its sexual gonozooids, the polype quits its original condition of a minute bell with slender tentacles (Fig. 359, c, *a*), assumes a cylindrical form, and elongates itself considerably; a constriction or indentation is then seen around it, just below the ring which encircles the mouth and gives origin to the tentacles; and similar constrictions are soon repeated round the lower parts of the cylinder, so as to give to the whole body somewhat the appearance of a rouleau of coins (Fig. 359, a); a sort of fleshy bulb, *a*, somewhat of the form of the original polype, being

still left at the attached extremity. The number of circles is indefinite, and all are not formed at once, new constrictions appearing below, after the upper portions have been detached; as many as 30 or even 40 have thus been produced in one specimen. The constrictions then gradually deepen, so as to divide the cylinder into a pile of saucer-like bodies; the division being most complete above, and the upper disks usually presenting some increase in diameter; and whilst this is taking place, the edges of the disks become divided into lobes (B), each lobe soon presenting the cleft with the supposed rudimentary eye at the bottom of it, which is to be plainly seen in the detached Medusæ (Fig. 360, C). Up to this period, the tentacles of the original polype surmount the highest of the disks; but before the detachment of the topmost disk, this circle disappears, and a new one is developed at the summit of the bulb which remains at the base of the pile (C, *c*). At last the topmost and largest disk begins to exhibit a sort of convulsive struggle; it becomes detached, and swims freely away; and the same series of changes takes-place from above downwards, until the whole pile of disks is detached and converted into free-swimming Medusæ. But the original polypoid body still remains, and may return to its original polype-like mode of gemmation (D, *e*); becoming the progenitor of a new colony, every member of which may in its turn bud-off a pile of Medusa-disks.

FIG. 359.

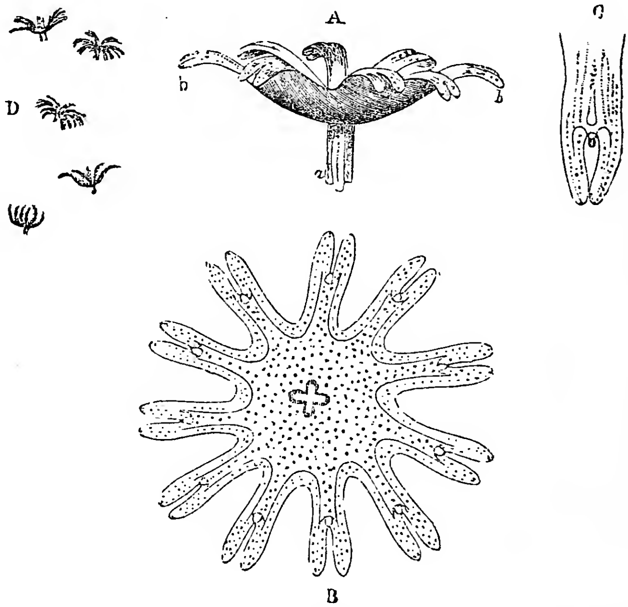


Successive stages A, B, C, D, of development of *Chrysaora*:—*a*, elongated and constricted Polype-body; *b*, its original circle of tentacles; *c*, its secondary circle of tentacles; *d*, proboscis of most advanced Medusa-disk; *e*, polype-bud from side of polype-body.

524. The bodies thus detached have all the essential characters of the adult *Medusæ*. Each consists of an umbrella-like disk,

divided at its edge into a variable number of lobes, usually eight; and of a stomach, which occupies a considerable proportion of the disk, and projects downwards in the form of a proboscis, in the centre of which is the quadrangular mouth (Fig. 360, A, B). As the animal advances towards maturity, the intervals between the

FIG. 360.



Development of *Chrysaora* from *Hydra tuba*:—A, detached individual viewed sideways, and enlarged, showing the proboscis *a*, and *b* the bifid lobes; B, individual seen from above, showing the bifid lobes of the margin, and the quadrilateral mouth; C, one of the bifid lobes still more enlarged, showing the rudimentary eye (?) at the bottom of the cleft; D, group of young Medusæ, as seen swimming in the water, of the natural size.

segments of the border of the disk gradually fill-up, so that the divisions are obliterated: tubular prolongations of the stomach extend themselves over the disk; and from its borders there sprout forth tendril-like filaments, which hang down like a fringe around its margin. From the four angles of the mouth, which, even in the youngest detached animal, admits of being greatly extended and protruded, prolongations are put forth, which form the four large tentacles of the adult. The young Medusæ are very voracious, and grow rapidly, so as to attain a very large size. The *Cyaneæ* and *Chrysaoræ*, which are common all round our coasts, often have a diameter of from 6 to 15 inches; while the *Rhizostoma* sometimes reaches a diameter of from two to three feet. The quantity of solid matter, however, which their fabrics contain is extremely small. It is not until adult age has been attained, that the generative

organs make their appearance, in four chambers disposed around the stomach, which are occupied by plaited membranous ribands containing sperm-cells in the male and ova in the female; and the embryoes evolved from the latter, when they have been fertilized by the agency of the former, repeat the extraordinary cycle of phenomena which has been now described, developing themselves in the first instance into Hydroid Polypes, from which Medusoids are subsequently budded-off.

525. This cycle of phenomena is one of those to which the term 'alternation of generations' was applied by Steenstrup,* who brought together under this designation a number of cases in which generation A does not produce a form resembling itself, but a different form, B; whilst generation B gives origin to a form which does not resemble itself, but returns to the form A, from which B itself sprang. It was early pointed out, however, by the Author,† that the term 'alternation of generations' does not appropriately represent the facts either of this case, or of any of the other cases grouped under the same category: the real fact being that the two organisms, A and B, constitute two stages in the life-history of *one generation;* and the production of one form from the other being in only one instance by a truly *generative* or sexual act, whilst in the other it is by a process of *gemmation* or budding. Thus the *Medusæ* of both orders (the 'naked-eyed' and the 'covered-eyed' of Forbes) are detached flower-buds, so to speak, of the Hydroid Zoophytes which bud them off; the Zoophytic phase of life being the most conspicuous in such *Thecata* as *Campanularida* and *Sertularida*, whose Medusa-buds are of small size and simple conformation, and not unfrequently do not detach themselves as independent organisms; whilst the Medusan phase of life is the most conspicuous in the ordinary Acalephs, their Zoophytic stage being passed in such obscurity as only to be detected by careful research.—The Author's views on this subject, which were at first strongly contested by Prof. E. Forbes, and other eminent Zoologists, have now come to be generally adopted.

526. ACTINOZOA.—Of this group, the common Sea-Anemonies may be taken as types; constituting, with their allies, the order *Zoantharia*, or Helianthoid polypes, which have numerous tentacles disposed in several rows. Next to them come the *Alcyonaria*, consisting of those whose polypes, having only six or eight broad short tentacles, present a star-like aspect when expanded; as is the case with various composite Sponge-like bodies, unpossessed of any hard skeleton, which inhabit our own shores, and also with the Red Coral and the *Tubipora* of warmer seas, which have a stony skeleton that is internal in the first case and external in the second, as also with the Sea-pens, and the *Gorgoniæ* or Sea-fans. A third order, *Rugosa*, consists of fossil Corals, whose stony

* See his Treatise on "The Alternation of Generations," published by the Ray Society.

† "Brit. and For. Med.-Chir. Review," Vol. i. (1848), p. 192, *et seq.*

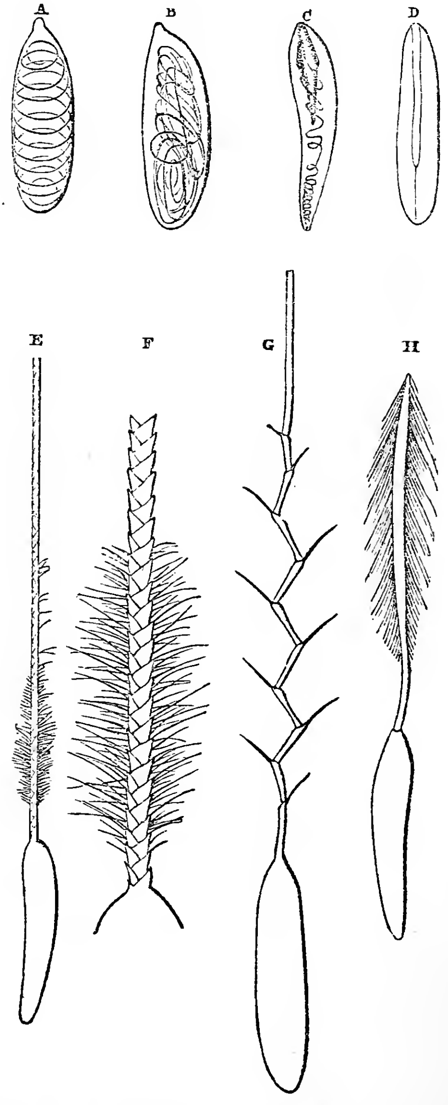
polyparies are intermediate in character between those of the two preceding. And lastly, the *Ctenophora*, free-swimming gelatinous animals, many of which are beautiful objects for the Microscope, are by most Zoologists ranked with the Actinozoa.

527. Of the *Zoantharia*, the common *Actinia* or 'sea anemone' may be taken as the type; the individual polypites of all the composite fabrics included in the group being constructed upon the same model. In by far the larger proportion of these Zoophytes, the bases of the polypites, as well as the soft flesh that connects together the members of aggregate masses, are consolidated by calcareous deposit into stony Corals; and the surfaces of these are beset with 'cells,' usually of a nearly circular form, each having numerous vertical plates or *lamellæ* radiating from its centre towards its circumference, which are formed by the consolidation of the lower portions of the radiating partitions that divide the space intervening between the stomach and the general integument of the animal into separate chambers. This arrangement is seen on a large scale in the *Fungia* or 'mushroom-coral' of tropical seas, which is the stony base of a solitary Anemone-like animal; on a far smaller scale, it is seen in the little *Caryophyllia*, a like solitary Anemone of our own coasts, which is scarcely distinguishable from an Actinia by any other character than the presence of this disk, and also on the surface of many of those stony corals known as 'madrepores;' whilst in some of these the individual polype-cells are so small, that the lamellated arrangement can only be made-out when they are considerably magnified. Portions of the surface of such Corals, or sections taken at a small depth, are very beautiful objects for low powers, the former being viewed by reflected, and the latter by transmitted light. And thin sections of various fossil Corals of this group are very striking objects for the lower powers of the Oxy-hydrogen Microscope.

528. The chief point of interest to the Microscopist, however, in the structure of these animals, lies in the extraordinary abundance and high development of those 'filiferous capsules,' or 'thread-cells,' the presence of which on the tentacles of the Hydroid polypes has been already noticed (§ 514), and which are also to be found, sometimes sparingly, sometimes very abundantly, in the tentacles surrounding the mouth of the Medusæ, as well as on other parts of their bodies. If a tentacle of any of the Sea-anemonies so abundant on our coasts (the smaller and more transparent kinds being selected in preference) be cut-off, and be subjected to gentle pressure between the two glasses of the Aquatic-box or the Compressorium, multitudes of little dart-like organs will be seen to project themselves from its surface near its tip; and if the pressure be gradually augmented, many additional darts will every moment come into view. Not only do these organs present different forms in different species, but even in one and the same individual very strongly marked diversities are shown, of which a few examples are given in Fig. 361. At A, B, C, D, is shown the appearance

of the 'filiferous capsules,' whilst as yet the thread lies coiled-up in their interior; and at E, F, G, H, are seen a few of the most striking forms which they exhibit when the thread or dart has started-forth. These thread-cells are found not merely in the tentacles and other parts of the external integument of Actinozoa, but also in the long filaments which lie in coils within the chambers that surround the stomach, in contact with the sexual organs which are attached to the lamellæ dividing the chambers. The latter sometimes contain 'sperm-cells' and sometimes ova, the two sexes being here divided, not united in the same individual.—What can be the office of the filiferous filaments thus contained in the interior of the body, it is difficult to guess-at. They are often found to protrude from rents in the external tegument, when any violence has been used in detaching the animal from its base; and when there is no external rupture, they are often forced through the wall of the stomach into its cavity, and may be seen hanging out of the mouth. The largest of these capsules, in their unprotected state, are about 1-300th of an inch in length; while the thread or dart, in *Corynactis Allmanni*, when fully extended, is not less than 1-8th of an inch, or thirty-seven times the length of its capsule.*

Fig. 361.



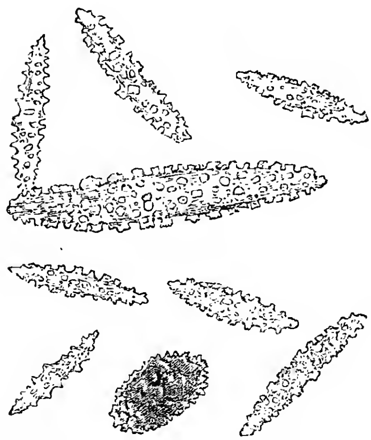
Filiferous Capsules of *Actinozoa?*—A, B, *Corynactis Allmanni*; C, E, F, *Caryophyllia Smithii*; D, G, *Actinia crassicornis*; H, *Actinia candida*.

529. Of the *Alcyonaria* a characteristic example is

* See Mr. Gosse's "Naturalist's Rambles on the Devonshire Coast," and Prof. Möbius 'Ueber den Bau, &c., der Nesselkapseln einiger Polypen und Quallen,' in "Abhandl. Naturw. Vereins zu Hamburg," Band v., 1866.

found in the *Alcyonium digitatum* of our coasts; a lobed sponge-like mass, covered with a tough skin; which is commonly known under the name of 'dead-man's toes,' or by the more elegant name of 'mermaids' fingers.' When a specimen of this is first torn from the rock to which it has attached itself, it contracts into an unshapely mass, whose surface presents nothing but a series of slight depressions arranged with a certain regularity. But after being immersed for a little time in a jar of sea-water, the mass swells-out again, and from every one of these depressions an eight-armed polype is protruded, "which resembles a flower of exquisite beauty and perfect symmetry. In specimens recently taken, each of the petal-like tentacula is seen with a hand-glass to be furnished with a row of delicately-slender *pinnæ* or filaments, fringing each margin, and arching onwards; and with a higher power, these pinnæ are seen to be roughened throughout their whole length, with numerous prickly rings. After a day's captivity, however, the petals shrink up into short, thick, unshapely masses, rudely notched at their edges" (Gosse). When a mass of this sort is cut-into, it is found to be channelled-out somewhat like a Sponge, by ramifying canals; the vents of which open into the stomachal cavities of the polypes, which are thus brought into free communication with each other,—a character that especially distinguishes this Order. A movement of fluid is kept-up within these canals (as may be distinctly seen through their transparent bodies) by means of cilia lining the internal surfaces of the polypes; but no cilia can be discerned on their external surfaces. The tissue of this spongy polypidom is strengthened throughout, like that of Sponges (§ 510), with mineral spicules (always, how-

Fig. 362.



Spicules of *Alcyonium* and *Gorgonia*.

Fig. 363.

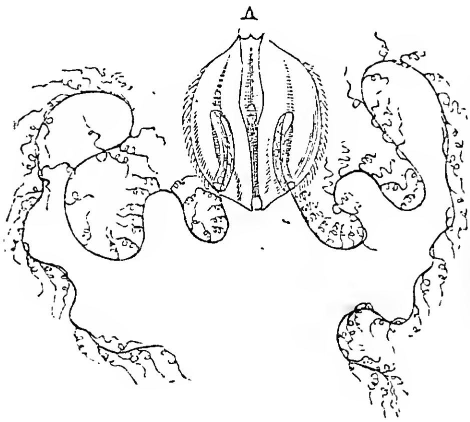
A, Spicules of *Gorgonia guttata*.
B, Spicules of *Muricia elongata*.

ever, calcareous), which are remarkable for the elegance of their forms; these are disposed with great regularity around the bases of the polypes, and even extend part of their length upwards on their bodies. In the *Gorgonia* or sea-fan, whilst the central part of the polypidom is consolidated into a horny axis, the soft flesh which clothes this axis is so full of tuberculated spicules, especially in its outer layer, that, when this dries-up, they form a thick yellowish or reddish incrustation upon the horny stem; this crust is, however, so friable, that it may be easily rubbed down between the fingers, and when examined with the Microscope, it is found to consist of spicules of different shapes and sizes, more or less resembling those shown in Figs. 362, 363, sometimes colourless, but sometimes of a beautiful crimson, yellow, or purple. These spicules are best seen by Black-ground illumination, especially when viewed by the Binocular Microscope. They are, of course, to be separated from the animal substance in the same manner as the calcareous spicules of Sponges (§ 512); and they should be mounted, like them, in Canada balsam. The spicules always possess an organic basis; as is proved by the fact, that when their lime is dissolved by dilute acid, a gelatinous-looking residuum is left, which preserves the form of the spicule.

530. The *Ctenophora*, or 'comb-bearers,' are so named from the comb-like arrangement of the rows of tiny 'paddles,' by the movement of which the bodies of these animals are propelled. A very beautiful and not uncommon representative of this order is furnished by the *Cydippe pileus* (Fig. 364), very commonly known as the *Beroë*, which designation, however, properly appertains to another animal (Fig. 365) of the same grade of organization. The body of *Cydippe* is a nearly-globular mass of soft jelly, usually about 3-8ths of an inch in diameter; and it may be observed, even with the naked eye, to be marked by eight bright bands, which proceed from pole to pole like meridian lines. These bands are seen with the Microscope to be formed of rows of flattened filaments, far larger than ordinary cilia, but lashing the water in the same manner; they sometimes act quite independently of one another, so as to give to the body every variety of motion, but sometimes work altogether. If the sun-light should fall upon them when they are in activity, they display very beautiful iridescent colours. In addition to these 'paddles,' the *Cydippe* is furnished with a pair of long tendril-like filaments, arising from the bottom of a pair of cavities in the posterior part of the body, and furnished with lateral branches (A); within these cavities they may lie doubled-up, so as not to be visible externally; and when they are ejected, which often happens quite suddenly, the main filaments first come-forth, and the lateral tendrils subsequently uncoil themselves, to be drawn-in again and packed-up within the cavities with almost equal suddenness. The mouth of the animal, situated at one of the poles, leads first to a quadrifid cavity bounded by four folds which seem to represent the oral proboscis of the

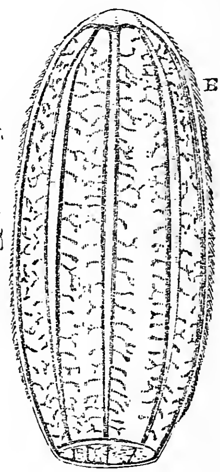
ordinary Medusæ (Fig. 359); and this leads to the true stomach, which passes towards the opposite pole, near to which it bifurcates,

Fig. 364.



Cydippe pileus, with its tentacles extended.

Fig. 365.



Beroë Forskalii, showing the tubular prolongations of the stomach.

its branches passing towards the polar surface on either side of a little body which has every appearance of being a nervous ganglion, and which is surmounted externally by a fringe-like apparatus that seems essentially to consist of sensory tentacles.* From the cavity of the stomach, tubular prolongations pass-off beneath the ciliated bands, very much as in the true *Beroë* (B); these may easily be injected with coloured liquids, by the introduction of the extremity of a fine-pointed glass-syringe (Fig. 106) into the mouth. The liveliness of this little creature, which may sometimes be collected in large quantities at once by the Stick-net, renders it a most beautiful subject for observation when due scope is given to its movements; but for the sake of Microscopic examination, it is of course necessary to confine these.—Various species of true *Beroë*, some of them even attaining the size of a small lemon, are

* It is commonly stated that the two branches of the alimentary canal open on the surface by two pores situated in the hollow of the fringe, one on either side of the nervous ganglion. The Author, however, has not been able to satisfy himself of the existence of such excretory pores in the ordinary *Cydippe* or *Beroë*, although he has repeatedly injected their whole alimentary canal and its extensions, and has attentively watched the currents produced by ciliary action in the interior of the bifurcating prolongations, which currents always appear to him to return as from cæcal extremities. He is himself inclined to believe that this arrangement has reference solely to the nutrition of the nervous ganglion and tentacular apparatus, which lies imbedded (so to speak) in the bifurcation of the alimentary canal, so as to be able to draw its supply of nutriment direct from that cavity.

occasionally to be met with on our coasts; in all of which the movements of the body are effected by the like agency of paddles arranged in meridional bands. These are splendidly luminous in the dark, and the luminosity is retained even by fragments of their bodies, being augmented by agitation of the water containing them.—All the *Ctenophora* are reproduced from eggs, and are already quite advanced in their development by the time they are hatched. Long before they escape, indeed, they swim about with great activity within the walls of their diminutive prison; their rows of locomotive paddles early attaining a large size, although the long flexile tentacles of *Cydippe* are then only short stumpy protuberances. Through the embryonic forms of the two groups, Prof. Alex. Agassiz considers the *Ctenophora* as related to *Echinodermata*.

Those who may desire to acquire a more systematic and detailed acquaintance with the Zoophyte-group, may be especially referred to the following Treatises and Memoirs, in addition to those already cited, and to the various recent systematic Treatises on Zoology:—Dr. Johnston's "History of British Zoophytes," Prof. Milne-Edwards's "Recherches sur les Polypes," and his "Histoire des Corallaires" (in the 'Suites à Buffon'), Paris, 1857, Prof. Van Beneden 'Sur les Tubulaires,' and 'Sur les Campanulaires,' in Mém. de l'Acad. Roy. de Bruxelles," Tom. xvii., and his "Recherches sur l'Hist. Nat. des Polypes qui fréquentent les Côtes de Belgique," *Op. cit.* Tom. xxxvi., Sir J. G. Dalyell's "Rare and Remarkable Animals of Scotland," Vol. i., Trembley's "Mém. pour servir à l'histoire d'un genre de Polype d'Eau douce," M. Hollard's 'Monographie du Genre *Actinia*,' in "Ann. des Sci. Nat.," Ser. 3, Tom. xv., Prof. Max. Schultze, 'On the Male Reproductive Organs of *Campanularia geniculata*, in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," Vol. iii. (1855), p. 59, Prof. Agassiz's beautiful Monograph on American Medusæ, forming the third volume of his "Contributions to the Natural History of the United States of America," Mr. Hincks's "British Hydroid Zoophytes," Prof. Allman's admirable Memoirs on *Cordylophora* and *Myriothela* in the Philos. Transact. for 1853 and 1875, Prof. J. R. Greene's "Manual of the Sub-Kingdom *Cœlenterata*," which contains a Bibliography very complete to the date of its publication, and the articles 'Actinozoa,' 'Ctenophora,' and 'Hydrozoa,' in the Supplement to the Natural History Division of the "English Cyclopædia." The *Ctenophora* are specially treated of in Vol. iii. of Prof. Agassiz's "Contributions to the Natural History of the United States." See also Prof. Alex. Agassiz's "Sea-side Studies in Natural History," and his "Illustrated Catalogue of the Museum of Comparative Anatomy at Harvard College," Prof. James-Clark in "American Journal of Science," Ser. 2, Vol. xxxv. p. 348, Dr D. Macdonald in "Transact. Roy. Soc. Edinb.," Vol. xxiii. p. 515, Mr, H. N. Moseley 'On the Structure of a species of *Millepora*,' in "Philos. Trans.," 1877, p. 117, and 'On the Structure of the *Stylasteridæ*, Ibid., 1878, p. 425; and on the *Acalephæ*,' Prof. Haeckel's "Beiträge zur Naturgeschichte der Hydromedusen," the masterly work of the brothers Hertwig, "Das Nervensystem und die Sinnesorgane der Medusen" (1878), and the Memoir of Prof. Schäfer 'On the Nervous System of *Aurelia aurita*,' in "Philsos. Trans.," 1878, p. 563.

CHAPTER XIV.

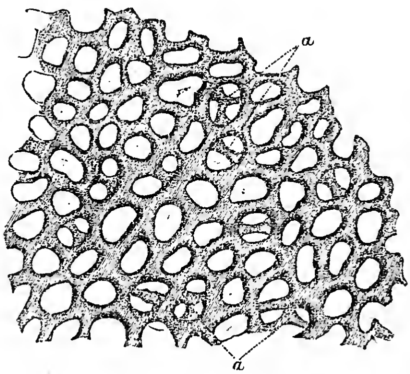
ECHINODERMATA.

531. As we ascend the scale of Animal life, we meet with such a rapid advance in complexity of structure, that it is no longer possible to acquaint one's-self with any organism by Microcsopic examination of it as a whole; and the dissection or analysis which becomes necessary, in order that each separate part may be studied in detail, belongs rather to the Comparative Anatomist than to the ordinary Microscopist. This is especially the case with the *Echinus* (Sea-Urchin), *Asterias* (Star-fish), and other members of the class Echinodermata, even a general account of whose complex organization would be quite foreign to the purpose of this work. Yet there are certain parts of their structure which furnish Microscopic objects of such beauty and interest that they cannot by any means be passed by; while the study of their Embryonic forms, which can be prosecuted by any Sea-side observer, bring into view an order of facts of the highest scientific interest.

532. It is in the structure of that Calcareous Skeleton which probably exists under some form in every member of this class, that the ordinary Microscopist finds most to interest him. This attains its highest development in the *Echinida;* in which it forms a box-like shell or 'test,' composed of numerous polygonal plates jointed to each other with great exactness, and beset on its external surface with 'spines,' which may have the form of prickles of no great length, or may be stout club-shaped bodies, or, again, may be very long and slender rods. The intimate structure of the shell is everywhere the same; for it is composed of a *network,* which consists of Carbonate of Lime with a very small quantity of animal matter as a basis, and which extends in every direction (*i.e.*, in thickness as well as in length and breadth), its *areolæ* or interspaces freely communicating with each other (Figs. 366, 367). These 'areolæ,' and the solid structure which surrounds them, may bear an extremely variable proportion one to the other; so that in two masses of equal size, the one or the other may greatly predominate; and the texture may have either a remarkable lightness and porosity, if the network be a very open one like that of Fig. 366, or may possess a considerable degree of compactness, if the solid portion be strengthened. Generally speaking, the different layers of this network, which are connected together by pillars that pass from one to the other in a direction perpendicular to their

plane, are so arranged that the perforations in one shall correspond to the intermediate solid structure in the next; and their transparence is such that when we are examining a section thin enough to contain only two or three such layers, it is easy, by properly focussing the Microscope, to bring either one of them into distinct view. From this very simple but very beautiful arrangement, it comes to pass that the plates of which the entire 'test' is made up possess a very considerable degree of strength, notwithstanding that their porousness is such, that if a portion of a fractured edge, or any other part from which the investing membrane has been removed, be laid upon fluid of almost any description, this will be rapidly sucked-up into its substance.—A very beautiful example of the same kind of calcareous skeleton, having a more regular conformation, is furnished by the disk or 'rosette' which is contained in the tip of every one of the tubular suckers put forth by the living Echinus from the 'ambulacral pores' that are seen in the rows of smaller plates interposed between the larger spine-bearing plates of its box-like shell. If the entire disk be cut-off, and be mounted when dry in Canada balsam, the calcareous rosette may be seen sufficiently well; but its beautiful structure is better made-out when the animal membrane that encloses it has been got rid-of by boiling in a solution of caustic potass; and the appearance of one of the five segments of which it is composed, when thus prepared, is shown in Fig. 368.

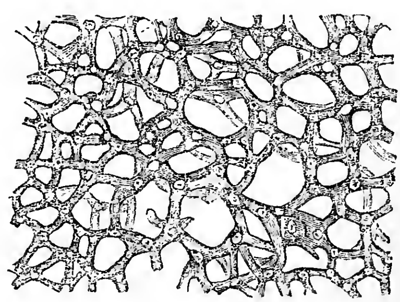
Fig. 366.



Section of Shell of *Echinus*, showing the calcareous network of which it is composed:—*a a*, portions of a deeper layer.

533. The most beautiful display of this reticulated structure, however, is shown in the structure of the 'spines' of *Echinus*, *Cidaris*, &c.; in which it is combined with solid ribs or pillars, disposed in such a manner as to increase the strength of these organs; a regular and elaborate pattern being formed by their intermixture, which shows considerable variety in different species.—When we

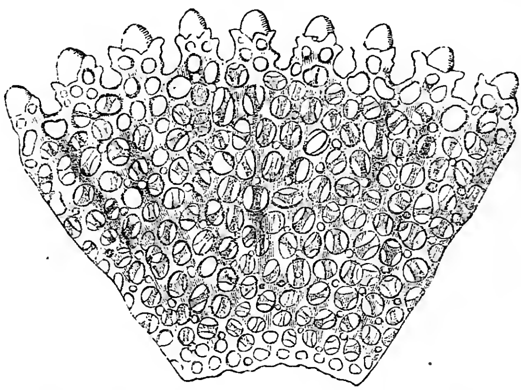
Fig. 367.



Transverse Section of central portion of Spine of *Acrocladia*, showing its more open network.

make a thin transverse section (Plate II., fig. 1) of almost any spine belonging to the genus *Echinus* (the small spines of our British

FIG. 368.

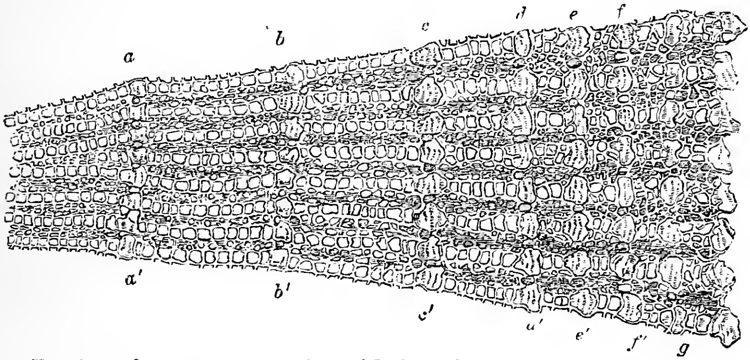


One of the segments of the calcareous skeleton of an Ambulacral Disk of *Echinus*.

species, however, being exceptional in this respect) or its immediate allies, we see it to be made up of a number of concentric layers, arranged in a manner that strongly reminds us of the concentric rings of an Exogenous tree (Fig. 254). The number of these layers is extremely variable; depending not merely upon the age of the spine, but (as will presently appear) upon the part of its length from which the section happens to be taken. The centre is usually occupied by a very open network (Fig. 367); and this is bounded by a row of transparent spaces (like those at *a a'*, *b b'*, *c c'*, &c., Fig. 369), which on a cursory inspection might be supposed to be void, but are found on closer examination to be the sections of solid ribs or pillars, which run in the direction of the length of the spine, and form the exterior of every layer. Their solidity becomes very obvious, when we either examine a section of a spine whose substance is pervaded (as often happens) with a colouring matter of some depth, or when we look at a very thin section by black-ground illumination. Around the innermost circle of these solid pillars there is another layer of the calcareous network, which again is surrounded by another circle of solid pillars; and this arrangement may be repeated many times, as shown in Fig. 369, the outermost row of pillars forming the projecting ribs that are commonly to be distinguished on the surface of the spine. Around the cup-shaped base of the spine is a membrane which is continuous with that covering the surface of the shell, and serves not merely to hold-down the cup upon the tubercle over which it works, but also by its contractility to move the spine in any required direction. This membrane is probably continued onwards over the whole surface of the spine, although it cannot be clearly traced to any distance

from the base, and the new formations may be presumed to take place in its substance. Each new formation completely ensheathes the old; not merely surrounding the part previously formed, but also projecting considerably beyond it; and thus it happens that

FIG. 369.



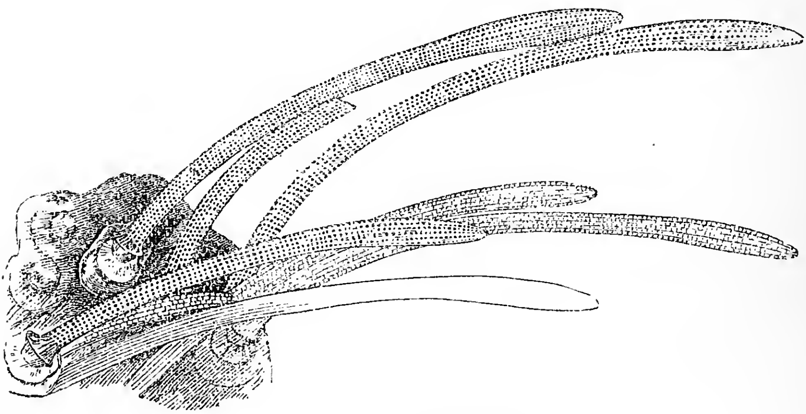
Portion of transverse section of Spine of *Acrocladia mammillata.*

the number of layers shown in a transverse section will depend in part upon the place of that section. For if it cross near the base, it will traverse every one of the successive layers from the very commencement; whilst if it cross near the apex, it will traverse only the single layer of the last growth, notwithstanding that, in the club-shape spines, this terminal portion may be of considerably larger diameter than the basal; and in any intermediate part of the spine, so many layers will be traversed, as have been formed since the spine first attained that length. The basal portion of the spine is enveloped in a reticulation of a very close texture, without concentric layers; forming the cup or socket which works over the tubercle of the shell.

534. Their combination of elegance of pattern with richness of colouring, renders well-prepared specimens of these Spines among the most beautiful objects that the Microscopist can anywhere meet-with. The large spines of the various species of the genus *Acrocladia* furnish sections most remarkable for size and elaborateness, as well as for depth of colour (in which last point, however, the deep purple spines of *Echinus lividus* are pre-eminent); but for exquisite neatness of pattern, there are no spines that can approach those of *Echinometra heteropora* (Plate II., fig. 1) and *E. lucunter.* The spines of *Heliocidaris variolaris* are also remarkable for their beauty.—No succession of concentric layers is seen in the spines of the British *Echini*, probably because (according to the opinion of the late Sir J. G. Dalyell) these spines are cast-off and renewed every year; each new formation thus going to make an entire spine, instead of making an addition to that previously existing.—Most curious indications are sometimes afforded by sections of Echinus-spines, of an extraordinary power of repa-

ration inherent in these bodies. For irregularities are often seen in the transverse sections, which can be accounted-for in no other way than by supposing the spines to have received an injury when the irregular part was at the exterior, and to have had its loss of substance supplied by the growth of new tissue, over which the subsequent layers have been formed as usual. And sometimes a peculiar ring may be seen upon the surface of a spine, which indicates the place of a complete fracture; all beyond it being a new growth, whose unconformableness to the older or basal portion is clearly shown by a longitudinal section.*—The spines of *Cidaris* present a marked departure from the plan of structure exhibited in Echinus; for not only are they destitute of concentric layers, but

FIG. 370.



Spines of *Spatangus*.

the calcareous network which forms their principal substance is encased in a solid calcareous sheath perforated with tubules, which seems to take the place of the separate pillars of the Echini. This is usually found to close-in the spine at its tip also; and thus it would appear that the entire spine must be formed at once, since no addition could be made either to its length or to its diameter, save on the outside of the sheath, where it is never to be found. The sheath itself often rises up in prominent points or ridges on the surface of these spines; thus giving them a character by which they may be distinguished from those of Echini.—The slender, almost filamentary spines of *Spatangus* (Fig. 370), and the innumerable minute hair-like processes attached to the shell of *Clypeaster*, are composed of the like regularly-reticulated substance; and these are very beautiful objects for the lower powers of the Microscope, when laid upon a black ground and examined by reflected light without any further preparation.—It is interesting also to find that the same structure presents itself in the curious

* See the Author's description of such Reparations in the "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. iii. (1870), p. 225.

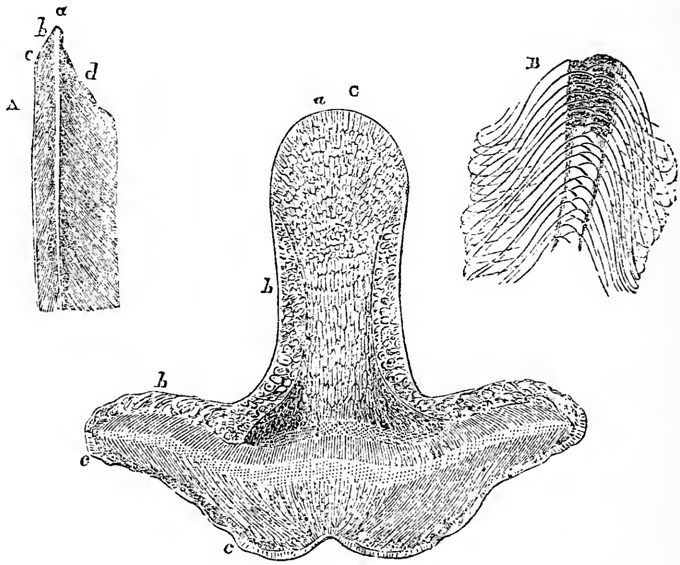
Pedicellariæ (forceps-like bodies mounted on long stalks), which are found on the surface of many Echinida, and the nature of which was formerly a source of much perplexity to Naturalists, some having maintained that they are parasites, whilst others considered them as proper appendages of the Echinus itself. The complete conformity which exists between the structure of their skeleton and that of the animal to which they are attached, removes all doubt of their being truly appendages to it, as observation of their actions in the living state would indicate.

535. Another example of the same structure is found in the peculiar framework of plates which surrounds the interior of the oral orifice of the shell, and which includes the five *teeth* that may often be seen projecting externally through that orifice; the whole forming what is known as the 'lantern of Aristotle.' The texture of the plates or jaws resembles that of the shell in every respect, save that the network is more open; but that of the teeth differs from it so widely, as to have been likened to that of the bone and dentine of Vertebrate animals. The careful investigations of Mr. James Salter,* however, have fully demonstrated that the appearances which have suggested this comparison are to be otherwise explained; the plan of structure of the *tooth* being essentially the same as that of the *shell*, although greatly modified in its working-out. The complete tooth has somewhat the form of that of the front tooth of a Rodent; save that its concave side is strengthened by a projecting 'keel,' so that a transverse section of the tooth presents the form of a ⊥. This keel is composed of cylindrical rods of carbonate of lime, having club-shaped extremities lying obliquely to the axis of the tooth (Fig. 371, A, *d*); these rods do not adhere very firmly together, so that it is difficult to keep them in their places in making sections of the part. The convex surface of the tooth (*c*, *c*, *c*) is covered with a firmer layer, which has received the name of 'enamel;' this is composed of shorter rods, also obliquely arranged, but having a much more intimate mutual adhesion than we find among the rods of the keel. The principal part of the substance of the tooth (A, *b*) is made-up of what may be called the 'primary plates;' these are triangular plates of calcareous shell-substance, arranged in two series (as shown at B), and constituting a sort of framework with which the other parts to be presently described become connected. These plates may be seen by examining the growing base of an adult tooth that has been preserved with its attached soft parts in alcohol, or (which is preferable) by examining the base of the tooth of a fresh specimen, the minuter the better. The lengthening of the tooth below, as it is worn-away above, is mainly affected by the successive addition of new 'primary plates.' To the outer edge of the primary plates, at some little distance from the base, we find attached a set of

* See his Memoir 'On the Structure and Growth of the Tooth of Echinus,' in "Philos. Transact." for 1861, p. 387.

lappet-like appendages, which are formed of similar plates of calcareous shell-substance, and are denominated by Mr. Salter 'secondary plates.' Another set of appendages termed 'flabelliform processes' is added at some little distance from the growing base; these consist of elaborate reticulations of calcareous fibres, ending in fan-shaped extremities. And at a point still further from the base, we find the different components of the tooth connected together by 'soldering particles,' which are minute calcareous disks interposed between the previously-formed structures; and it is by the increased development of this connective substance, that the intervening spaces are narrowed into the semblance of tubuli like those of bone or dentine. Thus a vertical section of the tooth comes to present an appearance very like that of the *bone* of a Vertebrate animal, with its lacunæ, canaliculi, and lamellæ; but in a transverse section the body of the tooth bears a stronger resemblance to *dentine;* whilst the keel and enamel-layer

Fig. 371.

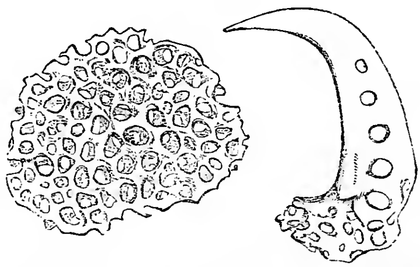


Structure of the Tooth of *Echinus:*—A, vertical section, showing the form of the apex of the tooth as produced by wear, and retained by the relative hardness of its elementary parts; *a*, the clear condensed axis; *b*, the body formed of plates; *c*, the so-called enamel; *d*, the keel:—B, commencing growth of the tooth, as seen at its base, showing its two systems of plates; the dark appearance in the central portion of the upper part is produced by the incipient reticulations of the flabelliform processes:—C, transverse section of the tooth, showing at *a* the ridge of the keel, at *b* its lateral portion, resembling the shell in texture; at *c*, *c*, the enamel.

more resemble an oblique section of *Pinna* than any other form of shell-structure.

536. The calcareous plates which form the less compact skeletons of the *Asteriada* ('star-fish' and their allies), and of the *Ophiurida* ('sand-stars' and 'brittle-stars'), have the same texture as those of the shell of Echinus. And this presents itself, too, in the spines or prickles of their surface, when these (as in the great *Goniaster equestris*) are large enough to be furnished with a calcareous framework, and are not mere projections of the horny integument. An example of this kind, furnished by the *Astrophyton* (better known as the *Euryale*), is represented in Fig. 372. The spines with which the arms of the species of *Ophiocoma* ('brittle-star') are beset, are often remarkable for their beauty of conformation; those of *O. rosula*, one of the most common kinds, might serve (as Prof. E. Forbes justly remarked), in point of lightness and beauty, as models for the spire of a cathedral. These are seen to the greatest advantage when mounted in Canada balsam, and viewed by the Binocular Microscope with Black-ground illumination.—It is interesting to remark that the minute tooth of *Ophiocoma* clearly exhibits, with scarcely any preparation, that gradational transition between the ordinary reticular structure of the shell and the peculiar substance of the tooth, which, in the adult tooth of the *Echinus*, can only be traced by making sections of it near its base. The tooth of *Ophiocoma* may be mounted in balsam as a transparent object, with scarcely any grinding down; and it is then seen that the basal portion of the tooth is formed upon the open reticular plan characteristic of the 'shell,' whilst this is so modified in the older portion by subsequent addition, that the upper part of the tooth has a bone-like character.

FIG. 372.



Calcareous plate and claw of *Astrophyton* (Euryale).

537. The calcareous skeleton is very highly developed in the *Crinoidea;* their stems and branches being made-up of a calcareous network closely resembling that of the shell of the Echinus. This is extremely well seen, not only in the recent *Pentacrinus Caput Medusæ*, a somewhat rare animal of the West Indian seas, but also in a large proportion of the fossil Crinoids, whose remains are so abundant in many of the older Geological formations; for notwithstanding that these bodies have been penetrated in the act of fossilization by a Mineral infiltration, which seems to have substituted itself for the original fabric (a regularly-crystalline cleavage being commonly found to exist in the fossil stems of Encrinites, &c., as in the fossil spines of Echinida), yet their organic structure is often

most perfectly preserved.* In the circular stems of *Encrinites*, the texture of the calcareous network is uniform, or nearly so, throughout; but in the pentangular *Pentacrini*, a certain figure or pattern is formed by variations of texture in different parts of the transverse section.†

538. The minute structure of the Shells, Spines, and other solid parts of the skeleton of Echinodermata can only be displayed by thin sections made upon the general plan already described (§§ 192–195). But their peculiar texture requires that certain precautions should be taken; in the first place, in order to prevent the section from breaking whilst being reduced to the desirable thickness; and in the second, to prevent the interspaces of the network from being clogged by the particles abraded in the reducing process.—A section of the Shell, Spine, or other portion of the skeleton should first be cut with a fine saw, and be rubbed on a flat file until it is about as thin as ordinary card, after which it should be smoothed on one side by friction with water on a Water-of-Ayr stone. It should then, after careful washing, be dried, first on white blotting-paper, afterwards by exposure for some time to a gentle heat, so that no water may be retained in the interstices of the network, which would oppose the complete penetration of the Canada balsam. Next, it is to be attached to a glass-slip by balsam hardened in the usual manner; but particular care should be taken, first, that the balsam be brought to exactly the right degree of hardness, and second, that there be enough not merely to attach the specimen to the glass, but also to saturate its substance throughout. The right degree of hardness is that at which the balsam can be with difficulty indented by the thumb-nail; if it be made harder than this, it is apt to chip-off the glass in grinding, so that the specimen also breaks away; and if it be softer, it holds the abraded particles, so that the openings of the network become clogged with them. If, when rubbed-down nearly to the required thinness, the section appears to be uniform and satisfactory throughout, the reduction may be completed without displacing it; but if (as often happens) some inequality in thickness should be observable, or some minute air-bubbles should show themselves between the glass and the under surface, it is desirable to loosen the specimen by the application of just enough heat to melt the balsam (special care being taken to avoid the production of fresh air-bubbles), and to turn it over so as to attach the side last

* The calcareous skeleton even of living Echinoderms has a crystalline aggregation, as is very obvious in the more solid spines of *Echinometræ*, &c.; for it is difficult, in sawing these across, to avoid their tendency to *cleavage* in the oblique plane of calcite. And the Author is informed by Mr. Sorby, that the calcareous deposit which fills up the areolæ of the fossilized skeleton has always the same crystalline system with the skeleton itself, as is shown not merely by the uniformity of their cleavage, but by their similar action on Polarized light.

† See Figs. 74–76 of the Author's Memoir on "Shell Structure" in the Report of the British Association for 1847.

polished to the glass, taking care to remove or to break with the needle-point any air-bubbles that there may be in the balsam covering the part of the glass on which it is laid. The surface now brought uppermost is then to be very carefully ground down; special care being taken to keep its thickness uniform through every part (which may be even better judged-of by the touch than by the eye), and to carry the reducing process far enough, without carrying it too far. Until practice shall have enabled the operator to judge of this by passing his finger over the specimen, he must have continual recourse to the Microscope during the latter stages of his work; and he should bear constantly in mind, that, as the specimen will become much more transparent when mounted in balsam and covered with glass, than it is when the ground surface is exposed, he need not carry his reducing process so far as to produce at once the entire transparence he aims at, the attempt to accomplish which would involve the risk of the destruction of the specimen. In 'mounting' the specimen, liquid balsam should be employed, and only a very gentle heat (not sufficient to produce air-bubbles, or to loosen the specimen from the glass) should be applied; and if, after it has been mounted, the section should be found too thick, it will be easy to remove the glass cover and to reduce it further, care being taken to harden to the proper degree the balsam which has been newly laid-on.

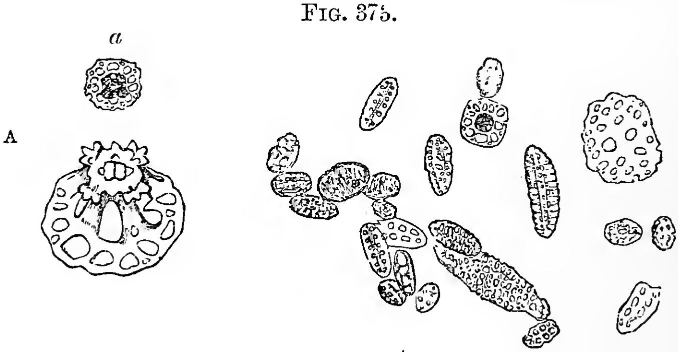
539. If a number of sections are to be prepared at once (which it is often useful to do for the sake of economy of time, or in order to compare sections taken from different parts of the same spine), this may be most readily accomplished by laying them down, when cut-off by the saw, without any preliminary preparation save the blowing of the calcareous dust from their surfaces, upon a thick slip of glass well covered with hardened balsam; a large proportion of its surface may thus be occupied by the sections attached to it, the chief precaution required being that all the sections come into equally close contact with it. Their surfaces may then be brought to an exact level, by rubbing them down, first upon a flat piece of grit (which is very suitable for the rough grinding of such sections), and then upon a large Water-of-Ayr stone whose surface is 'true.' When this level has been attained, the ground surface is to be well washed and dried, and some balsam previously hardened is to be spread over it, so as to be sucked-in by the sections, a moderate heat being at the same time applied to the glass slide; and when this has been increased sufficiently to loosen the sections without overheating the balsam, the sections are to be turned-over, one by one, so that the *ground* surfaces are now to be attached to the glass slip, special care being taken to press them all into close contact with it. They are then to be very carefully rubbed-down, until they are nearly reduced to the required thinness; and if, on examining them from time to time, their thinness should be found to be uniform throughout, the reduction of the entire set may be completed at once; and when

it has been carried sufficiently far, the sections, loosened by warmth, are to be taken-up on a camel-hair brush dipped in turpentine, and transferred to separate slips of glass whereon some liquid balsam has been previously laid, in which they are to be mounted in the usual manner. It more frequently happens, however, that, notwithstanding every care, the sections, when ground in a number together, are not of uniform thickness, owing to some of them being underlaid by a thicker stratum of balsam than others; and it is then necessary to transfer them to separate slips before the reducing process is completed, attaching them with hardened balsam, and finishing each section separately.

540. A very curious *internal* skeleton, formed of detached plates or spicules, is found in many members of this class; often forming an investment like a coat of mail to some of the viscera, especially the ovaries. The forms of these plates and spicules are generally so diverse, even in closely-allied species, as to afford very good differential characters.—This subject is one that has been as yet but very little studied, Mr. Stewart being the only Microscopist who has given much attention to it;* but it is well worthy of much more extended research.

541. It now remains for us to notice the curious and often very beautiful structures, which represent, in the order *Holothurida*, the solid calcareous skeleton of the orders already noticed. All the animals belonging to this Order are distinguished by the flexibility and absence of firmness of their envelopes; and excepting in the case of certain species which have a set of calcareous plates, supporting teeth, disposed around the mouth, very much as in the Echinida, we do not find among them any representation that is apparent to the unassisted eye, of that skeleton which constitutes

FIG. 375.



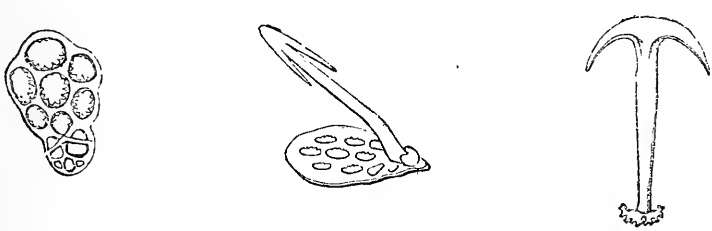
Calcareous plates in Skin of *Holothuria*.

so distinctive a feature of the class generally. But a microscopic examination of their integument at once brings to view the existence of great numbers of minute isolated plates, every one of them presenting the characteristic reticulated structure, which are set

* See his Memoir in the "Linnæan Transactions," Vol. xxv. p. 365.

with greater or less closeness in the substance of the skin. Various forms of the plates which thus present themselves in *Holothuria* are shown in Fig. 373; and at A is seen an oblique view of the kind marked *a*, more highly magnified, showing the very peculiar manner wherein one part is superposed on the other, which is not at all brought into view when it is merely seen through in the ordinary manner.—In the *Synapta*, one of the long-bodied forms of this order, which abounds in the Adriatic Sea, and of which two species (the *S. digitata* and *S. inhærens*) occasionally occur upon our own coasts,* the calcareous plates of the integument have the regular form shown at A, Fig. 374; and each of these carries the curious

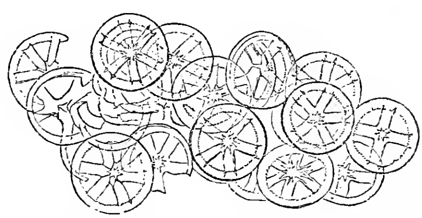
Fig. 374.



Calcareous Skeleton of *Synapta*:—A, plate imbedded in Skin; B, the same, with its anchor-like spine attached; C, anchor-like spine separated.

anchor-like appendage, C, which is articulated to it by the notched piece at the foot, in the manner shown (in side view) at B. The anchor-like appendages project from the surface of the skin, and may be considered as representing the spines of Echinida.—Nearly allied to the Synapta is the *Chirodota*, the integument of which is entirely destitute of 'anchors,' but is furnished with very remarkable wheel-like plates; those represented in Fig. 375 are found in the skin of *Chirodota violacea*, a species inhabiting the Mediterranean. These 'wheels' are objects of singular beauty and delicacy, being especially remarkable for the very minute notching (scarcely to be discerned in the figures without the aid of a magnifying-glass) which is traceable round the inner margin of their 'tires.'—There can be scarcely any reasonable doubt that every member of this

Fig. 375.



Wheel-like plates from Skin of *Chirodota violacea*.

* See Woodward in "Proceedings of Zoological Society," July 13, 1858.

Order has some kind of calcareous skeleton, disposed in a manner conformable to the examples now cited; and it would be very valuable to determine how far the marked peculiarities by which they are respectively distinguished, are characteristic of genera and species. The plates may be obtained separately by the usual method of treating the skin with a solution of potass; and they should be mounted in Canada balsam. But their position in the skin can only be ascertained by making sections of the integument, both vertical and parallel to its surface; and these sections, when dry, are most advantageously mounted in the same medium, by which their transparence is greatly increased. All the objects of this class are most beautifully displayed by the Black-ground illumination; and their solid forms are seen with increased effect under the Binocular. The Black-ground illumination applied to *very thin* sections of Echinus spines brings out some effects of marvellous beauty; and even in these the solid form of the network connecting the pillars is better seen with the Binocular than it can be with the ordinary Microscope.*

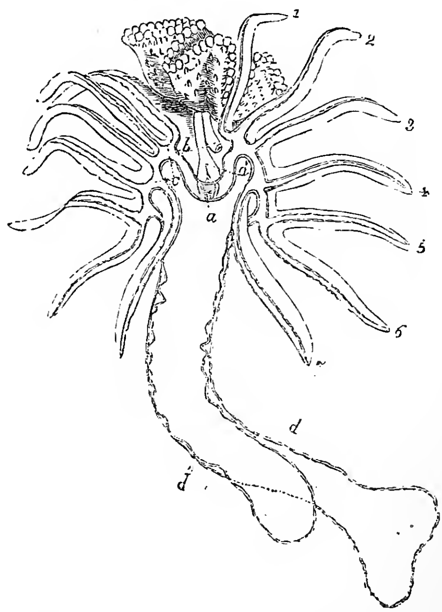
542. *Echinoderm-Larvæ.*—We have now to notice that most remarkable set of objects furnished to the Microscopic inquirer by the *larval* states of this class; for our knowledge of which we are chiefly indebted to the painstaking and widely-extended investigations of Prof. J. Müller. All that our limits permit is a notice of two of the most curious forms of these larvæ, by way of sample of the wonderful phenomena which his researches brought to light, and to which the attention of Microscopists who have the opportunity of studying them should be the more assiduously directed; as even the most delicate of these organisms have been found capable of such perfect preservation, as to admit of being studied, when mounted as preparations, even better than when alive (§ 545, *a*). The peculiar feature by which the early history of the Echinoderms generally seems to be distinguished is this,—that the embryonic mass of cells is converted, not into a larva which subsequently attains the adult form by a process of metamorphosis, but into a peculiar 'zooid' or *pseudembryo*, which seems to exist for no other purpose than to give origin to the Echinoderm by a kind of internal gemmation, and to carry it to a distance by its active locomotive powers, so as to prevent the spots inhabited by the respective species from being overcrowded by the accumulation of their progeny. The larval zooids are formed upon a type quite different from that which characterizes the adults; for instead of a *radial* symmetry, they exhibit a *bilateral*, the two sides being precisely alike, and each having a ciliated fringe along the greater part or

* It may be here pointed out that the reticulated appearance is sometimes deceptive; what seems to be *solid* network being in many instances a *hollow* network of passages channelled-out in a solid calcareous substance. Between these two conditions, in which the relation between the solid framework and the intervening space is completely reversed, there is every intermediate gradation.

the whole of its length. The two fringes are united by a superior and an inferior transverse ciliated band; and between these two the mouth of the zooid is always situated. Further, although the adult Star-fish and Sand-stars have usually neither intestinal tube nor anal orifice, their larval zooids, like those of other Echinoderms, always possess both. The external forms of these larvæ, however, vary in a most remarkable degree, owing to the unequal evolution of their different parts; and there is also a considerable diversity in the several Orders, as to the proportion of the fabric of the larva which enters into the composition of the adult form. In the fully developed Star-fish and Sea-urchin, the only part retained is a portion of the stomach and intestine, which is pinched-off, so to speak, from that of the larval zooid.

543. One of the most remarkable forms of Echinoderm-larvæ is that which has received the name of *Bipinnaria* (Fig. 376), from the symmetrical arrangement of its natatory organs. The mouth (*a*), which opens in the middle of a transverse furrow, leads through an œsophagus *a'* to a large stomach, around which the body of a Star-fish is developing itself; and on one side of this mouth are observed the intestinal tube and anus (*b*). On either side of the anterior portion of the body are six or more narrow fin-like appendages, which are fringed with cilia; and the posterior part of the body is prolonged into a sort of pedicle, bilobed towards its extremity, which also is covered with cilia. The organization of this larva seems completed, and its movements through the water become very active, before the mass at its anterior extremity presents anything of the aspect of the Star-fish; in this respect corresponding with the movements of the *pluteus* of the Echinida (§ 545). The temporary mouth of the larva does not remain as the permanent mouth of the Star-fish; for the œsophagus of the latter enters on what is to become the dorsal side of its body, and the true

Fig. 376.



Bipinnaria asterigera, or Larva of Star-fish:—*a*, mouth; *a'*, œsophagus; *b*, intestinal tube and anal orifice; *c*, furrow in which the mouth is situated; *d d'*, bilobed peduncle; 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, ciliated arms.

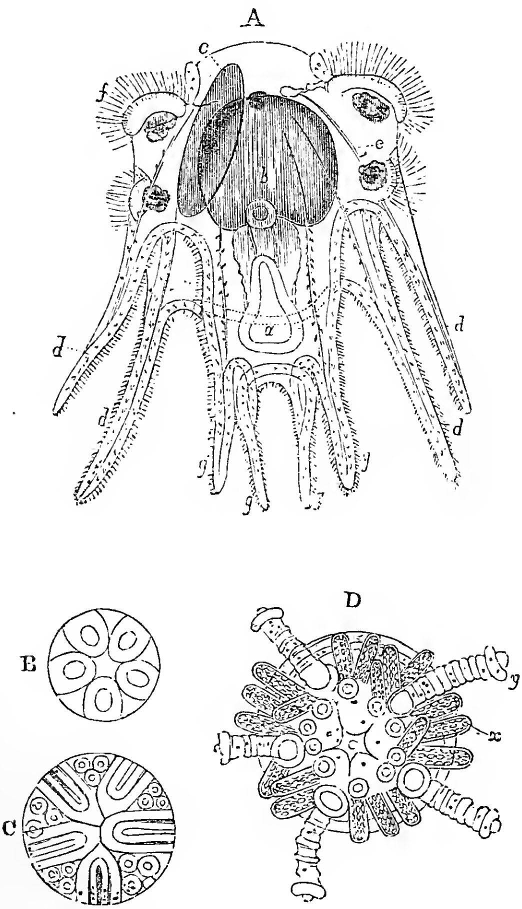
mouth is subsequently formed by the thinning-away of the integument on its ventral surface. The young Star-fish is separated from the Bipinnarian larva by the forcible contractions of the connecting stalk, as soon as the calcareous consolidation of its integument has taken-place and its true mouth has been formed, but long before it has attained the adult condition; and as its ulterior development has not hitherto been observed in any instance, it is not yet known what are the species in which this mode of evolution prevails. The larval zooid continues active for several days after its detachment; and it is possible, though perhaps scarcely probable, that it may develope another Asteroid by a repetition of this process of gemmation.

544. In the Bipinnaria, as in other larval zooids of the Asteriada, there is no internal calcareous frame-work; such a frame-work, however, is found in the larvæ of the *Echinida* and *Ophiurida*, of which the form delineated in Fig. 377 is an example. The embryo issues from the ovum as soon as it has attained, by repeated 'segmentation' of the yolk (§ 581), the condition of the 'mulberry-mass;' and the superficial cells of this are covered with cilia, by whose agency it swims freely through the water. So rapid are the early processes of development, that no more than from twelve to twenty-four hours intervene between fecundation and the emersion of the embryo; the division into two, four, or even eight segments taking-place within three hours after impregnation. Within a few hours after its emersion, the embryo changes from the spherical into a sub-pyramidal form with a flattened base; and in the centre of this base is a depression, which gradually deepens, so as to form a mouth that communicates with a cavity in the interior of the body, which is surrounded by a portion of the yolk-mass that has returned to the liquid granular state. Subsequently a short intestinal tube is found, with an anal orifice opening on one side of the body. The pyramid is at first triangular, but it afterwards becomes quadrangular; and the angles are greatly prolonged round the mouth (or base), whilst the apex of the pyramid is sometimes much extended in the opposite direction, but is sometimes rounded off into a kind of dome (Fig. 377, A). All parts of this curious body, and especially its most projecting portions, are strengthened by a frame-work of thread-like calcareous rods (*e*). In this condition the embryo swims freely through the water, being propelled by the action of the cilia, which clothe the four angles of the pyramid and its projecting arms, and which are sometimes thickly set upon two or four projecting lobes (*f*); and it has received the designation of *pluteus*. The mouth is usually surrounded by a sort of proboscis, the angles of which are prolonged into four slender processes (*g*, *g*, *g*, *g*), shorter than the four outer legs, but furnished with a similar calcareous frame-work.

545. The first indication of the production of the young Echinus from its 'pluteus,' is given by the formation of a circular disk (Fig. 377, A, *c*), on one side of the central stomach (*b*); and this

disk soon presents five prominent tubercles (B), which subsequently become elongated into tubular cirrhi. The disk gradually extends itself over the stomach, and between its cirrhi the rudiments of spines are seen to protrude (C); these, with the cirrhi, increase in

Fig. 377.



Embryonic development of *Echinus*:—A, *Pluteus-larva* at the time of the first appearance of the disk; *a*, mouth in the midst of the four-pronged proboscis; *b*, stomach; *c*, Echinoid disk; *d*, *d*, *d*, *d*, four arms of the pluteus-body; *e*, calcareous framework; *f*, ciliated lobes; *g*, *g*, *g*, *g*, ciliated processes of the proboscis;—B, Disk with the first indication of the cirrhi:—C, Disk, with the origin of the spines between the cirrhi;—D, more advanced disk, with the cirrhi, *g*, and spines, *x*, projecting considerably from the surface. (N.B.—In B, C, and D, the Pluteus is not represented, its parts having undergone no change, save in becoming relatively smaller.)

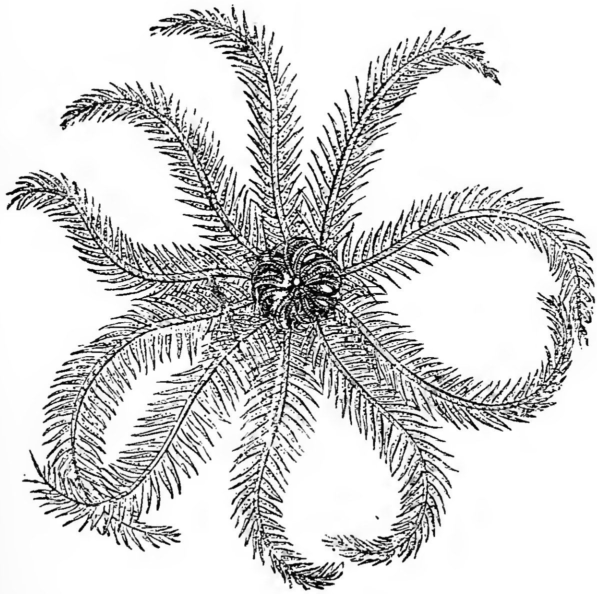
length, so as to project against the envelope of the pluteus, and to push themselves through it; whilst, at the same time, the original angular appendages of the pluteus diminish in size, the ciliary movement becomes less active, being superseded by the action of the cirrhi and spines, and the mouth of the pluteus closes-up. By the time that the disk has grown over half of the gastric sphere, very little of the pluteus remains, except some of the slender calcareous rods; and the number of cirrhi and spines rapidly increases. The calcareous frame-work of the shell at first consists, like that of the Star-fishes, of a series of isolated net-works developed between the cirrhi; and upon these rest the first-formed spines (D.) But they gradually become more consolidated, and extend themselves over the granular mass, so as to form the series of plates constituting the shell. The mouth of the Echinus (which is altogether distinct from that of the pluteus) is formed at that side of the granular mass over which the shell is last extended; and the first indication of it consists in the appearance of the five calcareous concretions, which are the summits of the five portions of the frame-work of jaws and teeth that surround it. All traces of the original pluteus are now lost; and the larva, which now presents the general aspect of an Echinoid animal, gradually augments in size, multiplies the number of its plates, cirrhi, and spines, evolves itself into its particular generic and specific type, and undergoes various changes of internal structure, tending to the development of the complete organism.

a. An excellent summary of the developmental history of the several Echinoderm-types, with references to the principal Memoirs which treat of it, will be found in Chap. xx. of Mr. Balfour's "Comparative Embryology."—In collecting the free-swimming larvæ of Echinodermata, the Stick-net should be carefully employed in the manner already described (§ 217); and the search for them is of course most likely to be successful in those localities in which the adult forms of the respective species abound, and on warm calm days, in which they seem to come to the surface in the greatest numbers. The following mode of preparing and mounting them has been kindly communicated to the Author by Mr. Percy Sladen:—"For killing and preserving Echinoderm zooids, I have come to prefer either Osmic acid or the Picro-sulphuric mixture of Kleinenberg (§ 199, *e*) of one-third strength. The latter, of course, destroys all calcareous structures; but the soft parts are preserved in a wonderful manner. If the diluted Kleinenberg's mixture is used, let the zooids remain in it for one or two hours; then wash them *thoroughly* in 70 per cent. Spirit, until all trace of acid is removed; then stain; then again wash in 70 per cent. Spirit, transfer them to 90 per cent. Spirit for some hours, and lastly to absolute Alcohol. Transfer them from this to Oil of Cloves; and finally mount in Canada balsam in the usual manner.—If Osmic acid be used, place three or four of the living zooids in a watch-glass of sea-water, and add a drop of the 1 per cent. solution. They should not remain even in this weak solution for more than a minute; and should then be thoroughly washed in a superabundance of 35 per cent. Spirit, to prevent the deposit of crystals of salt consequent on the action

of the osmic acid. Then transfer the specimens to 70 per cent. Spirit; and proceed as in the other case.

546. One of the most interesting to the Microscopist of all Echinodermata is the *Antedon** (more generally known as *Comatula*), or 'feather-star' (Fig. 378), which is the commonest existing re-

Fig. 378.



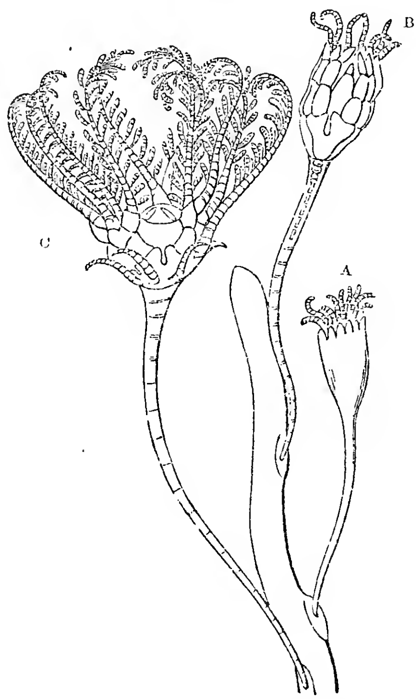
Antedon (Comatula) or Feather-star, seen from its under side.

presentative of the great fossil series of *Crinoidea*, or 'lily-stars,' that were among the most abundant types of this class in the earlier epochs of the world's history. Like these, the *young* of Antedon is attached by a stalk to a fixed base, as shown in Fig. 379; but when it has arrived at a certain stage of development, it drops off from this like a fruit from its stalk; and the animal is thenceforth free to move through the ocean-water it inhabits. It can swim with considerable activity; but it exerts this power chiefly to gain a suitable place for attaching itself by means of the jointed prehensile cirrhi put forth from the under side of the central disk (Fig. 378); so that, notwithstanding its locomotive power, it is nearly as stationary in its free adult condition, as it is in its earlier

* The Author has found himself obliged by the accepted rules of Zoological nomenclature, to adopt the designation *Antedon*, instead of the much better known and very appropriate name given to this type by Lamarck. See his 'Researches on the Structure, Physiology, and Development of *Antedon rosaceus*,' Part I., in "Philos. Transact.," 1866, p. 671.

Pentacrinoid stage. The *pentacrinoid larva**—first discovered by Mr. J. V. Thompson, of Cork, in 1823, but originally supposed by him to be a permanently-attached Crinoid—forms a most beautiful object for the lower powers of the Microscope, when well preserved in fluid, and viewed by a strong incident light (Plate XXI., fig. 3); and a series of specimens in different stages of development shows most curious modifications in the form and arrangement of the various component pieces of its calcareous skeleton. In its earliest stage (Fig. 379, A), the body is enclosed in a calyx composed of two circles of plates; namely, five *basals*, forming a sort of pyramid whose apex points downwards, and is attached to the highest joint of the stem: and five *orals* superposed on these, forming when closed a like pyramid whose apex points upwards, but usually separating to give passage to the tentacles, of which a circlet surrounds the mouth. In this condition there is no rudiment of arms. In the more advanced stage shown at B, the arms have begun to make their appearance; and the skeleton, when carefully examined is found to consist of the following pieces, as shown in Plate XXI., fig. 1:—b, b, the circlet of *basals* supported on the top of the stem; r^1, the circlet of *first radials*, now interposed between the basals and the orals, and alternating with both; between two of these is interposed the single *anal* plate, a; whilst they support the *second* and the *third radials* (r^2, r^3), from the latter of which the bifurcating arms spring; finally, between the second radials we see the five *orals*, lifted from the basals on which they originally rested, by the interposition of the first radials. In the more advanced stage shown in Fig. 379, C, and on a larger scale in Plate XXI., figs. 2, 3, we find the highest joint of the stem beginning to enlarge, to form the *centro-dorsal* plate (fig. 2, $c\ d$), from which are beginning to spring

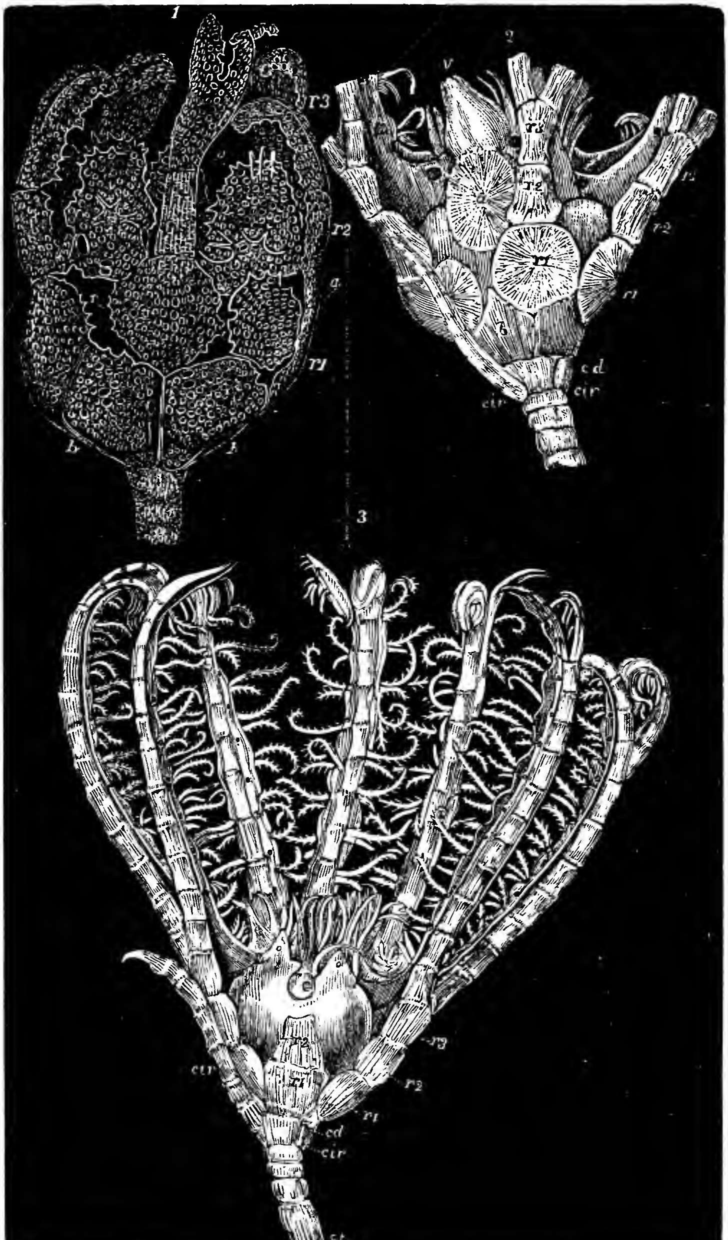
FIG. 379.



Crinoid Larva of *Antedon*:—A, B, C, successive stages of development.

* The Pentacrinoid larvæ of *Antedon* have been found abundantly (attached to Sea-weeds and Zoophytes) at Millport on the Clyde, and in Lamlash Bay, Arran; in Kirkwall Bay, Orkney; in Lough Strangford, near Belfast, and in the Bay of Cork; and at Ilfracombe, and in Salcombe Bay, Devon.

PLATE XXI



PENTACRINOID LARVA OF ANTEDON (COMATULA).

To face p. 648.

the dorsal cirrhi (*cir*), that serve to anchor the animal when it drops from the stem; this supports the *basals* (*b*), on which rest the *first radials* (r^1); whilst the *anal* plate (*a*) is now lifted nearly to the level of the *second radials* (r^2), by the development of the anal funnel or vent (*v*) to which it is attached. The *oral* plates are not at first apparent, as they no longer occupy their first position; but on being carefully looked-for, they are found still to form a circlet around the mouth (fig. 3, *o*, *o*), not having undergone any increase in size, whilst the visceral disk and the calyx in which it is lodged have greatly extended. These *oral* plates finally disappear by absorption; while the *basals* are at first concealed by the great enlargement of the centro-dorsal (which finally extends so far as to conceal the first radials also); and at last undergo metamorphosis into a beautiful 'rosette,' which lies between the cavity of the centro-dorsal and that of the calyx.—In common with other members of its Class, the *Antedon* is represented in its earliest phase of development by a free-swimming 'larval zooid' or *pseudembryo,* which was first observed by Busch, and has been since carefully studied by Prof. Wyville Thomson* and Goette.† This zooid has an elongated egg-like form, and is furnished with transverse bands of cilia, and with a mouth and anus of its own. After a time, however, rudiments of the calcareous plates forming the stem and calyx begin to show themselves in its interior; a disk is then formed at the posterior extremity, by which it attaches itself to a Sea-weed (very commonly *Laminaria*), Zoophyte, or Polyzoary; the calyx, containing the true stomach, with its central mouth surrounded by tentacles, is gradually evolved; and the sarcodic substance of the pseudembryo, by which this calyx and the rudimentary stem were originally invested, gradually shrinks, until the young Pentacrinoid presents itself in its characteristic form and proportions.‡

* 'On the Development of *Antedon rosaceus*' in "Philos. Transact." for 1865, p. 513.

† "Archiv. f. Mikrosk. Anat.," Bd. xii., p. 583.

‡ The general results of the Author's own later studies of this most interesting type (the key to the life-history of the entire Geological succession of *Crinoidea*) are embodied in a notice communicated to the "Proceedings of the Royal Society," for 1876, p. 211, and in a subsequent note, p. 451. Of the further contributions recently made to our knowledge of it, the Memoir of Dr. H. Ludwig 'Zur Anatomie der Crinoideen' (Leipzig, 1877), forming part of his "Morphologische Studien an Echinodermen," is the most important.

CHAPTER XV.

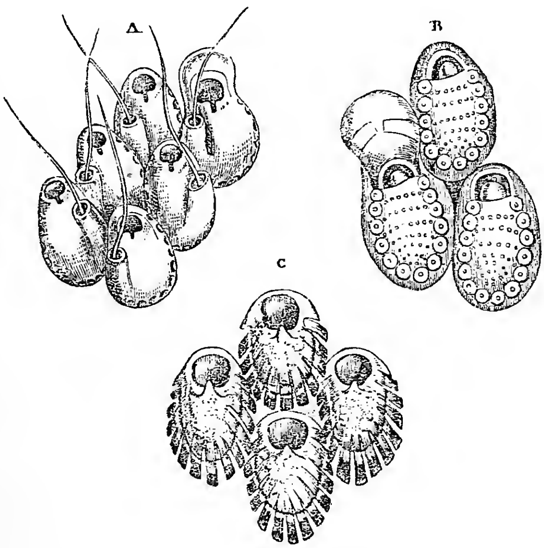
POLYZOA AND TUNICATA.

547. At the lower extremity of the great series of Molluscous animals, we find two very remarkable groups, whose mode of life has much in common with Zoophytes, whilst their type of structure is comformable in essential particulars to that of the true Mollusks. These animals are for the most part microscopic in their dimensions; and as some members of both these groups are found on almost every coast, and are most interesting objects for anatomical examination, as well as for observation in the living state, a brief general account of them will be here appropriate.

548. Polyzoa.—The group which is known under this name to British naturalists (corresponding with that which by Continental Zoologists is designated *Bryozoa*) was formerly ranked as an order of Zoophytes; and it has been entirely by Microscopic study that its comparatively high organization has been ascertained.—The animals of the Polyzoa, in consequence of their universal tendency to multiplication by gemmation, are seldom or never found solitary, but form clusters or colonies of various kinds; and as each is enclosed in either a horny or a calcareous sheath or 'cell,' a composite structure is formed, closely corresponding with the 'polypidom' of a Zoophyte, which has been appropriately designated the *polyzoary*. The individual cells of the polyzoary are sometimes only connected with each other by their common relation to a creeping stem or *stolon*, as in *Laguncula* (Plate xxii.); but more frequently they bud-forth directly, one from another, and extend themselves in different directions over plane surfaces, as is the case with *Flustræ*, *Lepraliæ*, &c. (Fig. 380); whilst not unfrequently the polyzoary developes itself into an arborescent structure (Fig. 381), which may even present somewhat of the density and massiveness of the Stony Corals. Each individual, designated as a *polypide* or polype-like animal, is composed externally of a sort of sac, of which the outer or tegumentary layer is either simply membranous, or is horny, or in some instances calcified, so as to form the cell; this investing sac is lined by a more delicate membrane, which closes its orifice, and which then becomes continuous with the wall of the alimentary canal; this lies freely in the visceral sac, floating (as it were) in the liquid which it contains.

549. The principal features in the structure of this group will be best understood from the examination of a characteristic example, such as the *Laguncula repens;* which is shown in the state of expansion at A, Plate XXII., and in the state of contraction at

FIG. 380.



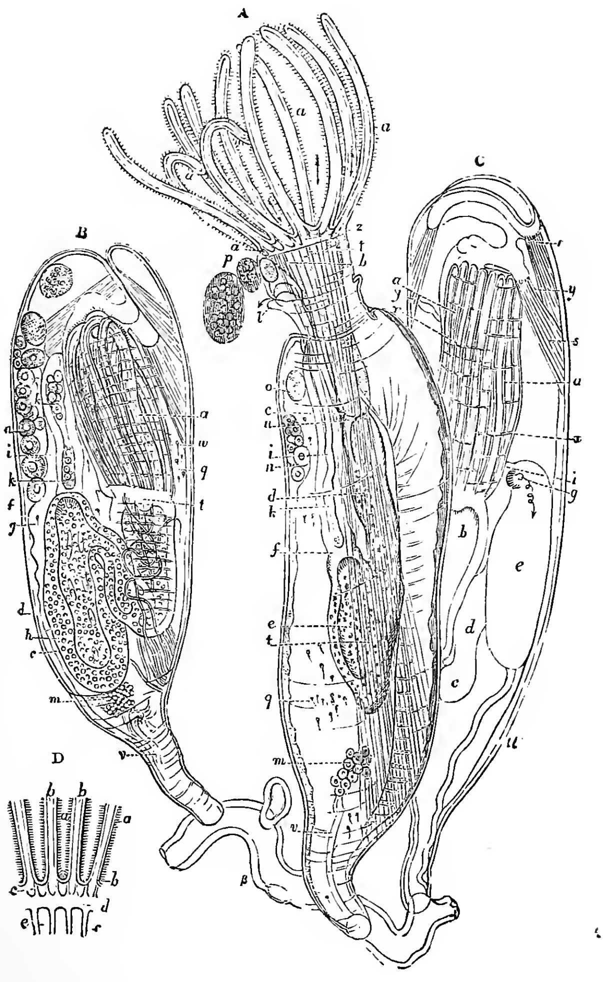
Cells of *Lepraliæ:*—A, *L. Hyndmanni;* B, *L. figularis;* C, *L. verrucosa.*

B and C. The mouth is surrounded by a circle of tubular tentacles, which are clothed by vibratile cilia; these tentacles, in the species we are considering, vary from ten to twelve in number, but in some other instances they are more numerous. By the ciliary investment of the tentacles, the Polyzoa are at once distinguishable from those Hydroid polypes to which they bear a superficial resemblance, and with which they were at one time confounded; and accordingly, whilst still ranked among Zoophytes, they were characterized as *ciliobrachiate.* The tentacula are seated upon an annular disk, which is termed the *lophophore,* and which forms the roof of the visceral or perigastric cavity; and this cavity extends itself into the interior of the tentacula, through perforations in the lophophore, as is shown at D, Plate XXII., representing a portion of the tentacular circle on a larger scale, *a a* being the tentacula, *b b* their internal canals, *c* the muscles of the tentacula, *d* the lophophore, and *e* its retractile muscles. The mouth situated in the centre of the lophophore, as shown at A, leads to a funnel-shaped cavity or pharynx, *b*, which is separated from the œsophagus, *d*, by a valve at *c*; and this œsophagus opens into the stomach *e*, which occupies a considerable part of the visceral cavity. (In the *Bowerbankia*

and some other Polyzoa, a muscular stomach or gizzard for the trituration of the food intervenes between the œsophagus and the true digestive stomach.) The walls of the stomach, *h*, have considerable thickness; and they are beset with minute follicles, which seem to have the character of a rudimentary liver. This, however, is more obvious in some other members of the group. The stomach is lined, especially at its upper part, with vibratile cilia, as seen at *c*, *g*; and by the action of these the food is kept in a state of constant agitation during the digestive process. From the upper part of the stomach, which is (as it were) doubled upon itself, the intestine *i* opens, by a pyloric orifice, *f*, which is furnished with a regular valve; within the intestine are seen at *k* particles of excrementitious matter, which are discharged by the anal orifice at *l*. No special circulating apparatus here exists; but the liquid which fills the cavity that surrounds the viscera contains the nutritive matter which has been prepared by the digestive operation, and which has transuded through the walls of the alimentary canal; a few corpuscles of irregular size are seen to float in it. The visceral sacs of the different polypides put forth from the same stem appear to communicate with each other. No other respiratory organs exist than the tentacula; into whose cavity the nutritive fluid is probably sent from the perivisceral cavity, for aeration by the current of water that is continually flowing over them.

550. The production of *gemmæ* or buds may take place either from the bodies of the polypides themselves, which is what always happens when the cells are in mutual apposition; or from the connecting stem or 'stolon,' where the cells are distinct one from the other as in *Laguncula*. In the latter case there is first seen a bud-like protuberance of the horny external integument, into which the soft membranous lining prolongs itself; the cavity thus formed, however, is not to become (as in Hydra and its allies) the stomach of the new zooid; but it constitutes the chamber surrounding the digestive viscera, which organs have their origin in a thickening of the lining membrane, that projects from one side of the cavity into its interior, and gradually shapes itself into the alimentary canal with its tentacular appendages. Of the production of gemmæ from the polypides themselves, the best examples are furnished by the *Flustræ* and their allies. From a single cell of the Flustra, five such buds may be sent-off, which develope themselves into new polypides around it; and these, in their turn, produce buds from their unattached margins, so as rapidly to augment the number of cells. To this extension there seems no definite limit; and it often happens that the cells in the central portion of the leaf-like expansion of a Flustra are devoid of contents and have lost their vitality, whilst the edges are in a state of active growth.—Independently of their propagation by gemmation, the Polyzoa have a true sexual generation; the sexes, however, being usually, if not invariably, united in the same

PLATE XXII.



LAGUNCULA REPENS.

[To face p. 652.

polypides. The sperm-cells are developed in a glandular body, the testis *m*, which lies beneath the base of the stomach; when mature they rupture, and set free the spermatozoa *q q*, which swims freely in the liquid of the visceral cavity. The ova, on the other hand, are formed in an ovarium *n*, which is lodged in the membrane lining the tegumentary sheath near its outlet; the ova, having escaped from this into the visceral cavity, as at *o*, are fertilized by the spermatozoa which they there meet with; and are finally discharged by an outlet at *p*, beneath the tentacular circle.

551. These creatures possess a considerable number of muscles, by which their bodies may be projected from their sheaths, or drawn within them; of these muscles, *r*, *s*, *t*, *u*, *v*, *w*, *x*, the direction and points of attachment sufficiently indicate the uses; they are for the most part *retractors*, serving to draw-in and double-up the body, to fold-together the circle of tentacula, and to close the aperture of the sheath, when the animal has been completely withdrawn into its interior. The *projection* and *expansion* of the animal, on the contrary, appear to be chiefly accomplished by a general pressure upon the sheath, which will tend to force-out all that can be expelled from it. The tentacles themselves are furnished with distinct muscular fibres, by which their separate movements seem to be produced. At the base of the tentacular circle, just above the anal orifice, is a small body (seen at A, *a*), which is a nervous ganglion; as yet no branches have been distinctly seen to be connected with it in this species; but its character is less doubtful in some other Polyzoa.—Besides the independent movements of the individual polypides, other movements may be observed, which are performed by so many of them simultaneously, as to indicate the existence of some connecting agency; and such connecting agency, it is affirmed by Dr. Fritz Müller,* is furnished by what he terms a 'colonial-nervous system.' In a *Serialaria* having a branching polyzoary that spreads itself on sea-weeds over a space of three or four inches, he states that a nervous ganglion may be distinguished at the origin of each branch, and another ganglion at the origin of each polypide-bud; all these ganglia being connected together, not merely by principal trunks, but also by plexuses of nerve-fibres, which may be distinctly made-out with the aid of Chromic acid in the cylindrical joints of the polyzoary. His views, however, have not been universally accepted; some observers still maintaining that what he regards as nerve-fibres are only connective tissue.

552. Of all the Polyzoa of our own coasts, the *Flustræ* or 'sea-mats' are the most common; these present flat expanded surfaces, resembling in form those of many sea-weeds (for which they are often mistaken), but exhibiting, when viewed with even a low magnifying power, a most beautiful network, which at once indicates their real character. The cells are arranged on both sides; and it was calculated by Dr. Grant, that as a single square inch of an

* See his Memoir in "Wiegmann's Archiv.," 1860, p. 311; translated in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," New Ser., Vol. i. (1861), p. 300.

ordinary Flustra contains 1800 such cells, and as an average specimen presents about 10 square inches of surface, it will consist of no fewer than 18,000 polypides. The want of transparence in the cell-wall, however, and the infrequency with which the animal projects its body far beyond the mouth of the cell, render the Polyzoa of this genus less favourable subjects for microscopic examination than are those of the *Bowerbankia*, a Polyzoon with a trailing stem and separated cells like those of Laguncula, which is very commonly found clustering around the base of masses of Flustræ. It was in this that many of the details of the organization of the interesting group we are considering were first studied by Dr. A. Farre, who discovered it in 1837, and subjected it to a far more minute examination than any Polyzoon had previously received;* and it is one of the best-adapted of all the marine forms yet known, for the display of the beauties and wonders of this type of organization.—The *Halodactylus* (formerly called Alcyonidium), however, is one of the most remarkable of all the marine forms for the comparatively large size of the tentacular crowns; these, when expanded, being very distinctly visible to the naked eye, and presenting a spectacle of the greatest beauty when viewed under a sufficient magnifying power. The polyzoary of this genus has a spongy aspect and texture, very much resembling that of certain Alcyonian Zoophytes (§ 529), for which it might readily be mistaken when its contained animals are all withdrawn into their cells; when these are expanded, however, the aspect of the two is altogether different, as the minute plumose tufts which then issue from the surface of the Halodactylus, making it look as if it were covered with the most delicate downy film, are in striking contrast with the larger, solid-looking polypes of the Alcyonium. The opacity of the polyzoary of the Halodactylus renders it quite unsuitable for the examination of anything more than the tentacular crown and the œsophagus which it surmounts; the stomach and the remainder of the visceral apparatus being always retained within the cell. It furnishes, however, a most beautiful object for the Binocular Microscope, when mounted with all its polypides expanded, in the manner described in § 521.—Several of the fresh-water Polyzoa are peculiarly interesting subjects for Microscopic examination; alike on account of the remarkable distinctness with which the various parts of their organization may be seen, and the very beautiful manner in which their ciliated tentacula are arranged upon a deeply-crescentic or horseshoe-shaped *lophophore.* By this peculiarity the fresh-water Polyzoa are separated as a distinct sub-class from the marine; the former being designated as *Hippocrepia* (horseshoe-like), while the latter are termed *Infundibulata* (funnel-like). The cells of the *Hippocrepia* are for the most part lodged in a sort of gelatinous substratum, which spreads over the leaves of aquatic plants, sometimes forming masses of considerable size; but in the very curious and

* See his Memoir 'On the Minute Structure of some of the higher forms of Polypi,' in the "Philosophical Transactions" for 1837, p. 387.

beautiful *Cristatella*, the polyzoary is unattached, so as to be capable of moving freely through the water.*

553. The *Infundibulata* or Marine Polyzoa, constituting by far the most numerous division of the class, are divided into four Orders, as follows:—I. *Cheilostomata*, in which the mouth of the cell is *sub-terminal*, or not quite at its extremity (Fig. 380), is somewhat crescentic in form, and is furnished with a moveable (generally membranous) lip, which closes it when the animal retreats. This includes a large part of the species that most abound on our own coasts, notwithstanding their wide differences in form and habit. Thus the polyzoaries of some (as *Flustra*) are horny and flexible, whilst those of others (as *Eschara* and *Retepora*) are so penetrated with calcareous matter as to be quite rigid; some grow as independent plant-like structures (as *Bugula* and *Gemellaria*), whilst others, having a like arborescent form, creep over the surfaces of rocks or stones (as *Hippothoa*); and others, again, have their cells in close apposition, and form crusts which possess no definite figure (as is the case with *Lepralia* and *Membranipora*).—II. The second order, *Cyclostomata*, consists of those Polyzoa which have the mouth at the *termination* of tubular calcareous cells, without any moveable appendage or lip (Fig. 381). This includes a comparatively small number of genera, of which *Crisia* and *Tubulipora* contain the largest proportion of the species that occur on our own coasts.—III. The distinguishing character of the third order, *Ctenosomata*, is derived from the presence of a comb-like circular fringe of bristles, connected by a delicate membrane, around the mouth of the cell, when the animal is projected from it; this fringe being drawn-in when the animal is retracted. The Polyzoaries of this group are very various in character, the cells being sometimes horny and separate (as in *Laguncula* and *Bowerbankia*), sometimes fleshy and coalescent (as in *Halodactylus*).—IV. In the fourth order, *Pedicellineæ*, which includes only a single genus, *Pedicellina*, the lophophore is produced upwards on the back of the tentacles, uniting them at their base in a sort of muscular calyx, and giving to the animal when expanded somewhat the form of an inverted bell, like that of *Vorticella* (Fig. 305).—As the Polyzoa altogether resemble Hydroid Zoophytes in their habits, and are found in the same localities, it is not requisite to add anything to what has already been said (§ 521), respecting the collection, examination, and mounting of this very interesting class of objects.†

554. A large proportion of the Polyzoa of the first Order are

* See Prof. Allman's beautiful "Monograph of the British Fresh-water Polyzoa," published by the Ray Society, 1857.

† For a more detailed account of the Structure and Classification of the Marine Polyzoa, see Prof. Van Beneden's 'Recherches sur les Bryozoaires de la Côte d'Ostende,' in "Mém. de l'Acad. Roy. de Bruxelles," tom. xvii.; Mr. G. Busk's "Catalogue of the Marine Polyzoa in the Collection of the British Museum;" Mr. Hincks's "British Marine Polyzoa," 1880; and Nitsche, 'Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Bryozoën,' in "Zeitschrift f. wiss Zool.," Bde. xx., xxi., xxiv.

furnished with very peculiar motile appendages, which are of two kinds, *avicularia* and *vibracula*. The avicularia or 'bird's-head processes,' so named from the striking resemblance they present to the head and jaws of a bird (Fig. 381, B), are generally

FIG. 381.

A, Portion of *Cellularia ciliata*, enlarged; B, one of the 'bird's-head' processes of *Bugula avicularia*, more highly magnified, and seen in the act of grasping another.

'sessile' upon the angles or margins of the cells, that is, are attached at once to them without the intervention of a stalk, as at A, being either 'projecting' or 'immersed;' but in the genera *Bugula* and *Bicellaria*, where they are present at all, they are 'pedunculate,' or mounted on footstalks (B). Under one form or the other, they are wanting in but few of the genera belonging to this order; and their presence or absence furnishes valuable characters for the discrimination of species. Each avicularium has two 'mandibles,' of which one is fixed, like the upper jaw of a bird, the other moveable, like its lower jaw; the latter is opened and closed by two sets of muscles which are seen in the interior of the 'head;' and between them is a peculiar body, furnished with a pencil of bristles, which is probably a tactile organ, being brought forwards when the mouth is open, so that the bristles project

beyond it, and being drawn-back when the mandible closes. The avicularia keep-up a continual snapping action during the life of the polyzoary; and they may often be observed to lay hold of minute Worms or other bodies, sometimes even closing upon the beaks of adjacent organs of the same kind, as shown at B. In the pedunculate forms, besides the snapping action, there is a continual rhythmical nodding of the head upon the stalk; and few spectacles are more curious than a portion of the polyzoary of *Bugula avicularia* (a very common British species) in a state of active vitality, when viewed under a power sufficiently low to allow a number of these bodies to be in sight at once. It is still very doubtful what is their precise function in the economy of the animal; whether it is to retain within the reach of the ciliary current, bodies that may serve as food; or whether it is, like the Pedicellariæ of Echini (§ 534), to remove extraneous particles that may be in contact with the surface of the polyzoary. The latter would seem to be the function of the *vibracula*, which are long bristle-shaped organs (Fig. 380, A), each one springing at its base out of a sort of cup that contains muscles by which it is kept in almost constant motion, sweeping slowly and carefully over the surface of the polyzoary, and removing what might be injurious to the delicate inhabitants of the cells when their tentacles are protruded. Out of 191 species of Cheilostomatous Polyzoa described by Mr. Busk, no fewer than 126 are furnished either with Avicularia, or with Vibracula, or with both these organs.*

555. Tunicata.—The Tunicated Mollusca are so named from the enclosure of their bodies in a 'tunic,' which is sometimes leathery or even cartilaginous in its texture, and which very commonly includes calcareous spicules, whose forms are often very beautiful. They present a strong resemblance to the Polyzoa, not merely in their general plan of conformation, but also in their tendency to produce composite structures by gemmation; they are differentiated from them, however, by the absence of the ciliated tentacles which form so conspicuous a feature in the external aspect of the Polyzoa, by the presence of a distinct circulating apparatus, and by their peculiar respiratory apparatus, which may be regarded as a dilatation of their pharynx. In their habits, too, they are for the most part very inactive, exhibiting scarcely anything comparable to those rapid movements of expansion and retraction which it is so interesting to watch among the Polyzoa; whilst, with the exception of the *Salpidæ* and other floating species which are chiefly found in seas warmer than those that surround our coast, and the curious *Appendicularia* to be presently noticed (§ 560), they are rooted to one spot during all but the earliest period of their lives. The larger forms of the *Ascidian* group, which constitutes the bulk

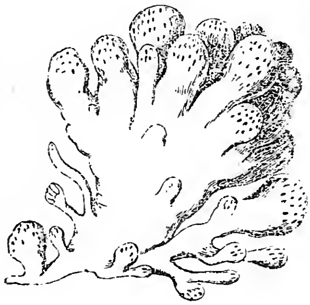
* See Mr. G. Busk's 'Remarks on the Structure and Function of the Avicularian and Vibracular Organs of Polyzoa,' in "Transact. of Microsc. Soc.," Ser. 2, Vol. ii. (1854), p. 26.

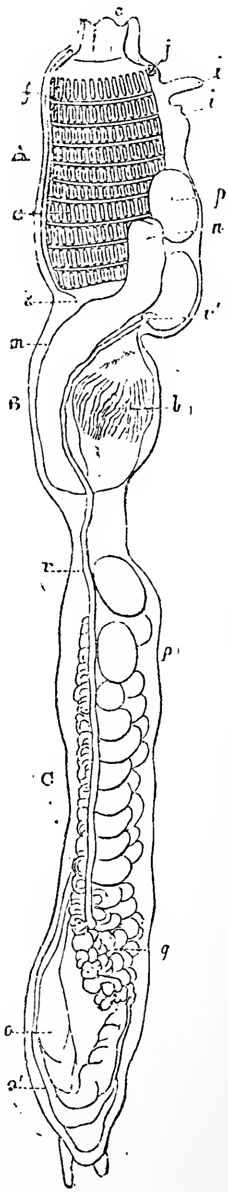
of the class, are always solitary; either not propagating by gemmation at all, or, if this process does take place, the gemmæ being detached before they have advanced far in their development.—Although of special importance to the Comparative Anatomist and the Zoologist, this group does not afford much to interest the ordinary Microscopist, except in the peculiar actions of its respiratory and circulatory apparatus. In common with the composite forms of the group, the solitary Ascidians have a large branchial sac, with fissured walls, resembling that shown in Figs. 382 and 384; into this sac water is admitted by the oral orifice, and a large proportion of it is caused to pass through the fissures, by the agency of the cilia with which they are fringed, into a surrounding chamber, whence it is expelled through the anal orifice. This action may be distinctly watched through the external walls in the smaller and more transparent species; and not even the ciliary action of the tentacles of the Polyzoa affords a more beautiful spectacle. It is peculiarly remarkable in one species that occurs on our own coasts, the *Ascidia parallelogramma*,* in which the wall of the branchial sac is divided into a number of areolæ, each of them shaped into a shallow funnel; and round one of these funnels each branchial fissure makes two or three turns of a spiral. When the cilia of all these spiral fissures are in active movement at once, the effect is most singular.—Another most remarkable phenomenon presented throughout the group, and well seen in the solitary Ascidian just referred-to, is the *alternation* in the direction of the Circulation. The heart, which lies at the bottom of the branchial sac, is composed of two chambers imperfectly divided from each other; one of these is connected with the principal trunk leading to the body, and the other with that leading to the branchial sac. At one time it will be seen that the blood flows *from* the respiratory apparatus to the cavity of the heart in which its trunk terminates, which then contracts so as to drive it into the other cavity, which in its turn contracts and propels it through the systemic trunk *to* the body at large; but after this course has been maintained for a time, the heart ceases to pulsate for a moment or two, and the course is reversed, the blood flowing into the heart *from* the body generally, and being propelled *to* the branchial sac. After this reversed course has continued for some time, another pause occurs, and the first course is resumed. The length of time intervening between the changes does not seem by any means constant. It is usually stated at from half-a-minute to two minutes in the composite forms; but in the solitary *Ascidia parallelogramma* (a species very common in Lamlash Bay, Arran), the Author has repeatedly observed an interval of from five to fifteen minutes, and in some instances he has seen the circulation go-on for half-an-hour, or even longer, without change,—always, however, reversing at last.

* See Alder in "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," 3rd Ser., Vol. xi. (1863), p. 157; and Hancock in "Journ. of Linn. Soc.," Vol. ix. p. 333.

556. The *Compound Ascidians* are very commonly found adherent to Sea-weeds, Zoophytes, and stones between the tide-marks; and they present objects of great interest to the Microscopist, since the small size and transparence of their bodies when they are

FIG. 382.





Compound mass of *Amoroucium proliferum* with the anatomy of a single zooid :—A, thorax; B, abdomen; C, post-abdomen :—*c*, oral orifice; *e*, branchial sac; *f*, thoracic sinus; *i*, anal orifice; *i′*, projection overhanging it; *j*, nervous ganglion; *k*, œsophagus; *l*, stomach surrounded by biliary tubuli; *m*, intestine; *n*, termination of intestine in cloaca; *o*, heart; *o′*, pericardium; *p*, ovarium; *p′*, egg ready to escape; *q*, testis; *r*, spermatic canal; *r′*, termination of this canal in the cloaca.

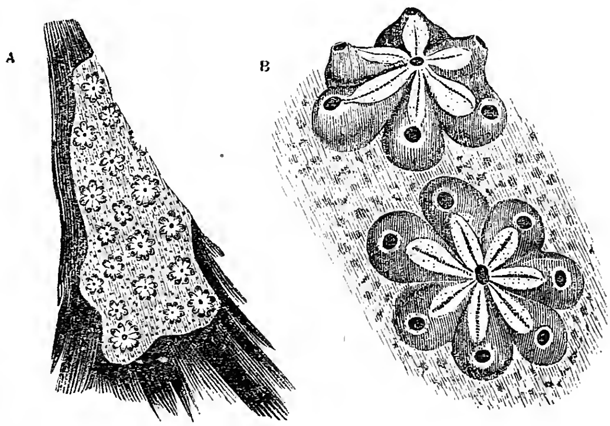
detached from the mass in which they are imbedded, not only enables their structure to be clearly discerned without dissection, but allows many of their living actions to be watched. Of these we have a characteristic example in *Amoroucium proliferum;* of which the form of the composite mass and the anatomy of a single individual are displayed in Fig. 382. Its clusters appear almost completely inanimate, exhibiting no very obvious movements when irritated; but if they be placed when fresh in sea-water, a slight pouting of the orifices will soon be perceptible, and a constant and energetic series of currents will be found to enter by one set and to be ejected by the other, indicating that all the machinery of active life is going-on within these apathetic bodies. In the tribe of *Polyclinians* to which this genus belongs, the body is elongated, and may

be divided into three regions, the thorax (A) which is chiefly occupied by the respiratory sac, the abdomen (B) which contains the digestive apparatus, and the post-abdomen (C) in which the heart and generative organs are lodged. At the summit of the thorax is seen the oral orifice *c*, which leads to the branchial sac *e*; this is perforated by an immense number of slits, which allow part of the water to pass into the space between the branchial sac and the muscular mantle, where it is especially collected in the thoracic sinus *f*. At *k* is seen the œsophagus, which is continuous with the lower part of the pharyngeal cavity; this leads to the stomach *l*, which is surrounded by biliary follicles; and from this passes-off the intestine *m*, which terminates at *n* in the cloaca, or common vent. A current of water is continually drawn-in through the mouth by the action of the cilia of the branchial sac and of the alimentary canal; a part of this current passes through the fissures of the branchial sac into the thoracic sinus, and thence into the cloaca; whilst another portion, entering the stomach by an aperture at the bottom of the pharyngeal sac, passes through the alimentary canal, giving up any nutritive materials it may contain, and carrying away with it any excrementitious matter to be discharged; and this having met the respiratory current in the cloaca, the two mingled currents pass forth together by the anal orifice *i*. The long post-abdomen is principally occupied by the large ovarium, *p*, which contain ova in various stages of development. These, when matured and set-free, find their way into the cloaca; where two large ova are seen (one marked *p′*, and the other immediately below it) waiting for expulsion. In this position they receive the fertilizing influence from the testis, *q*, which discharges its products by the long spermatic canal, *r*, that opens into the cloaca, *r′*. At the very bottom of the post-abdomen we find the heart, *o*, enclosed in its pericardium, *o′*.—In the group we are now considering, a number of such animals are imbedded together in a sort of gelatinous mass, and covered with an integument common to them all; the composition of this gelatinous substance is remarkable as including Cellulose, which generally ranks as a Vegetable product. The mode in which new individuals are developed in this mass, is by the extension of *stolons* or creeping stems from the bases of those previously existing; and from each of these stolons several buds may be put-forth, every one of which may evolve itself into the likeness of the stock from which it proceeded, and may in its turn increase and multiply after the same fashion. A communication between the circulating systems of the different individuals is kept-up, through their connecting stems, during the whole of life; and thus their relationship to each other is somewhat like that of the several polypes on the polypidom of a *Campanularia* (§ 519).

557. In the family of *Didemnians* the post-abdomen is absent, the heart and generative apparatus being placed by the side of the intestine in the abdominal portion of the body. The zooids are

frequently arranged in star-shaped clusters, their anal orifices being all directed towards a common vent which occupies the centre.— This shortening is still more remarkable, however, in the family of *Botryllians*, whose beautiful stellate gelatinous incrustations are extremely common upon Sea-weeds and submerged rocks (Fig. 383).

FIG. 383.



Botryllus violaceus:—A, cluster on the surface of a Fucus:—B, portion of the same enlarged.

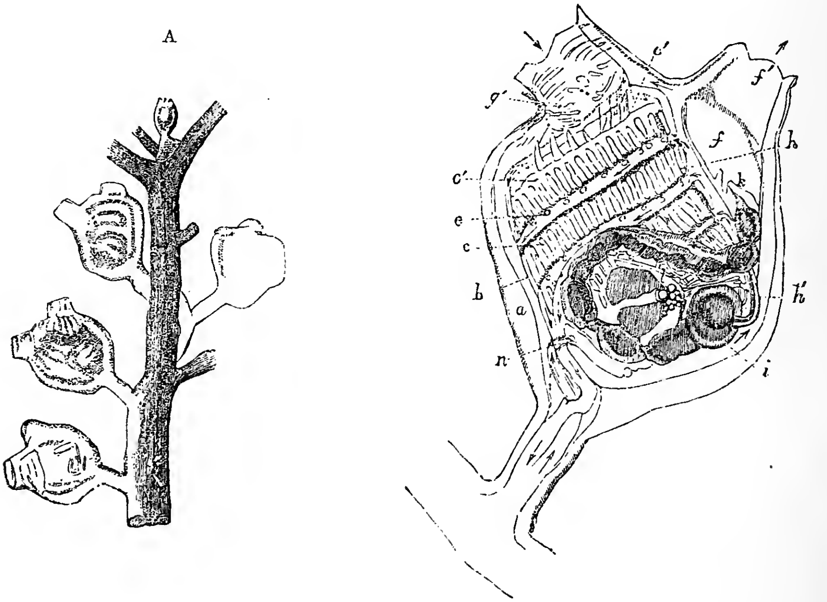
The anatomy of these animals is very similar to that of the *Amaroucium* already described; with this exception, that the body exhibits no distinction of cavities, all the organs being brought together in one, which must be considered as thoracic. In this respect there is an evident approximation towards the solitary species.*

558. This approximation is still closer, however, in the 'social' Ascidians, or *Clavellinidæ*; in which the general plan of structure is nearly the same, but the zooids are simply connected by their stolons (Fig. 384), instead of being included in a common investment; so that their relation to each other is very nearly the same as that of the polypides of *Laguncula* (§ 549), the chief difference being that a regular circulation takes-place through the stolon in the one case, such as has no existence in the other. A better opportunity of studying the living actions of the Ascidians can scarcely be found, than that which is afforded by the genus *Perophora*, first discovered by Mr. Lister; which occurs not unfrequently

* For more special information respecting the *Compound Ascidians*, see especially the admirable Monograph of Prof. Milne-Edwards on that group; Mr. Lister's Memoir 'On the Structure and Functions of Tubular and Cellular Polypi, and of Ascidiæ,' in the "Philos. Transact.," 1834; and the Art. *Tunicata*, by Prof. T. Rupert Jones, in the "Cyclopædia of Anatomy and Physiology."

on the south coast of England and in the Irish Sea, living attached to Sea-weeds, and looking like an assemblage of minute globules of jelly, dotted with orange and brown, and linked by a silvery winding thread. The isolation of the body of each zooid from that of its fellows, and the extreme transparence of its tunics, not only enable the movements of fluid within the body to be distinctly discerned, but also allow the action of the cilia that border the slits of the respiratory sac to be clearly made-out. This sac is perforated with four rows of narrow oval openings, through which a portion

Fig. 384.



A, Group of *Perophora* (enlarged), growing from a common stalk :—B, single *Perophora; a*, test; *b*, inner sac; *c*, branchial sac, attached to the inner sac along the line *c' c'*; *e e*, finger-like processes projecting inwards; *f*, cavity between test and internal coat; *f'*, anal orifice or funnel; *g*, oral orifice; *g'*, oral tentacula; *h*, downward stream of food; *h'*, œsophagus; *i*, stomach; *k*, vent; *l*, ovary (?); *n*, vessels connecting the circulation in the body with that in the stalk.

of the water that enters its oral orifice (*g*) escapes into the space between the sac and the mantle, and is thus discharged immediately by the anal funnel (*f*). Whatever little particles, animate or inanimate, the current of water brings, flow into the sac, unless stopped at its entrance by the tentacles (*g'*), which do not appear fastidious. The particles which are admitted usually lodge somewhere on the sides of the sac, and then travel horizontally until they arrive at that part of it down which the current proceeds to

the entrance of the stomach (*i*), which is situated at the bottom of the sac. Minute animals are often swallowed alive, and have been observed darting about in the cavity for some days, without any apparent injury either to themselves or to the creature which encloses them. In general, however, particles which are unsuited for reception into the stomach are rejected by the sudden contraction of the mantle (or muscular tunic), the vent being at the same time closed, so that they are forced-out by a powerful current through the oral orifice.—The curious alternation of the circulation that is characteristic of the Class generally (§ 555), may be particularly well studied in *Perophora*. The creeping-stalk (Fig. 384) that connects the individuals of any group, contains two distinct canals, which send-off branches into each peduncle. One of these branches terminates in the heart, which is nothing more than a contractile dilatation of the principal trunk; this trunk subdivides into vessels (or rather *sinuses*, which are mere channels not having proper walls of their own), of which some ramify over the respiratory sac, branching off at each of the passages between the oval slits, whilst others are first distributed to the stomach and intestine, and to the soft surface of the mantle. All these reunite so as to form a trunk, which passes to the peduncle and constitutes the returning branch. Although the circulation in the different bodies is brought into connection by the common stem, yet that of each is independent of the rest, continuing when the current through its own footstalk is interrupted by a ligature; and the stream which returns from the branchial sac and the viscera is then poured into the posterior part of the heart, instead of entering the peduncle.

559. The *development* of the Ascidians, the early stages of which are observable whilst the ova are still within the cloaca of the parent, presents some phenomena of much interest to the Microscopist. After the ordinary repeated segmentation of the yolk, whereby a 'mulberry mass' is produced (§ 581), a sort of ring is seen encircling its central portion; but this soon shows itself as a tapering tail-like prolongation from one side of the yolk, which gradually becomes more and more detached from it, save at the part from which it springs. Either whilst the egg is still within the cloaca, or soon after it has escaped from the vent, its envelope bursts, and the larva escapes; and in this condition it presents very much the appearance of a tadpole, the tail being straightened out, and propelling the body freely through the water by its lateral strokes. The centre of the body is occupied by a mass of liquid yolk; and this is continued into the interior of three prolongations which extend themselves from the opposite extremity, each terminating in a sort of sucker. After swimming-about for some hours with an active wriggling movement, the larva attaches itself to some solid body by means of one of these suckers; if disturbed from its position, it at first swims about as before; but it soon completely loses its activity, and becomes permanently attached; and important changes manifest themselves in its

interior. The prolongations of the central yolk-substance into the anterior processes and tail are gradually drawn back, so that the whole of it is concentrated into one mass; and the tail, now consisting only of the gelatinous envelope, is either detached entire from the body by the contraction of the connecting portion, or withers, and is thrown-off gradually in shreds. The shaping of the internal organs out of the yolk-mass takes-place very rapidly, so that by the end of the second day of the sedentary state the outlines of the branchial sac and of the stomach and intestine may be traced; no external orifices, however, being as yet visible. The pulsation of the heart is first seen on the third day, and the formation of the branchial and anal orifices takes-place on the fourth; after which the ciliary currents are immediately established through the branchial sac and alimentary canal.—The embryonic development of other Ascidians, solitary as well as composite, takes-place on a plan essentially the same as the foregoing, a free tadpole-like larva being always produced in the first instance.*

560. This larval condition is represented in a very curious adult free-swimming form, termed *Appendicularia*, which is frequently to be taken with the Tow-net on our own coasts. This animal has an oval or flask-like body, which in large specimens attains the length of one-fifth of an inch, but which is often not more than one-fourth or one-fifth of that size. It is furnished with a tail-like appendage three or four times its own length, broad, flattened, and rounded at its extremity; and by the powerful vibrations of this appendage it is propelled rapidly through the water. The structure of the body differs greatly from that of the Ascidians, its plan being much simpler; in particular, the pharyngeal sac is entirely destitute of ciliated branchial fissures opening into a surrounding cavity; but two canals, one on either side of the entrance to the stomach, are prolonged from it to the external surface; and by the action of the long cilia with which these are furnished, in conjunction with the cilia of the branchial sac, a current of water is maintained through its cavity. From the observations of Prof. Huxley, however, it appears that the direction of this current is by no means constant; since, although it usually enters by the mouth and passes-out by the ciliated canals, it sometimes enters by the latter and passes-out by the former. The caudal appendage

* The study of the development of *Ascidians* has derived a new interest and importance from the discovery made by Kowalevsky in 1867, that their free-swimming larvæ present a most striking parallelism to Vertebrate embryoes, in exhibiting the beginnings of a spinal marrow and a spinal column; thus bridging-over the gulf that was supposed to separate them from Invertebrata, and (when taken in connection with the curious Ascidian affinities of *Amphioxus*, the lowest Vertebrate at present known) affording strong reason to believe in the derivation of the Vertebrate and Tunicate types from a common original. See his Memoir 'Entwickelungsgeschichte der einfachen Ascidien,' in "Mém. St. Pétersb. Acad. Sci.," Tom. x., 1867, and the abstract of it in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," Vol. x., N.S. (1870), p. 59; also Prof. Haeckel's "History of Creation," Vol. ii. pp. 152, 200.

has a central axis, above and below which is a riband-like layer of muscular fibres; a nervous cord, studded at intervals with minute ganglia, may be traced along its whole length.—By Mertens, one of the early observers of this animal, it was said to be furnished with a peculiar gelatinous envelope or *Haus* (house), very easily detached from the body, and capable of being re-formed after having been lost. Notwithstanding the great numbers of specimens which have been studied by Müller, Huxley, Leuckart, and Gegenbaur, neither of these excellent observers has met with this appendage; but it has been since seen by Prof. Allman, who describes it as an egg-shaped gelatinous mass, in which the body is imbedded, the tail alone being free; whilst from either side of the central plane there radiates a kind of double fan, which seems to be formed by a semicircular membranous lamina folded upon itself. It is surmised by Prof. Allman, with much probability, that this curious appendage is 'nidamental,' having reference to the development and protection of the young; but on this point further observations are much needed; and any Microscopist, who may meet with *Appendicularia* furnished with its 'house,' should do all he can to determine its structure and its relations to the body of the animal.*

[1] * For details in respect to the structure of *Appendicularia*, see Huxley, in "Philos. Transact." for 1851, and in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. iv. (1856), p. 181; also Allman in the same Journal, Vol. vii. (1859), p. 86; Gegenbaur in Siebold and Kölliker's "Zeitschrift," Bd. vi. (1855), p. 406; Leuckart's "Zoologische Untersuchungen," Heft. ii., 1854; and Fol's 'Etudes sur les Appendiculaires' in "Archiv. Zool. Expérim." Tom. i. (1872), p. 57.—For the *Tunicata* generally, see Prof. T. Rupert Jones, in Vol. iv. of the "Cyclop. of Anatomy and Physiology;" Mr. Alder's 'Observations on the British Tunicata,' in "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," Ser. 4, Vol. xi. (1863), p. 153; and Mr. Hancock's Memoir 'On the Anatomy and Physiology of the Tunicata,' in the "Journal of the Linnæan Society," Vol. ix. p. 309.

CHAPTER XVI.

MOLLUSCOUS ANIMALS GENERALLY.

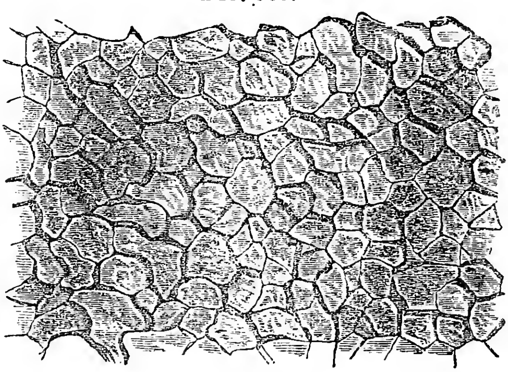
561. THE various forms of 'Shell-fish,' with their 'naked' or shelless allies, furnish a great abundance of objects of interest to the Microscopist; of which, however, the greater part may be grouped under three heads:—namely, (1) the structure of the *shell*, which is most interesting in the CONCHIFERA and BRACHIOPODA, in both of which classes the shells are 'bivalve,' while the animals differ from each other essentially in general plan of structure; (2) the structure of the *tongue* or *palate* of the GASTEROPODA, most of which have 'univalve' shells, others, however, being 'naked;' (3) the *developmental history* of the embryo, for the study of which certain of the Gasteropods present the greatest facilities.—These three subjects, therefore, will be first treated of systematically; and a few miscellaneous facts of interest will be subjoined.

562. *Shells of Mollusca.*—These investments were formerly regarded as mere inorganic exudations, composed of calcareous particles, cemented together by animal glue; Microscopic examination, however, has shown that they possess a definite *structure*, and that this structure presents certain very remarkable variations in some of the groups of which the Molluscous series is composed. —We shall first describe that which may be regarded as the characteristic structure of the ordinary Bivalves; taking as a type the group of *Margaritaceæ*, which includes the *Avicula* or 'pearl-oyster' and its allies, the common *Pinna* ranking amongst the latter. In all these shells we readily distinguish the existence of two distinct layers; an *external*, of a brownish-yellow colour; and an *internal*, which has a pearly or 'nacreous' aspect, and is commonly of a lighter hue.

563. The structure of the *outer* layer may be conveniently studied in the shell of *Pinna*, in which it commonly projects beyond the inner, and there often forms laminæ sufficiently thin and transparent to exhibit its general characters without any artificial reduction. If a small portion of such a lamina be examined with a low magnifying power by transmitted light, each of its surfaces will present very much the appearance of a honeycomb; whilst its broken edge exhibits an aspect which is evidently fibrous to the

eye, but which, when examined under the Microscope with reflected light, resembles that of an assemblage of segments of basaltic columns (Fig. 488, P). This outer layer is thus seen to be composed of a vast number of *prisms*, having a tolerably-uniform size, and usually presenting an approach to the hexagonal shape. These are arranged perpendicularly (or nearly so) to the surface of the lamina of the shell; so that its thickness is formed by their length, and its two surfaces by their extremities. A more satisfactory view of these prisms is obtained by grinding-down a lamina until it possesses a high degree of transparence; the prisms being then seen (Fig. 385) to be themselves composed of a very homogeneous substance, but to be separated by definite and strongly marked lines of division.

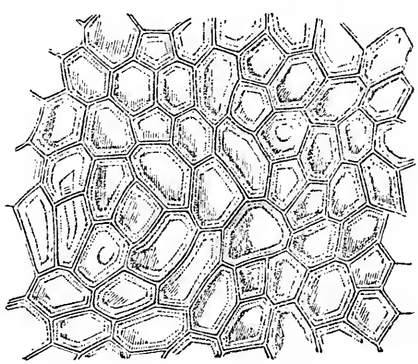
FIG. 385.



Section of Shell of *Pinna*, taken transversely to the direction of its prisms.

When such a lamina is submitted to the action of dilute acid, so as to dissolve-away the carbonate of lime, a tolerably firm and consistent membrane is left, which exhibits the prismatic structure just as perfectly as did the original shell (Fig. 386); its hexagonal divisions bearing a strong resemblance to the walls of the cells of the pith or bark of a Plant. By making a section of the shell perpendicularly to its surface, we obtain a view of the prisms cut in the direction of their length (Fig. 387); and they are frequently seen to be marked by delicate transverse striæ (Fig. 388), closely resembling those observable on the prisms of the enamel of teeth, to which this kind of shell-structure may be considered as bearing a very close resemblance, except as regards the mineralizing ingredient. If a similar section be decalcified by dilute acid, the membranous residuum will exhibit the same resemblance to the walls of prismatic cells

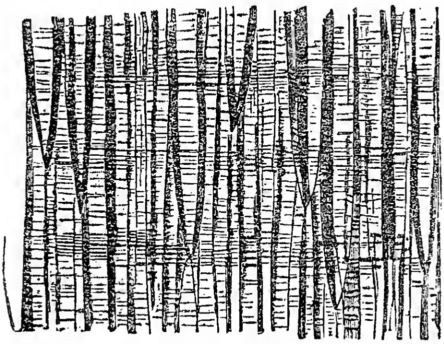
FIG. 386.



Membranous basis of the same.

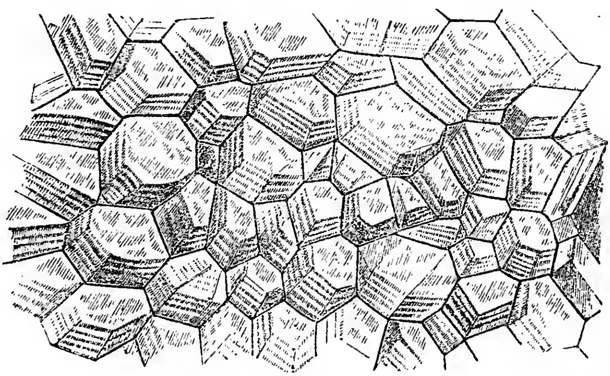
viewed longitudinally, and will be seen to be more or less regularly marked by the transverse striæ just alluded to. It sometimes happens in recent, but still more commonly in fossil shells, that the decay of the animal membrane leaves the contained prisms without any connecting medium: as they are then quite isolated, they can be readily detached one from another; and each one may be observed to be marked by the like striations, which, when a sufficiently high magnifying power is used, are seen to be minute grooves, apparently resulting from a thickening of the intermediate wall in those situations. These appearances seem best accounted-for, by supposing that each is lengthened by successive additions at its base, the lines of junction of which correspond with the transverse striation; and this view corresponds well with the fact, that the shell-membrane not unfrequently shows a tendency to

FIG. 387.



Section of the Shell of *Pinna*, in the direction of its prisms.

FIG. 388.



Oblique Section of Prismatic Shell-substance.

split into thin laminæ along the lines of striation; whilst we occasionally meet with an excessively thin natural lamina lying between the thicker prismatic layers, with one of which it would have probably coalesced, but for some accidental cause which preserved its distinctness. That the prisms are not formed in their entire length at once, but that they are progressively lengthened and consolidated at their lower extremities, would

appear also from the fact that where the shell presents a deep colour (as in *Pinna nigrina*), this colour is usually disposed in distinct strata, the outer portion of each layer being the part most deeply tinged, whilst the inner extremities of the prisms are almost colourless.

564. This 'prismatic' arrangement of the carbonate of lime in the shells of *Pinna* and its allies, has been long familiar to Conchologists, and regarded by them as the result of crystallization. When it was first more minutely investigated by Mr. Bowerbank* and the Author,† and was shown to be connected with a similar arrangement in the membranous residuum left after the decalcification of the shell-substance by acid, Microscopists generally‡ agreed to regard it as a 'calcified epidermis:' the long prismatic cells being supposed to be formed by the coalescence of the epidermic cells in piles, and giving their shape to the deposit of carbonate of lime formed within them. The progress of inquiry, however, has led to an important modification of this interpretation; the Author being now disposed to agree with Prof. Huxley§ in the belief that the entire thickness of the shell is formed as an *excretion* from the surface of the epidermis, and that the horny layer which in ordinary shells forms their external envelope or 'periostracum,'‖ being here thrown out at the same time with the calcifying material, is converted into the likeness of a cellular membrane by the pressure of the prisms that are formed by crystallization at regular distances in the midst of it.—The peculiar conditions under which calcareous concretions form themselves in an organic matrix, have been carefully studied by Mr. Rainey and Dr. W. M. Ord; of whose researches some account will be given hereafter (§ 711).

565. The *internal* layer of the shells of the *Margaritaceæ* and some other families has a 'nacreous' or iridescent lustre, which depends (as Sir D. Brewster has shown¶) upon the striation of its surface with a series of grooved lines, which usually run nearly parallel to each other (Fig. 389). As these lines are not obliterated by any amount of polishing, it is obvious that their presence depends upon something peculiar in the texture of this substance, and not upon any mere superficial arrangement. When

* 'On the Structure of the Shells of Molluscous and Conchiferous Animals, in "Transact. of Microsc. Society," 1st Ser. (1844), Vol. i. p. 123.

† 'On the Microscopic Structure of Shells,' in "Reports of British Association" for 1844 and 1847.

‡ See Mr. Quekett's "Histological Catalogue of the College of Surgeons' Museum," and his "Lectures on Histology," Vol. ii.

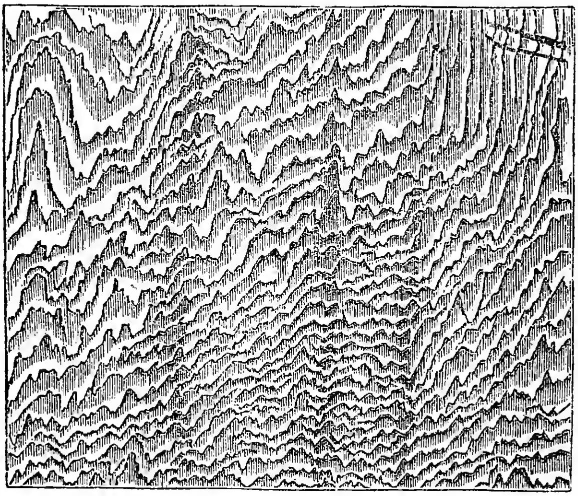
§ See his article 'Tegumentary Organs,' in "Cyclopædia of Anatomy and Physiology," Supplementary Volume, pp. 489–492.

‖ The *Periostracum* is the yellowish-brown membrane covering the surface of many shells, which is often (but erroneously) termed their *epidermis*.

¶ "Philosophical Transactions," 1814, p. 397.—The late Mr. Barton (of the Mint) succeeded in producing an artificial iridescence on metallic buttons, by drawing closely-approximating lines with a diamond-point upon the surface of the steel die by which they were struck.

a piece of the nacre (commonly known as 'mother-of-pearl') of the *Avicula* or 'pearl-oyster' is carefully examined, it becomes evident that the lines are produced by the cropping-out of laminæ of shell situated more or less obliquely to the plane of the surface. The greater the *dip* of these laminæ, the closer will their edges be; whilst the less the angle which they make with the surface, the wider will be the interval between the lines. When the section passes for any distance in the plane of a lamina, no lines will

FIG. 389



Section of nacreous lining of Shell of *Avicula margaritacea* (Pearl-oyster).

present themselves on that space. And thus the appearance of a section of nacre is such as to have been aptly compared by Sir J. Herschel to the surface of a smoothed deal board, in which the woody layers are cut perpendicularly to their surface in one part, and nearly in their plane in another. Sir D. Brewster (*loc. cit.*) appears to have supposed that nacre consists of a multitude of layers of carbonate of lime alternating with animal membrane; and that the presence of the grooved lines on the most highly-polished surface is due to the wearing away of the edges of the animal laminæ, whilst those of the hard calcareous laminæ stand out. If each line upon the nacreous surface, however, indicates a distinct layer of shell-substance, a very thin section of 'mother-of-pearl' ought to contain many hundred laminæ, in accordance with the number of lines upon its surface; these being frequently no more than 1·7500th of an inch apart. But when the nacre is treated with dilute acid so as to dissolve its calcareous portion, no such repetition of membranous layers is to be found; on the contrary, if the piece of nacre be the product of one act of shell-formation, there is but a single layer of membrane. This layer, however, is

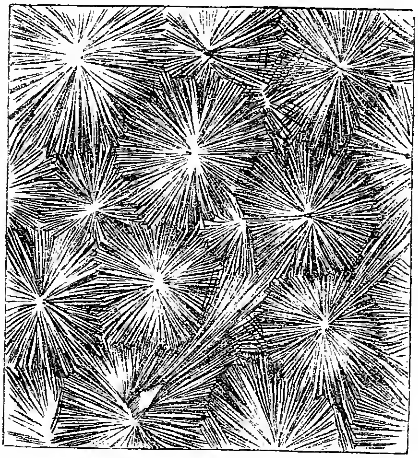
found to present a more or less folded or plaited arrangement; and the lineation of the nacreous surface may perhaps be thus accounted for.—A similar arrangement is found in *pearls;* which are rounded concretions projecting from the inner surface of the shell of *Avicula,* and possessing a nacreous structure corresponding to that of 'mother-of-pearl.' Such concretions are found in many other shells, especially the fresh-water mussels, *Unio* and *Anodon;* but these are usually less remarkable for their pearly lustre; and, when formed at the edge of the valves, they may be partly or even entirely made-up of the prismatic substance of the external layer, and may be consequently altogether destitute of the pearly character.

566. In all the genera of the *Margaritaceæ,* we find the external layer of the shell prismatic, and of considerable thickness; the internal layer being nacreous. But it is only in the shells of a few families of Bivalves, that the combination of organic with mineral components is seen in the same distinct form; and these families are for the most part nearly allied to *Pinna.* In the *Unionidæ* (or 'fresh-water mussels'), nearly the whole thickness of the shell is made-up of the internal or 'nacreous' layer; but a uniform stratum of prismatic substance is always found between the nacre and the periostracum, really constituting the inner layer of the latter, the outer being simply horny.—In the *Ostraceæ* (or oyster tribe) also, the greater part of the thickness of the shell is composed of a 'sub-nacreous' substance (§ 568) representing the inner layer of the shells of Margaritaceæ, its successively-formed laminæ, however, having very little adhesion to each other; and every one of these laminæ is bordered at its free edge by a layer of the prismatic substance, distinguished by its brownish-yellow colour. In these and some other cases, a distinct membranous residuum is left after the decalcification of the prismatic layer by dilute acid; and this is most tenacious and substantial, where (as in the *Margaritaceæ*) there is no proper periostracum. Generally speaking, a thin prismatic layer may be detected upon the external surface of Bivalve shells, where this has been protected by a periostracum, or has been prevented in any other manner from undergoing abrasion; thus it is found pretty generally in *Chama, Trigonia,* and *Solen,* and occasionally in *Anomia* and *Pecten.*

567. In many other instances, however, nothing like a cellular structure can be distinctly seen in the delicate membrane left after decalcification; and in such cases the animal basis bears but a very small proportion to the calcareous substance, and the shell is usually extremely hard. This hardness appears to depend upon the mineral arrangement of the carbonate of lime; for whilst in the *prismatic* and ordinary *nacreous* layer this has the crystalline condition of *calcite,* it can be shown in the hard shell of *Pholas* to have the arrangement of *arragonite;* the difference between the two being made evident by Polarized light. A very curious

appearance is presented by a section of the large hinge-tooth of *Mya arenaria* (Fig. 390), in which the carbonate of lime seems to be deposited in nodules that possess a crystalline structure resembling that of the mineral termed *Wavellite*. Approaches to this curious arrangement are seen in many other shells.

FIG. 390.



Section of hinge-tooth of *Mya arenaria*.

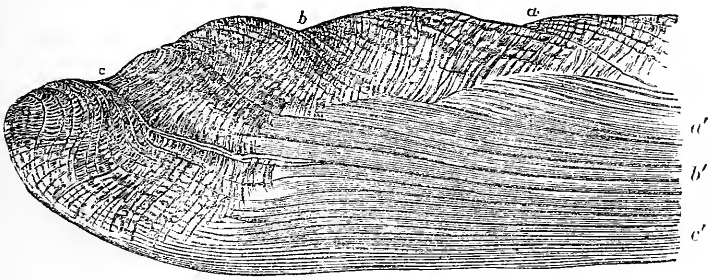
568. There are several Bivalve shells which almost entirely consist of what may be termed a *sub-nacreous* substance; their polished surfaces being marked by lines, but these lines being destitute of that regularity of arrangement which is necessary to produce the iridescent lustre. This is the case, for example, with most of the *Pectinidæ* (or scallop tribe), also with some of the *Mytilaceæ* (or mussel tribe), and with the common *Oyster*. In the internal layer of by far the greater number of Bivalve shells, however, there is not the least approach to the nacreous aspect; nor is there anything that can be described as definite structure;* and the residuum left after its decalcification is usually a structureless 'basement-membrane.'

569. The ordinary account of the mode of growth of the shells of Bivalve Mollusca,—that they are progressively enlarged by the deposition of new laminæ, each of which is in contact with the internal surface of the preceding, and extends beyond it,—does not express the whole truth; for it takes no account of the fact that most shells are composed of two layers of very different texture, and does not specify whether *both* these layers are thus formed by the entire surface of the 'mantle' whenever the shell has to be extended, or whether only *one* is produced. An examination of Fig. 391 will clearly show the mode in which the operation is effected. This figure represents a section of one of the valves of *Unio occidens*, taken perpendicularly to its surface, and passing from the margin or lip (at the left hand of the figure) towards the hinge (which would be at some distance beyond the right). This section brings into view the two substances of which the shell is composed; traversing the outer or prismatic layer in the direction of the length of its prisms, and passing through the nacreous lining in such a manner as to bring into view its numerous laminæ, separated by the lines *a a'*, *b b'*, *c c,'* &c. These lines evidently indicate the successive formations of this layer; and it may be

* For an explanation of the real nature of what was formerly described by the Author as 'tubular' Shell-substance, see § 316.

easily shown by tracing them towards the hinge on the one side and towards the margin on the other, that at every enlargement of

FIG. 391.



Vertical section of the lip of one of the valves of the shell of *Unio* :—*a*, *b*, *c*, successive formations of the outer prismatic layer; *a′*, *b′*, *c′*, the same of the inner nacreous layer.

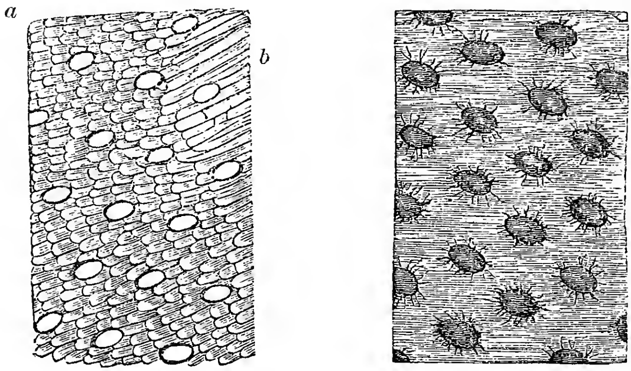
the shell its whole interior is lined by a new nacreous lamina in immediate contact with that which preceded it. The number of such laminæ, therefore, in the oldest part of the shell, indicates the number of enlargements which it has undergone. The outer or prismatic layer of the growing shell, on the other hand, is only formed where the new structure projects beyond the margin of the old; and thus we do not find one layer of it overlapping another, except at the lines of junction of two distinct formations. When the shell has attained its full dimensions, however, new laminæ of both layers still continue to be added; and thus the lip becomes thickened by successive formations of prismatic structure, each being applied to the inner surface of the preceding, instead of to its free margin.—A like arrangement may be well seen in the *Oyster;* with this difference, that the successive layers have but a comparatively slight adhesion to each other.

570. The shells of *Terebratulæ,* however, and of most other *Brachiopods,* are distinguished by peculiarities of structure which differentiate them from all others. When thin sections of them are microscopically examined, they exhibit the appearance of long flattened prisms (Fig. 392, A, *b*), which are arranged with such obliquity that their rounded extremities crop-out upon the inner surface of the shell in an imbricated (tile-like) manner (*a*). All true *Terebratulidæ,* both recent and fossil, exhibit another very remarkable peculiarity; namely, the *perforation* of the shell by a large number of canals, which generally pass nearly perpendicularly from one surface to the other (as is shown in vertical sections, Fig. 393), and terminate internally by open orifices (Fig. 392, A), whilst externally they are covered by the periostracum (B). Their diameter is greatest towards the external surface, where they sometimes expand suddenly, so as to become trumpet-

shaped; and it is usually narrowed rather suddenly, when, as sometimes happens, a new internal layer is formed as a lining to the preceding (Fig. 393, A, *d d*). Hence the diameter of these

Fig. 392.

A B

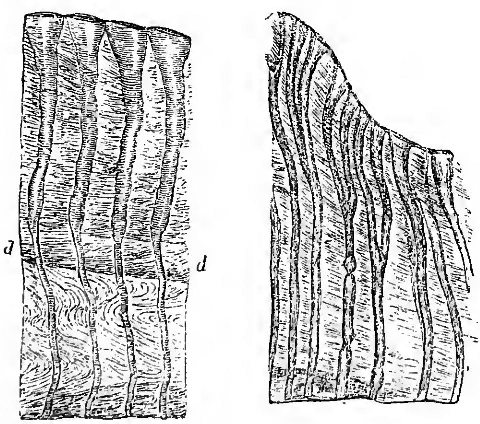


A, Internal surface (*a*), and oblique section (*b*), of Shell of *Terebratula* (Waldheimia) *australis*; B, external surface of the same.

canals, as shown in different transverse sections of one and the same shell, will vary according to the part of its thickness which the section happens to traverse.—The shells of different species of perforated *Brachiopods*, however, present very striking diversities in the size and closeness of their canals, as shown by sections taken in corresponding parts; three examples of this kind are given for the sake of comparison in Figs. 394-396. These canals are occupied in the living state by tubular prolongations of the mantle, whose interior is filled with a fluid containing minute cells and granules, which, from its corresponding in appearance with the fluid contained in the great sinuses of the mantle, may perhaps be considered to be the animal's blood. Of their special function in the economy of the animal, it is difficult to form any

Fig. 393.

A B



Vertical Sections of Shell of *Terebratula* (Waldheimia) *australis*:—showing at A the canals opening by large trumpet-shaped orifices on the outer surface, and contracting at *d, d* into narrow tubes; and showing at B a bifurcation of the canals.

probable idea; but it is interesting to remark (in connection with the hypothesis of a relationship between Brachiopods and Polyzoa) that they seem to have their parallel in extensions of the perivisceral cavity of many species of *Flustra*, *Eschara*, *Lepralia*, &c., into passages excavated in the walls of the cells of the polyzoary.

FIG. 394.

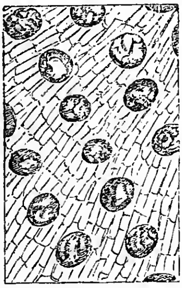


FIG. 395.

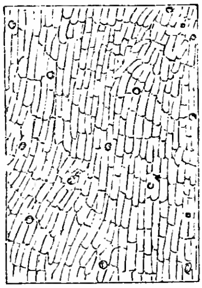


FIG. 396.

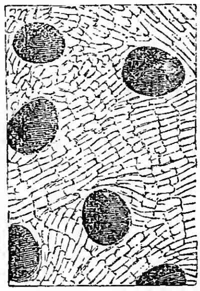


Fig. 394. Horizontal section of Shell of *Terebratula bullata* (fossil, Oolite).
Fig. 395. Ditto . . . . of *Megerlia lima* (fossil, Chalk).
Fig. 396. Ditto . . . . of *Spiriferina rostrata* (Triassic).

571. In the Family *Rhynchonellidæ*, which is represented by only two recent species (the *Rh. psittacea* and *Rh. nigricans*, both formerly ranking as Terebratulæ), but which contains a very large proportion of fossil Brachiopods, these canals are almost entirely absent; so that the uniformity of their presence in the Terebratulidæ, and their general absence in the Rhynchonellidæ, supplies a character of great value in the discrimination of the fossil shells belonging to these two groups respectively. Great caution is necessary, however, in applying this test; *mere surface-markings cannot be relied-on;* and no statement on this point is worthy of reliance, which is not based on a Microscopic examination of thin *sections* of the shell.—In the Families *Spiriferidæ* and *Strophomenidæ*, on the other hand, some species possess the perforations, whilst others are destitute of them; so that their presence or absence *there* serves only to mark-out subordinate groups. This, however, is what holds-good in regard to characters of almost every description, in other departments of Natural History; a character which is of fundamental importance from its close relation to the general plan of organization in one group, being, from its want of constancy, of far less account in another.*

* For a particular account of the Author's researches on this group, see his Memoir on the subject, forming part of the introduction of Mr. Davidson's "Monograph of the British Fossil Brachiopoda," published by the Palæontographical Society.—A very remarkable example of the importance of the presence or absence of the perforations, in distinguishing shells whose internal structure shows them to be generically different, whilst from their external conformation they would be supposed to be not only *generically* but *specifically identical,* will be found in the "Annals of Natural History," Ser. 3, Vol. xx. (1867), p. 68.

572. There is not by any means the same amount of diversity in the structure of the Shell in the class of *Gasteropods;* a certain typical plan of construction being common to by far the greater number of them. The small proportion of animal matter contained in most of these shells, is a very marked feature in their character; and it serves to render other features indistinct, since the residuum left after the removal of the calcareous matter is usually so imperfect, as to give no clue whatever to the explanation of the appearances shown by sections. Nevertheless, the structure of these shells is by no means homogeneous, but always exhibits indications, more or less clear, of a definite arrangement. The 'porcellanous' shells are composed of three layers, all presenting the same kind of structure, but each differing from the others in the mode in which this is disposed. For each layer is made-up of an assemblage of thin laminæ placed side-by-side, which separate one from another, apparently in the planes of rhomboidal cleavage, when the shell is fractured; and, as was first pointed out by Mr. Bowerbank, each of these laminæ consists of a series of elongated spicules (considered by him as prismatic cells filled with carbonate of lime) lying side-by-side in close apposition; and these series are disposed alternately in contrary directions, so as to intersect each other nearly at right angles, though still lying in parallel planes. The direction of the planes is different, however, in the three layers of the shell, bearing the same relation to each other as have those three sides of a cube which meet each other at the same angle; and by this arrangement, which is better seen in the fractured edge of the *Cypræa* or any similar shell, than in thin sections, the strength of the shell is greatly augmented.—A similar arrangement, obviously answering the same purpose, has been shown by Mr. Tomes to exist in the enamel of the teeth of Rodentia.

573. The principal departures from this plan of structure are seen in *Patella*, *Chiton*, *Haliotis*, *Turbo* and its allies, and in the 'naked' Gasteropods, many of which last, both terrestrial and marine, have some rudiment of a shell. Thus in the common Slug, *Limax rufus*, a thin oval plate of calcareous texture is found imbedded in the shield-like fold of the mantle covering the fore-part of its back; and if this be examined in an early stage of its growth, it is found to consist of an aggregation of minute calcareous nodules, generally somewhat hexagonal in form, and sometimes quite transparent, whilst in other instances it presents an appearance closely resembling that delineated in Fig. 390.—In the epidermis of the mantle of some species of *Doris*, on the other hand, we find long calcareous spicules, generally lying in parallel directions, but not in contact with each other, giving firmness to the whole of its dorsal portion; and these are sometimes covered with small tubercles, like the spicules of Gorgonia (Fig. 363). They may be separated from the soft tissue in which they are imbedded, by means of caustic potash; and when treated with dilute acid, whereby the calcareous matter is dissolved-away, an organic basis

is left, retaining in some degree the form of the original spicule. This basis cannot be said to be a true cell; but it seems to be rather a cell in the earliest stage of its formation, being an isolated particle of sarcode without wall or cavity; and the close correspondence between the appearance presented by thin sections of various Univalve shells, and the forms of the spicules of *Doris*, seems to justify the conclusion that even the most compact shells of this group are constructed out of the like elements, in a state of closer aggregation and more definite arrangement, with the occasional occurrence of a layer of more spheroidal bodies of the same kind, like those forming the rudimentary shell of *Limax*.

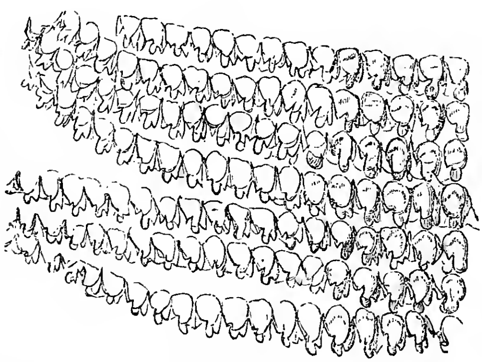
574. The structure of Shells generally is best examined by making *sections* in different planes as nearly parallel as may be possible to the surfaces of the shell, and other sections at right angles to these: the former may be designated as *horizontal*, the latter as *vertical*. Nothing need here be added to the full directions for making such Sections, which have already been given (§§ 192–194). Many of them are beautiful and interesting objects for the Polariscope.—Much valuable information may also be derived from the examination of the surfaces presented by *fracture*. The membranous residua left after the decalcification of the shell by dilute acid, may be mounted in weak spirit or in Goadby's solution.

575. The animals composing the class of *Cephalopoda* (cuttle-fish and nautilus tribe) are for the most part unpossessed of shells; and the structure of the few that we meet-with in the genera *Nautilus*, *Argonauta* ('paper-nautilus'), and *Spirula*, does not present any peculiarities that need here detain us. The rudimentary shell or *sepiostaire* of the common Cuttle-fish, however, which is frequently spoken-of as the 'cuttle-fish bone,' exhibits a very beautiful and remarkable structure, such as causes sections of it to be very interesting Microscopic objects. The outer shelly portion of this body consists of horny layers, alternating with calcified layers, in which last may be seen a hexagonal arrangement somewhat corresponding with that in Fig. 390. The soft friable substance that occupies the hollow of this boat-shaped shell, is formed of a number of delicate calcareous plates, running across it from one side to the other in parallel directions, but separated by intervals several times wider than the thickness of the plates; and these intervals are in great part filled-up by what appear to be fibres or slender pillars, passing from one plate or floor to another. A more careful examination shows, however, that instead of a large number of detached pillars, there exists a comparatively small number of very thin sinuous laminæ, which pass from one surface to the other, winding and doubling upon themselves, so that each lamina occupies a considerable space. Their precise arrangement is best seen by examining the parallel plates, after the sinuous laminæ have been detached from them; the lines of

junction being distinctly indicated upon these. By this arrangement each layer is most effectually supported by those with which it is connected above and below; and the sinuosity of the thin intervening laminæ, answering exactly the same purpose as the 'corrugation' given to iron plates for the sake of diminishing their flexibility, adds greatly to the strength of this curious texture; which is at the same time lightened by the large amount of open space between the parallel plates, that intervenes among the sinuosities of the laminæ. The best method of examining this structure, is to make sections of it with a sharp knife in various directions, taking care that the sections are no thicker than is requisite for holding-together; and these may be mounted on a Black Ground as opaque objects, or in Canada balsam as transparent objects, under which last aspect they furnish very beautiful objects for the Polariscope.

576. *Palate of Gasteropod Mollusks.*—The organ which is sometimes referred to under this designation, and sometimes as the 'tongue,' is one of a very singular nature; and cannot be likened to either the tongue or the palate of higher animals. For it is a tube that passes backwards and downwards beneath the mouth, closed at its hinder end, whilst in front it opens obliquely upon the floor of the mouth, being (as it were) slit-up and spread-out so as to form a nearly flat surface. On the interior of the tube, as well as on the flat expansion of it, we find numerous tranverse rows of minute teeth, which are set upon flattened plates; each principal tooth sometimes having a basal plate of its own, whilst in other instances one plate carries several teeth.—Of the former arrangement we have an example in the palate of many terrestrial Gasteropods, such as the snail (*Helix*) and Slug (*Limax*), in which the number of plates in each row is very considerable (Figs. 397, 398), amounting to 180 in the large garden Slug (*Limax maximus*); whilst the latter prevails in many marine Gasteropods, such as the common Whelk (*Buccinum undatum*), the palate of which has only three plates in each row, one bearing the small central teeth, and the two others the large lateral teeth (Fig. 401). The length of the palatal tube, and the number of rows of teeth, vary greatly in different species. Generally

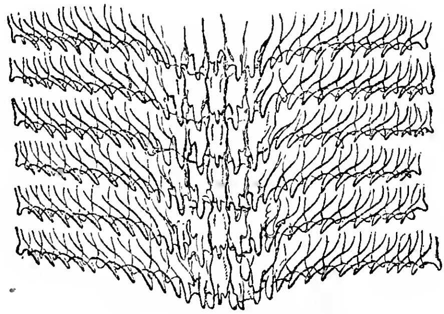
Fig. 397.



Portion of the left half of the Palate of *Helix hortensis*; the rows of teeth near the edge separated from each other to show their form.

speaking, the tube of the terrestrial Gasteropods is short, and is contained entirely within the nearly globular head; but the rows of teeth being closely set together are usually very numerous, there being frequently more than 100, and in some species as many as 160 or 170; so that the total number of teeth may mount-up, as in *Helix pomatia*, to 21,000, and in *Limax maximus*, to 26,800. The transverse rows are usually more or less curved, as shown in Fig. 398, whilst the longitudinal rows are quite straight: and the curvature takes its departure on each side from a central longitudinal row, the teeth of which are symmetrical, whilst those of the lateral portions of each transverse row present a modification of that symmetry, the prominences on the *inner* side of each tooth being suppressed, whilst those on the outer side are increased; this modification being observed to augment in degree, as we pass from the central line towards the edges.

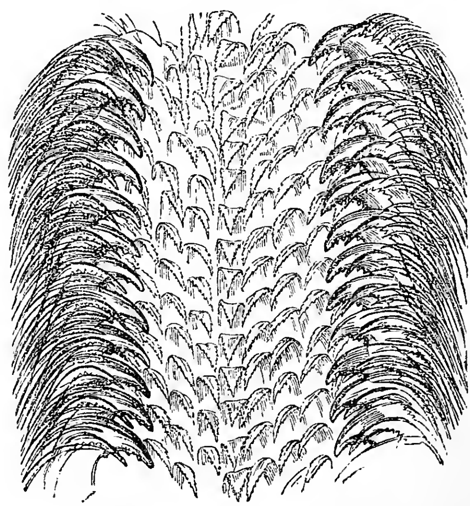
Fig. 398.



Palate of *Zonites cellarius*.

577. The palatal tube of the marine Gasteropods is generally longer, and its teeth larger; and in many instances it extends far beyond the head, which may, indeed, contain but a small part of it. Thus in the common Limpet (*Patella*), we find the principal part of the tube to lie folded-up, but perfectly free, in the abdominal cavity, between the intestine and the muscular foot; and in some species its length is twice or even three times as great as that of the entire animal. In a large proportion of cases, these palates exhibit a very marked separation between the central and the lateral portions (Figs. 399, 401); the teeth of the central band being frequently small and smooth at their edges, whilst those of

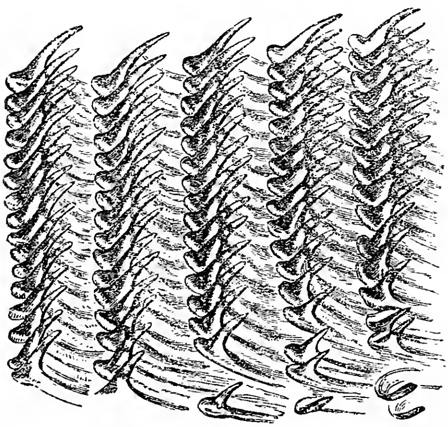
Fig. 399.



Palate of *Trochus zizyphinus*.

the lateral are large and serrated. The palate of *Trochus zizyphinus*, represented in Fig. 399, is one of the most beautiful examples of this form; not only the large teeth of the lateral bands, but the delicate leaf-like teeth of the central portion, having their edges minutely serrated. A yet more complex type, however, is found in the palate of *Haliotis;* in which there is a central band of teeth having nearly straight edges instead of points: then, on each side, a lateral band consisting of large teeth shaped like those of the Shark; and beyond this, again, another lateral band on either side, composed of several rows of smaller teeth.—Very curious differences also present themselves among the different species of the same genus. Thus in *Doris pilosa*, the central band is almost entirely wanting, and each lateral band is formed of a single row of very large hooked teeth, set obliquely like those of the lateral band in Fig. 399; whilst in *Doris tuberculata*, the central band is the part most developed, and contains a number of rows of conical teeth, standing almost perpendicularly, like those of a harrow (Fig. 400).

Fig. 400.



Palate of *Doris tuberculata*.

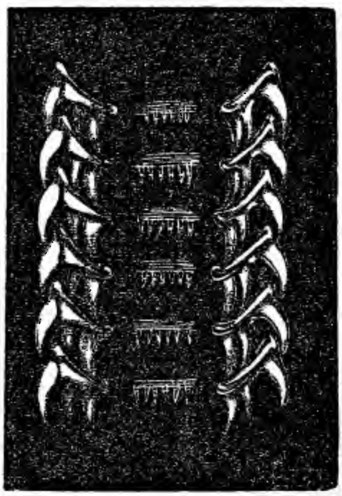
578. Many other varieties might be described, did space permit; but we must be content with adding, that the form and arrangement of the teeth of these 'palates' afford characters of great value in classification, as was first pointed out by Prof. Lovèn (of Stockholm) in 1847, and has been since very strongly urged by Dr. J. E. Gray, who considers that the structure of these organs is one of the best guides to the natural affinities of the species, genera, and families of this group, since any important alteration in the form or position of the teeth must be accompanied by some corresponding peculiarity in the habits and food of the animal.* Hence a systematic examination and delineation of the structure and arrangement of these organs, by the aid of the Microscope and Camera Lucida, would be of the greatest service to this department of Natural History. The short thick tube of *Limax* and other terrestrial Gasteropods, appears adapted for the trituration of the food previously to its passing into the œsophagus; for in these animals we find the roof of the mouth furnished with a large strong horny plate, against which the flat end of the tongue can

* "Annals of Natural History," Ser. 2, Vol. x. (1852), p. 413.

work. On the other hand, the flattened portion of the palate of *Buccinum* (whelk) and its allies is used by these animals as a file, with which they bore holes through the shells of the Mollusks that serve as their prey; this they are enabled to effect by everting that part of the proboscis-shaped mouth whose floor is formed by the flattened part of the tube, which is thus brought to the exterior, and by giving a kind of sawing-motion to the organ by means of the alternate action of two pairs of muscles,—a protractor, and a retractor,—which put-forth and draw-back a pair of cartilages whereon the tongue is supported, and also elevate and depress its teeth. Of the use of the long blind tubular part of the palate in these Gasteropods, however, scarcely any probable guess can be made; unless it be a sort of 'cavity of reserve,' from which a new toothed surface may be continually supplied as the old one is worn-away, somewhat as the front teeth of the Rodents are constantly being regenerated from the surface of the pulps which occupy their hollow conical bases, as fast as they are rubbed-down at their edges.

579. The preparation of these Palates for the Microscope can, of course, be only accomplished by carefully dissecting them from their attachments within the head; and it will be also necessary to remove the membrane that forms the sheath of the tube, when this is thick enough to interfere with its transparence. The tube itself should be slit up with a pair of fine scissors through its entire length; and should be so opened out, that its expanded surface may be a continuation of that which forms the floor of the mouth. The mode of mounting it will depend upon the manner in which it is to be viewed. For the ordinary purposes of Microscopic examination, no method is so good as mounting in fluid; either weak Spirit or Goadby's solution answering very well. But many of these palates, especially those of the marine Gasteropods, become most beautiful objects for the Polariscope when they are mounted in Canada balsam; the form and arrangement of the teeth being very strongly brought-out by it (Fig. 401), and a gorgeous play of colours being exhibited when a selenite plate is placed behind the object, and the analyzing prism is made to rotate.*

FIG. 401.

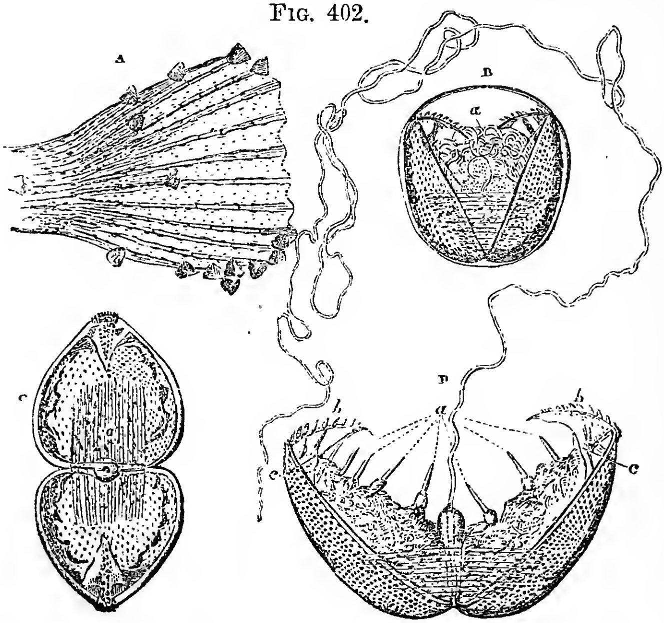


Palate of *Buccinum undatum* as seen under Polarized Light.

* For additional details on the organization of the Palate and Teeth of the Gasteropod Mollusks, see Mr. W. Thomson, in "Cyclop. of Anat. and Physiol.," Vol. iv. pp. 1142, 1143; and in "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," Ser. 2, Vol. vii. p. 86.

580. *Development of Mollusks.*—Leaving to the scientific Embryologist the large field of study that lies open to him in this direction,* the ordinary Microscopist will find much to interest him in the observation of certain special phenomena of which a general account will be here given. Attached to the gills of fresh-water

Fig. 402.



Parasitic Larva (*Glochidium*) of *Anodon*:—A, glochidia attached to the tail of a Stickleback; B, side view of glochidium still enclosed in the egg-membrane, showing the hooks of its valves and the byssus-filament *a*; C, glochidium with its valves widely opened, showing the adductor-muscle *a*; D, side view of glochidium, with the valves opened to show the origin of the byssus-filament and the three pairs of tentacular (?) organs, the barbed hooks *b*, and the muscular or membranous folds *c*, *c*, connected with them.

Mussels (*Unio* and *Anodon*) there are often found minute bodies, which, when first observed, were described as parasites, under the name of *Glochidia*, but are now known to be their own progeny in an early phase of development. When a Fish is near, they are expelled from between the valves of their parent, and attach themselves in a peculiar manner to its fins and gills (Fig. 402, A). In this stage of the existence of the young *Anodon*, its valves are provided with curious barbed or serrated hooks (D, *b*), and are continually snapping together (so as to remind the observer of the *avicularia* of Polyzoa, § 554), until they have inserted their hooks into the skin of the Fish, which seems so to retain the barbs as to prevent the re-opening of the valves. In this stage of its existence no internal organ

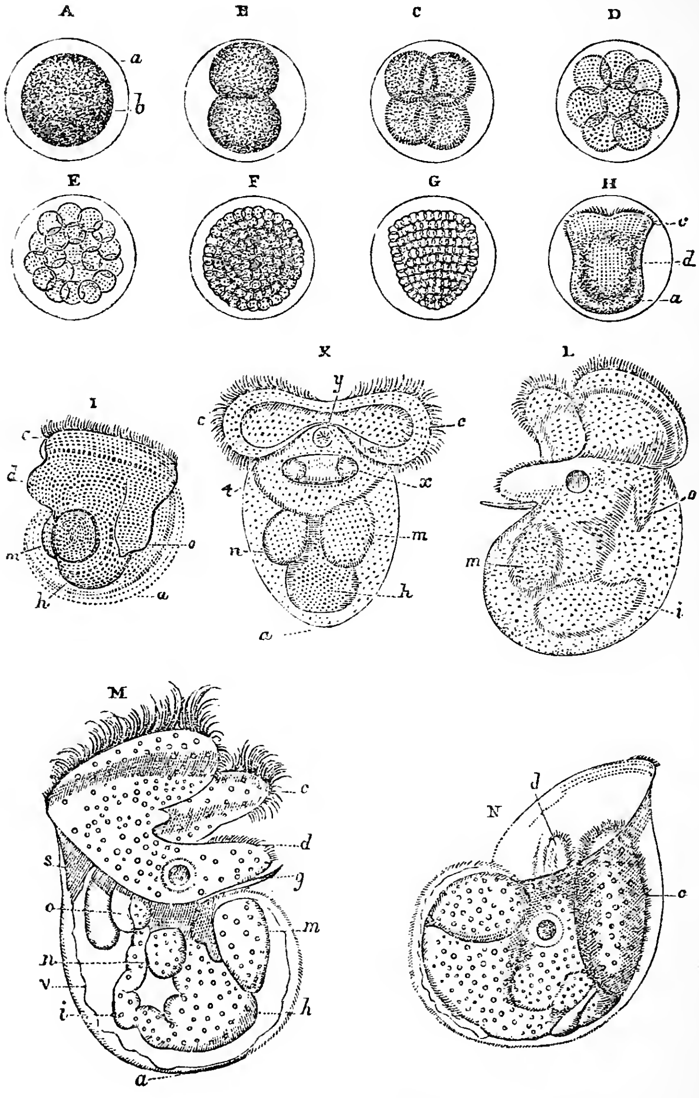
* See Balfour's "Comparative Embryology," Chap. ix.

is definitely formed, except the strong 'adductor' muscle (C, *a*) which draws the valves together, and the long, slender, byssus-filament (B, *a*, D) which makes its appearance while the embryo is still within the egg-membrane, lying coiled-up between the lateral lobes. The hollow of each valve is filled with a soft granular-looking mass, in which are to be distinguished what are perhaps the rudiments of the branchiæ and of oral tentacles; but their nature can only be certainly determined by further observation, which is rendered difficult by the opacity of the valves. By keeping a supply of Fish, however, with these embryoes attached, the entire history of the development of the fresh-water Mussel may be worked out.*

581. In certain members of the Class *Gasteropods*, the history of embryonic development presents numerous phenomena of great interest. The eggs (save among the terrestrial species) are usually deposited in aggregate masses, each enclosed in a common protective envelope or *nidamentum*. The nature of this envelope, however, varies greatly: thus, in the common *Limnæus stagnalis* or 'water-snail' of our ponds and ditches, it is nothing else than a mass of soft jelly about the size of a sixpence, in which from 50 to 60 eggs are imbedded, and which is attached to the leaves or stems of aquatic plants; in the *Buccinum undatum*, or common Whelk, it is a membranous case, connected with a considerable number of similar cases by short stalks, so as to form large globular masses which may often be picked-up on our shores, especially between April and June; in the *Purpura lapillus*, or 'rock-whelk,' it is a little flask-shaped capsule, having a firm horny wall, which is attached by a short stem to the surface of rocks between the tide-marks, great numbers being often found standing erect side by side; whilst in the *Nudibranchiate* order generally (consisting of the *Doris*, *Eolis*, and other 'sea-slugs') it forms a long tube with a membranous wall, in which immense numbers of eggs (even half a million or more) are packed closely together in the midst of a jelly-like substance, this tube being disposed in coils of various forms, which are usually attached to Sea-weeds or Zoophytes.—The course of development, in the first and last of these instances, may be readily observed from the very earliest period down to that of the emersion of the embryo; owing to the extreme transparence of the nidamentum and of the egg-membranes themselves. The first change which will be noticed by the ordinary observer, is the 'segmentation' of the yolk-mass, which divides itself (after the manner of a cell undergoing binary subdivision) into two parts, each of these two into two others, and so on until a *morula* or mulberry-like mass of minute yolk-segments is produced (Fig. 403, A—F), which is converted by 'invagination' into a 'gastrula' (§ 391), whose form is shown at G. This 'gastrula' soon begins to exhibit a very curious alternating rotation within the egg, two or three turns

* See the Rev. W. Houghton 'On the Parasitic Nature of the Fry of the *Anodonta cygnea*,' in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," N.S., Vol. ii. (1861), p. 162; and Balfour *op. cit.* pp. 220–223.

FIG. 403.



Embryonic Development of *Doris bilamellata*:—A, Ovum, consisting of enveloping membrane *a*, and yolk *b*; B, C, D, E, F, successive stages of segmentation of yolk; G, first marking-out of the shape of the embryo; H, embryo on the 8th day; I, the same on the 9th day; K, the same on the 12th day, seen on the left side at L; M, still more advanced embryo, seen at N as retracted within its shell:—*a*, superficial layer of yolk-segments coalescing to give origin to the shell; *c*, *c*, ciliated lobes; *d*, foot; *g*, hard plate or operculum attached to it; *h*, stomach; *i*, intestine, *m*, *n*, masses (glandular?) at the sides of the œsophagus; *o*, heart (?); *s*, retractor muscle (?); *t*, situation of funnel; *v*, membrane enveloping the body; *x*, auditory vesicles; *y*, mouth.

being made in one direction, and the same number in a reverse direction: this movement is due to the cilia fringing a sort of fold of the ectoderm termed the *velum*, which afterwards usually gives origin to a pair of large ciliated lobes (H—L, *c*) resembling those of Rotifers. The velum is so little developed in *Limnæus*, however, that its existence has been commonly overlooked until recognized by Prof. Ray Lankester,* who also has been able to distinguish its fringe of minute cilia. This, however, has only a transitory existence; and the later rotation of the embryo, which presents a very curious spectacle when a number of ova are viewed at once under a low magnifying power, is due to the action of the cilia fringing the head and foot.

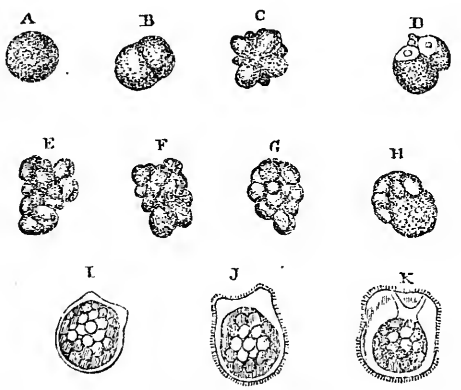
582. A separation is usually seen at an early period, between the anterior or 'cephalic' portion, and the posterior or 'visceral' portion, of the embryonic mass; and the development of the former advances with the greater activity. One of the first changes which is seen in it, consists in its extension into a sort of fin-like membrane on either side, the edges of which are fringed with long cilia (Fig. 403, H—L, *c*), whose movements may be clearly distinguished whilst the embryo is still shut-up within the egg; at a very early period may also be discerned the 'auditory vesicles' (K, *a*) or rudimentary organs of hearing (§ 587), which scarcely attain any higher development in these creatures during the whole of life; and from the immediate neighbourhood of these is put-forth a projection, which is afterwards to be evolved into the 'foot' or muscular disk of the animal. While these organs are making their appearance, the shell is being formed on the surface of the posterior portion, appearing first as a thin covering over its hinder part, and gradually extending itself until it becomes large enough to enclose the embryo completely, when this contracts itself. The ciliated lobes are best seen in the embryoes of *Nudibranchs;* and the fact of the universal presence of a shell in the embryoes of that group is of peculiar interest, as it is destined to be cast-off very soon after they enter upon active life. These embryoes may be seen to move-about as freely as the narrowness of their prison permits, for some time previous to their emersion; and when set free by the rupture of the egg-cases, they swim forth with great activity by the action of their ciliated lobes,—these, like the 'wheels' of Rotifera, serving also to bring food to the mouth, which is at that time unprovided with the reducing apparatus subsequently found in it. The same is true of the embryo of *Lymnæus*, save that its swimming movements are less active, in consequence of the non-development of the ciliated lobes; and the currents produced by the cilia that fringe the head and the orifice of the respiratory sac, seem to have reference chiefly to the provision of supplies of food,

* See his valuable 'Observations on the Development of *Limnæus stagnalis*, and on the early stages of other Mollusca,' in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Science," Oct. 1874. See also Lereboullet, 'Recherches sur le Développement du Limnée,' in "Ann. des Sci. Nat. Zool.," 4ième. Sér., Tom. xviii. p. 47.

and of aërated water for respiration. The disappearance of the cilia has been observed by Mr. Hogg to be coincident with the development of the teeth to a degree sufficient to enable the young water-snail to crop its vegetable food; and he has further ascertained that if the growing animal be kept in fresh water alone for some time, without vegetable matter of any kind, the gastric teeth are very imperfectly developed, and the cilia are still retained.*

583. A very curious modification of the ordinary plan of development is presented in the *Purpura lapillus;* and it is probable that something of the same kind exists also in *Buccinum,* as well as in other Gasteropods of the same extensive Order (*Pectinibranchiata*).—Each of the capsules already described (§ 581) contains from 500 to 600 egg-like bodies (Fig. 404, A), imbedded in a viscid gelatinous substance; but only from 12 to 30 embryoes usually attain complete development; and it is obvious from the large comparative size which these attain (Fig. 405, B), that each of them must include an amount of substance equal to that of a great number of the bodies originally found within the capsule. The explanation of this fact (long since noticed by Dr. J. E. Gray, in regard to Buccinum) seems to be as follows:—Of those 500 or 600 egg-like bodies, only a small part are fertile *ova,* the remainder being unfertilized eggs, the yolk-material of which serves for the nutrition of the embryoes in the later stages of their intra-capsular life. The distinction between them manifests itself at a very early period, even in the first segmentation; for while the latter divide into two equal hemispheres (Fig. 404, B), the fertilized ova divide into a larger and a smaller segment (D); in the cleft between these are seen the minute 'directive vesicles,' which appear to be always double or even triple, although, from being seen 'end on,' only one may be visible; and near these is generally to be seen a clear space in each segment. The difference is still more strongly marked in the subsequent divisions; for whilst the cleavage of the infertile eggs goes-on irregularly, so as to divide each into from 14 to 20 segments, having no definiteness of arrangement (C, E, F, G), that of the fertile ova takes place

FIG. 404.



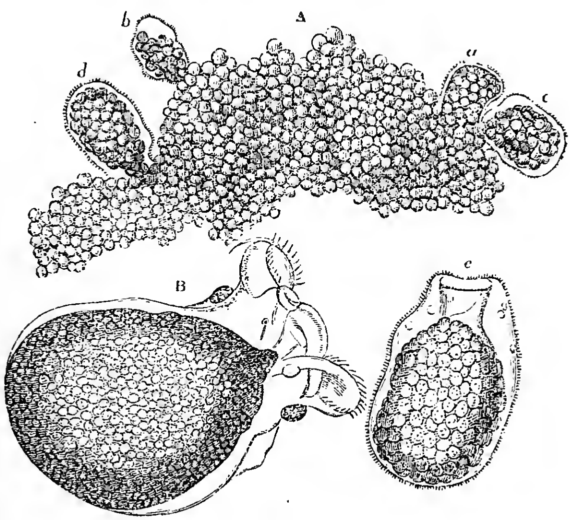
Early stages of Embryonic Development of *Purpura lapillus:*—A, egg-like spherule; B, C, E, F, G, successive stages of segmentation of yolk-spherules; D, H, I, J, K, successive stages of development of early embryoes.

* See "Transact. of Microsc. Soc.," 2nd Ser., Vol. ii. (1854), p. 93.

in such a manner as to mark-out the distinction already alluded-to between the 'cephalic and the 'visceral' portions of the mass (H); and the evolution of the former into distinct organs very speedily commences. In the first instance, a narrow transparent border is seen around the whole embryonic mass, which is broader at the cephalic portion (I); next, this border is fringed with short cilia, and the cephalic extension into two lobes begins to show itself; and then between the lobes a large mouth is formed, opening through a short, wide œsophagus, the interior of which is ciliated, into the visceral cavity, occupied as yet only by the yolk-particles originally belonging to the ovum (K).

584. Whilst these developmental changes are taking place in the embryo, the whole aggregate of segments formed by the yolk-

Fig. 405.



Later stages of embryonic Development of *Purpura lapillus*:—A, conglomerate mass of vitelline segments, to which were attached the embryoes, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*:—B, full-size embyro, in more advanced stage of development.

cleavage of the infertile eggs coalesces into one mass, as shown at A, Fig. 405; and the embryoes are often, in the first instance, so completely buried within this, as only to be discoverable by tearing its portions asunder: but some of them may commonly be found upon its exterior; and those contained in one capsule very commonly exhibit the different stages of development represented in Fig. 404, H—K. After a short time, however, it becomes apparent that the most advanced embryoes are beginning to *swallow* the yolk-segments of the conglomerate mass; and capsules will not unfrequently be met-with, in which embryoes of various sizes, as *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e* (Fig. 405, A), are projecting from its surface, their

difference of size not being accompanied by advance in development, but merely depending upon the amount of this 'supplemental' yolk which the embryoes have respectively gulped-down. For during the time in which they are engaged in appropriating this additional supply of nutriment, although they increase in *size*, yet they scarcely exhibit any other change; so that the large embryo, Fig. 405, *e*, is not apparently more advanced as regards the formation of its organs, than the small embryo, Fig. 404, K. So soon as this operation has been completed, however, and the embryo has attained its full bulk, the evolution of its organs takes-place very rapidly; the ciliated lobes are much more highly developed, being extended in a long sinuous margin, so as almost to remind the observer of the 'wheels' of Rotifera (§ 445), and being furnished with very long cilia (Fig. 405, B); the auditory vesicles, the tentacula, the eyes, and the foot, successively make their appearance; a curious rhythmically-contractile vesicle is seen, just beneath the edge of the shell in the region of the neck, which may, perhaps, serve as a temporary heart; a little later, the real heart may be seen pulsating beneath the dorsal part of the shell; and the mass of yolk-segments of which the body is made-up, gradually shapes itself into the various organs of digestion, respiration, &c., during the evolution of which (and while they are as yet far from complete) the capsule thins-away at its summit, and the embryoes make their escape from it.*

585. It happens not unfrequently that one of the embryoes which a capsule contains does not acquire its 'supplemental' yolk in the manner now described, and can only proceed in its development as far as its original yolk will afford it material; and thus, at the time when the other embryoes have attained their full size and maturity, a strange-looking creature, consisting of two large ciliated lobes with scarcely the rudiment of a body, may be seen in active motion among them. This may happen, indeed, not only to one but to several embryoes within the same capsule, especially if their number should be considerable; for it sometimes appears as if there were not food enough for all, so that whilst some attain their full dimensions and complete development, others remain of unusually small size, without being deficient in any of their organs, and others again are more or less completely abortive,—the supply of supplemental yolk which they have obtained having been too small for the development of their viscera, although it may have afforded what was needed for that of the ciliated lobes, eyes,

* The Author thinks it worth while to mention the method which he has found most convenient for examining the contents of the egg-capsules of *Purpura;* as he believes that it may be advantageously adopted in many other cases. This consists in cutting off the two ends of the capsule (taking care not to cut far into its cavity), and in then forcing a jet of water through it, by inserting the end of a fine-pointed syringe (§ 127) into one of the orifices thus made, so as to drive the contents of the capsule before it through the other. These should be received into a shallow cell, and first examined under the Simple Microscope.

tentacles, auditory vesicles, and even the foot,—or, on the other hand, no additional supply whatever having been acquired by them, so that their development has been arrested at a still earlier stage.—These phenomena are of so remarkable a character, that they furnish an abundant source of interest to any Microscopist who may happen to be spending the months of August and September in a locality in which the *Purpura* abounds; since, by opening a sufficient number of capsules, no difficulty need be experienced in arriving at all the facts which have been noticed in this brief summary.* It is much to be desired that such Microscopists as possess the requisite opportunity, would apply themselves to the study of the corresponding history in other Pectinibranchiate Gasteropods, with a view of determining how far the plan now described prevails through the Order. And now that these Mollusks have been brought not only to live, but to breed, in artificial *aquaria*, it may be anticipated that a great addition to our knowledge of this part of their life-history will ere long be made.

586. *Ciliary Motion on Gills.*—There is no object that is better suited to exhibit the general phenomena of Ciliary motion (§ 435), than a portion of the gill of some bivalve Mollusk. The *Oyster* will answer the purpose sufficiently well; but the cilia are much larger on the gills of the *Mussel*,† as they are also on those of the *Anodon* or common 'fresh-water mussel' of our ponds and streams. Nothing more is necessary than to detach a small portion of one of the riband-like bands, which will be seen running parallel with the edge of each of the valves when the shell is opened; and to place this, with a little of the liquor contained within the shell, upon a slip of glass,—taking care to spread it out sufficiently with needles to separate the *bars* of which it is composed, since it is on the edges of these, and round their knobbed extremities, that the ciliary movement presents itself,—and then covering it with a thin-glass disk. Or it will be convenient to place the object in the Aquatic-box (§ 122), which will enable the observer to subject it to any degree of pressure that he may find convenient. A magnifying power of about 120 diameters is amply sufficient to afford a

* Fuller details on this subject will be found in the Author's account of his researches, in "Transactions of the Microscopical Society," 2nd Ser., Vol. iii. (1855), p. 17. His account of the process was called in question by MM. Koren and Danielssen, who had previously given an entirely different version of it, but was fully confirmed by the observations of Dr. Dyster; see "Ann. of Nat. Hist." 2nd Ser., Vol. xx. (1857), p. 16. The independent observations of M. Claparède on the development of *Neritina fluviatilis* (Müller's "Archiv," 1857. p. 109, and abstract in "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," 2nd Ser., Vol. xx. (1857), p. 196) showed the mode of development in that species to be the same in all essential particulars as that of Purpura. The subject has again been recently studied with great minuteness by Selenka, "Niederlandisches Archiv für Zoologie," Bd. i., July, 1862.

† This Shell-fish may be obtained, not merely at the sea-side, but likewise at the shops of the fishmongers who supply the humbler classes, even in midland towns.

general view of this spectacle; but a much greater amplification is needed to bring into view the peculiar mode in which the stroke of each cilium is made. Few spectacles are more striking to the unprepared mind, than the exhibition of such wonderful activity as will then become apparent, in a body which to all ordinary observation is so inert. This activity serves a double purpose; for it not only drives a continual current of water over the surface of the gills themselves, so as to effect the aëration of the blood, but also directs a portion of this current (as in the *Tunicata*, § 555) to the mouth, so as to supply the digestive apparatus with the aliment afforded by the *Diatomaceæ*, *Infusoria*, &c., which it carries-in with it.

587. *Organs of Sense of Mollusks.*—Some of the minuter and more rudimentary forms of the special organs of sight, hearing, and touch, which the Molluscous series presents, are very interesting objects of Microscopic examination. Thus, just within the margin of each valve of *Pecten*, we see (when we observe the animal in its living state, under water) a row of minute circular points of great brilliancy, each surrounded by a dark ring; these are the eyes, with which this creature is provided, and by which its peculiarly-active movements are directed. Each of them, when their structure is carefully examined, is found to be protected by a sclerotic coat with a transparent cornea in front; and to possess a coloured iris (having a pupil) that is continuous with a layer of pigment lining the sclerotic, a crystalline lens and vitreous body, and a retinal expansion proceeding from an optic nerve which passes to each eye from the trunk that runs along the margin of the mantle.*—Eyes of still higher organization are borne upon the head of most Gasteropod Mollusks, generally at the base of one of the pairs of tentacles, but sometimes, as in the *Snail* and *Slug*, at the points of these organs. In the latter case, the tentacles are furnished with a very peculiar provision for the protection of the eyes; for when the extremity of either of them is touched, it is drawn-back into the basal part of the organ, much as the finger of a glove may be pushed-back into the palm. The retraction of the tentacle is accomplished by a strong muscular band, which arises within the head, and proceeds to the extremity of the tentacles; whilst its protrusion is effected by the agency of the circular bands with which the tubular wall of the tentacle is itself furnished, the inverted portion being (as it were) squeezed-out by the contraction of the lower part into which it has been drawn back. The structure of the eyes, and the curious provision just described, may easily be examined by snipping-off one of the eye-bearing tentacles with a pair of scissors.—None but the Cephalopod Mollusks have distinct organs of hearing; but rudiments of such organs may be found in most Gasteropods (Fig. 403, K, *x*), attached to some part of the nervous collar that surrounds the œsophagus; and even in

* See Mr. S. J. Hickson on 'The Eye of Pecten,' in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," Vol. xx. N.S. (1880), p. 443.

many Bivalves, in connection with the nervous ganglion imbedded in the base of the foot. These 'auditory vesicles,' as they are termed, are minute sacculi, each of which contains a fluid, wherein are suspended a number of minute calcareous particles (named *otoliths* or ear-stones), which are kept in a state of continual movement by the action of cilia lining the vesicles. This "wonderful spectacle," as it was truly designated by its discoverer Siebold, may be brought into view without any dissection, by submitting the head of any small and not very thick-skinned Gasteropod, or the young of the larger forms, to gentle compression under the Microscope, and transmitting a strong light through it. The very early appearance of the auditory vesicles in the embryo Gasteropod has been already alluded-to (§ 582).—Those who have the opportunity of examining young specimens of the common *Pecten*, will find it extremely interesting to watch the action of the very delicate tentacles which they have the power of putting-forth from the margin of their mantle, the animal being confined in a shallow cell, or in the zoophyte-trough; and if the observer should be fortunate enough to obtain a specimen so young that the valves are quite transparent, he will find the spectacle presented by the ciliary movement of the gills, as well as the active play of the foot (of which the adult can make no such use), to be worthy of more than a cursory glance.

588. *Chromatophores of Cephalopods.*—Almost any species of Cuttle-fish (*Sepia*) or Squid (*Loligo*) will afford the opportunity of examining the very curious provision which their skin contains for changing its hue. This consists in the presence of numerous large 'pigment-cells,' containing colouring-matter of various tints; the prevailing colour, however, being that of the fluid of the ink-bag. These pigment-cells may present very different forms, being sometimes nearly globular, whilst at other times they are flattened and extended into radiating prolongations; and, by the peculiar contractility with which they are endowed, they can pass from one to the other of these conditions, so as to spread their coloured contents over a comparatively-large surface, or to limit them within a comparatively-small area. Very commonly there are different layers of these pigment-cells, their contents having different hues in each layer; and thus a great variety of coloration may be given, by the alteration in the form of the cells of which one or another layer is made-up. It is curious that the changes in the hue of the skin appear to be influenced, as in the case of the Chameleon, by the colour of the surface with which it may be in proximity. The alternate contractions and extensions of these pigment-cells or *chromatophores* may be easily observed in a piece of skin detached from the living animal and viewed as a transparent object; since they will continue for some time, if the skin be placed in sea-water. And they may also be well seen in the embryo cuttle-fish, which will sometimes be found in a state of sufficient advancement in the grape-like eggs of these animals attached to

Sea-weeds, Zoophytes, &c.—The eggs of the small cuttle-fish termed the *Sepiola*, which is very common on our southern coasts, are imbedded, like those of the Doris, in gelatinous masses, which are attached to Sea-weeds, Zoophytes, &c.; and their embryoes, when near maturity, are extremely beautiful and interesting objects, being sufficiently transparent to allow the action of the heart to be distinguished, as well as to show most advantageously the changes incessantly occurring in the form and hue of the 'chromatophores.'

CHAPTER XVII.

ANNULOSA, OR WORMS.

589. UNDER the general designation of 'Annulose' animals, or Worms, may be grouped together all that lower portion of the great *Articulated* Sub-kingdom, in which the division of the body into longitudinally-arranged segments is not distinctly marked-out, and there is an absence of those 'articulated' or jointed limbs that constitute so distinct a feature of Insects and their allies. This group includes the classes of *Entozoa* or Intestinal Worms, *Rotifera* or Wheel-animalcules, *Turbellaria*, and *Annelida;* each of which furnishes many objects for Microscopic examination, that are of the highest scientific interest. As our business however, is less with the professed Physiologist, than with the general inquirer into the minute wonders and beauties of Nature, we shall pass over these classes (the Rotifera having been already treated-of in detail, Chap. XI.) with only a notice of such points as are likely to be specially deserving the attention of observers of the latter order.

590. ENTOZOA.—This class consists almost entirely of animals of a very peculiar plan of organization, which are parasitic within the bodies of other animals, and which obtain their nutriment by the absorption of the juices of these,—thus bearing a striking analogy to the parasitic Fungi (§§ 312–316). The most remarkable feature in their structure consists in the entire absence or the extremely low development of their nutritive system, and the extraordinary development of their reproductive apparatus. Thus, in the common *Tœnia* ('tape-worm'), which may be taken as the type of the Cestoid group, there is neither mouth nor stomach, the so-called 'head' being merely an organ for attachment, whilst the segments of the 'body' contain repetitions of a complex generative apparatus, the male and female sexual organs being so united in each as to enable it to fertilize and bring to maturity its own very numerous eggs; and the chief connection between these segments is established by two pairs of longitudinal canals, which, though regarded by some as representing a digestive apparatus, and by others as a circulating system, appear really to represent the 'water-vascular system,' whose simplest condition has been

noticed in the Wheel-animalcule (§ 449).—Few among the recent results of Microscopic inquiry have been more curious, than the elucidation of the real nature of the bodies formerly denominated *Cystic* Entozoa, which had been previously ranked as a distinct group. These are not found, like the preceding, in the cavity of the alimentary canal of the animals they infest; but always occur in the substance of solid organs, such as the glands, muscles, &c. They present themselves to the eye as bags or vesicles of various sizes, sometimes occurring singly, sometimes in groups; but upon careful examination each vesicle is found to bear upon some part a 'head' furnished with hooklets and suckers; and this may be either single, as in *Cysticercus* (the entozoon whose presence gives to pork what is known as the 'measly' disorder), or multiple, as in *Cœnurus*, which is developed in the brain, chiefly of sheep, giving rise to the disorder known as 'the staggers.' Now in none of these Cystic forms has any generative apparatus ever been discovered, and hence they are obviously to be considered as imperfect animals. The close resemblance between the 'heads' of certain *Cysticerci* and that of certain *Tœniœ* first suggested that the two might be different states of the same animal; and experiments made by those who have devoted themselves to the working-out of this curious subject have led to the assured conclusion, that the Cystic Entozoa are nothing else than Cestoid Worms, whose development has been modified by the peculiarity of their position,—the large bag being formed by a sort of dropsical accumulation of fluid when the young are evolved in the midst of solid tissues, whilst the very same bodies, conveyed into the alimentary canal of some carnivorous animal which has fed upon the flesh infested with them, begin to bud-forth the generative segments, the long succession of which, united end-to-end, gives to the entire series a Worm-like aspect.

591. The higher forms of Entozoa, belonging to the *Nematoid* or thread-like Order,—of which the common *Ascaris* may be taken as a type, one species of it (the *A. lumbricoides*, or 'round worm') being a common parasite in the small intestine of man, while another (the *A. vermicularis*, or 'thread-worm') is found rather in the lower bowel,—approach more closely to the ordinary type of conformation of Worms; having a distinct alimentary canal, which commences with a mouth at the anterior extremity of the body, and which terminates by an anal orifice near the other extremity; and also possessing a regular arrangement of circular and longitudinal muscular fibres, by which the body can be shortened, elongated, or bent in any direction. The smaller species of *Ascaris*, by some or other of which almost every Vertebrated animal is infested, are so transparent that every part of their internal organization may be made-out, especially with the assistance of the Compressor (§ 125) without any dissection; and the study of the structure and actions of their Generative apparatus has yielded many very interesting results, especially in regard to

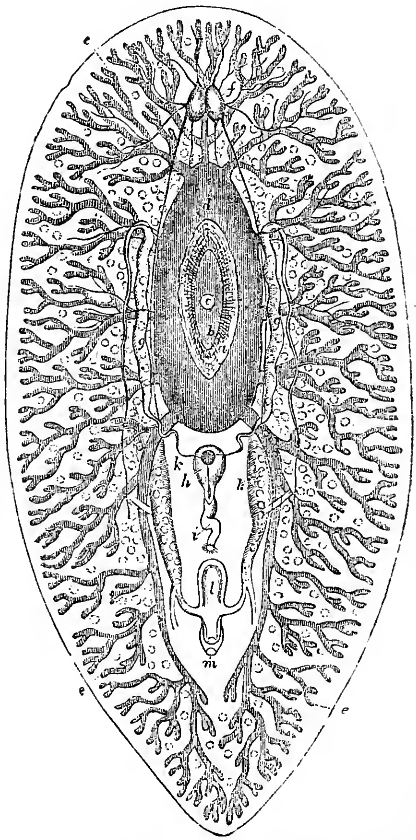
the first formation of the ova, the mode of their fertilization, and the history of their subsequent development.—Some of the Worms belonging to this group are not parasitic in the bodies of other animals, but live in the midst of dead or decomposing Vegetable matter. The *Gordius* or 'hair-worm,' which is peculiar in not having any perceptible anal orifice, seems to be properly a parasite in the intestines of water-insects; but it is frequently found in large knot-like masses (whence its name) in the water or mud of the pools inhabited by such insects, and may apparently be developed in these situations. The *Anguillulæ* are little eel-like worms, of which one species, *A. fluviatilis*, is very often found in fresh-water amongst *Desmidieæ*, *Confervæ*, &c., also in wet moss and moist earth, and sometimes also in the alimentary canals of snails, frogs, fishes, insects, and larger worms; whilst another species, *A. tritici*, is met-with in the ears of Wheat affected with the blight termed the 'cockle;' another, the *A. glutinis*, is found in sour paste; and another, the *A. aceti*, was often found in stale vinegar, until the more complete removal of mucilage and the addition of sulphuric acid, in the course of the manufacture, rendered this liquid a less favourable 'habitat' for these little creatures. A writhing mass of any of these species of 'eels,' is one of the most curious spectacles which the Microscopist can exhibit to the unscientific observer; and the capability which they all possess (in common with Rotifers and Tardigrades, § 452), of revival after desiccation, at however remote an interval, enables him to command the spectacle at any time. A grain of wheat within which these worms (often erroneously called *Vibriones*) are being developed, gradually assumes the appearance of a black pepper-corn; and if it be divided in two, the interior will be found almost completely filled with a dense white cottony mass, occupying the place of the flour, and leaving merely a small place for a little glutinous matter. The cottony substance seems to the eye to consist of bundles of fine fibres closely packed-together; but on taking-out a small portion, and putting it under the Microscope with a little water under a thin glass-cover, it will be found after a short time (if not immediately) to be a wriggling mass of life, the apparent fibres being really *Anguillulæ*, or 'eels' of the Microscopist. If the seeds be soaked in water for a couple of hours before they are laid open, the eels will be found in a state of activity from the first; their movements, however, are by no means so energetic as those of the *A. glutinis* or 'paste-eel.' This last frequently makes its appearance spontaneously in the midst of paste that is turning sour; but the best means of securing a supply for any occasion, consists in allowing a portion of any mass of paste in which they may present themselves to dry up, and then, laying this by so long as it may not be wanted, to introduce it into a mass of fresh paste, which, if it be kept warm and moist, will be found after a few days to swarm with these curious little creatures.

592. Besides the foregoing Orders of Entozoa, the *Trematode* group must be named; of which the *Distoma hepaticum* or 'fluke,' found in the livers of Sheep affected with the 'rot,' is a typical example. Into the details of the structure of this animal, which has the general form of a sole, there is no occasion for us here to enter; it is remarkable, however, for the branching form of its digestive cavity, which extends throughout almost the entire body, very much as in Planariæ (Fig. 406); and also for the curious phenomena of its development, several distinct forms being passed through between one sexual generation and another. These have been especially studied in the Distoma, which infests the *Lymnæus;* the ova of which are not developed into the likeness of their parents, but into minute worm-like bodies, which seem to be little else than masses of cells enclosed in a contractile integument, no formed organs being found in them; these cells, in their turn, are developed into independent zooids, which escape from their containing cyst in the condition of free ciliated Animalcules; in this condition they remain for some time, and then imbed themselves in the mucus that covers the tail of the Mollusk, in which they undergo a gradual development into true Distomata; and having thus acquired their perfect form, they penetrate the soft integument, and take-up their habitation in the interior of the body. Thus a considerable number of Distomata may be produced from a single ovum, by a process of cell-multiplication in an early stage of its development. In some instances the free ciliated larva possesses distinct eyes; although these organs are wanting in the fully developed Distoma, the peculiar 'habitat' of which would render them useless.

593. Turbellaria.—This group of animals, which is distinguished by the presence of cilia over the entire surface of the body, seems intermediate in some respects between the 'trematode' Entozoa and the Leech-tribe among Annelida. It deserves special notice here, chiefly on account of the frequency with which the worms of the *Planarian* tribe present themselves among collections both of marine and of fresh-water animals (particular species inhabiting either locality), and on account of the curious organization which many of these possess. Most of the members of this tribe have elongated flattened bodies, and move by a sort of gliding or crawling action over the surfaces of aquatic Plants and Animals. Some of the smaller kinds are sufficiently transparent to allow of their internal structure being seen by transmitted light, especially when they are slightly compressed; and the accompanying figure (Fig. 406) displays the general conformation of their principal organs, as thus shown. The body has the flattened sole-like shape of the Trematode Entozoa; its mouth, which is situated at a considerable distance from the anterior extremity of the body, is surrounded by a circular sucker that is applied to the living surface from which the animal draws its nutriment; and the buccal cavity (*b*) opens into a short œsophagus (*c*), which leads at

once to the cavity of the stomach. In the true *Planariæ* the mouth is furnished with a sort of long funnel-shaped proboscis; and this, even when detached from the body, continues to swallow anything presented to it. The cavity of the stomach does not give origin to any intestinal tube, nor is it provided with any second orifice; but a large number of ramifying canals are prolonged from it, which carry its contents into every part of the body. This seems to render unnecessary any system of vessels for the circulation of nutritive fluid; and the two principal trunks, with connecting and ramifying branches, which may be observed in them, are probably to be regarded in the light of a water-vascular system, the function of which is essentially respiratory. Both sets of sexual organs are combined in the same individuals; though the congress of two, each impregnating the ova of the other, seems to be generally necessary. The ovaria, as in the Entozoa, extend through a large part of the body, their ramifications proceeding from the two oviducts (*k*, *k*), which have a dilatation (*l*) at their point of junction.—There is still much obscurity about the history of the embryonic development of these animals; as the accounts given of it by different observers by no means harmonize with each other.*—The Planariæ, however, do not multiply by eggs alone; for they occasionally undergo spontaneous fission in a transverse direction, each

Fig. 406.



Structure of *Polycelis levigatus* (a Planarian worm).—*a*, Mouth, surrounded by its circular sucker; *b*, buccal cavity; *c*, œsophageal orifice; *d*, stomach; *e*, ramifications of gastric canals; *f*, cephalic ganglia and their nervous filaments; *g*, *g*, testes; *h*, vesicula seminalis; *i*, male genital canal; *k*, *k*, oviducts; *l*, dilatation at their point of junction; *m*, female genital orifice.

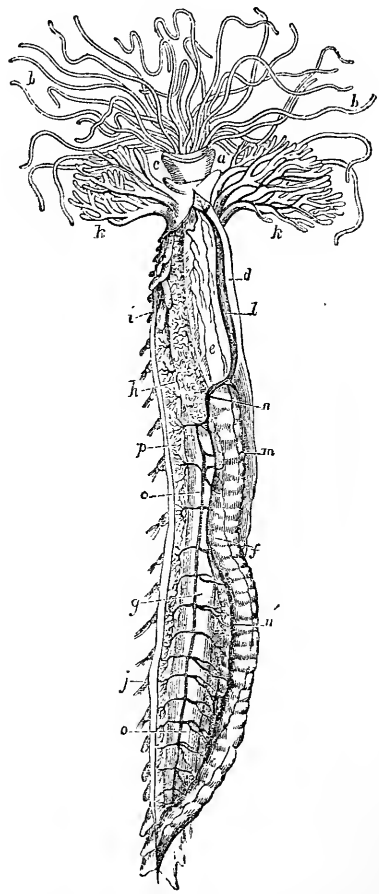
* See Balfour's "Comparative Embryology," Vol. i., pp. 159-162

segment becoming a perfect animal; and an artificial division into two or even more parts may be practised with a like result. In fact, the power of the Planariæ to reproduce portions which have been removed, seems but little inferior to that of the Hydra (§ 515); a circumstance which is peculiarly remarkable, when the much higher character of their organization is borne in mind. They possess a distinct pair of nervous ganglia (*f, f*), from which branches proceed to various parts of the body; and in the neighbourhood of these are usually to be observed a number (varying from 2 to 40) of *ocelli* or rudimentary eyes, each having its refracting body or crystalline lens, its pigment-layer, its nerve-bulb, and its cornea-like bulging of the skin. The integument of many of these animals is furnished with 'thread-cells' or 'filiferous capsules,' very much resembling those of Zoophytes (§ 528).

594. Annelids.—This Class includes all the higher kinds of Worm-like animals, the greater part of which are marine, though there are several species which inhabit fresh water, and some which live on land. The body in this class is usually very long, and nearly always presents a well-marked segmental division, the segments being for the most part similar and equal to each other, except at the two extremities; but in the lower forms, such as the Leech and its allies, the segmental division is very indistinctly seen, on account of the general softness of the integument. A large proportion of the marine Annelids have special respiratory appendages, into which the fluids of the body are sent for aëration; and these are situated upon the head (Fig. 407), in those species which (like the *Serpula*, *Terebella*, *Sabellaria*, &c.) have their bodies enclosed by tubes, either formed of a shelly substance produced from their own surface, or built-up by the agglutination of grains of sand, fragments of shell, &c.; whilst they are distributed along the two sides of the body in such as swim freely through the water, or crawl over the surfaces of rocks, as is the case with the *Nereidæ*, or simply bury themselves in the sand, as the *Arenicola* or 'lob-worm.' In these respiratory appendages the circulation of the fluids may be distinctly seen by Microscopic examination; and these fluids are of two kinds,—first, a colourless fluid, containing numerous cell-like corpuscles, which can be seen in the smaller and more transparent species to occupy the space that intervenes between the outer surface of the alimentary canal and the inner wall of the body, and to pass from this into canals which often ramify extensively in the respiratory organs, but are never furnished with a returning series of passages,—and second, a fluid which is usually red, contains few floating particles, and is enclosed in a system of proper vessels that communicates with a central propelling organ, and not only carries away the fluid away from this, but also brings it back again. In *Terebella* we find a distinct provision for the aëration of both fluids; for the first is transmitted to the tendril-like tentacles which surround the mouth (Fig. 407, *b, b*), whilst the second circulates through the beautiful arborescent gill-tufts (*k, k*), situated just

behind the head. The former are covered with cilia, the action of which contiuuually renews the stratum of water in contact with them, whilst the latter are destitute of these organs; and this seems to be the general fact as to the several appendages to which these two fluids are respectively sent for aëration, the nature of their distribution varying greatly in the different members of the class. The red fluid is commonly considered as blood, and the tubes through which it circulates as blood-vessels; but the Author has elsewhere given his reasons* for coinciding in the opinion of Prof. Huxley, that the colourless corpusculated fluid which moves in the peri-visceral cavity of the body and in its extensions, is that which really represents the blood of other Articulated animals; and that the system of vessels carrying the red fluid is to be likened on the one hand to the 'water-vascular system' of the inferior Worms, and on the other to the tracheal apparatus of Insects (§ 634).—In the observation of the beautiful spectacle presented by the respiratory circulation of the various kinds of Annelids which swarm on most of our shores, and in the examination of what is going-on in the interior of their bodies (where this is rendered possible by their transparence), the Microscopist will find a most fertile source of interesting occupation; and he may easily, with care and patience, make many valuable additions to our present stock of knowledge on these points. There are many of these marine Annelids, in which the appendages of various kinds put-forth from the sides of their bodies furnish very beautiful microscopic objects; as do also the

Fig. 407.



Circulating Apparatus of *Terebella conchilega*:—*a*, labial ring; *b*, *b*, tentacles; *c*, first segment of the trunk; *d*, skin of the back; *e*, pharynx; *f*, intestine; *g*, longitudinal muscles of the inferior surface of the body; *h*, glandular organ (liver?); *i*, organs of generation; *j*, feet; *k*, *k*, branchiæ; *l*, dorsal vessel acting as a respiratory heart; *m*, dorso-intestinal vessel; *n*, venous sinus surrounding œsophagus; *n′*, inferior intestinal vessel; *o*, *o*, ventral trunk; *p*, lateral vascular branches.

* See his "Principles of Comparative Physiology," 4th Edit., §§ 218, 219, 292.

different forms of teeth, jaws, &c., with which the mouth is commonly armed in the free or non-tubicolar species, these being eminently carnivorous.

595. The early history of the Development of Annelids, too, is extremely curious; for they come forth from the egg in a condition very little more advanced than the ciliated gemmules of Polypes, consisting of a globular mass of untransformed cells, certain parts of whose surface are covered with cilia; in a few hours, however, this embryonic mass elongates, and the indications of a segmental division become apparent, the head being (as it were) marked-off in front, whilst behind this is a large segment thickly covered with cilia, then a narrower and non-ciliated segment, and lastly the caudal or tail-segment, which is furnished with cilia. A little later, a new segment is seen to be interposed in front of the caudal; and the dark internal granular mass shapes itself into the outline of an alimentary canal.* The number of segments progressively increases by the interposition of new ones between the caudal and its preceding segments; the various internal organs become more and more distinct, eye-spots make their appearance, little bristly appendages are put-forth from the segments, and the animal gradually assumes the likeness of its parent; a few days being passed by the tubicolar kinds, however, in the actively moving condition, before they settle down to the formation of a tube.†

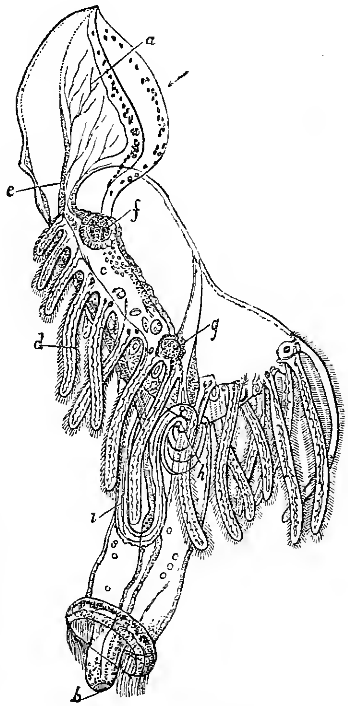
596. To carry out any systematic observations on the embryonic development of Annelids, the eggs should be searched-for in the situations which these animals haunt; but in places where Annelids abound, free-swimming larvæ are often to be obtained at the same time and in the same manner as small Medusæ (§ 522); and there is probably no part of our coasts, off which some very curious forms may not be met with. The following may be specially mentioned as departing widely from the ordinary type, and as in themselves extremely beautiful objects.—The *Actinotrocha* (Fig. 408) bears a strong resemblance in many particulars to the 'bipinnarian' larva of a Star-fish (§ 543), having an elongated body, with a series of ciliated tentacles (d) symmetrically arranged; these tentacles, however, proceed from a sort of disk which somewhat resembles the

* A most curious transformation once occurred within the Author's experience in the larva of an Annelid, which was furnished with a broad collar or disk fringed with very long cilia, and showed merely an appearance of segmentation in its hinder part; for in the course of a few minutes, during which it was not under observation, this larva assumed the ordinary form of a marine Worm three or four times its previous length, and the ciliated disk entirely disappeared. An accident unfortunately prevented the more minute examination of this Worm, which the Author would have otherwise made; but he may state that he is certain that there was no fallacy as to the fact above stated; this larva having been placed by itself in a cell, on purpose that it might be carefully studied, and having been only laid aside for a short time whilst other selections were being made from the same gathering of the Tow-net.

† For further information on this subject, see Balfour's "Comparative Embryology," Chap. xii., and the Memoirs there cited.

'lophophore' of certain Polyzoa (§ 549). The mouth (*e*) is concealed by a broad but pointed hood or 'epistome' (*a*), which sometimes closes-down upon the tentacular disk, but is sometimes raised and extended forwards. The nearly cylindrical body terminates abruptly at the other extremity, where the anal orifice of the intestine (*b*) is surrounded by a circlet of very large cilia. This animal swims with great activity, sometimes by the tentacular cilia, sometimes by the anal circlet, sometimes by both combined; and besides its movement of progression, it frequently doubles itself together, so as to bring the anal extremity and the epistome almost into contact. It is so transparent that the whole of its alimentary canal may be as distinctly seen as that of Laguncula (§ 549); and, as in that Polyzoon, the alimentary masses often to be seen within the stomach (*c*) are kept in a continual whirling movement by the agency of cilia with which its walls are clothed. This very interesting creature was for a long time a puzzle to Zoologists; since, although there could be little doubt of its being a larval form, there was no clue to the nature of the adult produced from it, until this was discovered by Krohn in 1858 to be a Gephyrean Worm.* An even more extraordinary departure from the ordinary type is presented by the larva which has received the name *Pilidium* (Fig. 409); its shape being that of a helmet, the plume of which is replaced by a single long bristle-like appendage that is in continual motion, its point moving round and round in a circle. This curious organism, first noticed by Müller, has been since ascertained to be the larva of the well-known *Nemertes*, a Turbellarian worm of enormous length, which is commonly found entwining itself among the roots of Algæ.†

Fig. 408.



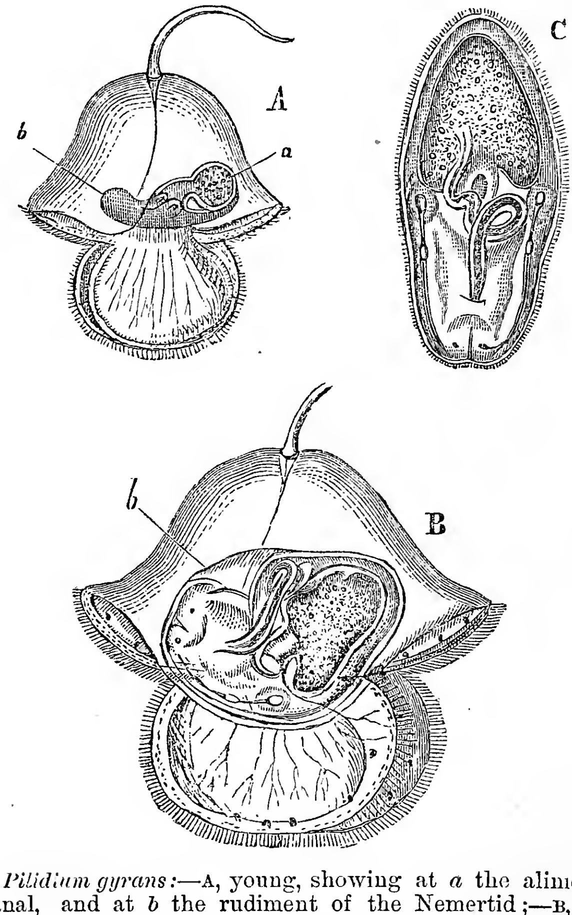
Actinotrocha branchiata: — *a*, Epistome or hood; *b*, anus; *c*, stomach; *d*, ciliated tentacles; *e*, mouth.

* 'Ueber *Pilidium* und *Actinotrocha*' in "Müller's Archiv," 1858, p. 293.—For more recent observations upon this interesting creature, see Balfour's "Comparative Embryology," Vol. i., pp. 299–302, and a Paper on 'The Origin and Significance of the Metamorphosis of *Actinotrocha*,' by Mr. E. B. Wilson (of Baltimore), in "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Sci.," April, 1881.

† See especially Leuckart and Pagenstecher's 'Untersuchungen über niedere

597. Among the animals captured by the Tow-net, the marine Zoologist will be not unlikely to meet with an Annelid which,

FIG. 409.

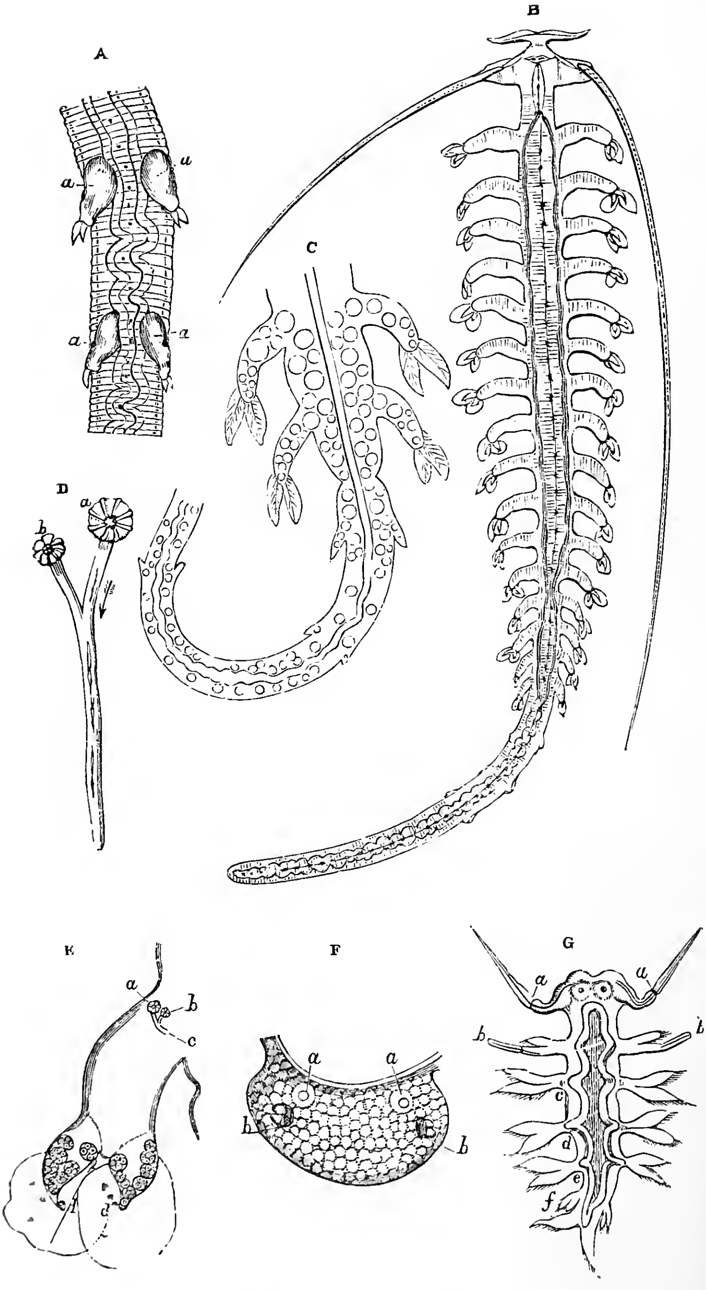


Pilidium gyrans:—A, young, showing at *a* the alimentary canal, and at *b* the rudiment of the Nemertid;—B, more advanced stage of the same;—C, newly-freed Nemertid.

although by no means Microscopic in its dimensions, is an admirable subject for Microscopic observation, owing to the extreme transparence of its entire body, which is such as to render it difficult to be distinguished when swimming in a glass jar, except by a very favourable light. This is the *Tomopteris*, so named from the division of the lateral portions of its body into a succession of wing-like segments (Plate XXIII., B), each of them carrying at its extremity a pair of pinnules, by the movements of which it is rapidly propelled through the water. The full-grown animal,

Seethiere,' in Müller's "Archiv," 1853, p. 569, and Balfour, *op. cit.*, p. 165. The Author has frequently met with *Pilidium* in Lamlash Bay.

PLATE XXIII.



TOMOPTERIS ONISCIFORMIS.

[*To face p.* 703.

which measures nearly an inch in length, has first a curious pair of 'frontal horns' projecting laterally from the head, so as to give the animal the appearance of a 'hammer-headed' Shark; behind these there is a pair of very long antennæ, in each of which we distinguish a rigid bristle-like stem or *seta*, enclosed in a soft sheath, and moved at its base by a set of muscles contained within the lateral protuberances at the head. Behind these are about sixteen pairs of the ordinary pinnulated segments, of which the hinder ones are much smaller than those in front, gradually lessening in size until they become almost rudimentary; and where these cease, the body is continued onwards into a tail-like prolongation, the length of which varies greatly according as it is contracted or extended. This prolongation, however, bears four or five pairs of very minute appendages, and the intestine is continued to its very extremity; so that it is really to be regarded as a continuation of the body. In the head we find, between the origins of the antennæ, a ganglionic mass, the component cells of which may be clearly distinguished under a sufficient magnifying power, as shown at F; seated upon this are two pigment-spots (*b*, *b*), each bearing a double pellucid lens-like body, which are obviously rudimentary eyes: whilst imbedded in its anterior portion are two peculiar nucleated vesicles, *a*, *a*, which are probably the rudiments of some other sensory organs. On the under side of the head is situated the mouth, which, like that of many other Annelids, is furnished with a sort of proboscis that can be either projected or drawn-in; a short œsophagus leads to an elongated stomach, which, when distended with fluid, occupies the whole cavity of the central portion of the body, as shown in fig. B, but which is sometimes so empty and contracted as to be like a mere cord, as shown in fig. C. In the caudal appendage, however, it is always narrowed into an intestinal canal; this, when the appendage is in extended state as at C, is nearly straight; but when the appendage is contracted, as seen at B, it is thrown into convolutions. The perivisceral cavity is occupied by fluid in which some minute corpuscles may be distinguished; and these are kept in motion by cilia which clothe some parts of the outer surface of the alimentary canal and line some part of the wall of the body. No other more special apparatus, either for the circulation or for the aëration of the nutrient fluid, exists in this curious Worm; unless we are to regard as subservient to the respiratory function the ciliated canal which may be observed in each of the lateral appendages except the five anterior pairs. This canal commences by two orifices at the base of the segment, as shown at fig. E, *b*, and on a larger scale at fig. D; each of these orifices (D, *a*, *b*) is surrounded by a sort of rosette; and the rosette of the larger one (*a*) is furnished with radiating ciliated ridges. The two branches incline towards each other, and unite into a single canal, that runs along for some distance in the wall of the body, and then terminates in the perivisceral cavity; and the direction of the motion of the cilia which line it, is from without inwards.

598. The Reproduction and Developmental history of this Annelid present many points of great interest. The sexes appear to be distinct, ova being found in some individuals, and spermatozoa in others. The development of the ova commences in certain 'germ-cells' situated within the extremities of the pinnulated segments, where they project inwards from the wall of the body; these, when set free, float in the fluid of the perivisceral cavity, and multiply themselves by self-division; and it is only after their number has thus been considerably augmented, that they begin to increase in size and to assume the characteristic appearance of ova. In this stage they usually fill the perivisceral cavity not only of the body but of its caudal extension, as shown at C; and they escape from it through transverse fissures which form in the outer wall of the body, at the third and fourth segments. The male reproductive organs, on the other hand, are limited to the caudal prolongation, where the sperm-cells are developed within the pinnulated appendages, as the germ-cells of the female are within the appendages of the body. Instead of being set free, however, into the perivisceral cavity, they are retained within a saccular envelope forming a testis (A, *a*, *a*) which fills up the whole cavity of each appendage; and within this the spermatozoa may be observed, when mature, in active movement. They make their escape externally by a passage that seems to communicate with the smaller of the two just-mentioned rosettes; but they also appear to escape into the perivisceral cavity by an aperture that forms itself when the spermatozoa are mature. Whether the ova are fertilized while yet within the body of the female, by the entrance of spermatozoa through the ciliated canals, or after they have made their escape from it, has not yet been ascertained.—Of the earliest stages of embryonic development nothing whatever is yet known; but it has been ascertained that the animal passes through a larval form, which differs from the adult not merely in the number of the segments of the body (which successively augment by additions at the posterior extremity), but also in that of the antennæ. At G is represented the earliest larva hitherto met-with, enlarged as much as ten times in proportion to the adult at B; and here we see that the head is destitute of the frontal horns, but carries a pair of setigerous antennæ, *a*, *a*, behind which there are five pairs of bifid appendages, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, *f*, in the first of which, *b*, one of the pinnules is furnished with a *seta*. In more advanced larvæ having eight or ten segments, this is developed into a second pair of antennæ resembling the first; and the animal in this stage has been described as a distinct species, *T. quadricornis*. At a more advanced age, however, the second pair attains the enormous development shown at B; and the first or larval antennæ disappear, the setigerous portions separating at a sort of joint (G, *a*, *a*), whilst the basal projections are absorbed into the general wall of the body.—This beautiful creature has been met-with on so many parts of our coast, that it cannot be considered at all uncommon; and the Microscopist can scarcely have

a more pleasing object for study.* Its elegant form, its crystal clearness, and its sprightly, graceful movements render it attractive even to the unscientific observer; whilst it is of special interest to the Physiologist, as one of the simplest examples yet known of the Annelid type.

599. To one phenomenon of the greatest interest, presented by various small Marine Annelids, the attention of the Microscopist should be specially directed; this is their *luminosity,* which is not a steady glow like that of the Glow-worm or Fire-fly, but a series of vivid scintillations (strongly resembling those produced by an electric discharge through a tube spotted with tin-foil), that pass along a considerable number of segments, lasting for an instant only, but capable of being repeatedly excited by any irritation applied to the body of the animal. These scintillations may be discerned under the Microscope, even in separate segments, when they are subjected to the irritation of a needle-point or to a gentle pressure; and it has been ascertained by the careful observations of M. de Quatrefages, that they are given out by the muscular fibres in the act of contraction.†

600. Among the fresh-water Annelids, those most interesting to the Microscopist are the worms of the *Nais* tribe, which are common in our rivers and ponds, living chiefly amidst the mud at the bottom, and especially among the roots of aquatic plants. Being blood-red in colour, they give to the surface of the mud, when they protrude themselves from it in large numbers and keep the protruded portion of their bodies in constant undulation, a very peculiar appearance; but if disturbed, they withdraw themselves suddenly and completely. These Worms, from the extreme transparency of their bodies, present peculiar facilities for Microscopic examination, and especially for the study of the internal circulation of the red liquid commonly considered as blood. There are here no external respiratory organs; and the thinness of the general integument appears to supply all needful facility for the aeration of the fluids. One large vascular trunk (dorsal) may be seen lying above the intestinal canal, and another (ventral) beneath it; and each of these enters a contractile dilatation, or heart-like organ, situated just behind the head. The fluid moves forwards in the dorsal trunk as far as the heart, which it enters and dilates; and when this contracts, it propels the fluid partly to the head, and partly to the ventral heart, which is distended by it. The ventral heart, contracting in its turn, sends the blood backwards along the ventral trunk to the tail, whence it passes towards the head as before. In this circulation, the stream branches-off from each of the principal trunks into numerous vessels proceeding to different

* See the Memoirs of the Author and M. Claparède in Vol. xxii. of the "Linnæan Transactions," and the authorities there referred to; also a recent Memoir by Dr. F. Vejdovsky in "Zeitschrift f. wiss Zool.," Bd. xxxi., 1880.

† See his Memoirs on the Annelida of La Manche, in "Ann. des Sci. Nat.," Ser. 2, Zool., Tom. xix., and Ser. 3, Zool, Tom. xiv.

parts of the body, which then return into the other trunk; and there is a peculiar set of vascular coils, hanging down in the perivisceral cavity that contains the corpusculated liquid representing the true blood, which seem specially destined to convey to it the aërating influence received by the red fluid in its circuit, thus acting (so to speak) like internal gills.—The *Naiad*-worms have been observed to undergo spontaneous division during the summer months; a new head and its organs being formed for the posterior segment behind the line of constriction, before its separation from the anterior. It has been generally believed that each segment continues to live as a complete worm; but it is asserted by Dr. T. Williams that from the time when the division occurs, neither half takes-in any more food, and that the two segments only retain vitality enough to enable them to be (as it were) the 'nurses' of the eggs which both include.—In the *Leech* tribe, the dental apparatus with which the mouth is furnished, is one of the most curious among their points of minute structure; and the common 'medicinal' Leech affords one of the most interesting examples of it. What is commonly termed the 'bite' of the leech, is really a saw-cut, or rather a combination of three saw-cuts, radiating from a common centre. If the mouth of the leech be examined with a hand-magnifier, or even with the naked eye, it will be seen to be a triangular aperture in the midst of a sucking disk; and on turning back the lips of that aperture, three little white ridges are brought into view. Each of these is the convex edge of a horny semi-circle, which is bordered by a row of eighty or ninety minute hard and sharp teeth; whilst the straight border of the semicircle is imbedded in the muscular substance of the disk, by the action of which it is made to move backwards and forwards in a saw-like manner, so that the teeth are enabled to cut into the skin to which the suctorial disk has affixed itself.*

* Among the more recent sources of information as to the Anatomy and Physiology of the *Annelids*, the following may be specially mentioned:—The "Histoire Naturelle des Annelés Marins et d'Eau douce" of M. de Quatrefages, forming part of the "Suites à Buffon;" the successive admirable Monographs of the late Prof. Ed. Claparède, "Recherches Anatomiques sur les Annélides, Turbellariés, Opalines, et Grégarines, observés dans les Hébrides" (Geneva, 1861); "Recherches Anatomiques sur les Oligochètes" (Geneva, 1862); "Beobachtungen über Anatomie und Entwickelungsgeschichte Wirbellosen Thiere an der Küste von Normandie" (Leipzig, 1863); and "Les Annélides Chétopodes du Golfe de Naples" (Geneva, 1868-70); the Monograph of Dr. Ehlers, "Die Borstenwürmer (Annelida Chætopoda)," 1864-8; and lastly, Dr. Macintosh's "Monograph of the British Annelids," now in course of publication by the Ray Society.

CHAPTER XVIII.

CRUSTACEA.

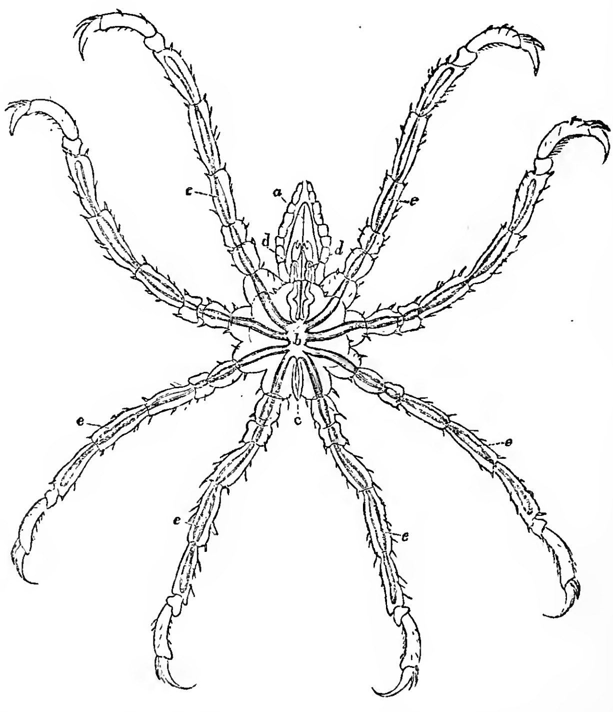
601. Passing from the lower division of the Articulated series to that of *Arthropods*, in which the body is furnished with distinctly articulated or jointed limbs, we come first to the Class of *Crustacea,* which includes (when used in its most comprehensive sense) all those animals belonging to this group, which are fitted for aquatic respiration. It thus comprehends a very extensive range of forms; for although we are accustomed to think of the Crab, Lobster, Cray-fish, and other well-known species of the order *Decapoda* (ten-footed), as its typical examples, yet all these belong to the highest of its many orders; and among the lower are many of a far simpler structure, and not a few which would not be recognized as belonging to the class at all, were it not for the information derived from the study of their development as to their real nature, which is far more apparent in their early than it is in their adult condition. Many of the inferior kinds of Crustacea are so minute and transparent, that their whole structure may be made-out by the aid of the Microscope without any preparation; this is the case, indeed, with nearly the whole group of *Entomostraca* (§ 603), and with the larval forms even of the *Crab* and its allies (§ 614); and we shall give our first attention to these, afterwards noticing such points in the structure of the larger kinds as are likely to be of general interest.

602. A curious example of the reduction of an elevated type to a very simple form is presented by the group of *Pycnogonida,* some of the members of which may be found by attentive search in almost every locality where sea-weeds abound; it being their habit to crawl (or rather to sprawl) over the surfaces of these, and probably to imbibe as food the gelatinous substance with which they are invested.* The general form of their bodies (Fig. 410) usually reminds us of that of some of the long-legged Crabs; the abdomen being almost or altogether deficient, whilst the head is very small, and fused (as it were) into the thorax; so that the last-named region, with the members attached to it, constitutes nearly

* It is remarkable that very large forms of this group, sometimes extending to more than twelve inches across, have been brought up from great depths of the sea.

the whole bulk of the animal. The head is extended in front into a proboscis-like projection, at the extremity of which is the narrow orifice of the mouth; which seems to be furnished with vibratile cilia, that serve to draw into it the semi-fluid aliment. Instead of being furnished (as in the higher Crustaceans) with two pairs of antennæ and numerous pairs of 'feet-jaws,' it has but a single pair of either; it also bears four minute *ocelli*, or rudimentary eyes, set at a little difference from each other on a sort of tubercle. From the thorax proceed four pairs of legs, each composed of several

FIG. 410.



Ammothea pycnogonoides:—*a*, narrow œsophagus; *b*, stomach; *c*, intestine; *d*, digestive cæca of the feet-jaws; *e*, *e*, digestive cæca of the legs.

joints, and terminated by a hooked claw; and by these members the animal drags itself slowly along, instead of walking actively upon them like a crab. The mouth leads to a very narrow œsophagus (*a*), which passes back to the central stomach (*b*) situated in the midst of the thorax, from the hinder end of which a narrow intestine (*c*) passes-off, to terminate at the posterior extremity of the body. From the central stomach five pairs of cæcal prolongations radiate; one pair (*d*) entering the feet-jaws, the other four (*e*, *e*) penetrating the legs, and passing along them as far as the last

joint but one; and those extensions are covered with a layer of brownish-yellow granules, which are probably to be regarded as a diffused and rudimentary condition of the liver. The stomach and its cæcal prolongations are continually executing peristaltic movements of a very curious kind; for they contract and dilate with an irregular alternation, so that a flux and reflux of their contents is constantly taking place between the central portion and its radiating extensions, and between one of these extensions and another. The perivisceral space between the widely-extended stomach and the walls of the body and limbs is occupied by a transparent liquid, in which are seen floating a number of minute transparent corpuscles of irregular size; and this fluid, which represents the blood, is kept in continual motion, not only by the general movements of the animal, but also by the actions of the digestive apparatus; since, whenever the cæcum of any one of the legs undergoes dilatation, a part of the circumambient liquid will be pressed-out from the cavity of that limb, either into the thorax, or into some other limb whose stomach is contracting. The fluid must obtain its aëration through the general surface of the body, as there are no special organs of respiration. The nervous system consists of a single ganglion in the head (formed by the coalescence of a pair), and of another in the thorax (formed by the coalescence of four pairs), with which the cephalic ganglion is connected in the usual mode, namely, by two nervous cords which diverge from each other to embrace the œsophagus.—In the study of the very curious phenomena exhibited by the digestive apparatus, as well as of the various points of internal conformation which have been described, the Achromatic Condenser will be found useful, even with the 1 inch, 2-3rds inch, or $\frac{1}{2}$ inch Objectives; for the imperfect transparence of the bodies of these animals renders it of importance to drive a large quantity of light through them, and to give to this light such a quality as shall sharply define the internal organs.*

603. Entomostraca.—This group of Crustaceans, nearly all the existing members of which are of such minute size as to be only just visible to the naked eye, is distinguished by the enclosure of the entire body within a horny or shelly casing; which sometimes closely resembles a bivalve shell in form and in the mode of junction of its parts, whilst in other instances it is formed of only a single piece, like the hard envelope of certain Rotifera (§ 453, iii.). The segments into which the body is divided, are frequently very numerous, and are for the most part similar to each other; but there is a marked difference in regard to the appendages which they bear, and to the mode in which these minister to the locomotion of the animals. For in the *Lophyropoda*, or 'bristly-footed'

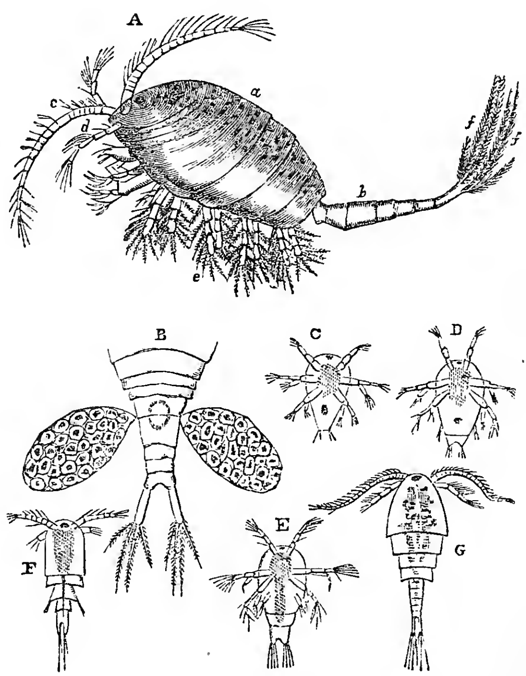
* Certain points of resemblance borne by *Pycnogonida* to Spiders, makes the careful study of their development a matter of special interest and importance; as there is some reason to regard them rather as *Arachnida* adapted to a marine *habitat*, than as Crustacea.—See Balfour's "Comparative Embryology," pp. 448, 449, and the authorities there referred to.

tribe, the number of legs is small, not exceeding five pairs, and their function is limited to locomotion, the respiratory organs being attached to the parts in the neighbourhood of the mouth; whilst in the *Branchiopoda*, or 'gill-footed' tribe, the same members (known as 'fin-feet') serve both for locomotion and for respiration, and the number of these is commonly large, being in *Apus* not less than sixty pairs. The character of their movements differs accordingly; for whilst all the members of the first-named tribe dart through the water in a succession of jerks, so as to have acquired the common name of 'water-fleas,' those among the latter which possess a great number of 'fin-feet,' swim with an easy gliding movement, sometimes on their back alone (as in the case with *Branchipus*), and sometimes with equal facility on the back, belly, or sides (as is done by *Artemia salina*, the 'brine shrimp').—Some of the most common forms of both tribes will now be briefly noticed.

604. The tribe of *Lophyropoda* is divided into two Orders; of which the first, *Ostracoda*, is distinguished by the complete enclosure of the body in a bivalve shell, by the small number of legs, and by the absence of an external ovary. One of the best known examples is the little *Cypris*, which is a common inhabitant of pools and streams: this may be recognized by its possession of two pairs of antennæ, the first having numerous joints with a pencil-like tuft of filaments, and projecting forwards from the front of the head, whilst the second has more the shape of legs, and is directed downwards; and by the limitation of its legs to two pairs, of which the posterior does not make its appearance outside the shell, being bent upwards to give support to the ovaries. The valves are generally opened widely enough to allow the greater part of both pairs of antennæ and of the front pair of legs to pass-out between them; but when the animals are alarmed, they draw these members within the shell, and close the valves firmly. They are very lively creatures, being almost constantly seen in motion, either swimming by the united action of their foot-like antennæ and legs, or walking upon plants and other solid bodies floating in the water.—Nearly allied to the preceding is the *Cythere*, whose body is furnished with three pairs of legs, all projecting out of the shell, and whose superior antennæ are destitute of the filamentous brush; this genus is almost entirely marine, and some species of it may almost invariably be met-with in little pools among the rocks between the tide-marks, creeping about (but not swimming) amongst Confervæ and Corallines.—There is abundant evidence of the former existence of Crustacea of this group, of larger size than any now existing, to an enormous extent; for in certain fresh-water strata, both of the Secondary and Tertiary series, we find layers, sometimes of great extent and thickness, which are almost entirely composed of the fossilized shells of *Cyprides;* whilst in certain parts of the Chalk, which was a marine deposit, the remains of bivalve shells resembling those of *Cythere* present themselves in such abundance as to form a considerable part of its substance.

605. In the order *Copepoda*, there is a jointed shell forming a kind of buckler or carapace that almost entirely encloses the head and thorax, an opening being left beneath, through which the members project; and there are five pairs of legs, mostly adapted for swimming, the fifth pair, however, being rudimentary in the genus *Cyclops*, the commonest example of the group. This genus receives its name from possessing only a single eye, or rather a single cluster of ocelli; which character, however, it has in common with the two genera already named, as well as with Daphnia (§ 606), and with many other Entomostraca. It contains numerous species, some of which belong to fresh-water, whilst others are marine. The Fresh-water species often abound in the muddiest and most stagnant pools, as well as in the clearest springs; the ordinary water with which London is supplied frequently contains large numbers of them. Of the marine species, some are to be found in the localities in which the Cythere is most abundant, whilst others inhabit the open ocean, and must be collected by the Tow-net. The body of the Cyclops is soft and gelatinous, and it is composed of two distinct parts, a thorax (Fig. 411, *a*) and an abdomen (*b*), of which the latter, being comparatively slender, is commonly considered as a tail, though traversed by the intestine which terminates near its extremity. The head, which coalesces with the thorax, bears one very large pair of antennæ (*c*), possessing numerous articulations and furnished with bristly appendages, and another small pair (*d*); it is also furnished with a pair of mandibles or true jaws, and with two pairs of 'feet-jaws,' of which the hinder pair is the longer and more abundantly supplied with bristles. The legs (*e*) are all beset

FIG. 411.



A, Female of *Cyclops quadricornis*:—*a*, body; *b*, tail; *c*, antenna; *d*, antennule; *e*, feet; *f*, plumose setæ of tail:—B, tail, with external egg-sacs:—C, D, E, F, G, successive stages of development of young.

with plumose tufts, as is also the tail (*f*, *f*) which is borne at the extremity of the abdomen. On either side of the abdomen of the female, there is often to be seen an egg-capsule or external ovarium (B); within which the ova, after being fertilized, undergo the earlier stages of their development.—The Cyclops is a very active creature, and strikes the water in swimming, not merely with its legs and tail, but also with its antennæ. The rapidly-repeated movements of its feet-jaws serve to create a whirlpool in the surrounding water, by which minute animals of various kinds, and even its own young, are brought to its mouth to be devoured.

606. The tribe of *Branchiopoda* also is divided into two Orders, of which the *Cladocera* present the nearest approach to the preceding, having a bivalve carapace, no more than from four to six pairs of legs, two pairs of antennæ, of which one is large and branched and adapted for swimming, and a single eye. The commonest form of this is the *Daphnia pulex*, sometimes called the 'arborescent water-flea,' from the branching form of its antennæ. It is very abundant in many ponds and ditches, coming to the surface in the mornings and evenings and in cloudy weather, but seeking the depths of the water during the heat of the day. It swims by taking short springs; and feeds on minute particles of vegetable substances, not, however, rejecting animal matter when offered. Some of the peculiar phenomena of its reproduction will be presently described (§ 609).

607. The other order, *Phyllopoda*, includes those Branchiopoda whose body is divided into a great number of segments, nearly all of which are furnished with leaf-like members, or 'fin-feet.' The two Families which this order includes, however, differ considerably in their conformation; for in that of which the genera *Apus* and *Nebalia* are representatives, the body is enclosed in a shell, either shield-like or bivalve, and the feet are generally very numerous; whilst in that which contains *Branchipus* and *Artemia*, the body is entirely unprotected, and the number of pairs of feet does not exceed eleven. The *Apus cancriformis*, which is an animal of comparatively large size, its entire length being about 2½ inches, is an inhabitant of stagnant waters; but although occasionally very abundant in particular pools or ditches, it is not to be met with nearly so commonly as the Entomostraca already noticed. It is recognized by its large oval carapace, which covers the head and body like a shield; by the nearly cylindrical form of its body, which is composed of thirty articulations; and by the multiplication of its legs, which amount to about sixty pairs. The number of joints in these and in the other appendages is so great, that in a single individual they may be safely estimated at not less than two millions. These organs, however, are for the most part small; and the instruments chiefly used by the animal for locomotion are the first pair of feet, which are very much elongated (bearing such a resemblance to the principal antennæ of other Entomostraca, as to be commonly ranked in the same light), and are distinguished as

rami or oars. With these they can swim freely in any position; but when the rami are at rest and the animal floats idly on the water, its fin-feet may be seen in incessant motion, causing a sort of whirlpool in the water, and bringing to the mouth the minute animals (chiefly the smaller Entomostraca inhabiting the same localities) that serve for its food.—The *Branchipus stagnalis* has a slender, cylindriform, and very transparent body of nearly an inch in length, furnished with eleven pairs of fin-feet, but is destitute of any protecting envelope; its head is furnished with a pair of very curious prehensile organs (which are really modified antennæ), whence it has received the name of *Cheirocephalus;* but these are not used by it for the seizure of prey, the food of this animal being vegetable, and their function is to clasp the female in the act of copulation. The Branchipus or Cheirocephalus is certainly the most beautiful and elegant of all the Entomostraca, being rendered extremely attractive to the view by "the uninterrupted undulatory wavy motion of its graceful branchial feet, slightly tinged as they are with a light reddish hue, the brilliant mixture of transparent bluish-green and bright red of its prehensile antennæ, and its bright red tail with the beautiful plumose setæ springing from it;" unfortunately, however, it is a comparatively rare animal in this country.—The *Artemia salina* or 'brine shrimp' is an animal of very similar organization, and almost equally beautiful in its appearance and movements, but of smaller size, its body being about half an inch in length. Its 'habitat' is very peculiar; for it is only found in the salt-pans or brine-pits in which sea-water is undergoing concentration (as at Lymington); and in these situations it is sometimes so abundant as to communicate a red tinge to the liquid.

608. Some of the most interesting points in the history of the *Entomostraca* lie in the peculiar mode in which their generative function is performed, and in their tenacity of life when desiccated, in which last respect they correspond with many Rotifers (§ 452). By this provision they escape being completely exterminated, as they might otherwise soon be, by the drying-up of the pools, ditches, and other small collections of water which constitute their usual 'habitats.' It does not appear, however, that the adult Animals can bear a *complete* desiccation, although they will preserve their vitality in mud that holds the smallest quantity of moisture; but their eggs are more tenacious of life, and there is ample evidence that these will become fertile on being moistened, after having remained for a long time in the condition of fine dust. Most Entomostraca, too, are killed by severe cold, and thus the whole race of adults perishes every winter; but their eggs seem unaffected by the lowest temperature, and thus continue the species, which would be otherwise exterminated.—Again, we frequently meet in this group with that *agamic* reproduction, which we have seen to prevail so extensively among the lower Radiata and Mollusca. In many species there is a double mode of multiplication, the sexual and

the non-sexual. The former takes-place at certain seasons only; the males (which are often so different in conformation from the females, that they would not be supposed to belong to the same species, if they were not seen in actual congress) disappearing entirely at other times. The latter, on the other hand, continues at all periods of the year, so long as warmth and food are supplied; and is repeated many times (as in the Hydra) so as to give origin to as many successive 'broods.' Further, a single act of impregnation serves to fertilize not merely the ova which are then mature or nearly so, but all those subsequently produced by the same female, which are deposited at considerable intervals. In these two modes, the multiplication of these little creatures is carried-on with great rapidity, the young animal speedily coming to maturity and beginning to propagate; so that according to the computation of Jurine, founded upon data ascertained by actual observation, a single fertilized female of the common *Cyclops quadricornis* may be the progenitor in one year of 4,442,189,120 young.

609. The eggs of some Entomostraca are deposited freely in the water, or are carefully attached in clusters to aquatic Plants; but they are more frequently carried for some time by the parent in special receptacles developed from the posterior part of the body; and in many cases they are retained there until the young are ready to come-forth, so that these animals may be said to be ovo-viviparous. In *Daphnia*, the eggs are received into a large cavity between the back of the animal and its shell, and there the young undergo almost their whole development, so as to come-forth in a form nearly resembling that of their parent. Soon after their birth, a moult or exuviation of the shell takes-place; and the egg-coverings are cast-off with it. In a very short time afterwards, another brood of eggs is seen in the cavity, and the same process is repeated, the shell being again exuviated after the young have been brought to maturity. At certain times, however, the *Daphnia* may be seen with a dark opaque substance within the back of the shell, which has been called the *ephippium*, from its resemblance to a saddle. This, when carefully examined, is found to be of dense texture, and to be composed of a mass of hexagonal cells; and it contains two oval bodies, each consisting of an ovum covered with a horny casing, enveloped in a capsule which opens like a bivalve shell. From the observations of Sir J. Lubbock,* it appears that the ephippium is really only an altered portion of the carapace; its outer valve being a part of the outer layer of the epidermis, and its inner valve the corresponding part of the inner layer. The development of the ephippial eggs takes-place at the posterior part of the ovaries, and is accompanied by the formation of a greenish-brown mass of granules; and from this situation the eggs pass into the receptacle formed by the new carapace, where they become included between the two layers of the ephippium. This is cast-off,

* 'An account of the two methods of Reproduction in *Daphnia*, and of the structure of the Ephippium,' in "Philosophical Transactions," 1857, p. 79.

in process of time, with the rest of the skin, from which, however, it soon becomes detached; and it continues to envelope the eggs, generally floating on the surface of the water until they are hatched with the returning warmth of spring. This curious provision obviously affords protection to the eggs which are to endure the severity of winter cold; and an approach to it may be seen in the remarkable firmness of the envelopes of the 'winter eggs' of some Rotifera (§ 451). There seems a strong probability, from the observations of Sir J. Lubbock, that the 'ephippial' eggs are true sexual products, since males are to be found at the time when the ephippia are developed; whilst it is certain that the ordinary eggs can be produced non-sexually, and that the young which spring from them can multiply the race in like manner. The young produced from the ephippial eggs seem to have the same power of continuing the race by non-sexual reproduction, as the young developed under ordinary circumstances.

610. In most Entomostraca, the young at the time of their emersion from the egg differ considerably from the parent, especially in having only the thoracic portion of the body as yet evolved, and in possessing but a small number of locomotive appendages (see Fig. 411, C–G); the visual organs, too, are frequently wanting at first. The process of development, however, takes place with great rapidity; the animal at each successive moult (which process is very commonly repeated at intervals of a day or two) presenting some new parts, and becoming more and more like its parent, which it very early resembles in its power of multiplication, the female laying eggs before she has attained her own full size. Even when the Entomostraca have attained their full growth, they continue to exuviate their shell at short intervals during the whole of life; and this repeated moulting seems to prevent the animal from being injured, or its movements obstructed, by the overgrowth of parasitic Animalcules and Confervæ; weak and sickly individuals being frequently seen to be so covered with such parasites, that their motion and life are soon arrested, apparently because they have not strength to cast-off and renew their envelopes. The process of development appears to depend in some degree upon the influence of light, being retarded when the animals are secluded from it; but its rate is still more influenced by heat; and this appears also to be the chief agent that regulates the time which elapses between the moultings of the adult, these, in *Daphnia*, taking-place at intervals of two days in warm summer weather, whilst several days intervene between them when the weather is colder. The cast shell carries with it the sheaths not only of the limbs and plumes, but of the most delicate hairs and setæ which are attached to them. If the animal have previously sustained the loss of a limb, it is generally renewed at the next moult, as in higher Crustacea.*

* For a systematic and detailed account of this group, see Dr. Baird's "Natural History of the British Entomostraca," published by the Ray Society.

611. Closely connected with the Entomostracous group is the tribe of *suctorial* Crustacea; which for the most part live as parasites upon the exterior of other animals (especially Fish), whose juices they imbibe by means of the peculiar proboscis-like organ which takes in them the place of the jaws of other Crustaceans; whilst other appendages, representing the feet-jaws, are furnished with hooks, by which these parasites attach themselves to the animals from whose juices they derive their nutriment. Many of the suctorial Crustacea bear a strong resemblance, even in their adult condition, to certain Entomostraca; but more commonly it is between the earlier forms of the two groups that the resemblance is the closest, most of the *Suctoria* undergoing such extraordinary changes in their progress towards the adult condition, that, if their complete forms were alone attended-to, they might be excluded from the class altogether, as has (in fact) been done by many Zoologists.—Among those Suctorial Crustacea which present the nearest approach to the ordinary Entomostracous type, may be specially mentioned the *Argulus foliaceus*, which attaches itself to the surface of the bodies of fresh-water Fish, and is commonly known under the name of the 'fish louse.' This animal has its body covered with a large firm oval shield, which does not extend, however, over the posterior part of the abdomen. The mouth is armed with a pair of styliform mandibles; and on each side of the proboscis there is a large short cylindrical appendage, terminated by a curious sort of sucking-disk, with another pair of longer jointed members, terminated by prehensile hooks. These two pairs of appendages, which are probably to be considered as representing the feet-jaws, are followed by four pairs of legs, which, like those of the Branchiopods, are chiefly adapted for swimming; and the tail, also, is a kind of swimmeret. This little animal can leave the fish upon which it feeds, and then swims freely in the water, usually in a straight line, but frequently and suddenly changing its direction, and sometimes turning over and over several times in succession. The stomach is remarkable for the large cæcal prolongations which it sends out on either side, immediately beneath the shell; for these subdivide and ramify in such a manner, that they are distributed almost as minutely as the cæcal prolongations of the stomach of the *Planaria* (Fig. 406). The proper alimentary canal, however, is continued backwards from the central cavity of the stomach, as an intestinal tube, which terminates in an anal orifice at the extremity of the abdomen.—A far more marked departure from the typical form of the class is shown in the *Lernæa*, which is found attached to the gills of Fishes. This creature has a long suctorial proboscis; a short thorax, to which is attached a single pair of legs, which meet at their extremities, where they bear a sucker which helps to give attachment to the parasite; a large abdomen; and a pair of pendent egg-sacs. In its adult condition it buries its anterior portion in the soft tissue of the animal it infests, and appears to

have little or no power of changing its place. But the young, when they come forth from the egg, are as active as the young of *Cyclops* (Fig. 411, C, D), which they much resemble; and only attain the adult form after a series of metamorphoses, in which they cast off their locomotive members and eyes. It is curious that the original form is retained with comparatively slight change by the males, which increase but little in size, and are so unlike the females that no one would suppose the two to belong to the same family, much less to the same species, but for the Microscopic study of their development.*

612. From the parasitic Suctorial Crustacea, the transition is not really so abrupt as it might at first sight appear to the group of *Cirrhipeda*, consisting of the *Barnacles* and their allies: for these like many of the Suctoria, are fixed to one spot during the adult portion of their lives, but come into the world in a condition that bears a strong resemblance to the early state of many of the true Crustacea. The departure from the ordinary Crustacean type in the adults, is, in fact, so great, that it is not surprising that Zoologists in general should have ranked them in a distinct Class; their superficial resemblance to the Mollusca, indeed, having caused most systematists to place them in that series, until due weight was given to those structural features which mark their 'articulated' character. We must limit ourselves, in our notice of this group, to that very remarkable part of their history, the Microscopic study of which has contributed most essentially to the elucidation of their real nature. The observations of Mr. J. V. Thompson,† with the extensions and rectifications which they have subsequently received from others (especially Mr. Spence Bate‡ and Mr. Darwin§) show that there is no essential difference between the early forms of the *sessile* (Balanidæ or 'acorn-shells') and of the *pedunculated* Cirrhipeds (Lepadidæ or 'barnacles'); for both are active little animals (Fig. 412, A), possessing three pairs of legs and a pair of compound eyes, and having the body covered with an expanded carapace, like that of many Entomostracous Crustaceans, so as in no essential particular to differ from the larva of *Cyclops* (Fig. 411, C). After going through a series of metamorphoses, one stage of which is represented in Fig. 412, B, C, these larvæ come to present a form, D, which reminds us strongly of that of *Daphnia;* the body being enclosed in a shell composed of two valves, which are united along the back, whilst they are free along their lower margin, where they separate for the protrusion of a

* As the group of Suctorial Crustacea is rather interesting to the professed Naturalist than to the amateur Microscopist, even an outline view of it would be unsuitable to the present work; and the Author would refer such of his readers as may desire to study it, to the excellent Treatise by Dr. Baird already referred to.

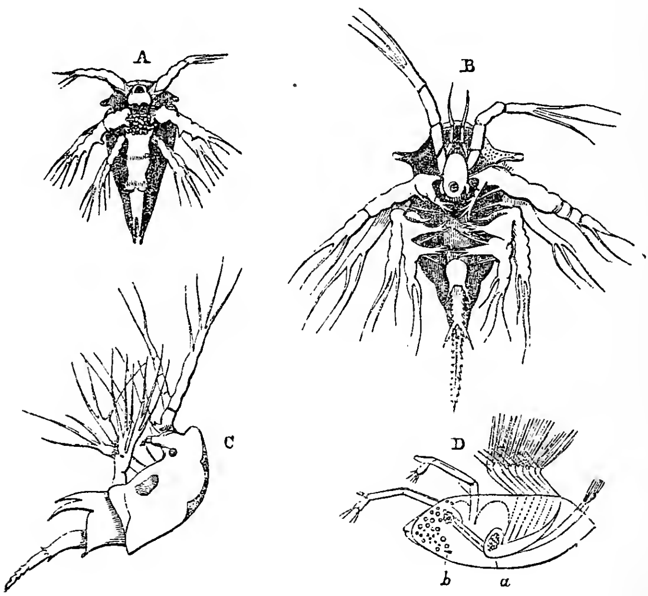
† "Zoological Researches," No. IV., 1830, and Philos. Transact., 1835, p. 355.

‡ 'On the Development of the Cirripedia,' in "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," Ser. 2, Vol. viii. (1851), p. 324.

§ "Monograph of the Sub-Class *Cirripedia*," published by the Ray Society.

large and strong anterior pair of prehensile limbs provided with an adhesive sucker and hooks, and of six pairs of posterior legs adapted for swimming. This bivalve shell, with the members of both kinds, is subsequently thrown-off; the animal then attaches itself by its *head*, a portion of which, in the Barnacle, becomes excessively elongated into the 'peduncle' of attachment, whilst in

FIG. 412.



Development of *Balanus balanoides*:—A, earliest form; B, larva after second moult; C, side view of the same; D, stage immediately preceding the loss of activity; *a*, stomach (?); *b*, nucleus of future attachment (?).

Balanus it expands into a broad disk of adhesion; the first thoracic segment sends backwards a prolongation which arches over the rest of the body so as completely to enclose it, and of which the exterior layer is consolidated into the 'multivalve' shell; whilst from the other thoracic segments are evolved the six pairs of *cirrhi*, from whose peculiar character the name of the group is derived. These are long, slender, many-jointed, tendril-like appendages, fringed with delicate filaments covered with cilia, whose action serves both to bring food to the mouth, and to maintain aërating currents in the water. The Balani are peculiarly interesting objects in the Aquarium, on account of the pumping action of their beautiful feathery appendages, which may be watched through a Tank-Microscope; and their cast skins, often collected by the Tow-net, are well worth mounting.

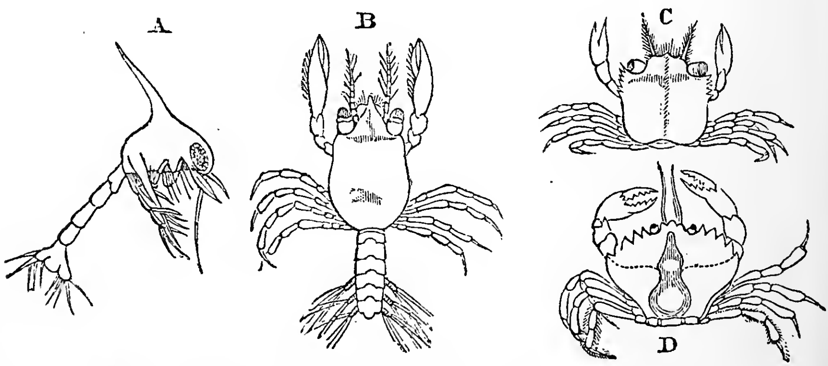
613. MALACOSTRACA.—The chief points of interest to the Microscopist in the more highly-organized forms of Crustacea, are furnished by the structure of the *shell*, and by the phenomena of *metamorphosis*, both which may be best studied in the commonest kinds.—The Shell of the *Decapods* in its most complete form consists of three strata—namely, 1, a horny structureless layer covering the exterior; 2, an areolated stratum; and 3, a laminated tubular substance. The innermost and even the middle layers, however, may be altogether wanting; thus, in the *Phyllosomæ* or 'glass-crabs,' the envelope is formed by the transparent horny layer alone; and in many of the small crabs belonging to the genus *Portuna*, the whole substance of the carapace beneath the horny investment presents the areolated structure. It is in the large thick-shelled Crabs that we find the three layers most differentiated. Thus, in the common *Cancer pagurus*, we may easily separate the structureless horny covering after a short maceration in dilute acid; the areolated layer, in which the pigmentary matter of the coloured parts of the shell is chiefly contained, may be easily brought into view by grinding-away from the *inner* side as flat a piece as can be selected, having first cemented the outer surface to the glass slide, and by examining this with a magnifying power of 250 diameters, driving a strong light through it with the Achromatic Condenser; whilst the tubular structure of the thick inner layer may be readily demonstrated, by means of sections parallel and perpendicular to its surface. This structure, which resembles that of *dentine* (§ 655), save that the tubuli do not branch, but remain of the same size through their whole course, may be particularly well seen in the black extremity of the claw, which (apparently from some peculiarity in the molecular arrangement of its mineral particles) is much denser than the rest of the shell; the former having almost the semi-transparence of ivory, whilst the latter has a chalky opacity. In a transverse section of the claw, the tubuli may be seen to radiate from the central cavity towards the surface, so as very strongly to resemble their arrangement in a tooth; and the resemblance is still further increased by the presence, at tolerably regular intervals, of minute sinuosities corresponding with the laminations of the shell, which seem, like the 'secondary curvatures' of the dentinal tubuli, to indicate successive stages in the calcification of the animal basis. In thin sections of the areolated layer it may be seen that the apparent walls of the areolæ are merely translucent spaces from which the tubuli are absent, their orifices being abundant in the intervening spaces.* The tubular layer rises-up through the

* The Author is now quite satisfied of the correctness of the interpretation put by Prof. Huxley (see his Article, 'Tegumentary Organs,' in the "Cyclop. of Anat. and Phys.," Vol. v., p. 487) and by Prof. W. C. Williamson ('On some Histological Features in the Shells of Crustacea,' in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. viii., 1860, p. 38), upon the appearances which he formerly described ("Reports of British Association" for 1847, p. 128) as indicating a cellular structure in this layer.

pigmentary layer of the Crab's shell in little papillary elevations, which seem to be concretionary nodules; and it is from the deficiency of the pigmentary layer at these parts, that the coloured portion of the shell derives its minutely-speckled appearance.—Many departures from this type are presented by the different species of Decapods; thus, in the *Prawns*, there are are large stellate pigment-spots (resembling those of Frogs, Fig. 465, *c*), the colours of which are often in remarkable conformity with those of the bottom of the rock-pools frequented by these creatures; whilst in the *Shrimps* there is seldom any distinct trace of the areolated layer, and the calcareous portion of the skeleton is disposed in the form of concentric rings, which seem to be the result of the concretionary aggregation of the calcifying deposit (§ 713).

614. It is a very curious circumstance, that a strongly-marked difference exists between Crustaceans that are otherwise very closely allied, in regard to the degree of change to which their young are subject in their progress towards the adult condition. For whilst the common *Crab*, *Lobster*, *Spiny Lobster*, *Prawn*, and *Shrimp* undergo a regular metamorphosis, the young of the *Crayfish* and some *Land-crabs* come-forth from the egg in a form which corresponds in all essential particulars with that of their parents. Generally speaking, a strong resemblance exists among the young of all the species of Decapods which undergo a metamorphosis, whether they are afterwards to belong to the *macrourous* (long-tailed) or to the *brachyourous* (short-tailed) division of the group; and the forms of these larvæ are so peculiar, and so entirely

Fig. 413.



Metamorphosis of *Carcinus mænas*:—A, first or *Zoea* stage; B, second or *Megalopa* stage; C, third stage, in which it begins to assume the adult form; D, perfect form.

different from any of those into which they are ultimately to be developed, that they were considered as belonging to a distinct genus, *Zoea*, until their real nature was first ascertained by Mr. J. V. Thompson. Thus, in the earliest state of *Carcinus mænas* (small edible Crab), we see the head and thorax, which form the

principal bulk of the body, included within a large carapace or shield (Fig. 413, A) furnished with a long projecting spine, beneath which the fin-feet are put-forth: whilst the abdominal segments, narrowed and prolonged, carry at the end a flattened tail-fin, by the strokes of which upon the water, the propulsion of the animal is chiefly effected. Its condition is hence comparable, in almost all essential particulars, to that of *Cyclops* (§ 605). In the case of the Lobster, Prawn, and other 'macrourous' species, the metamorphosis chiefly consists in the separation of the locomotive and respiratory organs; true legs being developed from the thoracic segments for the former, and true gills (concealed within a special chamber formed by an extension of the carapace beneath the body) for the latter; while the abdominal segments increase in size, and become furnished with appendages (false feet) of their own. In the Crabs, or 'brachyourous' species, on the other hand, the alteration is much greater; for besides the change first noticed in the thoracic members and respiratory organs, the thoracic region becomes much more developed at the expense of the abdominal, as seen at B, in which stage the larva is remarkable for the large size of its eyes, and hence received the name of *Megalopa* when it was supposed to be a distinct type. In the next stage, C, we find the abdominal portion reduced to an almost rudimentary condition, and bent under the body; the thoracic limbs are more completely adapted for walking, save the first pair, which are developed into *chelæ* or pincers; and the little creature entirely loses the active swimming habits which it originally possessed, and takes-on the mode of life peculiar to the adult.*

615. In collecting minute Crustacea, the Ring-net should be used for the fresh-water species, and the Tow-net for the marine. In localities favourable for the latter, the same 'gathering' will often contain multitudes of various species of Entomostraca, accompanied perhaps, by the larvæ of higher Crustacea, Echinoderm larvæ, Annelid-larvæ, and the smaller Medusæ. The water containing these should be put into a large glass jar, freely exposed to the light; and, after a little practice, the eye will become so far habituated to the general appearance and modes of movement of these different forms of animal life, as to be able to distinguish them one from the other. In selecting any specimen for Microscopic-examination, the Dipping-tube (§ 126) will be found invaluable. The collector will frequently find *Megalopa*-larvæ, recognizable by the brightness of their two black eye-spots, on the surface of floating leaves of *Zostera*.—The study of the Metamorphosis will be best prosecuted, however, by obtaining the fertilized eggs which are carried-about by the females, and watching the history of their products.—For preserving specimens, whether of Entomostraca, or of larvæ of the higher Crustacea, the Author would recommend Glycerine-jelly as the best medium.

* On the Metamorphosis of *Crustacea* and *Cirripedia*, see especially the recent "Untersuchungen über Crustaceen" of Prof. Claus; Vienna, 1876.

CHAPTER XIX.

INSECTS AND ARACHNIDA.

616. THERE is no Class in the whole Animal Kingdom which affords to the Microscopist such a wonderful variety of interesting objects, and such facilities for obtaining an almost endless succession of novelties, as that of Insects. For, in the first place, the number of different kinds that may be brought together (at the proper time) with extremely little trouble, far surpasses that which any other group of animals can supply to the most painstaking collector; then again, each specimen will afford, to him who knows how to employ his materials, a considerable number of Microscopic objects of very different kinds; and thirdly, although some of these objects require much care and dexterity in their preparation, a large proportion may be got-out, examined, and mounted, with very little skill or trouble. Take, for example, the common House-fly:—its *eyes* may be easily mounted, one as a transparent, the other as an opaque object (§ 626); its *antennæ,* although not such beautiful objects as those of many other Diptera, are still well worth examination (§ 628); its *tongue* or 'proboscis' (§ 629) is a peculiarly interesting object, though requiring some care in its preparation; its *spiracles,* which may be easily cut-out from the sides of its body, have a very curious structure (§ 635); its alimentary canal affords a very good example of the minute distribution of the *tracheæ* (§ 634); its *wing,* examined in a living specimen newly come-forth from the pupa state, exhibits the circulation of the blood in the 'nervures' (§ 633), and when dead shows a most beautiful play of iridescent colours, and a remarkable areolation of surface, when examined by light reflected from its surface at a particular angle (§ 638); its *foot* has a very peculiar conformation, which is doubtless connected with its singular power of walking over smooth surfaces in direct opposition to the force of gravity, and on the action of which additional light has lately been thrown (§ 640); while the structure and physiology of its *sexual* apparatus, with the history of its development and metamorphoses, would of itself suffice to occupy the whole time of an observer who should desire thoroughly to work it out, not only for months but for years.*

* See Mr. Lowne's valuable Treatise on "The Anatomy and Physiology of the Blow-fly," 1870.

Hence, in treating of this department in such a work as the present, the Author labours under the *embarras des richesses;* for to enter into such a description of the parts of the structure of Insects most interesting to the Microscopist, as should be at all comparable in fulness with the accounts which it has been thought desirable to give of other Classes, would swell-out the volume to an inconvenient bulk; and no course seems open, but to limit the treatment of the subject to a notice of the *kinds* of objects which are likely to prove most generally interesting, with a few illustrations that may serve to make the descriptions more clear, and with an enumeration of some of the sources whence a variety of specimens of each class may be most readily obtained. And this limitation is the less to be regretted, since there already exist in our language numerous elementary treatises on Entomology, wherein the general structure of Insects is fully explained, and the conformation of their minute parts as seen with the Microscope is adequately illustrated.

617. A considerable number of the smaller Insects—especially those belonging to the Orders *Coleoptera* (Beetles), *Neuroptera* (Dragon-fly, May-fly, &c.), *Hymenoptera* (Bee, Wasp, &c.), and *Diptera* (two-winged Flies)—may be mounted entire as opaque objects for low magnifying powers; care being taken to spread out their legs, wings, &c., so as adequately to display them, which may be accomplished, even after they have dried in other positions, by softening them by steeping them in hot water, or, where this is objectionable, by exposing them to steam. Full directions on this point, applicable to small and large Insects alike, will be found in all Text-books of Entomology. There are some, however, whose translucence allows them to be viewed as transparent objects; and these are either to be mounted in Canada balsam or in Deane's medium, Glycerine-jelly, or Farrant's gum, according to the degree in which the horny opacity of their integument requires the assistance of the balsam to facilitate the transmission of light through it, or the softness and delicacy of their textures render an aqueous medium more desirable. Thus, an ordinary *Flea* or *Bug* will best be mounted in balsam; but the various parasites of the *Louse* kind, with some or other of which almost every kind of animal is affected, should be set-up in some of the 'media.' Some of the aquatic larvæ of the Diptera and Neuroptera, which are so transparent that their whole internal organization can be made-out without dissection, are very beautiful and interesting objects when examined in the living state, especially because they allow the Circulation of the blood and the action of the dorsal vessel to be discerned (§ 632). Among these, there is none preferable to the larva of the *Ephemera marginata* (Day-fly), which is distinguished by the possession of a number of beautiful appendages on its body and tail, and is, moreover, an extremely common inhabitant of our ponds and streams. This insect passes two or even three years in its larval state, and during this time it repeatedly throws-off its skin;

the cast skin, when perfect, is an object of extreme beauty, since, as it formed a complete sheath to the various appendages of the body and tail, it continues to exhibit their outlines with the utmost delicacy; and by keeping these larvæ in an Aquarium, and by mounting the entire series of their cast skins, a record is preserved of the successive changes they undergo. Much care is necessary, however, to extend them upon slides, in consequence of their extreme fragility; and the best plan is to place the slip of glass under the skin whilst it is floating on water, and to lift the object out upon the slide.—Thin *sections* of Insects, Caterpillars, &c., which bring the internal parts into view in their normal relations, may be cut with the Microtome (§ 184), by first soaking the body (as suggested by Dr. Halifax) in thick gum-mucilage, which passes into its substance, and gives support to its tissues, and then enclosing it in a casing of melted paraffin, made to fit the cavity of the Section-instrument.

618. *Structure of the Integument.*—In treating of those separate parts of the organization of Insects which furnish the most interesting objects of Microscopic study, we may most appropriately commence with their Integument and its appendages (scales, hairs, &c.). The body and members are closely invested by a hardened skin, which acts as their skeleton, and affords points of attachment to the muscles by which their several parts are moved; being soft and flexible, however, at the joints. This skin is usually more or less horny in its texture, and is consolidated by the animal substance termed *Chitine*, as well as, in some cases, by a small quantity of mineral matter. It is in the *Coleoptera* that it attains its greatest development; the 'dermo-skeleton' of many Beetles being so firm as not only to confer upon them an extraordinary power of passive resistance, but also to enable them to put forth enormous force by the action of the powerful muscles which are attached to it. It may be stated as a general rule, that the outer layer of this dermo-skeleton is always cellular, taking the place of an epidermis; and that the cells are straight-sided and closely-fitted together, so as to be polygonal (usually hexagonal) in form. Of this we have a very good example in the *superficial* layers (Fig. 427, B) of the thin horny lamellæ or blades which constitute the terminal portion of the antenna of the *Cockchafer* (Fig. 426); this layer being easily distinguished from the intermediate portion (A) of the lamina by careful focussing. In many Beetles, the hexagonal areolation of the surface is distinguishable when the light is reflected from it at a particular angle, even when not discernible in transparent sections. The integument of the common *Red Ant* exhibits the hexagonal cellular arrangement very distinctly throughout; and the broad flat expansion of the leg of the *Crabro* ('sand-wasp') affords another beautiful example of a distinctly-cellular structure in the outer layer of the integument. The inner layer, however, which constitutes the principal part of the thickness of the horny casing of the Beetle-tribe, seldom

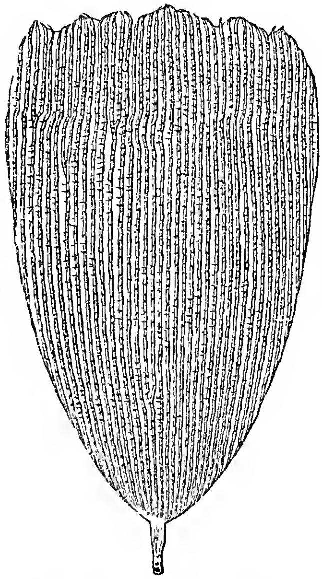
exhibits any distinct organization; though it may be usually separated into several lamellæ, which are sometimes traversed by tubes that pass into them from the inner surface, and extend towards the outer without reaching it.

619. *Tegumentary Appendages.*—The surface of Insects is often beset, and is sometimes completely covered, with *appendages*, having either the form of broad flat Scales, or that of Hairs more or less approaching the cylindrical shape, or some form intermediate between the two.—The *scaly* investment is most complete among the *Lepidoptera* (Butterfly and Moth tribe); the distinguishing character of the insects of this order being derived from the presence of a regular layer of scales upon each side of their large membranous wings. It is to the peculiar coloration of the scales that the various hues and figures are due, by which these wings are so commonly distinguished; all the scales of one patch (for example) being green, those of another red, and so on: for the subjacent membrane remains perfectly transparent and colourless, when the scales have been brushed-off from its surface. Each scale seems to be composed of two or more membranous lamellæ, often with an intervening deposit of pigment, on which, especially in *Lepidoptera*, their colour depends. Certain scales, however, especially in the Beetle-tribe, have a metallic lustre, and exhibit brilliant colours that vary with the mode in which the light glances from them; and this 'iridescence,' which is specially noteworthy in the scales of the *Curculio imperialis* ('diamond-beetle'), seems to be a purely optical effect, depending either (like the prismatic hues of a soap-bubble) on the extreme thinness of the membranous lamellæ, or (like those of 'mother-of-pearl,' § 565) on a lineation of surface produced by their corrugation. Each scale is furnished at one end with a sort of handle or 'pedicle' (Figs. 414, 415), by which it is fitted into a minute socket attached to the surface of the insect; and on the wings of *Lepidoptera* these sockets are so arranged that the scales lie in very regular rows, each row overlapping a portion of the next, so as to give to their surface, when sufficiently magnified, very much the appearance of being *tiled* like the roof of a house. Such an arrangement is said to be 'imbricated.' The forms of these scales are often very curious, and frequently differ a good deal on the several parts of the wings and of the body of the same individual; being usually more expanded on the former, and narrower and more hair-like on the latter. A peculiar type of scale, which has been distinguished by the designation *plumule*, is met with among the *Pieridæ*, one of the principal families of the Diurnal Lepidoptera. The 'plumules' are not flat, but cylindrical or bellows-shaped, and are hollow; they are attached to the wing by a bulb, at the end of a thin elastic peduncle that differs in length in different species, and proceeds from the broader, not from the narrower end of the scale; whilst the free extremity usually tapers off, and ends in a kind of brush, though sometimes it is broad and

has its edge fringed with minute filaments. These 'plumules,' which are peculiar to the males, are found on the upper surface of the wings, partly between and partly under the ordinary scales. They seem to be represented among the *Lycænidæ* by the 'battledore' scales to be presently described (§ 621).*

620. The peculiar markings exhibited by many of these Scales, very early attracted the attention of Opticians engaged in the application of Achromatism to the Microscope (§ 15); for, as the clearness and strength with which they could be shown, were found to depend on the degree to which the angular aperture of an Objective could be opened without sacrifice of perfect correction for spherical and chromatic aberration, such scales proved very serviceable as 'tests.' The Author can well remember the time when those of the *Morpho menelaus* (Fig. 414), the ordinary and 'battledore' scales of the *Polyommatus argus* (Figs. 415, 416), and the scales of the *Lepisma saccharina* (Fig. 417), which are now only used for testing Objectives of *low* or *medium* power (§ 159, I., II.), were the recognized tests for objectives of *high* power; while the exhibition of alternating light and dark bands on a *Podura*-scale was regarded as a first-rate performance. The resolution of these bands into the 'notes of admiration' (Plate II., fig. 2) now clearly shown by every good 'Student's' 1-4th, marked the next step in advance; and though the introduction of the Diatom-tests greatly promoted the enlargement of angular aperture, yet the Author has the authority of the ablest constructors of high-power Objectives in this country for stating, that they still regard the Podura-scale as the best test for *definition*, and consequently for that *combination* of qualities which is most required in Objectives to be used for Biological investigations of the greatest difficulty (§ 158, VI.).† As the real structure of this scale, of which the 'notes of admiration,' or the 'exclamation-markings' constitute the optical expression, has been a matter of much

FIG. 414.



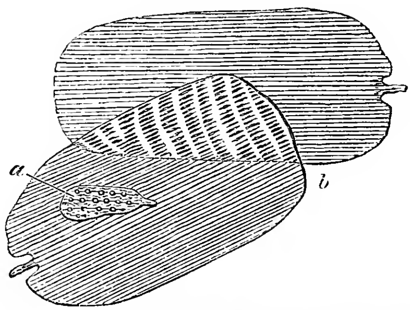
Scale of *Morpho Menelaus*.

* See Mr. Watson's Memoirs 'On the Scales of Battledore Butterflies,' in "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. ii., pp. 73, 314.

† The Author is assured that it is by no means an uncommon experience, on first putting together an Objective of wide aperture, to find it capable of resolving a difficult Diatom, whilst, when tested on a *Podura-scale*, it utterly fails, on account of its imperfect 'definition.'

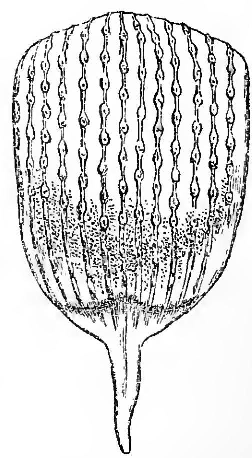
controversy, the question requires special consideration; and in discussing it, regard should be had to what we are taught by the study of the larger and more strongly marked forms of Insect-scales, as to *what scales are*.—That they are in reality flattened *cells*, analogous to the Epidermic cells of higher animals (§ 671), can scarcely be doubted by any Physiologist. Their ordinary flattening is simply the result of their drying-up; and the exception presented by the 'plumules' and 'battledore' scales (Fig. 416), which have the two surfaces separated by a considerable cavity, helps to prove the rule. It is perfectly clear in some of these, that the membranous wall of the cell is strengthened by longitudinal ribs, which diverge from the peduncle; as is particularly well seen in the plumules of two West African butterflies, *Pieris Agathina* and *Pieris Chloris*, in which the plumules are as much as 1-300th of an inch in length (large enough to be studied under the Binocular Microscope), and are of cylindrical form, save that they are drawn-in as if by a cord at about one-half or one-third of their length, the ribs curving inwards to this constriction.* In ordinary scales we find similar ribs, sometimes running parallel to each other, or nearly so (Figs. 414, 415), and occasionally connected by distinct cross-bars (Fig. 418), but sometimes diverging from the 'quill;' and where, as in *Lepisma* (Fig. 417), the ribs are parallel on one surface and divergent on the other, a very curious set of appearances is presented by their optical intersection, which throws considerable light on the meaning of the *Podura*-markings.

FIG. 415.



Scales of *Polyommatus argus* (Azure-blue);—*a*, battledore-scale; *b*, interference striæ.

FIG. 416.



Battledore Scale of *Polyommatus argus* (Azure-blue).

621. The easier test-scales are furnished by the order *Lepidoptera* (Butterflies and Moths); and among the most beautiful of these, both for colour and for regularity of marking, are those of the *Morpho Menelaus* (Fig. 414). These are of a rich blue tint, and exhibit strong longitudinal striæ, which seem due to ribbed elevations of one of the superficial layers. There is also an appearance

* See Watson, *loc. cit.*, p. 75.

of transverse striation, which cannot be seen at all with an inferior objective, but becomes very decided with a good objective of medium focus; and this is found, when submitted to the test of a high power and good illumination, to depend upon the presence of transverse thickenings or corrugations (Fig. 414), probably on the internal surface of one of the membranes.—The large scales of the *Polyommatus argus* ('azure-blue' butterfly) resemble those of the Menelaus in form and structure, but are more delicately marked (Fig. 415). Their ribs are more nearly parallel than those of the *Menelaus* scale, and do not show the same transverse striation. When one of these scales lies partly over another, the effect of the optical intersection of the two sets of ribs at an oblique angle is to produce a set of interrupted striations (*b*), very much resembling those of the *Podura*-scale. The same Butterfly furnishes smaller scales, which are commonly termed the 'battledore' scales, from their resemblance in form to that object (Fig. 415, *a*). These scales, which occur in the males of several genera of the family *Lycænidæ*, and present a considerable variety of shape,* are marked by narrow longitudinal ribbings, which at intervals seem to expand into rounded or oval elevations that give to the scales a dotted appearance (Fig. 416); at the lower part of the scale, however, these dots are wanting. Dr. Anthony describes and figures them as elevated bodies, somewhat resembling dumb-bells or shirt-studs, ranged along the ribs, and standing out from the general surface.† Other good observers, however, whilst recognizing the stud-like bodies described by Dr. Anthony, regard them as not projecting from the external surface of the scale, but as interposed between its two lamellæ;‡ and this view seems to the Author to be more conformable than Dr. Anthony's to general probability.

622. The more difficult 'test-scales' are furnished by little wingless insects ranked together by Latreille in the order *Thysanura*, but now separated by Sir John Lubbock,§ on account of important differences in internal structure, into the two groups *Collembola* and true *Thysanura*. Of the former of these, the *Lepismidæ* constitute the typical family; and the scale of the common *Lepisma saccharina*, or 'sugar-louse,'‖ very early attracted the attention of Microscopists on account of its beautiful shell-like sculpture. When viewed under a low magnifying power, it presents a beau-

* See Watson, *loc. cit.*

† 'The Markings on the Battledore Scales of some of the *Lepidoptera*,' in "Monthly Microsc. Journal," Vol. vii. (1872), pp. 1, 250.

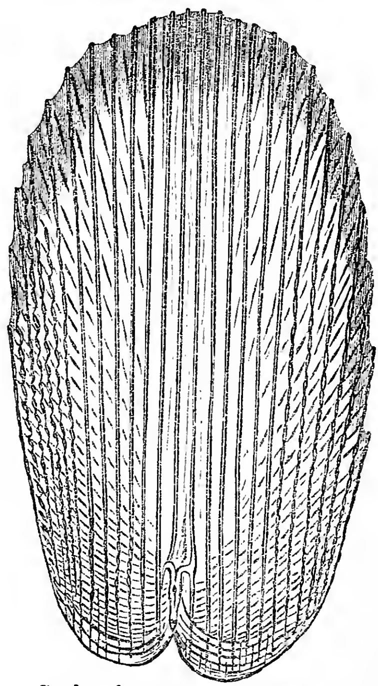
‡ See "Proceedings of the Microscopical Society," *op. cit.*, p. 278.

§ See his "Monograph of the *Collembola* and *Thysanura*," published by the Ray Society, 1872.

‖ This insect may be found in most old houses, frequenting damp warm cupboards, and especially such as contain sweets; it may be readily caught in a small pill-box, which should have a few pin-holes in the lid; and if a drop of chloroform be put over the holes, the inmate will soon become insensible, and may be then turned out upon a piece of clean paper, and some of its scales transferred to a slip of glass by simply pressing this gently on its body.

tiful 'watered silk' appearance, which, with higher amplification, is found to depend (as Mr. R. Beck first pointed out) * upon the intersection of two sets of striæ, representing the different structural arrangements of its two superficial membranes. One of its surfaces (since ascertained by Mr. Joseph Beck† to be the *under* or attached surface of the scale) is raised, either by corrugation or thickening, into a series of strongly-marked longitudinal ribs, which run nearly *parallel* from one end of the scale to the other, and are particularly distinct at its margins and at its free extremity; whilst the other surface (the free or *outer*, according to Mr. J. Beck) presents a set of less definite corrugations, *radiating* from the pedicle, where they are strongest, towards the sides and free extremity of the scale, and therefore crossing the parallel ribs at angles more or less acute (Fig. 417). It was further pointed out by Mr. R. Beck, that the intersection of these two sets of corrugations at different angles produces most curious effects upon the appearances which optically represent them. For where the diverging ribs cross the longitudinal ribs very obliquely, as they do near the free extremity of the scale, the longitudinal ribs seem broken up into a series of 'exclamation-markings,' like those of the Podura; but where the crossing is transverse or nearly so, as at the sides of the scale, an appearance is presented as of successions of large bright beads. The conclusion drawn by the Messrs. Beck, that these interrupted appearances are "produced by two sets of uninterrupted lines on different surfaces," has been confirmed by the careful investigations of Mr. Morehouse.‡ The minute beaded structure observed by Dr. Royston-Pigott§ alike in the ribs and in the intervening spaces, may now be pretty certainly regarded as an optical effect of diffraction (§ 156). In the scale of a type nearly allied to Lepisma, the *Machilis polypoda*, the very distinct ribbing (Fig. 418) is produced by the corrugation of the under membranous lamina

FIG. 417.



Scale of *Lepisma saccharina*.

* "The Achromatic Microscope," p. 50.

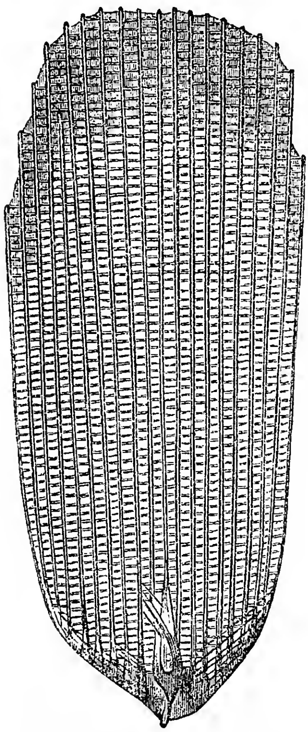
† See his Appendix to Sir John Lubbock's "Monograph."

‡ "Monthly Microsc. Journal," Vol. xi. (1874), p. 13, and Vol. xviii. (1877), p. 31.

§ "Monthly Microsc. Journal," Vol. ix. (1873), p. 63.

alone; the upper or exposed lamina being smooth, with the exception of slight undulations near the pedicle; and the cross-markings being due to structure between the superposed membranes, probably a deposit on the interior surface of one or both of them.*

Fig. 418.



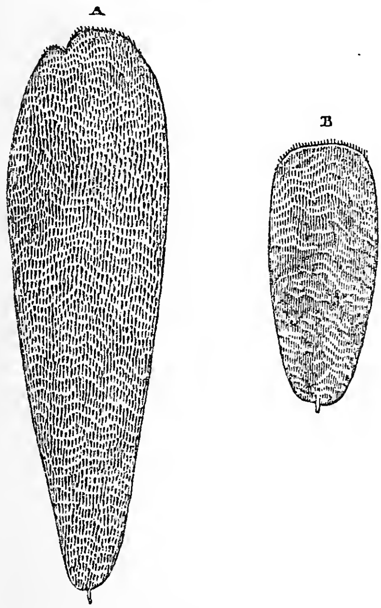
Scale of *Machilis polypoda.*

623. Although the *Poduridæ* and *Lepismidæ* now rank as distinct Families, yet they approximate sufficiently in general organization, as well as in habits, to justify the expectation that their scales would be framed upon the same plan. The *Poduridæ* are found amidst the sawdust of wine-cellars, in garden tool-houses, or near decaying wood; and derive their popular name of 'spring-tails' from the possession by many of them of a curious caudal appendage, by which they can leap like fleas. This is particularly well developed in the species now designated *Lepidocyrtus curvicollis,* which furnishes what are ordinarily known as 'Podura'-scales. "When full-grown and unrubbed," says Sir John Lubbock, "this species is very beautiful, and reflects the most gorgeous metallic tints." Its scales are of different sizes and of different degrees of strength of marking (Fig. 419, A, B), and are therefore by no means of uniform value as tests. The general appearance of their surface, under a power not sufficient to resolve their markings, is that of watered silk,—light and dark bands passing across it with wavy irregularity; but a well-corrected Objective of very moderate angular aperture now suffices to resolve every dark band into a row of distinct 'exclamation marks' (Plate II., fig. 2). If, however, they are illuminated by oblique light from above (the scales being placed under the objective without any cover, so as to avoid the loss of light by reflection from its surface), the appearances presented are those shown in fig. 4 when the markings are at right angles to the direction of the light, and in fig. 5 when they lie in the same direction as the light with their narrow ends pointing to it. When this last direction is reversed, the light from the points is so slight, that the scales appear to have lost their markings altogether. If moisture should insinuate itself between the scale and the covering-glass, the markings disappear entirely, as shown in fig. 3; and this is true also of the scale of *Lepisma.* A certain

* See Mr. Joseph Beck, in Sir J. Lubbock's "Monograph," p. 255.

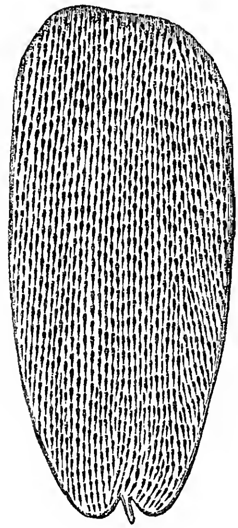
longitudinal continuity may be traced between the 'exclamation-marks' in the ordinary test-scale; but this is much more apparent in other scales from the same species (Fig. 420), as well as in the scales of various allied types, which were carefully studied by the

FIG. 419.



Test-scales of *Lepidocyrtus curvicollis*:—A, large strongly-marked scale; B, small scale, more faintly marked.

FIG. 420.



Ordinary scale of *Lepidocyrtus curvicollis*

late Mr. R. Beck.* In certain other types, indeed, the scales have very distinct longitudinal parallel ribs, sometimes with regularly disposed cross-bars; these ribs, being confined to one surface only (that which is in contact with the body), are not subject to any such interference with their optical continuity as has been shown to occur in *Lepisma;* but more or less distinct indications of radiating corrugations often present themselves. The appearance of the interrupted 'exclamation-marks' Mr. J. Beck (*op. cit.*, p. 254) considers to be due "to irregular corrugations of the outer surface of the under membrane, to slight undulations on the outer surface of the upper membrane, and to structure between the superposed membranes." It has been recently stated by Mr. Joseph Beck, that the scales of a Lepidopterous insect belonging to the genus *Mormo*, which under a low power present the watered-silk appear-

* "Trans. of Microsc. Soc.," N.S., Vol. x. (1862), p. 83. See also Mr. Joseph Beck, in the Appendix to Sir John Lubbock's "Monograph," and in "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. iv., p. 253.

ance seen in the Podura-scale, under a 1-5th show the 'exclamation' markings, whilst under a 1-10th they exhibit distinct ribs from pedicle to apex; thus showing in one scale how the appearances run from one into the other.* On the other hand, we are assured by Dr. Royston-Pigott, not only that what a lens most perfectly corrected for spherical aberration ought to show, is a minute beaded structure, alike in the 'exclamation-markings' and in the spaces between them; but that the markings whose perfect definition had been previously considered the aim of all constructors of high-power Objectives, are altogether illusory, these markings representing nothing else than the manner in which the *rouleaux* of beads lie with reference to one another.† The Author has fully satisfied himself by his own study, under an oil-immersion 1-25th of Messrs. Powell and Lealand, of a *Podura*-scale illuminated by the 'immersion paraboloid' (which gives a view of it entirely different than any that can be obtained either by transmitted or reflected light), that the 'exclamation-markings' are—as maintained by the Messrs. Beck—the optical expression of a corrugated or ribbed arrangement of the lower membrane of the scale, slightly modified by the internal structure of the upper membrane, and probably also (as confirmed by Mr. Wenham) by a structure interposed between the two membranes.‡ And this conclusion is borne out, in opposition to the doctrine of Dr. Royston Pigott, by two unrivalled Photographs taken of the *Podura*-scale by Col. Dr. Woodward. One of these, taken with a magnifying power of 3200 diameters, central monochromatic light, immersion 1-16th, and amplifier, shows the 'exclamation-marks' better than any photographic representation previously obtained; and it is clear that Dr. Woodward regards this as the *truest* view. "Immediately afterwards," he says, "with the same optical combination and magnifying power, without any change in the cover-correction, by simply rendering the illuminating pencil oblique, and slightly withdrawing the objective from its first focal position, I obtained a negative which displays the 'bead-like' or varicose appearance of the ribbing more satisfactorily than I had previously been able to do." § The beaded appearance shown in this photograph, a copy of a portion of which is given in Fig. 421, corresponds so entirely with that which Dr. Woodward afterwards found to be producible in the scale of the Gnat by a like alteration in the illumination (§ 156), that the Author feels fully justified in adhering to his original opinion that it does not represent real structure, but is an optical effect of diffraction.||

* "Journ. Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. ii. (1879), p. 810.

† See his paper 'On High Power Definition,' in "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. ii. (1869), p. 295, and several subsequent papers.

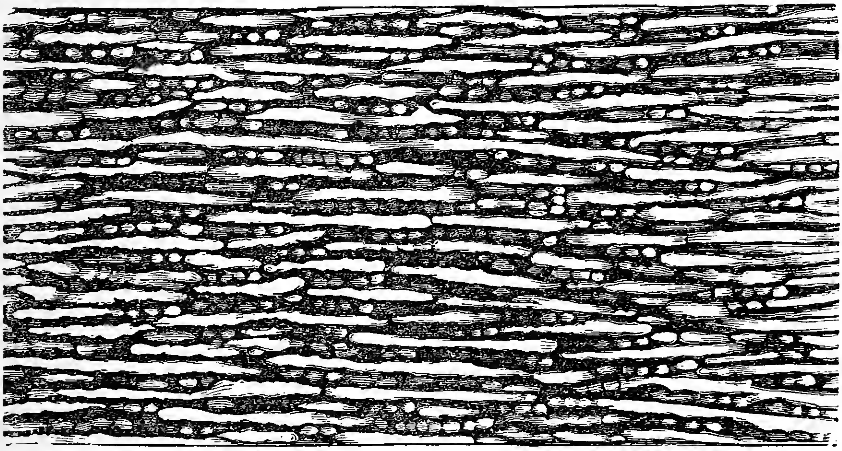
‡ "Monthly Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," Vol. xi. (1874), p. 75.

§ "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. v., p. 246.

|| The successive Volumes of the "Monthly Microscopical Journal," from the 2nd (in which Dr. Royston-Pigott's views were first promulgated) to the present date, teem with Papers on this subject from Mr. Jos. Beck, Mr. McIntire,

624. The *Hairs* of many Insects, and still more of their larvæ, are very interesting objects for the microscope, on account of their branched or tufted conformation; this being particularly remarkable in those with which the common hairy Caterpillars are so

Fig. 421.



Portion of a *Podura-scale*, from a Photograph by Col. Dr. Woodward.

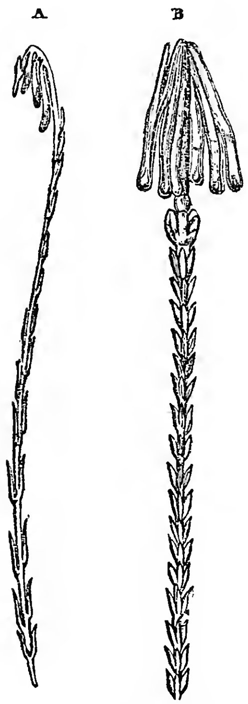
abundantly beset. Some of these afford very good tests for the perfect correction of Objectives. Thus the hair of the *Bee* is pretty sure to exhibit strong prismatic colours, if the Chromatic aberration should not have been exactly neutralized; and that of the larva of a *Dermestes* (commonly but erroneously termed the 'bacon-beetle') was once thought a very good test of defining power, and is still useful for this purpose. It has a cylindrical shaft (Fig. 422, B) with closely-set whorls of spiny protuberances, four or five in each whorl; the highest of these whorls is composed of mere knobby spines: and the hair is surmounted by a curious circle of six or seven large filaments, attached by their pointed ends to its shaft, whilst at their free extremities they dilate into knobs. An approach to this structure is seen in the hairs of certain *Myriapods* (centipedes, gally-worms, &c.), of which an example is shown in Fig. 422, A; and some minute forms of this class are most beautiful objects under the Binocular Microscope, on account of the remarkable structure and regular arrangement of their hairs.

625. In examining the Integument of Insects, and its appendages,

Dr. Maddox, Dr. Royston-Pigott, Mr. Wenham, and Col. Dr. Woodward; which, with a Paper by Mr. Slack in "The Student," Vol. v., p. 49, and a Paper by Mr. Morehouse, giving the results of his examination of the scales of *Lepisma* and *Podura* as opaque objects, under very high immersion objectives, with Beck's Vertical Illuminator ("Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. xviii., 1877, p. 31), should be consulted by such as wish to follow out the inquiry.

parts of the surface may be viewed either by reflected or transmitted light, according to their degree of transparence and the nature of their covering. The Beetle and Butterfly tribes furnish the greater number of the specimens suitable to be viewed as *opaque* objects: and nothing is easier than to mount portions of the *elytra* of the former (which are usually the most showy parts of their bodies), or of the wings of the latter, in the manner described in § 175. The tribe of *Curculionidæ,* in which the surface of the body is beset with scales having the most varied and lustrous hues, is distinguished among Coleoptera for the brilliancy of the objects it affords; the most remarkable in this respect being the well-known *Curculio imperialis,* or 'diamond-beetle' of South America, parts of whose elytra, when properly illuminated and looked-at with a low power, show like clusters of jewels flashing against a dark velvet ground. In many of the British Curculionidæ, which are smaller and far less brilliant, the scales lie at the bottom of little depressions of the surface; and if the elytra of the 'diamond-beetle' be carefully examined, it will be found that each of the clusters of scales which are arranged upon it in rows, seems to rise out of a deep pit which sinks-in by its side. The transition from Scales to Hairs is extremely well seen by comparing the different parts of the surface of the diamond-beetle with each other.

Fig. 422.



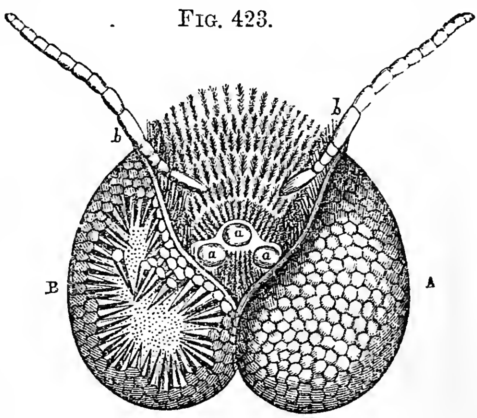
A, Hair of *Myriapod.*
B, Hair of *Dermestes.*

The beauty and brilliancy of many objects of this kind are increased by mounting them in cells in Canada balsam, even though they are to be viewed with reflected light; other objects, however, are rendered less attractive by this treatment; and in order to ascertain whether it is likely to improve or to deteriorate the specimen, it is a good plan first to test some other portion of the body having scales of the same kind, by touching it with turpentine, and then to mount the part selected as an object, either in balsam or dry, according as the turpentine increases or diminishes the brilliancy of the scales on the spot to which it was applied. Portions of the wings of Lepidoptera are best mounted as opaque objects, without any other preparation than gumming them flat down to the disk of the wooden slide (§ 175); care being taken to avoid disturbing the arrangement of the scales, and to keep the objects, when mounted, as secluded as possible from dust. In selecting such portions, it is well to choose those which have the brightest and

the most contrasted colours, exotic butterflies being in this respect usually preferable to British; and before attaching them to their slides, care should be taken to ascertain in what position, with the arrangement of light ordinarily used, they are seen to the best advantage, and to fix them there accordingly.—Whenever portions of the integument of Insects are to be viewed as *transparent* objects, for the display of their intimate structure, they should be mounted in Canada balsam, after soaking for some time in turpentine; since this substance has a peculiar effect in increasing their translucence. Not only the horny casings of perfect Insects of various orders, but also those of their pupæ, are worthy of this kind of study; and objects of great beauty (such as the chrysalis case of the Emperor-moth), as well as of scientific interest, are sure to reward such as may prosecute it with any assiduity. Further information may often be gained by softening such parts in potash, and viewing them in fluid.—The *scales* of the wings of Lepidoptera, &c., are best transferred to the slide, by simply pressing a portion of the wing either upon the slip of glass or upon the cover; if none should adhere, the glass may first be gently breathed-on. Some of them are best seen when examined 'dry,' whilst others are more clear when mounted in fluid; and for the determination of their exact structure, it is well to have recourse to both these methods. Hairs, on the other hand, are best mounted in Balsam.

626. *Parts of the Head.*—The *eyes* of Insects, situated upon the upper and outer part of the head, are usually very conspicuous organs, and are frequently so large as to touch each other in front (Fig. 423). We find in their structure a remarkable example of that multiplication of similar parts, which seems to be the predominating 'idea' in the conformation of Articulated animals; for each of the large protuberant bodies which we designate as *an eye*, is really a 'compound' eye, made up of many hundred or even many thousand minute conical *ocellites* (B). Approaches to this structure are seen in Annelida and Entomostraca; but the number of 'ocellites' thus grouped-together is usually small. In the higher Crustacea, however, the 'ocellites' are very numerous; and their compound eyes are constructed upon the same general plan as those of Insects, though their shape and position are often very peculiar (Fig. 491). The

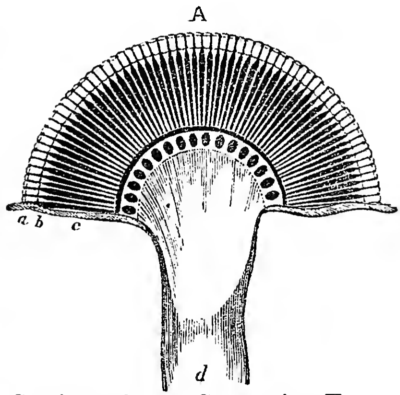
FIG. 423.



Head and Compound Eyes of the *Bee*, showing the ocellites *in situ* on one side (A), and displaced on the other (B); *a, a, a*, stemmata, *b, b*, antennæ.

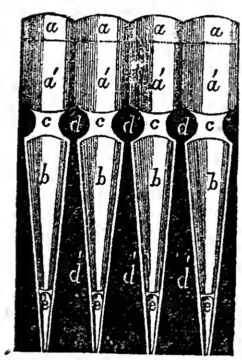
individual ocellites are at once recognized, when the 'compound eyes' are examined under even a low magnifying power, by the 'facetted' appearance of the surface (Fig. 423, A), which is marked-out by very regular divisions either into hexagons or into squares: each facet is the 'corneule' of a separate ocellite, and has a convexity of its own; hence by counting the facets, we can ascertain the number of ocellites in each 'compound eye.' In the two eyes of the common *Fly*, there are as many as 4,000; in those of the *Cabbage-Butterfly* there are about 17,000; in the *Dragon-fly*, 24,000; and in the *Mordella Beetle*, 25,000. Behind each 'corneule' is a layer of dark pigment, which takes the place and serves the purpose of the 'iris' in the eyes of Vertebrate animals; and this is perforated by a central aperture or 'pupil,' through which the rays of light that have traversed the corneule gain access to the interior of the eye. The further structure of these bodies is best examined by vertical sections (Fig. 424); and these show that the shape of each ocellite (*b*) is conical, or rather pyramidal, the corneule forming its base (*a*), whilst its apex abuts upon the extremity of a fibre (*c*) proceeding from the termination of the optic nerve (*d*). The details of the structure of each ocellite are shown in Fig. 425; in which it is shown that each corneule is a double-convex lens, made up by the junction of two plano-convex lenses, *a a* and *a′ a′*, which have been found by Dr. Hicks to possess different refractive powers; by this arrangement (it seems probable) the aberrations are diminished, as they are by the combination of 'humours' in the Human eye. That each 'corneule' acts as a distinct lens, may be shown by detaching the entire assemblage by maceration, and then drying it (flattened out) upon a slip of glass; for when this is placed under the Microscope, if the point of a knife, scissors, or any similar object,

FIG. 424.



Section of the Composite Eye of *Melolontha vulgaris* (Cockchafer):—*a*, facets of the cornea; *b*, transparent pyramids surrounded with pigment; *c*, fibres of the optic nerve; *d*, trunk of the optic nerve.

FIG. 425.



Minute structure of the Eye of the *Bee*:—*a a*, anterior lenses of corneule; *a′ a′*, its posterior lenses; *c c*, pupillary apertures, separated by intervening pigment *d d*; *b b*, pyramids separated by pigment *d′ d′*, and abutting on *e e*, bulbous extremities of nerve-fibres.

be interposed between the mirror and the stage, the image of this point will be seen, by a proper adjustment of the focus of the microscope, in every one of the lenses. The focus of each 'corneule' has been ascertained by experiment to be equivalent to the length of the pyramid behind it; so that the image which it produces will fall upon the extremity of the filament of the optic nerve which passes to the latter. The pyramids (*b*, *b*) consist of a transparent substance, which may be considered as representing the 'vitreous humour;' and they are separated from each other by a layer of dark pigment *d' d'*, which closes-in at *d d* between their bases and the corneules, leaving a set of pupillary apertures *c*, *c*, for the entrance of the rays which pass to them from the 'corneules.' After traversing these pyramids, the rays reach the bulbous extremities *e*, *e* of the fibres of the optic nerve, which are surrounded, like the pyramid, by pigmentary substance. Thus the rays which have passed through the several 'corneules' are prevented from mixing with each other; and no rays, save those which pass in the axes of the pyramids, can reach the fibres of the optic nerve. Hence, it is evident, that, as no two ocellites on the same side (Fig. 424) have exactly the same axis, no two can receive their rays from the same point of an object; and thus, as each compound eye is immovably fixed upon the head, the combined action of the entire aggregate will probably only afford but a single image, resembling that which *we* obtain by means of our single eyes.—Although the foregoing may be considered as the typical structure of the Eyes of Insects, yet there are various departures from it (most of them slight) in the different members of the Class. Thus in some cases the posterior surface of each 'corneule' is concave; and a space is left between it and the iris-like diaphragm, which seems to be occupied by a watery fluid or 'aqueous humour;' in other instances again, this space is occupied by a double-convex body, which seems to represent the 'crystalline-lens;' and this body is sometimes found behind the iris, the number of ocellites being reduced, and each one being larger, so that the cluster presents more resemblance to that of Spiders, &c.—Besides their 'compound' eyes, Insects usually possess a small number of 'simple' eyes (termed *ocelli* or *stemmata*) seated upon the top of the head (Fig. 423, *a*, *a*, *a*). Each of these consists of a single very convex corneule; to the back of which proceeds a bundle of rods that are in connection with fibrils of the optic nerve. Such ocelli are the only visual organs of the Larvæ of insects that undergo complete metamorphosis; the 'compound' eyes being only developed towards the end of the Pupa-stage.

627. Various modes of preparing and mounting the Eyes of Insects may be adopted, according to the manner wherein they are to be viewed. For the observation of their external facetted surface by reflected light, it is better to lay down the entire head,

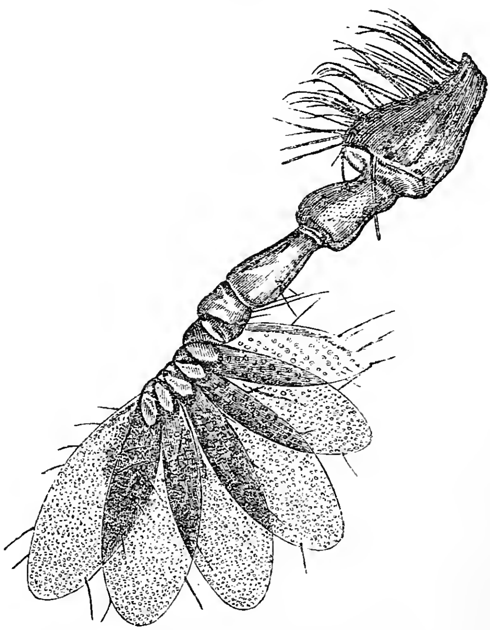
* For minute details as to the structure of the Eyes of Insects, see the admirable Memoir by Mr. Lowne, in "Phil. Trans.," 1878, p. 577.

so as to present a front-face or a side-face, according to the position of the eyes; the former giving a view of *both* eyes, when they approach each other so as nearly or quite to meet (as in Fig. 423); whilst the latter will best display *one*, when the eyes are situated more at the sides of the head. For the minuter examination of the 'corneules,' however, these must be separated from the hemispheroidal mass whose exterior they form, by prolonged maceration; and the pigment must be carefully washed away, by means of a fine camel-hair brush, from the inner or posterior surface. In flattening them out upon the glass-slide, one of two things must necessarily happen; either the margin must tear when the central portion is pressed-down to a level; or, the margin remaining entire, the central portion must be thrown into plaits, so that its corneules overlap one another. As the latter condition interferes with the examination of the structure much more than the former does, it should be avoided by making a number of slits in the margin of the convex membrane before it is flattened-out. Vertical sections, adapted to demonstrate the structure of the ocelli and their relations to the optic nerve, can be only made when the insect is fresh, or has been preserved in strong spirit. Mr. Lowne (*loc. cit.*) recommends that the head should be hardened in a 2 per cent. solution of chromic acid, and then imbedded in cacao-butter; the sections must be cut *very* thin, and should be mounted in Canada balsam. The following are some of the Insects whose eyes are best adapted for Microscopic preparations:—*Coleoptera*, Cicindela, Dytiscus, Melolontha (Cockchafer), Lucanus (Stag-beetle);—*Orthoptera*, Acheta (House and Field Crickets), Locusta;—*Hemiptera*, Notonecta (Boat-fly);—*Neuroptera*, Libellula (Dragon-fly), Agrion;—*Hymenoptera*, Vespidæ (Wasps) and Apidæ (Bees) of all kinds;—*Lepidoptera*, Vanessa (various species of Butterflies), Sphinx ligustri (Privet hawk-moth), Bombyx (Silkworm moth, and its allies);—*Diptera*, Tabanus (Gad-fly), Asilus, Eristalis (Drone-fly), Tipula (Crane-fly), Musca (House-fly), and many others.

628. The *Antennæ*, which are the two jointed appendages arising from the upper part of the head of Insects (Fig. 423, *b b*), present a most wonderful variety of conformation in the several tribes of Insects; often differing considerably in the several species of one genus, and even in the two sexes of the same species. Hence the characters which they afford are extremely useful in classification; especially since their structure must almost necessarily be in some way related to the habits and general economy of the creatures to which they belong, although our imperfect acquaintance with their function may prevent us from clearly discerning this relation. Thus among the Coleoptera we find one large family, including the Glow-worm, Fire-fly, Skip-jack, &c., distinguished by the toothed or serrated form of the antennæ, and hence called *Serricornes;* in another, of which the Burying-beetle is the type, the antennæ are terminated by a club-shaped enlargement, so that

these beetles are termed *Clavicornes;* in another, again, of which the *Hydrophilus* or large Water-beetle is an example, the antennæ are never longer and are commonly shorter than one of the pairs of palpi, whence the name of *Palpicornes* is given to this group; in the very large family that includes the *Lucani* or Stag-beetles with the *Scarabæi,* of which the Cockchafer is the commonest example, the antennæ terminate in a set of leaf-like appendages, which are sometimes arranged like a fan or the leaves of an open book (Fig. 426), are sometimes parallel to each other like the teeth of a comb, and sometimes fold one over the other, thence giving the name *Lamellicornes;* whilst another large family is distinguished by the appellation *Longicornes*, from the great length of the antennæ, which are at least as long as the body, and often longer. Among the Lepidoptera, again, the conformation of the antennæ frequently enables us at once to distinguish the group to which any specimen belongs. As every treatise on Entomology contains figures and descriptions of the principal types of conformation of these organs, there is no occasion here to dwell upon them longer than to specify such as are most interesting to the Microscopist:—*Coleoptera*, Brachinus, Calathus, Harpalus, Dytiscus, Staphylinus, Philonthus, Elater, Lampyris, Silpha, Hydrophilus, Aphodius, Melolontha, Cetonia, Curculio; — *Orthoptera*, Forficula (Earwig), Blatta (Cockroach); — *Lepidoptera*, Sphinges (Hawk-moths), and Nocturna (Moths) of various kinds, the large 'plumed' antennæ of the latter being peculiarly beautiful objects under a low magnifying power;— *Diptera*, Culicidæ (Gnats of various kinds), Tipulidæ (Crane-flies and Midges), Tabanus, Eristalis, and Muscidæ (Flies of various kinds). All the larger antennæ, when not mounted 'dry' as opaque objects, should be put up in Balsam, after being soaked for some time in turpentine; but the small feathery antennæ of Gnats and Midges are so liable to distortion when thus mounted, that it is better to set them up in fluid, the head with its pair of antennæ being thus preserved

FIG. 426.

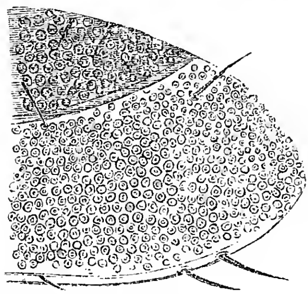


Antenna of *Melolontha* (Cockchafer).

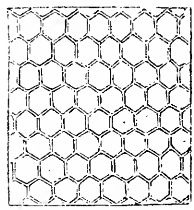
together when not too large.—A curious set of organs has been recently discovered in the antennæ of many Insects, which have been supposed to constitute collectively an apparatus for Hearing. Each consists of a cavity hollowed out in the horny integument, sometimes nearly spherical, sometimes flask-shaped, and sometimes prolonged into numerous extensions formed by the folding of its lining membrane; the mouth of the cavity seems to be normally closed-in by a continuation of this membrane, though its presence cannot always be satisfactorily determined; whilst to its deepest part a nerve-fibre may be traced. The expanded lamellæ of the antennæ of *Melolontha* present a great display of these cavities, which are indicated in Fig. 427, A, by the small circles that beset almost their entire area; their form, which is very peculiar, can here be only made out by vertical sections; but in many of the smaller antennæ, such as those of the Bee, the cavities can be seen sideways without any other trouble than that of bleaching the specimen to render it more transparent.*

Fig. 427.

A



B



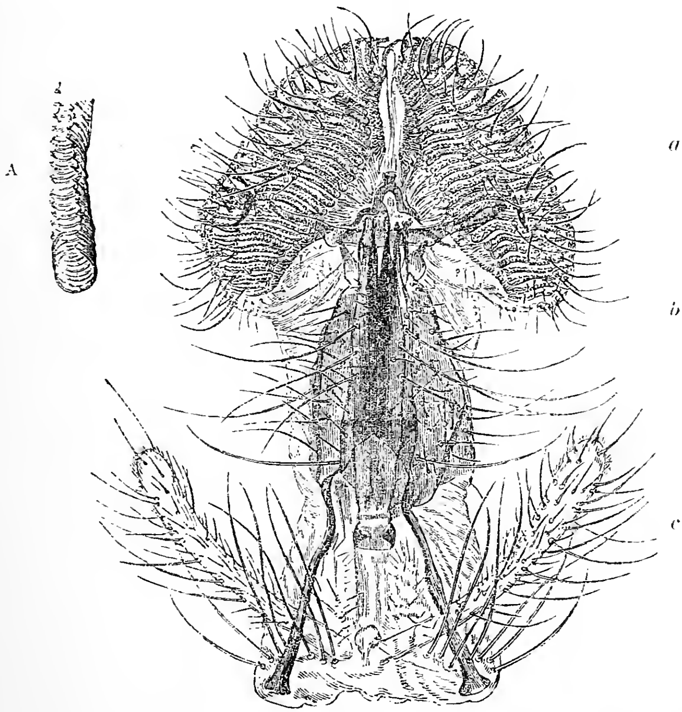
Minute structure of leaf-like expansions of Antenna of *Melolontha*:—A, their internal layer; B, their superficial layer.

629. The next point in the organization of Insects to which the attention of the Microscopist may be directed, is the structure of the *mouth*. Here, again, we find almost infinite varieties in the details of conformation; but these may be for the most part reduced to a small number of types or plans, which are characteristic of the different orders of Insects. It is among the *Coleoptera*, or Beetles, that we find the several parts of which the mouth is composed, in their most distinct form; for although some of these parts are much

* See the Memoir of Dr. Hicks 'On a new Structure in the Antennæ of Insects,' in "Trans. of Linn. Soc.," Vol. xxii., p. 147; and his 'Further Remarks,' at p. 383 of the same volume. See also the Memoir of M. Lespès, 'Sur l'Appareil Auditif des Insectes,' in "Ann. des Sci. Nat.," Sér. 4, Zool., Tom. ix., p. 258; and that of M. Claparède, 'Sur les prétendus Organes Auditifs des Coléoptères lamellicornes et autres Insectes,' in "Ann. des. Sci. Nat.," Sér. 4, Zool., Tom. x., p. 236. Dr. Hicks lays great stress on the 'bleaching process,' as essential to success in this investigation; and he gives the following directions for performing it:—Take of Chlorate of Potass a drachm, and of Water a drachm and a half; mix these in a small wide bottle containing about an ounce; wait five minutes, and then add about a drachm and a half of strong Hydrochloric Acid. Chlorine is thus slowly developed; and the mixture will retain its bleaching power for some time.

more highly developed in other Insects, other parts may be so much altered or so little developed as to be scarcely recognizable. The Coleoptera present the typical conformation of the *mandibulate* mouth, which is adapted for the prehension and division of solid substances; and this consists of the following parts:—1, a pair of jaws, termed *mandibles*, frequently furnished with powerful teeth, opening *laterally* on either side of the mouth, and serving as the chief instruments of manducation; 2, a second pair of jaws, termed *maxillæ*, smaller and weaker than the preceding, beneath which they are placed, and serving to hold the food, and to convey it to the back of the mouth; 3, an upper lip, or *labrum;* 4, a lower lip or *labium;* 5, one or two pairs of small jointed appendages termed *palpi*, attached to the maxillæ, and hence called *maxillary palpi;*

Fig. 428.

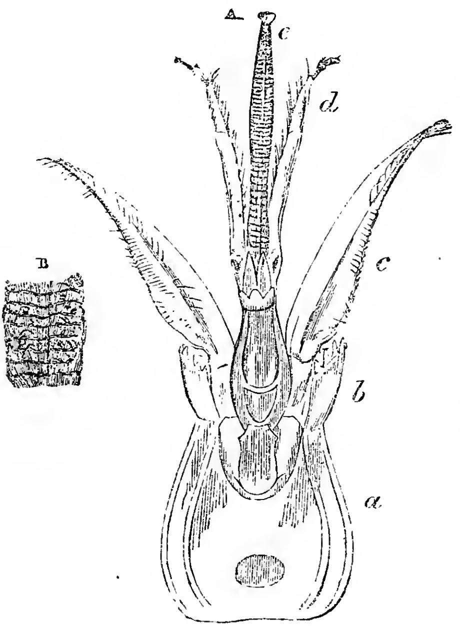


Tongue of common *Fly:*—*a*, lobes of ligula; *b*, portion enclosing the lancets, formed by the metamorphosis of the maxillæ; *c*, maxillary palpi:—A, portion of one of the pseudo-tracheæ enlarged.

6, a pair of *labial palpi*. The labium is often composed of several distinct parts; its basal portion being distinguished as the *mentum* or chin, and its anterior portion being sometimes considerably prolonged forwards, so as to form an organ which is properly designated the *ligula*, but which is more commonly known as the 'tongue,'

though not really entitled to that designation, the real *tongue* being a soft and projecting organ which forms the floor of the mouth, and which is only found as a distinct part in a comparatively small number of Insects, as the Cricket.—This *ligula* is extremely developed in the *Fly* kind, in which it forms the chief part of what is commonly called the 'proboscis' (Fig. 428);* and it also forms the 'tongue' of the *Bee* and its allies (Fig. 429). The ligula of the common Fly presents a curious modification of the ordinary tracheal structure (§ 634), the purpose of which is not apparent; for instead of its tracheæ being kept pervious, after the usual fashion, by the winding of a continuous spiral fibre through their interior, the fibre is broken into rings, and these rings do not surround the whole tube, but are terminated by a set of arches that pass from one to another (Fig. 428, A).†—In the *Diptera* or two-winged Flies generally, the labrum, maxillæ, mandibles, and the internal tongue (where it exists) are converted into delicate lancet-shaped organs termed *setæ*, which, when closed-together, are received into a hollow on the upper side of the labium (Fig. 428, *b*),

Fig. 429.



A, Parts of the Mouth of *Apis mellifica* (Honey-bee):—*a*, mentum; *b*, mandibles; *c*, maxillæ; *d*, labial palpi; *e*, ligula, or prolonged labium, commonly termed the tongue:—B, portion of the surface of the ligula, more highly magnified.

* The representation given in the figure is taken from one of the ordinary preparations of the Fly's proboscis, which is made by slitting it open, flattening it out, and mounting it in Balsam. For representations of the true relative positions of the different parts of this wonderful organ, and for minute descriptions of them, the reader is referred to Mr. Suffolk's Memoir 'On the Proboscis of the Blow-fly,' in "Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. i., p. 331; and to Mr. Lowne's Treatise on "The Anatomy and Physiology of the Blow-fly," p. 41.

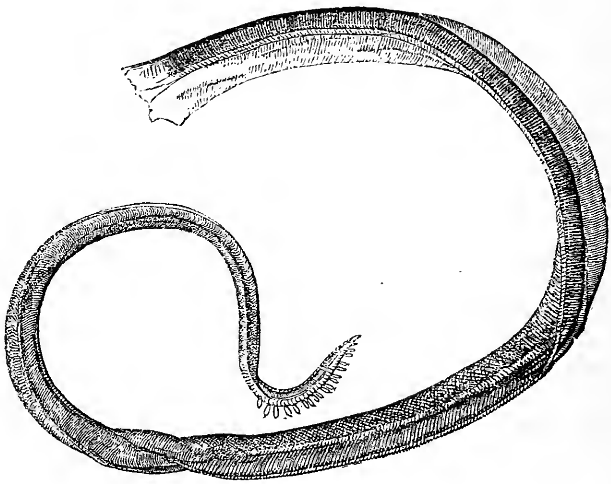
† According to Dr. Anthony ("Monthly Microsc. Journ.," Vol. xi., p. 242), these 'pseudo-tracheæ' are suctorial organs, which can take-in liquid alike at their extremities and through the whole length of the fissure caused by the interruption of the rings; the edges of this fissure being formed by the alternating series of 'ear-like appendages,' connected with the terminal 'arches,' the closing-together of which converts the pseudo-trachea into a complete tube. Dr. A. considers each of these ear-like appendages to be a minute sucker, "either for the adhesion of the fleshy tongue, or for the imbibition of fluids, or perhaps for both purposes."—The point is well worthy of further investigation.

but which are capable of being used to make punctures in the skin of Animals or the epidermis of Plants, whence the juices may be drawn forth by the proboscis. Frequently, however, two or more of these organs may be wanting, so that their number is reduced from six, to four, three, or two.—In the *Hymenoptera* (Bee and Wasp tribe), the labrum and the mandibles (Fig. 429, *b*) much resemble those of Mandibulate Insects, and are used for corresponding purposes; the maxillæ (*c*) are greatly elongated, and form, when closed, a tubular sheath for the *Ligula* or 'tongue,' through which the honey is drawn up; the labial palpi (*d*) also are greatly developed, and fold together, like the maxillæ, so as to form an inner sheath for the 'tongue;' while the 'ligula' itself (*e*) is a long tapering muscular organ, marked by an immense number of short annular divisions, and densely covered over its own length with long hairs (B). It is not tubular, as some have stated, but is solid; when actively employed in taking food, it is extended to a great distance beyond the other parts of the mouth; but when at rest, it is closely packed-up and concealed between the maxillæ. "The manner," says Mr. Newport, "in which the honey is obtained when the organ is plunged into it at the bottom of a flower, is by 'lapping,' or a constant succession of short and quick extensions and contractions of the organ, which occasion the fluid to accumulate upon it and to ascend along its upper surface, until it reaches the orifice of the tube formed by the approximation of the maxillæ above, and of the labial palpi and this part of the ligula below."

630. By the plan of conformation just described, we are led to that which prevails among the *Lepidoptera* or Butterfly tribe, and which, being pre-eminently adapted for suction, is termed the *haustellate* mouth. In these Insects, the labrum and mandibles are reduced to three minute triangular plates; whilst the maxillæ are immensely elongated, and are united together along the median line to form the *haustellium* or true 'proboscis,' which contains a tube formed by the junction of the two grooves that are channelled out along their mutually applied surfaces, and which serves to pump-up the juices of deep cup-shaped flowers, into which the size of their wings prevents these insects from entering. The length of this haustellium varies greatly: thus in such Lepidoptera as take no food in their perfect state, it is a very insignificant organ; in some of the white Hawk-moths, which hover over blossoms without alighting, it is nearly two inches in length; and in most Butterflies and Moths it is about as long as the body itself. This 'haustellium,' which, when not in use, is coiled-up in a spiral beneath the mouth, is an extremely beautiful Microscopic object, owing to the peculiar banded arrangement it exhibits (Fig. 430), which is probably due to the disposition of its muscles. In many instances, the two halves may be seen to be locked together by a set of hooked teeth, which are inserted into little depressions between the teeth of the opposite side. Each half, moreover, may be ascertained to

contain a trachea or air-tube (§ 634); and it is probable, from the observations of Mr. Newport, that the sucking-up of the juices of a flower through the proboscis (which is accomplished with great rapidity) is effected by the agency of the respiratory apparatus. The proboscis of many Butterflies is furnished, for some distance from its extremity, with a double row of small projecting barrel-shaped bodies (shown in Fig. 430), which are surmised by Mr.

Fig. 430.



Haustellium (proboscis) of *Vanessa*.

Newport (whose opinion is confirmed by the kindred inquiries of Dr. Hicks, § 628) to be organs of taste.—Numerous other modifications of the structure of the mouth, existing in the different tribes of Insects, are well worthy of the careful study of the Microscopist; but as detailed descriptions of most of these will be found in every Systematic Treatise on Entomology, the foregoing general account of the principal types must suffice.

631. *Parts of the Body.*—The conformation of the several divisions of the *alimentary canal* presents such a multitude of diversities, not only in different tribes of Insects, but in different states of the same individual, that it would be utterly vain to attempt here to give even a general idea of it; more especially as it is a subject of far less interest to the ordinary Microscopist, than to the professed Anatomist. Hence we shall only stop to mention that the 'muscular gizzard' in which the œsophagus very commonly terminates, is often lined by several rows of strong horny teeth for the reduction of the food, which furnish very beautiful objects, especially for the Binocular. These are particularly developed among the Grasshoppers, Crickets, and Locusts, the nature of whose food causes them to require powerful instruments for its reduction.

632. The *Circulation of Blood* may be distinctly watched in many of the more transparent larvæ, and may sometimes be observed in the perfect insect. It is kept-up, not by an ordinary heart, but by a 'dorsal vessel' (so named from the position it always occupies along the middle of the back), which really consists of a succession of muscular hearts or contractile cavities, one for each segment, opening one into another from behind forwards, so as to form a continuous trunk divided by valvular partitions. In many larvæ, however, these partitions are very indistinct; and the walls of the 'dorsal vessel' are so thin and transparent, that it can with difficulty be made-out, a limitation of the light by the diaphragm being often necessary. The blood which moves through this trunk, and which is distributed by it to the body, is a transparent and nearly-colourless fluid, carrying with it a number of 'oat-shaped' corpuscles, by the motion of which its flow can be followed. The current enters the 'dorsal vessel' at its posterior extremity, and is propelled forwards by the contractions of the successive chambers, being prevented from moving in the opposite direction by the valves between the chambers, which only open forwards. Arrived at the anterior extremity of the 'dorsal vessel,' the blood is distributed in three principal channels; a central one, namely, passing to the head, and a lateral one to either side, descending so as to approach the lower surface of the body. It is from the two lateral currents that the secondary streams diverge, which pass into the legs and wings, and then return back to the main stream; and it is from these also, that, in the larva of the *Ephemera marginata* (Day-fly), the extreme transparence of which renders it one of the best of all subjects for the observation of Insect Circulation, the smaller currents diverge into the gill-like appendages with which the body is furnished (§ 636). The blood-currents seem rather to pass through channels excavated among the tissues, than through vessels with distinct walls; but it is not improbable that in the perfect Insect the case may be different. In many aquatic larvæ, especially those of the *Culicidæ* (Gnat tribe), the body is almost entirely occupied by the visceral cavity; and the blood may be seen to move backwards in the space that surrounds the alimentary canal, which here serves the purpose of the channels usually excavated through the solid tissues, and which freely communicates at each end with the 'dorsal vessel.' This condition strongly resembles that found in many Annelida.*

633. The circulation may be easily seen in the wings of many Insects in their *pupa* state, especially in those of the Neuroptera (such as Dragon-flies and Day-flies) which pass this part of their lives under water in a condition of activity; the pupa of *Agrion puella*, one of the smaller dragon-flies, being a particularly favourable

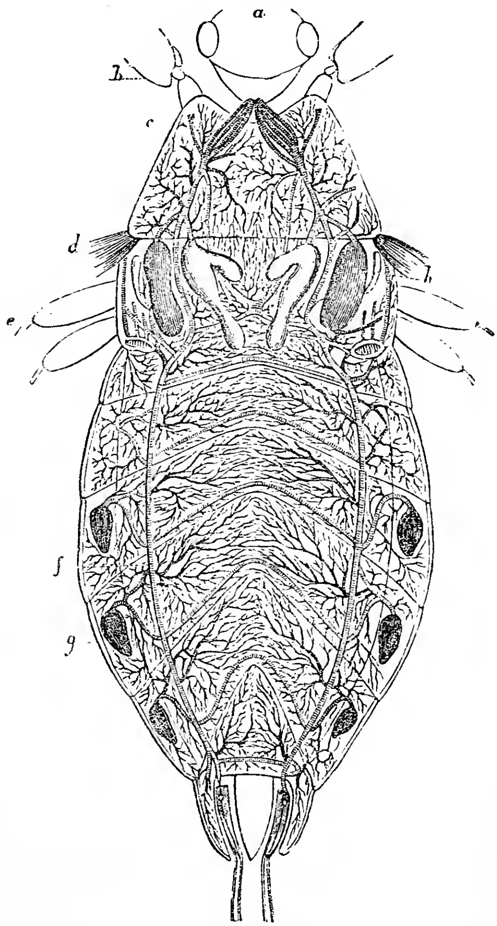
* See the Memoirs on *Corethra plumicornis*, by Prof. Rymer Jones, in "Transact. of Microsc. Soc.," N.S., Vol. xv. (1867), p. 99; by Prof. E. Ray Lankester, in the "Popular Science Review" for October, 1865; and by Dr. A. Weissmann, in "Siebold and Kölliker's Zeitschrift," Bd. xvi., p. 45.

subject for such observations. Each of the 'nervures' of the wings contains a 'trachea' or air-tube (§ 634), which branches-off from the tracheal system of the body; and it is in a space around the trachea that the blood may be seen to move, when the hard framework of the nervure itself is not too opaque. The same may be seen, however, in the wings of pupæ of Bees, Butterflies, &c., which remain shut-up motionless in their cases; for this condition of apparent torpor is one of great activity of their nutritive system, —those organs, especially, which are peculiar to the perfect Insect, being then in a state of rapid growth, and having a vigorous circulation of blood through them. In certain insects of nearly every order, a movement of fluid may be seen in the wings for some little time after their last metamorphosis; but this movement soon ceases, and the wings dry-up. The common *Fly* is as good a subject for this observation as can be easily found; it must be caught within a few hours or days of its first appearance; and the circulation may be most conveniently brought into view by enclosing it (without water) in the aquatic box, and pressing-down the cover sufficiently to keep the body at rest without doing it any injury.

634. The *Respiratory apparatus* of Insects affords a very interesting series of Microscopic objects; for, with great uniformity in its general plan, there is almost infinite variety in its details. The aëration of the blood in this class is provided-for, not by the transmission of the fluid to any special organ representing the *lung* of a Vertebrated animal (§ 692) or the *gill* of a Mollusk (§ 586), but by the introduction of air into every part of the body, through a system of minutely-distributed *tracheæ* or air-tubes, which penetrate even the smallest and most delicate organs. Thus, as we have seen, they pass into the *haustellium* or 'proboscis' of the Butterfly (§ 630), and they are minutely distributed in the elongated *labium* or 'tongue' of the Fly (Fig. 428). Their general distribution is shown in Fig. 431; where we see two long trunks (*f*) passing from one end of the body to the other, and connected with each other by a transverse canal in every segment; these trunks communicate, on the one hand, by short wide passages, with the 'stigmata,' 'spiracles,' or 'breathing pores' (*g*), through which the air enters and is discharged; whilst they give off branches to the different segments, which divide again and again into ramifications of extreme minuteness. They usually communicate also with a pair of air-sacs (*h*) which is situated in the thorax; but the size of these (which are only found in the perfect Insect, no trace of them existing in the larvæ) varies greatly in different tribes, being usually greatest in those insects which (like the Bee) can sustain the longest and most powerful flight, and least in such as habitually live upon the ground or upon the surface of the water. The structure of the air-tubes reminds us of that of the 'spiral vessels' of Plants, which seem destined (in part at least) to perform a similar office (§ 362); for within the membrane that forms their outer wall, an elastic fibre winds round and round, so as to

form a spiral closely resembling in its position and functions the spiral wire-spring of flexible gas-pipes; within this again, however, there is another membranous wall to the air-tubes, so that the spire winds between their inner and outer coats.—When a portion of one of the great trunks with some of the principal branches of the tracheal system has been dissected-out, and so pressed in mounting that the sides of the tubes are flattened against each other (as has happened in the specimen represented in Fig. 432), the spire forms two layers which are brought into close apposition; and a very beautiful appearance, resembling that of watered silk, is produced by the crossing of the two sets of fibres, of which one overlies the other. That this appearance, however, is altogether an optical illusion, may be easily demonstrated by carefully following the course of any one of the fibres, which will be found to be perfectly regular.

Fig. 431.

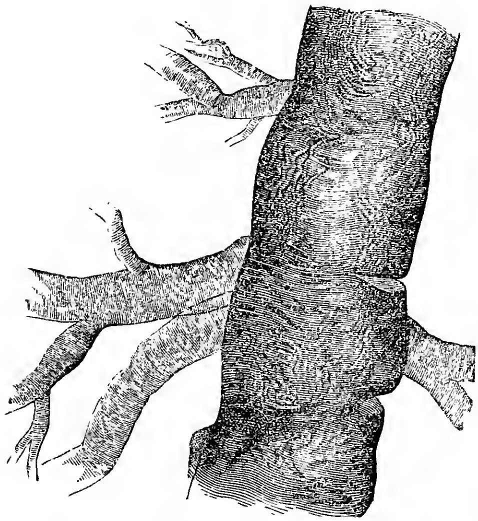


Tracheal system of *Nepa* (Water-scorpion):—*a*, head; *b*, first pair of legs; *c*, first segment of thorax; *d*, second pair of wings; *e*, second pair of legs; *f*, tracheal trunk; *g*, one of the stigmata; *h*, air-sac.

635. The 'stigmata' or 'spiracles' through which the air enters the tracheal system, are generally visible on the exterior of the body of the insect (especially on the abdominal segments) as a series of pores along each margin of the under surface. In most larvæ, nearly every segment is provided with a pair: but in the perfect insect several of them remain closed, especially in the thoracic region, so that their number is often considerably reduced. The structure of the spiracles varies greatly in regard to complexity

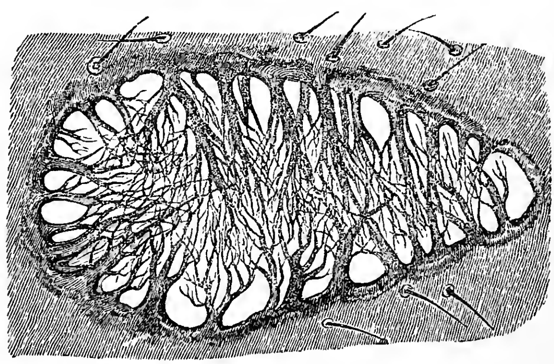
in different insects; and even where the general plan is the same, the details of conformation are peculiar, so that perhaps in scarcely any two species are they alike. Generally speaking they are furnished with some kind of sieve at their entrance, by which particles of dust, soot, &c., which would otherwise enter the air-passages, are filtered out; and this sieve may be formed by the interlacement of the branches of minute arborescent growths from the border of the spiracle, as in the common *Fly* (Fig. 433), or in the *Dytiscus;* or it may be a membrane perforated with minute holes, and supported upon a framework of bars that is prolonged in like manner from the thickened margin of the aperture (Fig. 434), as in the larva of the *Melolontha* (Cockchafer). Not unfrequently, the centre of the aperture is occupied by an impervious disk, from which radii proceed to its margin, as

Fig. 432.



Portion of a large Trachea of *Dytiscus*, with some of its principal branches.

Fig. 433.

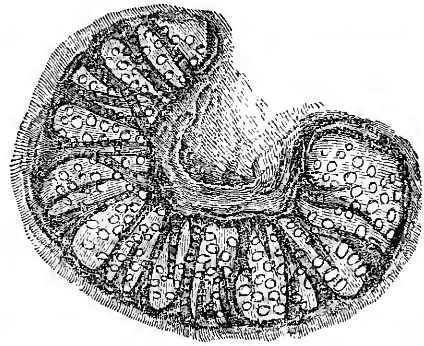


Spiracle of Common *Fly*.

is well seen in the spiracle of *Tipula* (Crane-fly).—In those aquatic Larvæ which breathe air, we often find one of the spiracles of the last segment of the abdomen prolonged into a tube, the mouth of which remains at the surface while the body is immersed; the larvæ of the *Gnat* tribe may frequently be observed in this position.

636. There are many aquatic Larvæ, however, which have an entirely-different provision for respiration; being furnished with external leaf-like or brush-like appendages into which the tracheæ are prolonged, so that, by absorbing air from the water that bathes them, they may convey this into the interior of the body. We cannot have a better example of this than is afforded by the larva of the common *Ephemera* (Day-fly), the body of which is furnished with a set of branchial appendages resembling the 'fin-feet' of Branchiopods (§ 603), whilst the three-pronged tail also is fringed with clusters of delicate hairs which appear to minister to the same function. In the larva of the *Libellula* (Dragon-fly), the extension of the surface for aquatic respiration takes-place within the termination of the intestine; the lining membrane of which is folded into an immense number of plaits, each containing a minutely ramified system of tracheæ; the water, slowly drawn-in through the anus for bathing this surface, is ejected with such violence that the body is impelled in the opposite direction; and the air taken-up by its tracheæ is carried, through the system of air-tubes of which they form part, into the remotest organs. This apparatus is a peculiarly interesting object for the Microscope, on account of the extraordinary copiousness of the distribution of the tracheæ in the intestinal folds.

Fig. 434.



Spiracle of Larva of *Cockchafer*.

637. The main trunks of the tracheal system, with their principal ramifications, may generally be got-out with little difficulty, by laying-open the body of an Insect or Larva under water in a Dissecting-trough (§ 180), and removing the whole visceral mass, taking care to leave as many as possible of the branches which will be seen proceeding to this from the two great longitudinal tracheæ, to whose position these branches will serve as a guide. Mr. Quekett recommends the following as the most simple method of obtaining a perfect system of tracheal tubes from a larva:—a small opening having been made in its body, this is to be placed in strong acetic acid, which will soften or decompose all the viscera; and the tracheæ may then be well-washed with the syringe, and removed from the body with the greatest facility, by cutting away the connections of the main tubes with the spiracles by means of fine pointed scissors. In order to mount them, they should be floated upon the slide, on which they should then be laid-out in the position best adapted for displaying them. If they are to be mounted in Canada balsam, they should be allowed to dry upon

the slide, and should then be treated in the usual way; but their natural appearance is best preserved by mounting them in fluid (weak spirit or Goadby's solution), using a shallow cell to prevent pressure. The finer ramifications of the tracheal system may generally be seen particularly well in the membranous wall of the stomach or intestine; and this, having been laid-out and dried upon the glass, may be mounted in balsam so as to keep the tracheæ full of air (whereby they are much better displayed), if care be taken to use balsam that has been previously thickened, to drop this on the object without liquefying it more than is absolutely necessary, and to heat the slide and the cover (the heat may be advantageously applied directly to the cover, after it has been put-on, by turning-over the slide so that its upper face shall look downward) only to such a degree as to allow the balsam to spread and the cover to be pressed-down.—The spiracles are easily dissected-out by means of a pointed knife or a pair of fine scissors; they should be mounted in glycerine-jelly when their texture is soft, and in balsam when the integument is hard and horny.

638. *Wings.*—These organs are essentially composed of an extension of the external membranous layer of the integument, over a framework formed by prolongations of the inner horny layer, within which prolongations tracheæ are nearly always to be found, whilst they also include channels through which blood circulates during the growth of the wing and for a short time after its completion (§ 633). This is the simple structure presented to us in the Wings of *Neuroptera* (Dragon-flies, &c.), *Hymenoptera* (Bees and Wasps), *Diptera* (two-winged-Flies), and also of many *Homoptera* (Cicadæ and Aphides); and the principal interest of these wings as Microscopic objects lies in the distribution of their 'veins' or 'nervures' (for by both names are the ramifications of their skeleton known), and in certain points of accessory structure. The venation of the wings is most beautiful in the smaller Neuroptera; since it is the distinguishing feature of this order that the veins, after subdividing, reunite again, so as to form a close network; whilst in the Hymenoptera and Diptera such reunions are rare, especially towards the margin of the wings, and the areolæ are much larger. Although the membrane of which these wings are composed appears perfectly homogeneous when viewed by transmitted light, even with a high magnifying power, yet, when viewed by light reflected obliquely from their surfaces, an appearance of cellular areolation is often discernible; this is well seen in the common *Fly*, in which each of these areolæ has a hair in its centre. In order to make this observation, as well as to bring-out the very beautiful iridescent hues which the wings of many minute Insects (as the Aphides) exhibit when thus viewed, it is convenient to hold the wing in the Stage-forceps for the sake of giving it every variety of inclination; and when that position has been found which best displays its most interesting features, it should be set up as nearly as possible in the same. For this purpose it should be mounted

on an opaque slide; but instead of being laid down upon its surface, the wing should be raised a little above it, its 'stalk' being held in the proper position by a little cone of soft wax, in the apex of which it may be imbedded.—The wings of most Hymenoptera are remarkable for the peculiar apparatus by which those of the same side are connected together, so as to constitute in flight but one large wing; this consists of a row of curved hooklets on the anterior margin of the posterior wing, which lay hold of the thickened and doubled-down posterior edge of the anterior wing. These hooklets are sufficiently apparent in the wings of the common *Bee,* when examined with even a low magnifying power; but they are seen better in the *Wasp*, and better still in the *Hornet*.—The peculiar scaly covering of the wings of the Lepidoptera has already been noticed (§ 619); but it may here be added that the entire wings of many of the smaller and commoner insects of this order, such as the *Tineidæ* or 'clothes-moths,' form very beautiful opaque objects for low powers; the most beautiful of all being the divided wings of the *Fissipennes* or 'plumed moths,' especially those of the genus *Pterophorus*.

639. There are many Insects, however, in which the Wings are more or less consolidated by the interposition of a layer of horny substance between the two layers of membrane. This plan of structure is most fully carried-out in the *Coleoptera* (Beetles), whose anterior wings are metamorphosed into *elytra* or 'wing-cases;' and it is upon these that the brilliant hues by which the integument of many of these insects is distinguished, are most strikingly displayed. In the anterior wings of the *Forficulidæ* or Earwig-tribe (which form the connecting link between this order and the Orthoptera), the cellular structure may often be readily distinguished when they are viewed by transmitted light, especially after having been mounted in Canada balsam. The anterior wings of the *Orthoptera* (Grasshoppers, Crickets, &c.), although not by any means so solidified as those of Coleoptera, contain a good deal of horny matter; they are usually rendered sufficiently transparent, however, by Canada balsam, to be viewed with transmitted light; and many of them are so coloured as to be very showy objects (as are also the posterior fan-like wings) for the Electric or Gas-microscope, although their large size, and the absence of any minute structure, prevent them from affording much interest to the ordinary Microscopist.—We must not omit to mention, however, the curious Sound-producing apparatus which is possessed by most insects of this order, and especially by the common *House-cricket*. This consists of the 'tympanum' or drum, which is a space on each of the upper wings, scarcely crossed by veins, but bounded externally by a large dark vein provided with three or four longitudinal ridges; and of the 'file' or 'bow,' which is a transverse horny ridge in front of the tympanum, furnished with numerous teeth: and it is believed that the sound is produced by the rubbing of the two bows across each other, while its intensity

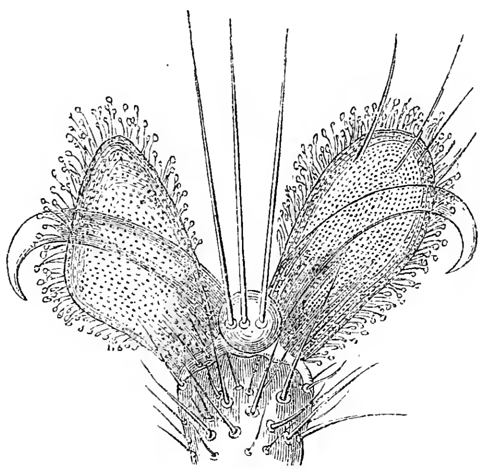
is increased by the sound-board action of the tympanum.—The wings of the *Fulgoridæ* (Lantern-flies) have much the same texture with those of the Orthoptera, and possess about the same value as Microscopic objects; differing considerably from the purely membranous wings of the Cicadæ and Aphides, which are associated with them in the order *Homoptera*. In the order *Hemiptera*, to which belong various kinds of land and water Insects that have a suctorial mouth resembling that of the common *bug*, the wings of the anterior pair are usually of parchmenty consistence, though membranous near their tips, and are often so richly coloured as to become very beautiful objects, when mounted in Balsam and viewed by transmitted light; this is the case especially with the terrestrial vegetable-feeding kinds, such as the *Pentatoma* and its allies, some of the tropical forms of which rival the most brilliant of the Beetles. The British species are by no means so interesting; and the aquatic kinds, which, next to the bed-bugs, are the most common, always have a dull brown or almost black hue: even among these last, however,—of which the *Notonecta* (water-boatman) and the *Nepa* (water-scorpion) are well-known examples,—the wings are beautifully variegated by differences in the depth of that hue. The *halteres* of the Diptera, which are the representatives of the posterior wings, have been shown by Dr. J. B. Hicks to present a very curious structure, which is found also in the elytra of Coleoptera and in many other situations; consisting in a multitude of vesicular projections of the superficial membrane, to each of which there proceeds a nervous filament, that comes to it through an aperture in the tegumentary wall on which it is seated. Various considerations are stated by Dr. Hicks, which lead him to the belief that this apparatus, when developed in the neighbourhood of the spiracles or breathing-pores, essentially ministers to the sense of *smell*, whilst, when developed upon the palpi and other organs in the neighbourhood of the mouth, it ministers to the sense of *taste*.*

640. *Feet.*—Although the feet of Insects are formed pretty much on one general plan, yet that plan is subject to considerable modifications, in accordance with the habits of life of different species. The entire limb usually consists of five divisions, namely the *coxa* or hip, the *trochanter*, the *femur* or thigh, the *tibia* or shank, and the *tarsus* or foot; and this last part is made up of several successive joints. The typical number of these joints seems to be *five;* but that number is subject to reduction; and the vast order Coleoptera is subdivided into primary groups, according as the tarsus consists of *five, four,* or *three* segments. The last joint of the tarsus is usually furnished with a pair of strong hooks or claws (Figs. 435, 436); and these are often serrated

* See his Memoir 'On a new Organ in Insects,' in "Journal of Linnæan Society," Vol. i. (1856), p. 136; his 'Further Remarks on the Organs found on the bases of the Halteres and Wings of Insects,' in "Trans. of the Linn. Society," Vol. xxii., p. 141; and his Memoir 'On certain Sensory Organs in Insects, hitherto undescribed,' in "Trans. of Linn. Soc.," Vol. xxiii., p. 189.

(that is, furnished with saw-like teeth), especially near the base. The under-surface of the other joints is frequently beset with tufts of hairs, which are arranged in various modes, sometimes forming a complete 'sole;' this is especially the case in the family *Curculionidæ;* so that a pair of the feet of the 'diamond-beetle,' mounted so that one shows the upper surface made resplendent by its jewel-like scales, and the other the hairy cushion beneath, is a very interesting object. In many Insects, especially of the *Fly* kind, the foot is furnished with a pair of membranous expansions termed *pulvilli* (Fig. 435); and these are beset with numerous hairs, each of which has a minute disk at its extremity. This structure is evidently connected with the power which these Insects possess of walking over smooth surfaces in opposition to the force of gravity; yet there is still considerable uncertainty as to the precise mode in which it ministers to this faculty. Some believe that the disks act as suckers, the Insect being held-up by the pressure of the air against their upper surface, when a vacuum is formed beneath; whilst others maintain that the adhesion is the result of the secretion of a viscid liquid from the under side of the foot. The careful observations of Mr. Hepworth have led him to a conclusion which seems in harmony with all the facts of the case—namely, that each hair is a tube conveying a liquid from a glandular sacculus situated in the tarsus; and that when the disk is applied to a surface, the pouring-forth of this liquid serves to make its adhesion perfect. That this adhesion is not produced by atmospheric pressure alone, is proved by the fact that the feet of Flies continue to hold-on to the interior of an exhausted receiver; whilst, on the other hand, that the feet pour-forth a secreted fluid, is evidenced by the marks left by their attachment on a clean surface of glass. Although, when all the hairs have the strain put upon them equally, the adhesion of their disks suffices to support the insect, yet each row may be detached separately by the gradual raising of the tarsus and pulvilli, as when we remove a piece of adhesive plaster by lifting it from the edge or corner. Flies are often found adherent to window-panes in the autumn, their reduced

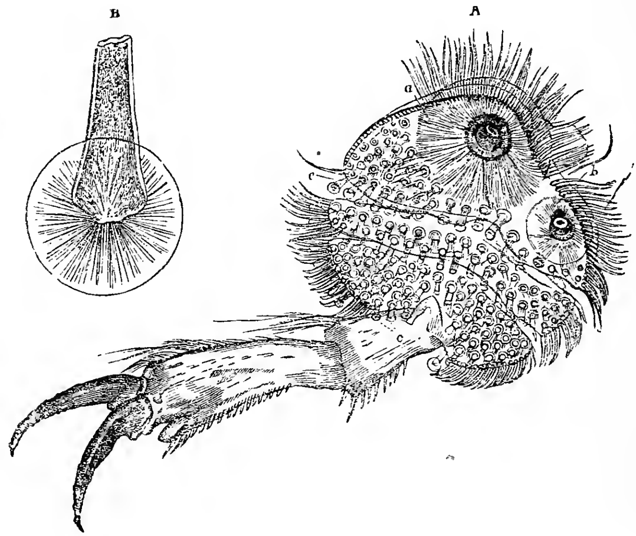
Fig. 435.



Foot of *Fly*.

strength not being sufficient to enable them to detach their tarsi.*—A similar apparatus on a far larger scale, presents itself on the foot of the *Dytiscus* (Fig. 436, A). The first joints of the tarsus of this insect are widely expanded, so as to form a nearly-circular

FIG. 436.



A, Foot of *Dytiscus*, showing its apparatus of suckers; *a*, *b*, large suckers; *c*, ordinary suckers:—B, one of the ordinary suckers more highly magnified.

plate; and this is provided with a very remarkable apparatus of suckers, of which one disk (*a*) is extremely large, and is furnished with strong radiating fibres, a second (*b*) is a smaller one formed on the same plan (a third, of the like kind, being often present), whilst the greater number are comparatively small tubular club-shaped bodies, each having a very delicate membranous sucker at its extremity, as shown on a larger scale at B. These all have essentially the same structure; the large suckers being furnished, like the hairs of the Fly's foot, with secreting sacculi, which pour-forth fluid through the tubular footstalks that carry the disks, whose adhesion is thus secured; whilst the small suckers form the connecting link between the larger suckers and the hairs of many beetles, especially *Curculionidæ*.† The leg and foot of the Dytiscus, if mounted without compression, furnish a peculiarly beautiful

* See Mr. Hepworth's communications to the "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. ii. (1854), p. 158, and Vol. iii. (1855), p. 312. See also Mr. Tuffen West's Memoir 'On the Foot of the Fly,' in "Transact. of Linnæan Society," Vol. xxii. p. 393, and Mr. Lowne's "Anatomy of the Blow-fly," p. 19.

† See Mr. Lowne 'On the so-called Suckers of Dytiscus and the Pulvilli of Insects,' in "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. v., p. 267.

object for the Binocular Microscope.—The Feet of Caterpillars differ considerably from those of perfect Insects. Those of the first three segments, which are afterwards to be replaced by true legs, are furnished with strong horny claws; but each of those of the other segments, which are termed 'pro-legs,' is composed of a circular series of comparatively slender curved hooklets, by which the Caterpillar is enabled to cling to the minute roughnesses of the surface of the leaves, &c., on which it feeds. This structure is well seen in the pro-legs of the common Silkworm.

641. *Stings and Ovipositors.*—The insects of the order *Hymenoptera* are all distinguished by the prolongation of the last segment of the abdomen into a peculiar organ, which in one division of the order is a 'sting,' and in the other is an 'ovipositor' or instrument for the deposition of the eggs, which is usually also provided with the means of boring a hole for their reception. The former group consists of the Bees, Wasps, Ants, &c.; the latter of the Saw-flies, Gall-flies, Ichneumon-flies, &c. These two sets of instruments are not so unlike in structure, as they are in function. —The 'sting' is usually formed of a pair of darts, beset with barbed teeth at their points, and furnished at their roots with powerful muscles, whereby they can be caused to project from their sheath, which is a horny case formed by the prolongation of the integument of the last segment, slit into two halves, which separate to allow the protrusion of the sting; whilst the peculiar 'venom' of the sting is due to the ejection, by the same muscular action, of a poisonous liquid, from a bag situated near the root of the sting, which passes down a canal excavated between the darts, so as to be inserted into the puncture which they make. The stings of the common Bee, Wasp, and Hornet, may all be made to display this structure without much difficulty in the dissection.— The 'ovipositor' of such insects as deposit their eggs in holes ready-made, or in soft animal or vegetable substances (as is the case with the *Ichneumonidæ*), is simply a long tube, which is enclosed, like the sting, in a cleft sheath. In the Gall-flies (*Cynipidæ*), the extremity of the ovipositor has a toothed edge, so as to act as a kind of saw whereby harder substances may be penetrated; and thus an aperture is made in the leaf, stalk, or bud of the plant or tree infested by the particular species, in which the egg is deposited, together with a drop of fluid that has a peculiarly irritating effect upon the vegetable tissues, occasioning the production of the 'galls,' which are new growths that serve not only to protect the larvæ, but also to afford them nutriment. The oak is infested by several species of these Insects, which deposit their eggs in different parts of its fabric; and some of the small 'galls' which are often found upon the surface of oak-leaves, are extremely beautiful objects for the lower powers of the Microscope. In the *Tenthredinidæ*, or 'saw-flies,' and in their allies the *Siricidæ*, the ovipositor is furnished with a still more powerful apparatus for penetration, by means of which some of these Insects can bore

into hard timber. This consists of a pair of 'saws' which are not unlike the 'stings' of Bees, &c., but are broader, and toothed for a greater length, and are made to slide along a firm piece that supports each blade, like the 'back' of a carpenter's 'tenon-saw;' they are worked alternately (one being protruded while the other is drawn back) with great rapidity; but, when not in use, they lie in a fissure beneath a sort of arch formed by the terminal segment of the body. When a slit has been made by the working of the saws, they are withdrawn into this sheath; the ovipositor is then protruded from the end of the abdomen (the body of the insect being curved downwards); and, being guided into the slit by a pair of small hairy feelers, there deposits an egg.*—Many other insects, especially of the order *Diptera*, have very prolonged ovipositors, by means of which they can insert their eggs into the integuments of animals, or into other situations in which the larvæ will obtain appropriate nutriment. A remarkable example of this is furnished by the Gad-fly (*Tabanus*), whose ovipositor is composed of several joints, capable of being drawn together or extended like those of a telescope, and is terminated by boring instruments; and the egg being conveyed by its means, not only *into* but *through* the integument of the Ox, so as to be imbedded in the tissue beneath, a peculiar kind of inflammation is set-up there, which (as in the analogous case of the gall-fly) forms a nidus appropriate both to the protection and to the nutrition of the larva. Other insects which deposit their eggs in the ground, such as the *Locusts*, have their ovipositors so shaped as to answer for digging holes for their reception.—The preparations which serve to display the foregoing parts, are best seen when mounted in Balsam; save in the case of the muscles and poison-apparatus of the sting, which are better preserved in fluid or in glycerine-jelly.

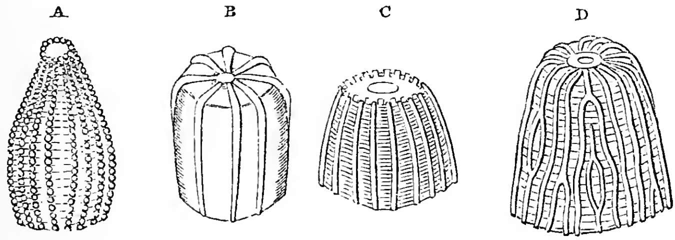
642. The Sexual organs of Insects furnish numerous objects of extreme interest to the Anatomist and Physiologist; but as an account of them would be unsuitable to the present work, a reference to a copious source of information respecting one of their most curious features, and to a list of the species that afford good illustrations, must here suffice.†—The *eggs* of many Insects are objects of great beauty, on account of the regularity of their form, and the symmetry of the markings on their surface (Fig. 437). The most interesting belong for the most part to the order

* The above is the account of the process given by Mr. J. W. Gooch; who has informed the Author that he has repeatedly verified the statement formerly made by him ("Science Gossip," Feb. 1, 1873), that the eggs are deposited, not as originally stated by Reaumur, by means of a tube formed by the coaptation of the saws, but through a separate ovipositor, protruded when the saws have been withdrawn.

† See the Memoirs of M. Lacaze-Duthiers, 'Sur l'armure genitale des Insectes,' in "Ann. des Sci. Nat.," Sér. 3, Zool., Tomes xii., xiv., xvii., xviii., xix.; and M. Ch. Robin's "Mémoire sur les Objets qui peuvent être conservés en Préparations Microscopiques" (Paris, 1856), which is peculiarly full in the enumeration of the objects of interest afforded by the Class of Insects.

Lepidoptera; and there are few among these that are not worth examination, some of the commonest (such as those of the Cabbage butterfly, which are found covering large patches of the leaves of that plant) being as remarkable as any. Those of the Puss-moth (*Cerura vinula*), the Privet hawk-moth (*Sphinx ligustri*), the small Tortoiseshell butterfly (*Vanessa urticæ*), the Meadow-brown butterfly (*Hipparchia janira*), the Brimstone-moth (*Rumia cratægata*), and the Silkworm (*Bombyx mori*), may be particularly specified; and from other orders, those of the Cockroach (*Blatta orientalis*), Field cricket (*Acheta campestris*), Water-scorpion (*Nepa ranatra*), Bug (*Cimex lectularius*), Cow-dung-fly (*Scatophaga stercoraria*),

FIG. 437.



Eggs of Insects, magnified;—A, *Pontia napi*; B, *Vanessa urticæ*; C, *Hipparchia tithous*; D, *Argynnis Lathonia*.

and Blow-fly (*Musca vomitoria*). In order to preserve these eggs, they should be mounted in fluid in a cell; since they will otherwise dry up and may lose their shape.—They are very good objects for the 'conversion of relief' effected by Nachet's Stereo-pseudoscopic Binocular (§ 38).

643. The remarkable mode of Reproduction that exists among the *Aphides* must not pass unnoticed here, from its curious connection with the non-sexual reproduction of *Entomostraca* (§ 609) and *Rotifera* (§ 451), as also of *Hydra* (§ 515) and *Zoophytes* generally; all of which fall specially, most of them exclusively, under the observation of the Microscopist. The Aphides which may be seen in the spring and early summer, and which are commonly but not always wingless, are all of one sex, and give birth to a brood of similar Aphides, which come into the world alive, and before long go through a like process of multiplication. As many as from seven to ten successive broods may thus be produced in the course of a single season; so that from a single Aphis, it has been calculated that no fewer than ten thousand million millions may be evolved within that period. In the latter part of the year, however, some of these viviparous Aphides attain their full development into males and females; and these perform the true Generative process, whose products are eggs, which, when hatched in the succeeding spring, give origin to a new viviparous brood that repeat the curious life-history of their predecessors. It appears

from the observations of Prof. Huxley,* that the broods of viviparous Aphides originate in *ova* which are not to be distinguished from those deposited by the perfect winged female. Nevertheless, this non-sexual or *agamic* reproduction must be considered analogous rather to the 'gemmation' of other Animals and Plants, than to their sexual 'generation;' for it is favoured, like the gemmation of *Hydra*, by warmth and copious sustenance, so that by appropriate treatment the viviparous reproduction may be caused to continue (as it would seem) indefinitely, without any recurrence to the sexual process. Further, it seems now certain that this mode of reproduction is not at all peculiar to the Aphides, but that many other Insects ordinarily multiply by 'agamic' propagation, the production of males and the performance of the true generative act being only occasional phenomena; and the researches of Prof. Siebold have led him to conclude that even in the ordinary economy of the Hive-bee the same double mode of reproduction occurs. The queen, who is the only perfect female in the hive, after impregnation by one of the drones (or males), deposits eggs in the 'royal' cells, which are in due time developed into young queens; others in the drone-cells, which become drones; and others in the ordinary cells, which become workers or neuters. It has long been known that these last are really undeveloped females, which, under certain conditions, might become queens; and it has been observed by bee-keepers that worker-bees, in common with virgin or unimpregnated queens, occasionally lay eggs, from which eggs none but drones are ever produced. From careful Microscopic examination of the drone eggs laid even by impregnated queens, Siebold drew the conclusion that they have not received the fertilizing influence of the male fluid, which is communicated to the queen-eggs and worker eggs alone; so that the products of sexual generation are always female, the males being developed from these by a process which is essentially one of gemmation.†

644. The Embryonic Development of Insects is a study of peculiar interest, from the fact that it may be considered as divided (at least in such as undergo a 'complete metamorphosis') into two stages that are separated by the whole active life of the larva; that, namely, by which the Larva is produced within the egg, and that by which the Imago or perfect insect is produced within the body of the Pupa. Various circumstances combine, however, to render the study a very difficult one; so that it is not one to be taken up by the inexperienced Microscopist. The following summary of the history of the process in the common Blow-fly, however, will probably be acceptable.—A *gastrula* with two membranous lamellæ (§ 391) having been evolved in the first instance, the outer

* 'On the Agamic Reproduction and Morphology of Aphis,' in "Transact. of Linn. Soc.," Vol. xxii., p. 193.

† See Prof. Siebold's Memoir "On true Parthenogenesis in Moths and Bees," translated by W. S. Dallas: London, 1857.

lamella very rapidly shapes itself into the form of the larva, and shows a well-marked segmental division. The alimentary canal, in like manner, shapes itself from the inner lamella; at first being straight and very capacious, including the whole yolk; but gradually becoming narrow and tortuous, as additional layers of cells are developed between the two primitive lamellæ, from which the other internal organs are evolved. When the larva comes forth from the egg, it still contains the remains of the yolk; it soon begins, however, to feed voraciously; and in no long period it grows to many thousand times its original weight, without making any essential progress in development, but simply accumulating material for future use. An adequate store of nutriment (analogous to the 'supplemental yolk' of *Purpura*, § 584) having thus been laid up within the body of the larva, it resumes (so to speak) its embryonic development, its passage into the pupa state, from which the imago is to come forth, involving a degeneration of all the larval tissues: whilst the tissues and organs of the imago "are re-developed from cells which originate from the disintegrated parts of the larva, under conditions similar to those appertaining to the formation of the embryonic tissues from the yolk." The development of the segments of the head and body in Insects generally proceeds from the corresponding larval segments; but, according to Dr. Weismann, there is a marked exception in the case of the *Diptera* and other Insects whose larvæ are unfurnished with legs,—their head and thorax being newly formed from 'imaginal disks,' which adhere to the nerves and tracheæ of the anterior extremity of the larva;* and, strange as this assertion may seem, it has been confirmed by the subsequent investigations of Mr. Lowne.

645. ARACHNIDA.—The general remarks which have been made in regard to Insects, are equally applicable to this Class; which includes, along with the *Spiders* and *Scorpions*, the tribe of *Acarida*, consisting of the *Mites* and *Ticks*. Many of these are parasitic, and are popularly associated with the wingless parasitic Insects, to which they bear a strong general resemblance, save in having *eight* legs instead of *six*. The true 'mites' (*Acarinæ*) generally have the legs adapted for walking, and some of them are of active habits. The common *cheese-mite*, as seen by the naked eye, is familiar to every one; yet few who have not seen it under a Microscope have any idea of its real conformation and movements; and a cluster of them, cut out of the cheese they infest, and placed under a magnifying power sufficiently low to enable a large number to be seen at once, is one of the most amusing objects that can be shown to the young. There are many other species, which closely resemble the Cheese-mite in structure and habits, but which feed upon different substances; and some of these are extremely destructive. To this group belongs a small species, the *Sarcoptes*

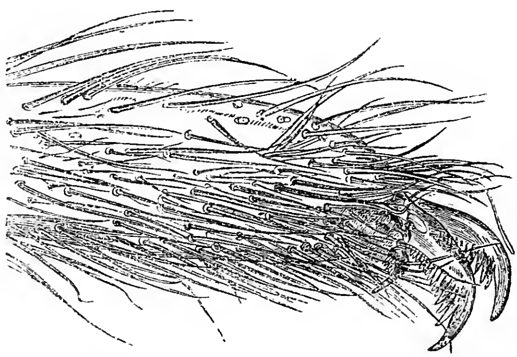
* See his 'Entwickelung der Dipteren,' in "Kölliker and Siebold's Zeitschrift," Bande xiv.-xvi.; and Mr. Lowne's "Anatomy of the Blow-fly," pp. 6-9, 113-121.

scabiei, whose presence appears to be the occasion of one of the most disgusting diseases of the skin—the itch—and which is hence commonly termed the 'itch-insect.' It is not found in the pustule itself, but in a burrow which passes-off from one side of it, and which is marked by a red line on the surface; and if this burrow be carefully examined, the creature will very commonly, but not always, be met-with. It is scarcely visible to the naked eye; but when examined under the microscope, it is found to have an oval body, a mouth of conical form, and eight feet, of which the four anterior are terminated by small suckers, whilst the four posterior end in very prolonged bristles. The male is only about half the size of the female. The *Ricinidæ* or 'ticks' are usually destitute of eyes, but have the mouth provided with lancets, that enable them to penetrate more readily the skins of animals whose blood they suck. They are usually of a flattened, round, or oval form; but they often acquire a very large size by suction, and become distended like a blown bladder. Different species are parasitic upon different animals; and they bury their suckers (which are often furnished with minute recurved hooks) so firmly in the skins of these, that they can hardly be detached without pulling away the skin with them. It is probably the young of a species of this group, which is commonly known as the 'harvest-bug,' and which is usually designated as the *Acarus autumnalis;* this is very common in the autumn upon grass or other herbage, and insinuates itself into the skin at the roots of the hair, producing a painful irritation; like other Acarida, it possesses only six legs for some time after its emersion from the egg (the other pair being only acquired after the first moult), so that its resemblance to parasitic Insects becomes still stronger.—It is probable that to this group also belongs the *Demodex folliculorum*, a creature which is very commonly found parasitic in the sebaceous follicles of the Human skin, especially in those of the nose. In order to obtain it, pressure should be made upon any one of these that appears enlarged and whitish with a terminal black spot; the matter forced-out will consist principally of the accumulated sebaceous secretion, having the parasites with their eggs and young mingled with it. These are to be separated by the addition of oil, which will probably soften the sebaceous matter sufficiently to set free the animals, which may be then removed with a pointed brush; but if this mode should not be effectual, the fatty matter may be dissolved-away by digestion in a mixture of alcohol and ether. The pustules in the skin of a Dog affected with the 'mange' were found by Mr. Topping to contain a Demodex, which seems only to differ from that of the human sebaceous follicles in its somewhat smaller size; and M. Gruby is said to have given to a dog a disease resembling the mange, if not identical with it, by inoculating it with the Human parasite.—The *Acarida* are best preserved, as Microscopic objects, by mounting in one or other of the 'media' described in § 206.

646. The number of objects of general interest furnished to the

Microscopist by the *Spider* tribe, is by no means considerable. Their Eyes exhibit a condition intermediate between that of Insects and Crustaceans, and that of Vertebrata; for they are simple, like the 'stemmata' of the former (§ 626), usually number from six to eight, are sometimes clustered-together in one mass, though sometimes disposed separately; while they present a decided approach in internal structure to the type characteristic of the visual organs of the latter.—The structure of the Mouth is always mandibulate, and is less complicated than that of the 'mandibulate' insects.—The Respiratory apparatus, which, where developed at all among the Acarida, is tracheary like that of Insects, is here constructed upon a very different plan; for the 'stigmata,' which are usually four in number on each side, open into a like number of respiratory sacculi, each of which contains a series of leaf-like folds of its lining membrane, upon which the blood is distributed so as to afford a large surface to the air.—In the structure of the limbs, the principal point worthy of notice is the peculiar appendage with which they usually terminate; for the strong claws, with a pair of which the last joint of the Foot is furnished, have their edges cut into comb-like teeth (Fig. 438), which seem to be used by the animal as cleansing-instruments.

Fig. 438.

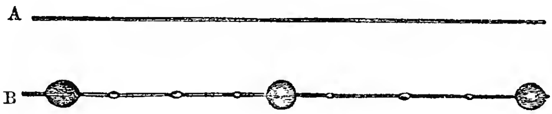


Foot, with comb-like claws, of the common *Spider* (Epeira).

647. One of the most curious parts of the organization of the Spiders, is the 'spinning-apparatus' by means of which they fabricate their elaborately constructed webs. This consists of the 'spinnerets,' and of the glandular organs in which the fluid that hardens into the thread is elaborated. The usual number of the spinnerets, which are situated at the posterior extremity of the body, is six; they are little teat-like prominences, beset with hairy appendages; and it is through a certain set of these appendages, which are tubular and terminate in fine-drawn points, that the glutinous secretion is forced-out in a multitude of streams of extreme minuteness. These streams harden into fibrils immediately on coming into contact with the air; and the fibrils proceeding from all the apertures of each spinneret coalesce into a single thread. It is doubtful, however, whether all the spinnerets are in action at once, or whether those of different pairs may not have dissimilar functions; for whilst the radiating threads of a

spider's web are simple (Fig. 439), A), those which lie across these, forming its concentric circles, or rather polygons, are studded at intervals with viscid globules (B), which appear to give to these

Fig. 439.



Ordinary thread (A), and viscid thread (B), of the common *Spider*.

threads their peculiarly adhesive character; and it does not seem by any means unlikely that each kind of thread should be produced by its own pair of spinnerets. It was observed by Mr. R. Beck, that these viscid threads are of uniform thickness when first spun; but that undulations soon appear in them, and that the viscid matter then accumulates in globules at regular intervals.—The total number of spinning-tubes varies greatly, according to the species of the Spider, and the sex and age of the individual; being more than 1000 in some cases, and less than 100 in others. The size and complexity of the secreting glandulæ vary in like manner: thus in the Spiders which are most remarkable for the large dimensions and regular construction of their webs, they occupy a large portion of the abdominal cavity, and are composed of slender branching tubes, whose length is increased by numerous convolutions; whilst in those which have only occasional use for their threads, the secreting organs are either short and simple follicles, or undivided tubes of moderate length.

CHAPTER XX.

VERTEBRATED ANIMALS.

648. We are now arrived at the highest division of the Animal Kingdom, in which the bodily fabric attains its greatest development, not only as to completeness, but also as to size; and it is in most striking contrast with the Class we have been last considering. Since not only the entire bodies of Vertebrated animals, but, generally speaking, the smallest of their integral parts, are far too large to be viewed as Microscopic objects, we can study their structure only by a separate examination of their component elements; and it seems, therefore, to be a most appropriate course to give under this head a sketch of the microscopic characters of those *Primary Tissues* of which their fabric is made-up, and which, although they may be traced with more or less distinctness in the lower tribes of Animals, attain their most complete development in this group.*—For some time after Schwann first made public the remarkable results of his researches, it was very generally believed that all the Animal tissues are formed, like those of Plants, by a metamorphosis of *cells;* an exception being taken, however, by some Physiologists in regard to the 'simple fibrous' tissues (§ 668). There can be no longer any doubt, however, that this doctrine must be greatly modified;† so that, whilst the *Vegetable* Physiologist may rightly treat the most highly organized Plant as a mere aggregation of *cells,* analogous in all essential particulars to those which singly constitute the 'unicellular' *Protophytes* (§ 227), the *Animal* Physiologist does wrong in seeking a cellular origin for all the component parts of the Animal fabric; and may best interpret the phenomena of tissue-formation in the most complicated

* This sketch is intended, not for the Professional student, but only for the amateur Microscopist, who wishes to gain some general idea of the elementary structure of his own body and of that of Vertebrate animals generally. Those who wish to go more deeply into the inquiry are referred to the following as the most recent and elaborate Treatises that have appeared in this country:—The translation of Stricker's "Manual of Histology," published by the New Sydenham Society; the "Handbook for the Physiological Laboratory," by Drs. Burdon-Sanderson, Michael Foster, Brunton, and Klein; the translation of the 4th edition of Prof. Frey's "Histology and Histo-chemistry of Man;" the 'General Anatomy' of the 8th edition of "Quain's Anatomy" (1874); and the "Atlas of Histology," by Prof. Klein and Mr. Noble Smith (1880-1).

† The important 'Review of the Cell-Theory,' by Prof. Huxley, in the "Brit. and For. Med.-Chir. Review," Vol. xii. (Oct. 1853), p. 285, may be considered the starting-point of many later inquiries.

organisms, by the study of the behaviour of that apparently-homogeneous 'protoplasm' of which the simplest *Protozoa* are made up, and by tracing the progressive 'differentiation' which presents itself as we pass from this through the ascending series of Animal forms.*

649. Although there would at first sight appear but little in common between the simple bodies of those humble *Monerozoa* which constitute the lowest types of the Animal series (§ 392), and the complex fabric of Man or other Vertebrates, yet it appears from recent researches, that in the latter, as in the former, the process of 'formation' is essentially carried-on by the instrumentality of *protoplasmic substance*, universally diffused through it in such a manner as to bear a close resemblance to the pseudopodial network of the Rhizopod (Fig. 283); whilst the *tissues* produced by its agency lie, as it were, on the outside of this, bearing the same kind of relation to it as the Foraminiferal shell (Fig. 314) does to the sarcodic substance which fills its cavities and extends itself over its surface. For, as was first pointed out by Dr. Beale,† the smallest living 'elementary part' of every organized fabric is composed of organic matter in two states: the protoplasmic (which he termed *germinal matter*), possessing the power of selecting pabulum from the blood, and of transforming this either into the material of its own extension, or into some product which it elaborates; whilst the other, which may be termed *formed material*, may present every gradation of character from a mere inorganic deposit to a highly organized structure, but is in every case altogether incapable of self-increase. A very definite line of demarcation can be generally drawn between these two substances, by the careful use of the staining-process (§ 200); but there are many instances in which there is the same gradation between the one and the other, as we have formerly noticed between the 'endosarc' and the 'ectosarc' of the *Amœba* (§ 403).—Thus it is on the protoplasmic com-

* The study of Comparative Histology, prosecuted on this basis, promises to be exceedingly fertile in results of this most interesting character. Thus Dr. N. Kleinenberg, in his admirable "Anatomische entwickelunsgeschichteliche Untersuchung" (1872), on *Hydra*, gives strong reason for regarding a particular set of cells in the body of that animal as combining the functions of Nerve and Muscle. And the Author has been led by his study of *Comatula* to recognize the most elementary type of Nerve-trunk in a simple protoplasmic cord, not yet separated into distinct fibres with insulating sheaths.

† Prof. Beale's views are most systematically expounded in his lectures 'On the Structure of the simple Tissues of the Human Body," 1861; in his "How to Work with the Microscope," 5th edition, 1880; and in the Introductory portion of his new edition of "Todd and Bowman's Physiological Anatomy," 1867. The principal results of the inquiries of German Histologists on this point are well stated in a Paper by Dr. Duffin on 'Protoplasm, and the part it plays in the actions of Living Beings,' in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. iii., N.S. (1863), p. 251.—The Author feels it necessary, however, to express his dissent from Prof. Beale's views in one important particular—viz., his denial of 'vital' endowments to the 'formed material' of any of the tissues; since it seems to him illogical to designate contractile muscular fibre (for example) as 'dead,' merely because it has not the power of self-reparation.

ponent that the existence of every form of Animal organization essentially depends; since it serves as the instrument by which the nutrient material furnished by the blood is converted into the several forms of tissue. Like the sarcodic substance of the Rhizopods, it seems capable of indefinite extension; and it may divide and subdivide into independent portions, each of which may act as the instrument of formation of an 'elementary part.' Two principal forms of such elementary parts present themselves in the fabric of the higher Animals—namely, *cells* and *fibres;* and it will be desirable to give a brief notice of these, before proceeding to describe those more complex tissues which are the products of a higher elaboration.

650. The *cells* of which many Animal tissues are essentially composed, consist, when fully and completely formed, of the same parts as the typical cell of the Plant (§ 223);—viz., a definite 'cell-wall,' enclosing 'cell-contents' (of which the nature may be very diverse), and also including a 'nucleus,' which is the seat of its formative activity. It is of such cells, retaining more or less of their characteristic spheroidal shape, that every mass of *fat*, whether large or small, is chiefly made up (Fig. 468). And the internal cavities of the body are lined by a layer of *epithelium-cells* (Fig. 466), which, although of flattened form, present the like combination of components. But there is a large number of cases in which the cell shows itself in a form of much less complete development; the 'elementary part' being a corpuscle of protoplasm, of which the exterior has undergone a slight consolidation, like that which constitutes the 'primordial utricle' of the Vegetable cell (§ 223) or the 'ectosarc' of the *Amœba* (§ 403), but in which there is no proper distinction between 'cell-wall' and 'cell-contents.' This condition, which is characteristically exhibited by the nearly-globular *colourless corpuscles* of the Blood (§ 666), appears to be common to all cells in the incipient stage of their formation: and the progress of their development consists in the gradual *differentiation* of their parts, the 'cell-wall' becoming distinctly separated from the 'cell-contents,' and these from the 'nucleus;' and the original protoplasm being very commonly replaced more or less completely by some special product (such as fat in the cells of adipose tissue, or hæmoglobin in the red corpuscles of the blood), in which cases the nucleus often disappears altogether.—In the earlier stages of cell-development, multiplication takes place with great activity by a duplicative subdivision that corresponds in all essential particulars with that of the Plant-cell (§ 226); as is well seen in Cartilage, a section of which will often exhibit in one view the successive stages of the process* (compare Fig. 470 with Fig. 139)

* Great attention has lately been given by many able observers, to the changes which take place in the *nucleus* before and during its cleavage. A full account of these is contained in the recently-published *third* Edition of Prof. Strassburger's "Zellbildung und Zelltheilung" (1880). See also Dr. Klein's 'Observations on the Structure of Cells and Nuclei,' in "Quart. Journ. Microsc.

Whether 'free' cell-multiplication ever takes place in the higher Animals, is at present uncertain.

651. A large part of the fabric of the higher Animals, however, is made up of *fibrous* tissues, which serve to bind together the other components, and which, when consolidated by calcareous deposit, constitute the substance of the skeleton. In these, the relation of the 'germinal matter' and the 'formed material' presents itself under an aspect which seems at first sight very different from that just described. A careful examination, however, of those 'connective-tissue-corpuscles' (Fig. 461) that have long been distinguished in the midst of the fibres of which these tissues are made up, shows that they are the equivalents of the corpuscles of 'germinal matter,' which in the previous instance came to constitute cell-nuclei; and that the fibres hold the same relation to them, that the 'walls' and 'contents' of cells do to their germinal corpuscles. The transition from the one type to the other is well seen in Fibro-cartilage, in which the so-called 'intercellular substance' is often as fibrous as tendon. The difference between the two types, in fact, seems essentially to consist in this,—that, whilst the segments of 'germinal matter' which form the cell-nuclei in cartilage (Fig. 470) and in other cellular tissues, are completely isolated from each other, each being completely surrounded by the product of its own elaborating action, those which form the 'connective-tissue-corpuscles' are connected together by radiating prolongations (Fig. 461) that pass between the fibres, so as to form a continuous network closely resembling that formed by the pseudopodia of the Rhizopod (Fig. 283).—Of this we have a most beautiful example in Bone; for whilst its solid substance may be considered as connective tissue solidified by calcareous deposit, the 'lacunæ' and 'canaliculi' which are excavated in it (Fig. 441) give lodgment to a set of radiating corpuscles closely resembling those just described; and these are centres of 'germinal matter,' which appear to have an active share in the formation and subsequent nutrition of the osseous texture. In Dentine (or tooth-substance) we seem to have another form of the same thing; the walls of its 'tubuli' and the 'intertubular substance' (§ 655) being the 'formed material' that is produced from thread-like prolongations of 'germinal matter' issuing from its pulp, and continuing during the life of the tooth to occupy its tubes; just as in the *Foraminifera* we have seen a minutely-tubular structure to be formed around the individual threads of sarcode which proceeded from the body of the contained animal (Figs. 314, 335). It may now be stated, indeed, with considerable confidence, that the bodies of even the highest Animals are everywhere penetrated by that sarcodic substance of which those of the lowest and simplest are entirely composed; and that this substance, which forms a continuous network through almost every portion of the fabric, is the main instrument of the Formation,

Science," N.S., Vol. xviii. (1878), p. 315, and Vol. xix. (1879), pp. 125, 404; and Chap. xliv. of his "Atlas of Histology."

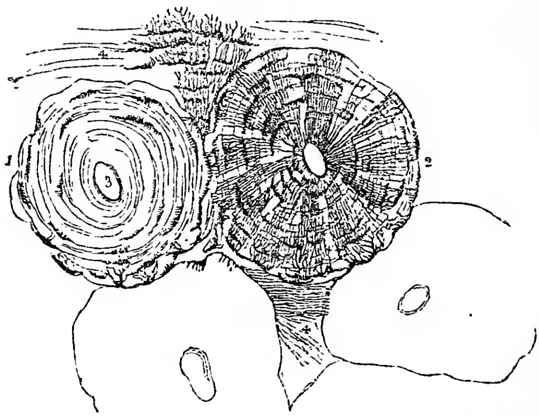
Nutrition, and Reparation of the more specialized or differentiated Tissues.—As it is the purpose of this work, not to instruct the professional student in Histology (or the Science of the Tissues), but to supply scientific information of general interest to the ordinary Microscopist, no attempt will here be made to do more than describe the most important of those distinctive characters which the principal tissues present when subjected to Microscopic examination; and as it is of no essential consequence what order is adopted, we may conveniently begin with the structure of the *skeleton*,* which gives support and protection to the softer parts of the fabric.

652. *Bone*.—The Microscopic characters of osseous tissue may sometimes be seen in a very thin natural plate of bone, such as in that forming the scapula (shoulder-blade) of a Mouse; but they are displayed more perfectly by artificial sections, the details of the arrangement being dependent upon the nature of the specimen selected, and the direction in which the section is made. Thus when the shaft of a 'long' bone of a Bird or Mammal is cut-across in the middle of its length, we find it to consist of a hollow cylinder of dense bone, surrounding a cavity which is occupied by an oily marrow; but if the section be made nearer its extremity, we find the outside wall gradually becoming thinner, whilst the interior, instead of forming one large cavity, is divided into a vast number of small chambers, partially divided by a sort of 'lattice-work' of osseous fibres, but communicating with each other and with the cavity of the shaft, and filled, like it, with marrow. In the bones of Reptiles and Fishes, on the other hand, this 'cancellated' structure usually extends throughout the shaft, which is not so completely differentiated into solid bone and medullary cavity as it is in the higher Vertebrata. In the most developed kinds of 'flat' bones, again, such as those of the head, we find the two surfaces to be composed of dense plates of bone, with a 'cancellated' structure between them; whilst in the less perfect type presented to us in the lower Vertebrata, the whole thickness is usually more or less 'cancellated,' that is, divided-up into minute medullary cavities.—When we examine, under a low magnifying power, a *longitudinal* section of a long bone, or a section of a flat bone *parallel* to its surface, we find it traversed by numerous canals, termed *Haversian* after their discoverer Havers, which are in connection with the central cavity, and are filled, like it, with marrow: in the shafts of 'long' bones these canals usually run in the direction of their length, but are connected here and there by cross-branches; whilst in the flat-bones they form an irregular network.—On applying a higher magnifying power to a thin *transverse* section of a long bone, we observe that each of the canals whose orifices

* This term is used in its most general sense, as including not only the proper *vertebral* or internal skeleton, but also the hard parts protecting the exterior of the body, which form the *dermal* skeleton.

present themselves in the field of view (Fig. 440), is the centre of a rod of bony tissue (1), usually more or less circular in its form,

FIG. 440.



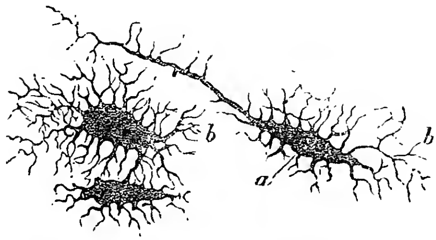
Minute structure of *Bone*, as seen in transverse section:—1, a rod surrounding an Haversian canal, 3, showing the concentric arrangement of the lamellæ; 2, the same, with the lacunæ and canaliculi; 4, portions of the lamellæ parallel with the external surface.

which is arranged around it in concentric rings, resembling those of an Exogenous stem (Fig. 254). These rings are marked out and divided by circles of little dark spots; which, when closely examined (2), are seen to be minute flattened cavities excavated in the solid substance of the bone, from the two flat sides of which pass forth a number of extremely minute tubules, one set extending inwards, or in the direction of the centre of the system of rings, and the other outwards, or in the direction of its circumference; and by the inosculation of the tubules (or *canaliculi*) of the different rings with each other, a continuous communication is established between the central Haversian canal and the outermost part of the bony rod that surrounds it, which doubtless ministers to the nutrition of the texture. Blood-vessels are traceable into the Haversian canals, but the 'canaliculi' are far too minute to carry blood-corpuscles; they are occupied, however, in the living bone, by threads of sarcodic-substance, which bring the segments of 'germinal matter' contained in the lacunæ into communication with the walls of the blood-vessels.

653. The minute cavities or *lacunæ* (sometimes, but erroneously termed 'bone-corpuscles,' as if they were solid bodies), from which the canaliculi proceed (Fig. 441), are highly characteristic of the true osseous structure; being never deficient in the minutest parts of the bones of the higher Vertebrata, although those of Fishes are occasionally destitute of them. The dark appearance which they

present in sections of a dried bone is not due to opacity, but is simply an optical effect, dependent (like the blackness of air-bubbles in liquids) upon the dispersion of the rays by the highly-refracting substance that surrounds them (§ 153). The size and form of the lacunæ differ considerably in the several Classes of Vertebrata, and even in some instances in the Orders; so as to allow of the determination of the tribe to which a bone belonged, by the Microscopic examination of even a minute fragment of it (§ 705). The following are the average dimensions of the lacunæ, in characteristic examples drawn from the four principal Classes, expressed in fractions of an inch:—

FIG. 441.

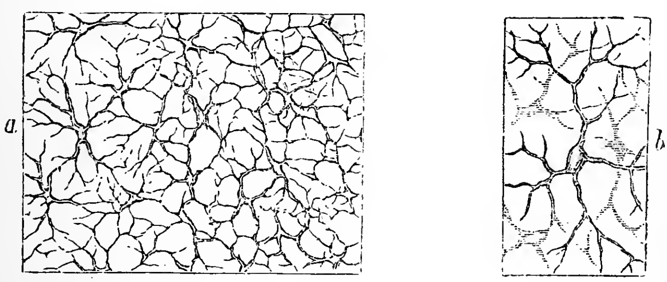


Lacunæ of Osseous substance:—*a*, central cavity; *b*, its ramifications.

	Long Diameter.		*Short Diameter.*
Man	1-1440 to 1-2400	...	1-4000 to 1-8000
Ostrich	1-1333 to 1-2250	...	1-5425 to 1-9650
Turtle	1-375 to 1-1150	...	1-4500 to 1-5840
Conger-eel . . .	1-550 to 1-1135	...	1-4500 to 1-8000

The lacunæ of *Birds* are thus distinguished from those of *Mammals* by their somewhat greater length and smaller breadth; but they differ still more in the remarkable tortuosity of their canaliculi, which wind backwards and forwards in a very irregular manner. There is an extraordinary increase in length in the lacunæ of *Reptiles*, without a corresponding increase in breadth; and this is also seen in some *Fishes*, though in general the lacunæ of the latter are remarkable for their angularity of form and the fewness

FIG. 442.



Section of the Bony Scale of *Lepidosteus*:—*a*, showing the regular distribution of the lacunæ and of the connecting canaliculi; *b*, small portion more highly magnified.

of their radiations,—as shown in Fig. 442, which represents the lacunæ and canaliculi in the bony scale of the *Lepidosteus* (' bony

pike' of the North American lakes and rivers), with which the bones of its internal skeleton perfectly agree in structure. The dimensions of the lacunæ in any bone do not bear any relation to the size of the animal to which it belonged; thus there is little or no perceptible difference between their size in the enormous extinct Iguanodon, and in the smallest Lizard now inhabiting the earth. But they bear a close relation to the size of the Blood-corpuscles in the several Classes; and this relation is particularly obvious in the 'perennibranchiate' Batrachia, the extraordinary size of whose blood-corpuscles will be presently noticed (§ 665):—

	Long Diameter.		*Short Diameter.*
Proteus	1-570 to 1-980	...	1-885 to 1-1200
Siren	1-290 to 1-480	...	1-540 to 1-975
Menopoma . . .	1-450 to 1-700	...	1-1300 to 1-2100
Lepidosiren . . .	1-375 to 1-494	...	1-980 to 1-2200
Pterodactyle . .	1-445 to 1-1185	...	1-4000 to 1-5225*

654. In preparing Sections of Bone, it is important to avoid the penetration of the Canada balsam into the interior of the lacunæ and canaliculi; since, when these are filled by it, they become almost invisible. Hence it is preferable not to employ this cement at all, except it may be, in the first instance; but to rub-down the section beneath the finger, guarding its surface with a slice of cork or a slip of gutta-percha (§ 196); and to give it such a polish that it may be seen to advantage even when mounted dry. As the polishing, however, occupies much time, the benefit which is derived from covering the surfaces of the specimen with Canada balsam may be obtained, without the injury resulting from the penetration of the balsam into its interior, by adopting the following method:—a quantity of balsam proportioned to the size of the specimen is to be spread upon a glass slip, and to be rendered stiffer by boiling, until it becomes nearly solid when cold; the same is to be done to the thin-glass cover; next, the specimen being placed on the balsamed surface of the slide, and being overlaid by the balsamed cover, such a degree of warmth is to be applied as will suffice to liquefy the balsam without causing it to flow freely; and the glass cover is then to be quickly pressed-down, and the slide to be rapidly cooled, so as to give as little time as possible for the penetration of the liquefied balsam into the lacunar system.—The same method may be employed in making sections of Teeth.†—The study of the organic basis of Bone (commonly, but erroneously, termed cartilage) should be pursued by macerating a fresh bone in dilute Nitro-hydrochloric acid, then macerating it for some time in pure water, and then tearing thin shreds from

* See Prof. J. Quekett's Memoir on this subject, in the "Transact. of the Microsc. Soc.," Ser. 1, Vol. ii.; and his more ample illustration of it in the "Illustrated Catalogue of the Histological Collection in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons," Vol. ii.

† Some useful hints on the mode of making these preparations will be found in the "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. vii. (1859), p. 258.

the residual substance, which will be found to consist of an imperfectly-fibrillated material, allied in its essential constitution to the 'white fibrous' tissue (§ 668).

655. *Teeth.*—The intimate structure of the Teeth in the several Classes and Orders of Vertebrata, presents differences which are no less remarkable than those of their external form, arrangement, and succession. It will obviously be impossible here to do more than sketch some of the most important of these varieties.—The principal part of the substance of all teeth is made-up of a solid tissue that has been appropriately termed *dentine.* In the Shark tribe, as in many other Fishes, the general structure of this dentine is extremely analogous to that of bone; the tooth being traversed by numerous canals, which are continuous with the Haversian canals of the subjacent bone, and receive blood-vessels from them (Fig. 443); and each of these canals being surrounded by a system of tubuli (Fig. 444), which radiate into the surrounding

FIG. 443.

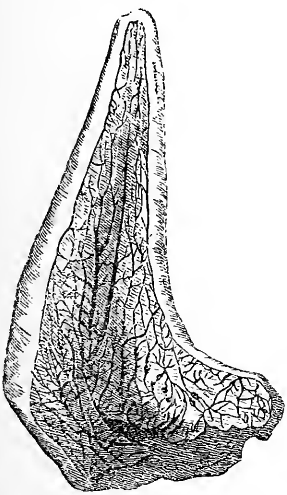


FIG. 444.

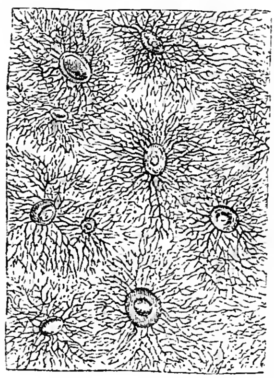
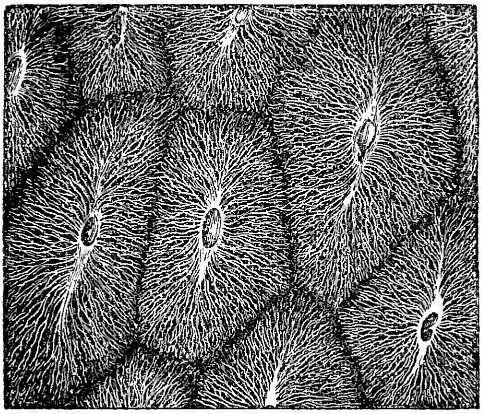


Fig. 443. Perpendicular section of Tooth of *Lamna*, moderately enlarged, showing network of medullary canals.
Fig. 444. Transverse section of portion of Tooth of *Pristis*, more highly magnified, showing orifices of medullary canals, with systems of radiating and inosculating tubuli.

solid substance. These tubuli, however, do not enter lacunæ, nor is there any concentric annular arrangement around the medullary canals; but each system of tubuli is continued onwards through its own division of the tooth, the individual tubes sometimes giving-off lateral branches, whilst in other instances their trunks bifurcate. This arrangement is peculiarly well displayed, when sections of teeth constructed upon this type are viewed as opaque objects (Fig. 445).—In the teeth of the higher Vertebrata, however, we usually find the centre excavated into a single

cavity (Fig. 446), and the remainder destitute of vascular canals; but there are intermediate cases (as in the teeth of the great fossil Sloths) in which the inner portion of the dentine is traversed by prolongations of this cavity, conveying blood-vessels, which do not pass into the exterior layers. The tubuli of the 'non-vascular' dentine, which exists by itself in the teeth of nearly all Mammalia, and which in the Elephant is known as 'ivory,' all radiate from the central cavity, and pass towards the surface of the tooth in a nearly parallel course. Their diameter at their largest part averages 1-10,000th of an inch; their smallest branches are immeasurably fine. The tubuli in their course present greater and lesser undulations; the former are few in number: but the latter are numerous, and as they occur at the same part of the course of several contiguous tubes, they give rise to the appearance of lines concentric with the centre of radiation. These 'secondary curvatures' probably indicate, in dentine, as in the Crab's shell (§ 613), successive stages of calcification.—The tubuli are occupied, during the life of the tooth, by delicate threads of protoplasmic substance, extending into them from the central pulp.

Fig. 445.

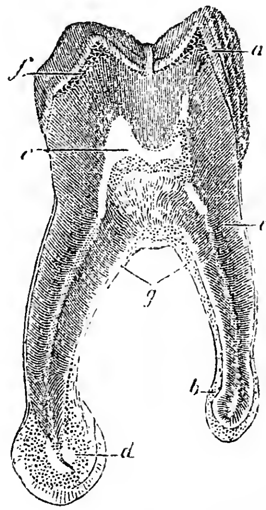


Transverse Section of Tooth of *Myliobates* (Eagle Ray) viewed as an opaque object.

656. In the Teeth of Man and most other Mammals, and in those of many Reptiles and some Fishes, we find two other substances, one of them harder, and the other softer, than dentine; the former is termed *enamel;* and the latter *cementum* or *crusta petrosa.*—The *enamel* is composed of long prisms, closely resembling those of the 'prismatic' Shell-substance formerly described (§ 563), but on a far more minute scale; the diameter of the prisms not being more in Man than 1-5600th of an inch. The length of the prisms corresponds with the thickness of the layer of enamel; and the two surfaces of this layer present the ends of the prisms, the form of which usually approaches the hexagonal. The course of the enamel-prisms is more or less wavy; and they are marked by numerous transverse striæ, resembling those of the prismatic shell-substance, and probably originating in the same cause,—the coalescence of a series of shorter prisms to form the lengthened prism. In Man and in Carnivorous animals the enamel covers the crown of the tooth only, with a simple cap or superficial layer of

tolerably uniform thickness (Fig. 446, *a*), which follows the surface of the dentine in all its inequalities; and its component prisms are directed at right angles to that surface, their inner extremities resting in slight but regular depressions on the exterior of the dentine. In the teeth of many Herbivorous animals, however, the enamel forms (with the cementum) a series of vertical plates, which dip down into the substance of the dentine, and present their edges alternately with it, at the grinding surface of the tooth; and there is in such teeth no continuous layer of enamel over the crown. This arrangement provides, by the unequal *wear* of these three substances (of which the enamel is the hardest, and the cementum the softest), for the constant maintenance of a rough surface, adapted to triturate the tough vegetable substances on which these animals feed. The enamel is the least constant of the dental tissues. It is more frequently absent than present in the teeth of Fishes; it is entirely wanting in the teeth of Serpents; and it forms no part of those of the Edentata* (sloths, &c.) and Cetacea (whales) among Mammals.—The *cementum*, or *crusta petrosa*, has the characters of true bone; possessing its distinctive stellate lacunæ and radiating canaliculi. Where it exists in small amount, we do not find it traversed by medullary canals; but, like dentine, it is occasionally furnished with them, and thus resembles bone in every particular. These medullary canals enter its substance from the exterior of the tooth, and consequently pass towards those which radiate from the central cavity in the direction of the surface of the dentine, where this possesses a similar vascularity,—as was remarkably the case in the teeth of the great extinct *Megatherium*. In the Human tooth, however, the cementum has no such vascularity; but forms a thin layer (Fig. 446, *b*), which envelopes the root of the tooth, commencing near the termination of the cap of enamel. In the teeth of many herbivorous Mammals, it dips down with the enamel to form the vertical plates of the interior of the tooth; and in the teeth of the

FIG. 446.



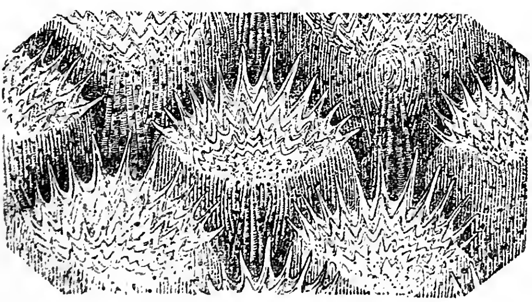
Vertical Section of *Human Molar Tooth*:—*a*, enamel; *b*, cementum or crusta petrosa; *c*, dentine or ivory; *d*, osseous excrescence, arising from hypertrophy of cementum; *e*, pulp-cavity; *f*, osseous lacunæ at outer part of dentine.

* It has been shown by Mr. Charles Tomes, however, that the 'enamel organ' is originally present within the tooth-capsule of the *Armadillo*, though it undergoes an early degeneration;—a fact of no little interest in connection with the general doctrine of 'Descent with modification.'

Edentata, as well as of many Reptiles and Fishes, it forms a thick continuous envelope over the whole surface, until worn-away at the crown.

657. *Dermal Skeleton.*—The Skin of Fishes, of most Reptiles, and of a few Mammals, is strengthened by plates of a horny, cartilaginous, bony, or even enamel-like texture; which are sometimes fitted-together at their edges, so as to form a continuous box-like envelope; whilst more commonly they are so arranged as partially to overlie one another, like the tiles on a roof; and it is in this latter case that they are usually known as *scales.* Although we are accustomed to associate in our minds the 'scales' of Fishes with those of Reptiles, yet they are essentially-different structures; the former being developed in the *substance* of the true skin (with a layer of which, in addition to the epidermis, they are always covered), and bearing a resemblance to cartilage and bone in their texture and composition; whilst the latter are formed upon the *surface* of the true skin, and are to be considered as analogous to nails, hoofs, &c., and other 'epidermic appendages.' In nearly all the existing Fishes the scales are flexible, being but little consolidated by calcareous deposit; and in some species they are so thin and transparent, that, as they do not project obliquely from the surface of the skin, they can only be detected by raising the superficial layer of the skin, and searching beneath it, or by tearing off the entire thickness of the skin, and looking for them near its under surface. This is the case, for example, with the common *Eel*, and with the *viviparous Blenny;* of either of which fish the skin is a very interesting object when dried and mounted in Canada balsam, the scales being seen imbedded in its substance, whilst its outer surface is studded with pigment-cells. Generally speaking, however, the posterior extremity of each scale projects obliquely from the general surface, carrying before it the thin membrane that encloses it, which is studded with pigment-cells; and a portion of the skin of almost any Fish, but especially of such as have scales of the *ctenoid* kind (that si, furnished at their posterior extremities with comb-like teeth, Fig. 448), when dried with its scales *in situ*, is a very beautiful opaque object for the low powers of the Microscope (Fig. 447), especially with the Binocular arrangement. Care must be taken, however, that the light is made to glance upon it in the most advantageous manner; since the brilliance with which it is reflected

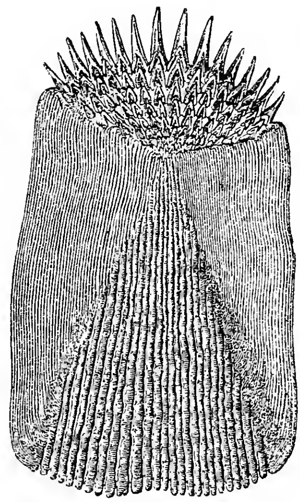
Fig. 447.



Portion of Skin of *Sole*, viewed as an opaque object.

from the comb-like projections entirely depends upon the angle at which it falls upon them. The only appearance of structure exhibited by the thin flat scale of the Eel, when examined microscopically, is the presence of a layer of isolated spheroidal transparent bodies, imbedded in a plate of like transparence; these, from the researches of Prof. W. C. Williamson* upon other scales, appear not to be cells (as they might readily be supposed to be), but concretions of Carbonate of Lime. When the scale of the Eel is examined by Polarized light, its surface exhibits a beautiful St. Andrew's cross; and if a plate of Selenite be placed behind it, and the analyzing prism be made to revolve, a remarkable play of colours is presented.

FIG. 448.



Scale of *Sole*, viewed as a transparent object.

658. In studying the structure of the more highly developed scales, we may take as an illustration that of the *Carp;* in which two very distinct layers can be made-out by a vertical section, with a third but incomplete layer interposed between them. The outer layer is composed of several concentric laminæ of a structureless transparent substance, like that of cartilage; the outermost of these laminæ is the smallest, and the size of the plates increases progressively from without inwards, so that their margins appear on the surface as a series of concentric lines; and their surfaces are thrown into ridges and furrows, which commonly have a radiating direction. The inner layer is composed of numerous laminæ of a fibrous structure, the fibres of each lamina being inclined at various angles to those of the lamina above and below it. Between these two layers is interposed a stratum of calcareous concretions, resembling those of the scale of the Eel: these are sometimes globular or spheroidal, but more commonly 'lenticular,' that is, having the form of a double-convex lens. The scales which resemble those of the Carp in having a form more or less circular, and in being destitute of comb-like prolongations, are called *cycloid;* and such are the characters of those of the Salmon, Herring, Roach, &c. The structure of the *ctenoid* scales (Fig. 448), which we find in the Sole, Perch, Pike, &c., does not differ essentially from that of the cycloid, save as to the projection of the comb-like teeth from the posterior margin; and it does not appear

* See his elaborate Memoirs 'On the Microscopic Structure of the Scales and Dermal Teeth of some Ganoid and Placoid Fish,' in "Philos. Transact.," 1849; and 'Investigations into the Structure and Development of the Scales and Bones of Fishes,' in "Philos. Transact.," 1851.

that the strongly-marked division which Prof. Agassiz has attempted to establish between the 'cycloid' and the 'ctenoid' Orders of Fishes, on the basis of this difference, is in harmony with their general organization. Scales of every kind may become consolidated to a considerable extent by the calcification of their soft substance; but still they never present any approach to the true Bony structure, such as is shown in the two Orders to be next adverted-to.

659. In the *ganoid* Scales, on the other hand, the whole substance of the scale is composed of a substance which is essentially bony in its nature: its intimate structure being always comparable to that of one or other of the varieties which present themselves in the bones of the Vertebrate skeleton; and being very frequently identical with that of the bones of the same fish, as is the case with the *Lepidosteus* (Fig. 442), one of the few existing representatives of this Order, which, in former ages of the Earth's history, comprehended a large number of important families. Their name (from γάνος, splendour) is bestowed on account of the smoothness, hardness, and high polish of the outer surface of the scales; which is due to the presence of a peculiar layer that has been likened (though erroneously) to the enamel of teeth, and is now distinguished as *ganoin*. The scales of this order are for the most part angular in their form; and are arranged in regular rows, the posterior edges of each slightly overlapping the anterior ones of the next, so as to form a very complete defensive armour to the body.—The scales of the *placoid* type, which characterizes the existing Sharks and Rays, with their fossil allies, are irregular in their shape, and very commonly do not come into mutual contact, but are separately imbedded in the skin, projecting from its surface under various forms. In the Rays each scale usually consists of a flattened plate of a rounded shape, with a hard spine projecting from its centre; in the Sharks (to which tribe belongs the 'dog-fish' of our own coast) the scales have more of the shape of teeth. This resemblance is not confined to external form; for their intimate structure strongly resembles that of dentine, their dense substance being traversed by tubuli, which extend from their centre to their circumference in minute ramifications, without any trace of osseous lacunæ. These tooth-like scales are often so small as to be invisible to the naked eye; but they are well seen by drying a piece of the skin to which they are attached, and mounting it in Canada balsam; and they are most brilliantly shown by the assistance of polarized light.—A like structure is found to exist in the 'spiny rays' of the dorsal fin, which, also, are parts of the dermal skeleton; and these rays usually have a central cavity filled with medulla, from which the tubuli radiate towards the circumference. This structure is very well seen in thin sections of the fossil 'spiny rays,' which, with the teeth and scales, are often the sole relics of the vast multitudes of Sharks that must have swarmed in the ancient seas, their cartilaginous internal skeletons having entirely decayed away.—

In making sections of bony Scales, Spiny rays, &c., the method must be followed which has been already detailed under the head of Bone (§ 654).

660. The *scales* of Reptiles, the *feathers* of Birds, and the *hairs, hoofs, nails, claws,* and *horns* (when not bony) of Mammals, are all *epidermic* appendages; that is, they are produced upon the surface, not within the substance, of the true Skin, and are allied in structure to the Epidermis (§ 671); being essentially composed of aggregations of cells filled with horny matter, and frequently much altered in form. This structure may generally be made-out in horns, nails, &c., with little difficulty, by treating thin sections of them with a dilute solution of soda; which after a short time causes the cells that had been flattened into scales, to resume their globular form. The most interesting modifications of this structure are presented to us in Hairs and in Feathers; which forms of clothing are very similar to each other in their essential nature, and are developed in the same manner—namely, by an increased production of epidermic cells at the bottom of a flask-shaped follicle, which is formed in the substance of the true skin, and which is supplied with abundance of blood by a special distribution of vessels to its walls. When a hair is pulled-out 'by its root,' its base exhibits a bulbous enlargement, of which the exterior is tolerably firm, whilst its interior is occupied by a softer substance, which is known as the 'pulp;' and it is to the continual augmentation of this pulp in the deeper part of the follicle, and to its conversion into the peculiar substance of the hair when it has been pushed upwards to its narrow neck, that the growth of the hair is due.—The same is true of feathers, the stems of which are but hairs on a larger scale; for the 'quill' is the part contained within the follicle answering to the 'bulb' of the hair; and whilst the outer part of this is converted into the peculiarly-solid horny substance forming the 'barrel' of the quill, its interior is occupied, during the whole period of the growth of the feather, with the soft pulp, only the shrivelled remains of which, however, are found within it after the quill has ceased to grow.

661. Although the *hairs* of different Mammals differ greatly in the appearances they present, we may generally distinguish in them two elementary parts—namely, a *cortical* or investing substance, of a dense horny texture, and a *medullary* or pith-like substance, usually of a much softer texture, occupying the interior. The former can sometimes be distinctly made-out to consist of flattened scales arranged in an imbricated manner, as in some of the hairs of the *Sable* (Fig. 449); whilst, in the same hairs, the medullary substance is composed of large spheroidal cells. In the *Musk-deer,* on the other hand, the cortical substance is nearly undistinguishable; and almost the entire hair seems made up of thin-walled polygonal cells (Fig. 450). The hair of the *Reindeer,* though much larger, has a very similar structure; and its cells, except near the root, are occupied with hair alone, so as to seem

black by transmitted light, except when penetrated by the fluid in which they are mounted. In the hair of the *Mouse*, *Squirrel*, and

Fig. 449.

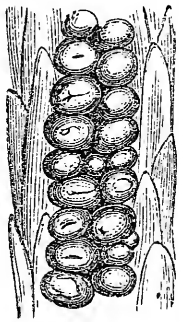


Fig. 450.

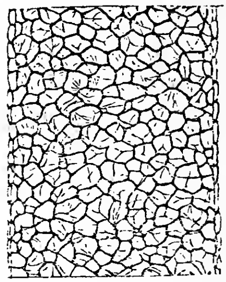
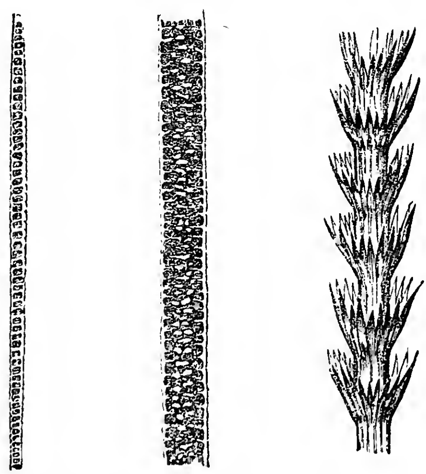


Fig. 449. Hair of *Sable*, showing large rounded cells in its interior, covered by imbricated scales or flattened cells.
Fig. 450. Hair of *Musk-deer*, consisting almost entirely of polygonal cells.

other small Rodents (Fig. 451, A, B), the cortical substance forms a tube, which we see crossed at intervals by partitions that are sometimes complete, sometimes only partial; these are the walls of the single or double line of cells, of which the medullary substance is made-up. The hairs of the *Bat* tribe are commonly distinguished by the projections on their surface, which are formed by extensions of the component scales of the cortical substance: these are particularly well seen in the hairs of one of the Indian species, which has a set of whorls of long narrow leaflets (so to speak) arranged at regular intervals on its stem (C). In the hair of the *Pecari* (Fig. 452), the cortical envelope sends inwards a set of radial prolongations, the interspaces of which are occupied by the polygonal cells of the medullary substance; and this, on a larger scale, is the structure of the 'quills' of the *Porcupine;* the radiating partitions of which, when seen through the more transparent parts of the

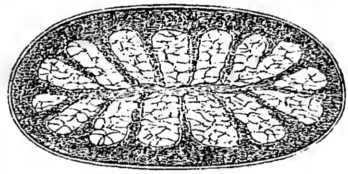
Fig. 451.



A, Small Hair of *Squirrel*:—B, Large Hair of *Squirrel*:—C, Hair of *Indian Bat*.

cortical sheath, give to the surface of the latter a fluted appearance. The hair of the *Ornithorhynchus* is a very curious object; for whilst the lower part of it resembles the fine hair of the Mouse or Squirrel, this thins away and then dilates again into a very thick fibre, having a central portion composed of polygonal cells, enclosed in a flattened sheath of a brown fibrous substance.

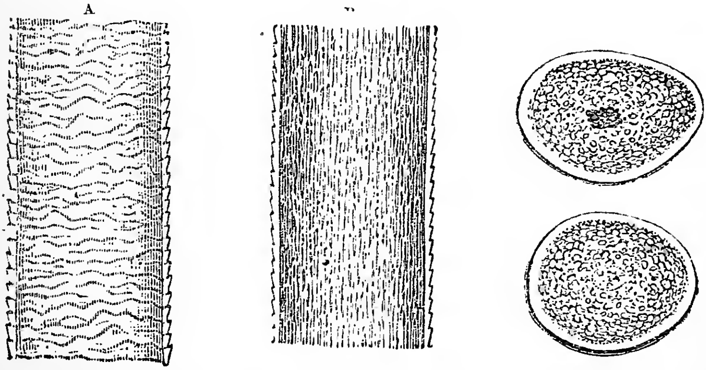
FIG. 452.



Transverse section of Hair of *Pecari*.

662. The structure of the *human* Hair is in certain respects peculiar. When its outer surface is examined, it is seen to be traversed by irregular lines (Fig. 453, A), which are most strongly marked in fœtal hairs; and these are the indications of the imbricated arrangement of the flattened cells or scales which form the cuticular layer. This layer, as is shown by transverse sections (C, D), is a very thin and transparent cylinder; and it encloses the peculiar fibrous substance that constitutes the principal part of the shaft of the hair. The constituent fibres of this substance, which are marked-out by the delicate striæ that may be traced in longitudinal sections of the hair (B), may be separated from each other by crushing the hair, especially after it has been macerated for some time in sulphuric acid; and each of them, when completely

FIG. 453.



Structure of *Human Hair*:—A, external surface of the shaft, showing the transverse striæ and jagged boundary caused by the imbrications of the cuticular layer; B, longitudinal section of the shaft, showing the fibrous character of the cortical substance, and the arrangement of the pigmentary matter; C, transverse section, showing the distinction between the cuticular envelope, the cylinder of cortical substance, and the medullary centre; D, another transverse section, showing deficiency of the central cellular substance.

isolated from its fellows, is found to be a long spindle-shaped cell. In the axis of this fibrous cylinder there is very commonly a band

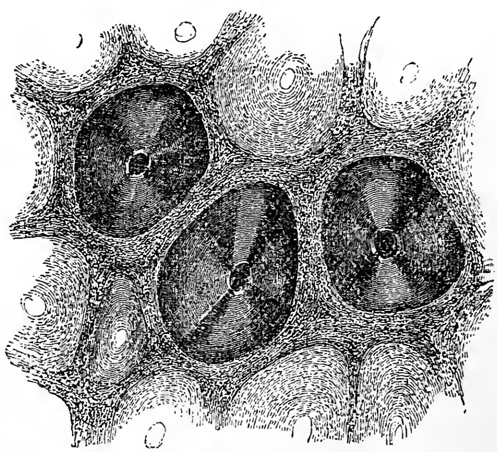
which is formed of spheroidal cells; but this 'medullary' substance is usually deficient in the fine hairs scattered over the general surface of the body, and is not always present in those of the head. The hue of the Hair is due partly to the presence of pigmentary granules, either collected into patches, or diffused through its substance; but partly also to the existence of a multitude of minute air-spaces, which cause it to appear dark by transmitted and white by reflected light. The cells of the medullary axis in particular, are very commonly found to contain air, giving it the black appearance shown at C. The difference between the blackness of pigment and that of air-spaces may be readily determined by attending to the characters of the latter as already laid-down (§§ 153, 154); and by watching the effects of the penetration of Oil of Turpentine or other liquids, which do not alter the appearance of pigment-spots, but obliterate all the markings produced by air-spaces, these returning again as the hair dries.—In mounting Hairs as Microscopic preparations, they should in the first instance be cleansed of all their fatty matter by maceration in ether; and they may then be put up either in weak Spirit or in Canada balsam, as may be thought preferable, the former menstruum being well adapted to display the characters of the finer and more transparent hairs, while the latter allows the light to penetrate more readily through the coarser and more opaque. Transverse sections of Hairs are best made by gluing or gumming several together, and then putting them into the Microtome; those of Human hair may be easily obtained, however, by shaving a second time, very closely, a part of the surface over which the razor has already passed more lightly, and by picking-out from the lather, and carefully washing, the sections thus taken-off.

663. The stems of *feathers* exhibit the same kind of structure as Hairs; their cortical portion being the horny sheath that envelopes the shaft, and their medullary portion being the pith-like substance which that sheath includes. In small feathers, this may usually be made very plain by mounting them in Canada balsam; in large feathers, however, the texture is sometimes so altered by the drying up of the pith (the cells of which are always found to be occupied by air alone), that the cellular structure cannot be demonstrated save by boiling thin slices in a dilute solution of potass, and not always even then. In small feathers, especially such as have a downy character, the cellular structure is very distinctly seen in the lateral *barbs*, which are sometimes found to be composed of single files of pear-shaped cells, laid end-to-end; but in larger feathers it is usually necessary to increase the transparence of the barbs, especially when these are thick and but little pervious to light, either by soaking them in turpentine, mounting them in Canada balsam, or boiling them in a weak solution of potass. In feathers which are destined to strike the air with great force in the act of flight, we find each barb fringed on either side with slender flattened filaments or 'barbules;' the barbules of one side of each

barb are furnished with curved hooks, whilst those of the other side have thick turned-up edges; and as the two sets of barbules that spring from two adjacent barbs cross one another at an angle, and as each hooked barbule of one locks into the thickened edge of several barbules of the other, the barbs are connected very firmly, in a mode very similar to that in which the anterior and posterior wings of certain Hymenopterous Insects are locked together (§ 638).—Feathers or portions of feathers of Birds distinguished by the splendour of their plumage are very good objects for low magnifying powers, when illuminated on an opaque ground; but care must be taken that the light falls upon them at the angle necessary to produce their most brilliant reflection into the axis of the Microscope; since feathers which exhibit the most splendid metallic lustre to an observer at one point, may seem very dull to the eye of another in a different position. The small feathers of Humming-birds, portions of the feathers of the Peacock, and others of a like kind, are well worthy of examination; and the scientific Microscopist, who is but little attracted by mere gorgeousness, may well apply himself to the discovery of the peculiar structure which imparts to these objects their most remarkable character.

664. Sections of *horns, hoofs, claws*, and other like modifications of Epidermic structure,—which can be easily made by the Microtome (§ 184), the substance to be cut having been softened, if necessary, by soaking in warm water,—do not in general afford any very interesting features when viewed in the ordinary mode; but there are no objects on which Polarized light produces more remarkable effects, or which display a more beautiful variety of colours when a plate of Selenite is placed behind them and the analyzing prism is made to rotate. A curious modification of the ordinary structure of Horn is presented in the appendage borne by the *Rhinoceros* upon its snout, which in many points resembles a bundle of hairs, its substance being arranged in minute cylinders around a number of separate centres, which have probably been formed by independent papillæ (Fig. 454). When transverse sections of these cylinders are viewed by polarized light, each of them is seen to be marked by a cross, somewhat resembling that of

Fig. 454.



Transverse section of Horn of *Rhinoceros*, viewed by Polarized Light.

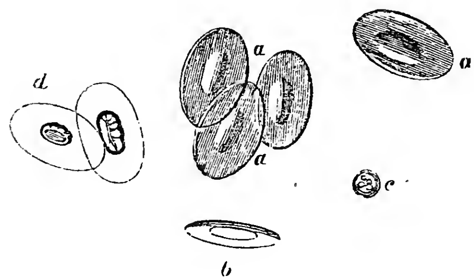
Starch-grains; and the light and shadow of this cross are replaced by contrasted colours when the Selenite plate is interposed.—The substance commonly but erroneously termed *whalebone*, which is formed from the surface of the membrane that lines the mouth of the Whale, and has no relation to its true bony skeleton, is almost identical in structure with Rhinoceros horn, and is similarly affected by polarized light. The central portion of each of its component threads, like the medullary substance of Hairs, contains cells that have been so little altered as to be easily recognized; and the outer or cortical portion also may be shown to have a like structure, by macerating it in a solution of potass, and then in water.—Sections of any of the Horny tissues are best mounted in Canada balsam.

665. *Blood.*—Carrying our Microscopic survey, now, to the elementary parts of which those softer tissues are made up, that are subservient to the active life of the body rather than to its merely-mechanical requirements, we shall in the first place notice the isolated floating cells contained in the Blood, which are known as Blood-corpuscles. These are of two kinds; the 'red,' and the 'white' or 'colourless.'—The *red* present, in every instance, the form of a flattened disk, which is circular in Man and most Mammalia (Fig. 456), but is oval in Birds, Reptiles (Fig. 455), and Fishes, as also in a few Mammals (all belonging to the *Camel* tribe). In the one form, as in the other, these corpuscles seem to be flattened cells, the walls of which, however, are not distinctly differentiated from the ground-substance they contain; as appears fromthe changes of form which they spontaneously undergo when kept by means of a 'warm stage'* at a temperature of about 100°, and from the effects of pressure in breaking them up. The red corpuscles in the blood of Oviparous Vertebrata are distinguished by the presence of a central spot or *nucleus;* this is most distinctly brought into view by treating the blood-disks with acetic acid, which causes the nucleus to shrink and become more opaque, whilst rendering the remaining portion extremely transparent (Fig. 455, *d*). By examining unaltered red corpuscles of the Frog or Newt under a sufficiently high magnifying power, the nucleus is seen to be traversed by a network of filaments, which extends from it

* A very simple mode of applying continued warmth to an object under observation, is to lay the slide on a thin plate of brass or tin, about 3 inches longer than the breadth of the stage, and about 2 inches broad; which must be perforated with a hole about 1-4th inch in diameter, at the distance of half the breadth of the stage from one end of it. When this plate is laid on the stage, and its hole is brought into the optic axis, so as to allow the light reflected upwards from the mirror to pass to the slide laid upon it, the plate will project about 3 inches on one side of the stage,—preferably the right. By placing a small lamp beneath this projection and keeping the finger of the left hand on the part of the plate close to the object (so as to feel the degree of warmth imparted to it), the heat given by the lamp may be regulated by varying its position.—For more exact and continuous regulation of the temperature, recourse may be had to the 'warm stage' devised by Prof. Schäfer and made by Mr. Casella, which is traversed by a current of warm water. See "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," N.S., Vol. xiv. (1874), p. 394.

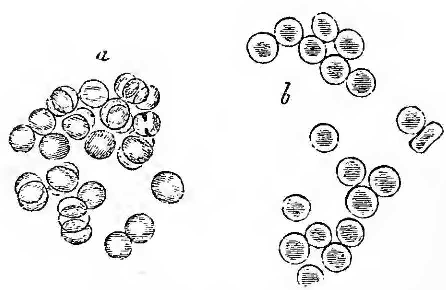
throughout the ground-substance of the corpuscle, constituting an intra-cellular reticulation.—The red corpuscles of the blood of Mammals, however, possess no distinguishable nucleus; the dark spot which is seen in their centre (Fig. 456, *b*) being merely an effect of refraction, consequent upon the double-concave form of the disk. When these corpuscles are treated with water, so that their form becomes first flat, and then double-convex, the dark spot disappears; whilst, on the other hand, it is made more evident when the concavity is increased by the partial shrinkage of the corpuscles, which may be brought about by treating them with fluids of greater density than their own substance. When floating in a sufficiently thick stratum of blood drawn from the body, and placed under a cover-glass, the red corpuscles show a marked tendency to approach one another, adhering by their discoidal surfaces so as to present the aspect of a pile of coins; or, if the stratum be too thin to admit of this, partially overlapping, or simply adhering by their edges, which then become polygonal instead of circular. The size of the red corpuscles is not altogether uniform in the same blood; thus it varies in that of Man from about the 1-4000th to the 1-2800th of an inch. But we generally find that there is an average size, which is pretty constantly maintained among the different individuals of the same species; that of Man may be stated at about 1-3200th of an inch. The following Table* exhibits the average dimensions of some of the most interesting examples of the red corpuscles in the four classes of Vertebrated Animals, expressed in fractions of an inch. Where two measurements are given, they are the long and the short diameters of the same

FIG. 455.



Red Corpuscles of *Frog's* Blood:—*a a*, their flattened face, *b*, particle turned nearly edgeways; *c*, colourless corpuscle; *d*, red corpuscles altered by diluted acetic acid.

FIG. 456.



Red Corpuscles of *Human* Blood; represented at *a*, as they are seen when rather within the focus of the Microscope, and at *b* as they appear when precisely in the focus.

* These measurements are chiefly selected from those given by Mr. Gulliver, in his edition of Hewson's Works, p. 236 *et seq.*

MAMMALS.

Man	1-3200	Camel	1-3254, 1-5921
Dog	1-3542	Llama	1-3361, 1-6294
Whale	1-3099	Java Musk-Deer	1-12325
Elephant	1-2745	Caucasian Goat	1-7045
Mouse	1-3814	Two-toed Sloth	1-2865

BIRDS.

Golden Eagle	1-1812, 1-3832	Ostrich	1-1649, 1-3000
Owl	1-1830, 1-3400	Cassowary	1-1455, 1-2800
Crow	1-1961, 1-4000	Heron	1-1913, 1-3491
Blue-Tit	1-2313, 1-4128	Fowl	1-2102, 1-3466
Parrot	1-1898, 1-4000	Gull	1-2097, 1-4000

REPTILES AND BATRACHIA.

Turtle	1-1231, 1-1882	Frog	1-1108, 1-1821
Crocodile	1-1231, 1-2286	Water-Newt	1-8014, 1-1246
Green Lizard	1-1555, 1-2743	Siren	1-420, 1-760
Slow-worm	1-1178, 1-2666	Proteus	1-400, 1-727
Viper	1-1274, 1-1800	Amphiuma	1-345, 1-561

FISHES.

Perch	1-2099, 1-2824	Pike	1-2000, 1-3555
Carp	1-2142, 1-3429	Eel	1-1745, 1-2842
Gold-Fish	1-1777, 1-2824	Gymnotus	1-1745, 1-2599

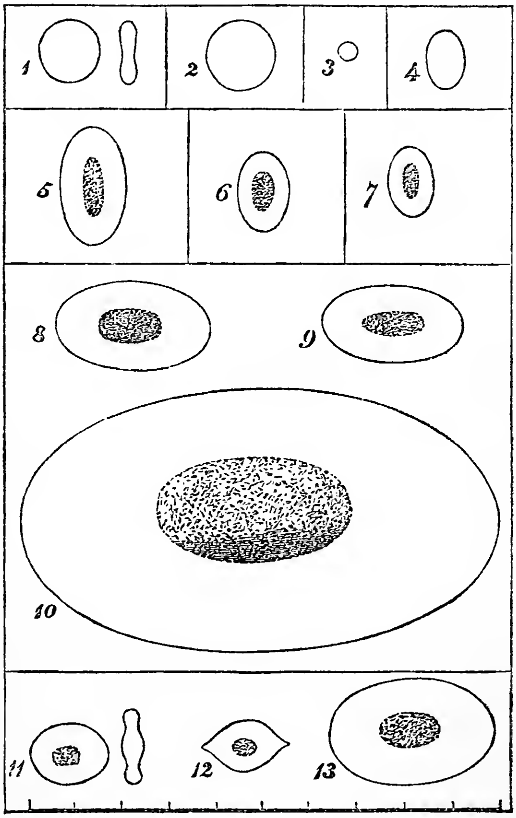
corpuscles. (See also Fig. 457.) Thus it appears that the *smallest* red corpuscles known are those of the *Musk-deer;* whilst the *largest* are those of that curious group of Batrachia (Frog-tribe) which retain the gills through the whole of life; and one of the oval blood-disks of the *Proteus,* being more than 30 times as long and 17 times as broad as those of the Musk-deer, would cover no fewer than 510 of them.—Those of the *Amphiuma* are still larger.*—According to the estimate of Vierordt, a cubic inch of Human blood contains upwards of *eighty millions* of red corpuscles, and nearly a *quarter of a million* of the colourless.

666. The *white* or 'colourless' corpuscles are more readily distinguished in the blood of Reptiles than in that of Man; being in the former case of much smaller size, as well as having a circular outline (Fig. 455, *c*); whilst in the latter their size and contour are so nearly the same, that, as the red corpuscles themselves, when seen in a single layer, have but a very pale hue, the deficiency of colour does not sensibly mark their difference of nature. The proportion of *white* to *red* corpuscles being scarcely ever greater (in a healthy Man) than 1 to 250, and often as low as from one-half to one-quarter of that ratio, there are seldom many of them to be seen in the field at once; and these may be recognized rather by their isolation than their colour, especially if the glass cover be moved a little on the slide, so as to cause the red corpuscles to become aggregated into rows and irregular masses.—It is remarkable

* A very interesting account of the 'Structure of the Red Corpuscles of the *Amphiuma tridactylum*' has been given by Dr. H. D. Schmidt, of New Orleans, in the "Journ. of the Royal Microsc. Society," Vol. i. (1879), pp. 57, 97.

that, notwithstanding the great variations in the sizes of the red corpuscles in different species of Vertebrated animals, the size of the white is extremely constant throughout, their diameter being seldom much greater or less than 1-3000th of an inch in the warm-blooded classes, and 1-2500th in Reptiles. Their ordinary form is globular; but their aspect is subject to considerable variations, which seem to depend in great part upon their phase of development. Thus, in their early state, in which they seem to be identical with the corpuscles found floating in *chyle* and *lymph*, they seem to be nearly homogeneous particles of protoplasmic substance: but in their more advanced condition, according to Dr. Klein, their substance consists of a reticulation of very fine contractile protoplasmic fibres, termed the 'intra-cellular network;' in the meshes of which a hyaline interstitial material is included; and which is continuous with a similar network that can be discerned in the substance of the single or double nucleus, when this comes into view after the withdrawal of these corpuscles from the body. In their living state, however, whilst circulating in the vessels, the white corpuscles, although clearly distinguishable in the slow-moving stratum in contact with their walls (the red corpuscles rushing rapidly through the centre of the tube), do not usually show a distinct nucleus. This may be readily brought into view by treating the corpuscles with water, which causes them to swell up, become granular, and at last disintegrate, with the emission of granules which may have been previously seen in active

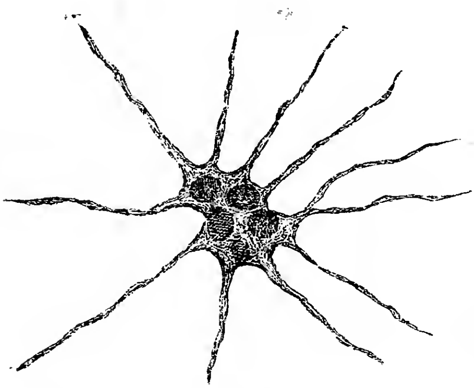
Fig. 457.



Comparative sizes of Red Blood-Corpuscles:—1. Man; 2. Elephant; 3. Musk-Deer; 4. Dromedary; 5. Ostrich; 6. Pigeon; 7. Humming Bird; 8. Crocodile; 9. Python; 10. Proteus; 11, Perch; 12. Pike; 13. Shark.

molecular movement within the corpuscle.—When the white corpuscles in a drop of freshly drawn blood are carefully watched for a short time, they may be observed to undergo changes of form, and even to move from place to place, after the manner of *Amœbæ* (§ 403). When thus moving, they engulf particles which lie in their course—such as granules of vermilion that have been injected into the blood-vessels of the living animal,—and afterwards eject these, in the like fashion. Such movements will continue for some time in the colourless corpuscles of cold-blooded animals, but still longer if they are kept in a temperature of about 75°. The movement will speedily come to an end, however, in the white corpuscles of Man or other warm-blooded animals, unless the slide is kept on a warm stage at the temperature of about 100° F. A remarkable example of an extreme change of form in a white corpuscle of Human blood, is represented in Fig. 458. Similar changes have been observed also in the corpuscles floating in the circulating fluid of the higher Invertebrata, as the Crab, which resemble the 'white' corpuscles of Vertebrated blood, rather than its 'red' corpuscles,—these last, in fact, being altogether peculiar to the circulating fluid of Vertebrated animals.

Fig. 458.



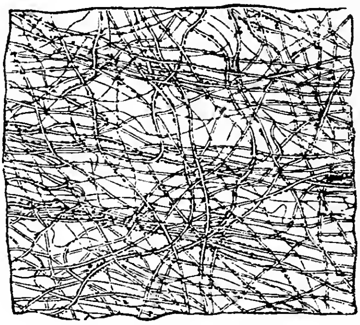
Altered White Corpuscle of Blood, an hour after having been drawn from the finger.

667. In examining the Blood microscopically, it is, of course, important to obtain as thin a stratum of it as possible, so that the corpuscles may not overlie one another. This is best accomplished by selecting a piece of thin glass of perfect flatness, and then, having received a small drop of Blood upon a glass slide, to lay the thin-glass cover *not upon* this, but with its edge just touching the edge of the drop; for the blood will then be drawn-in by capillary attraction, so as to spread in a uniformly-thin layer between the two glasses, Such thin films may be preserved in the liquid state by applying a cover-glass and cementing it with gold size before evaporation has taken place; but it is preferable first to expose the drop to the vapour of Osmic acid, and then to apply a drop of a weak solution of Acetate of Potass; after which a cover-glass may be put on, and secured with gold-size in the usual way. It is far simpler, however, to allow such films to dry without any cover, and then merely to cover them for protection; and in this condition the general characters of the corpuscles can be very well made-out, notwithstanding that they have in some degree shrivelled by the

desiccation they have undergone. And this method is particularly serviceable, as affording a fair means of comparison, when the assistance of the Microscopist is sought in determining, for Medico-legal purposes, the source of suspicious blood-stains; the average dimensions of the dried blood-corpuscle of the several domestic animals being sufficiently different from each other, and from those of Man, to allow the nature of any specimen to be pronounced-upon with a high degree of probability.

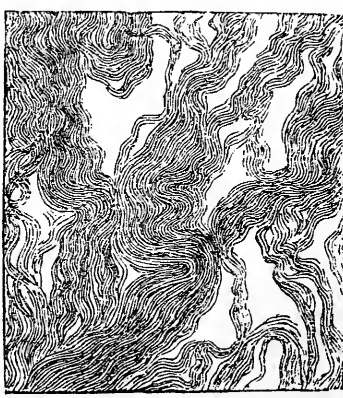
668. *Simple Fibrous Tissues.*—A very beautiful example of a tissue of this kind is furnished by the membrane of the common Fowl's egg; which (as may be seen by examining an egg whose shell remains soft for want of consolidation by calcareous particles) consists of two principal layers, one serving as the basis of the shell itself, and the other forming that lining to it which is known as the *membrana putaminis.* The latter may be separated by careful tearing with needles and forceps, after prolonged maceration in water, into several matted lamellæ resembling that represented in Fig. 459; and similar lamellæ may be readily obtained from the shell itself, by dissolving away its lime by dilute acid.*—The simply-fibrous structures of the body generally, however, belong to one of two very definite kinds of tissue, the 'white' and the 'yellow,' whose appearance, composition, and properties are very different. The *white* fibrous tissue, though sometimes apparently composed of distinct fibres, more commonly presents the aspect of bands, usually of a flattened form, and attaining the breadth of 1-500th of an inch, which are marked by numerous longitudinal streaks, but can seldom be torn-up into minute fibres of determinate size. The fibres and bands are occasionally somewhat wavy in their direction; and they have a peculiar tendency to fall into undulations, when it is attempted to tear them apart from each other (Fig. 460). This tissue is easily distinguished from the

Fig. 459.



Fibrous membrane from Egg-shell.

Fig. 460.

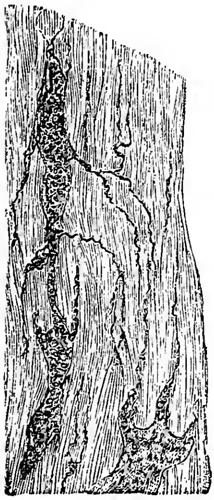


White Fibrous Tissue from Ligament.

* For an account of the curious form in which the Carbonate of Lime is disposed in the Egg-shell, see § 710.

other by the effect of Acetic acid, which swells it up and renders it transparent, at the same time bringing into view certain oval nuclear particles of 'germinal matter,' which are known as 'connective-tissue corpuscles' (§ 651). These are relatively much larger, and their connections more distinct, in the earlier stages of the formation of this tissue (Fig. 461). It is perfectly inelastic; and we find it in such parts as tendons, ordinary ligaments, fibrous capsules, &c., whose function it is to resist tension without yielding to it. It constitutes, also, the organic basis or matrix of bone; for although the substance which is left when a bone has been macerated sufficiently long in dilute acid for all its Mineral components to be removed, is commonly designated as cartilage, this is shown by careful Microscopic analysis not to be a correct description of it; since it does not show any of the characteristic structure of cartilage, but is capable of being torn into lamellæ, in which, if sufficiently thin, the ordinary structure of a fibrous membrane can be distinguished.—The *yellow* fibrous tissue exists in the form of long, single, elastic, branching filaments, with a dark decided border; which are disposed to curl when not put on the stretch (Fig. 462), and frequently anastomose, so as to form a network. They are for the most part between 1-5000th and 1-10,000th of an inch in diameter; but they are often met with both larger and smaller. This tissue does not undergo any change, when treated with Acetic acid. It exists alone (that is without any mixture of the white) in parts which require a peculiar elasticity, such as the middle coat of the arteries, the 'vocal cords,' the 'ligamentum nuchæ' of Quadrupeds, the elastic ligament which holds together the valves of a Bivalve shell, and that by which the claws of the Feline tribe are retracted when not in use; and it enters largely into the composition of *areolar* or connective tissue.

FIG. 461.



Portion of young *Tendon*, showing the corpuscles of Germinal Matter, with their stellate prolongations, interposed among its fibres.

FIG. 462.

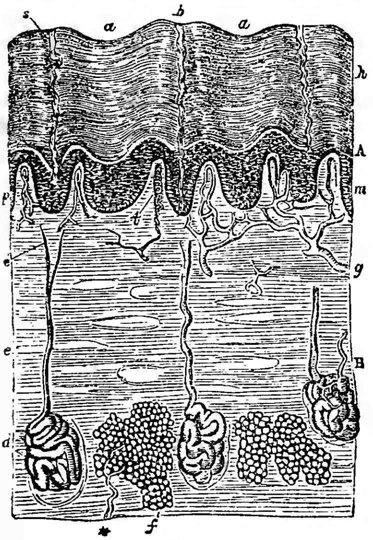
Yellow Fibrous Tissue from Ligamentum Nuchæ of Calf.

669. The tissue formerly known to Anatomists as 'cellular,' but now more properly designated *connective* or *areolar* tissue, consists of a network of minute fibres and bands, which are interwoven in every direction, so as to leave innumerable *areolæ* or little spaces that communicate freely with one another. Of these fibres, some are of the 'yellow' or elastic kind, but the majority are composed of the 'white' fibrous tissue; and, as in that form of elementary structure, they frequently present the condition of broad flattened bands or membranous shreds in which no distinct fibrous arrangement is visible. The proportion of the two forms varies, according to the amount of elasticity, or of simple resisting power, which the endowments of the part may require. We find this tissue in a very large proportion of the bodies of higher Animals; thus it binds together the ultimate muscular fibres into minute fasciculi, unites these fasciculi into larger ones, these again into still larger ones which are obvious to the eye, and these into the entire muscle; whilst it also forms the membranous divisions between distinct muscles. In like manner it unites the elements of nerves, glands, &c., binds together the fat-cells into minute masses (Fig. 468), these into large ones, and so on; and in this way penetrates and forms part of all the softer organs of the body. But whilst the fibrous structures of which the 'formed tissue' is composed have a purely mechanical function, there is good reason to regard the 'connective-tissue-corpuscles' which are everywhere dispersed among them, as having a most important function in the first production and subsequent maintenance of the more definitely organized portions of the fabric (§ 650). In these corpuscles, distinct *movements*, analogous to those of the sarcodic extensions of Rhizopods, have been recognized in transparent parts, such as the cornea of the eye and the tail of the young Tadpole, by observations made on these parts whilst living.—For the display of the characters of the fibrous tissues, small and thin shreds may be cut with the curved scissors (§ 183) from any part that affords them; and these must be torn asunder with needles under the simple Microscope, until the fibres are separated to a degree sufficient to enable them to be examined to advantage under a higher magnifying power. The difference between the 'white' and the 'yellow' components of connective tissue is at once made apparent by the effect of Acetic acid; whilst the 'connective-tissue-corpuscles' are best distinguished by the staining-process (§ 200), especially in the early stage of the formation of these tissues (Fig. 461).

670. *Skin; Mucous and Serous Membranes.*—The Skin which forms the external envelope of the body, is divisible into two principal layers; the *cutis vera* or 'true skin,' which usually makes up by far the larger part of its thickness, and the 'cuticle,' 'scarf-skin,' or *epidermis*, which covers it. At the mouth, nostrils, and the other orifices of the *open* cavities and canals of the body, the skin passes into the membrane that lines these, which is distinguished as the *mucous* membrane, from the peculiar glairy

secretion of mucus by which its surface is protected. But those great *closed* cavities of the body, which surround the heart, lungs, intestines, &c., are lined by membranes of a different kind; which, as they secrete only a thin serous fluid from their surfaces, are known as *serous* membranes. Both Mucous and Serous membranes consist, like the Skin, of a proper membranous basis, and of a thin cuticular layer, which, as it differs in many points from the epidermis, is distinguished as the Epithelium (§ 673).—The substance of the 'true skin' and of the 'mucous' and 'serous' membranes is principally composed of the fibrous tissues last described; but the skin and the mucous membranes are very copiously supplied with Blood-vessels and with Glandulæ of various kinds; and in the skin we also find abundance of Nerves and Lymphatic vessels, as well as, in some parts, of Hair-follicles. The general appearance ordinarily presented by a thin vertical section of the skin of a part furnished with numerous sensory *papillæ* (§ 682), is shown in Fig. 463: where we see in the deeper layers of the *cutis vera* little clumps of fat-cells, *f*, and the perspiratory glandulæ, *d*, *d*, whose ducts, *e*, *e*, pass upwards: whilst on its surface we distinguish the *vascular* papillæ, *p*, supplied with loops of blood-vessels from the trunk, *g*, and a *tactile* papilla, *t*, with its nerve twig. The spaces between the papillæ are filled-up by the soft 'Malpighian layer,' *m*, of the epidermis, A, in which its colouring matter is chiefly contained, whilst this is covered by the horny layer, *h*, which is traversed by the spirally twisted continuations of the perspiratory ducts, opening at *s* upon the surface, which presents alternating depressions, *a*, and elevations, *b*.—The distribution of the blood-vessels in the Skin and Mucous membranes, which is one of the most interesting features in their structure, and which is intimately connected with their several functions, will come under our notice hereafter (Figs. 479, 482, 483). In Serous membranes, on the other hand, whose function is simply protective, the supply of Blood-vessels is more scanty.

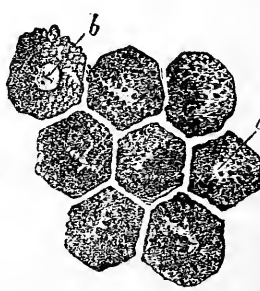
Fig. 463.



Vertical Section of Skin of Finger:—A, *epidermis*, the surface of which shows depressions *a*, *a*, between the eminences *b*, *b*, on which open the perspiratory ducts *s*; at *m* is seen the deeper layer of the epidermis, or stratum Malpighii:—B, *cutis vera*, in which are imbedded the perspiratory glands *d*, with their ducts *e*, and aggregations of fat-cells *f*; *g*, arterial twig supplying the vascular papillæ *p*; *t*, one of the tactile papillæ with its nerve.

671. *Epidermic and Epithelial Cell-layers.*—The Epidermis or 'cuticle' covers the whole exterior of the body, as a thin semi-transparent pellicle, which is shown by Microscopic examination to consist of a series of layers of cells, that are continually wearing-off at the external surface, and being renewed at the surface of the true skin; so that the newest and deepest layers gradually become the oldest and most superficial, and are at last thrown-off by slow desquamation. In their progress from the internal to the external surface of the epidermis, the cells undergo a series of well marked changes. When we examine the innermost layer, we find it soft and granular; consisting of germinal corpuscles in various stages of development into cells, held together by a tenacious semi-fluid substance. This was formerly considered as a distinct tissue, and was supposed to be the peculiar seat of the colour of the skin; it received the designation of Malpighian layer or *rete mucosum*. Passing outwards, we find the cells more completely formed; at first nearly spherical in shape, but becoming polygonal where they are flattened one against another. As we proceed further towards the surface, we perceive that the cells are gradually more and more flattened until they become mere horny scales, their cavity being obliterated; their origin is indicated, however, by the nucleus in the centre of each. This change in form is accompanied by a change in the chemical composition of the tissue, which seems to be due to the metamorphosis of the contents of the cells into a horny substance identical with that of which hair, horn, nails, hoofs, &c., are composed.—Mingled with the epidermic cells, we find others which secrete colouring matter instead of horn; these, which are termed 'pigment-cells,' are especially to be noticed in the epidermis of the Negro and other dark races, and are most distinguishable in the Malpighian layer, their colour appearing to fade as they pass towards the surface.—The most remarkable development of pigment-cells in the higher animals, however, is on the inner surface of the choroid coat of the Eye, where they have a very regular arrangement, and form several layers, known as the *pigmentum nigrum*. When examined separately, these cells are found to have a polygonal form (Fig. 464, *a*), and to have a distinct nucleus (*b*) in their interior. The black colour is given by the accumulation, within each cell, of a number of flat rounded or oval granules, of extreme minuteness, which exhibit an active movement when set-free from the cell, and even whilst enclosed within it. The pigment-cells are not always, however, of this simply rounded or polygonal form; they sometimes present remarkable

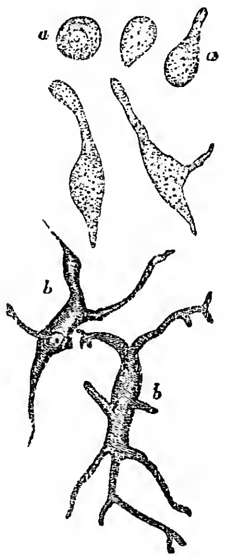
FIG. 464.



Cells from *Pigmentum Nigrum*:—*a*, pigmentary granules concealing the nucleus; *b*, the nucleus.

stellate prolongations, under which form they are well seen in the skin of the Frog (Fig. 478, *c*, *c*). The gradual formation of these prolongations may be traced in the pigment-cells of the Tadpole during its metamorphosis (Fig. 465). Similar varieties of form are to be met-with in the pigmentary cells of Fishes and small Crustacea, which also present a great variety of hues; and these seem to take the colour of the bottom over which the animal may live, so as to serve for its concealment.

Fig. 465.



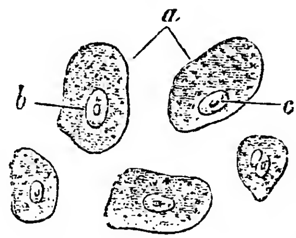
Pigment-cells from tail of *Tadpole*;—*a*, *a*, simple forms of recent origin; *b*, *b*, more complex forms subsequently assumed.

672. The structure of the Epidermis may be examined in a variety of ways. If it be removed by maceration from the true Skin, the cellular nature of its under surface is at once recognized, when it is subjected to a magnifying power of 200 or 300 diameters, by light transmitted through it, with this surface uppermost; and if the epidermis be that of a Negro or any other dark-skinned race, the pigment-cells will be very distinctly seen. This under-surface of the epidermis is not flat, but is excavated into pits and channels for the reception of the papillary elevations of the true Skin; an arrangement which is shown on a large scale in the thick cuticular covering of the Dog's foot, the subjacent papillæ being large enough to be distinctly seen (when injected) with the naked eye. The cellular nature of the newly-forming layers is best seen by examining a little of the soft film that is found upon the surface of the true Skin, after the more consistent layers of the cuticle have been raised by a blister. The alteration which the cells of the external layers have undergone, tends to obscure their character; but if any fragment of epidermis be macerated for a little time in a weak solution of Soda or Potass, its dry scales become softened, and are filled-out by imbibition into rounded or polygonal cells. The same mode of treatment enables us to make out the cellular structure in warts and corns, which are epidermic growths from the surface of papillæ enlarged by hypertrophy.

673. The *Epithelium* may be designated as a delicate cuticle, covering all the free *internal* surfaces of the body, and thus lining all its cavities, canals, &c. Save in the mouth and other parts in which it approximates to the ordinary cuticle both in locality and in nature, its cells (Fig. 466) usually form but a single layer; and are so deficient in tenacity of mutual adhesion, that they cannot

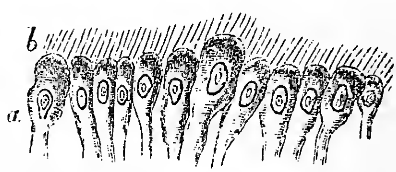
be detached in the form of a continuous membrane. Their shape varies greatly. Sometimes they are broad, flat, and scale-like, and their edges approximate closely to each other, so as to form what is termed a 'pavement' or 'tesselated' epithelium: such cells are observable on the web of a Frog's foot, or on the tail of a Tadpole; for, though covering an external surface, the soft moist cuticle of these parts has all the characters of an epithelium. In other cases the cells have more of the form of cylinders, standing erect side-by-side; one extremity of each cylinder forming part of the free surface, whilst the other rests upon the membrane to which it serves as a covering. If the cylinders be closely pressed together, their form is changed into prisms; and such epithelium is often known as 'prismatic.' On the other hand, if the surface on which it rests be convex, the bases or lower ends of the cylinders become smaller than their free extremities; and thus each has the form of a truncated cone rather than of a cylinder, and such epithelium (of which that covering the *villi* of the intestine, Fig. 479, is a peculiarly-good example) is termed 'conical.' But between these primary forms of epithelial cells, there are several intermediate gradations; and one often passes almost insensibly into the other. —Any of these forms of epithelium may be furnished with *cilia;* but these appendages are more commonly found attached to the elongated, than to the flattened forms of epithelial cells (Fig. 467). Ciliated epithelium is found upon the lining membrane of the air-passages in all air-breathing Vertebrata: and it also presents itself in many other situations, in which a propulsive power is needed to prevent an accumulation of mucous or other secretions. Owing to the very slight attachment that usually exists between the epithelium and the membranous surface whereon it lies, there is usually no difficulty whatever in examining it; nothing more being necessary than to scrape the surface of the membrane with a knife, and to add a little water to what has been thus removed. The ciliary action will generally be found to persist for some hours or even days after death, if the animal has been previously in full vigour;* and the cells that bear the cilia, when detached from each

Fig. 466.



Detached Epithelium-cells; *a*, with nuclei *b*, and nucleoli *c*, from Mucous Membrane of mouth.

Fig. 467.



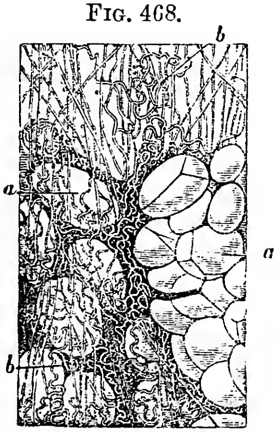
Ciliated Epithelium; *a*, nucleated cells resting on their smaller extremities; *b*, cilia.

* Thus it has been observed in the lining of the windpipe of a decapitated

other, will swim freely about in water. If the thin fluid that is copiously discharged from the nose in the first stage of an ordinary 'cold in the head,' be subjected to microscopic examination, it will commonly be found to contain a great number of ciliated epithelium-cells, which have been thrown-off from the lining membrane of the nasal passages.

674. *Fat.*—One of the best examples which the bodies of higher animals afford, of a tissue composed of an aggregation of cells, is presented by Fat; the cells of which are distinguished by their power of drawing into themselves oleaginous matter from the blood. Fat-cells are sometimes dispersed in the interspaces of areolar tissue; whilst in other cases they are aggregated in distinct masses, constituting the proper Adipose substance. The individual fat-cells always present a nearly spherical or spheroidal form; sometimes, however, when they are closely pressed together, they become somewhat polyhedral, from the flattening of their walls against each other (Fig. 468). Their intervals are traversed by a minute network of blood-vessels (Fig. 480), from which they derive their secretion; and it is probably by the constant moistening of their walls with a *watery* fluid, that their contents are retained without the least transudation, although these are quite fluid at the temperature of the living body. Fat-cells, when filled with their characteristic contents, have the peculiar appearance which has been already described as appertaining to oil-globules (§ 154), being very bright in their centre, and very dark towards their margin, in consequence of their high refractive power; but if, as often happens in preparations that have been long mounted, the oily contents should have escaped, they then look like any other cells of the same form. Although the fatty matter which fills these cells (consisting of a solution of Stearine or Margarine in Oleine) is liquid at the ordinary temperature of the body of a warm-blooded animal, yet its harder portion sometimes crystallizes on cooling; the crystals shooting from a centre, so as to form a star-shaped cluster.—In examining the structure of Adipose tissue, it is desirable, where practicable, to have recourse to some specimen in which the fat-cells lie in single layers, and in which they can be observed without disturbing or laying them open; such a condition is found, for example, in the mesentery of the Mouse; and

FIG. 468.

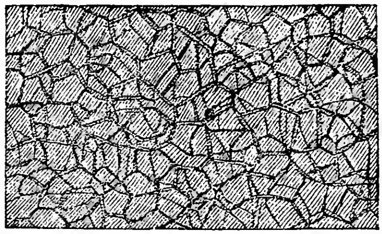


Areolar and *Adipose* tissue; *a, a*, fat-cells; *b, b*, fibres of areolar tissue.

criminal, as much as seven days after death; and in that of the river Tortoise it has been seen fifteen days after death, even though putrefaction had already far advanced.

it is also occasionally met with in the fat-deposits which present themselves at intervals in the connective tissues of the muscles, joints, &c. Small collections of fat-cells exist in the deeper layers of the true skin, and are brought into view by vertical sections of it (Fig. 463, *f*). And the structure of large masses of fat may be examined by thin sections, these being placed under water in thin cells, so as to take-off the pressure of the glass-cover from their surface, which would cause the escape of the oil-particles. No method of mounting (so far as the Author is aware) is successful in causing these cells permanently to retain their contents.

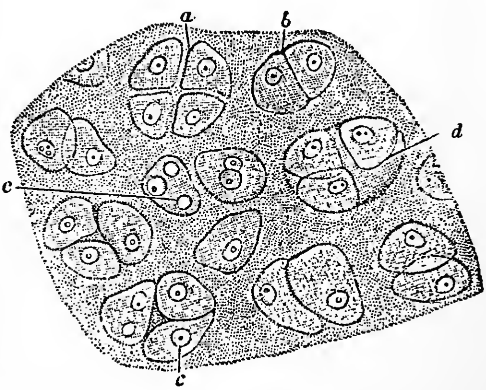
FIG. 469.



Cellular Cartilage of Mouse's-ear.

675. *Cartilage.*—In the ordinary forms of Cartilage, also, we have an example of a tissue essentially composed of cells; but these are commonly separated from each other by an 'intercellular substance,' which is so closely adherent to the outer walls of the cells as not to be separable from them. The thickness of this substance differs greatly in different kinds of cartilage, and even in different stages of the growth of any one. Thus in the cartilage of the external ear of a bat or mouse (Fig. 469), the cells are packed as closely together as are those of an ordinary Vegetable parenchyma (Fig. 236, A); and this seems to be the early condition of most cartilages that are afterwards to present a different aspect. In the ordinary cartilages, however, that cover the extremities of the bones, so as to form smooth surfaces for the working of the joints, the amount of intercellular substance is usually considerable; and the cartilage-cells are commonly found imbedded there in clusters of two, three, or four (Fig. 470), which are evidently formed by a process of 'binary subdivision.' The substance of these *cellular* cartilages is entirely destitute of blood-vessels; being nourished

FIG. 470.



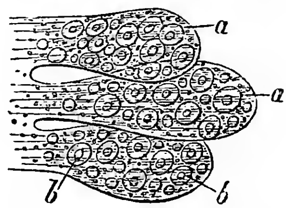
Section of the branchial *Cartilage* of Tadpole:—*a*, group of four cells, separating from each other; *b*, pair of cells in apposition; *c*, *c*, nuclei of cartilage-cells; *d*, cavity containing three cells (the fourth probably behind).

solely by imbibition from the blood brought to the membrane covering their surface. Hence they may be compared, in regard to their grade of organization, with the larger Algæ; which consist, like them, of aggregations of cells held together by intercellular substance, without vessels of any kind, and are nourished by imbibition through their whole surface.—There are many cases, however, in which the structureless intercellular substance is replaced by bundles of fibres, sometimes elastic, but more commonly non-elastic; such combinations, which are termed *fibro*-cartilages, are interposed in certain joints, wherein tension as well as pressure has to be resisted, as for example, between the vertebræ of the spinal column and the bones of the pelvis.—In examining the structure of Cartilage, nothing more is necessary than to make very thin sections with a sharp razor or scalpel, or, if the specimen be large and dense (as the cartilage of the ribs), with the Microtome. These sections may be mounted in weak spirit, Goadby's solution, or glycerine-jelly; but in whatever way they are mounted, they undergo a gradual change by lapse of time, which renders them less fit to display the characteristic features of their structure.

676. *Structure of the Glands.*—The various Secretions of the body (as the saliva, bile, urine, &c.) are formed by the instrumentality of organs termed Glands: which are, for the most part, constructed on one fundamental type, whatever be the nature of their product. The simplest idea of a gland is that which we gain from an examination of the 'follicles' or little bags imbedded in the wall of the stomach; some of which secrete mucus for the protection of its surface, and others gastric juice. These little bags are filled with cells of a spheroidal form, which may be considered as constituting their epithelial lining; these cells, in the progress of their development, draw into themselves from the blood the constituents of the particular product they are to secrete; and they then seem to deliver it up, either by the bursting or by the melting-away of their walls, so that this product may be poured-forth from the mouth of the bag into the cavity in which it is wanted. The Liver itself, in the lowest animals wherein it is found, presents this condition. Some of the cells that form the lining of the stomach in the Hydra and Actinia, seem to be distinguished from the rest by their power of secreting bile, which gives them a brownish-yellow tinge; in many Polyzoa, Compound Tunicata, and Annelida, these biliary cells can be seen to occupy follicles in the walls of the stomach; in Insects these follicles are few in number, but are immensely elongated so as to form biliary tubes, which lie loosely within the abdominal cavity, frequently making many convolutions within it, and discharge their contents into the commencement of the intestinal canal; whilst in the higher Mollusca, and in Crustacea, the follicles are vastly multiplied in number, and are connected with the ramifications of gland-ducts, like grapes upon the stalks of their bunch, so as to form a distinct mass which now becomes known as the Liver. The examination of the biliary

tubes of the Insect, or of the biliary follicles of the Crab, which may be accomplished with the utmost facility, is well adapted to give an idea of the essential nature of glandular structure. Among Vertebrated animals the Salivary glands, the Pancreas (sweet-bread), and the Mammary glands, are well adapted to display the follicular structure (Fig. 471); nothing more being necessary than to make sections of these organs, thin enough to be viewed as transparent objects. The Liver of Vertebrata, however, presents certain peculiarities of structure, which are not yet fully understood; for although it is essentially composed, like other glands, of secreting cells, yet it has not been determined beyond doubt whether these cells are contained within any kind of membranous investment. The Kidneys of Vertebrated animals are made-up of elongated tubes, which are straight, and are lined with a pavement-epithelium in the inner or 'medullary' portion of the kidney, whilst they are convoluted and filled with a spheroidal epithelium in the outer or 'cortical.' Certain flask-shaped dilatations of these tubes include curious little knots of blood-vessels, which are known as the 'Malpighian bodies' of the kidney; these are well displayed in injected preparations.—For such a full and complete investigation of the structure of these organs as the Anatomist and Physiologist require, various methods must be put in practice which this is not the place to detail. It is perfectly easy to demonstrate the cellular nature of the substance of the Liver, by simply scraping a portion of its cut surface; since a number of its cells will be then detached. The general arrangement of the cells in the lobules may be displayed by means of sections thin enough to be transparent; whilst the arrangement of the blood-vessels can only be shown by means of Injections (§ 687). Fragments of the tubules of the Kidney, sometimes having the Malpighian capsules in connection with them, may also be detached by scraping its cut surface; but the true relations of these parts can only be shown by thin transparent sections, and by injections of the blood-vessels and tubuli. The simple follicles contained in the walls of the Stomach are brought into view by vertical sections; but they may be still better examined by leaving small portions of the lining membrane for a few days in dilute nitric acid (one part to four of water), whereby the fibrous tissue will be so softened, that the clusters of glandular epithelium lining the follicles (which are but very little altered) will be readily separated.

FIG. 471.

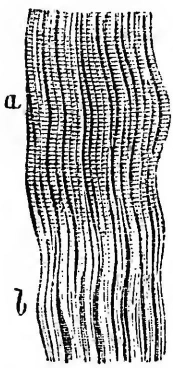


Ultimate Follicles of Mammary Gland, with their secreting cells *a*, *a*, containing nuclei *b*, *b*.

677. *Muscular Tissue.*—Although we are accustomed to speak of this tissue as consisting of 'fibres,' yet the ultimate structure of the 'muscular fibre' is very different from that of the 'simple

fibrous tissues' already described. When we examine an ordinary muscle (or piece of 'flesh') with the naked eye, we observe that it is made-up of a number of *fasciculi* or bundles of fibres (Fig. 472), which are arranged side-by-side with great regularity, in the direction in which the muscle is to act, and are united by connective tissue. These fasciculi may be separated into smaller parts, which appear like simple fibres; but when these are examined by the Microscope, they are found to be themselves fasciculi, composed of minuter fibres bound together by delicate filaments of connective tissue. By carefully separating these, we may obtain the ultimate muscular fibre. This fibre exists under two forms, the *striated* and the *non-striated*. The former is chiefly distinguished by the transversely-striated appearance which it presents (Fig. 473), and which is due to an alternation of light and dark spaces along its whole extent; the breadth and distance of these striæ vary, however, in different fibres, and even in different parts of the same fibre, according to their state of contraction or relaxation. Longitudinal striæ are also frequently visible, which are due to a partial separation between the component fibrillæ into which the fibre may be broken up.—When a fibre of this kind is more closely examined, it is seen to be enclosed within a delicate tubular sheath, which is quite distinct on the one hand from the connective tissue that binds the fibres into fasciculi, and equally distinct from the internal substance of the fibre. This membranous tube, which is termed the *sarcolemma*, is not perforated by capillary vessels, which therefore lie *outside* the ultimate elements of the muscular substance; whether it is penetrated by the ultimate fibres of nerves, is a point not yet certainly ascertained.—The diameter of the fibres varies greatly in different kinds of Vertebrated animals. Its average is greater in Reptiles and Fishes than in Birds and Mammals, and its extremes also are wider; thus its dimensions vary in the Frog from 1-100th to 1-1000th of an inch, and in the Skate from 1-65th to 1-300th; whilst in the Human subject the average is about 1-400th of an inch, and the extremes about 1-200th and 1-600th.

Fig. 472.

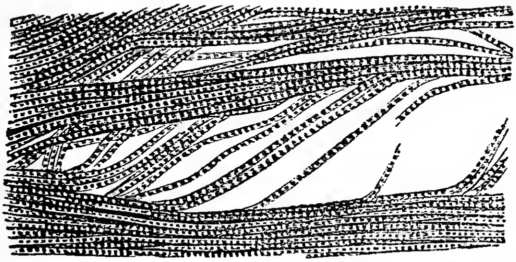


Fasciculus of *striated* Muscular Fibre, showing at *a* the transverse striæ, and at *b* its junction with the tendon.

678. The substance of the fibre, when broken up by 'teazing' with needles, is found to consist of very minute fibrillæ, which, when examined under a magnifying power of from 250 to 400 diameters, are seen to present a slightly-beaded form, and to show the same alternation of light and dark spaces as when the fibrillæ are united into fibres or into small bundles (Fig. 473). The dark and light spaces are usually of nearly equal length: each light space is divided by a transverse line, called 'Dobie's line;' while each dark space is crossed by a lighter band, known as 'Hensen's stripe.'

It has been generally supposed that these markings indicate differences in the *composition* of the fibre; but Mr. J. B. Haycroft has

FIG. 473.



Striated *Muscular Fibre*, separating into fibrillæ.

recently revived an idea which originated with Mr. Bowman, that they are the optical expressions of its *shape*. The borders of the striated fibre (he truly states) present wavy margins, indicative of a transverse ridging and furrowing; the whole fibre (or a single fibril) thus consisting of a succession of convex bead-like projections with intermediate concave depressions. When the *axis* of the fibre is in true focus, Dobie's line, D, crosses the deepest part of the concavity, while Hensen's stripe, H, crosses the most projecting part of the convexity; and it can be shown, both theoretically and experimentally, that this alternation of lights and shades will be produced by the passage of light through a similarly-shaped homogeneous rod of any transparent substance. If, on the other hand, the *surface* of the fibre be brought into focus, the convex ribbings appear light and the intervening depressions dark,—which is the aspect originally represented by Bowman. The appearances are the same in the extended and contracted states of the fibre; with the exception that the alternation of light and dark striæ is closer in the contracted state, while the breadth (representing the thickness) of the fibre is correspondingly increased.*

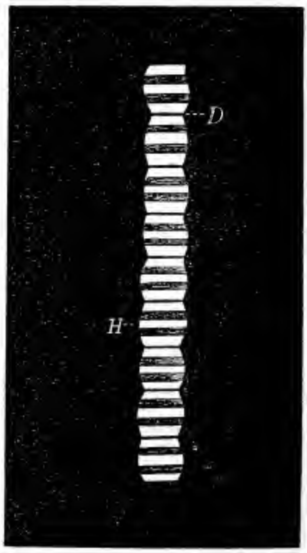


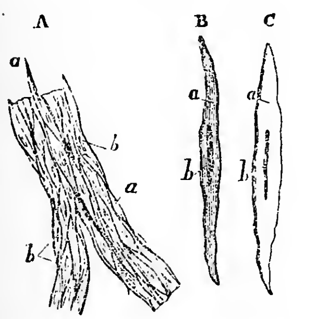
Diagram of Striated Fibrilla.

679. In the examination of Muscular tissue, a small portion may be cut-out with the curved scissors; this should be torn up into its component fibres; and these, if possible, should be separated into their fibrillæ, by dissection with a pair of needles under the Simple

* "Quart. Journ. Microsc. Science," N.S., Vol. xxi., p. 307.

Microscope. The general characters of the *striated* fibre are admirably shown in the large fibres of the Frog; and by selecting a portion in which these fibres spread themselves out to unite with a broad tendinous expansion, they may often be found so well displayed in a single layer, as not only to exhibit all their characters without any dissection, but also to show their mode of connection with the 'simple fibrous' tissue of which that expansion is formed. As the ordinary characters of the fibre are but little altered by boiling, recourse may be had to this process for their more ready separation, especially in the case of the tongue. Dr. Beale recommends Glycerine for the preparation, and Glycerine-media for the preservation, of objects of this class; and states that the alternation of light and dark spaces in the fibrillæ is rendered more distinct by such treatment. The fibrillæ are often more readily separable when the muscle has been macerated in a weak solution of Chromic acid. —The shape of the fibres can only be properly seen in cross sections; and these are best made by the Freezing Microtome (§ 191). —Striated fibres, separable with great facility into their component fibrillæ, are readily obtainable from the limbs of Crustacea and of Insects; and their presence is also readily distinguishable in the bodies of Worms, even of very low organization; so that it may be regarded as characteristic of the Articulated series generally. On the other hand, the Molluscous classes are for the most part distinguished by the non-striation of their fibre; there are, however, two remarkable exceptions, strongly striated fibre having been found in the *Terebratula* and other *Brachiopods* (where, however, it is limited to the *anterior* adductor muscles of the shell), and also in many *Polyzoa*. Its presence seems related to energy and rapidity of movement; the non-striated presenting itself where the movements are slower and feebler in their character.

Fig. 474.

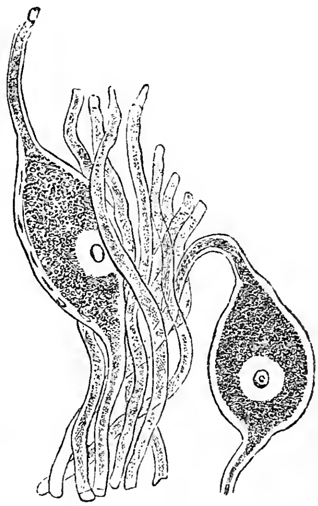


Structure of *non-striated* Muscular Fibre:—A, portion of tissue showing fusiform cells *a*, *a*, with elongated nuclei *b*, *b*;—B, a single cell isolated and more highly magnified; C, a similar cell treated with acetic acid.

680. The 'smooth' or *non-striated* form of Muscular fibre, which is especially found in the walls of the stomach, intestines, bladder, and other similar parts, is composed of flattened bands whose diameter is usually between 1-2000th and 1-3000th of an inch; and these bands are collected into fasciculi, which do not lie parallel with each other, but cross and interlace. By macerating a portion of such muscular substance, however, in dilute nitric acid (about one part of ordinary acid to three parts of water) for two or three days, it is found that the bands just mentioned may be easily separated into elongated fusiform cells, not unlike 'woody fibre' in

shape (Fig. 474, *a, a*); each distinguished, for the most part, by the presence of a long staff-shaped nucleus, *b*, brought into view by the action of acetic acid, *c*. These cells, in which the distinction between cell-wall and cell-contents can by no means be clearly seen, are composed of a soft yellow substance often containing small pale granules, and sometimes yellow globules of fatty matter. In the coats of the Blood-vessels are found cells having the same general characters, but shorter and wider in form; and although some of these approach very closely in their general appearance to epithelium-cells, yet they seem to have quite a different nature, being distinguished by their elongated nuclei, as well as by their contractile endowments.

Fig. 475.

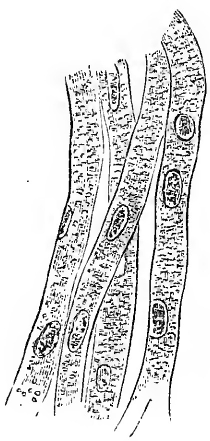


Ganglion-cells and Nerve-fibres from a ganglion of *Lamprey*.

681. *Nerve-substance.*—Wherever a distinct Nervous System can be made out, it is found to consist of two very different forms of tissue—namely, the *cellular*, which are the essential components of the ganglionic centres, and the *fibrous*, of which the connecting trunks consist. The typical form of the nerve-cells or 'ganglion-globules' may be regarded as globular; but they often present an extension into one or more long processes, which give them a 'caudate' or 'stellate' aspect. These processes have been traced into continuity, in some instances, with the axis-cylinders of nerve-tubes (Fig. 475); whilst in other cases they seem to inosculate with those of other vesicles. The cells, which do not seem to possess a definite cell-wall, are for the most part composed of a finely-granular substance, which extends into their prolongations; and in the midst of this is usually to be seen a large well-defined nucleus. They also generally contain pigment-granules, which give them a reddish or yellowish-brown colour, and thus impart to collections of ganglionic cells in the warm-blooded Vertebrata that peculiar hue, which causes it to be known as the *cineritious* or *grey* matter, but which is commonly absent among the lower animals.—Each of the tubular nerve-fibres, on the other hand, of which the trunks are made up, consists, in its fully-developed form, of a delicate membranous sheath, within which is a hollow cylinder of a material known as the 'white substance of Schwann,' whose outer and inner boundaries are marked-out by two distinct lines, giving to each margin of the nerve-tube what is described as a 'double contour.' The contents of the membranous envelope are very soft, yielding to slight pressure; and they are so quickly altered by

the contact of water or of any liquids which are foreign to their nature, that their characters can only be properly judged-of when they are quite fresh. The centre or axis of the tube is then found to be occupied by a transparent substance which is known as the 'axis-cylinder:' and there is reason to believe that this last, which is a protoplasmic substance, is the *essential* component of the nerve-fibre, while the function of the hollow cylinder that surrounds it, which is composed of a combination of fat and albuminous matter, is simply protective. The diameter of the nerve-tubes differs in different nerves; being sometimes as great as 1-1500th of an inch, and as small in other instances as 1-12,000th.—In many of the lower Invertebrata, such as *Medusæ* (§ 523) and *Comatulæ* (§ 546), we seem fully justified by physiological evidence in regarding as Nerves certain protoplasmic fibres which do not possess the characteristic structure of 'nerve-tubes;' and fibres destitute of the 'double contour' are found also in certain parts of the body of even the highest Vertebrates. These fibres, which are known as 'gelatinous,' are considerably smaller than the preceding, and do not exhibit any differentiation of parts (Fig. 476). They are flattened, soft, and homogeneous in their appearance, and contain numerous nuclear particles which are brought into view by acetic acid. They can sometimes be seen to be continuous with the axis-cylinders of the ordinary fibres, and also with the radiating prolongations of the ganglion-cells; so that their nervous character, which has been questioned by some anatomists, seems established beyond doubt.

Fig. 476.

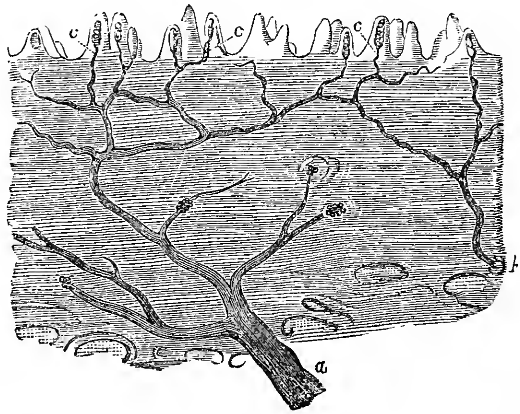


Gelatinous Nerve-fibres, from Olfactory Nerve.

682. The ultimate distribution of the Nerve-fibres is a subject on which there has been great divergence of opinion, and which can only be successfully investigated by observers of great experience. The Author believes that it may be stated as a general fact, that in both the motor and the sensory nerve-tubes, as they approach their terminations in the muscles and in the skin respectively, the protoplasmic axis-cylinder is continued beyond its envelopes; often then breaking-up into very minute fibrillæ, which inosculate with each other so as to form a network closely resembling that formed by the pseudopodial threads of *Rhizopods* (Fig. 283). Recent observers have described the fibrillæ of motor nerves as terminating in 'motorial end-plates' seated upon or in the muscular fibres; and these seem analogous to the little 'islets' of sarcodic substance, into which those threads often dilate.—Where the Skin is specially endowed with tactile sensibility, we find a special *papillary*

apparatus, which in the skin may be readily made out in thin vertical sections treated with solution of soda (Fig. 477). It was formerly supposed that all the cutaneous papillæ are furnished with nerve-fibres, and minister to sensation: but it is now known that a large proportion (at any rate) of those that are furnished with loops of blood-vessels (Figs. 463, *p*, 483), being destitute of nerve-fibres, must have for their special office the production of Epidermis; whilst those which, possessing nerve-fibres, have sensory functions, are usually destitute of blood-vessels. The greater part of the interior of each sensory papilla (Fig. 477, *c*, *c*) of the skin is occupied by a peculiar 'axile body,' which seems to be merely a bundle of ordinary connective tissue, whereon the nerve-fibre appears to terminate. The nerve-fibres are more readily seen, however, in the 'fungiform' papillæ of the Tongue, to each of which several of them proceed; these bodies, which are very transparent, may be well seen by snipping-off minute portions of the tongue of the Frog; or by snipping-off the papillæ themselves from the surface of the living Human tongue, which can be readily done by a dexterous use of the curved scissors, with no more pain than the prick of a pin would give. The transparence of these papillæ also is increased by treating them with a weak solution of soda.—Nerve-fibres have also been found to terminate on sensory surfaces in minute 'end-bulbs' of spheroidal shape and about 1-600th of an inch in diameter; each of them being composed of a simple outer capsule of connective tissue, filled with clear soft matter, in the midst of which the nerve-fibre, after losing its dark border, ends in a knob. The 'Pacinian corpuscles,' which are best seen in the mesentery of the Cat, and are from 1-15th to 1-10th of an inch long, seem to be more developed forms of these 'end-bulbs.'

FIG. 477.



Vertical Section of Skin of Finger, showing the branches of the cutaneous nerves, *a*, *b*, inosculating to form a plexus, of which the ultimate fibres pass into the cutaneous papillæ, *c*, *c*.

683. For the sake of obtaining a general acquaintance with the Microscopic characters of these principal forms of Nerve-substance, it is best to have recourse to minute nerves and ganglia. The small nerves which are found between the skin and the muscles of the back of the Frog, and which become apparent when the former

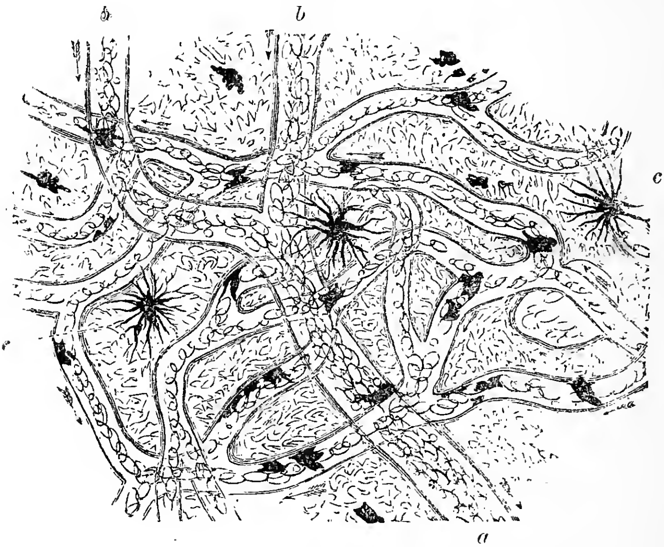
is being stripped-off, are extremely suitable for this purpose; but they are best seen in the *Hyla* or 'tree-frog,' which is recommended by Dr. Beale as being much superior to the common Frog for the general purposes of minute histological investigation. If it be wished to examine the natural appearance of the nerve-fibres, no other fluid should be used than a little blood-serum; but if they be treated with strong acetic acid, a contraction of their tubes takes place, by which the axis-cylinders are forced-out from their cut extremities, so as to be made more apparent than they can be in any other way. On the other hand, by immersion of the tissue in a dilute solution of Chromic acid (about one part of the solid crystals to two hundred of water), the nerve-fibres are rendered firmer and more distinct. Again, the axis-cylinders are brought into distinct view by the staining-process (§ 202 *a*), being dyed much more quickly than their envelopes; and they may thus be readily made-out by reflected light, in transverse sections of nerves that have been thus treated. The *gelatinous* fibres are found in the greatest abundance in the Sympathetic nerves; and their characters may be best studied in the smaller branches of that system.—So, for the examination of the ganglionic cells, and of their relation to the nerve-tubes, it is better to take some minute ganglion as a whole (such as one of the sympathetic ganglia of the Frog, Mouse, or other small animal), than to dissect the larger ganglionic masses, whose structure can only be successfully studied by such as are proficient in this kind of investigation. The nerves of the orbit of the eyes of Fishes, with the ophthalmic ganglion and its branches, which may be very readily got-at in the Skate, and of which the components may be separated without much difficulty, form one of the most convenient objects for the demonstration of the principal forms of nerve-tissue, and especially for the connection of nerve-fibres and ganglion-cells.—For minute inquiries, however, into the ultimate distribution of the nerve-fibres in Muscles and Sense-organs, certain special methods must be followed, and very high magnifying powers must be employed. Those who desire to follow out this inquiry should acquaint themselves with the methods which have been found most successful in the hands of the able Histologists whose works have been already referred to.

684. *Circulation of the Blood.*—One of the most interesting spectacles that the Microscopist can enjoy, is that which is furnished by the Circulation of the Blood in the *capillary* blood-vessels which distribute the fluid through the tissues it nourishes. This, of course, can only be observed in such parts of Animal bodies as are sufficiently thin and transparent to allow of the transmission of light through them, without any disturbance of their ordinary structure; and the number of these is very limited. The web of the Frog's foot is perhaps the most suitable for ordinary purposes, more especially since this animal is to be easily obtained in almost every locality; and the following is the simple arrangement preferred by the Author:—A piece of thin Cork is to be

obtained, about 9 inches long and 3 inches wide (such pieces are prepared by Cork-cutters, as soles), and a hole about 3-8ths of an inch in diameter is to be cut at about the middle of its length, in such a position that, when the cork is secured upon the stage this aperture may correspond with the axis of the Microscope. The body of the Frog is then to be folded in a piece of wet calico, one leg being left free, in such a manner as to confine its movements, but not to press too tightly upon its body; and being then laid down near one end of the cork-plate, the free leg is to be extended, so that the foot can be laid over the central aperture. The spreading-out of the foot over the aperture is to be accomplished, either by passing pins through the edge of the web into the cork beneath, or by tying the ends of the toes with threads to pins stuck into the cork at a small distance from the aperture; the former method is by far the least troublesome, and it may be doubted whether it is really the source of more suffering to the animal than the latter, the confinement being obviously that which is most felt. A few turns of tape, carried *loosely* around the calico bag, the projecting leg, and the cork, serve to prevent any sudden start; and when all is secure, the cork-plate is to be laid down upon the stage of the Microscope, where a few more turns of the tape will serve to keep it in place. The web being moistened with water (a precaution which should be repeated as often as the membrane exhibits the least appearance of dryness), and an adequate light being reflected through the web from the mirror, this wonderful spectacle is brought into view on the adjustment of the focus (a power of from 75 to 100 diameters being the most suitable for ordinary purposes), provided that no obstacle to the movement of the blood be produced by undue pressure upon the body or leg of the animal. It will not unfrequently be found, however, that the current of blood is nearly or altogether stagnant for a time; this seems occasionally due to the animal's alarm at its new position, which weakens or suspends the action of its heart, the movement recommencing again after the lapse of a few minutes, although no change has been made in any of the external conditions. But if the movement should not renew itself, the tape which passes over the body should be slackened; and if this does not produce the desired effect, the calico envelope also must be loosened. When everything has once been properly adjusted, the animal will often lie for hours without moving, or will only give an occasional twitch; and even this may be avoided by previously subjecting it to the influence of chloroform, which may be renewed from time to time whilst it is under observation.—The movement of the Blood will be distinctly seen by that of its corpuscles (Fig. 478), which course after one another through the network of Capillaries that intervenes between the smallest arteries and the smallest veins; in those tubes which pass most directly from the veins to the arteries, the current is always in the same direction; but in those which pass across between these, it may

not unfrequently be seen that the direction of the movement changes from time to time. The larger vessels with which the

FIG. 478.



Capillary Circulation in a portion of the web of a *Frog's* foot:—*a*, trunk of vein; *b*, *b*, its branches; *c*, *c*, pigment-cells.

capillaries are seen to be connected, are almost always *veins*, as may be known from the direction of the flow of blood in them from the branches (*b*, *b*) towards their trunks (*a*); the *arteries*, whose ultimate subdivisions discharge themselves into the capillary network, are for the most part restricted to the immediate borders of the toes. When a power of 200 or 250 diameters is employed, the visible area is of course greatly reduced; but the individual vessels and their contents are much more plainly seen: and it may then be observed that whilst the 'red' corpuscles (§ 665) flow at a very rapid rate along the centre of each tube, the 'white' corpuscles (§ 666) which are occasionally discernible, move slowly in the clear stream near its margin.

685. The Circulation may also be displayed in the *tongue* of the Frog, by laying the animal (previously chloroformed) on its back, with its head close to the hole in the cork-plate, and, after securing the body in this position, drawing-out the tongue with the forceps, and fixing it on the other side of the hole with pins. So, again, the circulation may be examined in the *lungs*—where it affords a spectacle of singular beauty,—or in the *mesentery*, of the living Frog, by laying open its body, and, drawing forth either organ; the animal having previously been made insensible by chloroform. The *tadpole* of the Frog, when sufficiently young, furnishes a good display of the capillary circulation in its tail; and the difficulty of keeping it quiet during the observation may

be overcome by gradually mixing some warm water with that in which it is swimming, until it becomes motionless; this usually happens when it has been raised to a temperature of between 100° and 110°; and notwithstanding that the muscles of the body are thrown into a state of spasmodic rigidity by this treatment, the heart continues to pulsate, and the circulation is maintained.* The *larva of the Water-newt*, when it can be obtained, furnishes a most beautiful display of the circulation, both in its external gills and in its delicate feet. It may be enclosed in a large Aquatic-box or in a shallow cell, gentle pressure being made upon its body, so as to confine its movements without stopping the heart's action.—The circulation may also be seen in the tails of small Fish, such as the *minnow* or the *stickleback*, by confining these animals in tubes, or in shallow cells, or in a large Aquatic-box;† but although the extreme transparence of these parts adapts them well for this purpose in one respect, yet the comparative scantiness of their blood-vessels prevents them from being as suitable as the Frog's web in another not less important particular.—One of the most beautiful of all displays of the circulation, however, is that which may be seen upon the *yolk-bag* of young Fish (such as the Salmon or Trout) soon after they have been hatched; and as it is their habit to remain almost entirely motionless at this stage of their existence, the observation can be made with the greatest facility by means of the Zoophyte-trough, provided that the subject of it can be obtained. Now that the artificial breeding of these Fish is largely practised for the sake of stocking rivers and fish-ponds, there can seldom be much difficulty in procuring specimens at the proper period. The store of yolk which the yolk-bag supplies for the nutrition of the embryo, not being exhausted in the Fish (as it is in the Bird) previously to the hatching of the egg, this bag hangs-down from the belly of the little creature on its emersion; and continues to do so until its contents have been absorbed into the body, which does not take place for some little time afterwards. And the blood is distributed over it in copious streams, partly that it may draw into itself fresh nutritive material, and partly that it may be subjected to the aërating influence of the surrounding water.

686. The Tadpole serves, moreover, for the display, under proper management, not only of the capillary but of the *general* Circulation; and if this be studied under the Binocular Microscope, the observer not only enjoys the gratification of witnessing a most wonderful spectacle, but may also obtain a more accurate notion of the relations of the different parts of the circulating system than is otherwise possible.‡ The Tadpole, as every Naturalist is

* A special form of Live-box for the observation of living Tadpoles, &c., contrived by F. E. Schultze, of Rostock, is described and figured in the "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," N.S., Vol. vii. (1867), p. 261.

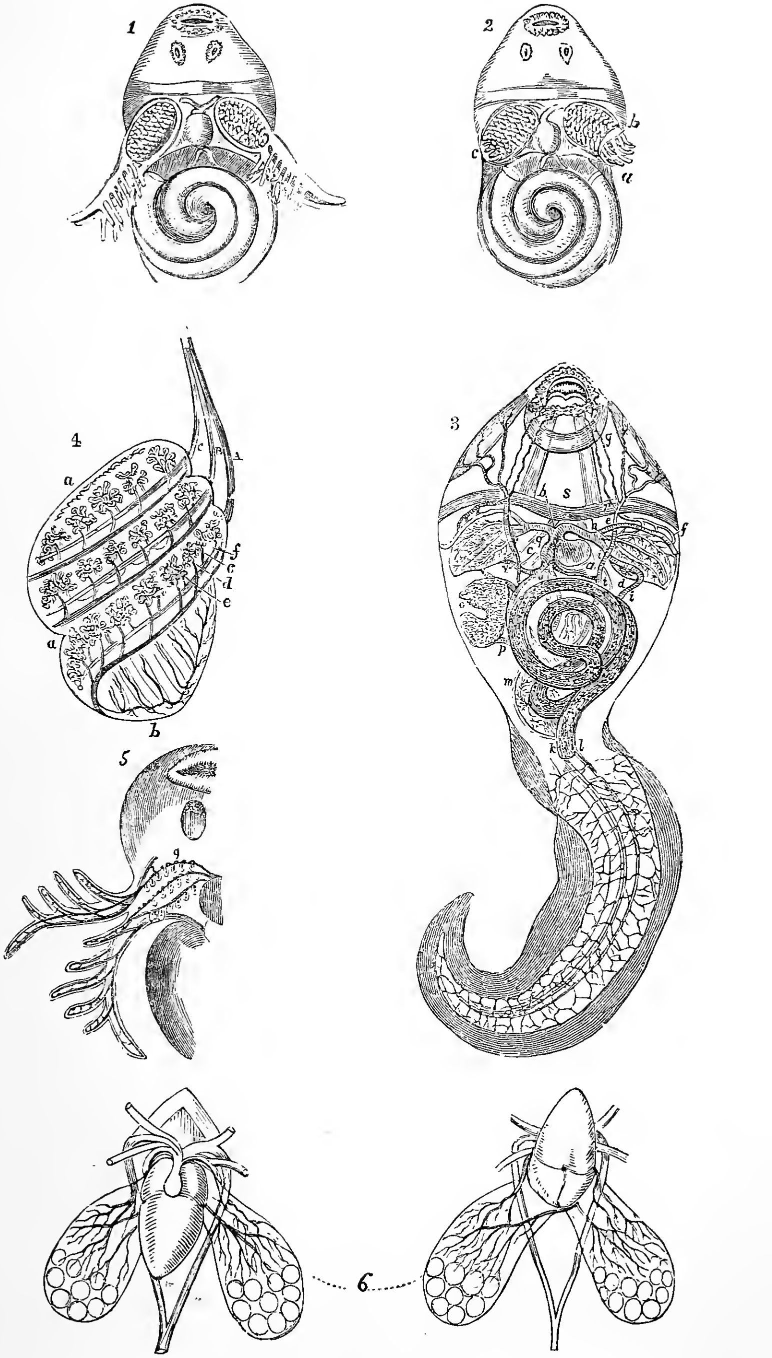
† A convenient Trough for this purpose is described in the "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Science," Vol. vii. (1859), p. 113.

‡ See Mr. Whitney's account of 'The Circulation in the Tadpole,' in

aware, is essentially a Fish in the early period of its existence, breathing by gills alone, and having its circulating apparatus arranged accordingly: but as its limbs are developed and its tail becomes relatively shortened, its lungs are gradually evolved in preparation for its terrestrial life, and the course of the blood is considerably changed. In the Tadpole as it comes forth from the egg, the gills are *external*, forming a pair of fringes hanging at the sides of the head (Plate XXIV., fig. 1); and at the bases of these, concealed by opercula or gill-flaps resembling those of Fishes, are seen the rudiments of the *internal* gills, which soon begin to be developed in the stead of the preceding. The *external* gills reach their highest development on the fourth or fifth day after emersion; and they then wither so rapidly (whilst being at the same time drawn-in by the growth of the animal), that by the end of the first week only a remnant of the right gill can be seen under the edge of the operculum (fig. 2, *c*), though the left gill (*b*) is somewhat later in its disappearance. Concurrently with this change, the *internal* gills are undergoing rapid development; and the beautiful arrangement of their vascular tufts, which originate from the roots of the arteries of the external gills, as seen at *g*, fig. 5, is shown in fig. 4. It is requisite that the Tadpole subjected to observation should not be so far advanced as to have lost its early transparence of skin; and it is further essential to the tracing-out the course of the abdominal vessels, that the creature should have been kept without food for some days, so that the intestine may empty itself. This starving process reduces the quantity of red corpuscles, and thus renders the blood paler; but this, although it makes the smaller branches less obvious, brings the circulation in the larger trunks into more distinct view. "Placing the Tadpole on his back," says Mr. Whitney, "we look, as through a pane of glass, into the chamber of the chest. Before us is the beating heart, a bulbous-looking cavity, formed of the most delicate transparent tissues, through which are seen the globules of the blood, perpetually, but alternately, entering by one orifice and leaving it by another. The heart (Plate XXIV., fig. 3, *a*) appears to be slung, as it were, between two arms or branches, extending right and left. From these trunks (*b*) the main arteries arise. The heart is enclosed within an envelope or pericardium (*c*), which is, perhaps, the most delicate, and is, certainly, the most elegant beauty in the creature's organism. Its extreme fineness makes it often elude the eye under the single Microscope, but under the Binocular its form is distinctly revealed. Then it is seen as a canopy or tent, enclosing the heart, but of such extreme tenuity that its *folds* are really the means by which its existence is recognized. Passing along the course of the great

"Transact. of Microsc. Soc.," N.S., Vol. x. (1862), p. 1, and his subsequent paper 'On the Changes which accompany the Metamorphosis of the Tadpole' in the same Transactions, Vol. xv., p. 43.—In the first of these Memoirs Mr. W. described the internal gills as lungs, an error which he corrected in the second.

PLATE XXIV.



CIRCULATION IN TADPOLE.

[To face p. 803.

vessels to the right and left of the heart, the eye is arrested by a large oval body (*d*) of a more complicated structure and dazzling appearance. This is the internal gill, which, in the Tadpole, is a cavity formed of most delicate transparent tissue, traversed by certain arteries, and lined by a crimson network of blood-vessels, the interlacing of which, with their rapid currents and dancing globules, forms one of the most beautiful and dazzling exhibitions of vascularity." Of the three arterial trunks which arise on each side from the *truncus arteriosus*, *b*, the first, or *cephalic*, *e*, is distributed entirely to the head, running first along the upper edge of the gill, and giving off a branch, *f*, to the thick-fringed lip which surrounds the mouth; after which it suddenly curves upwards and backwards, so as to reach the upper surface of the head, where it dips between the eye and the brain. The second main trunk, *h*, seems to be chiefly distributed to the gill, although it freely communicates by a network of vessels both with the first or cephalic and with the third or abdominal trunk. The latter also enters the gill and gives off branches; but it continues its course as a large trunk, bending downwards and curving towards the spine, where it meets its fellow to form the *abdominal aorta*, *i*, which, after giving-off branches to the abdominal viscera, is continued as the *caudal artery*, *k*, to the extremity of the tail. The blood is returned from the tail by the *caudal vein*, *l*, which is gradually increased in size by its successive tributaries as it passes towards the abdominal cavity; here it approaches the kidney, *m*, and sends off a branch which encloses that organ on one side, while the main trunk continues its course on the other, receiving tributaries from the kidney as it passes. (This supply of the kidney by *venous* blood is a peculiarity of the lower Vertebrata.) The venous blood returned from the abdominal viscera, on the other hand, is collected into a trunk, *p*, known as the *portal vein*, which distributes it through the substance of the liver, *o*, as in Man; and after traversing that organ it is discharged by numerous fine channels, which converge towards the great abdominal trunk, or *vena cava*, *n*, as it passes in close proximity to the liver, onwards to the *sinus venosus*, *q*, or rudimentary auricle of the heart. This also receives the *jugular vein*, *r*, from the head, which first, however, passes downwards in front of the gill close to its inner edge, and meets a vein, *t*, coming up from the abdomen, after which it turns abruptly in the direction of the heart. Two other abdominal veins, *u*, meet and pour their blood direct into the sinus venosus; and into this cavity is also poured the aërated blood returned from the gill by the *branchial vein*, *v*, of which only the one on the right side can be distinguished.—The lungs may be detected in a rudimentary state, even in the very young tadpole; being in that stage a pair of minute tubular sacs, united at the upper extremities, and lying behind the intestine and close to the spine. They may be best brought into view by immersing the tadpole for a few days in a weak solution of chromic acid, which renders the tissue friable,

so that the parts that conceal them may be more readily peeled away. Their gradual enlargement may be traced during the period of the tadpole's transparence; but they can only be brought into view by dissection when the metamorphosis has been completed. The following are Mr. Whitney's directions for displaying the Circulation in these organs :—" Put the young Frog into a wine-glass, and drop on him a single drop of chloroform. This suffices to extinguish sensibility. Then lay him on the back on a piece of cork, and fix him with small pins passed through the web of each foot. Remove the skin of the abdomen with a fine pair of sharp scissors and forceps. Turn aside the intestines from the *left* side, and thus expose the left lung, which may now be seen as a glistening transparent sac, containing air bubbles. With a fine camel-hair pencil the lung may now be turned-out, so as to enable the operator to see a large part of it by *transmitted* light. Unpin the frog, and place him on a slip of glass, and then transmit the light through the everted portion of lung. Remember that the lung is very elastic, and is emptied and collapsed by very slight pressure. Therefore, to succeed with this experiment, the lung should be touched as little as possible, and in the lightest manner, with the brush. If the heart is acting feebly, you will see simply a transparent sac, shaped according to the quantity of air-bubbles it may happen to contain, but void of red vascularity and circulation. But should the operator succeed in getting the lung well placed, full of air, and have the heart still beating vigorously, he will see before him a brilliant picture of crimson network, alive with the dance and dazzle of blood-globules, in rapid chase of one another through the delicate and living lace-work which lines the chamber of the lung." The position of the lungs in relation to the heart and the great vascular trunks, is shown in Plate XXIV., fig. 6.

687. *Injected Preparations.*—Next to the Circulation of the Blood in the living body, the varied distribution of the Capillaries in its several organs, as shown by means of 'injections' of colouring matter thrown into their principal vessels, is one of the most interesting subjects of Microscopic examination. The art of making successful preparations of this kind is one in which perfection can usually be attained only by long practice, and by attention to a great number of minute particulars; and better specimens may be obtained, therefore, from those who have made it a business to produce them, than are likely to be prepared by amateurs for themselves. For this reason, no more than a general account of the process will be here offered; the minute details which need to be attended-to, in order to attain successful results, being readily accessible elsewhere to such as desire to put it in practice.*

* See especially the article 'Injection,' in the "Micrographic Dictionary;" M. Robin's work, "Du Microscope et des Injections;" Prof. H. Frey's Treatise "Das Mikroskop und die Mikroskopische Technik;" Dr. Beale's "How to Work with the Microscope;" the "Handbook to the Physiological Laboratory;" and Rutherford's and Schäfer's treatises on "Practical Histology."

Injections may be either *opaque* or *transparent*, each method having its special advantages. The former is most suitable where *solid form* and *inequalities of surface* are especially to be displayed, as in Figs. 479 and 485; the latter is preferable where the injected tissue is so thin as to be transparent (as in the case of the retina and other membranes of the eye), or where the distribution of its blood-vessels and their relation to other parts may be displayed by sections thin enough to be made transparent by mounting either in Canada balsam or Dammar (Plate XXV.).—The injection is usually thrown into the vessels by means of a brass syringe expressly constructed for the purpose, which has several jet-pipes of different sizes, adapted to the different dimensions of the vessels to be injected; and these should either be furnished with a stop-cock to prevent the return of the injection when the syringe is withdrawn, or a set of small corks of different sizes should be kept in readiness, with which they may be plugged. The pipe should be inserted into the cut end of the trunk which is to be injected, and should be tied therein by a silk thread. In injecting the vessels of Fish, Mollusks, &c., the softness of the vessels renders them liable to break in the attempt to tie them; and it is therefore better for the operator to satisfy himself with introducing a pipe as large as he can insert, and with passing it into the vessel as far as he can without violence. All the vessels from which the injection might escape should be tied, and sometimes it is better to put a ligature round a part of the organ or tissue itself; thus, for example, when a portion of the Intestinal tube is to be injected through its branch of the Mesenteric artery, not only should ligatures be put round any divided vessels of the mesentery, but the cut ends of the intestinal tube should be firmly tied.—For making those minute injections, however, which are needed for the purposes of anatomical investigation, rather than to furnish 'preparations' to be looked-at, the Author has found the glass-syringe (Fig. 106), so frequently alluded-to, the most efficient instrument; since the Microscopist can himself draw its point to the utmost fineness that will admit of the passage of the injection, and can push this point without ligature, under the Simple Microscope, into the narrowest orifice, or into the substance of the part into which the injection is to be thrown.—Save in the cases in which the operation has to be practised on living animals, it should either be performed when the body or organ is as fresh as possible, or after the expiry of sufficient time to allow the *rigor mortis* to pass-off; the presence of this being very inimical to the success of the injection. The part should be thoroughly warmed, by soaking in warm water for a time proportionate to its bulk; and the injection, the syringe, and the pipes should also have been subjected to a temperature sufficiently high to ensure the free flow of the liquid. The force used in pressing-down the piston should be very moderate at first, but should be gradually increased as the vessels become filled; and it is better to keep up a steady pressure for some time, than to

attempt to distend them by a more powerful pressure, which will be certain to cause extravasation. This pressure should be maintained* until the injection begins to flow from the large veins, and the tissue is thoroughly reddened; and if one syringeful of injection after another be required for this purpose, the return of the injection should be prevented by stopping the nozzle of the jet-pipe when the syringe is removed for refilling. When the injection has been completed, any openings by which it can escape should be secured, and the preparation should then be placed for some hours in cold water, for the sake of causing the size to 'set.'†

688. For *opaque* injections, the best colouring-matter, when only one set of vessels is to be injected, is Chinese vermilion. This, however, as commonly sold, contains numerous particles of far too large a size; and it is necessary first to reduce it to a greater fineness by continued trituration in a mortar (an agate or a steel mortar is the best) with a small quantity of water, and then to get rid of the larger particles by a process of 'levigation,' exactly corresponding to that by which the particles of coarse sand, &c., are separated from the *Diatomaceæ* (§ 300). The fine powder thus obtained, ought not, when examined under a magnifying power of 200 diameters, to exhibit particles of any appreciable dimensions. The size or gelatine should be of a fine and pure quality, and should be of sufficient strength to form a tolerably firm jelly when cold, whilst quite limpid when warm. It should be strained, whilst hot, through a piece of new flannel; and great care should be taken to preserve it free from dust, which may best be done by putting it into clean jars, and covering its surface with a thin layer of alcohol. The proportion of levigated vermilion to be mixed with it for injection, is about 2 oz. to a pint; and this is to be stirred in the melted size, until the two are thoroughly incorporated, after which the mixture should be strained through muslin. —Although no injections look so well by reflected light as those which are made with vermilion, yet other colouring substances may be advantageously employed for particular purposes. Thus a bright *yellow* is given by the yellow chromate of lead, which is precipitated when a solution of acetate of lead is mixed with a solution of chromate of potass; this is an extremely fine powder, which 'runs' with great facility in an injection, and has the advantage of being very cheaply prepared. The best method of obtaining it is to dissolve 200 grains of acetate of lead and 105

* Simple mechanical arrangements for this purpose, by which the fatigue of maintaining this pressure with his hand is saved to the operator, are described in the works referred-to in the preceding note.

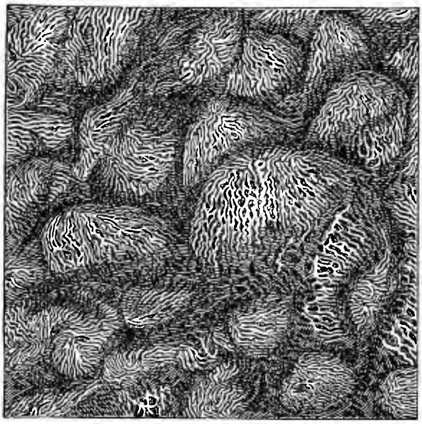
† The Kidney of a Sheep or Pig is a very advantageous organ for the learner to practise-on; and he should first master the filling of the vessels from the arterial trunk alone, and then, when he has succeeded in this, he should fill the tubuli uriniferi with white injection, before sending coloured injection into the renal artery. The entire systemic circulation of small animals, as Mice, Rats, Frogs, &c., may be injected from the aorta; and the pulmonary vessels from the pulmonary artery.

grains of chromate of potass in separate quantities of water, to mix these, and then, after the subsidence of the precipitate, to pour-off the supernatant fluid so as to get-rid of the acetate of potash which it contains, since this is apt to corrode the walls of the vessels if the preparation be kept moist. The solutions should be mixed cold, and the precipitate should not be allowed to dry before being incorporated with the size, four ounces of which will be the proportion appropriate to the quantity of the colouring-substance produced by the above process. The same materials may be used in such a manner that the decomposition takes-place within the vessels themselves, one of the solutions being thrown-in first, and then the other; and this process involves so little trouble or expense, that it may be considered the best for those who are novices in the operation, and who are desirous of perfecting themselves in the practice of the easier methods, before attempting the more costly. By M. Doyère, who first devised this method, it was simply recommended to throw-in saturated solutions of the two salts, one after the other; but Dr. Goadby, who had much experience in the use of it, advised that gelatine should be employed in the proportion of 2 oz. dissolved in 8 oz. of water, to 8 oz. of the saturated solutions of each salt. This method answers very well for the preparations that are to be mounted dry; but for such as are to be preserved in fluid, it is subject to the disadvantage of retaining in the vessels the solution of acetate of potash, which exerts a gradual corrosive action upon them. Dr. Goadby has met this objection, however, by suggesting the substitution of nitrate for acetate of lead; the resulting nitrate of potash having rather a preservative than a corrosive action on the vessels.—When it is desired to inject two or more sets of vessels (as the arteries, veins, and gland-ducts) of the same preparation, different colouring substances should be employed. For a *white* injection, the carbonate of lead (prepared by mixing solutions of acetate of lead and carbonate of soda, and pouring-off the supernatant liquid when the precipitate has fallen) is the best material. No *blue* injections can be much recommended, as they do not reflect light well, so that the vessels filled with them seem almost black; the best is freshly precipitated prussian blue (formed by mixing solutions of persulphate of iron and ferrocyanide of potassium), which, to avoid the alteration of its colour by the free alkali of the blood, should be triturated with its own weight of oxalic acid and a little water, and the mixture should then be combined with size, in the proportion of 146 grains of the former to 4 oz. of the latter.

689. Opaque injections may be preserved either dry or in fluid. The former method is well suited to sections of many solid organs, in which the disposition of the vessels does not sustain much alteration by drying; for the colours of the vessels are displayed with greater brilliancy than by any other method, when such slices, after being well dried, are moistened with turpentine and mounted in Canada balsam. But for such an injection as that shown in

Fig. 479, in which the form and disposition of the intestinal *villi* would be completely altered by drying, it is indispensable that the preparation should be mounted in fluid, in a cell deep enough to prevent any pressure on its surface. Either Goadby's solution or weak Spirit answers the purpose very well; or by careful management even such may be mounted in Canada balsam or Dammar.

FIG. 479.



Villi of Small Intestine of Monkey.

690. Within the last few years, the art of making *transparent* Injections has been much cultivated, especially in Germany; and beautiful preparations of this description have been sent over from that country in large numbers. The colouring-matter chiefly employed is Carmine, which is dissolved in liquid ammonia; the solution (after careful filtration) being added in the requisite amount to liquid gelatine.

The following is given by Dr. Carter as a formula for a carmine injection which will run freely through the most minute capillaries, and which will not tint the tissues beyond the vessels themselves, a point of much importance :—Dissolve 60 grains of pure carmine in 120 grains of strong liquor ammoniæ (Pharm. Brit.), and filter if necessary; with this mix thoroughly $1\frac{1}{2}$ oz. of a hot solution of gelatine (1 to 6 of water); mix another $\frac{1}{2}$ oz. of the gelatine solution with 86 minims of glacial acetic acid; and drop this, little by little, into the solution of carmine, stirring briskly the whole time. After the part has been injected, and has been hardened either by partial drying or by immersion in the Chromic acid solution or in Alcohol, thin sections are cut with a sharp razor; and these are usually dried and mounted in Canada balsam.

Many of these transparent injections (Plate XXV.) are peculiarly well seen under the Binocular Microscope, which shows the capillary network not only in two dimensions (length and breadth), but also in its third dimension, that of its thickness; this is especially interesting in such injections as that (fig. 1) of the villi of the Intestine (seen *in situ* in a transverse section of its tube), a thin section of the Mouse's toe (fig. 2), or the convoluted layer of the Brain (fig. 3). The Stereoscopic effect is best seen, if the light reflected through the object be moderated by a ground-glass, or even by a piece of tissue-paper, placed behind it.—This method, however, does not serve to display anything *well*, save the distribution of the Capillary vessels; the structures they traverse being imperfectly shown. For the purpose of scientific research, therefore,

PLATE XXV.

Distribution of Capillaries.

[To face p. 814.

the method followed by Dr. Beale (for full details of which the reader is referred to his Treatise) is much to be preferred.

The material recommended by him for the finest injections is prepared as follows :—Mix 10 drops of the tincture of perchloride of iron (Pharm. Brit.) with 1 oz. of glycerine: and mix 3 grains of ferrocyanide of potassium, previously dissolved in a little water, with another 1 oz. of glycerine. Add the first solution very gradually to the second, shaking them well together; and lastly, add 1 oz. of water, and 3 drops of strong hydrochloric acid. This 'prussian blue fluid,' though not a solution, deposits very little sediment by keeping; and it appears like a solution even when examined under high magnifying powers, in consequence of the minuteness of the particles of the colouring matter. Where a second colour is required, a carmine injection may be used, which is to be prepared as follows :—Mix 5 grains of carmine with a few drops of water, and, when they are well incorporated, add about 5 drops of strong liquor ammoniæ. To this dark red solution add about ½ oz. of glycerine, shaking the bottle so as to mix the two fluids thoroughly; and then very gradually pour in another ½ oz. of glycerine acidulated with 8 or 10 drops of acetic or hydrochloric acid, frequently shaking the bottle. Test the mixture with blue litmus paper; and mix with it another ½ oz. of glycerine, to which a few drops more acid should be added, if the acid reaction of the liquid should not have previously been decided. Finally, add gradually 2 drachms of alcohol previously well mixed with 6 drachms of water, and incorporate the whole by thorough shaking after the addition of each successive portion.

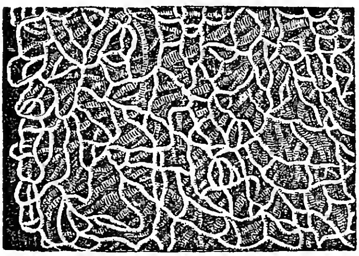
The *staining* process (§ 202) may be combined with the injecting; but Dr. Beale has now come to prefer the following method, when such a combination is desired. An alkaline carmine fluid rather stronger than that ordinarily employed (carmine 15 grs., strong liq. ammoniæ ½ drachm, glycerine, 2 oz., alcohol, 6 drachms) is first to be injected carefully with very slight pressure; the ammonia having a tendency to soften the walls of the vessels. When they are fully distended, the preparation is to be left for from 12 to 24 hours, in order that time may be allowed for the carmine liquid which has permeated the capillaries, to soak through the different tissues and stain the germinal matter fully. Next a little pure glycerine is to be injected, to get rid of the carmine liquid; and the prussian blue fluid is then to be injected with the utmost care. When the vessels have been fully distended, the injected preparation is to be divided into very small pieces; and these are to be soaked for an hour or two in a mixture of 2 parts of glycerine and 1 of water, and then for three or four days in strong glycerine acidulated with acetic acid (5 drops to 1 oz.). Preparations thus made are best mounted in Glycerine jelly; and may then be examined with the highest powers of the Microscope.

A well-injected preparation should have its vessels completely filled through every part; the particles of the colouring matter should be so closely compacted together, that they should not be distinguishable unless carefully looked for; and there should be no patches of pale uninjected tissue. Still, although the beauty of a specimen, as a Microscopic object, is much impaired by any deficiency in the filling of its vessels, yet to the Anatomist the

disposition of the vessels will be as apparent when they are only filled in part, as it is when they are fully distended; and in thin sections mounted as transparent objects, imperfectly injected capillaries may often be better seen than such as have been completely filled.

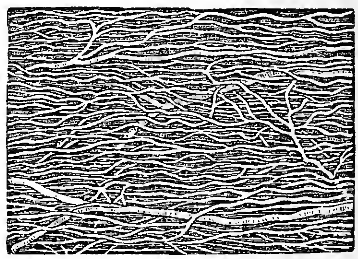
691. A relation may generally be traced between the disposition of the Capillary vessels, and the functions they subserve; but that relation is obviously (so to speak) of a mechanical kind; the arrangement of the vessels not in any way determining the function, but merely administering to it, like the arrangement of water- or gas-pipes in a manufactory. Thus in Fig. 480 we see that the capillaries of adipose substance are disposed in a network with rounded meshes, so as to distribute the blood among the Fat-cells (§ 674); whilst in Fig. 481 we see the meshes enormously elongated, so as to permit the Muscular fibres (§ 677) to lie in them. Again, in Fig. 482 we observe the disposition of the Capillaries around the orifices of the follicles of a Mucous

Fig. 480.



Capillary network around *Fat-cells.*

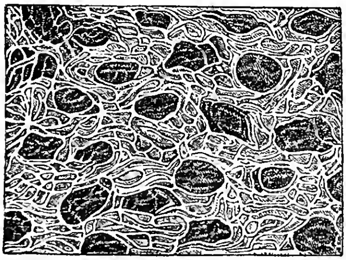
Fig. 481.



Capillary network of *Muscle.*

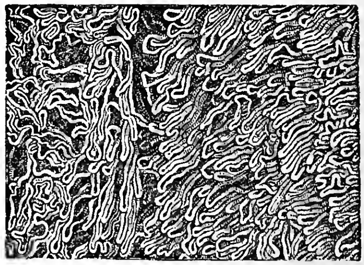
membrane; whilst in Fig. 483 we see the looped arrangement which exists in the papillary surface of the Skin, and which is

Fig. 482.



Distribution of Capillaries in *Mucous Membrane,*

Fig. 483.

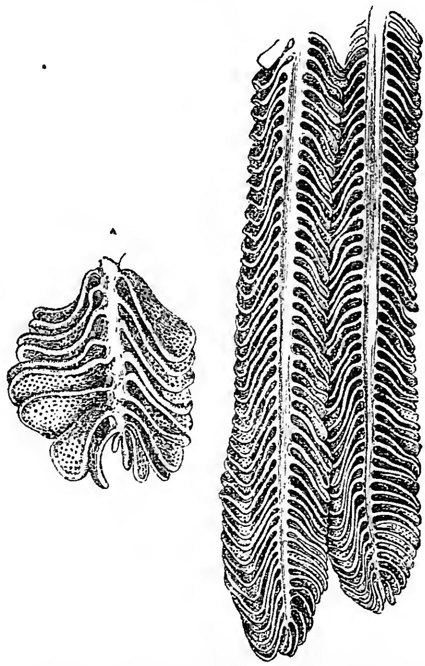


Distribution of Capillaries in *Skin of Finger.*

subservient to the nutrition of the epidermis and to the activity of the sensory nerves (§ 682).

692. In no part of the Circulating apparatus, however, does the disposition of the capillaries present more points of interest, than it does in the Respiratory organs. In Fishes the respiratory surface is formed by an outward extension into fringes of *gills*, each of which consists of an arch with straight laminæ hanging down from it; and every one of these laminæ (Fig. 484) is furnished with a double row of leaflets, which is most minutely supplied with blood-vessels, their network (as seen at A) being so close that its meshes (indicated by the dots in the figure) cover less space than the vessels themselves. The gills of Fish are not ciliated on their surface, like those of Mollusks and of the larva of the Water-Newt; the necessity for such a mode of renewing the fluid in contact with them being superseded by the muscular apparatus with which their gill-chamber is furnished.—But in Reptiles the respiratory surface is formed by the walls of an internal cavity, that of the *lungs:* these organs, however, are constructed on a plan very different from that which they present in higher Vertebrata, the great extension of surface which is effected in the latter by the minute sub-division of the cavity not being here necessary. In the Frog (for example) the cavity of each lung is undivided; its walls, which are thin and membranous at the lower part, there present a simple smooth expanse; and it is only at the upper part, where the extensions of the tracheal cartilage form a network over the interior, that its surface is depressed into sacculi, whose lining is crowded with blood-vessels (Fig. 485). In this manner a set of air-cells is formed in the thickness of the upper wall of the lung, which communicate with the general cavity, and very much increase the surface over which the blood comes into relation with the air; but each air-cell has a capillary network of its own, which lies on one side against its wall, so as only to be exposed to the air on its free

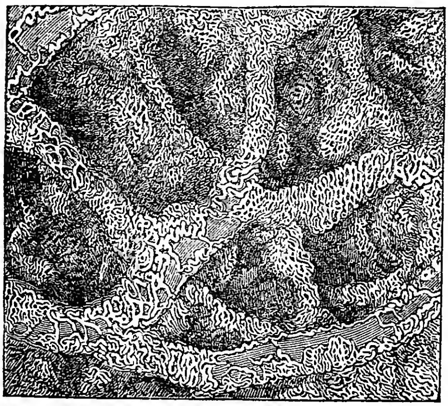
Fig. 484.



Two branchial processes of the *Gill of the Eel*, showing the branchial lamellæ:—A, portion of one of these processes enlarged, showing the capillary network of the lamellæ.

surface. In the elongated lung of the Snake the same general arrangement prevails; but the cartilaginous reticulation of its upper part projects much further into the cavity, and encloses in its meshes (which are usually square, or nearly so) several layers of air-cells, which communicate, one through another, with the general cavity.—The structure of the lungs of Birds present us with an arrangement of a very different kind, the purpose of which is to expose a very large amount of capillary surface to the influence of the air. The entire mass of each lung may be considered as subdivided into an immense number of 'lobules' or 'lunglets' (Fig. 486, B), each of which has its own bronchial tube (or subdivision of the windpipe), and its own system of blood-vessels, which have

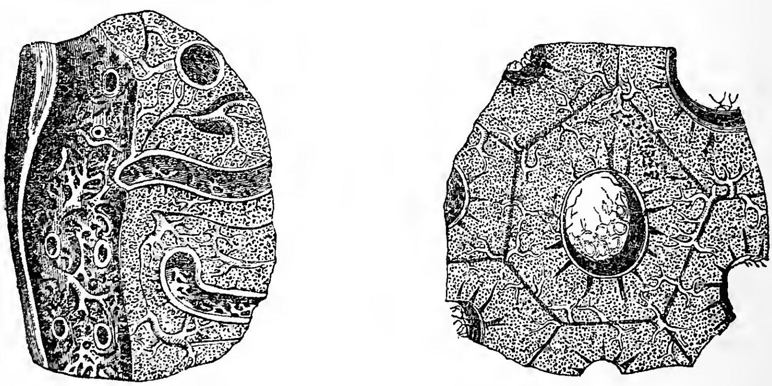
FIG. 485.



Interior of upper part of *Lung of Frog*.

FIG. 486.

A B

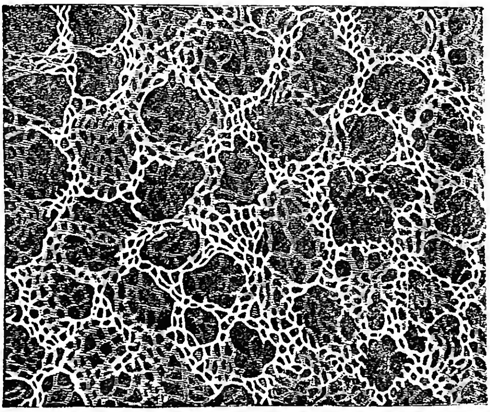


Interior structure of *Lung of Fowl*, as displayed by a section, A, passing in the direction of a bronchial tube, and by another section, B, cutting it across.

very little communication with those of other lobules. Each lobule has a central cavity, which closely resembles that of a Frog's lung in miniature, having its walls strengthened by a network of cartilage derived from the bronchial tube, A, in the interspaces of which are openings leading to sacculi in their substance. But each of these cavities is surrounded by a solid plexus of blood-vessels, which does

not seem to be covered by any limiting membrane, but which admits air from the central cavity freely between its meshes; and thus its capillaries are in immediate relation with air on all sides, a provision that is obviously very favourable to the complete and rapid aëration of the blood they contain. —In the lung of Man and Mammals, again, the plan of structure differs from the foregoing, though the general effect of it is the same. For its whole interior is divided-up into minute air-cells, which freely communicate with each other, and with the ultimate ramifications of the air-tubes into which the trachea subdivides; and the network of blood-vessels (Fig. 487) is so disposed in the partitions between these cavities, that the blood is exposed to the air on both sides. It has been calculated that the number of these air-cells grouped around the termination of each air-tube in Man is not less than 18,000; and that the total number in the entire lungs is *six hundred millions*.

Fig. 487.



Arrangement of the Capillaries on the walls of the Air-cells of the *Human Lung*.

693. The following list of the parts of the bodies of Vertebrata, of which injected preparations are most interesting as Microscopic objects, may be of service to those who may be inclined to apply themselves to their production.—*Alimentary Canal;* stomach, showing the orifices of the gastric follicles, and the rudimentary villi near the pylorus; small intestine, showing the villi and the orifices of the follicles of Lieberkühn, and at its lower part the Peyerian glands; large intestine, showing the various glandular follicles:—*Respiratory Organs;* lungs of Mammals, Birds, and Reptiles; gills and swimming-bladder of Fish:—*Glandular Organs;* liver, gall-bladder, kidney, parotid:—*Generative Organs;* ovary of Toad; oviduct of Bird and Frog; Mammalian placenta; uterine and fœtal cotyledons of Ruminants:—*Organs of Sense;* retina, iris, choroid, and ciliary processes of eye, pupillary membrane of fœtus; papillæ of tongue: mucous membrane of nose, papillæ of skin of finger:—*Tegumentary Organs;* skin of different parts, hairy and smooth, with vertical sections showing the vessels of the hair-follicles, sebaceous glands, and papillæ: matrix of nails, hoofs, &c.:—*Tissues;* fibrous, muscular, adipose, sheath of tendon:—*Nervous Centres;* sections of brain and spinal cord.

CHAPTER XXI.

APPLICATION OF THE MICROSCOPE TO GEOLOGICAL INVESTIGATION.

694. The utility of the Microscope is by no means limited to the determination of the structure and actions of the Organized beings at present living on the surface of the Earth; for a vast amount of information is afforded by its means to the Geological inquirer, not only with regard to the minute characters of the many Vegetable and Animal remains that are entombed in the successive strata of which its crust is composed, but also with regard to the essential nature and composition of many of those strata themselves.—We cannot have a better example of its value in both these respects, than that which is afforded by the results of Microscopic examination of *lignite* or fossilized wood, and of ordinary *coal*, which we now assuredly know to be a product of the decay of wood.

695. Specimens of *fossilized wood*, in a state of more or less complete preservation, are found in numerous strata of very different ages,—more frequently, of course, in those whose materials were directly furnished by the dry land, and were deposited in its immediate proximity, than in those which were formed by the deposition of sediments at the bottom of a deep ocean. Generally speaking, it is only when the wood is found to have been penetrated by *silex*, that its organic structure is well preserved; but instances occur every now and then, in which penetration by *carbonate of lime* has proved equally favourable. In either case, transparent sections are needed for the full display of the organization; but such sections, though made with great facility when lime is the fossilizing material, require much labour and skill when silex has to be dealt with. Occasionally, however, it has happened that the infiltration has filled the cavities of the cells and vessels, without consolidating their walls; and as the latter have undergone decay without being replaced by any cementing material, the lignite, thus composed of the internal 'casts' of the woody tissues, is very friable, its fibres separating from each other like those of asbestos; and laminæ split asunder with a knife, or isolated fibres separated by rubbing-down between the fingers, exhibit the

characters of the woody structure extremely well, when mounted in Canada balsam.—Generally speaking, the lignites of the Tertiary strata present a tolerably close resemblance to the woods of the existing period: thus the ordinary structure of *dicotyledonous* and *monocotyledonous* stems may be discovered in such lignites in the utmost perfection; and the peculiar modification presented by *coniferous* wood is also most distinctly exhibited (Fig. 259). As we go back, however, through the strata of the Secondary period, we more and more rarely meet with the ordinary dicotyledonous structure; and the lignites of the earliest deposits of these series are, almost universally, either Gymnosperms* or Palms.

696. Descending into the Palæozoic series, we are presented in the vast *coal* formations of our own and other countries with an extraordinary proof of the prevalence of a most luxuriant vegetation in a comparatively-early period of the world's history; and the Microscope lends the Geologist essential assistance, not only in determining the nature of much of that vegetation, but also in demonstrating (what had been suspected on other grounds) that Coal itself is nothing else than a mass of decomposed vegetable matter, derived from the decay of an ancient vegetation. The determination of the characters of the *Ferns, Sigillariæ, Lepidodendra, Calamites,* and other kinds of vegetation whose forms are preserved in the shales or sandstones that are interposed between the strata of Coal, has been hitherto chiefly based on their external characters; since it is seldom that these specimens present any such traces of minute internal structure as can be subjected to Microscopic elucidation. But persevering search has recently brought to light numerous examples of Coal-plants, whose internal structure is sufficiently well preserved to allow of its being studied microscopically: and the careful researches of Prof. W. C. Williamson have shown that they formed a series of connecting links between Cryptogamia and Flowering plants; being obviously allied to *Equisetaceæ, Lycopodiaceæ,* &c., in the character of their fructification, whilst their stem-structure foreshadowed both the 'endogenous' and 'exogenous' types of the latter.† Notwithstanding the general absence of any definite *form* in the masses of decomposed wood of which Coal itself consists (these having apparently been reduced to a pulpy state by decay, before the process of consolidation by pressure, aided perhaps by heat, commenced), the traces of *structure* revealed by the Microscope are often sufficient—especially in the ordinary 'bituminous' coal—not only to determine its vegetable origin, but in some cases to justify the Botanist in assigning the character of the vegetation from which it must have been derived; and even where the stems and leaves are represented by nothing else than a structureless mass of black carbonaceous

* Under this head are included the *Cycadeæ,* along with the ordinary *Coniferæ* or pine and fir tribe.

† See his succession of Memoirs on the Coal-Plants, in the recent volumes of the "Philosophical Transactions."

matter, there are found diffused through this a multitude of minute resinoid yellowish-brown granules, which are sometimes aggregated in clusters and enclosed in sacculi; and these may now be pretty certainly affirmed to represent the *spores,* while the sacculi represent the *sporangia,* of gigantic *Lycopodiaceæ* (§ 347) of the Carboniferous Flora. The larger the proportion of these granules, the brighter and stronger is the flame with which the coal burns; thus in some blazing *cannel*-coals they abound to such a degree as to make up the greater proportion of their substance; whilst in *anthracite* or 'stone-coal,' the want of them is shown by its dull and slow combustion. It is curious that the dispersion of these resinoid granules through the black carbonaceous matter is sometimes so regular, as to give to transparent sections very much the aspect of a section of vegetable cellular tissue, for which they have been mistaken even by experienced microscopists; but this resemblance disappears under a more extended scrutiny, which shows it to be altogether accidental.

697. In examining the structure of Coal, various methods may be followed. Of those kinds which have sufficient tenacity, thin sections may be made; but the opacity of the substance requires that such sections should be ground extremely thin before they become transparent; and its friability renders this process one of great difficulty. It may, however, be facilitated by using Marine Glue, instead of Canada balsam, as the cement for attaching the smoothed surface of the coal to the slip of glass on which it is rubbed-down. Another method is recommended by the authors of the "Micrographic Dictionary" (2nd edit., p. 178):—"The coal is macerated for about a week in a solution of carbonate of potass; at the end of that time, it is possible to cut tolerably thin slices with a razor. These slices are then placed in a watch glass with strong nitric acid, covered, and gently heated; they soon turn brownish, then yellow, when the process must be arrested by dropping the whole into a saucer of cold water, or else the coal would be dissolved. The slices thus treated appear of a darkish amber-colour, very transparent, and exhibit the structure, when existing, most clearly. We have obtained longitudinal and transverse sections of Coniferous wood from various coals in this way. The specimens are best preserved in glycerine, in cells; we find that spirit renders them opaque, and even Canada balsam has the same defect."—When the coal is so friable that no sections can be made of it by either of these methods, it may be ground to fine powder, and the particles may then, after being mounted in Canada balsam, be subjected to Microscopic examination: the results which this method affords are by no means satisfactory in themselves, but they will often enable the organic structure to be sufficiently determined, by the comparison of the appearances presented by such fragments with those which are more distinctly exhibited elsewhere. Valuable information may often be obtained, too, by treating the ash of an ordinary coal-fire in the same manner, or (still better) by burning

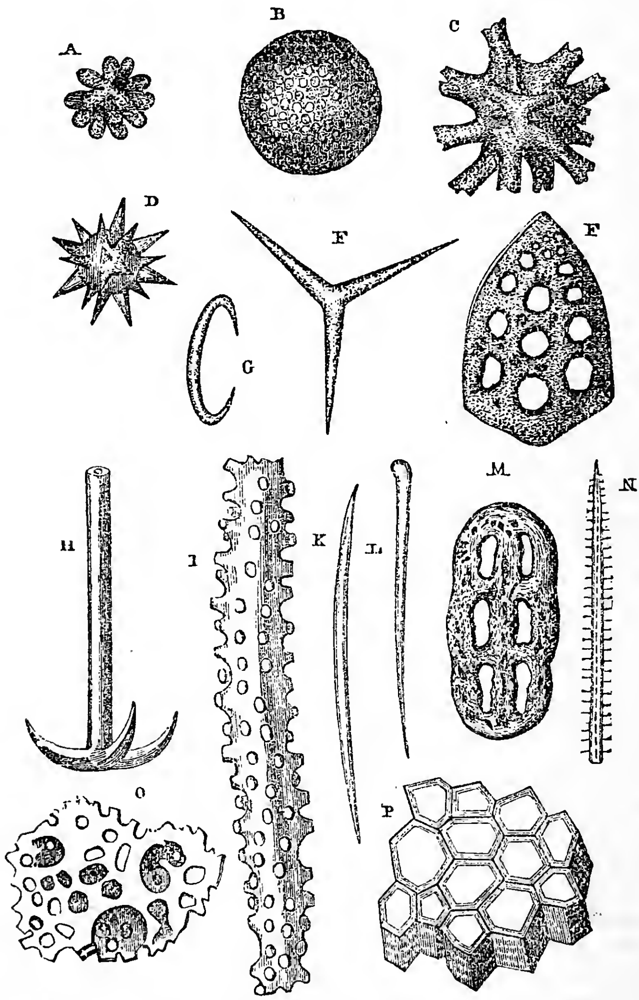
to a white ash a specimen of coal that has been previously boiled in nitric acid, and then carefully mounting the ash in Canada balsam; for mineral 'casts' of vegetable cells and fibres may often be distinctly recognized in such ash; and such casts are not unfrequently best afforded by samples of coal in which the method of section is least successful in bringing to light the traces of organic structure, as is the case, for example, with the anthracite of Wales.

698. Passing on now to the Animal kingdom, we shall first cite some parallel cases in which the essential nature of deposits that form a very important part of the Earth's crust, has been determined by the assistance of the Microscope; and shall then select a few examples of the most important contributions which it has afforded to our acquaintance with types of Animal life long since extinct.—It is an admitted rule in Geological science, that the past history of the Earth is to be interpreted, so far as may be found possible, by the study of the changes which are still going on. Thus, when we meet with an extensive stratum of fossilized *Diatomaceæ* (§ 299) in what is now dry land, we can entertain no doubt that this siliceous deposit originally accumulated either at the bottom of a fresh-water lake or beneath the waters of the ocean; just as such deposits are formed at the present time by the production and death of successive generations of these bodies, whose indestructible casings accumulate in the lapse of ages, so as to form layers whose thickness is only limited by the time during which this process has been in action (§ 298). In like manner, when we meet with a Limestone-rock entirely composed of the calcareous shells of *Foraminifera*, some of them entire, others broken up into minute particles (as in the case of the *Fusulina*-limestone of the Carboniferous period, § 485, and the *Nummulitic* limestone of the Eocene, § 489), we interpret the phenomenon by the fact that the dredgings obtained from certain parts of the ocean-bottom consist almost entirely of remains of existing Foraminifera, in which entire shells, the animals of which may be yet alive, are mingled with the *débris* of others that have been reduced by the action of the waves to a fragmentary state. Such a deposit, consisting chiefly of *Orbitolites*, § 466, is at present in the act of formation on certain parts of the shores of Australia, as the Author was informed by Mr. J. Beete Jukes; thus affording the exact parallel to the stratum of Orbitolites (belonging, as his own investigations have led him to believe, to the very same species), that forms part of the 'calcaire grossier' of the Paris basin. So in the fine white mud which is brought up from almost every part of the sea-bottom of the Levant, where it forms a stratum that is continually undergoing a slow but steady increase in thickness, the Microscopic researches of Prof. Williamson* have shown, not only that it contains multitudes of minute remains of living organisms, both Animal and Vegetable, but that it is entirely or almost wholly composed of such remains.

* "Memoirs of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society," Vol. vii.

Amongst these were about 26 species of Diatomaceæ (siliceous), 8 species of Foraminifera (calcareous), and a miscellaneous group of objects (Fig. 488), consisting of calcareous and siliceous spicules of

Fig. 488.



Microscopic Organisms in *Levant Mud*:—A, D, siliceous spicules of *Tethya*; B, H, spicules of *Geodia*; C, sponge-spicule (unknown); E, calcareous spicule of *Grantia*; F, G, M, O, portions of calcareous skeleton of *Echinodermata*; H, I, calcareous spicule of *Gorgonia*; K, L, N, siliceous spicules of *Halichondria*; P, portion of prismatic layer of shell of *Pinna*.

Sponges and Gorgoniæ, and fragments of the calcareous skeletons of Echinoderms and Mollusks. A collection of forms strongly resembling that of the Levant mud, with the exception of the siliceous

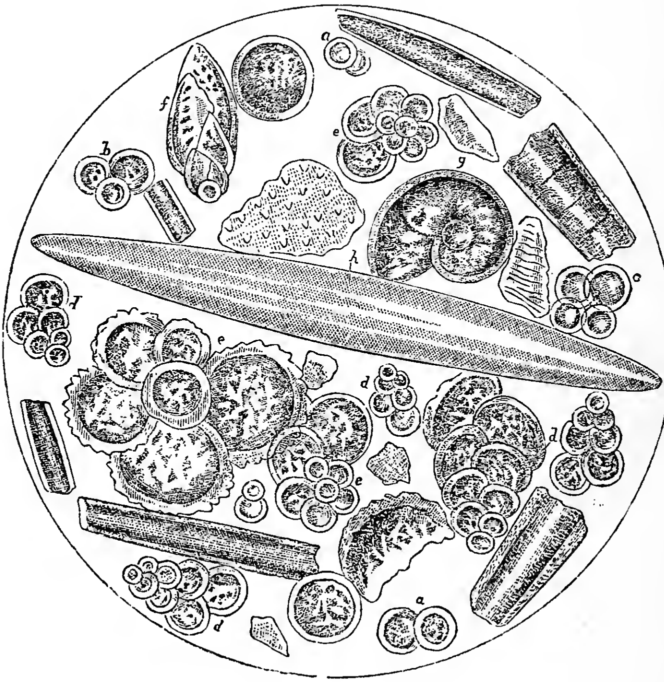
Diatomaceæ, is found in many parts of the 'calcaire grossier' of the Paris basin, as well as in other extensive deposits of the same early Tertiary period.

699. It is, however, in regard to the great *Chalk* Formation, that the information afforded by the Microscope has been most valuable. Mention has already been made (§ 480) of the fact that a large proportion of the North Atlantic sea-bed has been found to be covered with an 'ooze' chiefly formed of the shells of *Globigerinæ;* and this fact, first determined by the examination of the small quantities brought up by the sounding apparatus, has been fully confirmed by the results of the recent exploration of the Deep-sea with the dredge; which, bringing up half a ton of this deposit at once, has shown that it is not a mere surface-film, but an enormous mass whose thickness cannot be even guessed at. "Under the Microscope," says Prof. Wyville Thomson* of a sample of $1\frac{1}{2}$ cwt. obtained by the dredge from a depth of nearly three miles, "the surface-layer was found to consist chiefly of entire shells of *Globigerina bulloides*, large and small, and of fragments of such shells mixed with a quantity of amorphous calcareous matter in fine particles, a little fine sand, and many spicules, portions of spicules, and shells of Radiolaria, a few spicules of Sponges, and a few frustules of Diatoms. Below the surface-layer the sediment becomes gradually more compact, and a slight grey colour, due, probably, to the decomposing organic matter, becomes more pronounced, while perfect shells of Globigerina almost disappear, fragments become smaller, and calcareous mud, structureless, and in a fine state of division, is in greatly preponderating proportion. One can have no doubt, on examining this sediment, that it is formed in the main by the accumulation and disintegration of the shells of Globigerina; the shells fresh, whole, and living, in the surface-layer of the deposit; and in the lower layers dead, and gradually crumbling down by the decomposition of their organic cement, and by the pressure of the layers above." This white calcareous mud also contains in large amount the 'coccoliths' and 'coccospheres' formerly described (§ 409).—Now the resemblance which this Globigerina-mud, when dried, bears to Chalk, is so close as at once to suggest the similar origin of the latter; and this is fully confirmed by Microscopic examination. For many samples of it consist in great part of the minuter kinds of Foraminifera, especially *Globigerinæ* (Figs. 489, 490), whose shells are imbedded in a mass of apparently amorphous particles, many of which, nevertheless, present indications of being the worn fragments of similar shells, or of larger calcareous organisms. In the Chalk of some localities, the disintegrated prisms of *Pinna* (§ 563), or of other large shells of the like structure (as *Inoceramus*), form the great bulk of the recognizable components; whilst in other cases, again, the chief part is made up of the shells of *Cytherina*, a marine form of Entomostracous Crustacean (§ 604). Different specimens of Chalk vary greatly in

* "The Depths of the Sea," p. 410.

the proportion which the distinctly organic remains bear to the amorphous residuum, and which the different kinds of the former bear to each other; and this is quite what might be anticipated, when we bear in mind the predominance of one or another tribe of Animals in the several parts of a large area; but it may be fairly concluded from what has been already stated of the amorphous

FIG. 489.



Microscopic Organisms in *Chalk* from Gravesend:—*a, b, c, d,* Textularia globulosa; *e, e, e,* Rotalia aspera; *f,* Textularia aculeata; *g,* Planularia hexas; *h,* Navicula.

component of the Globigerina-mud, that the amorphous constituent of Chalk likewise is the disintegrated residuum of Foraminiferal shells.—But further, the Globigerina-mud now in process of formation is in some places literally crowded with Sponges having a complete *siliceous* skeleton (§ 511); and some of them bear such an extraordinarily close resemblance, alike in structure and in external form, to the *Ventriculites* which are well known as Chalk-fossils, as to leave no reasonable doubt that these also lived as siliceous sponges on the bottom of the Cretaceous sea. Other sponges, also, are found in the Globigerina-mud, the structure of whose horny skeleton corresponds so closely with the sponge-tissues which can

be recognized in sections of nodular Flints, Agates,* &c., as to make it clear—when taken in connection with correspondence of external form—that such flints are really fossilized sponges, the silicifying material having been furnished by the solution of the skeletons of the siliceous sponges, or of deposits of Diatoms or Radiolaria. Further, in many sections of Flints there are found

FIG. 490.

Microscopic Organisms in *Chalk* from Meudon; seen partly as opaque, and partly as transparent objects.

minute bodies termed *Xanthidia*, which bear a strong resemblance to the sporangia of certain *Desmidiaceæ* (Fig. 158, D); and the Author has found similar bodies in the midst of what appears to be sponge-tissue imbedded in the Globigerina-mud. And (as was first pointed out by Mr. Sorby) the coccoliths and coccospheres at present found on the sea-bottom (§ 409), are often to be discovered by the microscopic examination of Chalk.†—All these correspondences show that the formation of Chalk took place under conditions essentially similar to those under which the deposit of

* See Dr. Bowerbank's Memoirs in the "Transact. of the Geolog. Society," 1840, and in the "Ann. of Nat. Hist." 1st Ser., Vols. vii., x.

† On the Organic origin of the so-called "Crystalloids" of Chalk; in "Ann. of Nat. Hist.," Ser. 3, Vol. viii. (1861), pp. 193-200.

Globigerina-mud is being formed over the Atlantic sea-bed at the present time.

700. In examining Chalk or other similar mixed aggregation, whose component particles are easily separable from each other, it is desirable to separate, with as little trouble as possible, the larger and more definitely organized bodies from the minute amorphous particles; and the mode of doing this will depend upon whether we are operating upon the large or upon the small scale. If the former, a quantity of soft Chalk should be rubbed to powder with water, by means of a soft brush; and this water should then be proceeded with according to the method of levigation already directed for separating the Diatomaceæ (§ 300). It will usually be found that the first deposits contain the larger Foraminifera, fragments of Shell, &c., and that the smaller Foraminifera and Sponge-spicules fall next; the fine amorphous particles remaining diffused through the water after it has been standing for some time, so that they may be poured-away. The organisms thus separated should be dried and mounted in Canada balsam.—If the smaller scale of preparation be preferred, as much Chalk scraped fine as will lie on the point of a knife is to be laid on a drop of water on the glass slide, and allowed to remain there for a few seconds; the water, with any particles still floating on it, should then be removed; and the sediment left on the glass should be dried and mounted in Balsam.—For examining the structure of Flints, such chips as may be obtained with a hammer will commonly serve very well: a clear translucent flint being first selected, and the chips that are obtained being soaked for a short time in turpentine (which increases their transparence), those which show organic structure, whether Sponge-tissue or Xanthidia, are to be selected and mounted in Canada balsam. The most perfect specimens of Sponge-structure, however, are only to be obtained by slicing and polishing,—a process which is best performed by the lapidary.

701. There are various other deposits, of less extent and importance than the great Chalk-formation, which are, like it, composed in great part of Microscopic organisms, chiefly minute Foraminifera; and the presence of animals of this group may be largely recognized, by the assistance of this instrument, in sections of Calcareous rocks of various dates, whose other materials were fragments of Corals, Encrinite-stems, or the shells of Mollusks. In the formation of the Coralline Crag' (Tertiary) of the eastern coast of England, *Polyzoaries* (§ 548) had the greatest share; but the Tertiary limestone of which Paris is chiefly built consists almost exclusively of the shells of *Miliolida* (§ 462), and is thus known as Miliolite (millet-seed) limestone. In the vast stratum of Nummulitic limestone (Fig. 333), which was formed at the commencement of the Tertiary period, the Microscope enables us to see that the *matrix* in which the large entire Nummulites are embedded, is itself composed of comminuted fragments and young of the same, together with minuter Foraminifera. In the Oolitic (Secondary) formation,

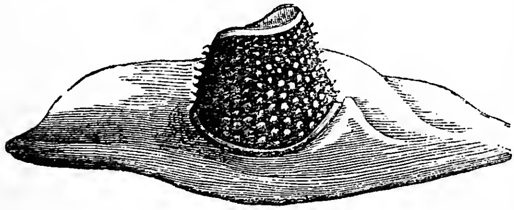
again, there are many beds which are shown by the Microscope to have been chiefly composed of Foraminiferal shells; and in those portions which exhibit the 'roe-stone' arrangement from which the rock derives its name (such as is beautifully displayed in many specimens of Bath-stone and Portland-stone), it is found by Microscopic examination of transparent sections, that each rounded concretion is composed of a series of concentric spheres formed by successive calcareous deposits upon a central nucleus, which nucleus is often a Foraminiferal shell. In these and similar calcareous formations, the entire materials of which were obviously furnished by the accumulation of animal remains, it not unfrequently happens that all traces of their origin are obliterated by local 'metamorphic' action usually dependent upon neighbouring Volcanic heat; and thus a crystalline marble, whose particles present not the least evidence of organic arrangement, may have been formed by the metamorphosis of Chalky, Oolitic, or Nummulitic limestone. Now there is very strong evidence that the vast mass of sub-crystalline 'Carboniferous' limestone, which forms our coal-basins, has had a similar origin in Foraminiferal and Zoophytic life; the traces of which have been for the most part removed by the metamorphic action involved in its upheaval. For where it has sustained but little disturbance, the evidences of its organic (chiefly Foraminiferal) origin are unmistakable. Thus in the great plains of Russia, there are certain bands of limestone of this epoch, varying in thickness from fifteen inches to five feet, and frequently repeated through a vertical depth of two hundred feet over very wide areas, which are almost entirely composed of the extinct genus *Fusulina* (Fig. 331). Again, those parts of the Carboniferous limestone of Ireland which have undergone least disturbance, can be plainly shown, by the examination of Microscopic sections, to consist of the remains of Foraminifera, Polyzoa, fragments of Corals, &c. And where, as not unfrequently happens, beds of this limestone are separated by clay seams, these are found to be loaded with 'Microzoa' of various kinds, particularly *Foraminifera* (of which the *Saccamina*, Fig. 319, *a*, has come down to the present time), and the beautiful *Polyzoaries* known as 'lace-corals.'

702. Mention has been already made (§ 487 *note*) of Prof. Ehrenberg's very remarkable discovery, that a large proportion (to say the least) of the *green sands* which present themselves in various stratified deposits, from the Silurian epoch to the Tertiary period, and which in certain localities constitute what is known as *the* Greensand formation (beneath the Chalk), is composed of the *casts* of the interior of minute shells of Foraminifera and Mollusca, the shells themselves having entirely disappeared. The mineral material of these casts has not merely filled the chambers and their communicating passages (Fig. 328, A, B), but has also penetrated, even to its minutest ramifications, the canal-system of the intermediate skeleton (Figs. 332, 337). The precise parallel to these deposits presents itself in certain spots of the existing sea-

bottom, such as the Agulhas bank near the Cape of Good Hope; where the dredge comes up laden with a green sand, which, on microscopic examination, proves to consist almost entirely of 'internal casts' of existing Foraminifera, that must have been formed by the chemical replacement of their protoplasmic bodies by ferruginous silicates precipitated from the Sea-water. And this fact gives the clue to the interpretation of the conditions under which the 'Eozoic Limestone' of Canada (§ 497), formed on the sea-bottom of the Laurentian epoch by the extension of continuous Foraminiferal growth resembling a Coral reef, became interpenetrated with a like deposit of green silicate of magnesia (serpentine), of whose presence in large amount in the sea-water of that period there is ample evidence.—The determination of the organic nature of this Serpentine-limestone, which is one of the lowest members of a series of strata so far below those in which organic remains had previously been detected, that, to use the words of Sir William Logan, the appearance of the so-called 'Primordial Fauna' is a comparatively modern event,—may be regarded as the most remarkable achievement of Microscopic inquiry as applied to Geology.

703. It is obvious that, under ordinary circumstances, only the *hard* parts of the bodies of Animals that have been entombed in the depths of the earth are likely to be preserved; but from these a vast amount of information may be drawn; and the inspection of a microscopic fragment will often reveal, with the utmost certainty, the entire nature of the organism of which it formed part. Minute fragments of the tests or spines of all Echinodermata, and of all such Molluscous shells as present distinct appearances of structure (this being especially the case with the Brachiopods, and with certain families of Lamellibranchiate bivalves), may be unerringly identified by its means, when the external forms of these fragments would give no assistance whatever.—In the study of the important ancient group of *Trilobites*, not only does a Microscopic examination of the 'casts' which have been preserved of the surface of their Eyes (Fig. 491) serve to show the entire conformity in the structure of these organs to the 'composite' type which is so remarkable a characteristic of the higher Articulata (§ 626), but it also brings to light certain peculiarities which help to determine the division of the great Crustacean series with which this group has most alliance.*

Fig. 491.

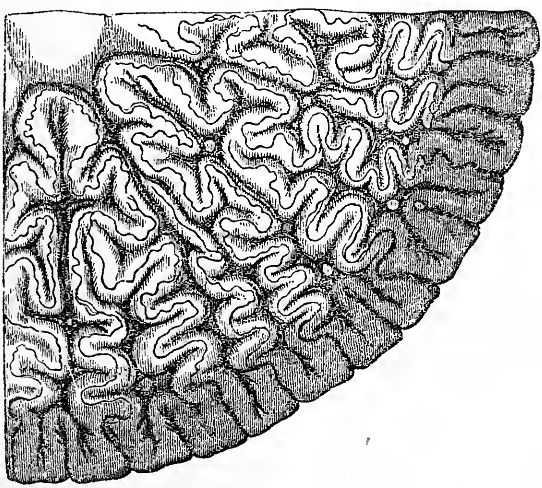


Eye of *Trilobite*.

* See Prof. Burmeister "On the Organization of the Trilobites," published by the Ray Society, p. 19.

704. It is, however, in the case of the Teeth, the Bones, and the Dermal skeleton of Vertebrated animals, that the value of Microscopic inquiry becomes most apparent; since their structure presents so many characteristics which are subject to well-marked variations in their several Classes, Orders, and Families, that a knowledge of these characters frequently enables the Microscopist to determine the nature of even the most fragmentary specimens, with a positiveness which must appear altogether misplaced to such as have not studied the evidence. It was in regard to *teeth*, that the possibility of such determinations was first made clear by the laborious researches of Prof. Owen;* and the following may be given as examples of their value:—A rock-formation extends over many parts of Russia, whose mineral characters might justify its being likened either to the *Old* or to the *New* Red sandstone of this country, and whose position relatively to other strata is such that there is great difficulty in obtaining evidence from the usual sources as to its place in the series. Hence the only hope of settling this question (which was one of great practical importance,—since, if the formation were *new* Red, Coal might be expected to underlie it, whilst if *old* Red, no reasonable hope of Coal could be entertained) lay in the determination of the Organic remains which this stratum might yield; but unfortunately these were few and fragmentary, consisting chiefly of teeth which are seldom perfectly preserved.

FIG. 492.



Section of Tooth of *Labyrinthodon.*

From the gigantic size of these teeth, together with their form, it was at first inferred that they belonged to Saurian Reptiles, in

* See his magnificent "Odontography."

which case the Sandstone would have been considered as New Red; but Microscopic examination of their intimate structure unmistakably proved them to belong to a genus of Fishes (*Dendrodus*) which is exclusively Palæozoic, and thus decided that the formation must be Old Red.—So again, the Microscopic examination of certain fragments of teeth found in a sandstone of Warwickshire, disclosed a most remarkable type of tooth-structure (shown in Fig. 492), which was also acertained to exist in certain teeth that had been discovered in the 'Keupersandstein' of Wirtemberg; and the identity or close resemblance of the animals to which these teeth belonged having been thus established, it became almost certain that the Warwickshire and Wirtemberg sandstones were equivalent formations, a point of much Geological importance. The next question arising out of this discovery, was the nature of the animal (provisionally termed *Labyrinthodon*, a name expressive of the most peculiar feature in its dental structure) to which these teeth belonged. They had been referred, from external characters merely, to the order of Saurian Reptiles: but it is now clear that they were gigantic Salamandroid *Amphibia*, having many points of relationship to *Ceratodus* (the Australian 'mud-fish'), which shows a similar though simpler dental organization.

705. The researches of Prof. Quekett on the minute structure of *bone** have shown that from the average size and form of the lacunæ, their disposition in regard to each other and to the Haversian canals, and the number and course of the canaliculi (§ 653), the nature of even a minute fragment of Bone may often be determined with a considerable approach to certainty; as in the following examples, among many which might be cited:—Dr. Falconer, the distinguished investigator of the fossil remains of the Himalayan region, and the discoverer of the gigantic fossil Tortoise of the Sivalik hills, having met with certain small bones about which he was doubtful, placed them for minute examination in the hands of Prof. Quekett, who informed him, on Microscopic evidence, that they might certainly be pronounced Reptilian, and probably belonged to an animal of the Tortoise tribe: and this determination was fully borne-out by other evidence, which led Dr. Falconer to conclude that they were toe-bones of his great Tortoise.—Some fragments of Bone were found, many years since, in a Chalk-pit, which were considered by Prof. Owen to have formed part of the wing-bones of a long-winged sea-bird allied to the Albatross. This determination, founded solely on considerations derived from the very imperfectly-preserved external forms of these fragments, was called in question by some other Palæontologists; who thought it more probable that these bones belonged to a large species of the extinct genus *Pterodactylus*, a flying lizard whose wing was extended upon a single immensely-prolonged digit. No species of

* See his Memoir on the 'Comparative Structure of Bone,' in the "Transact. of the Microsc. Soc.," Ser. 1, Vol. ii.; and the "Catalogue of the Histological Museum of the Roy. Coll. of Surgeons," Vol. ii.

Pterodactyle, however, at all comparable to this in dimensions, was at that time known; and the characters furnished by the configuration of the bones not being in any degree decisive, the question would have long remained unsettled, had not an appeal been made to the Microscopic test. This appeal was so decisive, by showing that the minute structure of the bone in question corresponded exactly with that of Pterodactyle bone, and differed essentially from that of every known Bird, that no one who placed much reliance upon that evidence could entertain the slightest doubt on the matter. By Prof. Owen, however, the validity of that determination was questioned, and the bone was still maintained to be that of a Bird; until the question was finally set at rest, and the value of the Microscopic test triumphantly confirmed, by the discovery of undoubted Pterodactyle bones of corresponding and even of greater dimensions, in the same and other Chalk quarries.

706. The application of the Microscope to Geology is not, however, limited to the discovery or determination of Organic structure; for, as has been now satisfactorily demonstrated, very important information may be acquired by its means respecting the Mineral composition of Rocks, and the mode of their formation. The Microscopic examination of the sediments now in course of deposition on various parts of the great Oceanic area, and especially of the large number of samples brought up in the 'Challenger' soundings, has led to this very remarkable conclusion,—that the *débris* resulting from the degradation of Continental land-masses are not carried far from their shores, being *entirely absent* from the bottom of the deep Ocean-basins. The sediments *there* found, where not of Organic origin, mainly consist of volcanic *sands* and *ashes*, which are found in Volcanic areas, and of *clay* that seems to have been produced by the disintegration of masses of pumice (vesicular lava), which, after long floating, and dispersion by surface-drift or ocean-currents, have become water-logged and have sunk to the bottom. As no ordinary siliceous sand is found anywhere save in the neighbourhood of Continents and Continental islands, and as all Oceanic islands are the products of local Volcanic outbursts, this absence of all trace of submerged Continental land over the great Oceanic area, affords strong confirmation to the belief which Geological evidence has been gradually tending to establish, that the sedimentary rocks which form the existing land, were deposited in the immediate neighbourhood of pre-existing land, whose degradation furnished their materials; and consequently that the *original* disposition of the great Continental and Oceanic areas was not very different from what it now is.* Further, the microscopic examination of these Oceanic sediments reveals the presence of extremely minute particles, which seem to correspond in composition to *meteorites*, and which there is strong reason for regarding as 'cosmic dust' pervading the inter-

* See Prof. Geikie's Lecture on 'Geographical Evolution,' in the "Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society," July, 1879.

planetary spaces.—Thus the application of the Microscope to the study of these deposits, brings us in contact with the greatest questions not only of Terrestrial but also of Cosmical Physics; and furnishes evidence of the highest value for their solution.

707. The application of the Microscope to the determination of the materials of the sediments now in process of deposition on the Ocean-bottom, leads us to another great department of Microscopic inquiry now being extensively prosecuted,—namely, *Microscopic Petrology*, or the study of the Mineral materials and Physical structure of Rocks. For although the Geologist has no difficulty in determining by his unaided eye, with the use of simple chemical tests, the mineral composition of rocks of coarse texture, and in distinguishing the fragments of previously existing rocks of which they have been built-up, the case is different with those of extremely fine grain, still more with such as present an apparently homogeneous, compact, and glassy character. For it is only by the microscopic study of these, that any trustworthy conclusions can be arrived at in regard to the mode in which they have originated, and the changes they have subsequently undergone; and such study often reveals facts of the most unexpected kind and the most striking significance.—Thus, many compact *sedimentary* rocks, whose homogeneous appearance to the eye or the hand-magnifier gives no clue to their origin, are found, when thin sections of them are examined microscopically, to be aggregations of minute rounded and water-worn grains (often less than 1-1000th of an inch in diameter) of Quartz, Felspar, Mica, soft and hard Clays, Clay-slate, Oxide of Iron, Iron-pyrites, Carbonate of Lime, fragments of fossil Organisms, &c., arranged without any trace of decided structure or crystallization. In rocks exhibiting *slaty cleavage*, again, the direction in which the pressure has been applied is indicated in a microscopic section by the elongation or flattening out of some of the particles, with a sliding movement of others. In regard to *eruptive* or *igneous* rocks, on the other hand, the results of microscopic examination enable it to be stated that whether possessing the hardest and most compact substance, and presenting the most homogeneous and even glassy aspect, or existing under the form of the softest and finest powder (like the dust-ash of volcanoes), the rocks of this class are characterized—as a rule—by the minutely-crystalline character of their mineral components; and this even when their vitrification seems to the eye so complete, as to forbid the expectation of any such recognition. And in this manner a clue is obtained to the *sources* of these rocks; which (there is now strong reason to believe) have been formed for the most part, if not universally, by the melting-down of the rocks pre-existing in the neighbourhood, and not ejected (as according to the older theory) from the general molten interior of the earth.—Again, we are often enabled by the same means to trace-out the 'metamorphic' action by which one kind of rock has been converted into another subsequently to its first

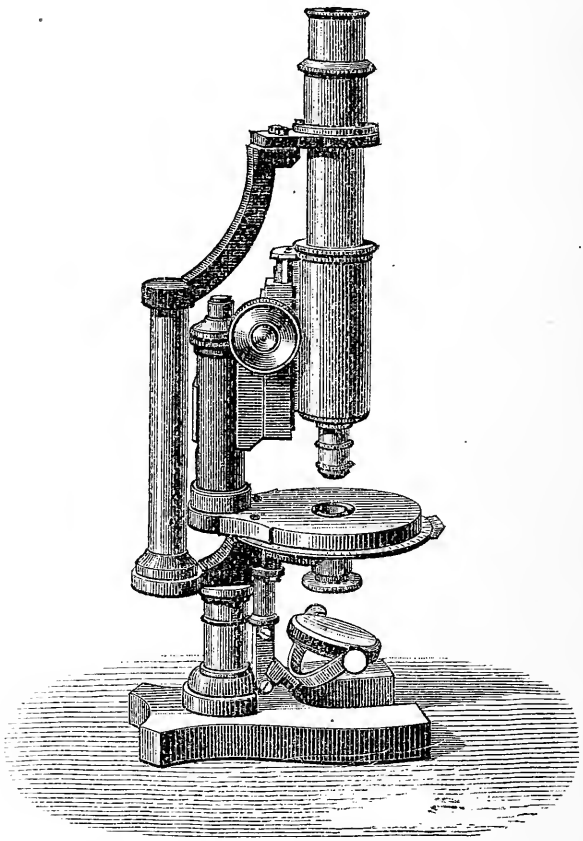
deposition as a sediment. Of this the change of a calcareous deposit made-up of the remains of Foraminifera with fragments of shells, corals, &c., into a crystalline Limestone, is one of the most common; occurring wherever the rock has been subjected to pressure and contortion, and especially in the near neighbourhood of igneous outbursts. And there can now be little hesitation in attributing much of this conversion to the solvent action of water raised to a very high temperature under enormous pressure. A very curious piece of evidence, moreover, has now been furnished by Microscopic study, in support of the doctrine which other considerations render probable, that *some* forms of Granite (to say the least) have been generated from sedimentary rocks by metamorphic agency of a like nature. For it has been shown by Mr. Sorby that the quartz-crystals of Granite often enclose water or other liquids (sometimes liquid carbonic acid) in cavities in their interior; which cavities, however. are not filled with the liquid, the remaining spaces being occupied by vapour. This fact cannot be otherwise accounted for, than by supposing that the crystallization must have taken place in the presence of water; and that this water, though liquid, must have been so hot as at that time to *fill* the cavities which it now occupies only partially, the size of the present vacuity marking the amount of its subsequent shrinkage during the cooling of the mass.

708. As this study, however, can only be successfully prosecuted by such as have previously obtained a considerable knowledge of Mineralogy, further details would obviously be unsuitable to our present purpose; which is only to excite an interest in these researches, and to give such general directions as will be of service to beginners who may be disposed to follow them out.—The mode in which Rock-sections are to be cut, is essentially the same as that for which directions have already been given (§§ 192–196); but it will be found desirable to use broader and thicker glasses than the ordinary 3×1 inch size, so that the sections may be about an inch square. The emery-plate should only be used for the hardest rocks, as the softer will be disintegrated when rubbed upon it. For these last, a fine corundum-file, or a piece of pumice-stone, is to be preferred in the first instance, and a fine Water-of-Ayr stone for finishing. When the rock is very friable, it may be saturated with hardened Canada balsam before rubbing down. As sections of the thinness usually required may not bear being transferred from the glasses to which they are cemented, it will be desirable that the attachment of a flattened and polished surface to the glass on which any section is to remain, should be finally made before the reduction of its thickness has been such as to involve the risk of its fracture in the process.*

* An "Elementary Text-book of Petrology" has lately been published by Mr. F. Rutley, of H.M. Geological Survey. The more advanced Student should have recourse to the successive Memoirs published by Mr. Sorby in the Journal of the Geological Society, the Proceedings of the Yorkshiro

709. In the application of the Microscope to Petrological and Mineralogical research, the employment of Polarized Light is con-

Fig. 493.



Nachet's Small Mineralogical Microscope.

stantly required; and various means and appliances are needful for its most advantageous application, which are not required by

Geological Society, and elsewhere, especially the following:—'On some Peculiarities in the Microscopic Structure of Crystals,' in "Journ. of Geolog. Society," Vol. xiv., p. 242; 'On the Microscopic Structure of Crystals, indicating the Origin of Minerals and Rocks," *Op. cit.*, p. 453; 'On the Original Nature and subsequent Alteration of Mica-Schist,' *Op. cit.*, Vol. xix., p. 401; 'Sur l'Application du Microscope à l'Etude de la Géologie Physique,' in "Bull. Soc. Géol. de Paris," 1859-60, p. 568; and his Presidential Addresses to the Geological Society, 1879 and 1880.—Also the Memoir by Mr. David Forbes, 'The Microscope in Geology,' in the "Popular Science Review," Oct. 1867; the Treatise of Vogelsang, "Philosophie der Geologie und Mikroskopische Gesteinsstudien," Bonn, 1867; various subsequent Memoirs by the same; the Treatises of Zirkel, "Mikroskopische Beschaffenheit der Mineralien u. Gesteine," 1873, and "Microscopic Petrography"

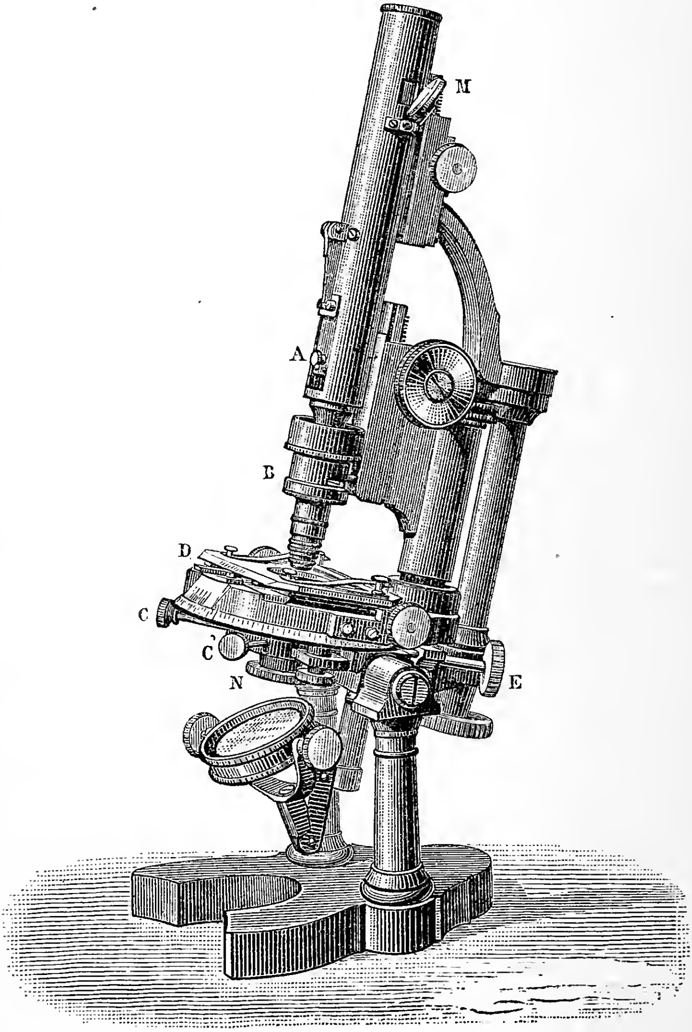
the ordinary Microscopist.* An instrument having been recently brought out by M. Nachet, which combines all that the large experience of MM. Fouqué and Michel Lévy has led them to think desirable for Mineralogical and Petrological investigation, an account of it is here subjoined.—In all Microscopes previously constructed for this purpose, the rotation of the object on the Stage between the Polarizing and the Analyzing prisms was liable to put it out of position in regard to the cross-threads in the eye-piece; as the centering of the Objective is scarcely ever so perfect as not to produce *some* displacement, and, if the centering be adjusted so as to be perfect for one Objective, it is likely to be faulty for another. Now, the peculiarity of M. Nachet's construction is, that the Eye-piece, with its cross-threads and analyzing prism, remains fixed above (being carried upon a separate arm), whilst the Body and Stage (with the object it carries) can be made to rotate altogether around the optic axis, above the Polarizing prism which remains fixed beneath; the angular amount of this rotation being measured by a graduated ring, and a vernier attached to the stage. By this arrangement, the object is made to rotate between the two prisms of the Polarizing apparatus, without changing its position beneath the Objective, and therefore without displacing its image from its contact with the cross-threads of the Eye-piece. The mode in which this plan is worked-out in the ordinary small Continental model, is shown in Fig. 493; whilst, on the other hand, Fig. 494 represents the largest and most complete form of the instrument. In this last, the upper part of the body, carrying the eye-piece and analyzing prism, can be raised or lowered by the pinion attached to the fixed arm that carries it. At M, immediately beneath the eye-piece, is a small mirror, so placed as to illuminate the cross-wires when the field is dark. The analyzing prism is inserted at A, in such a manner as to allow of being readily withdrawn when its action is not required. The Stage, with its traversing object-platform D, is made to rotate in the optic axis by the pinion E; which can be thrown out of gear so as to enable the rotation to be made by hand; and the object-platform, which is graduated in both directions, is fitted with a square against which the slide abuts, so that any particular point in a section, whose place has been once noted by the scales, can be readily found again. The Polarizing prism N, is mounted quite independently of the stage, and can be

(U.S. Geological Exploration of Fortieth Parallel), 1876; the Treatises of Rosenbusch, "Mikroskopische Physiographie der petrographische-wichtegen Mineralien," 1873 and "Mikroskopische Physiographie der massigen Gesteine," 1877; that of Jenzsch, "Mikroskopische Flora u. Fauna Krystallinische Mossengesteine," 1868; that of Von Lasaulx, "Elemente der Petrographie," 1875; and the great work of MM. Fouqué and Lévy, "Minéralogie Micrographique, Roches Eruptives Françaises," Paris, 1879.

* The description of a Microscope specially devised for this purpose by Mr. Rutley, and made by Mr. Watson (of Pall Mall), will be found at p. 307 of his Text-book.

precisely centred by the two milled-heads, C and C′. In the lower (rotating) part of the body, there is a horizontal slit at B for the introduction of laminæ of gypsum, quartz, &c.; and into the lower

FIG. 491.



Nachet's Large Mineralogical Microscope.

end of the ocular tube can be fitted a cone that carries the converging lenses necessary to transform the instrument into an Amici microscope, its distance from the objective being regulated by the rack near the top of the eye-tube.

CHAPTER XX.

CRYSTALLIZATION.—POLARIZATION.—MOLECULAR COALESCENCE.

710. Although by far the most numerous and most important applications of the Microscope are those by which the structure and actions of Organized beings are made known to us, yet there are many Mineral substances which constitute both interesting and beautiful objects; being remarkable either for the elegance of their forms or for the beauty of their colours, or for both combined. The natural forms of Inorganic substances, when in any way symmetrical, are so in virtue of that peculiar arrangement of their particles which is termed *crystallization;* and each substance which crystallizes at all, does so after a certain type or plan,—the identity or difference of these types furnishing characters of primary value to the Mineralogist. It does not follow, however, that the form of the crystal shall be constantly the same for each substance; on the contrary, the same plan of crystallization may exhibit itself under a great variety of forms; and the study of these in such minute crystals as are appropriate subjects for observation by the Microscope, is not only a very interesting application of its powers, but is capable of affording some valuable hints to the designer. This is particularly the case with crystals of *Snow*, which belong to the 'hexagonal system,' the basis of every figure being a hexagon of six rays; for these rays "become encrusted with an endless variety of secondary formations of the same kind, some consisting of thin laminæ alone, others of solid but translucent prisms heaped one upon another, and others gorgeously combining laminæ and prisms in the richest profusion;"* the angles by which these figures are bounded being invariably 60° or 120°. Beautiful arborescent forms are not unfrequently produced by the peculiar mode of aggregation of individual crystals: of this we have often an example on a large scale on a frosted window; but microscopic crystallizations sometimes present the same curious phenomenon (Fig. 495).—In the following list are enumerated some of the most interesting natural specimens which the Mineral kingdom affords as Microscopic objects; these should be viewed by reflected light, under a very low power:—

* See Mr. Glaisher's Memoir on 'Snow-Crystals in 1855,' with numerous beautiful figures, in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," Vol. iii. (1855), p. 179.

Antimony, sulphuret	Iron, ilvaite or Elba-ore
Asbestos	—— pyrites (sulphuret)
Aventurine	Lapis lazuli
Ditto, artificial	Lead, oxide (minium)
Copper, native	—— sulphuret (galena)
—— arseniate	Silver, crystallized
—— malachite-ore	Tin, crystallized
—— peacock-ore	—— oxide
—— pyrites (sulphuret)	—— sulphuret
—— ruby-ore	Zinc, crystallized.

Thin sections of Granite and other rocks of the more or less regularly-crystalline structure adverted to in the preceding paragraph, also of Agate, Arragonite, Tremolite, Zeolite, and other Minerals, are very beautiful objects for the Polariscope.

711. The actual process of the *Formation of Crystals* may be watched under the Microscope with the greatest facility; all that is necessary being to lay on a slip of glass, previously warmed, a saturated solution of the Salt, and to incline the stage in a slight degree, so that the drop shall be thicker at its lower than at its upper edge. The crystallization will speedily begin at the upper edge, where the proportion of liquid to solid is most quickly reduced by evaporation, and will gradually extend downwards. If it should go on too slowly, or should cease altogether, whilst yet a large proportion of the liquid remains, the slide may be again warmed, and the part already solidified may be re-dissolved, after which the process will recommence with increased rapidity.—This interesting spectacle may be watched under any Microscope; and the works of Adams and others among the older observers testify to the great interest which it had for them. It becomes far more striking, however, when the crystals, as they come into being, are made to stand out bright upon a dark ground, by the use of the Spot lens, the Paraboloid, or any other form of Black-ground illumination; still more beautiful is the spectacle when the Polarizing apparatus is employed, so as to invest the crystals with the most gorgeous variety of hues. Very interesting results may often be obtained from a mixture of two or more Salts; and some of the Double Salts give forms of peculiar beauty.* A further variety

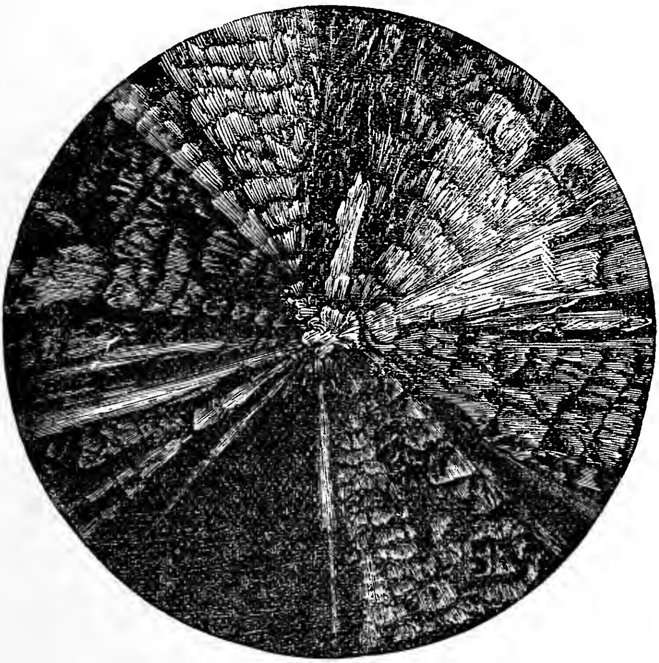
FIG. 495.

Crystallized Silver.

* The following directions have been given by Mr. Davies ("Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," N.S., Vol. ii., 1862, p. 128, and Vol. v. p. 205) for obtaining

may be produced by *fusing* the film of the substance which has crystallized from its solution; since on the temperature of the glass slide during the solidification will depend the size and arrangement

FIG. 496.



Radiating Crystallization of Santonine.

of the crystals. Thus *Santonine*, when crystallizing rapidly on a very hot plate, forms large crystals radiating from centres without

these. "He makes a nearly saturated solution, say of the double Sulphate of Copper and Magnesia; he dries rapidly a portion on a glass slide, allowing it to become hot, so as to fuse the salt in its water of crystallization; there then remains an amorphous film on the hot glass. On allowing the slide to cool slowly, the particles of the salt will absorb moisture from the atmosphere, and begin to arrange themselves on the glass, commencing from points. If then placed under the Microscope, the points will be seen starting up here and there; and from those centres the crystals may be watched as they burst into blossom and spread their petals on the plate. Starting-points may be made at pleasure, by touching the film with a fine needle, to enable the moisture to get under it; but this treatment renders the centres imperfect. If allowed to go on, the crystals would slowly cover the plate, or if breathed-on they form immediately; whereas if it is desired to preserve the flower-like forms on a plain ground, as soon as they are large enough development is suspended by again applying gentle heat; the crystals are then covered with *pure* Canada balsam and thin glass, to be finished off as usual. The balsam must cover the edges of the film, or moisture will probably get under it, and crystallization go creeping on."

any undulations; when the heat is less considerable, the crystals are smaller, and show concentric waves of very decided form (Fig. 496); but when the slip of glass is cool, the crystals are exceedingly minute. It would seem as if these last results were due to interruptions in the formative process at certain points, consequent upon the hardening influence of cold, and the starting of a fresh formation at those points.* A curious example of the like kind in the crystallization of Sulphate of Copper to which a *small* quantity of Sulphate of Magnesia has been added, is shown in Fig. 497. The same principle has been carried out to a still

FIG. 497.

Radiating Crystallization of Sulphate of Copper and Magnesia.

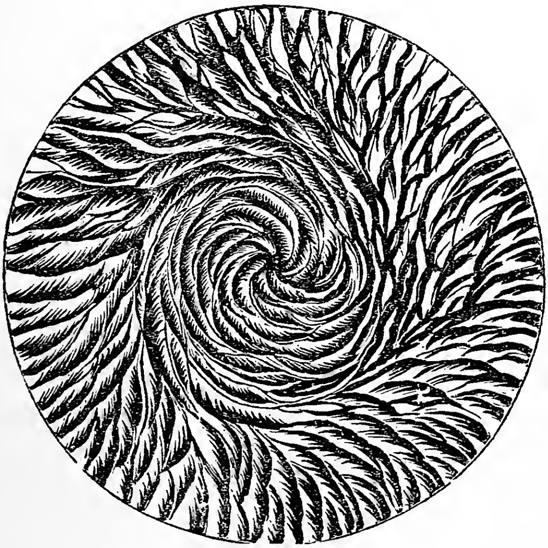
greater extent in the case of Sulphate of Copper alone, by Mr. R. Thomas,† who has succeeded, by keeping the slide at a temperature of from 80° to 90°, in obtaining most singular and beautiful forms

* See Davies on 'Crystallization and the Microscope,' in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," N.S., Vol. iv., p. 251.

† See his paper 'On the Crystallization at various Temperatures of the Double Salt, Sulphate of Magnesia and Sulphate of Zinc,' in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," N.S., Vol. vi., pp. 137, 177. See also H. N. Draper on 'Crystals for the Micro-Polariscope,' in "Intellectual Observer," Vol. vi. (1865), p. 437.

of *spiral* crystallization, such as that represented in Fig. 498. Mr. Slack has shown that a great variety of spiral and curved forms can be obtained by dissolving metallic salts, or Salicine, Santonine, &c., in water containing 3 or 4 per cent. of colloid Silica. The

FIG. 498.



Spiral Crystallization of Sulphate of Copper.

nature of the action that takes place may be understood by allowing a drop of the Silica-solution to dry upon a slide; the result of which will be the production of a complicated series of cracks, many of them curvilinear. When a group of crystals in formation tend to radiate from a centre, the contractions of the Silica will often give them a tangential pull. Another action of the Silica is to introduce a very slight curling with just enough elevation above the slide to exhibit fragments of Newton's rings, when it is illuminated with Powell and Lealand's modification of Prof. Smith's dark-ground illuminator for high powers, and viewed with a 1-8th Objective. With crystalline bodies, these actions add to the variety of colours to be obtained with the Polariscope, the best slides exhibiting a series of tertiary tints.*—The following List specifies the Salts and other substances whose crystalline forms are most interesting. When these are viewed with Polarized light, some of them exhibit a beautiful variety of colours of their own, whilst others require the interposition of the Selenite plate for the development of colour. The substances marked *d* are distinguished

* 'On the Employment of Colloid Silica in the preparation of Crystals for the Polariscope,' in "Monthly Microscopical Journal," Vol. v., p. 50.

by the curious property termed *dichroism*, which was first noticed by Dr. Wollaston, but has been specially investigated by Sir D. Brewster.* This property consists in the exhibition of different colours by these crystals, according to the direction in which the light is transmitted through them; a crystal of Chloride of Platinum, for example, appearing of a deep red when the light passes along its axis, and of a vivid green when the light is transmitted in the opposite direction, with various intermediate shades. It is only possessed by doubly-refracting substances; and it depends on the absorption of some of the coloured rays of the light which is polarized during its passage through the crystal, so that the two pencils formed by double refraction become differently coloured,—the degree of difference being regulated by the inclination of the incident ray to the axis of double refraction.

Acetate of Copper, *d*
——— of Manganese
——— of Soda
——— of Zinc
Alum
Arseniate of Potass
Asparagine
Aspartic Acid
Bicarbonate of Potass
Bichromate of Potass
Bichloride of Mercury
Binoxalate of Chromium and Potass
Bitartrate of Ammonia
——— of Lime
——— of Potass
Boracic Acid
Borate of Ammonia
——— of Soda (borax)
Carbonate of Lime (from urine of horse)
Carbonate of Potass
——— of Soda
Chlorate of Potass
Chloride of Barium
——— of Cobalt
——— of Copper and Ammonia
——— of Palladium, *d*
——— of Sodium
Cholesterine
Chromate of Potass
Cinchonoidine
Citric Acid
Cyanide of Mercury
Hippuric Acid
Hypermanganate of Potass
Iodide of Potassium
——— of Quinine
Mannite
Margarine
Murexide
Muriate of Ammonia
Nitrate of Ammonia
——— of Barytes
——— of Bismuth
——— of Copper
——— of Potass
——— of Soda
——— of Strontian
——— of Uranium
Oxalic Acid
Oxalate of Ammonia
——— of Chromium
——— of Chromium and Ammonia, *d*
——— of Chromium and Potass, *d*
——— of Lime
——— of Potass
——— of Soda
Oxalurate of Ammonia
Phosphate of Ammonia
——— Ammoniaco-Magnesian (triple of urine)
——— of Lead, *d*
——— of Soda
Platino-chloride of Thallium
Platino-cyanide of Ammonia, *d*
Prussiate of Potass (red)
Ditto ditto (yellow)
Quinidine
Salicine
Saliginine
Santonine
Stearine
Sugar
Sulphate of Ammonia
——— of Cadmium
——— of Copper

* "Philosophical Transactions," 1819.

Sulphate of Copper and Ammonia
——— of Copper and Magnesia
——— of Copper and Potass
——— of Iron
——— of Iron and Cobalt
——— of Magnesia
——— of Nickel
——— of Potassa
Sulphate of Soda
——— of Zinc
Tartaric Acid
Tartrate of Soda
Uric Acid
Urate of Ammonia
——— of Soda

It not unfrequently happens that a remarkably-beautiful specimen of Crystallization developes itself, which the observer desires to keep for display. In order to do this successfully, it is necessary to exclude the air; and Mr. Warrington recommends Castor-oil as the best preservative. A small quantity of this should be poured on the crystallized surface, a gentle warmth applied, and a thin glass cover then laid upon the drop and gradually pressed down; and after the superfluous oil has been removed from the margin, a coat of Gold-size or other varnish is to be applied.—Although most of the objects furnished by Vegetable and Animal structures, which are advantageously shown by Polarized light, have been already noticed in their appropriate places, it will be useful here to recapitulate the principal, with some additions.

Vegetable.

Cuticles, Hairs, and Scales, from Leaves (§§ 377–380)
Fibres of Cotton and Flax
Raphides (§ 359)
Spiral cells and vessels (§§ 357, 362)
Starch-grains (§ 358)
Wood, longitudinal sections of, mounted in balsam (§ 368)

Animal.

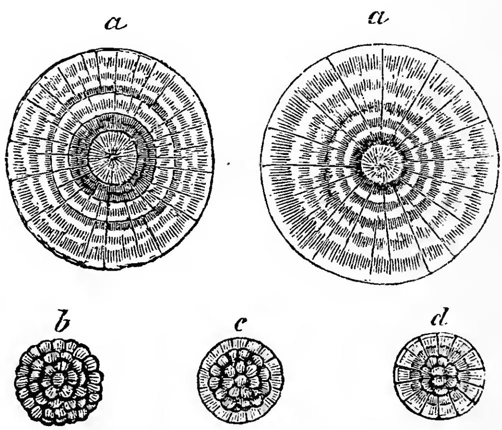
Fibres and Spicules of Sponges (§ 510)
Polypidoms of Hydrozoa (§ 521)
Spicules of Gorgoniæ (§ 529)
Polyzoaries (§ 248)
Tongues (Palates) of Gasteropods mounted in balsam (§§ 576–579)
Cuttle-fish bone (§ 575)
Scales of Fishes (§§ 657, 658)
Sections of Egg-shells (§ 712)
——— of Hairs (§§ 661, 662)
——— of Quills (§ 660)
——— of Horns (§ 664)
——— of Shells (§§ 563–574)
——— of Skin (§ 670)
——— of Teeth (§§ 655, 656)
——— of Tendon, longitudinal (§ 668)

712. *Molecular Coalescence.*—Remarkable modifications are shown in the ordinary forms of crystallizable substances, when the aggregation of the inorganic particles takes place in the presence of certain kinds of organic matter; and a class of facts of great interest in their bearing upon the mode of formation of various calcified structures in the bodies of Animals, was brought to light by the ingenious researches of Mr. Rainey,* whose method of experimenting essentially consisted in bringing-about a slow decomposition of the salts of Lime contained in Gum-arabic, by the agency of Subcarbonate of Potash. The result is the formation of

* See his Treatise "On the Mode of Formation of the Shells of Animals, of Bone, and of several other structures, by a process of Molecular Coalescence, demonstrable in certain artificially-formed products" (1858); and his 'Further Experiments and Observations,' in "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," N.S., Vol. i. (1861), p. 23.

spheroidal concretions of Carbonate of Lime, which progressively increase in diameter at the expense of an amorphous deposit which at first intervenes between them; two such spherules sometimes coalescing to produce 'dumb-bells,' whilst the coalescence of a larger number gives rise to the mulberry-like body shown in Fig. 499, *b*. The particles of such composite spherules appear subsequently to undergo re-arrangement according to a definite plan, of which the stages are shown at *c* and *d*; and it is upon this plan that the further increase takes place, by which such larger concretions as are shown at *a*, *a*, are gradually produced. The structure of these, especially when examined by Polarized light, is found to correspond very closely with that of the small calculous concretions which are common in the urine of the Horse, and which were at one time supposed to have a matrix of cellular structure.

Fig. 499.



Artificial Concretions of Carbonate of Lime.

The small calcareous concretions termed '*otoliths*,' or ear-stones, found in the auditory sacs of Fishes, present an arrangement of their particles essentially the same. Similar concretionary spheroids have already been mentioned (§ 613) as occurring in the skin of the Shrimp and other imperfectly-calcified shells of Crustacea; they occur also in certain imperfect layers of the shells of Mollusca; and we have a very good example of them in the outer layer of the envelope of what is commonly known as a 'soft egg,' or an 'egg without shell,' the calcareous deposit in the fibrous matting already described (§ 668) being here insufficient to solidify it. In the external layer of an ordinary egg-shell, on the other hand, the concretions have enlarged themselves by the progressive accretion of calcareous particles, so as to form a continuous layer, which consists of a series of polygonal plates resembling those of a tessellated pavement. In the solid 'shells' of the eggs of the Ostrich and

Cassowary, this concretionary layer is of considerable thickness; and vertical as well as horizontal sections of it are very interesting objects, showing also beautiful effects of colour under Polarized light. And from the researches of Prof. W. C. Williamson on the scales of Fishes (§ 657), there can be no doubt that much of the calcareous deposit which they contain is formed upon the same plan.

713. This line of inquiry has been contemporaneously pursued by Prof. Harting, of Utrecht, who, working on a plan fundamentally the same as that of Mr. Rainey (viz., the slow precipitation of insoluble salts of Lime in the presence of an Organic 'colloid'), has not only confirmed but greatly extended his results; showing that with *animal* colloids (such as egg-albumen, blood-serum, or a solution of gelatine) a much greater variety of forms may be thus produced, many of them having a strong resemblance to Calcareous structures hitherto known only as occurring in the bodies of Animals of various classes. The mode of experimenting usually followed by Prof. Harting, was to cover the hollow of an ordinary porcelain plate with a layer of the organic liquid, to the depth of from 0·4 to 0·6 of an inch; and then to immerse in the border of the liquid, but at diametrically opposite points, the solid salts intended to act on one another by double decomposition, such as Muriate, Nitrate, or Acetate of Lime, and Carbonate of Potass or Soda; so that, being very gradually dissolved, the two substances may come slowly to act upon each other, and may throw down their precipitate in the midst of the 'colloid.' The whole is then covered with a plate of glass, and left for some days in a state of perfect tranquillity; when there begin to appear at various spots on the surface, minute points reflecting light, which gradually increase and coalesce, so as to form a crust that comes to adhere to the border of the plate; whilst another portion of the precipitate subsides, and covers the bottom of the plate. Round the two spots where the salts are placed in the first instance, the calcareous deposits have a different character; so that in the same experiment several very distinct products are generally obtained, each in some particular spot. The length of time requisite is found to vary with the temperature, being generally from two to eight weeks. By the introduction of such a colouring matter as madder, logwood, or carmine, the concretions take the hue of the one employed. When these concretions are treated with dilute acid, so that their calcareous particles are wholly dissolved-out, there is found to remain a basis-substance which preserves the form of each; this, which consists of the 'colloid' somewhat modified, is termed by Harting *calco-globuline.*—Besides the globular concretions with the peculiar concentric and radiating arrangement obtained by Mr. Rainey (Fig. 499), Prof. Harting obtained a great variety of forms bearing a more or less close resemblance to the following:—1. The 'discoliths' and 'cyatholiths' of Prof. Huxley (Fig. 293). 2. The tuberculated 'spicules' of *Alcyonaria* (Figs. 362, 363), and the

very similar spicules in the mantle of some species of *Doris* (§ 573). Lamellæ of 'prismatic shell-substance' (§ 363), which are very closely imitated by crusts formed of flattened polyhedra, found on the surface of the 'colloid.' 4. The spheroidal concretions which form a sort of rudimentary shell within the body of *Limax* (§ 573). 5. The sinuous lamellæ which intervene between the parallel plates of the 'sepiostaire' of the *Cuttle-fish* (§ 575); the imitation of this being singularly exact. 6. The calcareous concretions that give solidity to the 'shell' of the Bird's egg; the semblance of which Prof. Harting was able to produce *in situ*, by dissolving away the calcareous component of the egg-shell by dilute acid, then immersing the entire egg in a concentrated solution of chloride of calcium, and transferring it thence to a concentrated solution of carbonate of potass, with which, in some cases, a little phosphate of soda was mixed.* Other forms of remarkable regularity and definiteness, differing entirely from anything that ordinary crystallization would produce, but not known to have their parallels in living bodies, have been obtained by Prof. Harting. Looking to the relations between the calcareous deposits in the scales of Fishes (§§ 657–659) and those by which Bones and Teeth are solidified, it can scarcely be doubted that the principle of 'molecular coalescence' is applicable to the latter, as well as to the former; and that an extension and variation of this method of experimenting would throw much light on the process of ossification and tooth-formation.—The inquiry has been further prosecuted by Dr. W. M. Ord, with express reference to the formation of Urinary and other Calculi.†

714. *Micro-Chemistry of Poisons.*—By a judicious combination of Microscopical with Chemical research, the application of re-agents may be made effectual for the detection of Poisonous or other substances, in quantities far more minute than have been previously supposed to be recognizable. Thus it is stated by Dr. Wormley‡ that Micro-Chemical analysis enables us by a very few minutes' labour to recognize with unerring certainty the reaction of the 100,000th part of a grain of either Hydrocyanic Acid, Mercury, or Arsenic; and that in many other instances we can easily detect by its means the presence of very minute quantities of substances, the true nature of which could only be otherwise determined in comparatively large quantity, and by considerable labour. This inquiry may be prosecuted, however, not only by the application of ordinary Chemical Tests under the Microscope, but also by the use of other means of recognition which the use of the Microscope

* See Prof. Harting's "Recherches de Morphologie Synthétique sur la production artificielle de quelques Formations Calcaires Inorganiques, publiées par l'Académie Royale Nèderlandaise des Sciences," Amsterdam, 1872; and "Quart. Journ. of Microsc. Sci.," Vol. xii., p. 118.

† See his Treatise "On the Influence of Colloids upon Crystalline Form and Cohesion," London, 1879.

‡ "Micro-Chemistry of Poisons," New York, 1867.

affords. Thus it was originally shown by Dr. Guy* that by the careful sublimation of Arsenic and Arsenious Acid,—the sublimates being deposited upon small disks of thin-glass,—these are distinctly recognizable by the forms they present under the Microscope (especially the Binocular) in extremely minute quantities; and that the same method of procedure may be applied to the volatile metals, Mercury, Cadmium, Selenium, Tellurium, and some of their Salts, and to some other volatile bodies, as Sal-Ammoniac, Camphor, and Sulphur. The method of sublimation was afterwards extended by Dr. Helwig† to the Vegetable Alkaloids, such as Morphine, Strychnine, Veratrine, &c. And subsequently Dr. Guy, repeating and confirming Dr. Helwig's observations, has shown that the same method may be further extended to such Animal products as the constituents of the Blood and of Urine, and to volatile and decomposable Organic substances generally.‡ By the careful prosecution of Micro-Chemical inquiry, especially with the aid of the Spectroscope (where admissible), the detection of Poisons and other substances in very minute quantity can be accomplished with such facility and certainty as were formerly scarcely conceivable.

* 'On the Microscopic Characters of the Crystals of Arsenious Acid,' in "Trans. of Microsc. Society," Vol. ix. (1861), p. 50.

† "Das Mikroskop in der Toxikologie," 1865.

‡ 'On Microscopic Sublimates; and especially on the Sublimates of the Alkaloids,' in "Trans. of Royal Microsc. Soc.," Vol. xvi. (1868), p. 1; also "Pharmaceutical Journal," June to September, 1867.

APPENDIX.

'NUMERICAL APERTURE' AND 'ANGULAR APERTURE.'

The introduction of the 'immersion system' has rendered necessary a considerable modification in the mode of determining the real 'Apertures' of Achromatic Objectives; which were formerly estimated entirely by their respective '*angles* of aperture,'—such angles being (as formerly explained, § 10), those contained, in each case, between the most diverging of the rays issuing from the axial point of an object, that can enter the lens and take part in the formation of an image. A careful investigation of the whole subject of 'Aperture,' both theoretically and practically, has of late been carried out with the greatest ability by Prof. Abbe of Jena; of whose important discovery of the dependence of 'resolving power' upon *dif*fraction—not *re*fraction—an account has been already given (§ 157). This investigation has enabled him to place the question on an exact basis; and not only to clear up a great deal that was formerly obscure, but to formulate a definite principle for the comparison of 'immersion' with 'dry' or 'air' objectives, which shows that the advantages obtainable from the use of the former are much greater than had been previously conceived.

Prof. Abbe has also made an important contribution to the practical part of this inquiry, by the invention of an 'Apertometer' for the precise measurement of angular apertures,* by which more exact and definite results can be obtained than by any of the methods previously in use: and he has further shown that a comparison of 'dry' and of 'immersion' lenses by their respective 'angles' alone is so completely fallacious, as to necessitate the introduction of a new scale of 'numerical apertures,' to which, as to a common standard, both could be referred.—It is the object of this Addendum, in the first place, to explain to the readers of this treatise the precise meaning of Prof. Abbe's term; and then to put before them the new views in regard to the capacities of 'immersion' Objectives, to which his

* "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. i. (1878), p. 19. Another method devised by Prof. Hamilton Smith (Op. cit., Vol. ii., 1879, p. 775), gives nearly the same results as that of Prof. Abbe. And yet another has been proposed by Mr. Tolles (Op. cit., Vol. iii., 1880, p. 887), who does not, however, give any reason to question the accuracy of Prof. Abbe's instrument.

investigations have led him. As (for obvious reasons) conclusions only can be here stated, those who desire to master the train of reasoning by which those conclusions have been worked-out, are recommended to study the two most recent expositions of the doctrine; one given by Prof. Abbe himself in his Paper 'On the Estimation of Aperture,' and the other by his disciple, Mr. Frank Crisp (one of the Secretaries of the Royal Microscopical Society), in his 'Notes on Aperture, Microscopical Vision, and the Value of Wide-angled Immersion Objectives;' contained in the "Journal of the Royal Microscopical Society" for April and June, 1881.

It can be easily demonstrated mathematically, that the 'aperture' of a single lens used as a magnifying glass—that is, its capacity for receiving, and bringing to a remote conjugate focus, the rays emanating from the axial point of an object brought very near to it—is determined by the ratio between its absolute diameter (or clear 'opening') and its focal length; while that of an ordinary Achromatic Objective, composed of several lenses, is determined by the ratio of the diameter of its *back* lens (so far as this is really utilized) to its focal length. This ratio is most simply expressed, when the medium is the same, by the sine of its semi-angle of aperture ($\sin u$); and we hence see how different are the proportionate 'apertures' of different lenses from their proportionate 'angles of aperture.' For as the sine of half 180°,—the largest possible *theoretical* angle, whose two boundaries lie in the same straight line,—is equal to radius, and as the sine of half 60° is equal to $\frac{1}{2}$ radius, it follows that a lens having an angle of 60° has an aperture equal to *half* (instead of being only *one-third*) of the theoretical maximum. And as the sines of angles beyond 60° increase very slowly, an objective whose angle is 120° will have (instead of only two-thirds) as much as about 87-100ths of the aperture given by the theoretical maximum.

When, however, the medium in which the Objective works is not air, but a liquid of higher refractive index—such as water or oil—an additional circumstance has to be taken into consideration; for we may now have three *angles* of aperture expressed by the *same* number of degrees, which yet denote quite *different* 'apertures.' For instance, an 'angle' of 90° in oil will give a greater 'aperture' than one of 90° in water; and the latter a greater aperture than 90° in air. For since, when light is transmitted from any medium into another of greater refractive index (§ 1), its rays are bent towards the perpendicular, the rays forming a pencil of given angular extension in air, will, when they pass into water or oil, be closed-together or *compressed;* so that in comparing (for instance) an object mounted in balsam with one mounted dry, the balsam angle, though much reduced, may nevertheless contain all the rays that were spread-out over the whole hemisphere when the object was in the less dense medium. It follows, therefore, that a given 'angle' in oil or water represents an *increase* in 'aperture' over the same angle in air. The amount of

this increase having been determined by Prof. Abbe to be proportional, in each case, to the index of refraction of the interposed medium, the comparative 'apertures' of lenses working in different media are in the compound ratio of two factors,—the sines of their respective semi-angles of aperture, and the refractive indices of the interposed fluids.

It is the product of these (n sin u) that gives what is termed by Prof. Abbe the *Numerical Aperture;* which serves, therefore, as the standard of comparison not only between 'immersion' and 'dry' objectives, but also between objectives of like kind. For, when the medium is the same, the factor (n) which represents the refractive index may, of course, be neglected; the 'numerical apertures' of such objectives then being simply the sines of their respective semi-angles.

Thus, taking as a standard of comparison a 'dry' objective of the maximum theoretical angle of 180°, whose 'numerical aperture' is the sine of 90°,=radius or 1·00, we find this standard to be equalled by a 'water' immersion objective of only 96°, and by an 'oil' or 'homogeneous' immersion lens of only 82°; the 'numerical apertures' of these, obtained by multiplying the sines of their respective semi-angles by the refractive index of water in one case and of oil in the other, being 1·00 in both. Each, therefore, will have as great a power of receiving and utilizing divergent rays, as any 'dry' lens can even theoretically possess,—an angle of nearly 70° being the limit of what is practically attainable. But as the actual angle of an 'immersion' Objective can be opened-out to the same extent as that of an 'air' objective, it follows that the 'aperture' of the former can be augmented *far beyond* even the theoretical maximum of the latter; the maxima of numerical aperture being 1·52 for Oil-immersion, and 1·33 for Water-immersion objectives, as against 1·00 for 'dry;' and these being nearly attainable in practice.*

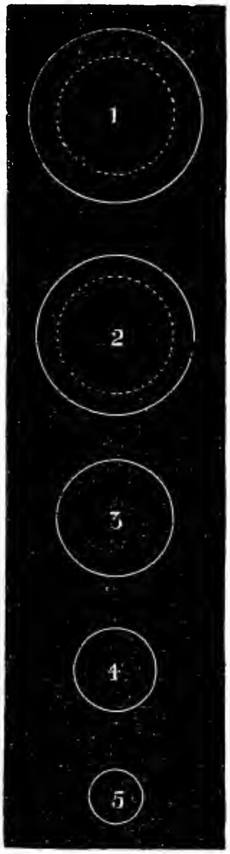
So, if we have four Objectives, two of which are 'dry,' the third a water-immersion, and the fourth an oil-immersion, their apertures have hitherto been designated, on the angular aperture notation, by (for instance) 47° and 74° air-angle; 85° water-angle; and 118° oil-angle; so that it is difficult without calculation to judge of their relative apertures. By the numerical notation, however, the apertures of the four are seen to be as ·40, ·60, ·90 and 1·30; so that a comparison is readily made, and it is seen whether the two latter have larger or smaller apertures than the maximum of a dry objective.

This important doctrine may be best made practically intelligible by a comparison (Fig. 500) of the relative diameters of the *back* lenses

* At p. 325 of Vol. i., Ser. 2 (1881) of the "Journ. of the Roy. Microsc. Soc.," will be found a Table calculated by Mr. Stephenson of the Equivalent Angles of Aperture of Dry, Water-immersion, and Oil (or homogeneous) immersion Objectives, with their respective Illuminating powers, and Theoretical Resolving powers, for every 0·02 of Numerical Aperture, from 0·40 to 1·52.

of 'dry' with those of 'water' and 'oil' immersion Objectives of *the same power*, from an 'air-angle' of 60° to an 'oil-angle' of 180°; these diameters expressing in each case, the opening between the extreme pencil-forming rays at their issue from the posterior surface of the combination, to meet in its conjugate focus for the formation of the image; *the extent of which opening in relation to focal length* (not that of the rays entering the Objective), *is the real measure of the Aperture of the combination.* The dotted circles in the interior of 1 and 2 are of the same diameter as 3; and therefore show the excess in the diameters of the back lenses of the 'oil' and 'water' immersion-objectives, over that of the 'dry' at their respective theoretical limits.

Fig. 500.



180° Oil-angle. (1·52 Num. Ap.)

180° Water-angle. (1·33 Num. Ap.)

180° Air-angle. 96° *Water-angle.* 82° *Oil-angle.* (1·00 Num. Ap.)

97° Air-angle. (0·75 Num-Ap.)

60° Air-angle. (0·50 Num. Ap.)

Now this difference is capable of being practically tested by a simple experiment originally suggested by Mr. Stephenson, and thus described by Prof. Abbe:—"Take any immersion-objective of balsam angle exceeding the critical angle, and focus it on a balsam-mounted object, which is illuminated by any kind of immersion-condenser, in such a way that the whole range of the aperture-angle is filled by the incident rays. Remove the eye-piece, and place the pupil of the eye at the place where the air-image is projected by the objective, and look down on the lens. You see a uniformly bright circle of well-defined diameter, which is the true cross section of the image-forming pencil emerging from the Microscope (for the eye receives now all rays which have been transmitted through a small central portion of the object—that portion which is conjugate to the pupil—and receives *no other* rays). After this, focus the *same* objective on an ordinary dry-mounted preparation (or on one which is connected with the slide, the cover-glass being put on dry), and repeat the observation; you will now see a well-defined circle, a cross section of the emergent pencil, but of *less* diameter than in the former case, surrounded by

a dark annulus, visible by faint diffused light only."* The explanation of this experiment is, that in focussing an immersion-objective on an object with air above it (*i.e.*, between itself and the cover-glass), the under-surface of the cover-glass acts as the plane front surface of the system, converting it into a true 'dry' lens of 180° angular aperture, which gathers-in almost the *whole hemisphere* of light from the radiant in air; and yet the emergent pencil of rays is *much narrower* than when the same objective is used as an immersion, and focussed on an object in balsam, the extreme divergence of whose rays is not more than 138°.

A wide-angled 'immersion' Objective can therefore utilize rays from an object mounted in a dense medium, such as balsam, which are entirely *lost* for the image (since they do not exist, physically) when the same object is in air, or is observed through a film of air. And this loss cannot be compensated-for by an increase of illumination; because the rays which are lost are *different* rays, physically, from those obtained by any illumination, however intense, in a medium like air.

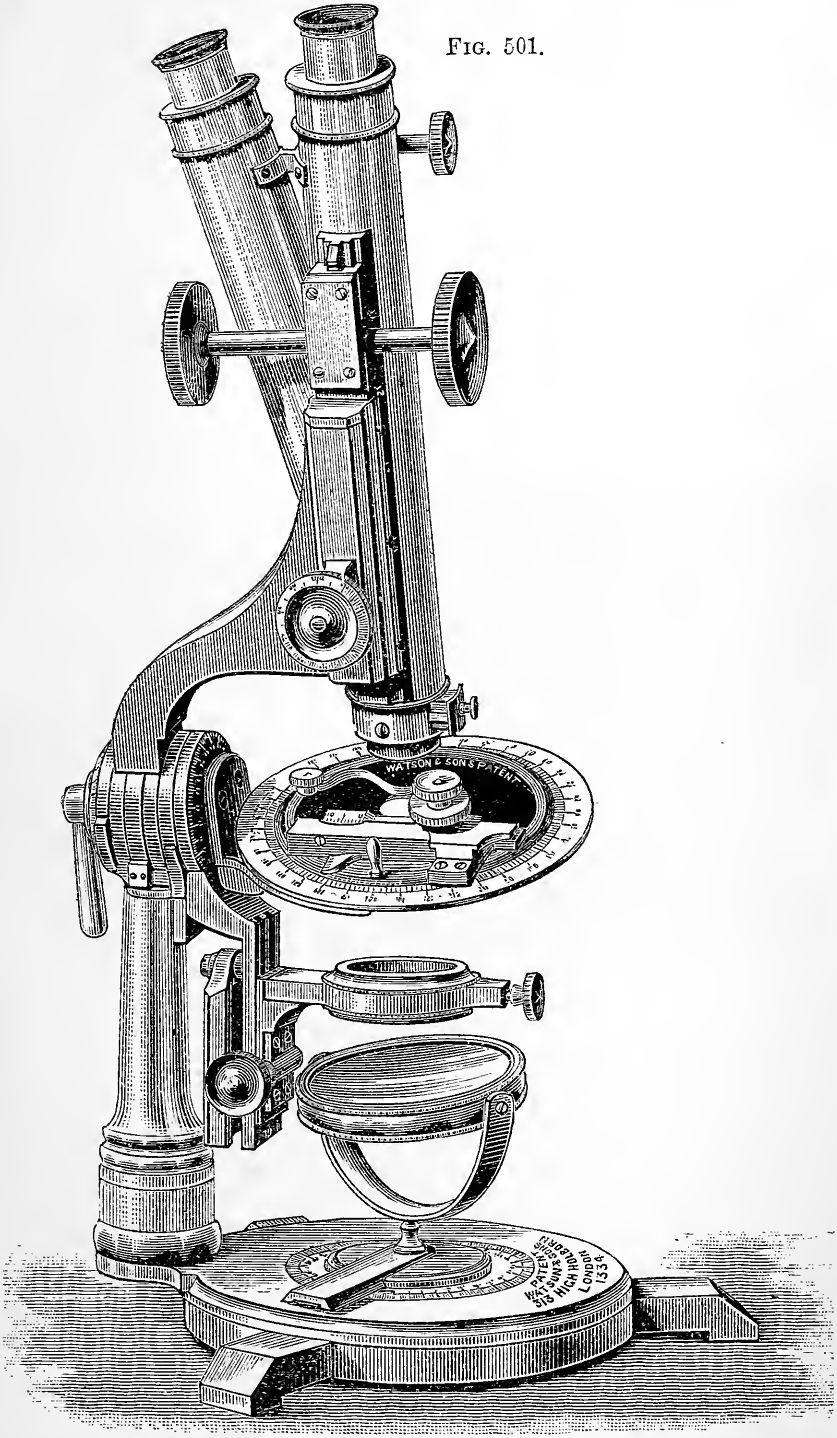
It is by increasing the number of 'diffraction-spectra,' that the rays admitted from the object contribute to the 'resolving power' of the Objective for lined and dotted objects; the truth of the image formed by the recombination of these spectra, being, as formerly shown (§ 157), essentially dependent upon the augmentation of the number which the objective can be made to receive.

Upon the 'aperture' of an objective are dependent (1) its illuminating power, (2) its resolving power, and (3) its penetrating power;—the first varying as the square of the numerical aperture, the second being in *direct*, and the third in *inverse* proportion to the numerical aperture.

Whilst Prof. Abbe's investigation has made it clear that the 'aperture' of an immersion objective may exceed the maximum of that of a dry objective, it is hardly necessary to point out that the *act* of the excess is a distinct question from that of the *value* of the excess for particular cases. As the penetrating power of the objective is diminished in proportion as the aperture is increased, it is seen that large apertures can only be obtained at the expense of a great reduction of penetration or focal depth, and consequently also of working distance,—qualities which are essential in some of the most important kinds of Biological investigation; and the Author, therefore, still holds to the opinion, that for objectives intended to be used for such purposes, 'moderate angles' are preferable; objectives of wide angle being kept for 'critical' investigations upon objects specially demanding their use. In this view he is entirely supported by Mr. Dallinger, whose unrivalled experience in Biological work of the highest kind, entitles his opinion on such a point to the highest respect. See Preface, pp. vi, vii.

* The diameter of the *emergent* pencil may be accurately measured by the use of an eye-piece Micrometer with the "auxiliary Microscope" of Prof. Abbe's Apertometric apparatus, already referred to.

Fig. 501.



Microscopes, &c.

Messrs. Watson's New Models.—A new form of Large Compound Microscope (Fig. 501) has lately been brought out by Messrs. Watson (of Holborn), the peculiarity of which essentially consists in this,—that the horizontal axis on which it is suspended passes through the axial point of the plane in which the object lies; so that by inclination of the body and stage—the source of light remaining fixed,—illuminating rays may be made to fall on the object at any degree of obliquity. The mechanical stage is so constructed (by placing the entire movement *above* the object platform) as to give it a thinness not otherwise attainable with the power of making a complete revolution. The mirror with its frame may be slipped off the swinging arm that ordinarily carries it, and slid into a fitting on the foot, on which it can be readily centred so as to reflect light upon the centre of the stage, whatever may be the inclination of the latter. And a further variety of illumination may be obtained by rotating the whole instrument on its foot, the mirror retaining its fixed position in the centre.—The principle of these ingenious arrangements is to give to the stage, and all that is above it, every variety of position in relation to a fixed source of light, instead of varying the position of the light in relation to the object.—Experience alone can test its advantages over the old models.

The above-named Makers have also adapted a 'swinging substage,' not merely to this large instrument, but to a smaller one on the scale of the 'Student's Microscope' of Messrs. Ross (Fig. 43); which is furnished, in addition, with a graduated disk for the precise measurement of the obliquity given to the illuminating apparatus. Having carefully examined this instrument, with the Objectives supplied by the makers, the Author is able to speak favourably of its workmanship; and would desire to add the name of Messrs. Watson to those of whose Students' microscopes he has spoken with approval at p. 80.

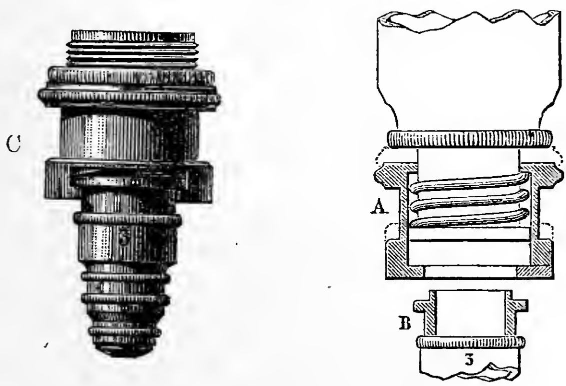
Messrs. Swift's New Students' Microscope.—These excellent Makers, having adopted the general plan of the 'Wale' model (Fig. 44), of which the Author has spoken in terms of high commendation, have applied to it a new fine adjustment of their own, which gives to the ring that carries the objective a very delicate and steady movement;* replacing the iris-diaphragm of the Wale model with their own 'calotte' diaphragm.

M. Nachet's Objective-carrier.—Every working Microscopist has desired a ready means of varying his 'powers,' without the trouble of unscrewing one Objective and screwing on another. This difficulty has been partly met by the use of the 'nose-piece'; but this cannot be conveniently made (at least, in the case of the heavily-mounted English objectives) to carry more than two powers. By Messrs. Parkes, of Birmingham, as already mentioned § 53, sliding tubes

* See "Journ. of Roy. Microsc. Soc.," Vol. i., N.S. (1881), p. 297.

are substituted for screws; but the use of them requires the withdrawal of the nose of the microscope to a considerable distance above the stage.—The attention of M. Nachet having been long directed to this point, he has recently brought out a form of 'porte-objectif' (an improvement on a suggestion originally made by Prof. Thury) which allows the change of objectives to be readily made without as much raising of the body from the stage as is required in screwing and unscrewing. It consists (Fig. 502) of a fixed inner cylinder, whose top screws into the bottom of the body; this being embraced by a movable outer cylinder (A), that is kept closely pressed up to its lower end by a strong spiral spring between the two. The bottom of this outer cylinder is formed by a shoulder that is cut away for about one-fourth of its circumference, so as to allow a collar (B) at the top of the objective to be slipped into the opening as shown at C. When this is done, the objective is held firmly in place by the pressure of the spring; and all that is needed to remove it is a slight pulling down of the outer cylinder, which enables the collar of the objective to be slipped out again. The inner cylinder is supplied by M. Nachet (when desired) with the Society's screw; and the 'collar' can be adapted to receive either M. Nachet's or any other Objectives.—Having been enabled, by the kindness of M. Nachet, to make a trial of this little apparatus, the Author is glad to be able to speak most favourably both of its simplicity and its effectiveness.

Fig. 502.



Nachet's Objective-carrier.

INDEX.

ABBE, Prof., on Homogeneous immersion, 19 ; on Diffraction-spectra, 186—191 ; on Penetration of objectives, 195 *note ;* on Numerical aperture of objectives, 850; on Apertometer, 850.
Aberration, Chromatic, 11, 12.
——— Spherical, 9, 10.
——— means of reducing and correcting, 10—15.
Absorption bands, 104—108.
Acalephs, see *Medusæ*.
Acanthometrina, 600.
Acarida, 759, 760.
Achlya prolifera, 300, 301.
Achnanthes, 354, 355.
Achromatic Condenser, 120, 121 ; use of, 171, 172.
Achromatic Correction, 13, 15.
Achromatic Objectives, see Objectives.
Acinetina, 513—515.
Acrocladia, spines of, 633.
Actinia, 624 ; thread-cells of, 624, 625.
Actinocyclus, 349.
Actinomma, 599.
Actinophrys, 480—482.
Actinoptychus, 350.
Actinosphærium, 483.
Actinotrocha, 700.
ACTINOZOA, 623—627.
Adjustment of Focus, 95, 162—165.
Adjustment of Object-glass, 15—17; 165—168.
Æcidium tussilaginis, 387.
Agamic eggs, of Rotifera, 535—537 ; of Entomostraca, 713—715 ; of Insects, 757, 758.
Agrion, circulation in larva of, 745.
Air-bubbles, microscopic appearances of, 181 ; in microscopic preparations, 237, 259—261.
Albuminous substances, tests for, 249—250.
Alburnum, 437, 445.
Alcohol, as hardening agent, 242 ; as test, 250.
Alcyonian Zoophytes, 625—627.
Alcyonidium, 654.
ALGÆ, higher, microscopic structure of, 395—401 ; (see Protophyta).
Allman, Prof., on Sarcode organisms, 495 *note;* on Noctiluca, 507 ; on Peridinium, 511 ; on Myriothela, 610 ; on Tubularida, 617 *note;* on fresh-water Polyzoa, 655 *note;* on Appendicularia, 664, 665.
Alternating Circulation of Ascidians, 660, 663.
Alternation of Generations, 623.
Alveolina, 552, 553.
Amaranthus, seeds of, 465.
Ambulacral disks of Echinida, 631.
Amici, Prof., his early construction of Achromatic lenses, 15, 17 ; his invention of the immersion system, 18 ; his drawing Camera, 114 ; his Prism for oblique illumination, 124.
Amœba, 486—488.
Amœboids of Volvox, 290, 291, ; of protoplasm of Chara, 312 *note;* of protoplasm of roots of Mosses, 406 ; of Myxomycetes, 389; of Sponges, 603—605 ; of Polypes, &c., 609, 610 ; of colourless Blood-corpuscles, 786.
Amoroucium, 659, 660.
Amphipleura pellucida, resolution of, 203, 204.
Amphistegina, 576.
Amphitetras, 353.
Amplifiers, 100.

Anacharis alsinastrum, formation of cells in, 427; cyclosis in, 428, 429.
Anagallis, petal of, 461.
Androspores of Œdogonium, 306.
Angle of Aperture, 10; limitation of, for Binocular, 42—45; its relation to Angular Aperture, 191 *note;* to Numerical Aperture, 850.
Anguillulæ, 695.
Angular Aperture of Object-glasses, 191 *note;* its relation to resolving power, 188, 195; its real meaning, 850; limits to its value, Preface, vi.
Angulifereæ, 352, 353.
Aniline dyes, as staining agents, 247.
Animal Tissues, formation of, 763—767.
Animalcule-cage, 146.
Animalcules, 496; (see Infusoria, Monerozoa, Rhizopoda, and Rotifera).
Animals, distinction of, from Plants, 267, 268; links connecting with Plants, 387—392.
Annelida, 693—706; marine, circulation in, 698, 699; metamorphoses of, 700, 701; remarkable forms of, 702—704; luminosity of, 705; fresh-water, 705, 706.
Annual layers of Wood, 443—445.
Annular Ducts, 438, 439.
Annulosa, 693;—see Entozoa, Turbellaria, and Annelida.
Anodon, shell of, 671; parasitic embryo of, 682; ciliary action on gills of, 689.
Anomia, fungi in shell of, 382.
Ant, red, integument of, 724.
Antedon, development of, 646—649.
Antennæ of Insects, 738—740.
Antheridia, of Chara, 311; of Marchantia, 404; of Mosses, 408; of Ferns, 416;—see Antherozoids.
Antherozoids, 275; of Volvox, 288; of Vaucheria, 299; of Sphæroplea, 304, 305; of Œdogonium, 306; of Characeæ, 311, 312; of Fuci, 398; of Marchantia, 404; of Mosses, 408; of Ferns, 417.
Anthers, structure of, 461, 462.
Anthony, Dr., on scale of Gnat, 185; on battledoor scales, 728; on tongue of Fly, 742 *note*.
Antirrhinum, seeds of, 465.
Apertometers, 850.
Aperture, Angular, see Angular Aperture; Numerical, 850.
Aphides, agamic reproduction of, 757.
Aphthæ, fungus of, 382.
Aplanatic Searcher, 11 *note*.
Apothecia of Lichens, 393.
Appendicularia, 664, 665.
Apple, cuticle of, 454.
Apus, 712.
Aquatic Box, 146.
Arachnida, microscopic forms of, 759, 760; eyes of, 761; respiratory organs of, 761; feet of, 761; spinning apparatus of, 761, 762.
Arachnoidiscus, 351.
Arachnosphora, 600.
Aralia, cellular parenchyma of, 425.
Arcella, 489, 490.
Archegonia, of Marchantia, 402; of Mosses, 408; of Ferns, 416, 417.
Archer, Mr., on zoöspores of Desmidiaceæ, 318 *note;* on Chlamidomyxis, 390—392; on Clathrulina, 484.
Arenaceous Foraminifera, 558—568.
Arenicola, 698.
Areolar tissue, 789.
Argulus, 716.
Aristolochia, stem of, 450.
Artemia, 710, 713.
Ascaris, 694; fungous vegetation on, 381.
Asci, of Lichens, 393; of Fungi, 384, 385.
Ascidia parallelogramma, 658.
Ascidians, solitary, 657, 658; compound, 659—661; social, 661—662; development of, 663—665.
Ascogonia, of Fungi, 384; of Lichens, 394.
Ascomycetes, 385.
Asphalte-varnish, 212.
Aspidisca-form of Trichoda, 525.
Aspidium, fructification of, 413, 414.
Asplanchna, 534, 535.
Astasia, 506.
Asteriada, skeleton of, 637; metamorphoses of, 643, 644.
Asterolampra, 349.
Asteromphalus, 349.
Astromma, 598.
Astrophyton, 637.
Astrorhiza, 559.

Auditory vesicles of Mollusks, 691; development of, 685.
Aulacodiscus, 352.
Auxospores of Diatomaceæ, 338.
Avicula, nacre of, 670.
Avicularia of Polyzoa, 656.
Axile bodies of sensory papillæ, 803.
Axis-cylinder of Nerve-fibres, 802—804.
Azure-blue butterfly, scales of, 727, 728.

Bacillaria paradoxa, 344; movements of, 339.
Bacillus, 369—371.
Bacteria, 369—375.
Bacteriastrum, 353.
Badcock, Mr., on metamorphosis of Acinetina, 515.
Bailey, Prof., his Diatomaceous tests, 204; on siliceous cuticle, 419; on internal casts of Foraminifera, 578 *note*.
Baker, Mr., his Students' Microscope, 70; his Students' Binocular, 79; his Travelling Microscope, 93, 94; his Pond-stick, 263.
Balanus, metamorphosis of, 717, 718.
Balbiani, M., on generation of Infusoria, 526—528.
Balsam, Canada, see Canada Balsam.
Banksia, stomata of, 457.
Barbadoes, Polycystina of, 596, 601.
Bark, structure of, 449.
Barnacle, metamorphosis of, 717, 718.
Basidia of Fungi, 384.
Bat, hair of, 778; cartilage of ear of, 795.
Batrachospermeæ, 307, 308.
Battledoor scales of Polyommatus, 727, 728.
Bathybius, 492, 493.
Beading of Diatom-valves, 331—334; of Insect-scales, Dr. Royston Pigott on, 729, 732.
Beale, Prof., his Pocket Microscope, 92; his Demonstrating Microscope, 93; his use of viscid media, 252—255; his views of Tissue-formation, 764—766.
Beck, Messrs., their Economic Microscopes, 80; their Popular Microscope, 82; their Large Compound Microscope, 91; their Improved ditto, 91, 92; their Achromatic Condensers, 120, 121; their arrangement of Polarizing apparatus, 132; their Compressors, 150, 151; their Binocular Magnifier, 223 *note;* their Microtome, 229.
—— Mr. Joseph, on scales of Thysanuræ, 729—732.
—— Mr. Richd., his Dissecting Microscope, 57, 58; his Disk-holder, 143; his Side-Reflector, 137; his Vertical Illuminator, 140, 141; on scales of Thysanuræ, 729; on Spider's threads, 762.
Bee, eyes of, 735—737; hairs of, 733; proboscis of, 742; wings of, 751; sting of, 755; reproduction of, 758.
Berg-mehl, 361.
Bermuda-earth, 350, 361.
Beroë, 627, 628.
Biddulphia, 352; growth of, 328 *note;* surface-marking of, 329; self-division of, 334, 335.
Bignonia, seed of, 465.
Biliary Follicles, 796, 797.
Biloculina, 550.
Binary subdivision, of Vegetable Cells, 272—274; of Animal Cells, 765; see Cells, Animal and Vegetable.
Binocular Eye-piece, 39.
———— Magnifier, Nachet's, 58, 59; Beck's, 223 *note*.
———— Microscopes, Stereoscopic, principles of construction of, 29—31; advantages of, 42—46; Objectives suitable for, 42—44; different forms of, Nachet's, 33, 34; Wenham's, 34—36; Stephenson's, 36—39.
———— Non-Stereoscopic, Powell and Lealand's, 98; Wenham's, 99.
————Stereo-Pseudoscopic, Nachet's, 39-42.
———— Vision, 29—32.
Bipinnaria-larva of Star-fish, 643.
Bird, Dr. Golding, on preparation of Zoophytes, 619.
Birds, bone of, 769; feathers of, 780; blood of, 784; lungs of, 818.
Bird's-head processes of Polyzoa, 656.
Bisulphide of Carbon, mounting Diatoms in, 348.
Bivalve Mollusks, shells of, 666—675.
Black-ground Illuminators, 125—129, 175.

Blackham, Dr., on Focal Depth, 195 *note*.
Blankley, Mr., his Selenite Stage, 133.
Blenny, viviparous, scales of, 774.
Blights of Corn, 385.
Blood, Absorption-bands of, 107, 108.
Blood-disks of Vertebrata, 782—786; mode of preserving, 786; circulation of, see Circulation.
Blood-vessels, injection of, 810—815; disposition of, in different parts, 815—819.
Bockett Lamp, 156.
Bone, structure of, 767—770; mode of making sections of, 235—239, 770.
Bones, fossil, examination of, 832.
Botryllians, 661.
Botrytis, of Silkworms, 377—389.
Botterill, Mr., his Growing-slide, 144, 145; his Zoophyte-trough, 148.
Bowerbankia, 654.
Brachionus, 530, 540.
BRACHIOPODA, Shell-structure of, 673—675.
Brady, Mr. H. B., on Saccammina, 560; on Loftusia, 567; on Globigerina, 571.
Braithwaite, Dr., on Sphagnaceæ, 412.
Branchiopoda, 710—712.
Branchipus, 713.
Braun, Prof., on development of Pediastreæ, 322—325.
Brittan, Dr., on Fungus-germs, 383.
Brownian Movement, 182, 183.
Browning, Mr., his Platyscopic Lens, 24; his smaller Stephenson Binocular, 85, 86; his Rotating Microscope, 78; his Micro-Spectroscope, 104—107.
Bryozoa, see POLYZOA.
Buccinum, palate of, 681; egg-capsules of, 683; development of, 686.
Buckthorn, stem of, 444.
Bugs, 723; wings of, 752.
Bugula avicularia, 656, 657.
Built-up Cells, 218.
Bulbels, of Chara, 310; of Marchantia, 403, 404.
Bulimina, 572.
Bull's-Eye Condenser, 136, 137; use of, 176—178.
Burdock, stem of, 451.
Busk, Mr. G., on Volvox, 285—289; on Polyzoa, 655—657.
Butterflies, see Lepidoptera.
Cabinet for Microscopic Apparatus, 154; for Objects, 262.
Cacao-butter, for imbedding, 233.
Cactus, raphides of, 435.
Calcaire Grossier, 824, 826.
Calcareous Deposits, organic origin of, 828, 829.
Calcareous Sponges, 606.
Calcarina, 574.
Calycanthus, stem of, 450.
Calyptra of Mosses, 408.
Cambium-layer, 449, 450.
Camera Lucida, 112—115; use of, in Micrometry, 116.
Campanularidæ, 617.
Campylodiscus, 345.
Canada Balsam, use of, as Cement, 212, 236—238; mounting of objects in, 251, 257, 258.
Canaliculi of Bone, 768, 769.
Canal-system of Foraminifera, 549, 574—584.
Capillaries, circulation in, 804—810; injection of, 812—816; distribution of, 816—819.
Capsule of Mosses, 408.
Carbolic Acid, as preservative, 251; use of, for dehydration, 258.
Carmine, as staining agent, 246; injection with, 814, 815.
Carp, scales of, 775.
Carpenteria, 572.
Carrot, seeds of, 466.
Cartilage, structure of, 795, 796.
Caryophyllia, 624.
Caryophyllum, seeds of, 465.
Caterpillars, feet of, 755.
Cedar, stem of, 446.
Cells for mounting objects, 214—218; mounting objects in, 258—261.
Cells, Animal, formation of, 765; binary subdivision of, 765, 795; in Protozoa, 468, 479, 482, 488, 499—503, 510, 512, 521, 524.
—— Vegetable, 269—272; origin and multiplication of, 272—274; binary subdivision of, in Protophyta, 276, 278, 287, 293, 303, 315—317, 334; in Phanerogamia, 423—427; cyclosis in, 309, 314, 427—431; thickening deposits in, 431—433; spiral deposits in, 433; starch-grains in, 434, 435; raphides in, 435.

Cellular Tissue, Animal, 789 Vegetable, ordinary forms of, 423—427; stellate, 425, 426; formation of, 427.
Cellulose, 270; tests for, 249, 250.
Cements, Microscopic, 211—214.
Cement-Cells, 214.
Cementum of Teeth, 772.
CEPHALOPODS, shell of, 677, 678; chromatophores of, 691.
Ceramiaceæ, 399.
Ceratium, 512, 513.
Cercomonas, development of, 501, 502.
Cestoid Entozoa, 693, 694.
Chætocereæ, 353.
Chætophoraceæ, 306, 307.
Chalk, formation of, 825—828.
'Challenger' Expedition, use of tow-net in, 265 *note;* collection of Globigerinæ in, 569, 570; observations in, on Bathybius 492; on deep-sea sediments, 833, 834.
Characeæ, 308—312; cyclosis of fluid in, 309, 310; multiplication of, by gonidia, 310; sexual apparatus of, 310—312.
Cheilostomata, 655.
Chemical Microscope, 95—97.
——— Re-agents, 249, 250.
Chemistry, microscopic, 848.
Cherry-stone, cells of, 432.
Chilodon, teeth of, 519; self-division of, 521.
Chirodota, calcareous skeleton of, 641, 642.
Chitine of Insects, 724.
Chlamidomyxis, 390—392.
Choroid, pigment of, 791.
Chromatic Aberration, 11, 12; means of reducing and correcting, 13—18; residual, in high-angled Objectives, 206.
Chromatophores of Cephalopods, 691.
Chromic acid, as solvent, 240; use of, for hardening, 242.
Chyle, corpuscles of, 785.
Cienkowski, on Myxomycetes, 390; on Noctiluca, 510.
Cidaris, spines of, 624.
Ciliary action, nature of, 516; in Protophytes, 298; in Infusoria, 516; on gills of Mollusks, 689; on epithelium of Vertebrata, 793.
Ciliate Infusoria, 516.
Cilio-flagellata, 511—513.
Circulation of Blood, in Vertebrata, 804—810; in Insects, 745, 746; alternating, in Tunicata, 658, 662.
Circulation, Vegetable, see Cyclosis.
Cirrhipeds, metamorphosis of, 717, 718.
Cladocera, 712.
Clark, Prof. H. James, on flagellate Infusoria, 504; on Sponges, 604 *note.*
Clathrulina elegans, 484.
Clavellinidæ, 661—663.
Cleanliness, importance of, to Microscope, 159; in mounting objects, 261.
Clematis, stem of, 443, 452.
Closterium, cyclosis in, 314; binary subdivision of, 315, 316; conjugation of, 318—320.
Clypeaster, spines of, 634.
Coal, nature of, 821—823.
Coalescence, molecular, 845—848.
Cobweb-Micrometer, 108, 109.
Coccoliths and Coccospheres, 492, 493, 827.
Cocconeidæ, 354.
Cockchafer, cellular integument of, 724; eyes of, 736; antenna of, 739, 740; spiracle of larva of, 748, 749.
Cockle of Wheat, 695.
Coddington lens, 23.
Codosiga, life-history of, 504—506.
Cœlenterata, 468.
Cœnurus, 693, 694.
Cohn, Dr., his researches on Protococcus, 277—282; on Volvox, 287—289; on Stephanosphæra, 289 *note;* on Sphæroplea, 304; on Schizomycetes, 367, 368; on reproduction of Rotifera, 437; his cultivation-solution, 367 *note.*
Coleoptera, integument of, 724; antennæ of, 738, 739; mouth of, 740, 741.
Collection of Objects, general directions for, 262—265.
Collins, Mr., his Harley Binocular, 82—84; his Eye-piece caps, 83; his Students' Microscope, 71; his Graduating Diaphragm, 120, 122.
Collomia, spiral fibres of, 433.
Collozoa, 600.
Colonial nervous system of Polyzoa, 653.
Colourless corpuscles of Blood, 784, 785.
Columella of Mosses, 410.
Comatula, metamorphosis of, 646—649; nervous system of, 802.

Compound Microscope, optical principles of, 25—29; mechanical construction of, 47—50, 61, 62; Educational, 63—66; Students', 66—80; Second class, 80—87; First class, 87—92; for special purposes, 92—99.
Compressor, 149—151; use of, 168, 169.
Concave lenses, refraction by, 7, 8; use of, in Achromatic combinations, 13—17.
Conceptacles of Marchantia, 403.
Concretions, calcareous, 845—848.
Condensers, Achromatic, 120—122; Webster, 121; Swift's new combination, 133.
———— for Opaque objects, ordinary, 135; Bull's-eye, 136; mode of using, 175—178.
Confervaceæ, 302; self-division of, 303; zoospores of, 304; sexual reproduction of, 304, 305.
Conidia of Fungi, 384.
Coniferæ, peculiar woody fibre of, 437; absence of ducts in, 443; structure of stem in, 446, 447; pollen-grains of, 464 *note;* fossil, 821.
Conjugateæ, 282, 283.
Conjugation, of Palmoglæa, 277; of Desmidiaceæ, 318, 319; of Diatomaceæ, 336—338; of Conjugateæ, 282, 283; of Monadina, 500—503; of Noctiluca, 511; of Vorticellina, 528;—see Zygosis.
Connective Tissue, 789; corpuscles of, 766, 788, 789.
Contractile vesicle, of Volvox, 285; of Actinophrys, 480; of Amœba, 487; of Infusoria, 497, 521.
Conversion of Relief, 31, 32, 40, 41.
Convex lenses, refraction by, 4—7; formation of images by, 8.
Copepoda, 711.
Coquilla-nut, cells of, 432.
Coral, cutting sections of, with animal, 239.
Corallines, true, 401; Zoophytic, 617.
Cork, 449.
Corn, blights of, 385, 695.
Corn-grains, husk of, 467.
Corns, structure of, 792.
Cornuspira, 550.
Corpuscles of Blood, 782—787.
Correction of Object-glasses, for Spherical Aberration, 11, 12, 206; for Chromatic Aberration, 13, 14, 206; for thickness of covering glass, 15, 16, 165—168.
Coscinodisceæ, 347—349.
Cosmarium, binary subdivision of, 316; conjugation of, 319; development of, 319.
Cover-correction of Objectives, 15, 16, 165—168.
Covering-glass, 209—211.
Crab, shell-structure of, 719, 720; metamorphosis of, 720.
Crabro, integument of, 724.
Crag-Formation, 828.
Cricket, gastric teeth of, 744; sounds produced by, 751.
Crinoidea, skeleton of, 637; metamorphosis of, 647—649.
Cristatella, 655.
Cristellaria, 568.
Crouch, Mr., his Educational Microscope, 63, 64; his Students' Binocular, 78; his stage-centering adjustment, 92; his adapter for Beck's side-reflector, 138.
Crusta Petrosa of Teeth, 772.
CRUSTACEA, 707—721; lower forms of, 707—709; Entomostracous, 709—715; Suctorial, 716; Cirrhiped, 717, 718; Decapod, shell of, 719, 720; metamorphosis of, 720, 721.
CRYPTOGAMIA, general plan of structure of, 395, 421, 422;—see Protophyta, Algæ, Lichens, Fungi, Hepaticæ, Mosses, Ferns, &c.
Crystallization, Microscopic, 840, 845.
Ctenoid scales of Fish, 774, 775.
Ctenophora, 627—629.
Culture of Protophytic Fungi, 145 *note*, 367; of Flagellate Infusoria, 504.
Curculionidæ, scales of, 725, 734; elytra of, 734; foot of, 754.
Cuticle of Animals, 791—793.
——— of Equisetaceæ, 419; of leaves, 456.
Cutis Vera, 789, 790.
Cuttle-fish, shell of, 677, 678; chromatophore of, 691.
Cyanthus, seeds of, 466.
Cyclammina, 564.
Cycloclypeus, 549.
Cycloid scales of Fish, 774—776.
Cyclops, 711, 712; fertility of, 714.

Cyclosis, in Vegetable cells, 271; in Closterium, 314; in Diatomaceæ, 326; in Chara, 309, 310; in cells of Phanerogamia, 427—431; in Rhizopods, 474.
Cydippe, 627, 628.
Cymbelleæ, 356.
Cynipidæ, ovipositor of, 755.
Cypris, 710.
Cypræa, structure of shell of, 676.
Cystic Entozoa, 693, 694.
Cysticercus, 693, 694.
Cytherina, 710.

Dactylocalyx, 608.
Dallinger, Mr., on flagellum of Bacterium termo, 369; his Microscope Lamp, 156; on qualities of Objectives, 193, 197, Preface, vi., vii.
Dallinger and Drysdale, their researches on Monadina, 499—504.
Dallingeria Drysdali, 499, 500.
Dalyell, Sir J. G., on development of Medusæ, 620—622.
Dammar-Varnish, 212, 256.
Daphnia, 712—714.
Darker's Selenites, 132.
Davies, Mr., on Microscopic Crystallization, 840—842 *note*.
Dawson, Dr., on Eozoön, 588.
Deane's Gelatine, 253.
De Bary, Dr., on Myxomycetes, 390 *note*.
Decalcification, 240.
Decapod Crustacea, shell of, 719, 720; metamorphosis of, 720, 721.
Defining power of Objectives, 192—194, 206.
Dehydration, by Alcohol, 233; by Carbolic Acid, 258.
Delsaulx, Rev. J., on Brownian movements, 183 *note*.
Demodex folliculorum, 760.
Demonstrating Microscope, Beale's, 93.
Dendritina, 551.
Dendrodus, teeth of, 831.
Dentine of Teeth, 771—773.
Depressions, distinction of, from elevations, 180.
Dermestes, hair of, 733.
Desiccation, tolerance of, by Protophytes, 281; by Infusoria, 503, 504, 526; by Rotifera, 537, 538; by Entomostraca, 713.
Desmidiaceæ, general structure of, 312—314; cyclosis in, 314; binary subdivision of, 315—317: formation of gonidia in, 318; conjugation in, 318, 319; classification of, 319—321; collection of, 321, 322.
Deutzia, stellate hairs of, 456.
Development, of Annelids, 700—704; of Anodon, 682; of Ascidians, 663; of Cirrhipeds, 717, 718; of Crab, 720; of Desmidiaceæ, 318; of Diatomaceæ, 334—337; of Echinodermata, 642—649; of Embryo (Animal), 468, 609; of Embryo (Vegetable), 421, 422; of Entomostraca, 715—717; of Ferns, 418; of Gasteropods, 683—689; of Insects, 758, 759; of Leaves, 427; of Medusæ, 614—622; of Mosses, 410; of Nudibranchiata, 684; of Palmoglæa, 276; of Pollen-grains, 462; of Protococcus, 278; of Sponges, 605; of Stem, 450; of Vegetable cell, 272, 273; of Volvox, 285—287.
Diagonal Scales, 111, 116.
Diamond-beetle, scales of, 725; elytra of, 734; foot of, 753.
Diaphragm Eye-piece, Slack's, 112.
Diaphragm-Plate, 118—120.
Diatoma, 343.
Diatomaceæ, general structure of, 325—327; silicified valves of, 327—329; surface-markings of, 329—334; binary subdivision of, 334, 335; conjugation of, 336—338; gonidia of, 337; auxospores of, 338; movements of, 339; classification of, 340; general habits of, 360, 361; fossilized deposits of, 361, 362, 823; collection of, 362—364; mounting of, 365, 366.
Diatoms, as Tests, 202—205, 329—334.
Dichroism, 844.
Dicotyledonous Stems, structure of, 442—451.
Dictyoloma, seeds of, 466.
Didemnians, 660.
Didymoprium, 321; self-division of, 315; conjugation of, 319.
Difflugia, 489, 490.
Diffraction, errors arising from, 184—186; production of microscopic images by, 186—191.

Diphtheria, fungus of, 382.
Dipping-tubes, 151.
Diptera, mouth of, 742; halteres of, 752; ovipositors of, 756.
Discorbina, 573.
Disk-holder, Beck's, 143; Morris's, 144.
Disk-illuminator, Wenham's, 123.
Dispersion, chromatic, 11, 12.
Dissecting Instruments, 224; Trough, 223; Microscopes, 53—60.
Dissection, Microscopic, 223—225.
Distoma, 696.
Dog, epidermis of foot of, 792.
Doris, palate of, 680; spicules of, 676, 677; development of, 683, 684.
Dorsal Vessel of Insects, 745.
Double-staining, 248.
Doublet, Wollaston's, 22; Steinheil's, 24.
Dragon-fly, eyes of, 736; larva of, 745—749.
Drawing Apparatus, 112—116.
Draw-Tube, 101.
Dropping Bottle, 254.
Drosera, hairs of, 456.
Dry-mounting of Objects, 214, 218.
Drysdale, Dr., see Dallinger.
Ducts, of Plants, 438, 439.
Dujardin, M., on Sarcode of Foraminifera &c., 266 *note*; on Rotifera, 538—541.
Dunning's Turn-Table, 220.
Duncan, Dr., on Fungi in coral, 383.
Duramen, 445.
Dytiscus, foot of, 754; trachea and spiracle of, 748.

Eagle-Ray, teeth of, 772.
Earwig, wings of, 751.
Eccremocarpus, seeds of, 466.
Echinida, shell of, 630, 631; ambulacral disks of, 631, 632; spines of, 632—634; pedicellariæ of, 635; teeth of, 635, 636; metamorphosis of, 644, 645.
ECHINODERMATA, skeleton of, 630—636; metamorphoses of, 642—646.
Echinus-spines, cutting sections of, 235—239, 638—640.
Ectocarpaceæ, 396.
Ectoderm, 468.
Ectosarc of Rhizopods, 475, 486.
Ectoplasm of Vegetable cell, 270.
Edmunds, Dr., his immersion-paraboloid, 127; his parabolized gas-slide, 148.
Educational Microscopes, 63—66.
Eel, scale of, 775; gills of, 817.
Eels, of paste and vinegar, 695.
Eggs of Insects, 757;—see Winter-eggs.
Egg-shell, fibrous structure of, 787; calcareous deposit in, 846.
Ehrenberg, Prof., his researches on Infusoria, 496, 497; on Rotifera, 496; on Polycystina, 596, 602; on composition of Greensands, 577 *note*, 829.
Elastic Ligaments, 788.
Elaters of Marchantia, 405.
Elementary Parts of Animal body, 764—767;—see Tissues.
Elevations, distinction of, from depressions, 180.
Elytra of Beetles, 751.
Embryo, see Development.
Embryo-sac of Phanerogamia, 423.
Empusa musci, 379.
Enamel of Teeth, 772.
Encrinites, see Crinoidea.
Encysting process, of Protophytes, 287—281; of Infusoria, 522—526.
End-bulbs of sensory Nerves, 803.
Endochrome, of Vegetable cell, 270; of Diatomaceæ, 326.
Endoderm, 468.
Endogenous Stems, structure of, 441, 451.
Endoplasm of Vegetable cell, 270.
Endosarc of Rhizopods, 475, 486.
Endosperm of Phanerogams, 423.
Enterobryus, 380, 381.
Entomostraca (Crustacea), 708—715; classification of, 710—713; reproduction of, 713—715.
Entophytic Fungi, 385, 386.
Entozoa, 693—696; Cestoid, 693; Cystic, 693; Nematoid, 694, 695; Trematode, 696.
Eosin, as staining agent, 247.
Eozoic Limestone, 830.
Eozoön Canadense, 587—592.
Ephemera, larva of, 723, 745, 749.
Ephippium of Daphnia, 714, 715.
Epidermis, Animal, 791, 792.
——— Vegetable, 453—457.
Epithelium, 792; ciliated, 793.
Epithemia, 341; conjugation of, 336.

Equisetaceæ, cuticle of, 418; spores of, 419.
Erecting Binocular, see Stephenson.
Erecting Prism, Nachet's, 103.
Erector, Lister's, 101.
Errors of Interpretation, 179—185.
Euglena, 506.
Eunotieæ, 341.
Euplectella, 608.
Euryale, skeleton of, 637.
Ewart, Prof., on Bacillus, 371—373.
Exogenous Stems, structure of, 442—451.
Eyes, care of, 158, Preface, ix, x.
Eyes of Mollusks, 690, 691; of Insects, 735—738; of Trilobite, 830.
Eye-piece, 27; Huyghenian, 27, 28; Kellner's, 28, 29; solid, 29; Ramsden's, 29; Binocular, 39; Erecting, 103; Spectroscopic, 104; Micrometric, 109—111; Diaphragm 112.
——— Collins's shades for, 83.
Eye-piecing, deep, disadvantage of, 161, 162, Preface, ix.

Falconer, Dr., on bones of fossil Tortoise, 832.
Fallacies of Microscopy, 179—185.
Farrant's Medium, 253, 256.
Farre, Dr. Arthur, his researches on Bowerbankia, 654.
Fat-cells, 794; capillaries of, 816.
Feathers, structure of, 777, 780.
Feet of Insects, 752—754; of Spiders, 761.
Fermentation, influence of vegetation on, 375, 376.
Ferns, 412—418; scalariform ducts, of, 412; fructification of, 412—414; spores of, 414; prothallium of, 415; antheridia and archegonia of, 416, 417; generation and development of, 417, 418.
Fertilization of ovule, in Flowering plants, 422, 464.
Fibre-cells of anthers, 462; of seeds, 432—434.
Fibres, Muscular, 798—801.
——— Nervous, 801—803.
——— Spiral, of Plants, 432—434; 437—439.
Fibrillæ of Muscle, structure of, 798.
Fibro-Cartilage, 796.
Fibro-Vascular Tissue of Plants, 436.
Fibrous Tissues of Animals, 787—789; formation of, 766.
Field's Dissecting and Mounting Microscope, 59, 60; his Educational Microscope, 63.
Filiferous Capsules of Zoophytes, 624.
Finders, 117; Maltwood's, 118.
Fine Adjustment, 48; uses of, 162—164.
Fishes, bone of, 769, 770; teeth of, 771, 772; scales of, 774—776; blood of, 782—784; circulation in, 807; gills of, 817.
Fishing tubes, 151.
Flagella, of Protococcus, 279; of Volvox, 284; of Bacteria, 369.
Flagellata (Infusoria), 498—511; their relation to Sponges, 603.
Flatness of field of Objectives, 195.
Flints, organic structure in, 827; examination of, 828,
Flint Glass, dispersive power of, 13; use of, in Objectives, 17, 18.
Florideæ, 399.
Flosculariians, 538, 539.
Flowers, small, as Microscopic objects, 460; structure of parts of, 460—464.
Fluid, mounting objects in, 258—261.
Fluke, 696.
Flustra, 650—654.
Fly, fungous disease of, 379; number of objects furnished by, 722; eye of, 736; circulation in, 746; tongue of, 742; spiracle of, 748; wing of, 750; foot of, 753; development of, 759.
Focal Adjustment, 162—165; errors arising from imperfection of, 180—183.
Focal Depth of Objectives, 194; increase of, with Binocular, 45.
Follicles of Glands, 797.
Foot of Fly, 753; of Dytiscus, 754; of Spider, 761.
Foraminifera, 543—592; their relation to Rhizopods, 476, 544; their general structure, 544—549; porcellanous, 549—558; arenaceous, 558—568; vitreous, 568—592; collection and mounting of, 593—595; fossil deposits of, see Fossil

Foraminifera; mode of making sections of, 236 *note*.
Forceps, 153; Stage, 142; Slider, 221.
Forficulidæ, wings of, 751.
Formed Material, Dr. Beale on, 764—766.
Fossil Bone, 832.
—— Diatoms, 361—363, 823, 824.
—— Foraminifera, 552, 553, 560, 565—567, 575, 580—593, 823—830.
—— Radiolaria, 596.
—— Sponges, 826, 827.
—— Teeth, 831, 832.
—— Wood, 446, 448, 820—823.
Fowl, lung of, 818.
Fragillarieæ, 342.
Free Cell-formation in Plants, 272, 273.
Freezing Microtome, 229, 234.
Frog, blood of, 783—786; pigment cells of, 791—792; circulation in web of, 804—806; in tongue of, 806; in lung of, 806; structure of lung of, 817, 818.
Fructification, of Chara, 310—312; of Fuci, 397—399; of Florideæ, 399—401; of Lichens, 393; of Fungi, 383, 386; of Marchantia, 404, 405; of Mosses, 408—410; of Ferns, 412—418; of Equisetaceæ, 419; of Lycopodiaceæ, 420.
Fucaceæ, 393—399; sexual apparatus of, 397—399; development of, 399.
FUNGI, relation of, to Algæ, 275, 367; to Animals, 367, 388—392; to Lichens, 393; simplest forms of, 367—377; in bodies of living Animals, 377—382; in substance, or on surface, of Plants, 385, 386; amœboid states of, 388, 389; universal diffusion of sporules of, 373—383; culture of, 145 *note*, 367.
Furcularians, 540.
Fusulina, 575, 576.

Gad-flies, ovipositor of, 756.
Gall-flies, ovipositor of, 755.
Galls of Plants, 755.
Ganglion-Cells, 801.
Ganoid scales of Fish, 776.
GASTEROPODA, structure of shells of, 676; palates of, 678—681; development of, 683—689; organs of sense of, 690, 691.
Gastrula, 468.
Geikie, Prof., on Geographical evolution, 833 *note*.
Gelatine, see Glycerine jelly.
Gelatinous Nerve fibres, 802.
Generation, distinguished from Growth, 273—275; in Cryptogams, 421; in Phanerogams, 422.
Geology, applications of Microscope to, 820—835.
Geranium-petal, peculiar cells of, 460.
Germ-cell of Cryptogams, 421; of Phanerogams, 422.
Germinal Matter, Dr. Beale on, 764.
Gills, of Mollusks, ciliary motion on, 689, 690; of Fishes, distribution of vessels in, 817; of Water-newt, circulation in, 807.
Gizzard of Insects, 744.
Glands, structure of, 796, 797.
Glandular woody fibre of Conifers, 437.
Glass Slides, 208, 209.
—— Stage-plate, 144.
—— Thin, 209—211.
Glaucium, cyclosis in hairs of, 430.
Globigerina, 569—571.
Globigerina-mud, 569; its relation to Chalk-formation, 825—829.
Globigerinida, 569—576.
Glochidium, 682.
Glue, Liquid, 213.
——, Marine, uses of, 213, 216.
Glycerine, for mounting objects, 252—256.
Glycerine Jelly, 253; mounting in, 256.
Glycerine and Gum medium, 253, 256.
Gnat, scale of, 185; transparent larva of, 745.
Gold-Size, use of, 211, 212.
Gomphonemeæ, 356.
Goniometer, 111, 112.
Gonidia, 275 *note*, 276; multiplication by, in Desmidiaceæ, 318; in Pediastreæ, 322; in Diatomaceæ, 336; in Hydrodictyon, 302; in Chara, 310; in Lichens, 393; in Fungi, 384, 386; in Volvox, 287.
Gordius, 695.
Gorgonia, spicules of, 626, 627.
Gosse, Mr., on mastax of Rotifers, 532—534; on sexes of Rotifers, 535; on Melicerta, 539; on thread-cells of Zoophytes, 625.

Grammatophora, 346 ; its use as test, 205.
Grantia, structure of, 606, 608.
Grasses, silicified cuticle of, 456.
Gray, Dr., on palates of Gasteropods, 680 ; on development of Buccinum, 686.
Green Sands, Foraminiferal origin of, 829, 830 ; Prof. Ehrenberg on composition of, 577 *note*, 829.
Gregarinida, 494, 495.
Gromia, 477—480.
Growing-Slide, 144, 145.
Growth, distinguished from Generation, 273—275.
Guano, Diatomaceæ of, 364.
Gulliver, Mr., on Raphides, 436 ; on sizes of Blood-disks, 783—785.
Gum Arabic, 213.
Guy, Dr., on sublimation of Alkaloids, 849.
Gymnosperms, 422, 423.

Haeckel, Prof., on Gastræa theory, 495 *note ;* on Monerozoa, 469 ; on Bathybius, 492 ; on Radiolaria, 597 ; on Infusoria, 498 *note ;* on Calcareous Sponges, 607 *note.*
Hæmatococcus, 292 ; its relations to Protococcus, 278.
Hæmatoxylin, as staining agent, 246.
Hairs, of Insects, 733 ; of Mammals, 777—780.
——— of Vegetable cuticles, 455 ; rotation of fluid in, 429, 431.
Halichondria, spicules of, 606.
Halifax, Dr., on making Sections of Insects, 724.
Haliomma, 599.
Haliotis, palate of, 680.
Haliphysema, 562.
Halodactylus, 654.
Halophragmium, 563.
Halteres of Diptera, 752.
Hand-Magnifiers, 22—25, 50, 51.
Hard Substances, cutting Sections of, 235—239.
Hardening of Animal Substances, 241.
Harley Binocular, 82, 83.
Harting, Prof., on Calcareous concretions, 847.
Hartnack, M., his diagonal Micrometer, 111 ; on Surirella, 205.
Harvest-bug, 760.
Haversian Canals of Bone, 767, 768.
Haustellate Mouth, 743, 744.
Haycraft, Mr., on Muscular fibre, 799.
Hazel, stem of, 445.
Hearing, organs of (?), in Insects, 740.
Heart-wood, 445.
Heat, tolerance of, by Bacteria, &c., 373; by Infusoria, 503, 504.
Heliopelta, 350, 351.
Heliozoa, 476, 480—485.
Helix, palate of, 678.
Hemiptera, wings of, 752.
Hepaticæ, 401—405 ; see Marchantia.
Hepworth, Mr., on feet of Insects, 753.
Hertwig, Dr., on Rhizopods, 476 *note*, 478 ; on Foraminifera, 544 *note*.
Heteromita, 501, 502.
Heterostegina, 584.
Hexiradiate Sponges, 608.
Hicks, Dr., on Volvox, 290 ; on Amœboid production in root-fibres of Mosses, 406 ; on eyes of Insects, 736 ; on peculiar organs of sense in Insects, 740 *note*, 752.
Hincks, Rev. T., on Hydroid Zoophytes, 614 ; on Polyzoa, 655 *note.*
Hippocrepian Polyzoa, 654, 655.
Hogg, Mr., on development of Lymnæus, 686.
Hollyhock, pollen-grains of, 44, 198, 464.
Holothurida, skeletons of, 640—642.
Holtenia, 608.
Homogeneous Immersion, 19, 20.
Hoofs, structure of, 781, 782.
Hooker, Sir. J. D., on Antarctic Diatoms, 360.
Hoop, of Diatoms, 328, 334, 335.
Hormosina, 563.
Hornet, wings of, 751.
Horns, structure of, 781, 782.
Houghton, Rev. W., on Glochidium, 682.
Hudson, Dr., on Pedalion, 535, 536, 542.
Huxley, Prof., on Protoplasm, 267 ; on cell-formation in Sphagnaceæ, 411 ; on Bathybius, 492 ; on Coccoliths, 492, 493 ; on Rotifera, 537, 542 ; on Thalassicolla, 601 *note ;* on Noctiluca, 507 *note ;* on Shell of Mollusca, 669 ; on Appendicularia, 664 ;

on Blood of Annelida, 699 ; on Shell of Crustacea, 719 *note;* on Reproduction of Aphides, 758.
Huyghenian eye-piece, 27, 28.
Hyalodiscus, 205, 346.
Hydatina, 540 ; reproduction of, 536.
Hydra, life-history of, 610—614.
Hydra tuba, development of Acalephs from, 620—622.
Hydrodictyon, 301, 302.
Hydrozoa, simple, 610 ; composite, 614—619 ; their relation to Medusæ, 615, 619—623.
Hyla, preparation of nerves of, 804.

Ice-Plant, cuticle of, 455.
Ichneumonidæ, ovipositor of, 755.
Illumination of Opaque objects, 176—178 ; of Transparent objects, 171—175 ; diverse effects of, on lined objects, 173, 174.
Illuminators, Black-ground, 125—129, 175.
——— Oblique, 123, 124, 173—175.
——— Parabolic, 126, 127.
——— Reflex, 128, 129.
——— Side, 135—138.
——— Vertical, 138—141.
——— Wenham's Disk, 123 ; his Reflex, 128, 129.
——— White-Cloud, 130.
Imbedding processes, 232—234.
Immersion-Lenses, 18—20.
Images, formation of, by convex lenses, 8.
Index of Refraction, 1—3.
Indigo-carmine, as staining agent, 248.
Indian Corn, cuticle of, 453, 457.
Indicator, Quekett's, 112.
Indusium of Ferns, 414.
Infusoria, 497—529 ; Flagellate, 498 ; Suctorial, 513 ; Ciliate, 516 ; movements of, 518, 519 ; internal structure of, 519—521 ; binary subdivision of, 521, 522 ; encysting process of, 522—526 ; sexual generation (?) of, 526—529.
Infusorial Earths, 361.
Injections of Bloodvessels, mode of making, 810—816.
Insects, great numbers of objects furnished by, 722 ; microscopic forms of, 723 ; antennæ of, 738—740; circulation of blood in, 745, 746 ; eggs of, 756, 757 ; eyes of, 735—738 ; feet of, 752—755 ; gastric teeth of, 744; hairs of, 733 ; integument of, 724, 735 ; mouth of, 740—744 ; organs of hearing in, 740 ; of smell in, 752 ; of taste in, 744 ; ovipositors of, 755, 756 ; scales of, 725—733 ; spiracles of, 748, 749 ; stings of, 755 ; tracheæ of, 746—748 ; wings of, 750—752.
Interference-spectra, 186—191.
Intermediate Skeleton of Foraminifera, 549, 569, 575, 579, 589.
Internal Casts of Foraminifera, 572, 573, 577, 578, 584, 586, 591, 829.
Interpretation, errors of, 179—185.
Inverted Microscope, Dr. L. Smith's, 96.
Iodine, as test, 249.
Iris, structure of leaf of, 457—459.
Iris-diaphragm, 120.
Isthmia, 352 ; markings on, 329, 330 ; self-division of, 335.
Itch-Acarus, 760.
Iulus, fungous vegetation in, 380.

Jackson, Mr. G., his model for Compound Microscope, 62; his Eye-piece Micrometer, 109, 110.
Jevons, Prof., on Brownian movement, 183.
Jukes, Prof., on Foraminiferal reef, 823.

Kellner's Eye-piece, 28, 29.
Kerona silurus, 517.
Kent, Mr. S., on Flagellate Infusoria, 504, 505 ; on Sponges, 604 *note*.
Kidney, structure of, 797.
Klein, Dr., on Cells and Nuclei, 765 *note*.
Kleinenberg, Prof., on Hydra, 614 *note*, 764 *note ;* his preparing fluid, 243 ; his staining fluid, 246.
Koch, on Sections of hard and soft substances, 239.
Kölliker, Prof., on Fungi in Shells, &c., 382 *note*.
Kovalevsky, on development of Ascidians, 664 *note*.
Kühne, on contraction of Vorticella-stalk, 519.

Labelling of Objects, 261, 262.
Laboratory Dissecting Microscope, 55, 56.

Labyrinthodon, tooth of, 831, 832.
Lachmann, see Claparède and Lachmann.
Lacinularia, Prof. Huxley on, 535 *note*.
Lacunæ of Bone, 768, 769.
Lagena, 544, 568.
Laguncula, 650-653.
Lamellicornes, antennæ of, 739.
Lamps for Microscope, 155, 156.
Lankester, Prof. E. Ray, on amœboids in fresh-water Medusa, 610; on development of Limnæus, 685.
Larvæ of Echinoderms, 642-649.
Laurentian Formation of Canada, 588, 830; of Europe, 588 *note*.
Leaves, structure of, 458-460.
Leech, teeth of, 706.
Leeson, Dr., his double-refracting Goniometer, 112; his Selenite-plate, 132.
Legg, Mr., on collection of Foraminifera, 593, 594.
Leidy, Dr., on Enterobryus, 380; on Rhizopods, 491 *note*.
Lenses, refraction by, 3, 6.
Lepidocyrtus, scales of, see Podura.
Lepidoptera, scales of, 725—735; proboscis of, 743, 744; wings of, 725, 751; eggs of, 757.
Lepidosteus, bony scales of, 769, 776.
Lepidostrobi, 421.
Lepisma, scales of, 728, 729; diffraction-spectrum of, 190.
Lepralia, 651, 655.
Lernæa, 716, 717.
Levant-Mud, microscopic organisms of, 823, 824.
Lever of Contact, 210.
Lewis, Mr. B., his freezing Microtome, 229.
Libellula, eyes of, 736; respiration of larva of, 749.
Liber, 449.
Lichens, composite nature of, 392—394.
Lichmophoreæ, 342.
Lieberkühn (speculum), 133—140; mode of using, 178.
Lieberkühnia, 472—474.
Ligaments, structure of, 788.
Light, for Microscope, 155—158; arrangement of, for Transparent objects, 169—175; for Opaque objects, 175—178.
Light-modifiers, 130.
Ligneous Tissue, 436, 437.
Limax, shell of, 676; palate of, 679.
Limestones, organic origin of, 828, 829; Fusuline, 575, 576, 829; Nummulitic, 580, 581, 829; Milioline, 828; Orbitoidal, 585; Eozoic, 587, 588, 830.
Limiting Angle, 3.
Limpet, palate of, 679.
Liquid Glue, 213.
Lined Objects, diverse effects of Illumination on, 173, 174.
—— Tests, resolution of, 202—205.
Lister, Mr. J. J., his improvements in Achromatic lenses, 15; his Erector, 101, 102; his observations on Zoophytes, 616; on Social Ascidians, 661—663.
Lister, Prof., on Bacteria, &c., 374.
Lituolida, 562—568.
Live-box, 146.
Liver, structure of, 796, 797.
Liverwort, 401—405.
Lobb, Mr., on binary subdivision in Micrasterias, 317.
Lobosa, 476, 486—491.
Loftusia, 567.
Logan, Sir W., on Laurentian Formation, 588 *note*, 830.
Lophophore of Polyzoa, 651.
Lophyropoda, 709, 710.
Lowne, Mr., on feet of Insects, 754 *note*; on eyes of Insects, 737 *note*; on development of Insects, 759.
Lubbock, Sir J., on Daphnia, 715; on Thysanura, 728.
Luders, Mad., on fermentation, 376.
Luminosity of Noctiluca, 506, 510; of Annelida, 705.
Lungs of Reptiles, 817; of Birds, 817; of Mammals, 819.
Lycænidæ, scales of, 726, 728.
Lycopodiaceæ, 420.
Lymnæus, development of, 683, 686.
Lymph, corpuscles of, 785.

Machilis, scale of, 729, 730.
Macro-gonidia, 276 *note*; of Volvox, 287; of Pediastreæ, 323; of Hydrodictyon, 302.
Maddox, Dr., his Growing-Slide, 145; on cultivation of Microscopic Fungi, 146 *note*.

Magnifying power, augmentation of, 161, 162; determination of, 206, 207.
Magenta, as staining agent, 247.
Mahogany, section of, 447.
Malpighian bodies of Kidney, 797.
———— layer of Skin, 791.
Maltwood's Finder, 118.
Malvaceæ, pollen-grains of, 464; their use as tests, 44, 198.
MAMMALS, bone of, 767—770; teeth of, 772—774; hairs, hoofs, &c., of, 777—782; blood of, 782—786; ungs of, 819.
Man, teeth of, 772—774; hair of, 779, 780; blood of, 782—786.
Mandibulate mouth of Insects, 741.
Marchantia, general structure of, 401; stomata of, 402; conceptacles of, 403; sexual apparatus of, 404.
Margaritaceæ, shells of, 669—671.
Marine Glue, uses of, 213, 216.
Marsh, Dr. S., his section-lifter, 245; on Section-cutting, &c., 232, 256.
Mastax of Rotifera, 532, 534.
Mastogloia, 358, 359.
Matthews, Dr. his Micro-megascope, 102; his saw for Section-cutting, 325.
Media, Preservative, 250—253.
Medullary Rays, 425, 445—449.
———— Sheath, 437, 443.
Medusæ, their relation to Polypes, 615, 619—623; fresh-water, amœboids in, 610.
Megalopa-larva of Crab, 721.
Megatherium, teeth of, 773.
Melanospermeæ, 396.
Melicertians, 538, 539.
Melolontha, see Cockchafer.
Melosira, 346, 347; auxospores of, 338.
Menelaus, scale of, 726, 727.
Meniscus Lenses, refraction by, 8.
Meridion circulare, 341.
Mesembryanthemum, cuticle of, 455.
Mesocarpus, 282.
Metamorphosis, of Annelids, 700—703; of Ascidians, 663—665; of Cirrhipeds, 717, 718; of higher Crustacea, 720, 721; of Entomostraca, 715; of Echinoderms, 642—646; of Infusoria, 523—526; of Insects, 758, 759; of Mollusks, 682—689.
Metazoa, 469.
Mica-Selenite Stage, 133.
Micrasterias, binary sub-division of, 317; stato-spores of, 318.
Micro-Chemistry, 848, 849.
Micrococcus, 368.
Micro-gonidia, 276 *note;* of Protococcus, 280; of Desmidiaceæ, 318; of Hydrodictyon, 302.
Micro-megascope, 102.
Micrometers, Ramsden's, 108, 109; Jackson's, 109, 110; Hartnack's, 111.
Micrometry, by Micrometer, 109—111; by Camera Lucida, 116.
Micropyle of Vegetable Ovule, 423, 465.
MICROSCOPE, support required for, 154, 155; care of, 159, 160; focal adjustment of, 162—168; arrangement of, for Transparent objects, 168—175; for Opaque objects, 175—179.
———— *Binocular*, see Binocular Microscope.
———— *Compound*, see Compound Microscope.
———— *Simple*, see Simple Microscope.
———— Chemical, 95—97.
———— Demonstrating, 93.
———— Dissecting, 53—60.
———— Educational, 63—66.
———— Inverted, 95—97.
———— Mineralogical, 836—838.
———— Pocket, 92.
———— Popular, 82.
———— Portable Binocular, 94.
———— Students', 66—80, 856.
———— Travelling, 93, 94.
Microscopic Dissection, 223—225.
Micro-Spectroscope, 104—107.
Microtome, Simple, 226; Hailes's, 227—229; Strassburg, 229; freezing, 229; Rivet-Leiser, 229—231.
Microzymes, 375.
Mildew of Corn, 385.
Miliolida, 550.
Millon's test for Albuminous substances, 250.
Milne-Edwards, M., on Compound Ascidians, 661 *note*.
Mineral Objects, 834—849.
Minnow, circulation in, 807.
Misinterpretation of microscopic appearances, causes of, 179—185.
Mites, 759.

Mivart, Prof., on Radiolaria, 597.
Moderator, Rainey's, 130.
Molecular Coalescence, 845—848.
———— Movement, 182, 183.
MOLLUSCA, shells of, 666—678 ; palates of, 678—681 ; development of, 682—689 ; ciliary motion on gills of, 689, 690; organs of sense of, 690, 691.
Molybdate of Ammonia, 248.
Monadina, 498—504.
Monerozoa, 469—475.
Monocotyledonous Stems, structure of, 441, 442.
Monothalamous Foraminifera, 544.
Morula, 468.
Morehouse, Mr., on Lepisma-scale, 729, 733 *note*.
Morris, Mr., his Object-holder, 144; on mounting Zoophytes, 618, 619.
MOSSES, structure of, 405–408 ; sexual apparatus of, 408—410; development of spores of, 408.
Mother-of-Pearl, structure of, 670.
Moths, see Lepidoptera.
Moulds, fungous, 383, 384.
Mounting of objects, 254 ; in Canada Balsam, 257, 258 ; in cement-cells, 258 ; in deep cells, 259.
Mounting-Instrument, Smith's, 222.
———— Microscope, Field's, 59, 60.
Mounting-Plate, 221.
Mouse, hair of, 778 ; cartilage of ear of, 795 ; vessels of toe of, 814.
Mouth of Insects, 740—744.
Mucor, 385.
Mucous Membranes, structure of, 790 ; capillaries of, 816.
Müller, Dr. Fritz, on Polyzoa, 653.
Müller, Prof. J., on Radiolaria, 596 ; on Echinoderm-larvæ, 642—646.
Müller's fluid, for hardening, 243.
Muscardine, of Silk-worms, 377—379.
Muscular Fibre, structure of, 797—801; mode of examining and preparing, 800 ; capillaries of, 816.
Musk-deer, hair of, 777 ; minute blood-corpuscles of, 784.
Mussel, ciliary action on gills of, 689 ; development of, 682.
Mya, structure of hinge-tooth of, 672.
Mycelium of Fungi, 382—387.
Myliobates, teeth of, 771, 772.
Myriapods, hairs of, 733, 734.
Myriothela, amœboids in, 610.
Myxomycetes, 387—390.

Nachet, M., his Stereoscopic Binocular, 33, 34 ; Stereo-pseudoscopic Binocular, 39—42 ; Binocular Magnifier, 58 ; Student's Microscope, 76—78 ; Chemical Microscope, 95—97 ; Mineralogical Microscope, 836 —838 ; Erecting Prism, 103 ; Camera, 114 ; Porte-Objectif, 856.
Nacre, structure of, 669, 670.
Nais, 705, 706.
Nassula, teeth of, 519.
Navicellæ of Gregarinida, 494.
Naviculæ, 356 ; movements of, 339.
Needles for Dissection, 224, 225.
Nematoid Entozoa, 694, 695.
Nemertes, larva of, 702, 703.
Nepa, tracheal system of, 747.
Nepenthes, spiral vessels of, 438.
Nervous Tissue, structure of, 801—803; mode of examining, 803, 804.
Net, Collector's, 263—265.
Nettle, sting of, 456.
Neuroptera, circulation in, 745, 749 ; wings of, 750.
Neutral-tint Reflector, 115.
Newt, circulation in larva of, 807.
Nicol-Prism, 131.
Nitella, 309.
Nitzschieæ, 343.
Nobert's Test, 202, 203.
Noctiluca, 506—511.
Nodosaria, 568.
Nonionina, 579.
Nose-piece, 116.
Nostochaceæ, 297.
Nucleus, of Vegetable cells, 270—273 ; of Animal cells, 765.
Nudibranchs, development of, 683—685.
Numerical Aperture of Objectives, 850.
Nummulinida, 548, 576—587.
Nummulite, structure of, 580—584.
Nummulitic Limestone, 580, 828, 829.
Nuphar lutea, parenchyma of, 425, 426.

Oak, galls of, 755.
Object-Glasses, Achromatic, principle of, 9—13 ; Angular aperture of, 10, 192—195, 850 ; Numerical aperture of, 850 ; construction of, 14—18 ;

immersion, 18—20; adjustment of, for covering glass, 15, 16; 165—168; adaptation of, to Binocular, 42—45; working distance of, 192; defining power of, 192—194; focal depth of, 194; increase of, with Binocular, 45; resolving power of, 195; flatness of field of, 195; comparative value of, 191—197, Preface, vi, vii; different powers of, tests for, 197—206; determination of magnifying power of, 206, 207.
Object-Holder, 143, 144.
Objects, mode of mounting, dry, 214, 218; in Canada balsam, 256, 257; in preservative media, 250—256; in cells, 258—261; see Opaque and Transparent Objects.
——— labelling and preserving of, 261, 262.
——— collection of, 263—265.
Oblique Illuminators, 123, 124.
Ocelli of Insects, 735—737.
Octospores of Fuci, 398.
Œdogonieæ, 305, 306.
Oidium, 386.
Oil-globules, microscopic appearances of, 181, 182.
Oil-immersion Objectives, 19, 20, 851.
Oleander, cuticle of, 455; stomata of, 457.
Oncidium, spiral cells of, 433.
Onion, raphides of, 435.
Oögonia of Fucaceæ, 398.
Oolite, structure of, 799.
Oöspores, 274, 275; of Volvox, 289; of Achlya, 300; of Sphæroplea, 304, 305; of Œdogonium, 306; of Batrachospermeæ, 308; of Chara, 312; of Fucaceæ, 399.
Opaque Objects, arrangement of Microscope for, 175—179; modes of mounting, 214, 218.
Operculina, 579, 580.
Ophiocoma, teeth and spines of, 637.
Ophioglosseæ, prothallium of, 417, 418.
Ophiurida, skeleton of, 637; development of, 645.
Ophrydinæ, 522.
Orbiculina, 551, 552.
Orbitoides, structure of, 585, 587.
Orbitolina, 574.
Orbitolites, structure and development of, 549, 553—558; fossil, 823.
Orbulina, 569.
Orchideous Plants, 433.
Ord, Dr. W. M., on Calculi, 848.
Ornithorhynchus, hair of, 779.
Orthoptera, wings of, 751.
Osmic acid, uses of, 243.
Osmunda, prothallium of, 418 *note*.
Oscillatoriaceæ, 295, 297.
Ostraceæ, shells of, 671—673.
Ostracoda, 710.
Otoliths of Gasteropods, 691; of Fishes, 846.
Ovipositors of Insects, 755, 756.
Ovules of Phanerogamia, 422; fertilization of, 464; mode of studying, 464, 465.
Owen, Prof., on fossil Teeth, 831, 832; on fossil Bone, 832, 833.
Oxytricha-form of Trichoda, 522—524.
Oyster, shell of, 672, 673.

Pachymatisma, spicules of, 607.
Pacinian corpuscles, 803.
Palates of Gasteropods, 368—371.
Palm, stem of, 441, 442.
Palmellaceæ, 291—293.
Palmodictyon, 293.
Palmoglœa macrococca, life-history of, 276, 277.
Papillæ of Skin, structure of, 790, 803; capillaries of, 816; of Tongue, 803.
Parabolic Speculum, 137.
Parabolized Gas-Slide, 148.
Paraboloid, 126, 127; immersion, 127, 128.
Paraffin, imbedding in, 232—234.
Paramecium, 517; contractile vesicles of, 521; binary subdivision of, 521; sexual generation (?) of, 526.
Parasitic Fungi in Animal bodies, 377—383; in Plants, 385, 386.
Parker, Mr. Jeffery, on Hydra, 610.
Parkeria, 565—567.
Passulus, fungous vegetation in, 381.
Paste, Eels of, 695.
Pasteur, M., his researches on ferments, 374; on pébrine, 375.
Patella, palatal tube of, 679.
Pearls, structure of, 671.
Pébrine, 375.
Pecari, hair of, 779.
Pecten, eyes of, 690; tentacles of, 691.
Pedalion, 535, 536, 542.

Pedesis, Prof. Jevons on, 183.
Pediastreæ, structure of, 322—325; multiplication and development of, 323, 324; varieties of, 325.
Pedicellariæ of Echinoderms, 635.
Pedicellina, 655.
Pelargonium, cells of petal of, 460, 461.
Pelomyxa palustris, 488.
Peneroplis, 545, 551.
Penetrating power of Object-glasses, 194; increase of, with Binocular, 45.
Penicillium, 385.
Pentacrinoid larva of Comatula, 646—648.
Pentacrinus, skeleton of, 637.
Perennibranchiata, bone of, 770; blood-corpuscles of, 784, 785.
Peridinium, 511, 512.
Peristome of Mosses, 408—410.
Peronospora, 386.
Perophora, 662, 663.
Petals of Flowers, structure of, 460, 461.
Petrology, Microscopic, 833—838.
Pettenkofer's test, 249.
PHANEROGAMIA, distinctive peculiarities of, 422, 423; elementary tissues of, 423—440 (see Tissues of Plants); Stems and Roots of, 440—453; Cuticles and Leaves of, 453—460; Flowers of, 460—465; Seeds of, 465—467.
Phyllopoda, 712, 713.
Picric acid, for hardening, 243.
Picro-aniline, as staining agent, 248.
Picro-carmine, as staining agent, 246.
Pieridæ, scales of, 725, 727.
Pigott, Dr. Royston, his Aplanatic Searcher, 11 *note*; his Micrometers, 108 *note*; on angle of aperture, 193; on scales of Insects, 729, 732.
Pigment-cells, 791, 792; of Cuttle-fish, 691, 692; of Crustacea, 720.
Pigmentum nigrum, 791.
Pilidium-larva of Nemertes, 702.
Pillischer, Mr., his International Microscope, 72.
Pilulina, 560.
Pinna, structure of shell of, 666—669; fossil, in Chalk, 825.
Pinnularia, 357.
Pistillidia, see Archegonia.
Pith, structure of, 424, 442.
Placoid scales of Fish, 776.
Planaria, 696, 697.
Planorbulina, 573.
Plantago, cyclosis in hairs of, 431.
Plants, distinction of, from Animals, 266—268.
Plasmodium, of Myxomycetes, 389; of Protomyxa, 471.
Plate-glass Cells, 216.
Pleurosigma, 357; nature of markings on, 329—334; value of, as Test, 203—205; diverse aspects of, 174 180; diffraction-spectrum of, 191
Pluteus-larva of Echinus, 644, 645.
Plumules of Butterflies, 725, 726.
Pocket Microscope, Beale's, 92.
Podophrya quadripartita, 514, 515.
Podura, scale of, 728—733; use of, as Test-object, 205, 206.
Poisons, detection of, 848, 849.
Polarization, Objects suitable for, 839—845.
Polarizing Apparatus, 131—134.
Polistes, fungous vegetation in, 379.
Pollen-grains, development of, 461; structure and markings of, 462—464.
Pollen-tubes, fertilizing action of, 464.
Polycelis, 697.
Polyclinians, 659.
Polycystina, 596, 599—602.
Polygastrica, see Infusoria.
Polymorphina, 568.
Polyommatus argus, scale of, 726—728.
Polypes, see *Hydra* and *Zoophytes*.
Polypide of Polyzoa, 650.
Polypodium, fructification of, 412, 413.
Polystomella, 577—579.
Polythalamous Foraminifera, 544—546.
Polytoma uvella, 501.
Polytrema, 574.
POLYZOA, general structure of, 650—657; classification of, 655.
Polyzoary, 650.
Pond-Stick, Baker's, 263.
Poppy, seeds of, 465.
Popular Microscope, Beck's, 82.
Porcellanous Foraminifera, 547, 549—558.
Porcellanous shells of Gasteropods, 676.
Porcupine, quill of, 778.
PORIFERA, see Sponges.

Portable Binocular, 94—96.
Potato-disease, 386.
Powell and Lealand's Microscopes, 80, 81, 90, 91; their non-stereoscopic Binocular, 98; their Achromatic Condenser, 120, 121; their Light-modifier, 130; their Oil-immersion objectives, 20; their Vertical Illuminator, 140.
Prawn, shell of, 720.
Preservative Media, 250—253.
Primordial Utricle, 269, 427.
Pringsheim, Dr., his observations on Vaucheria, 299; on Hydrodictyon, 302; on Œdogonium, 307.
Prismatic Shell-substance, 666—669.
Prism, Amici's, 124; Nachet's Erecting, 103; Wenham's Binocular, 35, 98; Stephenson's Binocular, 37; Camera Lucida, 112—115; Spectroscope, 105; Polarizing, 131, 132.
Proboscis, of Bee, 742, 743; of Butterfly, 743, 744; of Fly, 741, 742.
Proteus, blood-corpuscles of, 784, 785.
Prothallium of Ferns, 415—418.
Protococcus, life-history of, 277—282.
Protomyxa, 469—471.
Protoplasm, 267; of Vegetable cell, 268—273; of Animals, 764—766.
PROTOPHYTA, general characters of, 267—272.
Protophytic Algæ, 275—366.
Protophytic Fungi, 275, 367; relation of, to Protozoa, 367; cultivation of, 145, 367.
PROTOZOA, 468, 469; their relations to Protophyta, 268.
Pseud-embryo of Echinoderms, 642.
Pseudo-navicellæ of Gregarinida, 494.
Pseudopodia of Rhizopods, 469—490; different forms of, 476.
Pseudoscope, 31, 32.
Pseudoscopic Microscope of MM. Nachet, 39—42.
Pteris, fructification of, 414; prothallium of, 415.
Pterodactyle, bone of, 832, 833.
Puccinia, 385.
Purpura, egg-capsules of, 683; development of, 686—689.
Pycnogonidæ, 707—709.

Quadrula symmetrica, 491.
Quatrefages, M. de, on luminosity of Annelids, 705.
Quekett, Prof. J., his Dissecting Microscope, 53, 54; his Indicator, 112; on Raphides, 436; on structure of Bone, 770, 832.
Quinqueloculina, 550.

Radiating Crystallization, 841, 842.
Radiolaria, 595, 596; their relation to Heliozoa, 595; their general structure, 597, 598; their classification, 598—600; collection and mounting of, 600—602.
Rainey, Mr., his Light modifier, 130; on Molecular coalescence, 845—847.
Ralfs, Mr., on Desmidiaceæ, 312 *note*; on Diatomaceæ, 340 *note*.
Ralph, Dr., his mode of mounting, 258.
Ramsden's Micrometer, 108, 109.
Raphides, 435, 436.
Re-agents, Chemical, use of, in Microscopic research, 249, 250, 848, 849.
Red Corpuscles of blood, 782—785.
Red Snow, 291.
Reflection by Prisms, 2, 3,
Reflex Illuminator, Wenham's, 128.
Refraction, laws of, 1—3; by convex lenses, 4—7; by concave and meniscus lenses, 7, 8.
Rein-deer, hair of, 777.
Reophax, 564.
REPTILES, bone of, 769, 770, 832; teeth of, 772, 832; scales of, 777; blood of, 782—786; lungs of, 817, 818.
Resolving power of Object-glasses, 188, 195.
Reticularia, 476—480.
Reticulated Ducts, 438, 439.
Rhabdammina, 562.
Rhinoceros, horn of, 781.
Rhizocarpeæ, 420.
RHIZOPODA, 475—491; their subdivisions, 476, 477; their relation to higher Animals, 764, 765.
Rhizosolenia, 353.
Rhizostoma, 622.
Rhodospermeæ, 399.
Rhubarb, raphides of, 435.
Rhynchonellidæ, structure of Shell of, 675.
Rice, starch-grains of, 435.

Rice-paper, 424, 425.
Ricinicæ, 760.
Ring-Cells, 215.
Ring-Net, 263—265.
Rivet-Leiser Microtome, 229—231.
Roasted Corn, detection of, in Chicory, 467.
Robin, M., on Noctiluca, 507 *note*, 511 *note*.
Rochea, epidermis of, 455.
Rocks, structure of, 823—830, 834—838.
Roots, structure of, 451, 452; mode of making sections of, 452, 453.
Ross, Mr., on correction of Object-glass, 15, 16; his First-class Microscopes, 87—90; his Achromatic Condenser, 121; his Students' Microscope, 73, 74; his Simple Microscope, 51—53; his Lever of contact, 210; his Compressor, 149, 150.
Ross-Model for Compound Microscope, 61, 62.
Rotalia, 545, 546, 573—575.
Rotaline Foraminifera, 545, 573—576.
Rotating Microscope, Browning's, 78.
Rotifer, anatomy of, 532—535; reproduction of, 535—537; tenacity of life of, 537; occurrence of, in leaves of Sphagnum, 411, 530.
Rotifera, general structure of, 529—542; reproduction of, 535—537; desiccation of, 537; classification of, 538—542.
Royston-Pigott, Dr., see Pigott.
Rush, stellate parenchyma of, 425, 426.
Rust, of Corn, 385.
Rutherford, Prof., his freezing Microtome, 229, 234.

Sable, hair of, 777, 778.
Saccammina, 560.
Saccharomyces, 375.
Saccolobium, spiral cells of, 433.
Safety-stage, Stephenson's, 141.
Salpingœca, 505.
Salter, Mr. Jas., on teeth of Echinida, 635, 636.
Salts, crystallization of, 839—845.
Salvia, spiral fibres of seed of, 433.
Salycylic Acid, as preservative, 251.
Sand-wasp, integument of, 724.
Sandy tests of Foraminifera, 558—568.
Sarcina ventriculi, 377.
Sarcode, of Protozoa, 266 *note*, 267.
Sarcoptes scabiei, 759, 760.
Sarsia, 615.
Saw-flies, ovipositor of, 755, 756.
Scalariform ducts of Ferns, 412, 438.
Scales, of cuticle of Plants, 455, 456.
——— of Fish, 774—776.
——— of Insects, 725—735; their use as Test-objects, 199—206.
——— of Reptiles and Mammals, 777.
Schiek's Compressor, 149.
Schizomycetes, 367—373; their Zymotic action, 373—5.
Schizonemeæ, 357, 358.
Schultz's test, 249.
Schultze, Prof. Max., on Protoplasm, 266 *note;* on movement of fluid in Diatoms, 326; on surface-markings of Diatoms, 331 *note*.
Schulze, Mr. A., on use of Illuminators, 129.
Schwann, doctrines of, 763.
Schwendener, on Lichens, 392.
Scissors, for microscopic dissection, 224; for cutting thin sections, 225.
Sclerogen, deposit of, on walls of Cells, 431, 432.
Scolopendrum, sori of, 414.
Sea Anemone, 624, 625.
Section-cutting Instruments, 226—231.
Section-lifter, Marsh's, 245.
Sections, thin, mode of making, of Soft substances, 225—235; modes of mounting, 255-257; of Hard substances, 235—239; of Foraminifera, 236 *note;* of Leaves, 460; of Wood, 452, 453; of Echinus-spines, 638, 639; of Insects, 724; of Bones and Teeth, 770; of Hairs, 780.
Seeds, testæ of, 465—467; spiral cells in, 433.
Segmentation of Yolk-mass, 683, 686.
Selaginelleæ, 420.
Selenite Stages, 132—134.
Sepiola, eggs of, 692.
Sepiostaire of Cuttle-fish, 677, 848.
Serialaria, colonial nervous system of, 653.
Serous Membranes, structure of, 790.

Serpentine-Limestone, 587—593, 830.
Sertularidæ, 617—619.
Sexual Generation, lowest forms of, in Protophytes, 275, 276, 282, 283; in Infusoria, 499—503.
Shadbolt, Mr., on Arachnoidiscus, 351; his Annular condenser, 126 *note;* his Turn-table, 219, 220.
Shark, teeth of, 771, 772; scales, &c., of, 776.
Shell, of Crustacea, 719—720; of Echinida, 630, 631; of Foraminifera, 547—549; of Mollusca, 666—678; Fungi in, 382.
Shrimp, shell of, 720.
Side Illuminators, 135—137.
Side-Reflector, Beck's, 137. 138.
Siebert and Kraft's Dissecting Microscope, 54, 55.
Siebold, Prof., on reproduction of Bee, 758.
Silica crack-slide, 180, 193, 843.
Siliceous Epiderms, 419, 456.
——— Sponges, 606, 608.
Silk-worm diseases, 375—378.
Silver, crystallized, 840.
Simple Microscope, optical principles of, 21—25; various forms of, 50—60.
Siphonaceæ, 297—299.
Siricidæ, ovipositors of, 755, 756.
Skin, structure of, 789, 790; papillæ of, 802, 803, 816.
Slack, Mr., on Pinnularia, 357; on artificial Diatoms, 331 *note;* his Diaphragm-Eyepiece, 112; his Light-modifier, 130; his Stage-vice, 142; his Compressors, 150, 151; his Silica crack-slide, 180, 193; his crystallizations from silicated solutions, 843.
Sladen, Mr. P., on preserving Echinoderm larvæ, 646.
Slider-Forceps, 221.
Slides, Glass, 208, 209.
——— Wooden, 218.
Slug, rudimentary shell of, 676; palate of, 678, 679; eyes of, 690.
Smith, Mr. Jas., his Mounting Instrument, 222; his use of Bull's-eye Condenser, 136, 137.
Smith, Dr. Lawrence, (U.S.), his Inverted Microscope, 96.
Smith, Prof. H. L. (U.S.), on Binocular Eyepiece, 39; his vertical Illuminator, 140; his cells for dry-mounting, 214; on mounting Diatoms, 366.
Smith, Prof. J. Edwards (U.S.), on development of Œdogonium, 305; on wide-angled Objectives, Preface, viii, ix.
Smith, Prof. W., on Diatomaceæ, 203, 326, 360 *note.*
Smith and Beck, see Beck, Messrs.
Smut, of Wheat, 385.
Snail, palate of, 678, 679; eyes of, 690.
Snake, lung of, 818.
Snow-crystals, 839.
Social Ascidians, 661—663.
Soemmering's speculum, 113.
Sole, skin and scales of, 774, 775.
Sollitt, Mr., on Diatom-tests, 203.
Sorby, Mr., on skeleton of Echinoderms, 638 *note;* his Spectroscope Eye-piece, 105; his Microscopic examination of Rocks, 835, 836 *note.*
Soredia of Lichens, 393.
Sori of Ferns, 412—414.
Spatangidium, 350.
Spantangus, spines of, 634.
Spectacles, for Dissection, 223.
Spectro-Micrometer, Browning's, 106.
Spectroscope Eye-piece, 105.
Spectroscopic Analysis, principles of, 104—108.
Speculum, Parabolic, 137, 138.
Spermogonia of Fungi, 384; of Lichens, 394.
Sphacelaria, 396.
Sphæria, development of, within Animals, 380.
Sphæroplea, sexual reproduction of, 304.
Sphærosira volvox, 290.
Sphærozosma, 317.
Sphærozoum, 601.
Sphagnaceæ, peculiarities of, 410—412; occurrence of parasites in leaf-cells of, 391, 530.
Spherical Aberration, 9, 10; means of reducing and correcting, 10, 11.
Spicules of Sponges, 606—609; of Alcyonian Zoophytes, 626; of Doris, 676.
Spiders, eyes of, 761; respiratory

organs of, 761 ; feet of, 761; spinning apparatus of, 761, 762.
Spines of Echinida, 632, 633 ; mode of making sections of, 638—640 ; of Spatangus, 634.
Spinning apparatus of Spiders, 761, 762.
Spiracles of Insects, 747—749.
Spiral Cells of Sphagnum, 411 ; of Orchideæ, 433 ; of anthers, 462.
—— Crystallization, 843.
—— Ducts, 438, 439.
—— Fibres, 433.
—— Vessels, 437 ; in petals, 461.
Spiriferidæ, Shell-structure of, 675.
Spirillina, 568.
Spirillum, 372.
Spirolina, 551.
Spiroloculina, 550.
SPONGES, general structure and relations of, 603, 604 ; reproduction of, 605 ; skeleton of, 605—609 ; fossil, 826, 827.
Spongilla, 604, 608.
Spongiole of Root, 451.
Spores, different kinds of, 274—276 ; of Fungi, general diffusion of, 383—386 ; of Hepaticæ, 405 ; of Mosses, 410 ; of Ferns, 414—418 ; of Equisetaceæ, 419 ;—see Oöspores and Zygospores.
Spot-Lens, 125.
Spring-Clip, 222.
——— Press, 222.
——— Scissors, 224.
Squirrel, hair of, 778.
Stage-centering adjustment, 92.
Stage, Glass, 76.
Stage, Safety, 141,
Stage-Forceps. 142.
Stage-Plate, glass, 144.
Stage-Vice, 143.
Staining Processes, 244—249.
Stanhope Lens, 24.
Stanhoscope, 24.
Star-Anise, seed-coat of, 431.
Starch-granules, in Cells, 434, 435 ; appearance of, by Polarized light, 434.
Star-fish, Bipinnarian larva of, 643, 644.
Stato-spores, 275 *note;* of Volvox, 290 ; of Hydrodictyon, 302.
Staurastrum, prominences of, 313 ; self-division of, 316 ; varieties of, 325.
Stauroneis, 357.
Steenstrup, Prof., on Alternation of generations, 623.
Stein, Dr , his doctrine of Acineta forms, 516 *note*, 529 *note ;* his researches on Infusoria, 542 *note*.
Steinheil Doublet, 24.
Stellaria, petal of, 461.
Stellate cells, of Rush, 425, 426 ; of Water-lily, 425, 426.
Stemmata of Insects, 737.
Stem, 440 ; Monocotyledonous, structure of, 440, 442 ; Exogenous, structure of, 442—450 ; development of, 450, 451 ; mode of making sections of, 452, 453.
Stentor, 519 ; its conjugation, 528.
Stephanoceros Eichornii, 538, 539.
Stephanosphæra, 289 *note*, 290 *note*.
Stereoscope, 29.
Stereoscopic Spectacles, 223.
——— Vision, principles of, 29—32 ; application of, to Compound Microscope, 32—46 ; to Simple Microscope, 58, 59.
Stephenson, Mr., his suggestion of homogeneous immersion Objectives, 19 ; on diffraction-doctrine, 187—191 ; his Binocular Microscope, 36—39 ; his safety-stage, 141 ; on mounting in bisulphide of carbon, 334 ; on Coscinodiscus, 348.
Stewart, Mr., on internal skeleton of Echinodermata, 640.
Stick-net, 264.
Stigmata of Insects, 747, 748.
Stings of Plants, structure of, 456 ; of Insects, 755, 756.
Stokes, Prof., on Absorption-bands of blood, 107, 108.
Stomata, of Marchantia, 402 ; of Flowering Plants, 456, 457.
Stones, for polishing Sections, 237.
Stones, of Fruit, structure of, 432.
Strassburger, Dr., on cell-division, 765 *note*.
Striatelleæ, 345.
Student's Microscopes, principles of construction of, 66—68 ; Objectives suitable for, 68—70 ; various forms of, 70—80.

Suctorial Crustacea, 716, 717.
Suctorial Infusoria, 513.
Sulphate of Copper and Magnesia, radiating crystallization of, 842.
Sulphate of Copper, spiral crystallization of, 843.
Sulphuric Acid, as test, 249.
Sundew, hairs of, 456.
Sunk Cells, 217.
Surirella, 344 ; conjugation of, 337 ; use of, as test, 205.
Swift, Mr., his Challenge Microscope, 84, 85 ; his Portable Binocular, 95, 96 ; his swinging Sub-stage, 85 *note;* his combination Sub-stage, 133, 134 ; his Aquatic box, 147 ; his Microscope lamp, 156 ; his Wale Students' Microscope, 856.
Synapta, calcareous skeleton of, 641.
Syncoryne, 615, 616.
Syncrypta, 290.
Synedreæ, 344.
Syringe, small glass, 152 ; uses of, 168, 245, 249, 254, 260, 688 *note*, 811.
Syringe, Injecting, 811.

Tabanus, ovipositor of, 756.
Table for Microscope, 154.
Tadpole, pigment-cells of, 792 ; circulation in, 806—810.
Tænia, 693, 694.
Tardigrada, 541.
Teeth, of Echinida, 635, 636 ; of Ophiocoma, 637 ; of Mollusks, 678—681 ; of Leech, 706 ; of Vertebrata, structure of, 771—773 ; fossil, 831, 832 ; mode of making sections of, 770.
Tendon, structure of, 788.
Tenthredinidæ, ovipositor of, 755.
Terebella, circulation and respiration in, 698, 699.
Terebratula, shell-structure of, 673—675 ; muscular fibre of, 800.
Terpsinoë, 346.
Tests, of Rhizopods, 489—491 ; of Foraminifera, 558—568.
Test-Liquids, 249, 250.
Test-Objects, 197 ; for low powers, 198, 199 ; for medium powers, 199—201 ; for high powers, 201—206.
Tetramitus rostratus, 502, 503.
Tetraspores of Ceramiaceæ, 400.
Textularia, 546, 572.
Thalassicolla, 600, 601.
Thallus of lower Cryptogamia, 293, 393, 395.
Thaumantias, 619.
Thecæ, of Ferns, 414 ; of Equisetaceæ, 419.
Thin Glass, 209—211.
Thomas, Mrs. H., on Cosmarium, 316.
Thomas, Mr. R., on microscopic crystallization, 842.
Thompson, Mr. J. V., on development of Comatula, 648 ; on metamorphosis of Cirrhipeds, 717 ; on metamorphosis of Crustacea, 720.
Thomson, Sir Wyville, on Globigerina, 569 ; on Siliceous Sponges, 608 ; on development of Pentacrinoid larva, 649 ; on Chalk-formation, 825, 826.
Thread-cells of Zoophytes, 624, 625.
Thrush, fungous vegetation of, 382.
Thurammina, 563.
Thwaites, Mr., on conjugation of Diatoms, 337, 338 ; on filamentous extensions of Palmelleæ, 293 *note.*
Ticks, 759.
Tinea favosa, fungus of, 381.
Tinoporus, 573, 574.
Tipula, larva of, 748.
Tissues, Elementary, of Animals, microscopic study of, 763 ; formation of, 764—767 ; see Blood, Bone, Capillaries, Cartilage, Epidermis, Epithelium, Fat, Feathers, Fibrous Tissues, Glands, Hair, Horn, Mucous Membranes, Muscle, Nervous Tissue, Pigment-cells, Scales, Serous Membranes, Teeth.
Tissues, Elementary, of Plants, 423 ; Cellular, 423—436 ; Woody, 436, 437 ; Vascular, 438, 439 ; dissection of, 439, 440 ; preparation of, 241.
Tolles, Mr., his Binocular Eye-piece, 39 ; his Amplifier, 100 ; his vertical Illuminator, 141.
Tomopteris, 702—704.
Tongues of Gasteropods, 678—681 ; of Insects, 741—743.
Torula cerevisiæ, 375, 376.
Tous-les-mois, Starch-grains of, 435.
Tow-net, 264.
Tracheæ of Insects, 746—749 ; mode of preparing, 749, 750.

Tradescantia, cyclosis in hairs of, 429, 430.
Transparent Objects, arrangement of Microscope for, 168—172; various modes of illuminating, 172—175.
Travelling Microscopes, 93, 94.
Trematode Entozoa, 696.
Triceratium, 353; markings on, 330.
Trichoda, bristles of, 519; metamorphosis of, 524—526.
Trichogyne, of Lichens, 394; of Florideæ, 401.
Trilobite, eye of, 830.
Triloculina, 550.
Triple Staining, 248.
Trochus, palate of, 679.
Trout, circulation in young of, 807.
Tube-cells, 215.
Tubular Nerve-substance, 801—803.
Tubularia, 616.
TUNICATA, general organization of, 657, 658; see *Ascidians.*
Turbellaria, 696—698.
Turn-tables, 219, 220.
Tyndall, Prof., on Bacteria, &c., 373, 374, 383.
Ulvaceæ, 293—295.
Unicellular nature of Infusoria, 498.
Unicellular Plants, 274.
Unionidæ, shells of, 671—673.
Uredo, 385.
Urns of Mosses, 408.
Uvella, 280.

Vacuoles, 270; microscopic appearances of, 182.
Vallisneria, cyclosis in, 427, 428.
Vampyrella, 471—473.
Van Beneden, Prof. Ed., on gigantic Gregarina, 494.
Vanessa, haustellium of, 744.
Variation, tendency to, in Desmidiaceæ, 324; in Diatomaceæ, 337; in Foraminifera, 551, 558, 580; in Polycystina, 598, 600 *note.*
Varnishes and Cements, 211—214.
Vaucheria, zoospores of, 298; sexual reproduction of, 299.
Vegetable Ivory, 432.
Vegetable Kingdom, differentiated from Animal, 266—278.
Vegetable substances, preparation of, 241.
Ventriculites, 826.
Vermilion injections, 812, 813.
VERTEBRATA, elementary structure of, 762, (see Tissues); blood of, 782—786; circulation in, 804—810.
Vertical Illuminators, 140, 141.
Vesicular Nerve Substance, 801.
Vessels of Plants, 437—439.
Vibracula of Polyzoa, 657.
Vibrio, 371, 372.
Villi of intestine, injections of, 814.
Vine-disease, 386.
Vinegar, Eels of, 695.
Vitreous Foraminifera, 547, 548, 568—592.
Volvox, structure of, 283—286; development and multiplication of, 286, 287; generation of, 287—289; amœboid state of, 287—289.
Vorticella, 518, 519, 521; encysting process in, 523; conjugation of, 528.

Wale's New Working Microscope, 74—76.
Wallich, Dr., on making sections of Foraminifera, 236 *note;* on Diatoms, 328 *note,* 331 *note;* on Coccospheres, 492; on nucleus in Gromia, 477; on Globigerinæ, 569; on Polycystina, 600 *note.*
Warts, structure of, 792.
Water-Bath, 221.
Water-immersion Objectives, 18, 19, 850—854.
Water-Lily, stellate cells of, 425, 426; leaf of, 459.
Water-newt, circulation in larva of, 807.
Water-Vascular system, of Rotifera, 535; of Planaria, 697.
Watson, Messrs., their new form of Microscope, 855, 856.
Weber's Annular Cell, 147.
Webster-Condenser, 121, 122.
Wenham, Mr., his new Achromatic combination, 17; his suggestion of homogeneous immersion, 19; his Binocular Microscope, 34—36; his Non-Stereoscopic Binocular, 98; his Disk-illuminator, 123; his Parabolic Illuminator, 126, 127; his Reflex Illuminator, 128, 129; on adjustment of Object-glasses, 166; his observations on Pleurosigma, 331 *note;*

on Cyclosis, 429—431; on Podur scale, 732.
Whalebone, structure of, 782.
Wheat, blights of, 385, 386, 695.
Wheatstone, Sir C., his invention of the Stereoscope, 29—31; of the Pseudoscope, 31, 32.
Wheel-animalcules, see Rotifera.
White-cloud Illuminator, 130.
White Corpuscles of blood, 784—786.
White Fibrous tissue, 787, 788.
Whitney, Mr., on circulation in Tadpole, 807—810.
Williamson, Prof. W. C., on Volvox, 289 *note;* on shells of Crustacea, 719 *note;* on scales of Fishes, 775, 776; on Coal-plants, 821; on Levant-mud, 823, 824.
Wings of Insects, 750—752.
Winter-eggs, of Rotifera, 537; of Hydra, 613; of Entomostraca, 713.
Wollaston, Dr., his Camera Lucida, 112.
Wood, of Exogenous stems, 443—445.
Woodward, Col. Dr., his Prism, 124; his resolution of Amphipleura pellucida, 204; of Surirella gemma, 205; on scale of Gnat, 185; on Podura-scale, 732.
Woody Fibre, 436; glandular, of Conifers, 437.
Working-distance of Objectives, 192.
Wormley, Dr., on Micro-Chemistry, 848, 849.
Wyth's Amplifier, 101.

Xanthidia of Flints, 318 *note*, 872.
Yeast-plant, 375, 376.
Yellow Fibrous tissue, 788.
Yucca, epidermis of, 453; stomata of, 457.

Zeiss's oil-immersion Objectives, 19, 20; his adjusting Low-power, 161, 198; his Sub-stage Condenser, 122 *note*.
Zentmayer, Mr., on defining power, 193 *note;* his swinging tail-piece, 73, 89; his glass stage, 76.
Zoea-larva of Crab, 720, 721.
Zoantharia, 624.
Zooglœa, 368.
Zoophyte-Trough, 148.
ZOOPHYTES, 609—627; see *Actinozoa, Alcyonaria*, and *Hydrozoa*.
Zoöspores, 275 *note;* of Protococcus, 279, 280; of Ulvaceæ, 294, 295; of Vaucheria, 298; of Achlya, 300; of Confervaceæ, 304; of Chætophora, 307; of Pediastreæ, 323; of Fucaceæ, 399.
Zygnemaceæ, 282, 283.
Zygospores, 275; of Conjugateæ, 277, 283; of Desmidiaceæ, 318, 319; of Diatomaceæ, 337, 338.
Zygosis of Actinophrys, 492; of Amœba, 488; of Gregarina, 495.
Zymotic action of Bacillus-organisms, 373—375.

ERRATUM.

The first sentence in the Note to p. 195 should run thus:—

The Author is informed by Prof. Abbe, that the 'penetration' of Objectives decreases in a corresponding ratio with the increase of their respective Numerical Apertures; or, when Objectives of the same class are compared, with the increase in the sines of their respective semi-angles of aperture.

PRINTED BY BALLANTYNE, HANSON AND CO
LONDON AND EDINBURGH